

# The minitoc package<sup>\*</sup>

Jean-Pierre F. Drucbert  
<mailto:jean-pierre.drucbert@onera.fr>

12th February 2007

---

<sup>\*</sup>This document corresponds to minitoc v52, dated 2007/02/12.

# Summary

<b>Table of Contents</b>	<b>4</b>
<b>List of Figures</b>	<b>16</b>
<b>List of Tables</b>	<b>17</b>
<b>About this document</b>	<b>19</b>
<b>I User's Manual</b>	<b>21</b>
<b>1 The minitoc package</b>	<b>23</b>
<b>2 Frequently Asked Questions</b>	<b>53</b>
<b>3 Memento</b>	<b>77</b>
<b>4 Examples of documents</b>	<b>86</b>
<b>5 Messages</b>	<b>145</b>
<b>6 Jargon</b>	<b>195</b>
<b>7 Installation</b>	<b>226</b>
<b>8 Postface</b>	<b>231</b>
<b>Acknowledgments</b>	<b>240</b>
<b>II Implementation</b>	<b>243</b>
<b>9 Commented code of the minitoc package</b>	<b>245</b>
<b>10 Commented code of the mtcoff package</b>	<b>419</b>
<b>11 Commented code of the mtcmess package</b>	<b>434</b>
<b>12 Patch for the memoir class</b>	<b>435</b>

<i>SUMMARY</i>	3
<b>13 The language definition (.mld) and object (.mlo) files</b>	<b>437</b>
<b>III Complements</b>	<b>531</b>
<b>Bibliography</b>	<b>533</b>
<b>Changes History</b>	<b>558</b>
<b>Index</b>	<b>589</b>

# Table of Contents

<b>Summary</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>Table of Contents</b>	<b>4</b>
<b>List of Figures</b>	<b>16</b>
<b>List of Tables</b>	<b>17</b>
<b>About this document</b>	<b>19</b>
 <b>I User's Manual</b>	 <b>21</b>
<b>1 The minitoc package</b>	<b>23</b>
1.1 Introduction	24
1.1.1 Important restrictions	25
1.1.2 Version	25
1.2 License	25
1.3 Using the minitoc package	26
1.3.1 Loading the package and creating the mini-tables	26
1.3.2 Preparing the mini-tables	26
1.3.3 Placing the mini-tables	28
1.3.4 Starred chapters, parts and sections	32
1.4 Typesetting of the mini-tables	33
1.4.1 Chapter-level mini-tables	33
1.4.2 Titles for chapter-level mini-tables	35
1.4.3 Part-level mini-tables	37
1.4.4 Titles for part-level mini-tables	37
1.4.5 Section-level mini-tables	37
1.4.6 Titles for section-level mini-tables	37
1.4.7 Position of the titles	38
1.4.7.1 For mini-tables at the part level	38
1.4.7.2 For mini-tables at the chapter level	38
1.4.7.3 For mini-tables at the section level	38
1.4.7.4 Summary of the positionning of titles	39
1.4.8 Line spacing in the mini-tables	39
1.4.9 Simplified commands for fonts	39
1.4.10 Simplified command for mini-table titles	40
1.4.11 Simplified command for mini-table depths	41

1.4.12	Languages for the titles	41
1.4.13	Altering the layout of the mini-tables	42
1.5	Special Features	44
1.5.1	Horizontal Rules	44
1.5.2	Page Numbers, Leaders	44
1.5.3	Features for parttocs and other mini-tables	45
1.5.3.1	Remark about page styles	46
1.5.4	The “Chapter 0” Problem (solved)	46
1.5.4.1	Before version #23 (1994/11/08)	47
1.5.4.2	Since version #23 (1994/11/08)	47
1.5.5	Special Entries for TOC, LOF, LOT, Bibliography and Index	47
1.6	The notoccite option	49
1.7	The listfiles and nolistfiles options	49
1.8	The hints option	49
1.9	Usage with MS-DOS	51
1.10	Why several L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X runs are required ?	52
1.11	The mtcff package	52
<b>2</b>	<b>Frequently Asked Questions</b>	<b>53</b>
2.0	Introduction	54
2.1	Avoiding a page break near the rules before and after a mini-table	54
2.2	Implementing others layouts for a mini-table	55
2.3	Two consecutive backslashes in a contents line make an error	55
2.4	Reordering chapters makes havoc	55
2.5	Extensions for the names of auxiliary files	56
2.6	Playing with the chapter number	56
2.7	Supported document classes	56
2.8	Compatibility with L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X versions	56
2.9	Other mini-tables	57
2.10	Why so many auxiliary files ?	57
2.11	Mini-tables at levels other than chapter	58
2.12	Incompatibility with L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X2.09	58
2.13	Documents resetting the chapter number at each part	59
2.14	The mini-tables have too much spaced lines	59
2.15	The secttocs are wrong	59
2.16	Removing the lines of dots	59
2.17	Using the hyperref package with minitoc	59
2.18	Problem while upgrading minitoc	60
2.19	A local table of contents for the set of appendices	60
2.20	Use with the appendix package	60
2.21	Use with the tocloft package	61
2.22	Use with the memoir class	62
2.23	There are too many commands for fonts, titles, and depths	63
2.24	Compatibility with the $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ document classes	63
2.25	Hiding some entries from the main table of contents	63
2.26	Defining your own .mld file	67
2.27	Use with the abstract package	67
2.28	Use with the sectsty package	67
2.29	Strange alignment in the minitocs	67

2.30	Useful precautions with starred sectionning commands . . . . .	68
2.31	Use with packages for captions . . . . .	69
2.32	Bad interaction minitoc/hyperref/memoir . . . . .	69
2.33	Use with the varsects package . . . . .	69
2.34	Initial font settings . . . . .	69
2.35	Use with the KOMA-Script classes . . . . .	71
2.36	Use with the jura class or the alphanum package . . . . .	71
2.37	The .mld files and the babel package . . . . .	72
2.38	Use with the fncychap package . . . . .	72
2.39	Use with the quotchap package . . . . .	72
2.40	Use with the romannum package . . . . .	72
2.41	Use with the sfheaders package . . . . .	72
2.42	Use with the alnumsec package . . . . .	73
2.43	Use with the captcont package . . . . .	73
2.44	Vertical space (gap) before or after parttocs, partlofs, and partlots titles . . . . .	73
2.45	Vertical spacing before the bottom rule of a minitable . . . . .	74
2.46	Another interaction between the tocloft and minitoc packages . . . . .	75
2.47	Use with the hangcaption package . . . . .	76
<b>3</b>	<b>Memento</b> . . . . .	<b>77</b>
<b>4</b>	<b>Examples of documents</b> . . . . .	<b>86</b>
4.1	The mtc-2c.tex document file . . . . .	87
4.2	The mtc-2nd.tex document file . . . . .	88
4.3	The mtc-3co.tex document file . . . . .	89
4.4	The mtc-add.tex document file . . . . .	92
4.5	The mtc-ads.tex document file . . . . .	97
4.6	The mtc-amm.tex document file . . . . .	102
4.7	The mtc-apx.tex document file . . . . .	103
4.8	The mtc-art.tex document file . . . . .	103
4.9	The mtc-bk.tex document file . . . . .	108
4.10	The mtc-bo.tex document file . . . . .	115
4.11	The mtc-ch0.tex document file . . . . .	119
4.12	The mtc-cri.tex document file . . . . .	121
4.13	The mtc-fo1.tex document file . . . . .	121
4.14	The mtc-fo2.tex document file . . . . .	123
4.15	The mtc-gap.tex document file . . . . .	124
4.16	The mtc-hi1.tex document file . . . . .	124
4.17	The mtc-hi2.tex document file . . . . .	124
4.18	The mtc-hia.tex document file . . . . .	125
4.19	The mtc-hir.tex document file . . . . .	125
4.20	The mtc-hop.tex document file . . . . .	126
4.21	The mtc-liv.tex document file . . . . .	127
4.22	The mtc-mem.tex document file . . . . .	131
4.23	The mtc-mm1.tex document file . . . . .	132
4.24	The mtc-mu.tex document file . . . . .	133
4.25	The mtc-sbf.tex document file . . . . .	135
4.26	The mtc-scr.tex document file . . . . .	137
4.27	The mtc-syn.tex document file . . . . .	138

4.28	The <code>mtc-tbi.tex</code> document file	140
4.29	The <code>mtc-tlc.tex</code> document file	141
4.30	The <code>mtc-tlo.tex</code> document file	141
4.31	The <code>mtc-tsfc.tex</code> document file	141
<b>5</b>	<b>Messages</b>	<b>145</b>
5.1	Introduction	145
5.2	Messages from the <code>minitoc</code> package	147
5.2.1	Informative messages	147
5.2.1.1	Informative messages for hints	155
5.2.2	Warning messages	158
5.2.2.1	Warning messages for hints	163
5.2.3	Error messages	179
5.3	Messages from the <code>mtcoff</code> package	192
5.3.1	Warning messages	192
5.4	Message from the <code>mtcpatchmem</code> package	194
<b>6</b>	<b>Jargon</b>	<b>195</b>
<b>7</b>	<b>Installation</b>	<b>226</b>
<b>8</b>	<b>Postface</b>	<b>231</b>
8.1	The origins	232
8.2	New design in 1993	232
8.3	Developments in 1994	232
8.4	No developments in 1995	233
8.5	Developments en 1996	233
8.6	Developments in 1997	233
8.7	Developments in 1998	233
8.8	Developments in 1999	233
8.9	Developments in 2000	234
8.10	Developments in 2001	234
8.11	Developments in 2002	234
8.12	Developments in 2003	234
8.13	Developments in 2004	235
8.14	Developments in 2005	235
8.15	Developments in 2006	237
8.16	Developments in 2007	238
	<b>Acknowledgments</b>	<b>240</b>
<b>II</b>	<b>Implementation</b>	<b>243</b>
<b>9</b>	<b>Commented code of the <code>minitoc</code> package</b>	<b>245</b>
9.1	Introduction	248
9.2	Identification code	249
9.3	A file descriptor to write	249
9.4	Indentation and skip	249
9.5	Tests and flags	250
9.5.1	Flags for the hints option	250

9.5.2	Use of section-level mini-lists of floats . . . . .	251
9.5.3	Presence of some packages and classes . . . . .	251
9.5.4	Presence or absence of some sectionning commands . . . . .	252
9.5.5	Flags to check if some commands are used . . . . .	253
9.5.6	Check if the document has exactly 2 parts . . . . .	254
9.6	Preparation for the <code>notoccite</code> option . . . . .	255
9.7	Preparation for the <code>tight</code> and <code>k-tight</code> options . . . . .	255
9.8	Preparation to work with <code>hyperref</code> . . . . .	255
9.9	Checking the presence of some packages . . . . .	256
9.9.1	Check if the <code>sectsty</code> package is loaded, and when . . . . .	256
9.9.2	Check if the <code>varsects</code> package is loaded, and when . . . . .	256
9.9.3	Check if the <code>fncychap</code> package is loaded, and when . . . . .	256
9.9.4	Check if the <code>hangcaption</code> package is loaded, and when . . . . .	257
9.9.5	Check if the <code>quotchap</code> package is loaded, and when . . . . .	257
9.9.6	Check if the <code>romannum</code> package is loaded, and when . . . . .	257
9.9.7	Check if the <code>sfheaders</code> package is loaded, and when . . . . .	257
9.9.8	Check if the <code>alnumsec</code> package is loaded, and when . . . . .	258
9.9.9	Check if the <code>captocont</code> package is loaded, and when . . . . .	258
9.9.10	Check if the <code>caption</code> package is loaded, and when . . . . .	258
9.9.11	Check if the <code>caption2</code> package is loaded, and when . . . . .	258
9.9.12	Check if the <code>ccaption</code> package is loaded, and when . . . . .	259
9.9.13	Check if the <code>mcaption</code> package is loaded, and when . . . . .	259
9.10	Is the memoir class loaded ? . . . . .	259
9.11	Testing the emptiness of a file . . . . .	260
9.12	Internal macros to decrement <code>minitoc</code> counters . . . . .	261
9.13	Patching the <code>\part</code> command . . . . .	262
9.14	Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred part . . . . .	262
9.15	Section level macros . . . . .	263
9.16	Corrections for numbering . . . . .	263
9.17	Patching the <code>\section</code> command . . . . .	263
9.18	Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred section . . . . .	264
9.19	Chapter level macros . . . . .	264
9.20	Patching the <code>\chapter</code> command . . . . .	265
9.21	Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred chapter . . . . .	265
9.22	Miscellaneous declarations . . . . .	265
9.23	Autoconfiguration of extensions . . . . .	266
9.24	Detecting obsolete versions of $\LaTeX$ . . . . .	267
9.25	A macro to make a TOC entry without leaders nor page numbers . . . . .	268
9.26	Default values for the page-number customizations . . . . .	268
9.27	“Features” for the mini-tables . . . . .	271
9.28	Fake tables of contents . . . . .	273
9.29	Depth counters for <code>minilofs</code> and <code>minilots</code> . . . . .	274
9.30	Chapter level commands . . . . .	274
9.31	Starred parts, chapters or sections . . . . .	274
9.32	Font commands for the mini-tables . . . . .	276
9.33	Internal commands to position the mini-table titles . . . . .	276
9.34	The <code>mtc@verse</code> environment . . . . .	277
9.35	The <code>\minitoc</code> , <code>\minilof</code> , and <code>\minilot</code> commands . . . . .	277
9.35.1	The <code>\minitoc</code> command . . . . .	278
9.35.2	The <code>\minilof</code> command . . . . .	281



9.35.3 The <code>\minilot</code> command . . . . .	284
9.36 Patching the <code>\chapter</code> command, continued . . . . .	287
9.37 The <code>\addstarred...</code> commands . . . . .	288
9.38 TOC entries without leaders . . . . .	288
9.39 Mini-tables with or without leaders . . . . .	289
9.40 The <code>\dominitoc</code> command and its siblings . . . . .	290
9.40.1 Analysis and splitting of the TOC file . . . . .	293
9.41 Mini-lists of figures . . . . .	296
9.41.1 Analysis and splitting of the list of figures file . . . . .	297
9.42 Mini-lists of tables . . . . .	299
9.42.1 Analysis and splitting of the list of tables file . . . . .	299
9.43 Macro to write a contents line . . . . .	302
9.44 Depth counters for <code>partlofs</code> and <code>partlots</code> . . . . .	303
9.45 Part level commands . . . . .	303
9.46 Fonts for the <code>parttocs</code> . . . . .	304
9.47 Default titles for part-level mini-tables . . . . .	305
9.48 The <code>ptc@verse</code> environment . . . . .	307
9.49 The part level mini-tables : <code>\parttoc</code> , <code>\partlof</code> , and <code>\partlot</code> . . . . .	307
9.49.1 The <code>\parttoc</code> command . . . . .	307
9.49.2 The <code>\partlof</code> command . . . . .	310
9.49.3 The <code>\partlot</code> command . . . . .	313
9.50 Auxiliary commands for printing <code>parttocs</code> . . . . .	316
9.51 Patching the <code>\part</code> command, continued . . . . .	316
9.52 The <code>\doparttoc</code> command and its siblings . . . . .	317
9.52.1 Processing macros for the <code>parttocs</code> . . . . .	319
9.52.2 Processing macros for the <code>partlofs</code> . . . . .	323
9.52.3 Processing macros for the <code>partlots</code> . . . . .	325
9.53 Depth counters for <code>sectlofs</code> and <code>sectlots</code> . . . . .	328
9.54 Section-level commands . . . . .	328
9.55 Fonts commands for <code>secttocs</code> and <code>co.</code> . . . . .	329
9.56 Internal macros for title positioning . . . . .	329
9.57 The <code>stc@verse</code> environment . . . . .	330
9.58 The <code>\secttoc</code> , <code>\sectlof</code> , and <code>\sectlot</code> commands . . . . .	330
9.58.1 The <code>\secttoc</code> command . . . . .	330
9.58.2 The <code>\sectlof</code> command . . . . .	333
9.58.3 The <code>\sectlot</code> command . . . . .	335
9.59 Auxiliary internal commands, section level . . . . .	338
9.60 Patching the <code>\section</code> command (continued) . . . . .	338
9.61 The <code>\dosecttoc</code> command and siblings . . . . .	340
9.62 End of section-level commands . . . . .	349
9.63 The <code>\mtcprepare</code> command . . . . .	350
9.64 Necessary <code>\l@...</code> commands . . . . .	350
9.65 The horizontal rules and their default values . . . . .	351
9.66 The <code>\mtcset...</code> commands . . . . .	352
9.66.1 Keywords for the <code>\mtcset...</code> commands . . . . .	352
9.66.2 The <code>\mtcsetfont</code> command . . . . .	353
9.66.3 The <code>\mtcsetttitlefont</code> command . . . . .	358
9.66.4 The <code>\mtcsetttitle</code> command . . . . .	359
9.66.5 The <code>\mtcsetformat</code> command . . . . .	360
9.66.6 The <code>\mtcsetpagenumbers</code> command . . . . .	365

9.66.7	The <code>\mtcsetrules</code> command	367
9.66.8	The <code>\mtcsetfeature</code> command	369
9.66.9	The <code>\mtcsetdepth</code> command	372
9.67	The <code>mtchideinmaintoc</code> environment and siblings	373
9.68	Fixing the “Glossary” entry in the TOC	375
9.69	Fixing the “Index” entry in the TOC	377
9.70	The <code>\mtcselectlanguage</code> command	378
9.71	The <code>\mtcloadmlo</code> internal command	378
9.72	The “coffee breaks”	379
9.73	Initialization of counters	380
9.74	Declarations for simple options	380
9.74.1	Options <code>tight</code> and <code>loose</code> , <code>k-tight</code> and <code>k-loose</code>	380
9.74.2	Options <code>checkfiles</code> and <code>nocheckfiles</code>	380
9.74.3	Options <code>dotted</code> and <code>undotted</code>	380
9.74.4	Option <code>notoccite</code>	381
9.74.5	Option <code>shorttext</code>	381
9.75	The <code>insection</code> option	381
9.76	The <code>listfiles</code> and <code>nolistfiles</code> options	382
9.77	Language options	382
9.78	The <code>hints</code> option	388
9.78.1	First part : <code>\mtc@hints@begin doc</code>	388
9.78.1.1	Hint about the <code>alphanum</code> package	389
9.78.1.2	Hint about the <code>appendix</code> package	389
9.78.1.3	Hint about the <code>tocbibind</code> package	389
9.78.1.4	Hint about the KOMA-Script classes	390
9.78.1.5	Hint about the <code>tocloft</code> package	390
9.78.1.6	Hint about the <code>titletoc</code> package	390
9.78.1.7	Hint about the <code>placeins</code> package	391
9.78.1.8	Hint about the <code>memoir</code> class	392
9.78.1.9	Hint about the <code>amsart</code> and <code>amsproc</code> classes	392
9.78.1.10	Hint about the <code>amsbook</code> class	393
9.78.1.11	Hint about the <code>abstract</code> package	393
9.78.1.12	Hint about the <code>jura</code> class	394
9.78.1.13	Hint about the alteration of the sectionning commands	394
9.78.1.13.1	Alteration of <code>\part</code>	394
9.78.1.13.2	Alteration of <code>\chapter</code>	395
9.78.1.13.3	Alteration of <code>\section</code>	395
9.78.1.14	Hint about the consistency of the calling sequences of some commands	396
9.78.2	Final part : <code>\mtc@hints@end doc</code>	397
9.78.2.1	Hint about <code>\sect-lof lot</code> and the <code>insection</code> option	397
9.78.2.2	Final part of the consistency tests	397
9.78.2.3	Check if the main tables have been prepared (first part)	399
9.78.2.4	Check if the main tables have been prepared (second part)	401
9.78.2.5	Check the number of mini-tables, in case of short extensions	404
9.78.2.6	Final part of the hint about the <code>sectsty</code> package	405
9.78.2.7	Final part of the hint about the <code>varsects</code> package	405
9.78.2.8	Final part of the hint about the <code>fncychap</code> package	405
9.78.2.9	Final part of the hint about the <code>hangcaption</code> package	406
9.78.2.10	Final part of the hint about the <code>quotchap</code> package	406

9.78.2.11	Final part of the hint about the <code>romannum</code> package	406
9.78.2.12	Final part of the hint about the <code>sfheaders</code> package	407
9.78.2.13	Final part of the hint about the <code>alnumsec</code> package	407
9.78.2.14	Final part of the hint about the <code>captcont</code> package	407
9.78.2.15	Final part of the hint about the <code>caption</code> package	408
9.78.2.16	Final part of the hint about the <code>caption2</code> package	408
9.78.2.17	Final part of the hint about the <code>ccaption</code> package	408
9.78.2.18	Final part of the hint about the <code>mcaption</code> package	409
9.78.2.19	Check if empty mini-tables have been detected	409
9.78.2.20	Check if obsolete commands have been used	411
9.78.2.21	Check if some hints have been written	412
9.79	Processing of options	412
9.79.1	Processing the <code>insection</code> option	413
9.79.2	Processing the <code>notoccite</code> option	414
9.79.3	Processing the <code>listfiles</code> option	414
9.79.4	Processing the <code>hints</code> option	415
9.79.5	Saving the sectionning commands	415
9.80	Trapping the undefined preparation and insertion commands	416
9.81	The <code>fminitoc.dtx</code> file	418
<b>10</b>	<b>Commented code of the <code>mtcoff</code> package</b>	<b>419</b>
10.1	Why <code>mtcoff</code> ?	420
10.2	Identification of the package	420
10.3	Faking counters and dimensions	421
10.4	Faking simple commands	423
10.5	Faking commands with one optional argument	423
10.6	Disabling the internal commands	424
10.7	Disabling the font commands	425
10.8	Disabling the <code>\mtcset...</code> commands	426
10.9	Disabling the new <code>\l@...</code> commands	426
10.10	Ignore the obsolete commands	427
10.11	Disabling the <code>\mtcselectlanguage</code> command	427
10.12	Disabling the <code>\mtcloadmlo</code> command	427
10.13	Disabling the commands for the horizontal rules	427
10.14	Disabling the commands for the page numbers	428
10.15	Disabling the mini-table features commands	428
10.16	Disabling miscellaneous flags and commands	429
10.17	Caution for some commands	429
10.18	Disabling commands for “coffee”	431
10.19	Disabling the <code>mtchideinmain...</code> environments	431
10.20	Inhibition of the <code>\mtc@saveXXXdepth</code> and <code>\mtc@restoreXXXdepth</code> internal commands	431
10.21	Disabling the <code>\mtcfixglossary</code> command	432
10.22	Disabling the <code>\mtcfixindex</code> command	432
10.23	Disabling the <code>\addstarred...</code> commands	432
<b>11</b>	<b>Commented code of the <code>mtcmess</code> package</b>	<b>434</b>
<b>12</b>	<b>Patch for the <code>memoir</code> class</b>	<b>435</b>

<b>13 The language definition (.mld) and object (.mlo) files</b>	<b>437</b>
13.1 “Acadian” language : acadian.mld . . . . .	441
13.2 “Acadien” language : acadien.mld . . . . .	442
13.3 “Afrikaan” language : afrikaan.mld . . . . .	442
13.4 “Afrikaans” language : afrikaans.mld . . . . .	443
13.5 “Albanian” language : albanian.mld . . . . .	443
13.6 “American” language : american.mld . . . . .	443
13.7 “Arab” language : arab.mld . . . . .	444
13.8 “Arab2” language : arab2.mld . . . . .	444
13.9 “Arabi” language : arabi.mld . . . . .	445
13.10 “Arabic” language : arabic.mld . . . . .	445
13.11 “Armenian” language : armenian.mld . . . . .	445
13.12 “Australian” language : australian.mld . . . . .	446
13.13 “Austrian” language : austrian.mld . . . . .	446
13.14 “Bahasa” language : bahasa.mld . . . . .	446
13.15 “Bahasai” language : bahasai.mld . . . . .	447
13.16 “Bahasam” language : bahasam.mld . . . . .	447
13.17 “Bangla” language : bangla.mld . . . . .	448
13.18 “Basque” language : basque.mld . . . . .	448
13.19 “Bicig” language : bicig.mld . . . . .	449
13.20 “Bicig2” language : bicig2.mld . . . . .	450
13.21 “Bicig3” language : bicig3.mld . . . . .	450
13.22 “Bithe” language : bithe.mld . . . . .	451
13.23 “Brazil” language : brazil.mld . . . . .	451
13.24 “Brazilian” language : brazilian.mld . . . . .	452
13.25 “Breton” language : breton.mld . . . . .	452
13.26 “British” language : british.mld . . . . .	453
13.27 “Bulgarian” language : bulgarian.mld . . . . .	453
13.28 “Bulgarianb” language : bulgarianb.mld . . . . .	454
13.29 “Buryat” language : buryat.mld . . . . .	454
13.30 “Buryat2” language : buryat2.mld . . . . .	455
13.31 “Canadian” language : canadian.mld . . . . .	455
13.32 “Canadien” language : canadien.mld . . . . .	456
13.33 “Castillan” language : castillan.mld . . . . .	456
13.34 “Castillian” language : castillian.mld . . . . .	456
13.35 “Catalan” language : catalan.mld . . . . .	456
13.36 “Chinese1” language : chinese1.mld and chinese1.mlo . . . . .	457
13.37 “Chinese2” language : chinese2.mld and chinese2.mlo . . . . .	457
13.38 “Croatian” language : croatian.mld . . . . .	458
13.39 “Czech” language : czech.mld . . . . .	458
13.40 “Danish” language : danish.mld . . . . .	459
13.41 “Devanagari” language : devanagari.mld . . . . .	459
13.42 “Dutch” language : dutch.mld . . . . .	460
13.43 “English” language : english.mld . . . . .	461
13.44 “English1” language : english1.mld . . . . .	461
13.45 “English2” language : english2.mld . . . . .	462
13.46 “Esperant” language : esperant.mld . . . . .	462
13.47 “Esperanto” language : esperanto.mld . . . . .	463
13.48 “Estonian” language : estonian.mld . . . . .	463

13.49	“Ethiopia” language : <code>ethiopia.mld</code>	464
13.50	“Ethiopian” language : <code>ethiopian.mld</code>	465
13.51	“Ethiopian2” language : <code>ethiopian2.mld</code>	465
13.52	“Farsi1” language : <code>farsi1.mld</code> and <code>farsi1.mlo</code>	466
13.53	“Farsi2” language : <code>farsi2.mld</code> and <code>farsi2.mlo</code>	466
13.54	“Farsi3” language : <code>farsi3.mld</code>	467
13.55	“Finnish” language : <code>finnish.mld</code>	467
13.56	“Finnish2” language : <code>finnish2.mld</code>	468
13.57	“Francais” language : <code>francais.mld</code>	468
13.58	“French” language : <code>french.mld</code>	468
13.59	“French1” language : <code>french1.mld</code>	469
13.60	“French2” language : <code>french2.mld</code>	470
13.61	“Frenchb” language : <code>frenchb.mld</code>	470
13.62	“Frenchle” language : <code>frenchle.mld</code>	471
13.63	“Frenchpro” language : <code>frenchpro.mld</code>	471
13.64	“Galician” language : <code>galician.mld</code>	471
13.65	“German” language : <code>german.mld</code>	472
13.66	“Germanb” language : <code>germanb.mld</code>	473
13.67	“Germanb2” language : <code>germanb2.mld</code>	473
13.68	“Greek” language : <code>greek.mld</code>	474
13.69	“Greek-mono” language : <code>greek-mono.mld</code>	474
13.70	“Greek-polydemo” language : <code>greek-polydemo.mld</code>	475
13.71	“Greek-polykatha” language : <code>greek-polykatha.mld</code>	476
13.72	“Guarani” language : <code>guarani.mld</code>	477
13.73	“Hangul1” language : <code>hangul1.mld</code> and <code>hangul1.mlo</code>	478
13.74	“Hangul2” language : <code>hangul2.mld</code> and <code>hangul2.mlo</code>	478
13.75	“Hangul3” language : <code>hangul3.mld</code> and <code>hangul3.mlo</code>	479
13.76	“Hangul4” language : <code>hangul4.mld</code> and <code>hangul4.mlo</code>	479
13.77	“Hangul-u8” language : <code>hangul-u8.mld</code> and <code>hangul-u8.mlo</code>	480
13.78	“Hanja1” language : <code>hanja1.mld</code> and <code>hanja1.mlo</code>	480
13.79	“Hanja2” language : <code>hanja2.mld</code> and <code>hanja2.mlo</code>	481
13.80	“Hanja-u8” language : <code>hanja-u8.mld</code> and <code>hanja-u8.mlo</code>	481
13.81	“Hebrew” language : <code>hebrew.mld</code>	482
13.82	“Hebrew2” language : <code>hebrew2.mld</code>	483
13.83	“Hindi” language : <code>hindi.mld</code>	483
13.84	“Hindi-modern” language : <code>hindi-modern.mld</code>	484
13.85	“Hungarian” language : <code>hungarian.mld</code>	484
13.86	“Icelandic” language : <code>icelandic.mld</code>	485
13.87	“Indon” language : <code>indon.mld</code>	485
13.88	“Indonesian” language : <code>indonesian.mld</code>	485
13.89	“Interlingua” language : <code>interlingua.mld</code>	486
13.90	“Irish” language : <code>irish.mld</code>	486
13.91	“Italian” language : <code>italian.mld</code>	487
13.92	“Italian2” language : <code>italian2.mld</code>	487
13.93	“Japanese” language : <code>japanese.mld</code> and <code>japanese.mlo</code>	488
13.94	“Japanese2” language : <code>japanese2.mld</code> and <code>japanese2.mlo</code>	488
13.95	“Japanese3” language : <code>japanese3.mld</code> and <code>japanese3.mlo</code>	489
13.96	“Japanese4” language : <code>japanese4.mld</code> and <code>japanese4.mlo</code>	489
13.97	“Japanese5” language : <code>japanese5.mld</code> and <code>japanese5.mlo</code>	490

13.98 “Japanese6” language : japanese6.mld and japanese6.mlo . . . . .	490
13.99 “Kannada” language : kannada.mld . . . . .	491
13.100 “Khalka” language : khalkha.mld . . . . .	491
13.101 “Latin” language : latin.mld . . . . .	492
13.102 “Latin2” language : latin2.mld . . . . .	492
13.103 “Latvian” language : latvian.mld . . . . .	493
13.104 “Letton” language : letton.mld . . . . .	493
13.105 “Lithuanian” language : lithuanian.mld . . . . .	493
13.106 “Lowersorbian” language : lowersorbian.mld . . . . .	494
13.107 “Lsorbian” language : lsorbian.mld . . . . .	495
13.108 “Magyar” language : magyar.mld . . . . .	495
13.109 “Magyar2” language : magyar2.mld . . . . .	495
13.110 “Magyar3” language : magyar3.mld . . . . .	496
13.111 “Malay” language : malay.mld . . . . .	496
13.112 “Malayalam-keli” language : malayalam-keli.mld . . . . .	497
13.113 “Malayalam-omega” language : malayalam-omega.mld and malayalam-omega.mlo . . . . .	497
13.114 “Malayalam-rachana” language : malayalam-rachana.mld . . . . .	498
13.115 “Malayalam-rachana2” language : malayalam-rachana2.mld . . . . .	498
13.116 “Manju” language : manju.mld . . . . .	499
13.117 “Meyalu” language : meyalu.mld . . . . .	499
13.118 “Mongol” language : mongol.mld . . . . .	499
13.119 “Mongolb” language : mongolb.mld . . . . .	500
13.120 “Mongolian” language : mongolian.mld . . . . .	501
13.121 “Naustrian” language : naustrian.mld . . . . .	501
13.122 “Newzealand” language : newzealand.mld . . . . .	502
13.123 “Ngerman” language : ngerman.mld . . . . .	502
13.124 “Ngermanb” language : ngermanb.mld . . . . .	502
13.125 “Ngermanb2” language : ngermanb2.mld . . . . .	503
13.126 “Norsk” language : norsk.mld . . . . .	503
13.127 “Norsk2” language : norsk2.mld . . . . .	504
13.128 “Nynorsk” language : nynorsk.mld . . . . .	504
13.129 “Nynorsk2” language : nynorsk2.mld . . . . .	505
13.130 “Polish” language : polish.mld . . . . .	505
13.131 “Polish2” language : polish2.mld . . . . .	506
13.132 “Polski” language : polski.mld . . . . .	507
13.133 “Portuges” language : portuges.mld . . . . .	507
13.134 “Portuguese” language : portuguese.mld . . . . .	507
13.135 “Romanian” language : romanian.mld . . . . .	508
13.136 “Romanian2” language : romanian2.mld . . . . .	509
13.137 “Romanian3” language : romanian3.mld . . . . .	509
13.138 “Russian” language : russian.mld . . . . .	510
13.139 “Russian2m” language : russian2m.mld . . . . .	510
13.140 “Russian2o” language : russian2o.mld . . . . .	511
13.141 “Russianb” language : russianb.mld . . . . .	512
13.142 “Russianc” language : russianc.mld . . . . .	513
13.143 “Russian-cca” language : russian-cca.mld and russian-cca.mlo . . . .	514
13.144 “Russian-cca1” language : russian-cca1.mld and russian-cca1.mlo . .	514
13.145 “Russian-lh” language : russian-lh.mld and russian-lh.mlo . . . . .	515

13.146 “Russian-lhcyralt” language : russian-lhcyralt.mld and russian-lhcyralt.mlo . . . . .	515
13.147 “Russian-lhcyrkoi” language : russian-lhcyrkoi.mld and russian-lhcyrkoi.mlo . . . . .	516
13.148 “Russian-lhcyrwin” language : russian-lhcyrwin.mld and russian-lhcyrwin.mlo . . . . .	516
13.149 “Samin” language : samin.mld . . . . .	517
13.150 “Scottish” language : scottish.mld . . . . .	517
13.151 “Serbian” language : serbian.mld . . . . .	518
13.152 “Serbianc” language : serbianc.mld . . . . .	518
13.153 “Slovak” language : slovak.mld . . . . .	519
13.154 “Slovene” language : slovene.mld . . . . .	519
13.155 “Spanish” language : spanish.mld . . . . .	520
13.156 “Spanish2” language : spanish2.mld . . . . .	521
13.157 “Spanish3” language : spanish3.mld . . . . .	521
13.158 “Spanish4” language : spanish4.mld . . . . .	522
13.159 “Swedish” language : swedish.mld . . . . .	522
13.160 “Swedish2” language : swedish2.mld . . . . .	523
13.161 “Thai” language : thai.mld and thai.mlo . . . . .	523
13.162 “Turkish” language : turkish.mld . . . . .	524
13.163 “Uighur” language : uighur.mld . . . . .	524
13.164 “Uighur2” language : uighur2.mld . . . . .	524
13.165 “Uighur3” language : uighur3.mld . . . . .	525
13.166 “UKenglish” language : UKenglish.mld . . . . .	525
13.167 “Ukraineb” language : ukraineb.mld . . . . .	525
13.168 “Ukrainian” language : ukrainian.mld . . . . .	525
13.169 “Uppersorbian” language : uppersorbian.mld . . . . .	526
13.170 “USenglish” language : USenglish.mld . . . . .	527
13.171 “Usorbian” language : usorbian.mld . . . . .	527
13.172 “Vietnam” language : vietnam.mld . . . . .	527
13.173 “Vietnamese” language : vietnamese.mld . . . . .	528
13.174 “Welsh” language : welsh.mld . . . . .	528
13.175 “Xalx” language : xalx.mld . . . . .	529
13.176 “Xalx2” language : xalx2.mld . . . . .	529
13.177 “Xalx3” language : xalx3.mld . . . . .	530

<b>III Complements</b>	<b>531</b>
<b>Bibliography</b>	<b>533</b>
<b>Changes History</b>	<b>558</b>
<b>Index</b>	<b>589</b>

# List of Figures

1.1	Float barriers	30
1.2	Layout of a ToC (LoF, LoT) entry	42
2.1	Three compilations for minitoc	55



# List of Tables

1.1	Commands for a <code>minitoc</code>	27
1.2	Commands for a <code>secttoc</code>	28
1.3	Commands for a <code>parttoc</code>	31
1.4	Adding an entry in the table of contents for a starred part, chapter, or section	33
1.5	Fonts and titles for the mini-table commands	34
1.6	Fonts for the mini-table entries	35
1.7	Available languages	36
1.8	Horizontal rules	43
1.9	Page numbers	43
1.10	Features for mini-tables	45
1.11	Extensions of the auxiliary files	51
2.1	Kernings before minitable bottom rules	74
3.1	Package options	77
3.2	General commands	78
3.3	Commands : part level	79
3.4	Commands : chapter level	80
3.5	Commands : section level	81
3.6	Commands for horizontal rules	82
3.7	Commands for page numbers	82
3.8	Commands for mini-tables features	83
3.9	Preparation and insertion commands	83
3.10	Adjustment commands	84
3.11	Obsolete commands	84
3.12	Classes and packages needing some precautions with <code>minitoc</code>	85
6.1	Category codes	201
6.2	Encoding schemes implemented in CJK	201
6.3	Standard document classes	202
6.4	Depths for sectionning commands	204
6.5	Various encodings	205
6.6	Most common font encodings	216
6.7	Most common font families	217
6.8	Most common font series	217
6.9	Most common font shapes	217
6.10	The five font parameters for some fonts	217
6.11	Author commands for fonts	218

<i>LIST OF TABLES</i>	18
6.12 Some systems derived from T <sub>E</sub> X and L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X . . . . .	219
7.1 List of files (minitoc.1) . . . . .	227
7.2 A TDS-conformant hierarchy for the minitoc files . . . . .	230
9.1 Hack to detect the limitation to short extensions . . . . .	266

# About this document

This document is rather thick, but please, be not afraid: you do not need to read every page.

- The most useful chapters are in the first part (“User’s Manual”, page 22):
  - the chapter “The minitoc package”, page 23, describes the essential commands to use the package;
  - the chapter “Frequently Asked Questions”, page 53, may help you to solve some specific problems;
  - the “Memento” chapter, page 77, is a set of tables to be used as a remainder of the commands of this package;
  - the “Examples of documents” chapter, page 86, gives the code of some documents showing the basic usage of the minitoc package and some interesting situations;
  - the “Messages” chapter, page 145, is certainly boring, but it should be searched if you get some warning or error messages from the minitoc package, because it explains them and also the informative messages;
  - the “Jargon” chapter, page 195, attempts to explain most of the technical terms used here;
  - the “Installation” chapter, page 226, describes all the files included in the distribution of the package;
  - the “Postface” chapter, page 231, gives an abbreviated history of the package.
- The second part, “Implementation”, page 244, is much more technical; you can read it if you are interested in the details of the coding of the package. The chapter “The language definition (.mld) and object (.mlo) files”, page 437, may be useful if you are interested by some language.
- The third part, “Complements”, page 532, contains a bibliography, a detailed history of the package, and an index.

For this document, I have used:

- a short table of contents (summary), with the `\shorttoc` command from my `shorttoc` package [111], displaying only parts and chapters;

- a main table of contents (`\tableofcontents`), with a maximum depth (6);
- a main list of figures (`\listoffigures`) and a main list of tables (`\listoftables`);
- for each part, a table of contents displaying only the chapters (`\parttoc` with `parttocdepth` equal to 1);
- for each chapter, a complete table of contents (`\minitoc` with `minitocdepth` equal to 6);
- for each chapter, a list of figures (`\minilof`) and a list of tables (`\minilot`) when useful;
- customized parameters for the layout of the mini-tables.

As the PDF version of the documentation uses hyperlinks, these tables should help you to navigate in the document.

## **Part I**

# **User's Manual**

## Contents of the First Part

---

<b>1</b>	<b>The minitoc package</b>	<b>23</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Frequently Asked Questions</b>	<b>53</b>
<b>3</b>	<b>Memento</b>	<b>77</b>
<b>4</b>	<b>Examples of documents</b>	<b>86</b>
<b>5</b>	<b>Messages</b>	<b>145</b>
<b>6</b>	<b>Jargon</b>	<b>195</b>
<b>7</b>	<b>Installation</b>	<b>226</b>
<b>8</b>	<b>Postface</b>	<b>231</b>
	<b>Acknowledgments</b>	<b>240</b>

---

# Chapter 1

## The minitoc package

### Contents

<b>1.1</b>	<b>Introduction</b>	<b>24</b>
1.1.1	Important restrictions	25
1.1.2	Version	25
<b>1.2</b>	<b>License</b>	<b>25</b>
<b>1.3</b>	<b>Using the minitoc package</b>	<b>26</b>
1.3.1	Loading the package and creating the mini-tables	26
1.3.2	Preparing the mini-tables	26
1.3.3	Placing the mini-tables	28
1.3.4	Starred chapters, parts and sections	32
<b>1.4</b>	<b>Typesetting of the mini-tables</b>	<b>33</b>
1.4.1	Chapter-level mini-tables	33
1.4.2	Titles for chapter-level mini-tables	35
1.4.3	Part-level mini-tables	37
1.4.4	Titles for part-level mini-tables	37
1.4.5	Section-level mini-tables	37
1.4.6	Titles for section-level mini-tables	37
1.4.7	Position of the titles	38
1.4.7.1	For mini-tables at the part level	38
1.4.7.2	For mini-tables at the chapter level	38
1.4.7.3	For mini-tables at the section level	38
1.4.7.4	Summary of the positionning of titles	39
1.4.8	Line spacing in the mini-tables	39
1.4.9	Simplified commands for fonts	39
1.4.10	Simplified command for mini-table titles	40
1.4.11	Simplified command for mini-table depths	41
1.4.12	Languages for the titles	41
1.4.13	Altering the layout of the mini-tables	42
<b>1.5</b>	<b>Special Features</b>	<b>44</b>
1.5.1	Horizontal Rules	44
1.5.2	Page Numbers, Leaders	44
1.5.3	Features for parttocs and other mini-tables	45
1.5.3.1	Remark about page styles	46
1.5.4	The “Chapter 0” Problem (solved)	46

1.5.4.1	Before version #23 (1994/11/08)	47
1.5.4.2	Since version #23 (1994/11/08)	47
1.5.5	Special Entries for TOC, LOF, LOT, Bibliography and Index	47
1.6	The <b>notoccite</b> option	49
1.7	The <b>listfiles</b> and <b>nolistfiles</b> options	49
1.8	The <b>hints</b> option	49
1.9	Usage with MS-DOS	51
1.10	Why several $\text{\LaTeX}$ runs are required?	52
1.11	The <b>mtcoff</b> package	52

## Figures

1.1	Float barriers	30
1.2	Layout of a ToC (LoF, LoT) entry	42

## Tables

1.1	Commands for a <b>minitoc</b>	27
1.2	Commands for a <b>secttoc</b>	28
1.3	Commands for a <b>parttoc</b>	31
1.4	Adding an entry in the table of contents for a starred part, chapter, or section	33
1.5	Fonts and titles for the mini-table commands	34
1.6	Fonts for the mini-table entries	35
1.7	Available languages	36
1.8	Horizontal rules	43
1.9	Page numbers	43
1.10	Features for mini-tables	45
1.11	Extensions of the auxiliary files	51

## 1.1 Introduction

The **minitoc** package, initially written by Nigel WARD and Dan JURAFSKY, has been almost completely redesigned by Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT (ONERA/Centre de Toulouse). A summary of the evolution of this package is given in the chapter 8 on page 231. This package creates a mini-table of contents (a “minitoc”<sup>1</sup>) at the beginning of each chapter of a document. It is also possible to have a mini-list of figures (a “minilof”) and a mini-list of tables (a “minilot”). The document class should of course define chapters (classes like **book** or **report**) or sections (classes like **article**<sup>2</sup>). Thus, this package should not be used with document classes without standard sectionning commands (like **letter**). When the document class defines a “part” sectionning level (i.e., classes like **book**, **report** and **article**), you can create a “partial” table of contents (a “parttoc”) at the beginning of each part of a document. It is also possible to have a partial list of figures (a “partlof”) and a partial list of tables (a “partlot”). When the document class has no `\chapter` command but has a `\section` command, you may use section level

<sup>1</sup> The **minitoc** package introduces its own jargon, explained in this document. It should not be too difficult, however, to learn and use; it will be used here, of course.

<sup>2</sup> As the standard **proc** class, and the **ltxdoc** and **ltxnews** classes, load the standard **article** class, these classes will be just considered as variants of the **article** class.



tables of contents (“secttocs”) at the beginning of each section; and you can also have section level lists of figures (“sectlofs”) or of tables (“sectlots”).

All these tables (“minitocs”, “partlots”, “sectlofs”, etc.) are collectively referenced as “mini-tables” (or sometimes “mini-lists”).

### 1.1.1 Important restrictions



**Note:** you cannot use chapter level and section level mini-tables in the same document. This restriction is intended to avoid documents with full of local tables of contents, lists of figures and tables at every sectioning level.



**Note:** the commands relative to the part level are defined only if the document class defines `\part`. The commands relative to the section level are defined only if the document class defines `\section` but does not define `\chapter`.

### 1.1.2 Version

The current version of this package is #52. You will find a resumed history of the package in the “Postface” chapter (chapter 8 on page 231) and a more detailed history in “Changes History”, page 558.

## 1.2 License

This package must be distributed and/or may be modified under the conditions of the **L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X Project Public License**, either version 1.3 of this license or (as convenient) any later version. The latest version of this license is in

<http://www.latex-project.org/lppl.txt>

and version 1.3 or later is part of all distributions of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X version 2003/12/01 or later.

But please don't bother me about hacked versions; they will not be supported. However, suggestions for corrections and improvements are welcome.

## 1.3 Using the minitoc package

### 1.3.1 Loading the package and creating the mini-tables

`\usepackage` To use the minitoc package, you must insert a command:  
`\minitoc`  
`\chapter`            `\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}`

in the preamble of the document<sup>3</sup>. The mini-table of contents will be in the chapter, after the `\chapter` command, at the point of the `\minitoc` command. The `\minitoc` command may occur *almost anywhere*<sup>4</sup> inside a chapter.

Of course, it is better to put it at the beginning of the chapter, eventually after some introductory material. But you can also decide to put it at the end of the chapter. You should use the same conventions in all chapters. If you want to add the mini-table of contents for a chapter, you must use the sequence given in table 1.1 on the following page.

For each mini-table of contents, an auxiliary file will be created with a name of the form *document.mtc*(*N*), where (*N*) is the absolute chapter number. “Absolute” means that this number is unique, and always increasing from the first chapter<sup>5</sup>. The suffix is *.mlf*(*N*) for mini-lists of figures and is *.mlt*(*N*) for mini-lists of tables. (If under MS-DOS or any operating system with short extensions to filenames, see section 1.9 on page 51 and section 2.5 on page 56). There are similar commands for mini-tables at the part or section level, depending of the document class.

### 1.3.2 Preparing the mini-tables

`\dominitoc` The commands<sup>6</sup> `\dominitoc`, `\dominilof`, and `\dominilot` (for mini-tables at the  
`\dominilof` chapter level), take respectively the *document.toc*, *document.lof*, and *document.lot*  
`\dominilot` files, and cut slices from them to create the *document.mtc*(*N*), *document.mlf*(*N*), and  
*document.mlt*(*N*) files.

<sup>3</sup> This command must be placed *after* any modification done on the sectioning commands; if you modify sectioning commands after loading the minitoc package, this one might not work properly.

<sup>4</sup> “Almost anywhere” means “in a normal place”, like between two paragraphs of normal text, or in a (wide enough) minipage, but not in a too strange position (like a marginal note or a footnote). Even a multicolumn or a floating environment can be used, but with care. But note that a minitoc can be rather long, if the chapter is complex and if you ask for details with a high value for `minitocdepth`.

<sup>5</sup> The concept of an “absolute” counter for the mini-tables has solved some obscure problems, and also made obsolete some commands, like `\firstpartis`, `\firstchapteris`, and `\firstsectionis`.

<sup>6</sup> The code of these `\do...` commands is directly derived from that of the *xr* package [92], by David CARLISLE, with his permission.

Table 1.1: Commands for a minitoc

<code>\documentclass[...]{book}</code>	
<code>\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}</code>	
<code>...</code>	
<code>\setlength{\mtcindent}{24pt}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\setlength{\mtcskipamount}{\bigskipamount}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>...</code>	
<code>\setcounter{minitocdepth}{2}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\renewcommand{\mtcfont}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\renewcommand{\mtcSfont}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}</code>	<i>default</i>
<i>or:</i>	
<code>\mtcsetdepth{minitoc}{2}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{*}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}</code>	<i>default</i>
<code>...</code>	
<code>\begin{document}</code>	
<code>...</code>	
<code>\dominitoc</code>	
<code>\dominilof</code>	
<code>\dominilot</code>	
<code>\tableofcontents</code>	<i>or \faketableofcontents</i>
<code>\listoffigures</code>	<i>or \fake\listoffigures</i>
<code>\listoftables</code>	<i>or \fake\listoftables</i>
<code>...</code>	
<code>\chapter{...}</code>	
<code>\minitoc</code>	<i>if you want one</i>
<code>\mtcskip</code>	
<code>\minilof</code>	<i>if you want one</i>
<code>\mtcskip</code>	
<code>\minilot</code>	<i>if you want one</i>
<code>...</code>	

<code>\dosecttoc</code>	The commands <code>\dosecttoc</code> , <code>\dosectlof</code> , and <code>\dosectlot</code> (for mini-tables at the section level) and <code>\doparttoc</code> , <code>\dopartlof</code> , and <code>\dopartlot</code> (for mini-tables at the part level) are analog.
<code>\dosectlof</code>	
<code>\dosectlot</code>	
<code>\doparttoc</code>	
<code>\dopartlof</code>	The <code>\mtcprepare</code> command invokes (and replaces) all these preparation commands when they are available with the document class and if the adequate contents file exists. This command accepts also an optional argument to set the default position of the title for <i>all</i> the mini-tables.
<code>\dopartlot</code>	
<code>\mtcprepare</code>	
<code>\tableofcontents</code>	
<code>\listoffigures</code>	
<code>\listoftables</code>	To obtain a satisfactory result (i.e., non empty), please note that all these commands must <i>imperatively be put before</i> any command analog to the <code>\tableofcontents</code> , <code>\listoffigures</code> , and <code>\listoftables</code> commands, or their <code>\fake...</code> siblings.



It is also *strongly* recommended to put these commands *before* any sectionning command producing an entry in the table of contents (for the `\do...toc` commands), and *before* any `\caption`-like command producing an entry in the list of figure (for the `\do...lof` commands) or in the list of tables (for the `\do...lot` commands); else disorder in the mini-tables might result.

Table 1.2: Commands for a secttoc

\documentclass[...]{article}		
\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}		
...		
\setlength{\stcindent}{24pt}	default	
...		
\setcounter{secttocdepth}{2}	default	
\renewcommand{\stcfont}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}		default
\renewcommand{\stcSSfont}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}		default
or:		
\mtcsetdepth{secttoc}{2}		default
\mtcsetfont{secttoc}{*}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}		default
\mtcsetfont{secttoc}{subsection}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}		default
...		
\begin{document}		
...		
\dosecttoc		
\dosectlof		
\dosectlot		
\tableofcontents	or \faketableofcontents	
\listoffigures	or \fakelistoffigures	
\listoftables	or \fakelistoftables	
...		
\section{...}		
\secttoc	if you want one	
\sectlof	if you want one	
\sectlot	if you want one	
...		

### 1.3.3 Placing the mini-tables

`\mtcskip` The `\mtcskip` command may be used to add a vertical skip between two mini-tables. Its height is `\mtcskipamount` (equal to `\bigskipamount` by default). `\mtcskip` eliminates any immediate previous vertical skip, to not accumulate vertical space when a mini-table is empty and skipped by the `checkfiles` option.

`\secttoc` The section-level table of contents will be in the section, after the `\section` command, at the point of the `\secttoc` command. The `\secttoc` command may occur *almost anywhere* inside a section. Of course, it is better to put it at the beginning of the section, or after some short introductory material. You should use the same conventions in all sections. If you want to add the section-level table of contents for a section, you must use the sequence given in Table 1.2.

For each section-level table of contents, an auxiliary file will be created with a name of the form `document.stc<N>`, where `<N>` is the absolute section number. The suffix is `.slf<N>` for section-level lists of figures and is `.slt<N>` for section-level lists of tables. (If under MS-DOS or any operating system with short extensions to filenames, see section 1.9 on page 51 and section 2.5 on page 56).

`\usepackage`  
`\FloatBarrier`



As floats (figures and tables) could drift<sup>7</sup> somewhere outside the printing area of the text of the section, the sectlofs and sectlots can be rather strange. In order to have a better behaviour of these mini-tables, it may be useful to add the `insection` option in the `\usepackage` command:

```
\usepackage[insection]{minitoc}
```

if you want more consistent sectlofs and sectlots. The `insection` option loads the `placeins` package [9] with its `verbose` and `section` options. Sometimes, it might be necessary to use the `\FloatBarrier` command of this package to correctly place the figure or table and have a correct mini-table. The options `above` or `below` options should not be used, because they allow floats to drift above or below a `\FloatBarrier` (or a section limit): the barrier becomes “porous” upwards<sup>8</sup> (↑) or downwards (↓), or both (↕). The `section` option makes a more “watertight” barrier (≡). This is illustrated by the figure 1.1 on the following page.

The `placeins` package, by Donald ARSENEAU, is available on CTAN archives; note that the file `placeins.sty` contains its own documentation, with a copy in `placeins.txt`. You need a version whose date is at least 2005/04/18.



Since version #45, this option also loads the `flafter` package (described in [173] and [201, page 286]) to force a float to appear *after* its reference. The `above` and `below` options of the `placeins` package are no more used, because they allowed the floats to move out of the section. In all cases, it is *strongly* recommended to verify the position of the floats and, if necessary, to look at the messages of the `placeins` package in the `document.log` file. The placement of floats is a very complex problem, so some manual intervention may be necessary, like the use of the `float` package [183] or, better, of the `floatrow` package [170].

If you want to add the partial table of contents for a part, you must use the sequence given in Table 1.3 on page 31. For each partial table of contents, an auxiliary file will be created with a name of the form `document.ptc<N>`, where `<N>` is the absolute part number. The suffix is `.plf<N>` for partial lists of figures and is `.plt<N>` for partial lists of tables. (If under MS-DOS or any operating system with short extensions to filenames, see section 1.9 on page 51 and section 2.5 on page 56).



**Note:** the user is responsible of asking or not asking a mini-table (mini-toc, -lof or -lot) for some chapter. Asking a `minilof` for a chapter without any figure would result in an empty and ugly mini-list of figures (i.e., the title and two horizontal rules). He is also responsible of requiring or not requiring a partial toc (lof or lot) for some part. Asking a `partlof` for a part without any figure would result in an empty and ugly part list of figures (i.e., the title alone on a page). Analogous remarks apply to section-level mini-tables (`secttoc`, `sectlof`, and `sectlot`) and to the part-level mini-tables (`parttoc`, `partlof`, and `partlot`).

But since version #35, empty mini-tables are just ignored and this problem should disappear in normal circumstances. Nevertheless, it is recommended to put no `\minitoc` command

<sup>7</sup> A float is like a ship in harbor. There is a place in the text which is the anchor location. The figure or “ship” can float around to various places relative to the anchor, but always downstream or downwind. A float with bad placement parameters is like a ship that slips its anchor and eventually crashes on the rocks at the end of a chapter.

Donald ARSENEAU

<sup>8</sup> But a float can not drift upwards beyond the top of the current page.

With the section option	
Command	Action
\section	$\times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times$ <i>Forbidden Area</i> $\times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times$
	<i>Allowed Area</i>
	<b>Float inserted here</b>
	<i>Allowed Area</i>
\section	$\times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times$ <i>Forbidden Area</i> $\times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times$
With the above option	
Command	Action
\section	$\uparrow \uparrow$
	<i>Allowed Area</i>
	<i>Allowed Area</i>
	<b>Float inserted here</b>
	<i>Allowed Area</i>
\section	$\times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times$ <i>Forbidden Area</i> $\times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times$
With the below option	
Command	Action
\section	$\times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times$ <i>Forbidden Area</i> $\times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times \times$
	<i>Allowed Area</i>
	<b>Float inserted here</b>
	<i>Allowed Area</i>
\section	$\downarrow \downarrow$
	<i>Allowed Area</i>
With the above and below options	
Command	Action
\section	$\uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow$
	<i>Allowed Area</i>
	<i>Allowed Area</i>
	<b>Float inserted here</b>
	<i>Allowed Area</i>
\section	$\uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow \uparrow \downarrow$
	<i>Allowed Area</i>

Figure 1.1: Float barriers

Table 1.3: Commands for a parttoc

\documentclass[...]{book}		
\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}		
...		
\setlength{\ptcindent}{0pt}	default	
...		
\setcounter{parttocdepth}{2}	default	
\renewcommand{\ptcfont}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}		default
\renewcommand{\ptcCfont}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}		default
\renewcommand{\ptcSfont}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}		default
or:		
\mtcsetdepth{parttoc}{2}		default
\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{*}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}		default
\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{chapter}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}		default
\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{section}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}		default
...		
\begin{document}		
...		
\doparttoc		
\dopartlof		
\dopartlot		
\tableofcontents	or \faketableofcontents	
\listoffigures	or \fakelistoffigures	
\listoftables	or \fakelistoftables	
...		
\part{...}		
\parttoc	if you want one	
\partlof	if you want one	
\partlot	if you want one	
...		

in a chapter without sections and no `\minilof` or `\minilot` command in a chapter without figures or tables. The `checkfiles` (see section 1.3.3 on page 28) package option (default) skips empty mini-tables (with a note in the `document.log` file); the `nocheckfiles` package option restores the old behaviour (empty mini-tables are displayed).

By default, the mini-tables and partial tables of contents contain only references higher and to sections and subsections. The counters `parttocdepth`, `minitocdepth` and `secttocdepth`, similar to `tocdepth`, allow the user to modify this behaviour. Mini or partial lists of figures or tables are not affected by the value of these counters, but if there are depth counters for these lists (`lofdepth` and `lotdepth`), as done by the `subfigure` and `subfig` packages [100, 102] from Steven Douglas COCHRAN, new depth counters are created if necessary, with obvious names like `partlofdepth`, `partlotdepth`, `minilofdepth`, `minilotdepth`, `sectlofdepth`, and `sectlotdepth`.

### 1.3.4 Starred chapters, parts and sections

`\addstarredpart`    **NOTE:** if using `\chapter*` and a  
`\addstarredchapter`  
`\addstarredsection`    `\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}`



command to add something in the table of contents, the numbering of the minitoc auxiliary files would be altered. To avoid that problem, a first method is to say:

```

\addstarredpart{...}
\addstarredchapter{...}
\addstarredsection{...}

```

These commands apply only for the level of a part-, mini- or sect-toc; for lower levels, the usual command is sufficient:

`\addcontentsline`    `\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}`

for example, to add a section-level entry in the global toc and in the minitoc of a starred chapter:

```

\chapter*{Title of chapter}
\addstarredchapter{Title of chapter}
\minitoc
\section*{First section}
\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{First section}
\section*{Second section}
\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{Second section}

```

`\adjustptc`    There is sometimes a problem with mini-tables when you use `\chapter*` (or `\section*`):  
`\adjustmtc`    the minitocs appear in the wrong chapter. You can add a `\adjustmtc` (or `\adjuststc`  
`\adjuststc`    or `\adjustptc`) command at the end of the starred chapter (or section or part) to  
increment the corresponding counter. Do not use commands like `\stepcounter{mtc}` or  
`\addtocounter{mtc}{...}` (which should work, but it is cheating), because the `mtcoff`  
package (see section 1.11 on page 52) knows what to do about `\adjustmtc` (and others),  
but can do nothing about `\stepcounter` or `\addtocounter`, as they are a standard basic  
commands of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X, not minitoc specific commands. Syntax:

```

\adjustptc[n]
\adjustmtc[n]
\adjuststc[n]

```

where  $n$  is the increment (default: 1).



Table 1.4: Adding an entry in the table of contents for a starred part, chapter, or section

Level	With title
part	<code>\mtcaddpart[title]</code>
chapter	<code>\mtcaddchapter[title]</code>
section	<code>\mtcaddsection[title]</code>

`\decrementptc` There are similar commands to *decrement* or *increment* by 1 these counters:  
`\decrementmtc` `\decrementptc`, `\decrementmtc`, `\decrementstc`, `\incrementptc`, `\incrementmtc`,  
`\decrementstc` and `\incrementstc`; the same remarks as above apply. These commands have no argument.  
`\incrementptc`  
`\incrementmtc`  
`\incrementstc`

`\mtcaddpart` A more clever way to solve this problem is to use commands similar to:  
`\mtcaddchapter`  
`\mtcaddsection` `\mtcaddchapter[title]`



This command adds an entry in the table of contents (and adjusts the counter, because it calls `\adjustmtc`). The table 1.4 summarizes these commands, that you put *after* `\chapter*`, etc. If the optional argument is omitted or empty or blank, no entry will be visible in the table of contents nor in the minitocs. If the optional argument is something invisible (like `~`, `\space` or `\quad`), the result will be strange but still logically correct. See also section 2.30 on page 68 for the problems with `\mtcaddpart`.

## 1.4 Typesetting of the mini-tables

The mini-tables are typeset in a verse-like environment, and can be split over pages.

### 1.4.1 Chapter-level mini-tables

`\mtcfont` The mini-table of contents is typeset in the `\mtcfont` font, which is `\small\rmfamily`  
`\mtcSfont` by default. In fact, the font `\mtcfont` is selected at the beginning of a minitoc, minilof  
`\mtcSSfont` or minilot. More selective choices are made with the following fonts. Section entries are  
`\mtcSSSfont` typeset in the `\mtcSfont` font, which is `\small\bfseries` by default. For subsections,  
`\mtcPfont` subsubsections, paragraphs and subparagraphs, the commands `\mtcSSfont`, `\mtcSSSfont`,  
`\mtcSPfont` `\mtcPfont` and `\mtcSPfont` are available (by default, `\small\rmfamily`) to enable the  
`\mlffont` use of various fonts. Mini lists of figures and tables are typeset in the fonts `\mlffont`  
`\mltfont` and `\mltfont`, which are `\small\rmfamily` by default. There are also `\mlfSfont`  
`\mlfSfont` and `\mltSfont` for sub-figures and sub-tables entries. Tables 1.5 on the following page  
`\mltSfont` and 1.6 on page 35 summarize these many commands<sup>9</sup>.

<sup>9</sup> Thanks to Stefan ULRICH, who contributed these tables initially.

Table 1.5: Fonts and titles for the mini-table commands

Command	Font default setting	Title string default setting	Title font default setting
For the <code>\part...</code> commands:			
<code>\parttoc</code>	<code>\ptcfont</code> <code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\rmfamily**</code>	<code>\ptctitle</code> Table of Contents <sup>†</sup>	<code>\ptifont</code> <code>\LARGE\bfseries*</code> <code>\Large\bfseries**</code>
<code>\partlof</code>	<code>\plffont</code> <code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\rmfamily**</code> <code>\plfSfont</code> <code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\rmfamily**</code>	<code>\plftitle</code> List of Figures <sup>†</sup>	<code>\ptifont</code> <code>\LARGE\bfseries*</code> <code>\Large\bfseries**</code>
<code>\partlot</code>	<code>\pltfont</code> <code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\rmfamily**</code> <code>\pltSfont</code> <code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\rmfamily**</code>	<code>\plttitle</code> List of Tables <sup>†</sup>	<code>\ptifont</code> <code>\LARGE\bfseries*</code> <code>\Large\bfseries**</code>
For the <code>\mini...</code> commands:			
<code>\minitoc</code>	<code>\mtcfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\mtctitle</code> Contents <sup>†</sup>	<code>\mtifont</code> <code>\large\bfseries</code>
<code>\minilof</code>	<code>\mlffont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code> <code>\mlfSfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\mlftitle</code> Figures <sup>†</sup>	<code>\mtifont</code> <code>\large\bfseries</code>
<code>\minilot</code>	<code>\mltfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code> <code>\mltSfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\mltttitle</code> Tables <sup>†</sup>	<code>\mtifont</code> <code>\large\bfseries</code>
For the <code>\sect...</code> commands:**			
<code>\secttoc</code>	<code>\stcfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\stctitle</code> Contents <sup>†</sup>	<code>\stifont</code> <code>\Large\bfseries</code>
<code>\sectlof</code>	<code>\slffont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code> <code>\slfSfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\slftitle</code> Figures <sup>†</sup>	<code>\stifont</code> <code>\Large\bfseries</code>
<code>\sectlot</code>	<code>\sltfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code> <code>\sltSfont</code> <code>\small\rmfamily</code>	<code>\slttitle</code> Tables <sup>†</sup>	<code>\stifont</code> <code>\Large\bfseries</code>
*for document classes with <code>\chapter</code> level (e.g., <code>book</code> , <code>report</code> ).			
**for document classes with no <code>\chapter</code> level (e.g., <code>article</code> ).			
<sup>†</sup> default for english; changed by the language definition files or <code>\renewcommand</code> .			
All these fonts use <code>\rmfamily</code> , <code>\upshape</code> , and <code>\mdseries</code> by default.			



Note that the default choice of fonts is certainly not perfect and hence is not definitive. A symptom of this imperfection is the presence of poor alignments in the mini-tables, if bold and non-bold fonts are mixed <sup>10</sup> (the true length of 1em is not the same for the fonts). This can eventually be adjusted by changing some fonts.

<sup>10</sup>This appears, e.g., if you are using the Computer Modern Roman (CMR) fonts [152]. The symptom disappears if you do not use bold CMR fonts or if you use the TX fonts (txfonts package [233]), by example, like in this document. See also section 2.29 on page 67.

Table 1.6: Fonts for the mini-table entries

Level	Font	default setting
For the <code>\parttoc</code> entries:		
Chapter*	<code>\ptcCfont*</code>	<code>\normalsize\bfseries*</code>
Section	<code>\ptcSfont</code>	<code>\normalsize\rmfamily*</code> <code>\small\bfseries**</code>
Subsection	<code>\ptcSSfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\ptcfont</code>)</i>
Subsubsection	<code>\ptcSSSfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\ptcfont</code>)</i>
Paragraph	<code>\ptcPfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\ptcfont</code>)</i>
Subparagraph	<code>\ptcSPfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\ptcfont</code>)</i>
For the <code>\minitoc</code> entries:*		
Section	<code>\mtcSfont</code>	<code>\small\bfseries</code>
Subsection	<code>\mtcSSfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\mtcfont</code>)</i>
Subsubsection	<code>\mtcSSSfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\mtcfont</code>)</i>
Paragraph	<code>\mtcPfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\mtcfont</code>)</i>
Subparagraph	<code>\mtcSPfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\mtcfont</code>)</i>
For the <code>\secttoc</code> entries:**		
Subsection	<code>\stcSSfont</code>	<code>\normalsize\bfseries</code>
Subsubsection	<code>\stcSSSfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\stcfont</code>)</i>
Paragraph	<code>\stcPfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\stcfont</code>)</i>
Subparagraph	<code>\stcSPfont</code>	<i>(like <code>\stcfont</code>)</i>

\*for document classes with `\chapter` level (e.g., book, report).\*\*for document classes with no `\chapter` level (e.g., article).

## 1.4.2 Titles for chapter-level mini-tables

<code>\mtifont</code>	Titles are typeset in the <code>\mtifont</code> ( <code>\large\bfseries</code> by default) font and the text strings
<code>\mtctitle</code>	of the titles are defined by <code>\mtctitle</code> , <code>\mlftitle</code> and <code>\mltttitle</code> , which are the strings
<code>\mlftitle</code>	“Contents”, “Figures” and “Tables” by default. These title commands should be redefined
<code>\mltttitle</code>	by <code>\renewcommand</code> or <code>\mtcsettitle</code> for languages other than english.
<code>\mtcsettitle</code>	
<code>\mtcselectlanguage</code>	The language definition files like <code>french.mld</code> and <code>english.mld</code> (the suffix <code>.mld</code> means “minitoc language definition (file)”) (and many others, see the list in table 1.7 on the next page and section 1.4.12 on page 41) are available. You can easily prepare a similar file for a preferred language (see section 2.26 on page 67). You can change the language of these titles by using the <code>\mtcselectlanguage{language}</code> macro.

Table 1.7: Available languages

1. afrikaan (afrikaans)	29. english <sup>†</sup> (american, australian, british, canadian, newzealand, UKenglish, USenglish)	51. greek- polykatha <sup>c,e</sup>	82. magyar2	110. russian-lh <sup>c,g,h</sup>
2. albanian		52. guarani <sup>h</sup>	83. magyar3	111. russian- lhcyralt <sup>c,g,h</sup>
3. arab (arabic) <sup>c</sup>		53. hangul1 <sup>c,d,g</sup>	84. malayalam-keli <sup>c</sup>	112. russian- lhcyrkoi <sup>c,g,h</sup>
4. arab2 <sup>a,c</sup>		54. hangul2 <sup>c,d,g</sup>	85. malayalam- omega <sup>c,e,g,h</sup>	113. russian- lhcyrwin <sup>c,g,h</sup>
5. arabi <sup>c,j</sup>		55. hangul3 <sup>c,d,g</sup>	86. malayalam- rachana <sup>c</sup>	114. samin
6. armenian <sup>c</sup>	30. english1	56. hangul4 <sup>c,d,g</sup>	87. malayalam- rachana2 <sup>c</sup>	115. scottish
7. bahasai (bahasa, indon, indonesian) <sup>c</sup>	31. english2	57. hangul-u8 <sup>c,e,f,g,h</sup>	88. mongol <sup>c</sup>	116. serbian
8. bahasam (malay, meyalu) <sup>c</sup>	32. esperant (esperanto)	58. hanja1 <sup>c,d,g</sup>	89. mongolb (mongolian) <sup>c,f,h</sup>	117. serbianc <sup>c</sup>
9. bangla <sup>c</sup>	33. estonian	59. hanja2 <sup>c,d,g</sup>	90. ngermanb (ngerman, naustrian)	118. slovak
10. basque	34. ethiopia (ethiopian) <sup>c</sup>	60. hanja-u8 <sup>c,e,f,g,h</sup>		119. slovene
11. bicig (uighur) <sup>c,i</sup>	35. ethiopian2 <sup>c,e,h</sup>	61. hebrew <sup>c,h</sup>	91. ngermanb2	120. spanish (castillan, castillian)
12. bicig2 (uighur2) <sup>c,i</sup>	36. farsi1 <sup>c,f,g</sup>	62. hebrew2 <sup>c,h</sup>	92. norsk	121. spanish2
13. bicig3 (uighur3) <sup>c,i</sup>	37. farsi2 <sup>c,f,g</sup>	63. hindi-modern <sup>c</sup>	93. norsk2	122. spanish3 <sup>e,f</sup>
14. bithe (manju) <sup>c</sup>	38. farsi3 <sup>c,j</sup>	64. icelandic <sup>f</sup>	94. nynorsk	123. spanish4
15. brazil (brazilian)	39. finnish	65. interlingua	95. nynorsk2	124. swedish
16. breton	40. finnish2	66. irish	96. polish	125. swedish2
17. bulgarian <sup>c</sup>	41. french (frenchb, frenchle, frenchpro, francais, acadien, canadien)	67. italian	97. polish2 <sup>c,e</sup>	126. thai <sup>c,d,f,g</sup>
18. bulgarianb <sup>c</sup>		68. italian2	98. polski <sup>c</sup>	127. turkish
19. buryat <sup>c</sup>	42. french1	69. japanese <sup>c,d,g</sup>	99. portuguese (portuges)	128. ukrainian (ukraineb) <sup>b,c</sup>
20. buryat2 <sup>c</sup>	43. french2	70. japanese2 <sup>c,d,g</sup>	100. romanian	129. uppersorbian (usorbian)
21. catalan	44. galician	71. japanese3 <sup>c,d,g</sup>	101. romanian2	130. vietnam (vietnamese) <sup>c,d</sup>
22. chinese1 <sup>c,g</sup>	45. german (austrian)	72. japanese4 <sup>c,d,g</sup>	102. romanian3	131. welsh
23. chinese2 <sup>c,g</sup>	46. germanb	73. japanese5 <sup>c,d,g</sup>	103. russian <sup>b,c</sup>	132. xalx (khalkha) <sup>c</sup>
24. croatian	47. germanb2	74. japanese6 <sup>c,d,g</sup>	104. russianb <sup>b,c</sup>	133. xalx2 <sup>c</sup>
25. czech	48. greek <sup>c</sup>	75. kannada <sup>c</sup>	105. russianc <sup>b,c</sup>	134. xalx3 <sup>c</sup>
26. danish	49. greek-mono <sup>c,e</sup>	76. latin	106. russian2m <sup>c,e</sup>	
27. devanagari (hindi) <sup>c</sup>	50. greek- polydemo <sup>c,e</sup>	77. latin2	107. russian2o <sup>c,e</sup>	
28. dutch		78. latvian (letton) <sup>e</sup>	108. russian-cca <sup>c,g,h</sup>	
		79. lithuanian	109. russian-cca1 <sup>c,g,h</sup>	
		80. lowersorbian (lsorbian)		
		81. magyar (hungarian)		

The languages in parentheses are aliases of a main language and their .mld files will load the .mld file of that main language.

<sup>†</sup> The presence of the english.mld file is mandatory.

<sup>a</sup> The arab(ic) and arab2 languages require the use of the ArabTeX package [164, 165] (by Klaus LAGALLY).

<sup>b</sup> The russian language is not yet supported by the babel system [40, 41], but russianb [171] is supported if you use babel-3.6 or a higher version; russianc is an extra. Look also at other .mld files for russian.

<sup>c</sup> Some languages may require specific fonts.

<sup>d</sup> Requires the CJK package [179, 180].

<sup>e</sup> Requires Lambda (Λ), the version of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X for Omega (Ω).

<sup>f</sup> Requires a 8-bits input encoding.

<sup>g</sup> Uses also a .mlo file.

<sup>h</sup> Requires a specific input encoding.

<sup>i</sup> The bicig language is also known as uighur.

<sup>j</sup> The arabi and farsi3 languages require the use of the Arabi package [145].

### 1.4.3 Part-level mini-tables

`\ptcfont` The partial table of contents is typeset in the `\ptcfont` font, which is defined as `\normalsize\rmfamily` by default. In fact, the font `\ptcfont` is selected at the beginning of a `parttoc`, `partlof` or `partlot`. More selective choices are made with the following fonts.

`\ptcCfont` Chapter entries are typeset in the `\ptcCfont` font, which is `\normalsize\bfseries` by default.

`\ptcSfont` Section entries are typeset in the `\ptcSfont` font, which is `\normalsize\rmfamily` by default. For subsections, subsubsections, paragraphs and subparagraphs, the commands `\ptcSSfont`, `\ptcSSSfont`, `\ptcPfont`, and `\ptcSPfont` are available (by default, `\normalsize\rmfamily`) if you want to use various fonts. Partial lists of figures and tables are typeset in the fonts `\plffont` and `\pltfont`, which are `\normalsize\rmfamily` by default. There are also `\plfSfont` and `\pltSfont` for sub-figures and sub-tables entries.

### 1.4.4 Titles for part-level mini-tables

`\ptifont` Titles are typeset in the `\ptifont` (`\LARGE\bfseries` by default) font and the text strings of the titles are defined by `\ptctitle`, `\plftitle` and `\plttitle`, which are the strings “Table of Contents”, “List of Figures” and “List of Tables” by default. These title commands should be redefined by `\renewcommand` or `\mtcsetttitle` for languages other than english. The language definition files like `french.mld` and `english.mld` (and many others; for a complete list, see table 1.7 on the preceding page) are available. Read also section 1.4.12 on page 41. You can easily prepare a similar file for a preferred language (see section 2.26 on page 67). You can change the language of these titles by using the `\mtcselectlanguage{language}` macro.

### 1.4.5 Section-level mini-tables

`\stcfont` The section-level table of contents is typeset in the `\stcfont` font, which is defined as `\normalsize\rmfamily` by default. In fact, the font `\stcfont` is selected at the beginning of a `secttoc`, `sectlof` or `sectlot`. More selective choices are made with the following fonts.

`\stcSSfont` Subsection entries are typeset in the `\stcSSfont` font, which is `\normalsize\bfseries` by default.

`\stcSSSfont` Subsubsection entries are typeset in the `\stcSSSfont` font, which is `\normalsize\rmfamily` by default. For paragraphs and subparagraphs, the commands `\stcPfont` and `\stcSPfont` are available (by default, `\normalsize\rmfamily`) if you want to use various fonts. Section-level lists of figures and tables are typeset in the fonts `\slffont` and `\sltfont`, which are defined as `\normalsize\rmfamily` by default. There are also `\slfSfont` and `\sltSfont` for sub-figures and sub-tables entries.

### 1.4.6 Titles for section-level mini-tables

`\stifont` Titles are typeset in the `\stifont` (`\normalsize\bfseries` by default) font and the text strings of the titles are defined by `\stctitle`, `\slftitle` and `\slttitle`, which are

`\stctitle`

`\slftitle`

`\slttitle`

`\mtcsetttitle`

`\mtcselectlanguage`

the strings “Contents”, “Figures” and “Tables” by default. These title commands should be redefined by `\renewcommand` or `\mtcsetttitle` for languages other than english. The language definition files like `french.mld` and `english.mld` (and also many others, as listed in table 1.7 on page 36 and explained in section 1.4.12 on page 41) are available. You can easily prepare a similar file for your preferred language (see section 2.26 on page 67). You can change the language of these titles by using the `\mtcselectlanguage{language}` macro.

## 1.4.7 Position of the titles

### 1.4.7.1 For mini-tables at the part level

<code>\doparttoc</code>	By default, titles are on the left. The preparation commands <code>\doparttoc</code> , <code>\dopartlof</code> and
<code>\dopartlof</code>	<code>\dopartlot</code> accept an optional argument to change the default position of the corresponding
<code>\dopartlot</code>	title: [l] for left (default), [c] for center, [r] for right, or [e] (or [n]) for empty (no title).
<code>\parttoc</code>	The change is global for all the document. If you want to change the position of the title for
<code>\partlof</code>	only one parttoc (or partlof or partlot), just use such an optional argument with the command
<code>\partlot</code>	<code>\parttoc</code> (or <code>\partlof</code> or <code>\partlot</code> ).

### 1.4.7.2 For mini-tables at the chapter level

<code>\dominitoc</code>	By default, titles are on the left. The preparation commands <code>\dominitoc</code> , <code>\dominilof</code> and
<code>\dominilof</code>	<code>\dominilot</code> accept an optional argument to change the default position of the corresponding
<code>\dominilot</code>	title: [l] for left (default), [c] for center, [r] for right, or [e] (or [n]) for “empty” (“no”
<code>\minitoc</code>	title). The change is global for all the document. If you want to change the position of the
<code>\minilof</code>	title for only one minitoc (or minilof or minilot), just use such an optional argument with the
<code>\minilot</code>	command <code>\minitoc</code> (or <code>\minilof</code> or <code>\minilot</code> ).

### 1.4.7.3 For mini-tables at the section level

<code>\dosecttoc</code>	By default, titles are on the left. The preparation commands <code>\dosecttoc</code> , <code>\dosectlof</code> and
<code>\dosectlof</code>	<code>\dosectlot</code> accept an optional argument to change the default position of the corresponding
<code>\dosectlot</code>	title: [l] for left (default), [c] for center, [r] for right, or [e] (or [n]) for empty (no title).
<code>\secttoc</code>	The change is global for all the document. If you want to change the position of the title for
<code>\sectlof</code>	only one secttoc (or sectlof or sectlot), just use such an optional argument with the command
<code>\sectlot</code>	<code>\secttoc</code> (or <code>\sectlof</code> or <code>\sectlot</code> ).

#### 1.4.7.4 Summary of the positioning of titles

`\doparttoc` To summarize: by default, all titles are on the left. However, each one of the following preparation commands:

`\dopartlof`

`\dopartlot`

`\dominitoc` `\doparttoc`, `\dopartlof`, `\dopartlot`,

`\dominilof` `\dominitoc`, `\dominilof`, `\dominilot`,

`\dominilot` `\dosecttoc`, `\dosectlof`, `\dosectlot`,

`\dosecttoc` `\mtcprepare`

`\dosectlof`

`\dosectlot` accepts an optional argument to change the positioning of the title: `[l]` for left (default), `[c]` for center, `[r]` for right, `[e]` or `[n]` for empty (no title), for all the corresponding mini-tables (for all mini-tables in the case of `\mtcprepare`).

`\mtcprepare`

`\parttoc` The following insertion commands:

`\partlof`

`\partlot` `\parttoc`, `\partlof`, `\partlot`,

`\minitoc` `\minitoc`, `\minilof`, `\minilot`,

`\minilof` `\secttoc`, `\sectlof`, `\sectlot`

`\minilot`

`\secttoc` accept the same optional arguments, but these options change the positioning only for the title of the current mini-table.

`\sectlof`

`\sectlot`

#### 1.4.8 Line spacing in the mini-tables

`\iftightmtc` With the commands `\tightmtctrue` (or the `tight` package option) and `\tightmtcfalse` (or the `loose` package option, which is the default), the mini-tables will have less (tight) or more (loose) space between contents lines.

`\tightmtctrue`

`\tightmtcfalse`

But with the KOMA-Script classes [157, 207] (`scrartcl`, `scrbook` and `scrreprt`), it may sometimes be necessary to use the following options or commands, because we need to set `\parskip` to zero in place of `\parsep` to tighten the mini-table. The efficiency of the following options depends of the options given to these KOMA-Script classes (`parindent` option, `parskip` option and variants).

`\ifktightmtc` For the KOMA-Script classes, with the commands `\ktightmtctrue` (or the `k-tight` package option) and `\ktightmtcfalse` (or the `k-loose` package option, which is the default), the mini-tables will have less (tight) or more (loose) space between contents lines.

`\ktightmtctrue`

`\ktightmtcfalse`

#### 1.4.9 Simplified commands for fonts

`\mtcsetfont` To simplify the redefinition of the fonts for mini-tables, there are two useful commands:

`\mtcsetttitlefont`

```
\mtcsetfont{mini-table}{sectionning-level}{commands}
\mtcsettitlefont{mini-table}{commands}
```

By example,

```
\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{subsection}%
{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
```

```
\mtcsetfont{minilof}{subfigure}%
{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
```

will redefine `\mtcSSfont` and `\mlfSfont` with the given font commands.

Note that `\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{*}{...}` allows also to redefine `\ptcfont`, etc.

Moreover,

```
\mtcsettitlefont{parttoc}{\Large\rmfamily\itshape\mdseries}
```

will redefine `\ptifont` (for titles in the parttocs, partlofs and partlofs) with the given font commands.

### 1.4.10 Simplified command for mini-table titles

`\mtcsettitle` To simplify the redefinition of the titles for mini-tables, the `\mtcsettitle` command is also available:

```
\mtcsettitle{mini-table}{title string}
```

By example,

```
\mtcsettitle{minitoc}{Description of contents}
```

will redefine `\mtctitle` with the given string. This command checks that you redefine a title for a mini-table type available in your document class.



### 1.4.11 Simplified command for mini-table depths

`\mtcsetdepth` To simplify the redefinition of the depths for mini-tables, the `\mtcsetdepth` command is also available:

```
\mtcsetdepth{mini-table}{depth}
```

By example,

```
\mtcsetdepth{minitoc}{4}
```

will set the counter `minitocdepth` with the given value. This command checks that you set a depth for a mini-table type available in your document class (and that it is possible to change its depth).

### 1.4.12 Languages for the titles

Most of the strings defined in the language definition files (`.mld`) were taken from the superb `babel` package [40, 41] of Johannes L. BRAAMS, some were adapted, others were made available by gentle users or taken from specific packages, like `ArabTeX` [164, 165], `Arabi` [145], `ArmTeX` (armenian) [107], `BangTeX` (bangla) [214], `CervanTeX` (spanish) [32]. `Devanāgarī` for `TeX` [216], `ethiop` [31], `guarani` [34], `malayalam` [3] and `omal` [4], `MonTeX` (mongol) [103, 106], `CJK` (chinese, corean-hangûl/hanja, japanese, thai) [179, 180], `PLaTeX` [211, 260] (polish), `SLaTeX` [193] (swedish), `FarsiTeX` [115] (farsi or iranian), or `vietnam` — `latvian` (letton), `greek-mono`, `greek-polydemo`, `greek-polykatha`, `polish2`, `russian2m`, `russian2o` and `spanish3` need *Lambda* ( $\Lambda$ ), i.e., the *Omega* ( $\Omega$ ) version of `LATeX`, (see [160]), or even found by searching on the Web (`bulgarianb.mld` for upper cyrillic bulgarian, `japanese.mld` for japanese, `serbianc.mld` for cyrillic serbian). Other languages are welcome. See table 1.7 on page 36.



But for some oriental languages<sup>11</sup>, the sources of the titles use some exotic encodings which are difficult to manipulate in a `.dtx` file, hence the `.mld` file is then just a wrapper which loads a special file, nicknamed a `.mlo` file<sup>12</sup>, not generated by the `.dtx` file in the current version of `minitoc` package, but via `filecontents` environments in the `minitoc.ins` file, and playing with the “catcode” of the “delete” character.

<sup>11</sup>Mainly for chinese, farsi, hangûl (korean), hanja (korean), japanese, malayalam-omega, thai and some variants of russian.

<sup>12</sup>The extension `.mlo` means *minitoc language object*.

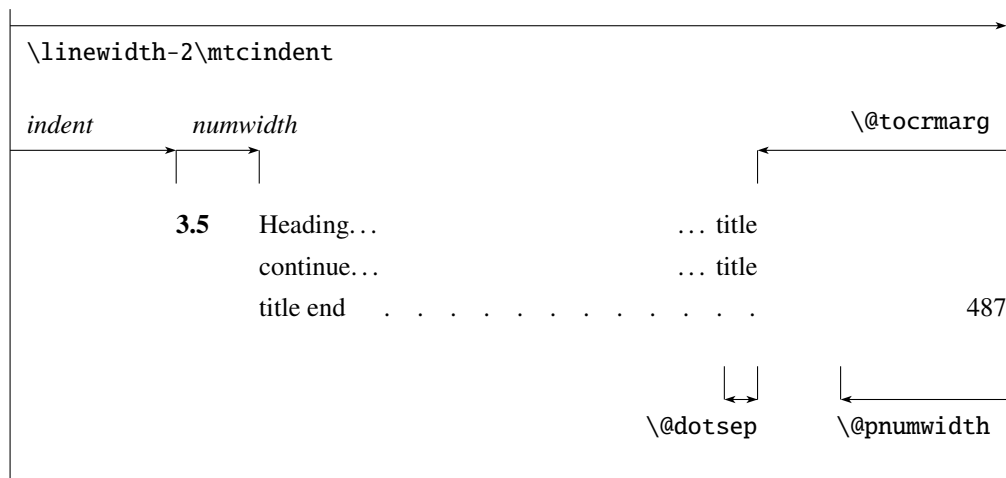


Figure 1.2: Layout of a ToC (LoF, LoT) entry

### 1.4.13 Altering the layout of the mini-tables

The layout of a mini-table is described in the figure 1.2 (this figure is adapted from [265]), which defines some internal commands (these are not *dimensions*, but  $\text{\LaTeX}$  commands, created by  $\text{\newcommand}$ , modifiable via  $\text{\renewcommand}$ ).

- $\text{\@dotsep}$ , which is the separation between the dots in the dotted line. It is a pure number expressing *math units*; 18 math units make 1em (one quad), which is about the width of a “m” in the current font. As the real size of 1em is font dependent, the separation between the dots may vary if you use different fonts for different types of entries in the mini-tables.
- $\text{\@pnumwidth}$ , is the width of the space reserved for the page number. It is a  $\text{\LaTeX}$  command containing the representation of a length (e.g., 1.55em).
- $\text{\@tocrmarg}$ , is the distance (margin) between the right border of the table and the end of the dotted line. It should be larger than  $\text{\@pnumwidth}$ , and can be a rubber length (i.e., contain some glue, like 2.55em plus 1fil); if you specify the “... plus 1fil” portion, the text of the entry will be ragged on right; it is useful if you have long entries, and it can avoid most hyphenations.

$\text{\mtcsetformat}$  As these commands are internal (their names contain the “@” character) and must have a local effect only on specific mini-tables, you should alter them indirectly via the  $\text{\mtcsetformat}$  command:

$\text{\mtcsetformat}\{mini-table\}\{parameter\}\{value\}$

where *mini-table* is one of the `parttoc`, `partlof`, `partlot`, `minitoc`, `minilof`, `minilot`, `secttoc`, `sectlof` or `sectlot` keywords; *parameter* is one of the `dotinterval` (for

Table 1.8: Horizontal rules

				defaults for		
	rules in		no rules in	book	report	article
<code>\ptcrule</code>	parttocs	<code>\noptcrule</code>	parttocs	<b>N</b>	<b>N</b>	<b>Y</b>
<code>\plfrule</code>	partlofs	<code>\noplfrule</code>	partlofs	<b>N</b>	<b>N</b>	<b>Y</b>
<code>\pltrule</code>	partlots	<code>\nopltrule</code>	partlots	<b>N</b>	<b>N</b>	<b>Y</b>
<code>\mtcrule</code>	minitocs	<code>\nomtcrule</code>	minitocs	<b>Y</b>	<b>Y</b>	<b>(NA)</b>
<code>\mlfrule</code>	minilofs	<code>\nomlfrule</code>	minilofs	<b>Y</b>	<b>Y</b>	<b>(NA)</b>
<code>\mltrule</code>	minilots	<code>\nomltrule</code>	minilots	<b>Y</b>	<b>Y</b>	<b>(NA)</b>
<code>\stcrule</code>	secttocs	<code>\nostcrule</code>	secttocs	<b>(NA)</b>	<b>(NA)</b>	<b>Y</b>
<code>\slfrule</code>	sectlofs	<code>\noslfrule</code>	sectlofs	<b>(NA)</b>	<b>(NA)</b>	<b>Y</b>
<code>\sltrule</code>	sectlots	<code>\nosltrule</code>	sectlots	<b>(NA)</b>	<b>(NA)</b>	<b>Y</b>

(NA) = not available.

Table 1.9: Page numbers

Type	Page numbers (Default)	No page numbers
parttoc	<code>\ptcpagenumbers</code>	<code>\noptcpagenumbers</code>
minitoc	<code>\mtcpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nomtcpagenumbers</code>
secttoc	<code>\stcpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nostcpagenumbers</code>
partlof	<code>\plfpagenumbers</code>	<code>\noplfpagenumbers</code>
minilof	<code>\mlfpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nomlfpagenumbers</code>
sectlof	<code>\slfpagenumbers</code>	<code>\noslfpagenumbers</code>
partlot	<code>\pltpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nopltpagenumbers</code>
minilot	<code>\mltpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nomltpagenumbers</code>
sectlot	<code>\sltpagenumbers</code>	<code>\nosltpagenumbers</code>

`\@dotsep`), `pagenumwidth` (for `\@pnumwidth`), or `tocrightmargin` (for `\@tocrmarg`) keywords; so:

```
\mtcsetformat{partlof}{tocrightmargin}{2.55em plus 1fil}
```

will set the right margin to 2.55em plus 1fil in the lists of tables at the part level. The elasticity (plus 1fil) is useful if the table captions are long.

Note that the `tocrightmargin` (for `\@tocrmarg`) parameter should obviously be greater than the `pagenumwidth` parameter (this appears in the figure 1.2 on the preceding page).

If the `dotinterval` parameter (for `\@dotsep`) is large enough (try 450, then increase or decrease), the dots of leaders will be so much spread out that they will disappear.

## 1.5 Special Features

### 1.5.1 Horizontal Rules

`\mtcsetrules` By default, most of mini-tables have horizontal rules after their titles and at their ends. The exception is the “parttoc” in a book- or report-like document (i.e., when `\chapter` is defined). To activate or deactivate these rules, the commands of the table 1.8 on the page before are available. But you can also use the following command, which is simpler:

```
\mtcsetrules{mini-table|*}{on|off}
```

where *mini-table* is one of the `parttoc`, `partlof`, `partlot`, `minitoc`, `minilof`, `minilot`, `secttoc`, `sectlof`, or `sectlot` keywords; if the first argument is a star (\*), all mini-tables are affected; the keywords `on` and `off` have the following synonyms<sup>13</sup>:

- `on`, `ON`, `yes`, `YES`, `y`, `Y`, `true`, `TRUE`, `t`, `T`, `vrai`, `VRAI`, `v`, `V`, `oui`, `OUI`, `o`, `O`, `+`, and `1`;
- `off`, `OFF`, `no`, `NO`, `n`, `N`, `false`, `FALSE`, `faux`, `FAUX`, `f`, `F`, `non`, `NON`, `-`, and `0`.

### 1.5.2 Page Numbers, Leaders

`\mtcsetpagenumbers` By default, the page numbers are listed in each `minitoc`, `minilof`, etc. Some authors want only the section titles (with the section numbers), but without page numbers. Hence the obvious declarations of table 1.9 on the preceding page are available. But you can also use the following command:

```
\mtcsetpagenumbers{mini-table|*}{on|off}
```

where *mini-table* is one of the `parttoc`, `partlof`, `partlot`, `minitoc`, `minilof`, `minilot`, `secttoc`, `sectlof`, or `sectlot` keywords; the keywords `on` and `off` have the following synonyms<sup>13</sup>:

- `on`, `ON`, `yes`, `YES`, `y`, `Y`, `true`, `TRUE`, `t`, `T`, `vrai`, `VRAI`, `v`, `V`, `oui`, `OUI`, `o`, `O`, `+`, and `1`;
- `off`, `OFF`, `no`, `NO`, `n`, `N`, `false`, `FALSE`, `faux`, `FAUX`, `f`, `F`, `non`, `NON`, `-`, and `0`.

If the first argument is a star (\*), all mini-tables are affected.

In the mini-tables, they are leaders of dots between the section titles and the page numbers. The `undotted` package option removes these dots. The `dotted` package option is the default. See also section 1.4.13 on page 42.

---

<sup>13</sup> `O` and `o` are the letter `O`, `0` is the zero digit.

Table 1.10: Features for mini-tables

Type	Command	Default
parttoc	<code>\beforeparttoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>
parttoc	<code>\afterparttoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>
parttoc	<code>\thispageparttocstyle</code>	<code>\thispagestyle{empty}</code>
partlof	<code>\beforepartlof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>
partlof	<code>\afterpartlof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>
partlof	<code>\thispagepartlofstyle</code>	<code>\thispagestyle{empty}</code>
partlot	<code>\beforepartlot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>
partlot	<code>\afterpartlot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>
partlot	<code>\thispagepartlotstyle</code>	<code>\thispagestyle{empty}</code>
minitoc	<code>\beforeminitoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>
minitoc	<code>\afterminitoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>
minitoc	<code>\thispageminitocstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>
minilof	<code>\beforeminilof</code>	<code>\empty</code>
minilof	<code>\afterminilof</code>	<code>\empty</code>
minilof	<code>\thispageminilofstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>
minilot	<code>\beforeminilot</code>	<code>\empty</code>
minilot	<code>\afterminilot</code>	<code>\empty</code>
minilot	<code>\thispageminilotstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>
secttoc	<code>\beforesecttoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>
secttoc	<code>\aftersecttoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>
secttoc	<code>\thispagesecttocstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>
sectlof	<code>\beforesectlof</code>	<code>\empty</code>
sectlof	<code>\aftersectlof</code>	<code>\empty</code>
sectlof	<code>\thispagesectlofstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>
sectlot	<code>\beforesectlot</code>	<code>\empty</code>
sectlot	<code>\aftersectlot</code>	<code>\empty</code>
sectlot	<code>\thispagesectlotstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>
<code>\mtcsetfeature{mini-table}{before after pagestyle}{command}</code> Modifies the features for a mini-table.		

### 1.5.3 Features for parttocs and other mini-tables

By default, a parttoc (or a partlof or a partlot), in a book- or report-class document, is preceded and followed by a `\cleardoublepage` (which acts like `\clearpage` in a one-side document), and has a page style of `empty`. Since version #32, you can modify this behaviour by redefining the commands of table 1.10, whose meaning is obvious. A feature defined as `\empty` does nothing.

`\mtcsetfeature` The command:

```
\mtcsetfeature{mini-table}{keyword}{commands}
```

allows you to redefine any of these commands. *mini-table* is one of the mini-table names: *parttoc... sectlot*. *keyword* is one of the followings: *before*, *after* or *pagestyle*. *commands* is either a sequence of commands like `\clearpage`, `\cleardoublepage`, `\thispagestyle{...}`, etc., either `\empty` (does nothing).

### 1.5.3.1 Remark about page styles<sup>14</sup>



The default commands for part-level mini-tables page styles are defined as being simply a standard `\thispagestyle{empty}`, because in document classes defining the `\chapter` command, the part-level mini-tables are on their own pages. If the document is printed recto-verso, the first page is recto. Usually, these pages are not numbered and have no header and no footer. This behaviour comes from the default definitions of the commands of table 1.10 on the page before. If you want an other behaviour, you can change these definitions. Note that, by default, only the *first* page of these mini-tables are in the *empty* page style. You can set the style of this first page by using `\thispagestyle` and set the style of the following pages by using `\pagestyle`, but you must not forget to reset the normal style after the mini-table. Look at this short example<sup>15</sup>:

```
\mtcsetfeature{parttoc}{before}%
{\cleardoublepage}
\mtcsetfeature{parttoc}{thispagestyle}%
{\thispagestyle{empty}\pagestyle{myheadings}}
\mtcsetfeature{parttoc}{after}%
{\cleardoublepage\pagestyle{headings}}
```

where we add a `\cleardoublepage` before each *parttoc*, then we set the *empty* page style for the first page of the *parttocs*, the *myheadings* page style for the following pages of the *parttocs*, and set *headings* page style for the pages after the mini-table, after a `\cleardoublepage`.

## 1.5.4 The “Chapter 0” Problem (solved)

Some documents do not begin with chapter number one, but with chapter number zero (or even a weirder number).

<sup>14</sup>This remark is taken and adapted from a draft of the second edition of the JMPL [20], by Benjamin BAYART, where he comments the *minitoc* package.

<sup>15</sup>This example shows that the third argument can be a *sequence* of commands: we set the style of the current page and the style of the following pages.

**1.5.4.1 Before version #23 (1994/11/08)**

`\firstpartis` To make the minitoc package work with such documents, you must insert the command:  
`\firstchapteris`  
`\firstsectionis` `\firstchapteris{⟨N⟩}`

before the `\dominitoc` and analogous commands.  $\langle N \rangle$  is the number of the first chapter. This command *does not* modify the numbering of chapters, you must use a

`\addtocounter{chapter}{-1}`

command to get a first chapter numbered 0. The `\firstpartis` and `\firstsectionis` commands are similar for parts and sections with a non standard numbering.

**1.5.4.2 Since version #23 (1994/11/08)**

These commands are now obsolete, as this problem has been solved (via the “absolute” numbering of the mini-table auxiliary files). Thus now they just produce harmless warnings.

**1.5.5 Special Entries for TOC, LOF, LOT, Bibliography and Index**

If you want to add entries in the Table of Contents for objects like the Table of Contents itself, the List of Figures, the List of Tables, the Bibliography or the Index, you should use the `tocbibind` package [268] by Peter R. WILSON (this package is available from the CTAN archives).

`\dominitoc` But these entries are considered as chapters (or sections in an article class document) when the `.toc` file is scanned to prepare the minitocs (the `\dominitoc` phase).

Note that the same problems appear if you use one of the `scrbook`, `scrreprt` or `scrartcl` KOMA-Script classes [157, 207] with some options (`liststotoc`, `liststotocnumbered`, `bibtotoc`, `bibtotocnumbered`, and `idxTOTOC`). The solutions are the same ones.

`\mtcaddchapter` So you must add an `\mtcaddchapter` command, *without argument*, after each of the involved  
`\tableofcontents` commands `\tableofcontents`, `\listoffigures`, and `\listoftables`.  
`\listoffigures`  
`\listoftables`

`\adjustmtc` For the bibliography, you should add a `\adjustmtc` command after the `\bibliography` command.

`\printindex` For the glossary, it is a bit more complicated, you should add the following commands just after the `\printglossary` command:

```
\addcontentsline
\mtcaddchapter
\mtcfixglossary      \addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{}
                     \addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{}
                     \mtcaddchapter
```

But this can be done by:

```
\mtcfixglossary[chapter|section|part]
```

where the optional argument is the level for the glossary entry in the TOC. By default, if `\chapter` is defined, the `chapter` level is used, else the `section` level. If neither `\chapter` or `\section` are defined, the `part` level will be used if `\part` is defined; else an error is reported. It is *recommended* that you check the result and, if necessary, you adjust the optional argument.



`\printindex` For the index, it is like for the glossary, you should add the following commands just after the `\printindex` command:

```
\addcontentsline
\mtcaddchapter
\mtcfixindex      \addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{}
                  \addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{}
                  \mtcaddchapter
```

But this can be done by:

```
\mtcfixindex[chapter|section|part]
```

where the optional argument is the level for the index entry in the TOC. By default, if `\chapter` is defined, the `chapter` level is used, else the `section` level. If neither `\chapter` or `\section` are defined, the `part` level will be used if `\part` is defined; else an error is reported. It is *recommended* that you check the result and, if necessary, you adjust the optional argument.



Of course, in documents where the TOC, LOF, LOT, bibliography and/or glossary (or index) are processed as starred sections, you must modify these additions to use section level commands.



And proceed *with extreme care*, tracking in the `document.log` file the insertion of `.mtc(N)` files (and siblings). They are some examples in the `mtc-add.tex` (see section 4.4 on page 92) and `mtc-ads.tex` (see section 4.5 on page 97) files distributed with minitoc. The `mtc-ads.tex` example shows how much that problem is difficult.



## 1.6 The notoccite option

`\cite` This option loads the notoccite package [8] (by Donald ARSENEAU). It avoids problems with `\cite` commands in sectioning commands or captions: if you then run  $\TeX$  using the `unsrt` (unsorted) style, or a similar style, these citations get numbered starting from the page in the table of contents where is the parasite citation, not the number they should have in the main text. The notoccite package prevents this. As minitoc prints TOCs, it is subject to the same problem. See also <http://www.tex.ac.uk/cgi-bin/texfaq2html?label=bibtocorder>.

## 1.7 The listfiles and nolistfiles options

The `listfiles` package option creates a list of the minitoc auxiliary files into the file `document.maf`<sup>16</sup>. This feature can help you to remove these auxiliary files which are no more necessary after the  $\TeX$  run. Under Unix or Linux, you can use something like:

```
cat document.maf | \tool{xargs} -i -t \rm {}
```

## 1.8 The hints option

This package option detects some actions and the loading of some packages and classes known as interacting with minitoc, and also some frequent misuses and errors. This list of interacting packages and classes is, of course, not closed. If a known package is loaded, this option writes some hints in the `document.log` file and emits a warning. The hints written in the `document.log` file may suggest you to consult the present document or the `minitoc.bug` file.



*Your advice about this option will be welcome.* This option is activated by default, but you can inhibit it via the `nohints` option. The following (potential) problems are currently detected:

- `\part` • Alteration of some of the following commands<sup>17</sup>: `\part`, `\@part`, `\@spart`, `\chapter`, `\@chapter`, `\@schapter`, `\section`, `\@sect`, and `\@ssect`. Note that the `hyperref` package alters these commands at `\begin{document}`, hence this problem might be reported if you use this package, but these alterations seem harmless. Note that the `hyperref` must be loaded *before* minitoc.
- `\@chapter` • Presence of the following packages or classes, which need some precautions: `amsbook` (class), `memoir` (class), `appendix`, `placeins` (beware to its options and its release date (2005/04/18 at least)), `scrbook` (class), `scrcrpt` (class), `scrartcl` (class), `tocbibind`, and `tocloft`.
- `\schapter`
- `\@schapter`
- `\section`
- `\@sect`
- `\@ssect`

<sup>16</sup>This package option is now (since version #48) the default (list created).

<sup>17</sup>The commands containing the “@” character in their names are internal commands of  $\TeX$ , of a package or of a class; they are sometimes altered by another packages; reconsider then the loading order of the packages.

- Presence of the following packages or classes, which, unfortunately, are incompatible with the minitoc package: `amsart` (class), `amsproc` (class), `alphanum`, `jura` (class), `titlesec`, and `titletoc`<sup>18</sup>.
- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <code>\parttoc</code><br><code>\doparttoc</code><br><code>\sectlot</code><br><code>\dosectlot</code> | • Usage of <code>\parttoc</code> without calling <code>\doparttoc</code> , ... , usage of <code>\sectlot</code> without calling <code>\dosectlot</code> ; or the reverse.   |
| <code>\tableofcontents</code><br><code>\listoftables</code>  | • Usage of <code>\parttoc</code> without calling <code>\[fake]tableofcontents</code> , ... , of <code>\sectlot</code> without calling <code>\[fake]listoftables</code> .  |
| <code>\sectlof</code><br><code>\sectlot</code>   | • Usage of <code>\sectlof</code> and/or <code>\sectlot</code> without using the <code>insection</code> package option of <code>minitoc</code> (or the <code>placeins</code> package without its <code>section</code> option). |
- If you are using short extensions (because of your operating system or the `shorttext` package option, see section 1.9 on the next page) and go beyond the limit of 99 parts, chapters or sections, the `hints` package option displays a warning.
- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <code>\mtcaddchapter</code><br><code>\mtcaddsection</code> | • If the abstract package [266] (by Peter R. WILSON), is used with its <code>addtotoc</code> option, a “Abstract” entry is added to the table of contents, as a starred chapter if the document class defines <code>\chapter</code> , else as a starred section. This is detected and you should add a <code>\mtcaddchapter[]</code> or a <code>\mtcaddsection[]</code> command after your abstract environment. |
|--|--|
- If the `sectsty` package [194] (by Rowland McDONNELL) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. The interaction has been pointed out by Bil KLEB.
  - If the `varsects` package [244] (by Daniel TAUPIN<sup>†</sup>) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package.
  - If the `fnycchap` package [182] (by Ulf A. LINDGREN) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package.
  - If the `hangcaption` package [148] (by David M. JONES) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package.
  - If the `quotchap` package [245] (by Karsten TINNEFELD) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package.
  - If the `romannum` package [274] (by Peter R. WILSON) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package.
  - If the `sfheaders` package [184] (by Maurizio LORETI) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package.
  - If the `alnumsec` package [162] (by Frank KÜSTER) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package.
  - If the `captcont` package [101] (by Steven Douglas COCHRAN) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package.

<sup>18</sup>The `titlesec` package redefines the sectioning commands in a way completely alien to the standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X way; hence `minitoc` and `titlesec-titletoc` are fundamentally incompatible, and it is very sad.

Table 1.11: Extensions of the auxiliary files

mini-table	long extensions (UNIX, etc.)	short extensions (MS-DOS, etc.)
parttoc	.ptc $\langle N \rangle$	.P $\langle N \rangle$
partlof	.plf $\langle N \rangle$	.G $\langle N \rangle$
partlot	.plt $\langle N \rangle$	.U $\langle N \rangle$
minitoc	.mtc $\langle N \rangle$	.M $\langle N \rangle$
minilof	.mlf $\langle N \rangle$	.F $\langle N \rangle$
minilot	.mlt $\langle N \rangle$	.T $\langle N \rangle$
secttoc	.stc $\langle N \rangle$	.S $\langle N \rangle$
sectlof	.slf $\langle N \rangle$	.H $\langle N \rangle$
sectlot	.slt $\langle N \rangle$	.V $\langle N \rangle$

- If one of the caption [240], caption2<sup>19</sup> [239], (both written by Axel SOMMERFELDT), ccaption [270] (written by Peter R. WILSON), or mcaption [141] (written by Stephan HENNIG), packages is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package.
- If you try to insert empty mini-tables, the hints option gives a global warning (except if you used also the nocheckfiles option, see section 1.3.3 on page 28).

`\firstpartis` • If you use one of the obsolete commands (`\firstpartis`, `\firstchapteris`, or `\firstsectionis`), a warning is issued for each use, of course, but also a global hint as reminder.

- If you invoke a same preparation command more than once, an informative hint is issued for each spurious invocation.

## 1.9 Usage with MS-DOS



Under MS-DOS (and other PC oriented old operating systems), the filename extensions are limited to 3 characters. The minitoc package determines dynamically the type of extensions available and will use it. All other modifications will be done automatically. The .mtc $\langle N \rangle$  extensions will become .M $\langle N \rangle$ , where  $\langle N \rangle$  is the absolute chapter number. The extensions .mlf $\langle N \rangle$  and .mlt $\langle N \rangle$  become .F $\langle N \rangle$  and .T $\langle N \rangle$ . The .ptc $\langle N \rangle$  extensions become .P $\langle N \rangle$ , where  $\langle N \rangle$  is the absolute part number. The extensions .plf $\langle N \rangle$  and .plt $\langle N \rangle$  become .G $\langle N \rangle$  and .U $\langle N \rangle$ . The .stc $\langle N \rangle$  extensions become .S $\langle N \rangle$ , where  $\langle N \rangle$  is the absolute section number. The extensions .slf $\langle N \rangle$  and .slt $\langle N \rangle$  become .H $\langle N \rangle$  and .V $\langle N \rangle$ . All these extensions are listed in table 1.11. Of course, this implies a limit of 99 chapters in a document, but do you really need so many chapters (or sections in an article)? The limit of 99 parts does not seem too serious for most documents, but for sections, it could be tragical. The hints option (section 1.8 on page 49) will report such situations. See also section 2.5 on page 56.

<sup>19</sup>This package is obsolete; now use the caption package.

## 1.10 Why several L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X runs are required?

The mini-tables, at part, chapter and section levels, are using some space on the first pages on each chapter, part or section, thus the page numbers are altered. After the first L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X run, the mini-tables and lists, partial tables and lists and section-level tables and lists will be empty (in fact skipped since version #35); after the second run, they appear (if not empty), but because they modify the page numbering, page numbers are wrong; after the third L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X run, the mini, part- and section-level tables and lists should be correct (see figure 2.1 on page 55).

## 1.11 The mtcoff package

If a document has been prepared with the minitoc package, it contains many minitoc specific commands, most of them being `\dominitoc`, `\faketableofcontents`, and `\minitoc` commands (and their equivalents for lists of figures and tables). If you want to typeset this document without any mini-table, you have just to replace the minitoc package by the mtcoff package (without option), and all these commands will be ignored, eventually writing warning messages in the *document.log* file. At least two L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X runs will be necessary to get a correct page numbering and cross references. It also sanitizes the *.aux*, *.toc*, *.lof*, and *.lot* files from minitoc specific commands which are now spurious.

## Chapter 2

# Frequently Asked Questions

### Contents

2.0	Introduction . . . . .	54
2.1	Avoiding a page break near the rules before and after a mini-table . . . . .	54
2.2	Implementing others layouts for a mini-table . . . . .	55
2.3	Two consecutive backslashes in a contents line make an error . . . . .	55
2.4	Reordering chapters makes havoc . . . . .	55
2.5	Extensions for the names of auxiliary files . . . . .	56
2.6	Playing with the chapter number . . . . .	56
2.7	Supported document classes . . . . .	56
2.8	Compatibility with L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X versions . . . . .	56
2.9	Other mini-tables . . . . .	57
2.10	Why so many auxiliary files? . . . . .	57
2.11	Mini-tables at levels other than chapter . . . . .	58
2.12	Incompatibility with L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X2.09 . . . . .	58
2.13	Documents resetting the chapter number at each part . . . . .	59
2.14	The mini-tables have too much spaced lines . . . . .	59
2.15	The secttocs are wrong . . . . .	59
2.16	Removing the lines of dots . . . . .	59
2.17	Using the hyperref package with minitoc . . . . .	59
2.18	Problem while upgrading minitoc . . . . .	60
2.19	A local table of contents for the set of appendices . . . . .	60
2.20	Use with the appendix package . . . . .	60
2.21	Use with the tocloft package . . . . .	61
2.22	Use with the memoir class . . . . .	62
2.23	There are too many commands for fonts, titles, and depths . . . . .	63
2.24	Compatibility with the $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ document classes . . . . .	63
2.25	Hiding some entries from the main table of contents . . . . .	63
2.26	Defining your own .mld file . . . . .	67
2.27	Use with the abstract package . . . . .	67
2.28	Use with the sectsty package . . . . .	67
2.29	Strange alignment in the minitocs . . . . .	67
2.30	Useful precautions with starred sectionning commands . . . . .	68
2.31	Use with packages for captions . . . . .	69
2.32	Bad interaction minitoc/hyperref/memoir . . . . .	69

2.33	Use with the <code>varsects</code> package	69
2.34	Initial font settings	69
2.35	Use with the KOMA-Script classes	71
2.36	Use with the <code>jura</code> class or the <code>alphanum</code> package	71
2.37	The <code>.mld</code> files and the <code>babel</code> package	72
2.38	Use with the <code>fncychap</code> package	72
2.39	Use with the <code>quotchap</code> package	72
2.40	Use with the <code>romannum</code> package	72
2.41	Use with the <code>sfheaders</code> package	72
2.42	Use with the <code>alnumsec</code> package	73
2.43	Use with the <code>captcont</code> package	73
2.44	Vertical space (gap) before or after <code>parttocs</code> , <code>partlofs</code> , and <code>partlots</code> titles	73
2.45	Vertical spacing before the bottom rule of a <code>minitable</code>	74
2.46	Another interaction between the <code>tocloft</code> and <code>minitoc</code> packages	75
2.47	Use with the <code>hangcaption</code> package	76

## Figures

2.1	Three compilations for <code>minitoc</code>	55
-----	---	----

## Tables

2.1	Kernings before <code>minitable</code> bottom rules	74
-----	---	----

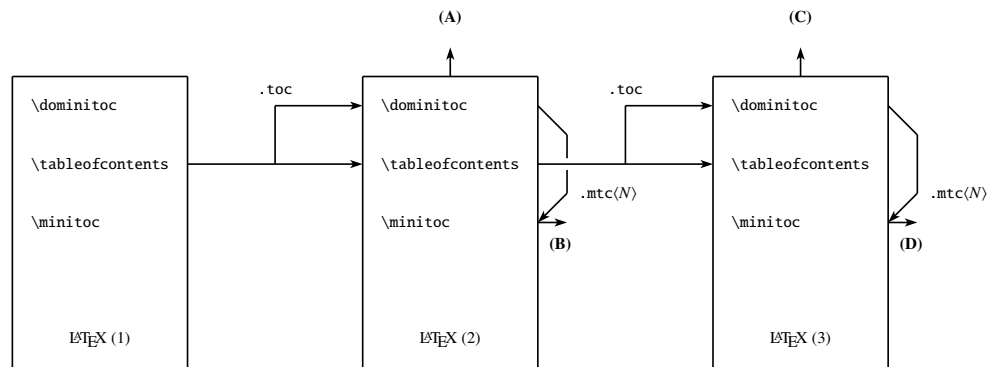
## 2.0 Introduction

Here is a list of problems and frequently asked questions about the `minitoc.sty` package. If the version has a number less than 52, please upgrade to version #52. This list is also given in the `minitoc.bug` file, in pure text form. The numbering of this list is done by date of the first occurrence of the question.

If a problem arises, it is often wise to: a) use the `hints` option (see section 1.8 on page 49), which is activated by default, and b) read the `document.log` file, which may contain pertinent messages. If you do not find a solution, ask a question on an adequate news group, like `fr.comp.text.tex` (in french) or `comp.text.tex` (in english) preferably, groups which I try to follow, or send me a mail in last resort (please join a minimal but complete example reproducing the problem).

### 2.1 Avoiding a page break near the rules before and after a mini-table

`\enlargethispage` This problem seemed solved since version #8, but version #12 added better fixes. You may have to make some final tuning with `\enlargethispage`. See the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X manual [167]. The `needspace` package [264] may also be useful.



- (A) `\tableofcontents` produces a table of contents, which is likely inaccurate.  
 (B) `\minitoc` produces minitocs, which are likely inaccurate.  
 (C) `\tableofcontents` produces a table of contents, which is accurate.  
 (D) `\minitoc` produces minitocs, which are accurate.

Figure 2.1: Three compilations for minitoc

## 2.2 Implementing others layouts for a mini-table

Suggestions are welcome, but look at the section 1.4.13 on page 42.

## 2.3 Two consecutive backslashes in a contents line make an error

Use `\protect\linebreak`.

## 2.4 Reordering chapters makes havoc

*If you reorder chapters, havoc follows. . . mini-tables going in wrong chapters.*

The best way seems to make one run with the `mtcoff` package replacing the `minitoc` package, then restore the `minitoc` package and re-execute  $\text{\LaTeX}$  at least three times (yes, it is time consuming...). See figure 2.1. Running with the `mtcoff` package ensures that the standard auxiliary files are cleared from “spurious” commands introduced by `minitoc`. A more radical solution is to delete the `.aux`, `.toc`, `.lof` and `.lot` files relative to the document, then re-execute  $\text{\LaTeX}$  at least three times.

## 2.5 Extensions for the names of auxiliary files

*This package creates auxiliary files with extensions like `.mtc(N)`. Some operating systems allow only 3 characters extensions. What to do?*

No modification is needed: all became automatic since version #28! If you insist to use 3 characters extensions, even on operating systems allowing more, just use the package option `shorttext`. Then you will get first the autoconfiguration messages, then a message saying that you will use short extensions. But then be careful to not have more than 99 mini-tables of the same kind (even empty)!

## 2.6 Playing with the chapter number



*Do not cheat* with the “chapter” counter, i.e., do not write ugly things like

```
\setcounter{chapter}{6}
```

The mechanism would break. It is better to add `\chapter` commands, to create empty (but numbered in a legal way) chapters. Since version #10, the `minitoc` package works with appendices. Version #19 allows to begin with a chapter other than number 1. And look at “Special Entries for TOC, LOF, LOT, Bibliography and Index”, section 1.5.5 on page 47.

The same remark applies to the `part` and `section` counters.

## 2.7 Supported document classes

The `minitoc` package is restricted to document classes which define chapters in the standard way, like “book” and “report”, or sections in the standard way, like “article”. There are “part-tocs” if the document class defines the `\part` command. Note that classes like “letter”, which have not the classical sectioning structure, cannot be supported. Classes using sectioning commands with other names are not supported<sup>1</sup>. See also section 2.24 on page 63.

## 2.8 Compatibility with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X versions

Some users have failed to make `minitoc` to work. They got a message like:

<sup>1</sup> This would be very difficult: any user can create new sectioning commands (often with the help from some packages) with standard or new names; this is only limited by the imagination. The `minitoc` package relies on the names of the standard sectioning commands and on the syntax of these commands.



```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0021>
Undefined command ... \@inputcheck ...
Your version of latex.tex is obsolete. Trying to continue...
```

or:

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0022>
Undefined command ... \reset@font ...
Your version of latex.tex is very obsolete.
Trying to continue... crossing fingers.
```

The `\reset@font` command has been added to `latex.tex` on September 29th, 1991 and the `\@inputcheck` command on March 18th, 1992 and this version of `latex.tex` has been released on March 25th, 1992. If you get this message, you have an old version of `latex.tex`. Get a recent one from the archives (or a recent distribution) and regenerate a `latex.fmt` format via `initex` (or your configuration tool).

## 2.9 Other mini-tables

Some demanding users want to have `minilof`, `minilot` and `minibbl`. First, “`minibbl`” is another problem, strongly related to the  $\text{\LaTeX}$ ’s dealing with `.aux` files. Look at the `chapterbib` [12], `bibunits` [130], `multibib` [131], `bibtopic` [16], and `splitbib` [191] packages. Version #13 has implemented basic `minilofs` and `minilots`. `Minibbls` are not the aim of this package<sup>2</sup>.

## 2.10 Why so many auxiliary files?

This package creates a lot of auxiliary files and some users have argued that it is too many. A deep redesign would be necessary to avoid that. Using only one big auxiliary file (or one for all `minitocs`, one for all `minilofs`, ...) would make the reading of such file very slow, as it would be read for each `\miniXXX` macro! Moreover, this would make the `checkfiles` (see section 1.3.3 on page 28) package option impractical to implement. Note that the many files `*.mtc*`, etc., may be deleted after the  $\text{\LaTeX}$  run. They are rebuilt by the preparation commands (like `\dominitoc` and `siblings`). But, since version #35, `minitoc` is able to detect and skip empty `*.mtc*` files (and siblings) to avoid ugly titles with just two thin rules. It would not be easy to do with one big auxiliary file. Since version #44, the `listfiles` package option is available to create a list of these auxiliary files; see section 1.7 on page 49.

---

<sup>2</sup> See <http://www.tex.ac.uk/cgi-bin/textfaq2html?label=multibib>

These files contain the mini-tables extracted from the `.toc`, `.lof`, and `.lot` files. They are no more useful after the  $\text{\LaTeX}$  run. If you run  $\text{\LaTeX}$  via a script or a “makefile”, it may be useful to add to it a cleaning feature (which should be optional, to allow debugging). The table 1.11 on page 51 gives the list of the extensions for these files (note that a `document.mtc` auxiliary file is also created as a scratch file).

As an example, you can look at the rubber tool [23] (written in Python) provided by Emmanuel BEFFARA:

<http://rubber.sourceforge.net/>  
<http://www.pps.jussieu.fr/~beffara/soft/rubber/>

## 2.11 Mini-tables at levels other than chapter

Here also, some redesign was needed. From version #15, there are parttocs, partlofs and partlots for the part level in book|report-like and article-like documents, secttocs, sectlofs and sectlots for the section level in article-like documents. Note that you can not have minitocs features at chapter and section level in the same document, because doing so would make an unreadable monster. The user must choose the main class of the document according to the size of it (e.g., do not write an article of more than 100 sections: this is a report, or even a book!).

	part	chapter	section
book	*	*	
report	*	*	
article	*		*

## 2.12 Incompatibility with $\text{\LaTeX}2.09$

`\protect`    The more recent version of  $\text{\LaTeX}2_{\epsilon}$  adds `\protect` before `\contentsline` in the `.toc`,  
`\contentsline`    `.lof` and `.lot` files. The version #17 of minitoc attempts to be compatible with  $\text{\LaTeX}2_{\epsilon}$  and  $\text{\LaTeX}2.09$ . This will be the *last* version usable with  $\text{\LaTeX}2.09$ . Versions #18 and later are  $\text{\LaTeX}2_{\epsilon}$  specific, and no more compatible with  $\text{\LaTeX}2.09$ , which is completely obsolete.

## 2.13 Documents resetting the chapter number at each part

Since version #23, minitoc works with document classes resetting chapter (or section) number at each part (or chapter). This is possible because the auxiliary files for the mini-tables have now an *absolute* number.

## 2.14 The mini-tables have too much spaced lines

From version #29, you can have tight mini-tables with the `tight` option, and with the `k-tight` option for the KOMA-Script classes [157, 207] (since version #43).

## 2.15 The secttocs are wrong

Secttocs did not work: corrected (version #38).

## 2.16 Removing the lines of dots

The lines of dots (leaders) between section titles and page numbers are removed by the `undotted` option (#29). See also section 1.4.13 on page 42.

## 2.17 Using the hyperref package with minitoc



Since version #31, minitoc works correctly with the powerful `hyperref` package [227], thanks to Heiko OBERDIEK, who used the work of Bernd JAEHNE and Didier VERNA. *Hence the minitoc-hyper package is now obsolete and should no more be used. It is still present on the CTAN archives for compatibility with old documents.* If you add the loading of the `hyperref` package to a document yet using `minitoc`, you will get error message about spurious closing braces. Just let finish the  $\LaTeX$  run, then re- $\LaTeX$  the document. There will be no problem if you remove the loading of `hyperref` and add it again: the problem occurs only when upgrading from `minitoc` #30 to `minitoc` #31 (or higher) with a document already processed and adding `hyperref` at the same time! It seems better to process the document with `minitoc` #31 (or higher) without `hyperref`, then with `hyperref`, because some internal commands written into the auxiliary files have been modified. If used, the `hyperref` package must be loaded *before* `minitoc`. Note that the documents `minitoc.dtx` and `fminitoc.dtx` show (not so) basic examples of the use of the `hyperref` package with `minitoc`.

## 2.18 Problem while upgrading minitoc

If upgrading from version #30 or lower to version #31 or higher, you should delete the .aux, .toc, .lof, .lot files of the document, else the first L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X run with version #31 or higher will produce a lot of errors (the next run should be ok). See also the section 2.17 on the preceding page.

## 2.19 A local table of contents for the set of appendices

<code>\doparttoc</code> <code>\tableofcontents</code> <code>\appendix</code> <code>\part</code> <code>\parttoc</code> <code>\addtocontents</code> <code>\protect</code> <code>\setcounter</code> <code>\chapter</code> <code>\partbegin</code>	<p>Some users need a table of contents for the appendices, but without putting the entries of it into the main table of contents. The solution is to put the appendices in a <code>\part</code> subdivision of the document and ask for a table of contents at the <code>\part</code> level:</p> <pre> \doparttoc           % after \begin{document} . . . \tableofcontents . . . \appendix \part{Appendices}    % create a part level subdivision \parttoc             % create a local table of contents % To suppress the appendix part in the main toc \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{-1}} \chapter{First appendix} . . . % Add this at the end of appendices if there is something % after the appendices (like an index or a bibliography) % to put a bound to the contents of \parttoc \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\partbegin} </pre>
---	---

See also section 2.25 on page 63.

## 2.20 Use with the appendix package

<code>\addcontentsline</code> <code>\adjustmtc</code> <code>\adjuststc</code>	<p>If you use the appendix package [267] (by Peter R. WILSON), you will observe a serious problem with minitocs in the appendices environment (and after it): they do not match with their respective appendices. In fact, the environment opening <code>\begin{appendices}</code> hides a <code>\addcontentsline</code> command for a chapter or a section, putting trouble in the numbering of minitocs or secttocs. Several solutions are available. The first one is to add a <code>\adjustmtc</code> or <code>\adjuststc</code> command (depending if the appendices are at the chapter or section level) after <i>each</i> <code>\begin{appendices}</code> command. An other solution is to add the following commands in the preamble <i>after</i> the loading of the appendix package:</p>
---	--

```
\let\oldappendices\appendices
\def\appendices{\oldappendices\adjustmtc}
```

if appendices are at the chapter level, OR:

```
\let\oldappendices\appendices
\def\appendices{\oldappendices\adjuststc}
```

if appendices are at the section level.

These two solutions may be modified by replacing `\adjustmtc` by the sequence:

```
\addtocontents{toc}{\chapterend}
OR
\addtocontents{toc}{\sectend}
```

when it is necessary to delimit the end of the preceding chapter or section.

A rather elegant solution is to add an entry into the TOC via the `\addappheadtotoc` command offered by the `appendix` package. As this entry is a chapter-level (or section-level) entry, it delimits correctly the end of the preceding chapter or section.

## 2.21 Use with the `tocloft` package

`\mtcsetfont` (This answer is given in the documentation of the `tocloft` package [265].) The `tocloft` (by Peter R. WILSON) and `minitoc` packages have an unfortunate interaction<sup>3</sup>, which fortunately can be fixed. In the normal course of events, when `minitoc` is used in a chaptered document it will typeset section entries in the minitocs in bold font. If `tocloft` is used in conjunction with `minitoc`, then the `minitoc` section entries are typeset in the normal font, except for the page numbers which are in bold font, while the ToC section entries are all in normal font.

One cure, if you want the `minitoc` section entries to be all in normal small font, is to put:

```
\renewcommand{\mtcSfont}{\normalfont\small}
```

or:

```
\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\normalfont\small}
```

in the preamble.

---

<sup>3</sup> Discovered by Lyndon DUDGING.

Otherwise, the cure is the following incantation:

```
\renewcommand{\cftsecfont}{\bfseries}
\renewcommand{\cftsecleader}{\bfseries\cftdotfill{\cftdotsep}}
\renewcommand{\cftsecpagefont}{\bfseries}
```

To have the section entries in both the ToC and the minitocs in bold then put the incantation in the preamble. To have only the minitoc section entries in bold while the ToC entries are in the normal font, put the incantation between the `\tableofcontents` command and the first `\chapter` command.

As `tocloft` is a very powerful and useful package, these cures are worth to be added if you need the benefits of this package. See also section 2.22.

## 2.22 Use with the memoir class

The memoir class [272, 273] offers basically the fonctionnalités of the appendix, `tocbibind` and `tocloft` packages (this class and these packages have the same author, Peter R. WILSON), hence it has the same problems; see above the available solutions (sections 2.20 on page 60, 1.5.5 on page 47, and 2.21 on the page before respectively). If your version of the memoir class is recent, the syntax of the `\chapter` command is different and the memoir class *could be no more compatible* with the minitoc package, but a patch is inserted to fix the problem. Hopefully, if your version of the memoir is more recent than 2005/09/25, the patch is no more necessary.

If you are using the memoir class (or the `tocloft` package), the `\mtcsetfont` command has no effect (`\mtcsettitlefont` works); you should use the font commands which are specific of the memoir class (or of the `tocloft` package).

If you still want to use the `\mtcsetfont` commands while using the memoir class (or of the `tocloft` package), you must disable the memoir/tocloft font commands. This is done by the following commands:

```
\let\cftpfont\relax
\let\cftchapterfont\relax
\let\cftsectionfont\relax
\let\cftsubsectionfont\relax
\let\cftsubsubsectionfont\relax
\let\cftparagraphfont\relax
\let\cftsubparagraphfont\relax
\let\cftfigurefont\relax
\let\cftsubfigurefont\relax
\let\cfttablefont\relax
\let\cftsubtablefont\relax
```

## 2.23 There are too many commands for fonts, titles, and depths

`\mtcsetfont` Since version #41, the `\mtcsetfont` and `\mtcsetttitlefont` commands are available. You do not need anymore to know `\mtcSSSfont`, `\ptifont`, etc.

`\mtcsetttitle` Since version #42, the `\mtcsetttitle` command is available. You do not need anymore to know `\mtctitle`, `\sltttitle`, etc.

`\mtcsetdepth` Since version #43, the `\mtcsetdepth` command is available. You do not need anymore to know the counters `minitocdepth`, `sectlotdepth`, etc.

## 2.24 Compatibility with the $\mathcal{AMS}$ document classes

This problem has been pointed out by Henri MASSIAS.

`\mtcaddchapter` Unfortunately, the `amsart` and `amsproc` document classes are incompatible with `minitoc`. The `amsbook` document class requires the insertion of commands if you want a list of figures and/or a list of tables:

```
\listoffigures
\mtcaddchapter % added
\listoftables
\mtcaddchapter % added
```

## 2.25 Hiding some entries from the main table of contents

It is a problem similar to that of section 2.19 on page 60. An example is having a local table of contents for a chapter (`\minitoc`) whose entries should not appear in the main table of contents. Just use the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment:

```
\chapter{Title}
\begin{mtchideinmaintoc}[level]
\minitoc
\section{sub-title}
...
\end{mtchideinmaintoc}
```

This environment accepts an optional numeric argument, which is the depth of hiding in the main toc (default: -1, complete hiding). You can look at the `mtc-apx.tex` example file:

```

1 \*mtc - apx
2 \documentclass[oneside]{book}
3 \ProvidesFile{mtc-apx.tex}%
4   [2007/01/04]
5 \usepackage{lipsum} % provides filling text
6 \usepackage{tocbibind} % adds some entries in the main TOC.
7 \usepackage[tight,listfiles]{minitoc}
8 \setcounter{minitocdepth}{3}
9 \setcounter{parttocdepth}{3}
10 \begin{document}
11 \doparttoc
12 \dominitoc
13 \tableofcontents
14 \mtcaddchapter % because tocbibind adds a chapter entry in the TOC
15 \chapter{First}
16 \minitoc
17 First chapter
18 \section{First section}
19 \lipsum[1]
20 \section{Second section}
21 \lipsum[2]
22 \chapter{Second}
23 \minitoc
24 Second
25 \section{First section of second chapter}
26 \lipsum[3]
27 \section{Second section of second chapter}
28 \lipsum[4]
29 \appendix % begins the appendices
30 \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{Appendices} % adds a part entry in the TOC
31 \adjustptc % fixes the parttoc counter ptc
32 \parttoc % adds a partial toc for the appendices
33 \begin{mtchideinmaintoc}[-1] % hides the details of the
34 % % appendices in the main TOC, but chapter-level
35 % % entries would be still visible if you use 0
36 % % in place of -1 as optional argument.
37 \chapter{First appendix}
38 \minitoc
39 First appendix
40 \section{First section}
41 \lipsum[5]
42 \section{Second section}
43 \lipsum[6]
44 \chapter{Second appendix}
45 \minitoc
46 Second appendix
47 \section{First section of second appendix}
48 \lipsum[7]
49 \section{Second section of second appendix}
50 \lipsum[8]
51 \end{mtchideinmaintoc} % end of hiding

```



```
52 \end{document}
53 </mtc - apx>
```

Of course, the environments `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` are also available, to hide some entries in the main list of figures or of tables.



Note that the position of the end of these environments must be adjusted to include a page break (like the one done by a `\chapter` command), else the restore command might be inserted too early into the `.toc`, `.lof` or `.lot` file. There is an example file (`mtc-hi1.tex`):

```
54 <*mtc - hi1>
55 \documentclass{report}
56 \ProvidesFile{mtc-hi1.tex}%
57 [2007/01/04]
58 \usepackage%
59 [tight,listfiles]{minitoc}
60 \begin{document}
61 \dominilof
62 \dominilot
63 \listoffigures
64 \listoftables
65 \chapter{First}
66 \minilof
67 \minilot
68 \begin{figure}
69 \caption{AAAA1}
70 \end{figure}
71 \begin{figure}
72 \caption{AAAA2}
73 \end{figure}
74 \begin{table}
75 \caption{TAAAA1}
76 \end{table}
77 \begin{table}
78 \caption{TAAAA2}
79 \end{table}
80 \chapter{Second}
81 \minilof
82 \minilot
83 %%-----
```

We begin the hiding of figure entries in the list of figures and of table entries in the list of tables. In this document, we use the environment forms.

```
84 \begin{mtchideinmainlof}
85 \begin{mtchideinmainlot}
```

```
86 \begin{figure}
87 \caption{BBBB1}
88 \end{figure}
89 \begin{figure}
90 \caption{BBBB2}
91 \end{figure}
92 \begin{table}
93 \caption{TBBBB1}
94 \end{table}
95 \begin{table}
96 \caption{TBBBB2}
97 \end{table}
98 \chapter{Third}
```

We terminate the hiding of figure entries in the list of figures and of table entries in the list of tables. In this document, we use the environment forms.

```
99 \end{mtchideinmainlot}
100 \end{mtchideinmainlof}
101 %%-----
102 \minilof
103 \minilot
104 \begin{figure}
105 \caption{CCCC1}
106 \end{figure}
107 \begin{figure}
108 \caption{CCCC2}
109 \end{figure}
110 \begin{table}
111 \caption{TCCCC1}
112 \end{table}
113 \begin{table}
114 \caption{TCCCC2}
115 \end{table}
116 \end{document}
117 </mtc - hi1>
```

But it is also possible to use *commands* in place of these environments: you place a `\mtchideinmainlof` (or `\mtchideinmainlot`) command in the first figure (or table) to

hide, *before* its caption and a `\endmtchideinmainlof` (or `\endmtchideinmainlot`) command at the end of the last figure (or table) to hide, *after* its caption, like in this example file (`mtc-hi2.tex`):

```

118 < *mtc - hi2>
119 \documentclass{report}
120 \ProvidesFile{mtc-hi2.tex}%
121 [2007/01/04]
122 \usepackage%
123 [tight,listfiles]{minitoc}
124 \begin{document}
125 \dominilof
126 \dominilot
127 \listoffigures
128 \listoftables
129 \chapter{First}
130 \minilof
131 \minilot
132 \begin{figure}
133 \caption{AAAA1}
134 \end{figure}
135 \begin{figure}
136 \caption{AAAA2}
137 \end{figure}
138 \begin{table}
139 \caption{TAAAA1}
140 \end{table}
141 \begin{table}
142 \caption{TAAAA2}
143 \end{table}
144 \chapter{Second}
145 \minilof
146 \minilot

```

We begin the hiding of figure entries in the list of figures and of table entries in the list of tables. In this document, we use the command forms: a command is inserted *before* the caption of the first “hidden” entry.

```

147 \begin{figure}
148 \mtchideinmainlof % <--
149 \caption{BBBB1}
150 \end{figure}
151 \begin{figure}
152 \caption{BBBB2}

```

```

153 \endmtchideinmainlof % <--
154 \end{figure}
155 \begin{table}
156 \mtchideinmainlot % <--
157 \caption{TBBBB1}
158 \end{table}

```

We terminate the hiding of figure entries in the list of figures and of table entries in the list of tables. In this document, we use the command forms: a command is inserted *after* the caption of the *last* “hidden” entry.

```

159 \begin{table}
160 \caption{TBBBB2}
161 \endmtchideinmainlot % <--
162 \end{table}
163 \chapter{Third}
164 \minilof
165 \minilot
166 \begin{figure}
167 \caption{CCCC1}
168 \end{figure}
169 \begin{figure}
170 \caption{CCCC2}
171 \end{figure}
172 \begin{table}
173 \caption{TCCCC1}
174 \end{table}
175 \begin{table}
176 \caption{TCCCC2}
177 \end{table}
178 \end{document}
179 < /mtc - hi2>

```

This method, recommended while more delicate to apply, is more reliable in delimiting the hiding domain: it solves the problem of the asynchronism between the writing of floats and the writing of the normal text.

## 2.26 Defining your own .mld file

`\mtcsettitle` First, you should not directly modify one of the distributed .mld and .mlo files. The simplest way to alter some title is to redefine the corresponding command via `\renewcommand` or better via `\mtcsettitle`. If you really want to have your own .mld file, you copy an existing .mld file into one with a new name (not the name of a distributed .mld file). Then you modify this new .mld file and you can use it via `\mtcselectlanguage`. You can always contact me to add this new .mld file to the distribution. These remarks apply also to the *language*[.mld-.mlo] pairs of language definition files.

`\mtcselectlanguage`

## 2.27 Use with the abstract package

`\mtcaddchapter` If the abstract package [266] (by Peter R. WILSON), is used with its `addtotoc` option, a “Abstract” entry is added to the table of contents, as a starred chapter if the document class defines `\chapter`, else as a starred section. This problem is detected by the `hints` option and you should add a `\mtcaddchapter[]` or a `\mtcaddsection[]` command after your abstract environment.

`\mtcaddsection`

`\chapter`

## 2.28 Use with the sectsty package

If the `sectsty` package [194] (by Rowland McDONNELL) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the sectionning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

## 2.29 Strange alignment in the minitocs

*In minitocs, subsections titles are not aligned with sections, as they are in the main table of contents.*

The entries of a table of contents are formatted via internal commands like `\l@part`, `\l@chapter`, `\l@section`, etc.

The “part” and “chapter” levels (and “section” for an article) use specific commands which are somewhat complex for a more elaborated formatting. For the “section” (in the `report` and `book` classes) and lower levels, these commands are (`book` class, `book.cls`) by default:

```
\newcommand*\l@section{\@dottedtocline{1}{1.5em}{2.3em}}
\newcommand*\l@subsection{\@dottedtocline{2}{3.8em}{3.2em}}
\newcommand*\l@subsubsection{\@dottedtocline{3}{7.0em}{4.1em}}
```

```
\newcommand*\l@paragraph{\@dottedtocline{4}{10em}{5em}}
\newcommand*\l@subparagraph{\@dottedtocline{5}{12em}{6em}}
```

which will be applied in the main table of contents and in the minitocs. The arguments of `\@dottedtocline` are

- 1) the logical depth (which will be compared to `tocdepth` or `minitocdepth`).
- 2) the indentation.
- 3) the width reserved for the section/subsection/... number.

In the standard book, report and article classes, the dimensions (second and third arguments) are given in “em” units, and this unit depends of the current font. In the main table of contents, the section and subsection entries are written in the *same* font, hence usually the alignment is correct. But in the minitocs, the section entries are written in a bold font while the subsection entries are written in a non bold font (the default font choices are given in table 1.6 on page 35), hence one “em” has different sizes in these two fonts and the alignment is changed.

There are several solutions:

- Redefine the `\l@section ... \l@subparagraph` commands to use font independent units (pt, mm, pc, etc.). This redefinition must be performed in a package or via a command defined by a package or between `\makeatletter` and `\makeatother`, because these commands have a `@` in their names; you must use `\renewcommand*` to redefine these commands.
- Use the `tocloft` package [265] to change the indentation, with font independent units. But then see section 2.21 on page 61.
- Use the same font for the section and subsection entries in the minitocs, using the `\mtcsetfont` command (see section 1.4.9 on page 39) or redefining the `\mtcSfont`, `\mtcSSfont`, `\mtcSSSfont`, `\mtcPfont` and `\mtcSPfont` commands (see table 1.6 on page 35), or similar.

## 2.30 Useful precautions with starred sectionning commands

- The headers are not modified by `\part*`, `\chapter*` or `\section*`; it is necessary to use `\markboth` or `\markright` to get correct page headers for the current and following pages.
- If you need an entry in the table of contents for a `\chapter*` or a `\section*` command, you must use `\mtcaddchapter[title]` or `\mtcaddsection[title]` *after* the starred sectionning command. If you need an entry in the table of contents for a `\part*` command, the page number in the table of contents would be wrong, because `\part*` implies a `\clearpage` or a `\cleardoublepage` before the first page of the part. Use the sequence

```

\cleardoublepage      % \clearpage if openany option.
\mtcaddpart[title]
\part*[title]

```

## 2.31 Use with packages for captions

If one of the `caption` [240], `caption2`<sup>4</sup> [239], (both written by Axel SOMMERFELDT), `ccaption` [270] (by Peter R. WILSON), or `mcaption` [141] (by Stephan HENNIG), packages is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because such packages alter (redefine) the commands listing figures and tables. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

## 2.32 Bad interaction minitoc/hyperref/memoir

When the `minitoc` and `hyperref` [227] packages are used in a document of class `memoir` [272, 273], the chapter header “Chapter” does not appear on the first page of the chapter.

This problem is fixed in version #44 of `minitoc`.

## 2.33 Use with the varsects package

If the `varsects` package [244] (by Daniel TAUPIN<sup>†</sup>) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the sectionning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

## 2.34 Initial font settings

The setting of the fonts in the mini-tables is a rather complex problem. If we take the `parttoc`s as an example, there is a `\ptcfont` font-command which is used for two purposes<sup>5</sup>:

- First, to be used as default value for some other font-commands (like `\ptcSPfont`). As its default value is used in the initialization of the `minitoc` package, the value of these other commands is *not altered* if you modify `\ptcfont`. You must modify these commands one at a time.
- Second, it is invoked at the beginning of each `parttoc`, `partlof` or `partlot` to set an initial font command. Then each entry of the mini-table calls its own font command (like

<sup>4</sup> This package is obsolete; now use a recent version of the `caption` package.

<sup>5</sup> The same remarks apply to the other mini-tables.

`\ptcSPfont`). Thus, if you modify `\ptcfont`, you can obtain a global effect on the fonts in the `parttocs`, `partlofs`, and `partlots`. So you can play with the various parameters of the fonts (family, shape, series, size), if you want fancy mini-tables; but it is rather difficult.



In the initialization of the `minitoc` package, we have a sequence of commands:

```
\let\ptcSSfont\ptcfont      % (subsections)
\let\ptcSSSfont\ptcfont     % (subsubsections)
\let\ptcPfont\ptcfont       % (paragraphs)
\let\ptcSPfont\ptcfont      % (subparagraphs)
\let\plffont\ptcfont        % (figures)
\let\plfSfont\ptcfont       % (subfigures)
\let\pltfont\ptcfont        % (tables)
\let\pltSfont\ptcfont       % (subtables)
```

to define some default fonts. But this sequence is executed only once. If you alter `\ptcfont`, the modification is not applied to these font commands. The command `\ptcfont` is invoked at the beginning of each `parttoc`. `\ptcCfont` is invoked for each chapter entry in a `parttoc` (`\ptcSfont` for each section entry, etc.). So `\ptcfont` can be used to define some global characteristics for the fonts in the `parttocs`, while `\ptcCfont` (etc.) can be used to customize the fonts for each level of entries.

Note that if you say:

```
\let\ptcSSfont\ptcfont      % (subsections)
\let\ptcSSSfont\ptcfont     % (subsubsections)
\let\ptcPfont\ptcfont       % (paragraphs)
\let\ptcSPfont\ptcfont      % (subparagraphs)
\let\plffont\ptcfont        % (figures)
\let\plfSfont\ptcfont       % (subfigures)
\let\pltfont\ptcfont        % (tables)
\let\pltSfont\ptcfont       % (subtables)
```

after loading the `minitoc` package, these font commands will be “associated” to `\ptcfont`, hence if you modify `\ptcfont` (by via `\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{*}{...}` or `\renewcommand`), they will follow the modification. But if you modify one of these commands via `\renewcommand` or `\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{subsection}{...}` (subsection is an example), the association is broken. But you could be more clever by saying something like

```
\mtcsetfont{parttoc}{subsection}{\ptcfont\itshape}
```

to preserve the association and modify only some parameters of a `minitoc` font command.

For levels above subsection (part, chapter and section), the fonts are more specific in general, but you can, of course, say something like `\def\ptcCfont{\ptcfont}` to make a similar association. You can even make other associations, like this:

```
% for high sectionning levels:
\def\highlevelsfont{\rmfamily\bfseries\normalsize\upshape}
% for low sectionning levels:
\def\lowlevelsfont{\rmfamily\mdseries\smallsize\upshape}
% then for each level:
\def\ptcCfont{\highlevelsfont}
\def\ptcSfont{\highlevelsfont}
\def\ptcSSfont{\lowlevelsfont}
\def\ptcSSSfont{\lowlevelsfont}
\def\ptcPfont{\lowlevelsfont\itshape}
\def\ptcSPfont{\lowlevelsfont\itshape}% for high sectionning levels:
```

Then you can redefine `\highlevelsfont` or `\lowlevelsfont` to act on several fonts in one step, but you must use `\renewcommand`. You cannot act on `\highlevelsfont` or `\lowlevelsfont` with `\mtcsetfont`.

Note that only the fonts for parttoCs are used in the examples above; but, of course, the situation is the same for minitocS and secttoCs. `\highlevelsfont` and `\lowlevelsfont` are macro names that you can choose, they are not part of the minitoc package.

## 2.35 Use with the KOMA-Script classes

If a KOMA-Script class [157, 207], compatible with minitoc (scrbook, scrreprt or scrartcl), is used, some class options may cause problems with the minitoc package, because these options add chapter or section entries in the table of contents. See section 1.5.5 on page 47. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

## 2.36 Use with the jura class or the alphanum package

The `jura` class loads the `alphanum` package, which redefines the sectionning structure in a non-standard way, after the loading of the `report` class. This class and this package are incompatible with minitoc.

### 2.37 The .mld files and the babel package

If you are using the babel package [40, 41], you can automatize the loading of the .mld file by adding some code in the preamble of your document, like this:

```
\AtBeginDocument{%  
  \addto\captionslanguageI{\mtcselectlanguage{language2}}}
```

where *languageI* is the language name for babel and *language2* the language name for minitoc; there are often identical, but there are exceptions (when you use a locally customized .mld file, by example).

### 2.38 Use with the fncychap package

If the fncychap package [182] (by Ulf A. LINDGREN) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package, because it alters (redefines) the sectionning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

### 2.39 Use with the quotchap package

If the quotchap package [245] (by Karsten TINNEFELD) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package, because it alters (redefines) the sectionning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

### 2.40 Use with the romannum package

If the romannum package [274] (by Peter R. WILSON) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package, because it alters (redefines) the numbering of the sectionning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

### 2.41 Use with the sfheaders package

If the sfheaders package [184] (by Maurizio LORETI) is used, it must be loaded *before* the minitoc package, because it alters (redefines) the sectionning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.



## 2.42 Use with the `alnumsec` package

If the `alnumsec` package [162] (by Frank KÜSTER) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the numbering of the sectioning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

## 2.43 Use with the `captcont` package

If the `captcont` package [101] (by Steven Douglas COCHRAN) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the caption commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

## 2.44 Vertical space (gap) before or after `parttocs`, `partlofs`, and `partlots` titles



These vertical gaps were hard-coded like for the chapter heads in the book and report document classes. The values were 50pt and 40pt, but some users want to adjust them for the titles of the part-level mini-tables. Since version #45, these gaps are defined by `\mtcgapbeforeheads` and `\mtcgapafterheads`, with these defaults values. These commands apply globally to `parttocs`, `partlofs` and `partlots`. They are *commands*, *not* dimensions, so they must be modified via `\renewcommand` (but *not* via `\setlength`). An example of use is given in the `mtc-gap.tex` document file:

```
180 (*mtc - gap)
181 \documentclass[a4paper,oneside,12pt]{book}
182 \ProvidesFile{mtc-gap.tex}%
183   [2007/01/04]
184 \usepackage{vruler} % to have a vertical graduation to note positions
185 %                  % (by Zhuhan Jiang)
186 \usepackage{txfonts}
187 \usepackage[english2,tight,listfiles]{minitoc}
188 \begin{document}
189 \setvruler[1cm][0][10][3][0][0pt][0pt][0pt][] % with vruler package
190 \doparttoc
191 \faketableofcontents
192 \part{First part}
```

A normal `parttoc`, with the normal gaps before and after it.

```
193 \parttoc
194 \chapter{First chapter of first part} \chapter{Second chapter of first part}
195 \part{Second part}
```

We set large gaps. Note the new position of the parttoc.

```
196 \renewcommand{\mtcgapbeforeheads}{100pt}
197 \renewcommand{\mtcgapafterheads}{80pt}
198 \parttoc
199 \chapter{First chapter of second part} \chapter{Second chapter of second part}
200 \part{Third part}
```

We set small gaps. Note the new position of the parttoc.

```
201 \renewcommand{\mtcgapbeforeheads}{20pt}
202 \renewcommand{\mtcgapafterheads}{10pt}
203 \parttoc
204 \chapter{First chapter of third part} \chapter{Second chapter of third part}
205 \end{document}
206 </mtc-gap>
```

## 2.45 Vertical spacing before the bottom rule of a minitable

The little spacing between a minitable and its bottom rule is implemented as a vertical kern that should be sufficient to allow the descending parts of the letters of the last entry of the mini-table. The values should depend of the line spacing and of the font size. They are defined as macros that you can adjust by redefining them via `\renewcommand`. The (empirical) default values are given in table 2.1.

Table 2.1: Kernings before minitable bottom rules

Command	Default value
<code>\kernafterparttoc</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>
<code>\kernafterpartlof</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>
<code>\kernafterpartlot</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>
<code>\kernafterminitoc</code>	<code>\kern-.5\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>
<code>\kernafterminilof</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern0.ex</code>
<code>\kernafterminilot</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern0.ex</code>
<code>\kernaftersecttoc</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>
<code>\kernaftersectlof</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>
<code>\kernaftersectlot</code>	<code>\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex</code>

## 2.46 Another interaction between the `tocloft` and `minitoc` packages

*I encountered an interaction between `tocloft` and `minitoc`. I want to force `minitoc` to not display the page numbers, but because of `tocloft` it doesn't. Here is an example code:*

```
\documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{book}
\usepackage{tocloft}
\usepackage{minitoc}
\begin{document}
\frontmatter
\dominitoc
\tableofcontents
\mainmatter
\chapter{Chapter}
\section{Section A}
\section{Section B}
\chapter{Second Chapter}
\mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\normalfont\small}
\mtcsetpagenumbers{minitoc}{off}
\minitoc
\section{Section A}
\section{Section B}
\end{document}
```

*If I comment the line loading the `tocloft` package, I will get a `minitoc` without page numbers as I wanted.*

When using together `tocloft` and `minitoc`, the `tocloft` package must be loaded first, and its commands take precedence to format the entries in the TOC (and in `minitocs`). To suppress the page numbers, you should try the `\cftpagenumbersoff{XXX}` command (from `tocloft`), which is described in the `tocloft.pdf` documentation [265, pages 45-56]; `XXX` is the level of entry (chapter, sec, subsec, etc.). There are similar remarks about font related commands.

The `tocloft` package is more specialized in that job than `minitoc`, so if it is loaded, `minitoc` uses the `tocloft` tools. There is the corrected example (`mtc-tlo.tex`):

```
207 <*mtc - tlo>
208 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{book}
209 \ProvidesFile{mtc-tlo.tex}%
210 [2007/01/04]
```

We must load `tocloft` *before* `minitoc`:

```
211 \usepackage{tocloft}
212 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
213 \begin{document}
```

We define the global font for the minitoc entries:

```
214 \mtcsetfont{minitoc}{*}{\normalfont\small}
215 \frontmatter
216 \dominitoc
217 \tableofcontents
```

For the section entries in the minitocs, we suppress the page numbers and change the font by using commands from the `tocloft` package:

```
218 \cftpagenumbersoff{sec}
219 \renewcommand{\cftsecfont}{\normalfont\small}
220 \mainmatter
221 \chapter{Chapter}
222 \section{Section A}
223 \section{Section B}
224 \chapter{Second Chapter}
225 \minitoc
226 \section{Section A}
227 \section{Section B}
228 \end{document}
229 </mtc – tlo>
```

## 2.47 Use with the hangcaption package

If the `hangcaption` package [148] (by David M. JONES) is used, it must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package, because it alters (redefines) the sectioning commands. Of course, the `hints` option detects this problem.

# Chapter 3

## Memento

### Tables

3.1	Package options	77
3.2	General commands	78
3.3	Commands: part level	79
3.4	Commands: chapter level	80
3.5	Commands: section level	81
3.6	Commands for horizontal rules	82
3.7	Commands for page numbers	82
3.8	Commands for mini-tables features	83
3.9	Preparation and insertion commands	83
3.10	Adjustment commands	84
3.11	Obsolete commands	84
3.12	Classes and packages needing some precautions with minitoc	85

Table 3.1: Package options

Options	Default	Meaning
shorttext	*NO*	Short extensions for auxiliary files.
loose, tight	loose	Spacing of lines in mini-tables.
k-loose, k-tight	k-loose	Spacing of lines in mini-tables (KOMA-Script classes).
dotted, undotted	dotted	Presence of leaders (dotted lines).
insection	*NO*	Keeps floats (figures and tables) from drifting outside of their section. Useful if you use sectlofs/sectlots.
notoccite	*NO*	Useful if you have \cite commands in sectionning titles and use an unsorted bibliographic style.
listfiles, nolistfiles	listfiles	Lists the minitoc auxiliary files into <i>document.maf</i> .
hints, nohints	hints	Adds hints in the <i>document.log</i> file. Useful to detect some problems.

Language options are listed in table 1.7 on page 36. Default: english.

Table 3.2: General commands

Command	Meaning
<code>\faketableofcontents</code>	Replaces <code>\tableofcontents</code> if you want mini-tables of contents but no main table of contents.
<code>\fakelistoffigures</code>	Replaces <code>\listoffigures</code> if you want mini-lists of figures but no main list of figures.
<code>\fakelistoftables</code>	Replaces <code>\listoftables</code> if you want mini-lists of tables but no main list of tables.
<code>\mtcselectlanguage{language}</code>	Loads <i>language.mld</i> to select a language for mini-tables titles.
<code>\mtcsetdepth{mini-table}{depth}</code>	Changes the depth for some mini-tables.
<code>\mtcsetfeature{mini-table}{before after pagestyle}{commands}</code>	Modifies the features for a mini-table.
<code>\mtcsetfont{mini-table}{sectioning-level}{font commands}</code>	Redefines a minitoc font command.
<code>\mtcsetformat{mini-table}{dotinterval pagenumwidth tocrightmargin}{value}</code>	Changes the layout of some mini-tables.
<code>\mtcsetpagenumbers{mini-table *}{on off}</code>	Activates/inhibits page numbers in some or all mini-tables.
<code>\mtcsetrules{mini-table *}{on off}</code>	Activates/inhibits horizontal rules in some or all mini-tables.
<code>\mtcsettitle{mini-table}{title string}</code>	Changes the title for some mini-tables.
<code>\mtcsettitlefont{mini-table}{font commands}</code>	Changes the font of the title for some mini-tables.
<code>\mtcskip</code>	To add a vertical skip between the mini-tables.
<code>\mtcskipamount</code>	Length of <code>\mtcskip</code> . Default: <code>\bigskipamount</code> .
<code>\tightmtcfalse</code>	Loose mini-tables. Default.
<code>\tightmtctrue</code>	Tight mini-tables.
<code>\ktightmtcfalse</code>	Loose mini-tables. Default. (KOMA-Script classes).
<code>\ktightmtctrue</code>	Tight mini-tables. (KOMA-Script classes).
<code>\undottedmtcfalse</code>	Dotted lines in mini-tables (from entry to page number). Default.
<code>\undottedmtctrue</code>	No dotted lines in mini-tables (from entry to page number).

Table 3.3: Commands: part level

Command	Meaning
<code>\doparttoc[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]tableofcontents</code> if you use <code>\parttoc*</code> .
<code>\dopartlof[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoffigures</code> if you use <code>partlof*</code> .
<code>\dopartlot[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoftables</code> if you use <code>\partlot*</code> .
<code>\parttoc[x]</code>	After each <code>\part</code> command for which a <code>parttoc</code> is needed*.
<code>\partlof[x]</code>	After each <code>\part</code> command for which a <code>partlof</code> is needed*.
<code>\partlot[x]</code>	After each <code>\part</code> command for which a <code>partlot</code> is needed*.
<code>\setcounter{parttocdepth}{depth}</code>	Depth of the following <code>parttocs</code> . Analog to <code>tocdepth</code> . Default: 2. Has no action on <code>partlofs</code> and <code>partlots</code> .
<i>or:</i>	
<code>\mtcsetdepth{parttoc partlof partlot}{depth}</code>	Idem, but can also act on <code>partlofs</code> and <code>partlots</code> .
<code>\ptcindent</code>	Left/right indentation of a partial table. Default: 24pt.
<code>\ptcfont</code>	Font command for <code>parttoc</code> . Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> (article) or: <code>\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> (book, report).
<code>\ptcCfont</code>	Font command for <code>parttoc</code> , chapter entries. Default: <code>\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> .
<code>\ptcSfont</code>	Font command for <code>parttoc</code> , section entries. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> (article) or: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> (book, report).
<code>\ptcSSfont</code>	Font command for <code>parttoc</code> , subsection entries**.
<code>\ptcSSSfont</code>	Font command for <code>parttoc</code> , subsubsection entries**.
<code>\ptcPfont</code>	Font command for <code>parttoc</code> , paragraph entries**.
<code>\ptcSPfont</code>	Font command for <code>parttoc</code> , subparagraph entries**.
<code>\plffont</code>	Font for <code>partlof</code> . Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\plfSfont</code>	Font for <code>partlof</code> (subfigures). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\pltfont</code>	Font for <code>partlot</code> . Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\pltSfont</code>	Font for <code>partlot</code> (subtables). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\ptctitle</code>	Title of <code>parttocs</code> . Default: Table of Contents.
<code>\plftitle</code>	Title of <code>partlofs</code> . Default: List of Figures.
<code>\plttitle</code>	Title of <code>partlots</code> . Default: List of Tables.
<code>\ptifont</code>	Font for <code>partXXX</code> titles. Default: <code>\Large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> (article) or: <code>\LARGE\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> (book, report).
<code>\mtcgapbeforeheads</code>	Vertical gap before part-level mini-tables titles. Default: 50pt
<code>\mtcgapafterheads</code>	Vertical gap after part-level mini-tables titles. Default: 40pt

\*: `[x]` is an optional argument to set the position of the title; the setting is local for the `\partXXX` commands, global for the `\dopartXXX` commands. The values of `x` are: l for left (default), c for centered, r for right, n or e for no title.

\*\* : defaults like `\ptcfont`.

Table 3.4: Commands: chapter level

Command	Meaning
<code>\dominitoc[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]tableofcontents</code> if you use <code>\minitoc*</code> .
<code>\dominilof[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoffigures</code> if you use <code>\minilof*</code> .
<code>\dominilot[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoftables</code> if you use <code>\minilot*</code> .
<code>\minitoc[x]</code>	After each <code>\chapter</code> command for which a minitoc is needed*.
<code>\minilof[x]</code>	After each <code>\chapter</code> command for which a minilof is needed*.
<code>\minilot[x]</code>	After each <code>\chapter</code> command for which a minilot is needed*.
<code>\setcounter{minitocdepth}{depth}</code>	Depth of the following minitocs. Analog to <code>tocdepth</code> . Default: 2. Has no action on minilofs and minilots.
<i>or:</i>	
<code>\mtcsetdepth{minitoc minilof minilot}{depth}</code>	Idem, but can also act on minilofs and minilots.
<code>\mtcindent</code>	Left/right indentation of a mini-table. Default: 24pt.
<code>\mtcfont</code>	Font command for minitoc. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\mtcSfont</code>	Font command for minitoc, section entries. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> .
<code>\mtcSSfont</code>	Font command for minitoc, subsection entries**.
<code>\mtcSSSfont</code>	Font command for minitoc, subsubsection entries**.
<code>\mtcPfont</code>	Font command for minitoc, paragraph entries**.
<code>\mtcSPfont</code>	Font command for minitoc, subparagraph entries**.
<code>\mlffont</code>	Font for minilof. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\mlfSfont</code>	Font for minilof (subfigures). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\mltfont</code>	Font for minilot. Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\mltSfont</code>	Font for minilot (subtables). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\mtctitle</code>	Title of minitocs. Default: Contents.
<code>\mlftitle</code>	Title of minilofs. Default: Figures.
<code>\mltttitle</code>	Title of minilots. Default: Tables.
<code>\mtifont</code>	Font for miniXXX titles. Default: <code>\large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> .

\*: `[x]` is an optional argument to set the position of the title; the setting is local for the `\miniXXX` commands, global for the `\dominiXXX` commands. The values of `x` are: l for left (default), c for centered, r for right, n or e for no title.

\*\* defaults like `\mtcfont`.



Table 3.5: Commands: section level

Command	Meaning
<code>\dosecttoc[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]tableofcontents</code> if you use <code>\secttoc*</code> .
<code>\dosectlof[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoffigures</code> if you use <code>\sectlof*</code> .
<code>\dosectlot[x]</code>	Before <code>\[fake]listoftables</code> if you use <code>\sectlot*</code> .
<code>\secttoc[x]</code>	After each <code>\section</code> command for which a <code>secttoc</code> is needed*.
<code>\sectlof[x]</code>	After each <code>\section</code> command for which a <code>sectlof</code> is needed*.
<code>\sectlot[x]</code>	After each <code>\section</code> command for which a <code>sectlot</code> is needed*.
<code>\setcounter{secttocdepth}{depth}</code>	Depth of the following <code>secttocs</code> . Analog to <code>tocdepth</code> . Default: 2. Has no action on <code>sectlofs</code> and <code>sectlots</code> .
<i>or:</i>	
<code>\mtcsetdepth{secttoc sectlof sectlot}{depth}</code>	Idem, but can also act on <code>sectlofs</code> and <code>sectlots</code> .
<code>\stcindent</code>	Left/right indentation of a mini-table. Default: 24pt.
<code>\stcfont</code>	Font command for <code>secttoc</code> . Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\stcSSfont</code>	Font command for <code>secttoc</code> , subsection entries**.
<code>\stcSSSfont</code>	Font command for <code>secttoc</code> , subsubsection entries**.
<code>\stcPfont</code>	Font command for <code>secttoc</code> , paragraph entries**.
<code>\mtcSPfont</code>	Font command for <code>secttoc</code> , subparagraph entries**.
<code>\slffont</code>	Font for <code>sectlof</code> . Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\slfSfont</code>	Font for <code>sectlof</code> (subfigures). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\sltfont</code>	Font for <code>sectlot</code> . Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\sltSfont</code>	Font for <code>sectlot</code> (subtables). Default: <code>\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries</code> .
<code>\stctitle</code>	Title of <code>secttocs</code> . Default: Contents.
<code>\slftitle</code>	Title of <code>sectlofs</code> . Default: Figures.
<code>\slttitle</code>	Title of <code>sectlots</code> . Default: Tables.
<code>\stifont</code>	Font for <code>sectXXX</code> titles. Default: <code>\large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries</code> .

\*: `[x]` is an optional argument to set the position of the title; the setting is local for the `\sectXXX` commands, global for the `\dosectXXX` commands. The values of `x` are: l for left (default), c for centered, r for right, n or e for no title.

\*\* : defaults like `\stcfont`.

Table 3.6: Commands for horizontal rules

Command	Meaning
<code>\[no]ptcrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in parttocs.
<code>\[no]mtcrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in minitocs.
<code>\[no]stcrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in secttocs.
<code>\[no]plfrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in partlofs.
<code>\[no]mlfrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in minilofs.
<code>\[no]slfrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in sectlofs.
<code>\[no]pltrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in partlots.
<code>\[no]mltrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in minilots.
<code>\[no]sltrule</code>	Activates or inhibits rules in sectlots.
<code>\mtcsetrules{mini-table *}{on off}</code>	Activates/inhibits horizontal rules in some or all mini-tables.
<code>\kernafterparttoc</code>	Vertical kerning between a parttoc and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernafterpartlof</code>	Vertical kerning between a partlof and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernafterpartlot</code>	Vertical kerning between a partlot and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernafterminitoc</code>	Vertical kerning between a minitoc and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernafterminilof</code>	Vertical kerning between a minilof and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernafterminilot</code>	Vertical kerning between a minilot and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernaftersecttoc</code>	Vertical kerning between a secttoc and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernaftersectlof</code>	Vertical kerning between a sectlof and its bottom rule.
<code>\kernaftersectlot</code>	Vertical kerning between a sectlot and its bottom rule.

By default, parttocs have no rules; minitocs and secttocs have rules. In articles, parttocs have rules.

Table 3.7: Commands for page numbers

Command	Meaning
<code>\[no]ptcpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in parttocs.
<code>\[no]plfpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in partlofs.
<code>\[no]pltpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in partlots.
<code>\[no]mtcpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in minitocs.
<code>\[no]mlfpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in minilofs.
<code>\[no]mltpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in minilots.
<code>\[no]stcpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in secttocs.
<code>\[no]slfpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in sectlofs.
<code>\[no]sltpagenumbers</code>	Activates or inhibits page numbers in sectlots.
<code>\mtcsetpagenumbers{mini-table *}{on off}</code>	Activates/inhibits page numbers in some or all mini-tables.

By default, the page numbers are present.

Table 3.8: Commands for mini-tables features

Command	Default	Meaning
<code>\beforeparttoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before a parttoc.
<code>\beforepartlof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before a partlof.
<code>\beforepartlot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action before a partlot.
<code>\afterparttoc</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after a parttoc.
<code>\afterpartlof</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after a partlof.
<code>\afterpartlot</code>	<code>\cleardoublepage</code>	Action after a partlot.
<code>\thispageparttocstyle</code>	<code>\thispagestyle{empty}</code>	Page style for a parttoc.
<code>\thispagepartlofstyle</code>	<code>\thispagestyle{empty}</code>	Page style for a partlof.
<code>\thispagepartlotstyle</code>	<code>\thispagestyle{empty}</code>	Page style for a partlot.
<code>\beforeminitoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a minitoc.
<code>\beforeminilof</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a minilof.
<code>\beforeminilot</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a minilot.
<code>\afterminitoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a minitoc.
<code>\afterminilof</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a minilof.
<code>\afterminilot</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a minilot.
<code>\thispageminitocstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a minitoc.
<code>\thispageminilofstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a minilof.
<code>\thispageminilotstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a minilot.
<code>\beforesecttoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a secttoc.
<code>\beforesectlof</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a sectlof.
<code>\beforesectlot</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action before a sectlot.
<code>\aftersecttoc</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a secttoc.
<code>\aftersectlof</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a sectlof.
<code>\aftersectlot</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Action after a sectlot.
<code>\thispagesecttocstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a secttoc.
<code>\thispagesectlofstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a sectlof.
<code>\thispagesectlotstyle</code>	<code>\empty</code>	Page style for a sectlot.
<code>\mtcsetfeature{mini-table}{before after pagestyle}{commands}</code>		
Modifies the features for a mini-table.		

Table 3.9: Preparation and insertion commands

Type	Phase	Level		
		part	chapter	section
table of contents	preparation	<code>\doparttoc[p]</code>	<code>\dominitoc[p]</code>	<code>\dosecttoc[p]</code>
	insertion	<code>\parttoc[p]</code>	<code>\minitoc[p]</code>	<code>\secttoc[p]</code>
list of figures	preparation	<code>\dopartlof[p]</code>	<code>\dominilof[p]</code>	<code>\dosectlof[p]</code>
	insertion	<code>\partlof[p]</code>	<code>\minilof[p]</code>	<code>\sectlof[p]</code>
list of tables	preparation	<code>\dopartlot[p]</code>	<code>\dominilot[p]</code>	<code>\dosectlot[p]</code>
	insertion	<code>\partlot[p]</code>	<code>\minilot[p]</code>	<code>\sectlot[p]</code>
all	preparation	<code>\mtcprepare[p]</code>		

Each of these commands accepts one optional argument  $p$ , which specifies the position of the title of the mini-table. This argument  $p$  has a global effect for the preparation commands, but local for the insertion commands. It is a letter: [l] for left aligned (default), [c] for centered, [r] for right aligned, [e] or [n] for empty (no title).

Table 3.10: Adjustment commands

Command	Meaning
<code>\adjustptc[n]</code>	Adjusts (increments) the parttoc counter <code>ptc</code> by $n$ .
<code>\adjustmtc[n]</code>	Adjusts (increments) the minitoc counter <code>mtc</code> by $n$ .
<code>\adjuststc[n]</code>	Adjusts (increments) the secttoc counter <code>stc</code> by $n$ .
<code>\decrementptc</code>	Adjusts (decrements by 1) the parttoc counter <code>ptc</code> .
<code>\decrementmtc</code>	Adjusts (decrements by 1) the minitoc counter <code>mtc</code> .
<code>\decrementstc</code>	Adjusts (decrements by 1) the secttoc counter <code>stc</code> .
<code>\incrementptc</code>	Adjusts (increments by 1) the parttoc counter <code>ptc</code> .
<code>\incrementmtc</code>	Adjusts (increments by 1) the minitoc counter <code>mtc</code> .
<code>\incrementstc</code>	Adjusts (increments by 1) the secttoc counter <code>stc</code> .
<code>\mtcaddpart[title]</code>	Adds the title of a <code>\part*</code> in the ToC.
<code>\mtcaddchapter[title]</code>	Adds the title of a <code>\chapter*</code> in the ToC.
<code>\mtcaddsection[title]</code>	Adds the title of a <code>\section*</code> in the ToC.
<code>\mtcfixglossary[chapter section part]</code>	Adjusts the entry for glossary in the ToC.
<code>\mtcfixindex[chapter section part]</code>	Adjusts the entry for index in the ToC.
<code>\begin{mtchideinmaintoc}[depth] ... \end{mtchideinmaintoc}</code>	Environment to hide entries in the main table of contents.
<code>\begin{mtchideinmainlof}[depth] ... \end{mtchideinmainlof}</code>	Environment to hide entries in the main list of figures.
<code>\mtchideinmainlof[depth] ... \endmtchideinmainlof</code>	Pair of commands to hide entries in the main list of figures.
<code>\begin{mtchideinmainlot}[depth] ... \end{mtchideinmainlot}</code>	Environment to hide entries in the main list of tables.
<code>\mtchideinmainlot[depth] ... \endmtchideinmainlot</code>	Pair of commands to hide entries in the main list of tables.

Table 3.11: Obsolete commands

Command	Meaning
<code>\firstpartis{N}</code>	$N$ is the number of the first part.
<code>\firstchapteris{N}</code>	$N$ is the number of the first chapter.
<code>\firstsectionis{N}</code>	$N$ is the number of the first section.
These commands have no effect (except a harmless warning).	

Table 3.12: Classes and packages needing some precautions with minitoc

P/C	Names	Author(s)	Page(s)	Reference(s)
P	abstract	Peter R. WILSON	50	[266]
P	alnumsec	Frank KÜSTER	50	[162]
* P	alphanum	Felix BRAUN	71	[88]
* C	amsart	$\mathcal{AMS}$	63	[6]
C	amsbook	$\mathcal{AMS}$	63	[6]
* C	amsproc	$\mathcal{AMS}$	63	[6]
P	appendix	Peter R. WILSON	60	[267]
P	captcont	Steven Douglas COCHRAN	50	[101]
P	caption	Axel SOMMERFELDT	51	[240, 241]
P	caption2	Axel SOMMERFELDT	51	[239]
P	ccaption	Peter R. WILSON	51	[270]
P	fnycchap	Ulf A. LINDGREN	72	[182]
P	hangcaption	David M. JONES	76	[148]
P	hyperref	Sebastian RAHTZ and Heiko OBERDIEK	59	[208, 227, 228]
* C	jura	Felix BRAUN	71	[88]
P	mcaption	Stephan HENNIG	51	[141]
C	memoir	Peter R. WILSON	62	[272, 273]
P	notoccite	Donald ARSENEAU	49	[8]
P	placeins	Donald ARSENEAU	29	[9]
P	quotchap	Karsten TINNEFELD	50	[245]
P	romannum	Peter R. WILSON	50	[274]
C	scrartcl, scrbook and scrreprt	Frank NEUKAM, Markus KOHM, Axel KIELHORN, and Jens-Uwe MORAWSKI	71	[157, 207]
P	sectsty	Rowland McDONNELL	67	[194]
P	sfheaders	Maurizio LORETI	72	[184]
P	subfig	Steven Douglas COCHRAN	31	[102]
P	subfigure	Steven Douglas COCHRAN	31	[100]
* P	titlesec	Javier BEZOS	50	[35]
* P	titletoc	Javier BEZOS	50	[35]
P	tocbibind	Peter R. WILSON	47	[268]
P	tocloft	Peter R. WILSON	61, 75	[265]
P	varsects	Daniel TAUPIN <sup>†</sup>	50	[244]

\* Incompatible with minitoc.

C Class.

P Package.

## Chapter 4

# Examples of documents

### Contents

4.1	The mtc-2c.tex document file	87
4.2	The mtc-2nd.tex document file	88
4.3	The mtc-3co.tex document file	89
4.4	The mtc-add.tex document file	92
4.5	The mtc-ads.tex document file	97
4.6	The mtc-amm.tex document file	102
4.7	The mtc-apx.tex document file	103
4.8	The mtc-art.tex document file	103
4.9	The mtc-bk.tex document file	108
4.10	The mtc-bo.tex document file	115
4.11	The mtc-ch0.tex document file	119
4.12	The mtc-cri.tex document file	121
4.13	The mtc-fo1.tex document file	121
4.14	The mtc-fo2.tex document file	123
4.15	The mtc-gap.tex document file	124
4.16	The mtc-hi1.tex document file	124
4.17	The mtc-hi2.tex document file	124
4.18	The mtc-hia.tex document file	125
4.19	The mtc-hir.tex document file	125
4.20	The mtc-hop.tex document file	126
4.21	The mtc-liv.tex document file	127
4.22	The mtc-mem.tex document file	131
4.23	The mtc-mm1.tex document file	132
4.24	The mtc-mu.tex document file	133
4.25	The mtc-sbf.tex document file	135
4.26	The mtc-scr.tex document file	137
4.27	The mtc-syn.tex document file	138
4.28	The mtc-tbi.tex document file	140
4.29	The mtc-tlc.tex document file	141
4.30	The mtc-tlo.tex document file	141
4.31	The mtc-tsf.tex document file	141

This chapter shows the code of some examples of documents. Some are extracted or derived from real documents, others are just demonstrations to illustrate problems or features. The code of specific example files has been shown earlier: `mtc-apx.tex` on page 64, `mtc-hi1.tex` on page 65, `mtc-hi2.tex` on page 66, `mtc-gap.tex` on page 73, and `mtc-tlo.tex` on page 75,

## 4.1 The `mtc-2c.tex` document file

This document shows the use of the `minitoc` package in a document with a two columns layout. The layout uses the `multicol` standard package [198] and its `multicols` environment. We set `\mtcindent` to zero. We test several combinations. If a `minitoc` is long enough to be splitted on both columns, the result may be funny.

```

230 (*mtc - 2c)
231 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]%
232   {report}
233 \ProvidesFile{mtc-2c.tex}%
234   [2007/01/04]
235 \usepackage{multicol}
236 \usepackage{lipsum}
237 \usepackage%
238   [tight,latin,listfiles]{minitoc}
239 \usepackage[latin]{babel}
240 \setlength{\mtcindent}{0pt}
241 \begin{document}
242 \dominitoc
243 \tableofcontents

```

Two first chapters with a standard chapter head, a `minitoc` on one full width column, then the body of the chapter on two columns:

```

244 \chapter{Primum capitulum}
245 \begin{multicols}{2}[\minitoc]
246 \section{Prima sectio}
247 \lipsum[1-2]
248 \section{Secunda sectio}
249 \lipsum[3-4]
250 \end{multicols}
251 \chapter{Secundum capitulum}

```

```

252 \begin{multicols}{2}[\minitoc]
253 \section{Prima sectio}
254 \lipsum[5-6]
255 \section{Secunda sectio}
256 \lipsum[7-8]
257 \section{Tertia sectio}
258 \lipsum[9-10]
259 \end{multicols}

```

A third chapter entirely on two columns, so the chapter head and the `minitoc` are in the first column:

```

260 \begin{multicols}{2}
261 \chapter{Tertium capitulum}
262 \minitoc
263 \section{Prima sectio}
264 \lipsum[11-12]
265 \section{Secunda sectio}
266 \lipsum[13-14]
267 \section{Tertia sectio}
268 \lipsum[15-16]
269 \end{multicols}

```

A fourth chapter, with the chapter head on one column, and the `minitoc` and the chapter body on two columns (the `minitoc` is in the first column):

```

270 \chapter{Quadrum capitulum}
271 \begin{multicols}{2}
272 \minitoc
273 \section{Prima sectio}
274 \lipsum[16-17]
275 \section{Secunda sectio}
276 \lipsum[18-19]
277 \section{Tertia sectio}
278 \lipsum[20-21]

```

<pre>279 \end{multicols} 280 \end{document}</pre>		<pre>281 &lt;/mtc - 2c&gt;</pre>
---	--	----------------------------------

## 4.2 The mtc-2nd.tex document file

This document tests the french2.mld minitoc language definition file (section 13.60 on page 470) and its supporting code in the minitoc package. First, the preamble of the document uses the french2 minitoc package language option<sup>1</sup>:

```
282 <*mtc - 2nd>
283 %% Test de french2.mld:
284 %% « seconde » ou « deuxième » partie?
285 %% compilez 3 fois.
286 \documentclass{report}
287 \ProvidesFile{mtc-2nd.tex}%
288 [2007/01/04]
289 \usepackage[french2,tight,listfiles]{minitoc}
290 \usepackage[french]{babel}
291 \usepackage{franc,frnew}
292 \usepackage[OT1,TS1,T1]{fontenc}
293 \usepackage[isolatin]{inputenc}
294 \usepackage{mypatches}
295 \begin{document}
```

We test if there is only two parts: if yes, we will use “seconde”. Else (zero, one, three or more parts), we will use “deuxième”.

```
296 \ifmtcsecondpart
297 Il n’y a que 2 parties: seconde.
298 \else
299 Il y a une partie ou plus de deux parties: deuxième.
300 \fi
301 \clearpage
```

The body of the document, with two parts:

```
302 \doparttoc
303 \faketableofcontents
304 \part{P1}
305 \parttoc
306 \chapter{P1C1}
307 \chapter{P1C2}
308 \part{P2}
309 \parttoc
310 \chapter{P2C1}
311 \chapter{P2C2}
```

---

<sup>1</sup> The franc, frnew and mypatches packages are local additions, provided with the minitoc package documentation sources.



```

312 %% Commentez la ligne suivante puis recompilez 2 ou 3 fois.
313 \end{document}
314 \part{P3}
315 \parttoc
316 \chapter{P3C1}
317 \chapter{P3C2}
318 \end{document}
319 </mtc - 2nd>

```

```
\part*{Partie étoilée}
\mtcaddpart[Partie étoilée]
\adjustptc[-2] % IMPORTANT <<<<<<<<<<<<<<<<<<
\parttoc
\chapter*{Premier chapitre étoilé}
\mtcaddchapter[Premier chapitre étoilé]
\chapter*{Second chapitre étoilé}
\mtcaddchapter[Second chapitre étoilé]
```

### 4.3 The mtc-3co.tex document file

First, we will use a wide paper format (A3) to set the text on two columns and the main TOC on three columns, with the `multitoc` package [236] (by Martin SCHRÖDER).

```

320 \*mtc - 3co>
321 \documentclass[oneside]{book}
322 \ProvidesFile{mtc-3co.tex}%
323   [2007/02/12]
324 \usepackage[a3paper]{geometry}
325 \usepackage{lipsum}
326 \usepackage{multicol}
327 \usepackage{toc}{multitoc}
328 \renewcommand{\multicolumntoc}{f3}

```

Then we load the minitoc package, set some parameters and define the number of columns for the minitocs. We alter the mtc@verse environment to add a multicols environment<sup>2</sup>:

```

329 %%%%%%%%%%
330 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
331 \setlength{\mtcindent}{0pt}
332 \mtcsetformat{minitoc}{tocrightmargin}{2.55em plus 1fil}
333 \newcommand{\multicolumnmtc}{3}
334 \makeatletter
335 \let\SV@mtc@verse\mtc@verse
336 \let\SV@endmtc@verse\endmtc@verse
337 \def\mtc@verse{\SV@mtc@verse\removelastskip%
338 \begin{multicols}{\multicolumnmtc}\raggedcolumns\leavevmode\unskip
339 \vskip -1.5ex \vskip -1\baselineskip}
340 \def\endmtc@verse{\end{multicols}\SV@endmtc@verse}
341 \makeatother
342 %%%%%%%%%%

```

We begin the document, preparing the minitocs and the main TOC. The (first) chapter begins with its minitoc, then the text on two columns. We use the lipsum package [132] to provide filling text; the section number is used to select a *lipsum* paragraph.

```

343 \begin{document}
344 \dominitoc
345 \tableofcontents
346 \chapter{First chapter}
347 \minitoc
348 \begin{multicols}{2}

```

We use a lot of sections, to have a minitoc large enough to use the three columns. A subsection with a long title gives a good result (we have used \mtcsetformat to avoid hyphenations).

```

349 \section{First section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
350 \section{Second section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
351 \section{Third section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
352 \section{Fourth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
353 \section{Fifth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
354 \section{Sixth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
355 \section{Seventh section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
356 \section{Eighth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
357 \section{Ninth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
358 \section{Tenth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
359 \section{Eleventh section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
360 \section{Twelfth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
361 \section{Thirteenth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
362 \section{Fourteenth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
363 \section{Fifteenth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
364 \section{Sixteenth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
365 \section{Seventeenth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
366 \section{Eighteenth section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]

```

---

<sup>2</sup> Some vertical adjustments are necessary.

```

367 \section{Nineteenth section}      \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
368 \section{Twentieth section}     \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
369 \section{Twenty-first section}   \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
370 \section{Twenty-second section}  \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
371 \section{Twenty-third section}   \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
372 \section{Twenty-fourth section}  \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
373 \subsection{A very long subsection title,
374 for the fun in a multicolumn
375 table of contents}               \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
376 \section{Twenty-fifth section}   \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
377 \section{Twenty-sixth section}   \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
378 \section{Twenty-seventh section} \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
379 \section{Twenty-eighth section}  \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
380 \section{Twenty-ninth section}   \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
381 \section{Thirtieth section}      \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
382 \section{Thirty-first section}    \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
383 \section{Thirty-second section}   \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
384 \section{Thirty-third section}    \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
385 \section{Thirty-fourth section}   \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
386 \section{Thirty-fifth section}    \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
387 \section{Thirty-sixth section}    \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
388 \section{Thirty-seventh section}  \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
389 \section{Thirty-eighth section}   \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
390 \section{Thirty-ninth section}    \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
391 \section{Fortieth section}        \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
392 \section{Forty-first section}     \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
393 \section{Forty-second section}    \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
394 \section{Forty-third section}     \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
395 \section{Forty-fourth section}    \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
396 \section{Forty-fifth section}     \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
397 \section{Forty-sixth section}     \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
398 \section{Forty-seventh section}   \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
399 \section{Forty-eighth section}    \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
400 \section{Forty-ninth section}     \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
401 \section{Fiftieth section}        \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
402 \section{Fifty-first section}     \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
403 \section{Fifty-second section}    \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
404 \section{Fifty-third section}     \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
405 \section{Fifty-fourth section}    \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
406 \section{Fifty-fifth section}     \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
407 \section{Fifty-sixth section}     \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
408 \section{Fifty-seventh section}   \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
409 \section{Fifty-eighth section}    \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
410 \section{Fifty-ninth section}     \lipsum[\arabic{section}]
411 \end{multicols}
412 \clearpage
413 \end{document}
414 </mtc - 3co>

```

## 4.4 The `mtc-add.tex` document file

This document shows how to add special entries in the table of contents, and the interaction with the `tocbibind` package [268].

```

415 \*mtc - add)
416 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{report}
417 %%\documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{book}
418 \ProvidesFile{mtc-add.tex}%
419   [2007/01/04]
420 \usepackage{url}
421 \usepackage{tocbibind}
422 \usepackage{makeidx}
423 \makeatletter
424 \newif\ifscan@allowed
425 \scan@allowedtrue
426 \makeatother
427 \def\dotfil{\leaders\hbox to.6em{\hss .\hss}\hfil}%
428 \def\pfill{\unskip~\dotfill\penalty500\strut\nobreak
429           \dotfil~\ignorespaces}%

```

Load the `minitoc` package, or `mtcoff`.

```

430 \usepackage[tight,hints,listfiles]{minitoc}
431 %%\usepackage{mtcoff}

432 \makeindex
433 \begin{document}

```

We call the mini-table preparation commands:

```

434 \dominitoc
435 \dominilof
436 \dominilot

```

We are using the `tocbibind` package to add special entries in the table of contents, so we must take the precautions specified in section 1.5.5 on page 47:

```

437 \tableofcontents
438 \mtcaddchapter
439 \listoffigures
440 \mtcaddchapter
441 \listoftables
442 \mtcaddchapter

```

For a chapter, we want a `minitoc`, a `minilof` and a `minitoc`:

```

443 \chapter{First chapter}\index{chapter!normal}
444 \minitoc

```

```

445 \mtcskip
446 \minilof
447 \mtcskip
448 \minilot

```

Then the text of the chapter, with sections, figures and tables:

```

449 \section{First section}
450
451 \begin{figure}[tp]
452 \caption{First figure}
453 \end{figure}
454 \begin{table}[tp]
455 \caption{First table}
456 \end{table}
457
458 \section{Second section}
459 A small nice citation from~\cite{dark}:\
460 \index{small}\index{citation}\index{nice}\index{A}\index{a}%
461 \index{and}\index{bird}\index{But}\index{cannot}%
462 \index{claim}\index{great}\index{he}\index{I}%
463 \index{imagine}\index{it}\index{know}\index{land}%
464 \index{on}\index{once}\index{that}\index{to}\index{tree}%
465 \index{would}\index{yes}%
466 \textsf{A bird cannot land once on a great tree and claim to know it.}
467 But I imagine that he would, yes.}\
468 \hbox{}\hfill
469 Iain~M.~\textsc{Banks}~(1993),~\textsl{Against~a~dark~background.}%
470 \index{Iain}\index{Banks}\index{Against}\index{dark}\index{background}
471
472 \begin{figure}[tp]
473 \caption{Second figure}
474 \end{figure}
475 \begin{table}
476 \caption{Second table}
477 \end{table}

```

A starred chapter requires a special treatment; three solutions are possible. You can test variations on the `\mtcaddchapter` command. Just uncomment one (and only one) of the `\mtcaddchapter` commands after `\chapter*` in the source code of `mtc-add.tex`. For each case, look at the Table of Contents and the involved chapter.

```

478 \chapter*{Second chapter, starred}
479 \index{chapter!starred}
480 %% UNCOMMENT ONE AND ONLY ONE OF THE 3 FOLLOWING LINES
481 \mtcaddchapter[Second chapter, starred] % OK
482 %%\mtcaddchapter[~] % produces a (strange) correct result. OK
483 %%\addcontentsline{toc}{xchapter}{}
484 %%%\addcontentsline{toc}{xchapter}{}
485 %%\mtcaddchapter[] % BAD SOLUTION
486 %%\mtcaddchapter % BAD SOLUTION
487 %%%\addcontentsline{toc}{xchapter}{}

```

```

488 \index{tests}
489
490 This is a starred chapter; you can test here variations on
491 the \verb|\mtcaddchapter| command. Just uncomment one (and
492 only one) of the \verb|\mtcaddchapter| commands after
493 \verb|\chapter*| in the source code of \texttt{mtc-add.tex}.
494 For each case, look at the \index{Table of Contents}Table of Contents
495 and at this chapter.
496 \index{a}\index{added}\index{after}\index{also}\index{and}%
497 \index{at}\index{can}\index{case}\index{chapter}\index{code}%
498 \index{command}\index{commands}\index{Contents}\index{each}%
499 \index{entries}\index{For}\index{here}\index{I}\index{in}%
500 \index{index}\index{is}\index{Just}\index{just}\index{look}%
501 \index{lot}\index{of}\index{on}\index{one}\index{only}%
502 \index{source}\index{starred}\index{Table}\index{test}%
503 \index{the}\index{This}\index{this}\index{to}\index{uncomment}%
504 \index{variations}\index{you}%
505 I also added a lot of index entries, just to test.
506
507 \chapter{Third chapter}
508 \index{chapter!normal}
509 \minitoc
510 \mtcskip
511 \minilof
512 \mtcskip
513 \minilot
514 \section{Third section}
515
516 \begin{figure}
517 \caption{Third figure}
518 \end{figure}
519 \begin{table}
520 \caption{Third table}
521 \end{table}
522
523 \section{Fourth section}
524
525 \begin{figure}
526 \caption{Fourth figure}
527 \end{figure}
528 \begin{table}
529 \caption{Fourth table}
530 \end{table}

```

As we want to add an entry for the bibliography in the table of contents, and we use the `tocbibind` package for that, we must add a correction with `\adjustmtc`:

```

531 \nocite*
532 \def\noopsort#1{\relax}
533 \bibliographystyle{plain}
534 \bibliography{mtc-add}
535 \adjustmtc

```

As we want to add an entry for the index in the table of contents, and we use the `tocbibind` package for that, we must add a correction; two solutions are available: use `\mtcfixindex` or the other given three lines:

```

536 \printindex
537 %%\mtcfixindex % use this OR the 3 following lines
538 \addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{}
539 \addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{}
540 \mtcaddchapter
541 %%
542
543 \appendix
544 \chapter{App.~1}
545 \index{chapter!appendix}
546 \minitoc
547 \mtcskip
548 \minilof
549 \mtcskip
550 \minilot
551 \section{Fifth section}
552
553 \begin{figure}
554 \caption{Fifth figure}
555 \end{figure}
556 \begin{table}
557 \caption{Fifth table}
558 \end{table}
559
560 \section{Sixth section}
561
562 \begin{figure}
563 \caption{Sixth figure}
564 \end{figure}
565 \begin{table}
566 \caption{Sixth table}
567 \end{table}

```

The next chapter asks for a minitoc, a minilof and a minilot, but contains no tables; hence the minitoc package will give some warnings.

```

568 \chapter{App.~2}
569 \index{chapter!appendix}
570 %% contains no tables but asks for a minilot! No minilot printed.
571 \minitoc
572 \mtcskip
573 \minilof
574 \mtcskip
575 \minilot
576 \section{Seventh section}
577 \begin{figure}
578 \caption{Seventh figure}
579 \end{figure}
580 \begin{figure}

```

```

581 \caption{Eighth figure}
582 \end{figure}
583
584 \section{Eighth section}
585
586 \begin{figure}
587 \caption{Ninth figure}
588 \end{figure}
589 \begin{figure}
590 \caption{Eleventh figure}
591 \end{figure}
592
593 \end{document}
594 </mtc – add>

```

And we need also its small bibliographic data base:

- the english documentation of the minitoc package [113]:

```

595 <*mtc – addbib>
596 @MISC{minitoc,
597     TITLE="The {\texttt{minitoc}} package",
598     AUTHOR="Drucbert, Jean-Pierre F.",
599     ADDRESS="{\texttt{drucbert@onera.fr}}",
600     NOTE="{\url{CTAN:macros/latex/contrib/minitoc/minitoc.pdf}}",
601     MONTH=jan,
602     YEAR=2007}
603

```

- the french documentation of the minitoc package [112]:

```

604 @MISC{fminitoc,
605     TITLE="Le paquetage {\texttt{minitoc}}",
606     AUTHOR="Drucbert, Jean-Pierre F.",
607     ADDRESS="{\texttt{drucbert@onera.fr}}",
608     NOTE="{\url{CTAN:macros/latex/contrib/minitoc/fminitoc.pdf}}",
609     MONTH=jan,
610     YEAR=2007}
611

```

- the documentation of the shorttoc package [111]:

```

612 @MISC{shorttoc,
613     TITLE="The {\texttt{shorttoc}} package",
614     AUTHOR="Drucbert, Jean-Pierre F.",
615     ADDRESS="{\texttt{drucbert@onera.fr}}",
616     NOTE="{\url{CTAN:macros/latex/contrib/shorttoc/shorttoc.dtx}}",
617     MONTH=aug,
618     YEAR=2002}
619

```

- a novel [15] from which a short citation is taken:

```

620 @BOOK{dark,
621     TITLE="{Against a Dark Background}",

```



```

622         AUTHOR="Banks, Iain Menzies",
623         PUBLISHER="Bantam Books",
624         ISBN="0553292240 (pb)",
625         YEAR=1993}
626     </mtc – addbib>

```

## 4.5 The mtc-ads.tex document file

This document uses the article class and shows some problems for adding special entries in the table of contents and some problems with floating objects. We need to use the tocibind package [268] for the first ones and the minitoc insection package option to avoid the drift if floating objects outside of their section. That gives the following document preamble:

```

627 <*mtc – ads>
628 \documentclass[oneside,12pt,a4paper]{article}
629 \ProvidesFile{mtc-ads.tex}%
630 [2007/01/04]
631 \usepackage{url,tocbibind,makeidx}
632 \makeatletter
633 \newif\ifscan@allowed
634 \scan@allowedtrue
635 \makeatother
636 \def\dotfil{\leaders\hbox to.6em{\hss.\hss}\hfil}%
637 \def\pfill{\unskip~\dotfill\penalty500\strut\nobreak
638           \dotfil~\ignorespaces}%
639 \usepackage[tight,hints,insection]{minitoc}
640 %%\usepackage{mtcoff}
641 \makeindex

```

The preparation commands:

```

642 \begin{document}
643 \doparttoc \dopartlof \dopartlot
644 \dosecttoc \dosectlof \dosectlot

```

The commands to prepare the table of contents, the list of figures and the list of tables. As we use the tocibind package, we must add some \mtcaddsection commands:

```

645 \setcounter{tocdepth}{6}
646 \setcounter{parttocdepth}{6}
647 \setcounter{secttocdepth}{6}
648 \tableofcontents
649 \mtcaddsection
650 \listoffigures
651 \mtcaddsection
652 \listoftables
653 \mtcaddsection

```

The body of the document: a part with its part-level mini-tables, some sections with their section-level mini-tables. The document has an index and contains figures and tables.

```

654 \part{Part~1}
655 \parttoc \mtcskip \partlof \mtcskip \partlot
656
657 \section{First section}
658 \index{section!normal}
659 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
660 \subsection{First subsection}
661
662 \begin{figure}[tp]
663 \caption{First figure}
664 \end{figure}
665 \begin{table}[tp]
666 \caption{First table}
667 \end{table}
668
669 \subsection{Second subsection}
670 A small nice citation from~\cite{dark}:\!
671 \index{small}\index{citation}\index{nice}\index{A}%
672 \index{a}\index{and}\index{bird}\index{But}%
673 \index{cannot}\index{claim}\index{great}\index{he}%
674 \index{I}\index{imagine}\index{it}\index{know}%
675 \index{land}\index{on}\index{once}\index{that}%
676 \index{to}\index{tree}\index{would}\index{yes}%
677 A bird cannot land once on a great tree and claim to know it.
678 But I imagine that he would, yes.\!
679 \hbox{\hfill Iain M. Banks (1993), \textsl{Against a dark background.}}%
680 \index{Iain}\index{Banks}\index{Against}\index{dark}%
681 \index{background}
682 \begin{figure}[tp]
683 \caption{Second figure}
684 \end{figure}
685 \begin{table}
686 \caption{Second table}
687 \end{table}

```

Here, we try a starred section, with its entry in the table of contents. You can try several solutions (good or bad).

```

688 \section*{Second section, starred}
689 \index{section!starred}
690 %% UNCOMMENT ONE AND ONLY ONE OF THE 4 FOLLOWING LINES
691 \mtcaddsection[Second section, starred] % OK
692 %%\mtcaddsection[] % BAD
693 %%\mtcaddsection[~] % produces a (strange) correct result.
694 %%\mtcaddsection % BAD
695 %%%%%%%%%%%
696 \index{tests}
697
698 This is a starred section; you can test here variations on
699 the \verb|\mtcaddsection| command. Just uncomment one (and

```

```

700 only one) of the \verb|\mtcaddsection| commands after
701 \verb|\section*| in the source code of \texttt{mtc-add.tex}.
702 For each case, look at the \index{Table of Contents}Table of Contents
703 and at this section.
704 \index{a}\index{added}\index{after}\index{also}\index{and}%
705 \index{at}\index{can}\index{case}\index{section}%
706 \index{code}\index{command}\index{commands}%
707 \index{Contents}\index{each}\index{entries}\index{For}%
708 \index{here}\index{I}\index{in}\index{index}\index{is}%
709 \index{Just}\index{just}\index{look}\index{lot}%
710 \index{of}\index{on}\index{one}\index{only}\index{source}%
711 \index{starred}\index{Table}\index{test}\index{the}%
712 \index{This}\index{this}\index{to}\index{uncomment}%
713 \index{variations}\index{you}%
714 I also added a lot of index entries, just to test.
715
716 \section{Third section}
717 \index{section!normal}
718 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
719 \subsection{Third subsection}
720
721 \begin{figure}
722 \caption{Third figure}
723 \end{figure}
724 \begin{table}
725 \caption{Third table}
726 \end{table}
727
728 \subsection{Fourth subsection}
729
730 \begin{figure}
731 \caption{Fourth figure}
732 \end{figure}
733 \begin{table}
734 \caption{Fourth table}
735 \end{table}
736
737 \subsubsection{Even a sub-sub-section!}
738 \subsubsection{And yet another one}
739
740 \part{Part~2}
741 \parttoc \mtcskip \partlof \mtcskip \partlot
742
743 \section{Fourth section}
744 \index{section!normal}
745 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
746 \subsection{Fifth subsection}
747
748 \begin{figure}[tp]
749 \caption{Fifth figure}
750 \end{figure}
751 \begin{table}[tp]
752 \caption{Fifth table}
753 \end{table}

```

```

754
755 \subsection{Sixth subsection}
756 A small nice citation from~\cite{dark}:\
757 \index{small}\index{citation}\index{nice}\index{A}%
758 \index{a}\index{and}\index{bird}\index{But}%
759 \index{cannot}\index{claim}\index{great}\index{he}%
760 \index{I}\index{imagine}\index{it}\index{know}%
761 \index{land}\index{on}\index{once}\index{that}%
762 \index{to}\index{tree}\index{would}\index{yes}%
763 A bird cannot land once on a great tree and claim to know it.
764 But I imagine that he would, yes.\
765 \hbox{}\hfill
766 Iain M. Banks (1993), \textsl{Against a dark background.}%
767 \index{Iain}\index{Banks}\index{Against}%
768 \index{dark}\index{background}
769
770 \begin{figure}[tp]
771 \caption{Sixth figure}
772 \end{figure}
773 \begin{table}
774 \caption{Sixth table}
775 \end{table}
776
777 \section*{Fifth section, starred}
778 \index{section!starred}
779 %% UNCOMMENT ONE AND ONLY ONE OF THE 4 FOLLOWING LINES
780 \mtcaddsection[Fifth section, starred] % OK
781 %%\mtcaddsection[] % OK
782 %%\mtcaddsection[~] % produces a (strange) correct result.
783 %%\mtcaddsection % OK
784 %%%\mtcaddsection[~] % produces a (strange) correct result.
785 \index{tests}
786
787 This is a starred section; you can test here variations on
788 the \verb|\mtcaddsection| command. Just uncomment one (and
789 only one) of the \verb|\mtcaddsection| commands after
790 \verb|\section*| in the source code of \texttt{mtc-add.tex}.
791 For each case, look at the \index{Table of Contents}Table of Contents
792 and at this section.\index{a}%
793 \index{added}\index{after}\index{also}\index{and}%
794 \index{at}\index{can}\index{case}\index{section}%
795 \index{code}\index{command}\index{commands}\index{Contents}%
796 \index{each}\index{entries}\index{For}\index{here}%
797 \index{I}\index{in}\index{index}\index{is}%
798 \index{Just}\index{just}\index{look}\index{lot}%
799 \index{of}\index{on}\index{one}\index{only}%
800 \index{source}\index{starred}\index{Table}\index{test}%
801 \index{the}\index{This}\index{this}\index{to}%
802 \index{uncomment}\index{variations}\index{you}%
803 I also added a lot of index entries, just to test.
804
805 \section{Sixth section}
806 \index{section!normal}
807 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot

```

```

808 \subsection{Seventh subsection}
809
810 \begin{figure}
811 \caption{Seventh figure}
812 \end{figure}
813 \begin{table}
814 \caption{Seventh table}
815 \end{table}
816
817 \subsection{Eighth subsection}
818
819 \begin{figure}
820 \caption{Eighth figure}
821 \end{figure}
822 \begin{table}
823 \caption{Eighth table}
824 \end{table}

```

The bibliography: as we want an entry for it in the table of contents, we use the `tocbibind` package [268] and a correction with `\adjuststc`:

```

825 \nocite*
826 \def\noopsort#1{\relax}
827 \bibliographystyle{plain}
828 \bibliography{mtc-add}
829 \adjuststc

```

The index: as we want an entry for it in the table of contents, we use the `tocbibind` package [268] and a correction with `\mtcfixindex`:

```

830 \printindex
831 \mtcfixindex % use this OR the 2 following lines
832 %%\addcontentsline{lof}{xsect}{}
833 %%\addcontentsline{lot}{xsect}{}
834 %%\mtcaddsection
835
836 \appendix
837 \section{App.~1}
838 \index{section!appendix}
839 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
840 \subsection{Ninth subsection}
841
842 \begin{figure}
843 \caption{Ninth figure}
844 \end{figure}
845 \begin{table}
846 \caption{Ninth table}
847 \end{table}
848
849 \subsection{Tenth subsection}
850
851 \begin{figure}
852 \caption{Tenth figure}

```

```

853 \end{figure}
854 \begin{table}
855 \caption{Tenth table}
856 \end{table}
857
858 \section{App.~2}
859 \index{section!appendix}
860 %% contains no tables but asks for a sectlot! No sectlot printed.
861 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof \mtcskip \sectlot
862 \subsection{Eleventh subsection}
863
864 \begin{figure}
865 \caption{Eleventh figure}
866 \end{figure}
867 \begin{figure}
868 \caption{Twelfth figure}
869 \end{figure}
870
871 \subsection{Twelfth subsection}
872
873 \begin{figure}
874 \caption{Thirteenth figure}
875 \end{figure}
876 \begin{figure}
877 \caption{Fourteenth figure}
878 \end{figure}
879
880 \end{document}
881 </mtc – ads>

```

## 4.6 The mtc-amm.tex document file

This example shows the use of the `appendices` environment in a memoir class document when the `minitoc` package is loaded. First, the preamble:

```

882 <*mtc – amm>
883 \documentclass[oneside]{memoir}
884 \ProvidesFile{mtc-amm.tex}%
885 [2007/01/04]
886 \usepackage{lipsum} % filling text
887 \usepackage%
888 [tight]{minitoc}
889 \begin{document}
890 \dominitoc
891 \tableofcontents
892 \adjustmtc
893 \chapter{First chapter}
894 \minitoc

```

```

895 \lipsum[1]
896 \section{First section}
897 \lipsum[2]

```

The `appendices` are set in an `appendices` environment; we can add an entry in the TOC with `\addappheadtotoc` (a command from the memoir class):

```

898 \begin{appendices}
899 \addappheadtotoc
900 \chapter{Afterthought}
901 \minitoc
902 \lipsum[3]
903 \Afterthought appendix
904 \section{Further remarks}
905 \lipsum[4]

```

<pre> 906 \end{appendices} 907 \chapter{Conclusion} 908 \minitoc 909 \section{Bye} </pre>	<pre> 910 \lipsum[5] 911 \end{document} 912 \&lt;/mtc - amm&gt; </pre>
---	--

## 4.7 The mtc-apx.tex document file

The mtc-apx.tex document file is described in section 2.25 on page 64.

## 4.8 The mtc-art.tex document file

This is a basic document using the minitoc package. It contains sections but no chapters, so it must use an article-like document class. You should work on a *copy* of this file and can alter its preamble and its contents to make experiments with parameters. A typical preamble follows:

```

913 \<*mtc - art>
914 %% mtc-art.tex
915 %% This file contains a set of tests for the minitoc.sty version #52
916 %% package. You can alter most of parameters to test.
917 %% article (\section must be defined)
918 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{article}
919 \ProvidesFile{mtc-art.tex}%
920 [2007/01/04]
921 \usepackage{lipsum} % provides filling text
922 %%\usepackage{hyperref} % If used, load it BEFORE minitoc
923 \usepackage[tight,insection]{minitoc}
924 \setcounter{secnumdepth}{5} % depth of numbering of sectionning commands
925 \setcounter{tocdepth}{3} % depth of table of contents
926 \setlength{\stcindent}{24pt} % indentation of secttocs, default
927 %% % font for secttocs, default
928 \renewcommand{\stcfont}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}%
929 %% % font for secttocs, subsections
930 %%\renewcommand{\stcSSfont}{\small\sff}%
931 %% you can make experiments with \stcSSfont, \stcPfont and \stcSPfont
932 %% but it is "fontomania"...
933 \raggedbottom % or \flushbottom, at your choice

```

If you want to use sections numbered in each part (the section number restarts to 1 at the beginning of each part), uncomment the 3 lines of code below. This demonstrates that the numbering of the secttoc files is independent of the numbering of the sections (it is absolute).

```

934 %% TEST: uncomment the next line to test
935 %% resetting section number in each part
936 %%\makeatletter \@addtoreset{section}{part} \makeatother
937 %% END TEST

```

We begin the body of the document. You can still alter some parameters (presence or absence of rules and page numbers in the mini-tables):

```
938 \begin{document}
```

The preparation commands, with their optional argument if necessary:

```
939 \dosecttoc
940 \dosectlof[c]           % center titles of the sectlofs
941 \dosectlot
942 \doparttoc             % test of parttoc/partlof stuff
943 \dopartlof             % added in version #15
944 \dopartlot             % added in version #15
```

It is necessary to create the contents files; use the “fake” version to not print.

```
945 \faketableofcontents    % or \tableofcontents
946 \fakelistoffigures      % to check compatibility
947 \fakelistoftables       % to check compatibility
```

There is the text of the document, with its sectionning commands; we define a part, with a parttoc, a partlof (with the title on the right) and a parttoc:

```
948 \part{First Part}
949 \parttoc
950 \partlof[r]
951 \partlot
```

A section, in two columns mode, with a secttoc (title on the right), and a sectlof; this section contains subsections to make a non-empty secttoc but no figures (to detect an empty sectlof).

```
952 \twocolumn\sloppy      % the secttoc in twocolumn layout is ugly,
953                          % but works. Ideas to make it better?
954 \section{AAAAA}         % a section with a lot of sections
955 \secttoc[r]             % secttoc title on the right
956 \mtcskip \sectlof %ADDED
957 \lipsum[1]
958 \subsection{S1}
959 \lipsum[2]
960 \subsection{S2}
961 \lipsum[3]
962 \subsection{S3}
963 \lipsum[4]
964 \subsection*{S4}
965 %%\addcontentsline{toc}{starsubsection}{*S4*}
966 \lipsum[5]
967 \subsection{S5}
968 \lipsum[6]
969 \subsection{S6}
970 \lipsum[7]
971 \subsection{S7}
```



```

972 \lipsum[8]
973 \subsection{S8}
974 \lipsum[9]
975 \subsection{S9}
976 \lipsum[10]
977 \subsection{S10}
978 \lipsum[11]
979 \subsection{S11}
980 \lipsum[12]
981 \subsection{S12}
982 \lipsum[13]
983 \subsection{S13}
984 \lipsum[14]
985 \subsection{S14}
986 \lipsum[15]
987 \subsection{S15}
988 \lipsum[16]
989 \subsection{S16}
990 \lipsum[17]
991 \subsection{S17}
992 \lipsum[18]
993 \subsection{S18}
994 \lipsum[19]
995 \subsection{S19}
996 \lipsum[20]
997 \subsection{S20}
998 \lipsum[21]
999 \subsection{S21}
1000 \lipsum[22]
1001 \subsection{S22}
1002 \lipsum[23]
1003 \subsection{S23}
1004 \lipsum[24]
1005 \subsection{S24}
1006 \lipsum[25]
1007 \subsection{S25}
1008 \lipsum[26]
1009 \subsection{S26}
1010 \lipsum[27]
1011 \subsection{S27}
1012 \lipsum[28]
1013 \subsection{S28}
1014 \lipsum[29]
1015 \subsection{S29}
1016 \lipsum[30]
1017 \subsection{S30}
1018 \lipsum[31]

```

We return to the one column mode. Then a section with a secttoc and a sectlof (there are subsections and figures). The `insection` package option should ensure that floating objects (like figures) do not drift outside their section.

```

1019 \onecolumn\fussy           % back to one column

```

```

1020 \section{BBBBB}
1021 \secttoc
1022 \mtcskip                % put some skip here
1023 \sectlof                % a sectlof
1024 \lipsum[32]
1025 \subsection{T1}
1026 \lipsum[33]
1027 \begin{figure}[t]        % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1028 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1029 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1030 \end{picture}
1031 \caption{F1}             % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
1032 \end{figure}
1033 \FloatBarrier
1034 \subsubsection[tt1]{TT1} % tests optional arg. of a sectionning command
1035 \lipsum[34]
1036 \paragraph{TTT1}
1037 \lipsum[35]
1038 \subparagraph{TTTT1}
1039 \lipsum[36]
1040 \begin{figure}[t]
1041 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1042 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1043 \end{picture}
1044 \caption[f2]{F2}         % tests optional arg. of a caption
1045 \end{figure}
1046 \FloatBarrier
1047 \subsection{T2}
1048 \lipsum[37]
1049 \section*{CCCCC}         % tests a pseudo-section. should have no secttoc
1050 %%\addstarredsection{CCCCC}
1051 \mtcaddsection[CCCCC]
1052 \secttoc \mtcskip \sectlof %ADDED
1053 \lipsum[38]
1054 \subsection{U1}
1055 \lipsum[39]
1056 \subsubsection{UU1}
1057 \lipsum[40]
1058 \paragraph{UUU1}
1059 \lipsum[41]
1060 \subparagraph{UUUU1}
1061 \lipsum[42]
1062 \subsection{U2}
1063 \lipsum[43]
1064 \part{Second Part}
1065 \parttoc
1066 \partlof[c]
1067 \partlot
1068 %%                        % the following section should have no secttoc,
1069 \section{DDDDD}          % but if you uncomment \secttoc,
1070 %%\secttoc
1071 \mtcskip \sectlof %ADDED
1072 %                        % the secttoc appears
1073 \lipsum[44]

```

```

1074 \subsection{V1}
1075 \lipsum[45]
1076 \subsubsection{VV1}
1077 \lipsum[46]
1078 \paragraph{VVV1}
1079 \lipsum[47]
1080 \subparagraph{VVVV1}
1081 \lipsum[48]
1082 \begin{figure}[t]           % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1083 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1084 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1085 \end{picture}
1086 \caption{F3}               % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
1087 \end{figure}
1088 \FloatBarrier
1089 \lipsum[49]
1090 \subsection{V2}
1091 \lipsum[50]

```

We change the depth of the secttocs, inside a local group (a pair of braces):

```

1092 \section{EEEE}            % this section should have a secttoc
1093 {%                         % left brace, see below
1094 \setcounter{secttocdepth}{3} % depth of sect table of contents;
1095                             % try with different values.
1096 \secttoc
1097 \mtcskip \sectlof %ADDED
1098 }                          % right brace
1099 %% this pair of braces is used to keep local the change
1100 %% on secttocdepth.
1101 \lipsum[51]
1102 \subsection{W1}             % with the given depth
1103 \lipsum[52]
1104 \subsubsection{WW1}
1105 \lipsum[53]
1106 \paragraph{WWW1}
1107 \lipsum[54]
1108 \begin{figure}[t]           % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1109 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1110 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1111 \end{picture}
1112 \caption{F4}               % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
1113 \end{figure}
1114 \FloatBarrier
1115 bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla
1116 \subparagraph{WWW1}
1117 \lipsum[55]
1118 \subsection{W2}
1119 \lipsum[56]
1120 \chapter*{}
1121 \part{Appendices}
1122 \parttoc
1123 \mtcskip

```

```

1124 \partlof
1125 \mtcskip
1126 \partlot
1127 \FloatBarrier
1128 \appendix
1129 \section{Comments}
1130 \lipsum[57]
1131 \secttoc
1132 \mtcskip \sectlof %ADDED
1133 \subsection{C1}
1134 \lipsum[58]
1135 \subsection{C2}
1136 \lipsum[59]
1137 \subsection{C3}
1138 \lipsum[60]
1139 \begin{figure}[hb] % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1140 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1141 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1142 \end{picture}
1143 \caption{F5} % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
1144 \end{figure}
1145 \FloatBarrier
1146 \subsection{C4}
1147 \lipsum[61]
1148 \FloatBarrier
1149 \section{Evolution}
1150 \secttoc
1151 \sectlof % empty
1152 \sectlot % empty
1153 \lipsum[62]
1154 \subsection{D1}
1155 \lipsum[63]
1156 \subsection{D2}
1157 \lipsum[64]
1158 \subsection{D3}
1159 \lipsum[65]
1160 \subsection{D4}
1161 \lipsum[66]
1162 \end{document}
1163 </mtc - art>

```

## 4.9 The mtc-bk.tex document file

This is a basic document using the minitoc package. It contains chapters, so it must use a book-like or report-like document class. You should work on a *copy* of this file and can alter its preamble and its contents to make experiments with parameters. A typical preamble follows:

```

1164 <*mtc - bk>
1165 %%%%%%%%%%%%%%% A example file (differs from previous versions)

```

```

1166%% mtc-bk.tex
1167%% This file contains a set of tests for the minitoc.sty version #52
1168%% package file. You can alter most of parameters to test.
1169%% book/report (\chapter must be defined).
1170%% You can use a copy of this file to play with minitoc
1171%% commands and parameters.
1172\documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{report} % the report class uses less pages
1173%%\documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{book}
1174\ProvidesFile{mtc-bk.tex}%
1175 [2007/01/04]
1176\usepackage{lipsum} % provides filling text
1177%%\usepackage{hyperref} % if used, load it BEFORE minitoc
1178%%\usepackage{mtcoff}
1179\usepackage[tight]{minitoc} % tight option make shorter mini-tables
1180\setcounter{secnumdepth}{5} % depth of numbering of sectionning commands
1181\setcounter{tocdepth}{3} % depth of table of contents
1182\setlength{mtcindent}{24pt} % indentation of minitocs, default
1183\renewcommand{\mtcfont}{\small\rm} % font for minitocs, default
1184\renewcommand{\mtcSfont}{\small\bf} % font for minitocs, sections, default
1185%%\renewcommand{\mtcSSfont}{\small\sf} % font for minitocs, subsections
1186%% you can make experiments with \mtcSSfont, \mtcPfont and \mtcSPfont
1187%% but it is "fontomania"...
1188\raggedbottom % or \flushbottom, at your choice

```

If you want to use chapters numbered in each part (the chapter number restarts to 1 at the beginning of each part), uncomment the 3 lines of code below. This demonstrates that the numbering of the minitoc files is independent of the numbering of the chapters (it is absolute).

```

1189%% TEST: uncomment the 3 next lines to test
1190%% resetting chapter number in each part
1191%%\makeatletter
1192%%\@addtoreset{chapter}{part}
1193%%\makeatother
1194%% END TEST

```

We begin the body of the document. You can still alter some parameters (presence or absence of rules and page numbers in the mini-tables):

```

1195\begin{document}
1196\mtcpagenumbers
1197\noptcrule
1198%% \nomtcrule % suppresses minitoc rules
1199%% \nomtcpagenumbers % suppresses minitoc page numbers
1200%% \nomlfpagenumbers % ----- minilof ----
1201%% \nomltpagenumbers % ----- minilot ----

```

The preparation commands, with their optional argument if necessary:

```

1202\dominitoc
1203\dominilof[c] % centers title of minilof's
1204\dominilot
1205\doparttoc % test of parttoc/partlof stuff

```

```

1206 \dopartlof                % added in version #15
1207 \dopartlot                % added in version #15

```

It is necessary to create the contents files; use the “fake” version to not print.

```

1208 \tableofcontents          % or \faketableofcontents
1209 \listoffigures            % or \fakelistoffigures
1210 \fakelistoftables         % or \listoftables

```

Uncomment the following line if the first chapter must be numbered “0”:

```

1211 %%\addtocounter{chapter}{-1} % to begin with Chapter 0

```

There is the text of the document, with its sectionning commands:

```

1212 \part{First Part}
1213 \parttoc
1214 \partlof[r]
1215 \partlot[r]

```

A chapter, in two column mode, with a minitoc (title on the right):

```

1216 \twocolumn\sloppy          % the minitoc in twocolumn layout is ugly,
1217 \chapter{AAAAA}             % a chapter with a lot of sections
1218 \minitoc[r]                 % minitoc title on the right
1219 \lipsum[1]
1220 \section{S1}
1221 \lipsum[2]
1222 \section{S2}
1223 \lipsum[3]
1224 \section{S3}
1225 \lipsum[4]

```

A starred section; we want an entry in the TOC, so we add it the normal way:

```

1226 \section*{S4}
1227 \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{\protect\numberline{}{S4}}
1228 \lipsum[5]
1229 \section{S5}
1230 \lipsum[6]
1231 \section{S6}
1232 \lipsum[6]
1233 \section{S7}
1234 \lipsum[7]
1235 \section{S8}
1236 \lipsum[9]
1237 \section{S9}
1238 \lipsum[10]
1239 \section{S10}
1240 \lipsum[11]

```

```

1241 \section{S11}
1242 \lipsum[12]
1243 \section{S12}
1244 \lipsum[13]
1245 \section{S13}
1246 \lipsum[14]
1247 \section{S14}
1248 \lipsum[15]
1249 \section{S15}
1250 \lipsum[16]
1251 \section{S16}
1252 \lipsum[17]
1253 \section{S17}
1254 \lipsum[18]
1255 \section{S18}
1256 \lipsum[19]
1257 \section{S19}
1258 \lipsum[20]
1259 \section{S20}
1260 \lipsum[21]
1261 \section{S21}
1262 \lipsum[22]
1263 \section{S22}
1264 \lipsum[23]
1265 \section{S23}
1266 \lipsum[24]
1267 \section{S24}
1268 \lipsum[25]
1269 \section{S25}
1270 \lipsum[26]
1271 \section{S26}
1272 \lipsum[27]
1273 \section{S27}
1274 \lipsum[28]
1275 \section{S28}
1276 \lipsum[29]
1277 \section{S29}
1278 \lipsum[30]
1279 \section{S30}
1280 \lipsum[31]
1281 \subsection{SS1}
1282 \lipsum[32]
1283 \section{S31}
1284 \lipsum[33]

```

We return to one column mode. A new chapter, with a minitoc, a minilof and a minilot:

```

1285 \onecolumn\fussy           % back to one column
1286 \chapter{BBBBB}
1287 \minitoc
1288 \mtcskip                   % put some skip here
1289 \minilof                   % a minilof
1290 \mtcskip                   % put some skip here

```

```

1291 \minilot                % a minilot
1292 \lipsum[34]
1293 \section{T1}
1294 \lipsum[35]
1295 \begin{figure}[t]        % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1296 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1297 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1298 \end{picture}
1299 \caption{F1}             % (tables are similar)
1300 \end{figure}
1301 \begin{table}[b]          % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1302 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1303 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1304 \end{picture}
1305 \caption{T1}             % (tables are similar)
1306 \end{table}
1307 \clearpage
1308 \subsection[tt1]{TT1}    % tests optional arg. of a sectionning command
1309 \lipsum[36]
1310 \subsubsection{TTT1}
1311 \lipsum[37]
1312 \paragraph{TTTT1}
1313 \lipsum[38]
1314 \begin{figure}
1315 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1316 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1317 \end{picture}
1318 \caption[f2]{F2}         % tests optional arg. of a caption
1319 \end{figure}
1320 \section{T2}
1321 \lipsum[39]

```

A starred chapter with an entry added in the TOC; all subordinate (lower) sectionning commands must also be starred.

```

1322 \chapter*{CCCCC}        % tests a pseudo-chapter; could have a minitoc.
1323 \addstarredchapter{CCCCC}
1324 \lipsum[40]
1325 \section*{U1}
1326 \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{U1}
1327 \lipsum[41]
1328 \subsection*{UU1}
1329 \addcontentsline{toc}{subsection}{UU1}
1330 \lipsum[42]
1331 \subsubsection*{UUU1}
1332 \addcontentsline{toc}{subsubsection}{UUU1}
1333 \lipsum[43]
1334 \paragraph*{UUUU1}
1335 \addcontentsline{toc}{paragraph}{UUUU1}
1336 \lipsum[44]
1337 \section*{U2}
1338 \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{U2}
1339 \lipsum[45]

```



```

1340 \part{Second Part}
1341 \parttoc
1342 \partlof[c]

```

This chapter has no minitoc, but if you uncomment `\minitoc`, the minitoc will appear.

```

1343 %%                                % the following chapter should have no minitoc,
1344 \chapter{DDDDD}                    % but if you uncomment \minitoc,
1345 %%\minitoc                          % the minitoc appears
1346 \lipsum[46]
1347 \section{V1}
1348 \lipsum[47]
1349 \subsection{VV1}
1350 \lipsum[48]
1351 \subsubsection{VVV1}
1352 \lipsum[49]
1353 \paragraph{VVVV1}
1354 \lipsum[50]
1355 \begin{figure}[t]                  % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1356 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1357 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1358 \end{picture}
1359 \caption{F3}                      % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
1360 \end{figure}
1361 \lipsum[51]
1362 \section{V2}
1363 \lipsum[52]

```

We change the depth of the minitocs, inside a local group (a pair of braces):

```

1364 \chapter{EEEE}                    % this chapter should have a minitoc
1365 {%                                % left brace, see below
1366 \setcounter{minitocdepth}{3}        % depth of mini table of contents;
1367                                     % try with different values.
1368 \minitoc
1369 }                                    % right brace
1370 %% this pair of braces is used to keep local the change
1371 %% on minitocdepth.
1372 \lipsum[53]
1373 \section{W1}                        % with the given depth
1374 \lipsum[54]
1375 \subsection{WW1}
1376 \lipsum[55]
1377 \subsubsection{WWW1}
1378 \lipsum[56]
1379 \begin{figure}[t]                  % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1380 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1381 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1382 \end{picture}
1383 \caption{F4}                      % (I have not tested tables here, but it is similar)
1384 \end{figure}
1385 \lipsum[57]
1386 \paragraph{WWWW1}

```

```

1387 \lipsum[58]
1388 \subparagraph{WWWWW1}
1389 \lipsum[59]
1390 \section{W2}
1391 \lipsum[60]

```

Here, we encounter a classical problem: to make a local table of contents for a set of appendices, while hiding these entries in the main table of contents. First, we create a part, with its parttoc:

```

1392 \appendix
1393 \part{Appendices}
1394 \parttoc

```

Then, we begin a `mtchideinmaintoc` environment, with the hiding depth as optional argument:

```

1395 \begin{mtchideinmaintoc}[-1]
1396 \chapter{Comments}
1397 \minitoc
1398 \section{C1}
1399 \lipsum[61]
1400 \section{C2}
1401 \lipsum[62]
1402 \section{C3}
1403 \lipsum[63]
1404 \begin{figure}[t]          % tests compatibility with floating bodies
1405 \setlength{\unitlength}{1mm}
1406 \begin{picture}(100,50)
1407 \end{picture}
1408 \caption{F5}              % (I have not tested tables, but it is similar)
1409 \end{figure}
1410 \section{C4}
1411 \chapter{Evolution}
1412 \minitoc
1413 \minilof %Empty => invisible
1414 \minilot %Empty => invisible
1415 \section{D1}
1416 \lipsum[64]
1417 \section{D2}
1418 \lipsum[65]
1419 \section{D3}
1420 \lipsum[66]
1421 \section{D4}

```

We terminate the part by adding a marker in the TOC file, then we must close this `mtchideinmaintoc` environment:

```

1422 %% this line closes the omitted part
1423 \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\partbegin}
1424 %% this line restore the depth in the main TOC

```

```

1425 \end{mtchideinmaintoc}
1426 \lipsum[67]
1427 \end{document}
1428 </mtc – bk>

```

## 4.10 The mtc-bo.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document using a two column layout for some portions and the tocloft package [265]. The aim is to begin a chapter with a special head and a preliminary block containing a minitoc and some indications, on two columns. The preamble loads some useful packages for the french language, the geometry package [250], which defines the global page layout, the multicol package [198], the color package [95], because we want a colored background for the minitoc, the tocloft package [265], to change some parameters of the minitoc, and, at least, the minitoc package.

```

1429 <*mtc – bo>
1430 \documentclass[10pt]{book}
1431 \ProvidesFile{mtc-bo.tex}%
1432 [2007/01/04]
1433 \usepackage[paperwidth=8.5in,paperheight=11in,%
1434 lmargin=1.25in,rmargin=1.25in,tmargin=1in,bmargin=1in]{geometry}
1435 \usepackage[francais]{babel}
1436 \usepackage{franc,frnew}
1437 \usepackage[T1]{fontenc}
1438 \usepackage[isolatin]{inputenc}
1439 \usepackage{mypatches}
1440 \usepackage{multicol}
1441 \usepackage{color}

```

We use the tocloft package and its commands to set the indentations in the TOC and the minitoc:

```

1442 \usepackage{tocloft}
1443 \setlength{\cftsecindent}{0cm}
1444 \setlength{\cftsecnumwidth}{15 pt}
1445 \setlength{\cftsubsecindent}{\cftsecindent}
1446 \addtolength{\cftsubsecindent}{\cftsecnumwidth}
1447 \setlength{\cftsubsecnumwidth}{20 pt}
1448 \setlength{\cftsubsubsecindent}{\cftsubsecindent}
1449 \addtolength{\cftsubsubsecindent}{\cftsubsecnumwidth}

```

Note that if we want to suppress the page numbers in the minitoc, we must use the commands from tocloft:

```

1450 \cftpagenumbersoff{sec}
1451 \cftpagenumbersoff{subsec}

```

```

1452 \usepackage[francais,tight]{minitoc}
1453 \usepackage{hyperref}
1454 \setlength{\mtcindent}{0pt}
1455 \nomtcrule           % pas de filets en haut et en bas de la mini-tdm
1456 \nomtcpagenumbers % pas de numéro de pages
1457 %                    (non fonctionnel avec tocloft)
1458 \renewcommand{\mtctitle}{Contenu de la rencontre}

```

```

1459 %%%
1460 % MACRO POUR AVOIR LE MOT RENCONTRE AU LIEU DE CHAPITRE
1461 % Sans saut de ligne
1462 % (modification du code qui se trouve dans la FAQ)
1463 %%%
1464 \makeatletter
1465 \def\@makechapterhead#1{%
1466 \vspace*{10\p@}%
1467 {\parindent \z@ \raggedleft \normalfont
1468 \interlinepenalty\@M
1469 \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\m@ne
1470 \Huge\bfseries\sffamily Rencontre \thechapter\% \quad
1471 \fi
1472 \Huge\bfseries\sffamily #1\par\nobreak
1473 \vskip 10\p@
1474 }}
1475 \def\@makeschapterhead#1{%
1476 \vspace*{10\p@}%
1477 {\parindent \z@ \raggedright \normalfont
1478 \interlinepenalty\@M
1479 \Huge \sffamily #1\par\nobreak
1480 \vskip 10\p@
1481 }} \makeatother

```

```

1482 %%%
1483 %: ENVIRONNEMENT POUR LA PAGE 1 DES RENCONTRES
1484 %%%
1485 % param1: date de la rencontre
1486 % param2: nombre de périodes
1487 % param3: liste des documents distribués
1488 % param4: messages
1489 % param5: lecture
1490 % param6: exercices
1491 %%%

```

```

1492 \newenvironment{pageUn}[6]{%
1493 \parindent = 0.0in
1494 \rule{\linewidth}{1pt}
1495 \begin{multicols}{2}
1496     {\large \bfseries Math. pour médecine nucléaire\\
1497     \textit{(#2)}}
1498     \vfill\columnbreak
1499     \raggedleft\bfseries Automne 2003\\
1500     #1
1501 \end{multicols}
1502 \vspace{-18pt}
1503 \rule{\linewidth}{1pt}
1504
1505 \setlength{\columnseprule}{.3pt}
1506 \setlength{\columnsep}{1cm}
1507 \begin{multicols}{2}%
1508
1509 %: TABLE DES MATIÈRES (col. gauche)
1510 \colorbox[cmk]{.1,0,0}{%
1511     \parbox{\linewidth}{%
1512         \setcounter{minitocdepth}{3}%
1513         \minitoc%
1514     }}
1515 %\vfill \columnbreak ~ \vfill
1516
1517 \mtcskip
1518
1519 %: DOCUMENTS DISTRIBUÉS (début col. droite)
1520
1521 {\large \bfseries Documents distribués}
1522 \begin{itemize} \renewcommand{\labelitemi}{$\star$} #3 \end{itemize}
1523
1524 %: MESSAGES AUX ÉTUDIANTS
1525
1526 \vspace{12pt}{\large \bfseries Messages}
1527 \begin{itemize} \renewcommand{\labelitemi}{$\star$} #4 \end{itemize}
1528
1529 %: LECTURE
1530 \vspace{12pt}{\large \bfseries Lecture}\vspace{-6pt} \par#5 \par
1531
1532 % EXERCICES
1533 \vspace{12pt}{\large \bfseries Exercices}\vspace{-6pt}\par#6\par
1534
1535 %\newpage
1536 \end{multicols}%
1537 }
1538 %{\newpage}
1539 {\hrule}
1540
1541 \renewcommand{\baselinestretch}{1.2} %interligne
1542
1543 %\pagestyle{empty} %pas de # de page
1544 %\parindent = 0.0in
1545 \parskip = 0.1in

```

```

1546
1547 %%%%%%%%%%
1548 %: REDÉFINIR LES SECTIONS
1549 %%%%%%%%%%
1550 \renewcommand{\thesection}{\Alph{section}}
1551 %\renewcommand{\thesection}{\thechapter-\Alph{section}}
1552

```

The body of the document:

```

1553 %%%%%%%%%%
1554 %: BEGIN
1555 %%%%%%%%%%
1556 \begin{document}
1557 \dominitoc
1558 \faketableofcontents
1559 \chapter{Première étape (début)}
1560 %\minitoc
1561 \begin{pageUn}
1562     {%1      Date du cours
1563             lundi 25 août
1564             }
1565     {%2      Durée du cours
1566             2 périodes
1567             }
1568     {%3      Liste des documents à~distribuer
1569             \item Plan de cours
1570             \item Fiche d'identification
1571             \item Grille horaire
1572             \item Feuilles d'exercices supplémentaires
1573             }
1574     {%4      Ne pas oublier
1575             \item Acheter le livre de référence
1576             \item Apporter une disquette
1577             }
1578     {%5      Lecture
1579             Lire les pages ppp à~ppp et ppp à~ppp
1580             }
1581     {%6      Exercice
1582             Faire les exercices nnn de la page ppp
1583             }
1584 \end{pageUn}
1585
1586 %%%%%%%%%%
1587 \section{Titre de la section}
1588 %%%%%%%%%%
1589
1590 Texte dans la section
1591
1592 %%
1593 \subsection{Une sous-section}
1594 %%
1595 Bla bla bla

```

```

1596
1597 %%
1598 \subsection{Une autre sous-section}
1599 %%
1600 Bla bla bla
1601
1602
1603 %%%%%%%%%%%
1604 \section{Titre d'une autre section}
1605 %%%%%%%%%%%
1606
1607 Texte dans la section
1608
1609 %%
1610 \subsection{Une sous-section}
1611 %%
1612 Bla bla bla
1613
1614 %%
1615 \subsection{Une autre sous-section}
1616 %%
1617 Bla bla bla
1618
1619
1620 %%%%%%%%%%%
1621 \section{Encore une autre section}
1622 %%%%%%%%%%%
1623
1624 Texte dans la section
1625
1626 \end{document}
1627 </mtc – bo>

```

## 4.11 The mtc-ch0.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document using a starred first chapter, inducing the “Chapter Zero” problem.

```

1628 <*mtc – ch0>
1629 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{report}
1630 \ProvidesFile{mtc-ch0.tex}%
1631 [2007/01/04]
1632 \usepackage[tight,english]{minitoc}
1633 \begin{document}
1634 \dominitoc
1635 \tableofcontents

```

The first chapter is starred, but contains real numbered sections. We add an entry in the TOC for this chapter and see that its sections are using “0” as chapter number:

```

1636 \chapter*{Chapter One (starred)}
1637 \mtcaddchapter[Fake chapter one]
1638 \minitoc
1639 \section{Chap 1, section 1}
1640 That's right, folks -- we're close to the release of Firefox and
1641 Thunderbird~1.0 and, just like our last 1.0~release, we want to organize
1642 worldwide parties to celebrate.
1643
1644 Thanks to Dominik 'Aeneas' Schnitzer, we have an all-new and improved
1645 Mozilla Party Webtool~2.0. You can create your own party, or sign up for
1646 one already in progress -- and, in an improvement on Webtool~1.0,
1647 organizers can now edit and update party details. The tool allows you to
1648 organize a celebration in any of 243~countries, principalities,
1649 dominions and islands around the world. Never let it be said that we do
1650 things by halves around here.
1651
1652 \subsection{Chap 1, section 1, subsection 1}
1653 That's right, folks -- we're close to the release of Firefox and
1654 Thunderbird~1.0 and, just like our last 1.0~release, we want to organize
1655 worldwide parties to celebrate.
1656
1657 Thanks to Dominik 'Aeneas' Schnitzer, we have an all-new and improved
1658 Mozilla Party Webtool~2.0. You can create your own party, or sign up for
1659 one already in progress -- and, in an improvement on Webtool~1.0,
1660 organizers can now edit and update party details. The tool allows you to
1661 organize a celebration in any of 243~countries, principalities,
1662 dominions and islands around the world. Never let it be said that we do
1663 things by halves around here.

```

The second chapter is normal:

```

1664 \chapter{Chapter Two (numbered one)}
1665 \minitoc
1666 \section{Chapter 2, section 1}
1667 That's right, folks -- we're close to the release of Firefox and
1668 Thunderbird 1.0 and, just like our last 1.0~release, we want to organize
1669 worldwide parties to celebrate.
1670
1671 Thanks to Dominik 'Aeneas' Schnitzer, we have an all-new and improved
1672 Mozilla Party Webtool~2.0. You can create your own party, or sign up for
1673 one already in progress -- and, in an improvement on Webtool~1.0,
1674 organizers can now edit and update party details. The tool allows you to
1675 organize a celebration in any of 243~countries, principalities,
1676 dominions and islands around the world. Never let it be said that we do
1677 things by halves around here.
1678 \end{document}
1679 </mtc - ch0>

```



## 4.12 The mtc-cri.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document with a starred part and starred chapters. Note the use of the adjustment commands. This example is not commented: just follow the insertion of the mini-tables in the mtc-cri.log file.

```

1680 <*mtc - cri>
1681 \documentclass[12pt,a4paper]%
1682 {report}
1683 \ProvidesFile{mtc-cri.tex}%
1684 [2007/01/04]
1685 \usepackage[français]{babel}
1686 \usepackage[T1]{fontenc}
1687 \usepackage[latin1]{inputenc}
1688 \usepackage%
1689 [french2,tight]%
1690 {minitoc}
1691
1692 \mtcsetdepth{parttoc}{2}
1693
1694 \begin{document}
1695 \doparttoc
1696 \dominitoc
1697 \tableofcontents
1698 \part*{Présentation générale}
1699 \mtcaddpart{Présentation générale}
1700 \adjustptc[-2]
1701 \parttoc
1702
1703 Texte de la
1704 présentation générale\ldots

```

```

1705
1706 \chapter*{Les auteurs}
1707 \mtcaddchapter[Les auteurs]
1708 Présentation des auteurs\ldots
1709
1710 \chapter*{Les lecteurs}
1711 \mtcaddchapter[Les lecteurs]
1712 Présentation des lecteurs\ldots
1713
1714 \part{Première partie}
1715 \parttoc
1716 \chapter*{Introduction}
1717 \mtcaddchapter[Introduction]
1718 \chapter{Premier chapitre}
1719 \minitoc
1720 \section{Première section~A}
1721 \section{Deuxième section~A}
1722 \chapter{Deuxième chapitre}
1723 \minitoc
1724 \section{Première section~B}
1725 \section{Deuxième section~B}
1726
1727 \part{Deuxième partie}
1728 \parttoc
1729 \chapter{Premier chapitre}
1730 \minitoc
1731 \section{Première section~C}
1732 \section{Deuxième section~C}
1733 \chapter{Deuxième chapitre}
1734 \minitoc
1735 \section{Première section~D}
1736 \section{Deuxième section~D}
1737 \end{document}
1738 </mtc - cri>

```

## 4.13 The mtc-fo1.tex document file

This document creates several copies of the same parttoc, but with different fonts (for the chapter level entries); you can compare the results.

```

1739 <*mtc - fo1>
1740 \documentclass{report}
1741 \ProvidesFile{mtc-fo1.tex}%
1742 [2007/01/04]
1743 \usepackage{lipsum}
1744 \usepackage{txfonts}

```

```

1745 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
1746 \begin{document}
1747 \doparttoc
1748 \dominitoc
1749 \tableofcontents
1750 \part{Introduction}
1751 \clearpage

```

A first copy, with default fonts:

```

1752 \parttoc

```

A second copy, roman bold font for chapter entries:

```

1753 \clearpage
1754 \mtcsetfont{parttoc}{chapter}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
1755 \parttoc

```

A third copy, typewriter bold font for chapter entries:

```

1756 \clearpage
1757 \mtcsetfont{parttoc}{chapter}{\normalsize\ttfamily\upshape\bfseries}
1758 \parttoc

```

A fourth copy, not bold typewriter font for chapter entries:

```

1759 \clearpage
1760 \mtcsetfont{parttoc}{*}{\normalsize\ttfamily\upshape\mdseries}
1761 \parttoc
1762 \chapter{A very short chapter}
1763 \minitoc
1764 \lipsum[1]
1765 \section{First section}
1766 \lipsum[2]
1767 \subsection{Alpha}
1768 \lipsum[3]
1769 \subsection{Beta}
1770 \lipsum[4]
1771 \section{Second section}
1772 \lipsum[5]
1773 \subsection{Gamma}
1774 \lipsum[6]
1775 \subsection{Delta}
1776 \lipsum[7]
1777 \end{document}
1778 </mtc - fo1>

```

## 4.14 The mtc-fo2.tex document file

This document creates several copies of the same parttoc, but with different fonts (for the chapter level entries); you can compare the results. As the fonts are not declared the same way, compare the results with those of mtc-fo1.tex (see section 4.13 on page 121).

```

1779 <*mtc - fo2>
1780 \documentclass{report}
1781 \ProvidesFile{mtc-fo2.tex}%
1782 [2007/01/04]
1783 \usepackage{lipsum}
1784 \usepackage{txfonts}
1785 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}

```

We declare the fonts with the old method:

```

1786 \def\ptcSSfont{\ptcfont} % (subsections)
1787 \def\ptcSSSfont{\ptcfont} % (subsubsections)
1788 \def\ptcPfont{\ptcfont} % (paragraphs)
1789 \def\ptcSPfont{\ptcfont} % (subparagraphs)
1790 \def\plffont{\ptcfont} % (figures)
1791 \def\plfSfont{\ptcfont} % (subfigures)
1792 \def\pltfont{\ptcfont} % (tables)
1793 \def\pltSfont{\ptcfont} % (subtables)
1794 \begin{document}
1795 \doparttoc
1796 \dominitoc
1797 \tableofcontents
1798 \part{Introduction}
1799 \clearpage

```

A first version of the parttoc, with the fonts defined above:

```

1800 \parttoc
1801 \clearpage

```

A second version of the parttoc, with chapter entries in a roman bold font:

```

1802 \mtcsetfont{parttoc}{chapter}{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
1803 \parttoc
1804 \clearpage

```

A third version of the parttoc, with chapter entries in a typewriter bold font:

```

1805 \mtcsetfont{parttoc}{chapter}{\normalsize\ttfamily\upshape\bfseries}
1806 \parttoc
1807 \clearpage

```

A fourth version of the parttoc, with chapter entries in a non bold typewriter font:

```

1808 \mtcsetfont{parttoc}{*}{\normalsize\ttfamily\upshape\mdseries}
1809 \parttoc
1810 \chapter{A very short chapter}
1811 \minitoc
1812 \lipsum[1]
1813 \section{First section}
1814 \lipsum[2]
1815 \subsection{Alpha}
1816 \lipsum[3]
1817 \subsection{Beta}
1818 \lipsum[4]
1819 \section{Second section}
1820 \lipsum[5]
1821 \subsection{Gamma}
1822 \lipsum[6]
1823 \subsection{Delta}
1824 \lipsum[7]
1825 \end{document}
1826 </mtc - fo2>

```

## 4.15 The mtc-gap.tex document file

The mtc-gap.tex document file is described in section 2.44 on page 73.

## 4.16 The mtc-hi1.tex document file

The mtc-hi1.tex document file is described in section 2.25 on page 65.

## 4.17 The mtc-hi2.tex document file

The mtc-hi2.tex document file is described in section 2.25 on page 66.

## 4.18 The mtc-hia.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document where the entries for some tables must be hidden in the main list of tables. The document uses the article class.

```

1827 <*mtc - hia>
1828 \documentclass%
1829   [oneside,a4paper]{article}
1830 \ProvidesFile{mtc-hia.tex}%
1831   [2007/01/04]
1832 \usepackage{lipsum}
1833 \usepackage%
1834   [tight,insection]%
1835     {minitoc}
1836 \dosectlot
1837 \begin{document}
1838 \listoftables
1839 \section{First section}
1840 \sectlot
1841 \lipsum[1]
1842 \begin{table}[hb]
1843 \caption{My first visible table}
1844 \end{table}
1845 \lipsum[2]
1846 \begin{table}[ht]
1847 \caption{A second visible table}
1848 \end{table}
1849 \lipsum[3]

```

For the *first* hidden table, we add `\mtchideinmainlot` *before* its caption:

```

1850 \begin{table}[hb]
1851 \mtchideinmainlot
1852 \caption{My first hidden table}
1853 \end{table}
1854 \lipsum[4-6]
1855 \begin{table}[ht]
1856 \caption{A second hidden table}
1857 \end{table}
1858 \lipsum[7]
1859 \section{Second section}
1860 \sectlot
1861 \lipsum[8]

```

For the *last* hidden table, we add `\endmtchideinmainlot` *after* its caption:

```

1862 \begin{table}[hb]
1863 \caption{My last hidden table}
1864 \endmtchideinmainlot
1865 \end{table}
1866 \lipsum[9]
1867 \begin{table}[ht]
1868 \caption{A third visible table}
1869 \end{table}
1870 \lipsum[10]
1871 \begin{table}[hb]
1872 \caption{A fourth visible table}
1873 \end{table}
1874 \lipsum[11]
1875 \end{document}
1876 </mtc - hia>

```

## 4.19 The mtc-hir.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document where the entries for some tables must be hidden in the main list of tables. The document uses the report class.

```

1877 <*mtc - hir>
1878 \documentclass[a4paper]{report}
1879 \ProvidesFile{mtc-hir.tex}%

```

```

1880   [2007/01/04]
1881 \usepackage{lipsum}
1882 \usepackage%
1883   [tight]{minitoc}
1884 \dominilot
1885 \begin{document}
1886 \listoftables
1887 \chapter{First chapter}
1888 \minilot

```

```

1889 \lipsum[1]
1890 \begin{table}[hb]
1891 \caption{My first visible table}
1892 \end{table}
1893 \lipsum[2]
1894 \begin{table}[ht]
1895 \caption{A second visible table}
1896 \end{table}
1897 \lipsum[3]

```

For the *first* hidden table, we add  
`\mtchideinmainlot` *before* its caption:

```

1898 \begin{table}[hb]
1899 \mtchideinmainlot % <--
1900 \caption{My first hidden table}
1901 \end{table}
1902 \lipsum[4-6]
1903 \begin{table}[ht]
1904 \caption{A second hidden table}
1905 \end{table}
1906 \lipsum[7]
1907 \chapter{Second chapter}

```

```

1908 \minilot
1909 \lipsum[8]

```

For the *last* hidden table, we add  
`\endmtchideinmainlot` *after* its  
caption:

```

1910 \begin{table}[hb]
1911 \caption{My last hidden table}
1912 \endmtchideinmainlot % <--
1913 \end{table}
1914 \lipsum[9]
1915 \begin{table}[ht]
1916 \caption{A third visible table}
1917 \end{table}
1918 \lipsum[10]
1919 \begin{table}[hb]
1920 \caption{A fourth visible table}
1921 \end{table}
1922 \lipsum[11]
1923 \end{document}
1924 </mtc - hir>

```

## 4.20 The mtc-hop.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document of class `scrbook`.

```

1925 <*mtc - hop>
1926 \documentclass[oneside,12pt]{scrbook}
1927 \ProvidesFile{mtc-hop.tex}%
1928 [2007/01/04]
1929 \usepackage{lipsum}
1930 \usepackage[hints]{minitoc}
1931 \begin{document}

```

We prepare the minitocs and the minilofs, we print the TOC but not the LOF (while the LOF file is prepared):

```

1932 \dominitoc
1933 \dominilof
1934 \tableofcontents
1935 \fakelistoffigures

```

A starred part with its entry in the TOC:

```

1936 \part*{Part 1: Strategic Marketing}
1937 \mtcaddpart[Part 1: Strategic Marketing]

```

Then two chapters with their minitocs and minitocs:

```

1938 \chapter{Chapter 1}
1939 \minitoc
1940 \minilof
1941 \section{Section one of first chapter}
1942 \lipsum[1]
1943 \begin{figure}
1944     \centering
1945     Test
1946     \caption{Picture one of first chapter}
1947 \end{figure}
1948
1949 \section{Section two of first chapter}
1950 \lipsum[2]
1951 \begin{figure}
1952     \centering
1953     Test
1954     \caption{Picture two of first chapter}
1955 \end{figure}
1956
1957 \chapter{Chapter 2}
1958 \minitoc \minilof
1959
1960 \section{Section one of second chapter}
1961 \lipsum[3]
1962 \begin{figure}
1963     \centering
1964     Test
1965     \caption{Picture one of second chapter}
1966 \end{figure}
1967 \cleardoublepage
1968 \section{Section two of second chapter}
1969 \lipsum[4]
1970 \begin{figure}
1971     \centering
1972     Test
1973     \caption{Picture two of second chapter}
1974 \end{figure}
1975 \end{document}
1976 </mtc – hop>

```

## 4.21 The mtc-liv.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document of book class, with customized TOC and minitocs.

```

1977 < *mtc – liv>
1978 \documentclass[10pt,twoside,openright]{book}
1979 \ProvidesFile{mtc-liv.tex}%

```

1980 [2007/01/04]

First, we want that empty pages be really empty, without page number nor headers, so we redefine `\cleardoublepage`:

```

1981 \makeatletter
1982 \def\ps@chapterverso{\ps@empty}%
1983 \def\cleardoublepage{\clearpage
1984   \if@twoside
1985     \ifodd\c@page\else
1986       \null\thispagestyle{chapterverso}\newpage
1987       \if@twocolumn\null\newpage\fi
1988     \fi
1989   \fi
1990 }%
1991 \def\ps@chapterverso{\ps@empty}%
1992 \makeatother

```

We define the encodings, for input and output, because the document is in french and uses accented letters:

```

1993 \usepackage[latin1]{inputenc}
1994 \usepackage[TS1,T1]{fontenc}

```

We load two packages, `tocloft` [265], to customize the TOC and the minitocs, and `sectsty` [194], to customize the sectionning commands:

```

1995 \usepackage{tocloft}
1996 \usepackage{sectsty}

```

We load the `minitoc` package then some complementary local packages for the french language:

```

1997 \usepackage[french,undotted,tight]{minitoc}
1998 \usepackage[english,français]{babel}
1999 \usepackage{franc,frnew}
2000 \usepackage{mypatches}
2001 \providecommand{\fup}{\textsuperscript}

```

We make some customizations: indentation for the subsection entries in the TOC and the minitocs, depth of the TOC, numerotation depth, depth of the minitocs, some fonts:

```

2002 \addtolength{\cftsubsecindent}{1em} % for tocloft
2003 \cftsetrmarg{2.55em plus 1fil} % to avoid hyphenations in the ToC (tocloft).
2004 \setcounter{tocdepth}{3}
2005 \setcounter{secnumdepth}{1}
2006 \setcounter{minitocdepth}{4}
2007 \chapterfont{\huge\bfseries\sffamily} % for sectsty
2008 \renewcommand{\thesection}{\arabic{section}}
2009 \sectionfont{\Large\raggedright} % for sectsty (to avoid hyphenations in section titles)

```



Some informations for the title page:

```
2010 \title{Systèmes d'occultation}
2011 \author{Laurent~\textsc{Bloch}}
```

And the document body<sup>3</sup>:

```
2012 \begin{document}
2013
2014 \maketitle
2015
2016 \dominitoc
2017 \tableofcontents
2018
2019 \chapter{Définition et contrôle du travail à~faire}
2020 \label{chap+controle}
2021 \minitoc
2022
2023 \section{Le modèle de la grande industrie et le taylorisme}%
2024 \index{taylorisme}
2025 C'est au \textsc{xviii}\fup{e}~siècle que la vision du travail comme
2026 marchandise est vraiment devenue dominante, pour s'imposer au
2027 \textsc{xix}\fup{e}~siècle dans l'organisation type de la grande usine
2028 industrielle.
2029
2030 \subsection*{Après l'usine, le centre d'appel}\index{centre d'appel}
2031 \addcontentsline{toc}{subsection}{Après l'usine, le centre d'appel}
2032 Aujourd'hui le taylorisme\index{taylorisme} au sens
2033 strict est en déclin parce qu'il n'est plus guère adapté aux
2034 besoins de la production industrielle contemporaine non plus qu'aux
2035 nouvelles normes de comportement individuel et collectif.
2036
2037 \section{Tout travail émet de la pensée}
2038 Le travail a vocation à~produire du sens, pour son auteur comme pour
2039 son destinataire.
2040
2041 \section{Théorie et pratique de la commande publique}
2042 En France, les prestations de service commandées par les
2043 services publics à~des entreprises font l'objet de contrôles
2044 de leur bonne réalisation selon des procédures et des règles
2045 qui sont des cas particuliers d'un ensemble plus vaste, la
2046 réglementation des marchés publics de l'État, dont nous
2047 allons donner ci-dessous une brève description.
2048
2049 \subsection{Réglementation des marchés publics}
2050 Le dispositif juridique, réglementaire et comptable qui encadre les
2051 actes contractuels de la puissance publique en France est très~[...]
2052
2053 \subsubsection{Premier principe: séparation de l'ordonnateur et du comptable}
2054 Le premier élément du dispositif est le principe de
2055 séparation de l'ordonnateur et du comptable. Il a été
```

---

<sup>3</sup> The text has been shortened, so there is an undefined reference; do not worry.

2056 instauré en 1319 par l'ordonnance portant création de la~[...]  
2057  
2058 \subsubsection{Second principe: contrôle \emph{a~priori}}  
2059 Le second élément du dispositif est le principe du contrôle  
2060 \emph{a~priori}. Lorsque le directeur de l'organisme public  
2061 de recherche pris ici comme exemple (l'ordonnateur) décide~[...]  
2062  
2063 \subsubsection{Le Code des Marchés Publics}  
2064 Le troisième pilier de la commande publique est le Code des Marchés  
2065 Publics (CMP), qui régit tous les contrats, conclus par des organismes  
2066 publics ou des collectivités territoriales, dont le montant excède un~[...]  
2067  
2068 \subsection{La pratique des marchés publics}  
2069 Lorsque l'administration française fait réaliser un système  
2070 informatique par un prestataire, elle est en position de maître  
2071 d'ouvrage\index{maîtrise d'ouvrage}. Elle rédige (ou fait rédiger) un  
2072 cahier des charges\index{cahier des charges} qui décrit les  
2073 spécifications du système à~réaliser. Ce cahier des charges constitue~[...]  
2074  
2075 \subsection{Quels sont les services publics «~rentables~»?}  
2076 Pour parler comme les informaticiens, nous pouvons identifier un  
2077 « effet de bord », c'est-à-dire une conséquence non intentionnelle de  
2078 la réglementation des marchés publics: les administrations ne disposent  
2079 d'aucun moyen pour envisager la notion d'investissement. Le~[...]  
2080  
2081 \section{Projet et cahier des charges}\index{cahier des charges}  
2082 Jean-Pierre~\textsc{Boutinet} nous guidera ici pour ce qui concerne  
2083 l'histoire de la notion de~[...]  
2084  
2085 \subsection{La frontière entre conception et fabrication}  
2086 La vision classique de la conduite d'un projet informatique de gestion  
2087 est la suivante: le maître d'ouvrage\index{maîtrise d'ouvrage}~[...]  
2088  
2089 \subsection{Bâtiment, mécanique, programmation}  
2090  
2091 Nous y reviendrons au chapitre~\ref{chap+travail}, mais nous savons  
2092 déjà que la mise en {\oe}uvre de l'informatique s'est beaucoup  
2093 inspirée des procédures de travail les plus élaborées du  
2094 \textsc{xx}\fup{e}~siècle~[...]  
2095  
2096 \chapter{Le travail informatique}  
2097 \minitoc  
2098  
2099 \section{De la nature de l'informatique}  
2100  
2101 \subsection{Premières croyances}\label{sub+premcroyances}  
2102 Les premiers ordinateurs, qui entrèrent en fonction à~l'extrême fin  
2103 des années 1940 et durant les années 1950, étaient consacrés à~des  
2104 travaux militaires ou scientifiques puisque, à~cette époque,  
2105 on pensait~[...]  
2106  
2107 \subsection{Comment l'informatique diffère des mathématiques}  
2108 J'aimerai à~l'occasion de cette analyse attirer l'attention du  
2109 lecteur sur une question qui est une source constante de malentendus

```

2110 au sujet de la programmation.
2111
2112 \subsubsection{Les preuves de programme}
2113 L'écriture de programmes informatiques obéit à~de tout autres
2114 principes. Il convient de préciser cette affirmation pour la
2115 préserver~[...]
2116
2117 \section{Programmation dans le monde réel}
2118 \subsection{La vraie nature de la programmation des ordinateurs}
2119
2120 Alors, comment s'écrivent les programmes informatiques? Et
2121 d'ailleurs, qu'est-ce qu'une erreur\index{erreur} de programmation?
2122 Ces questions sont liées et elles sont, bien sûr, au c{oe}ur de notre
2123 préoccupation.
2124
2125 \subsection{Méthodes de programmation}
2126 Un processeur quelconque est caractérisé par le jeu des actions
2127 élémentaires qu'il est capable d'effectuer. Ces actions élémentaires
2128 sont appelées les \emph{primitives} du processeur, ou, si le
2129 processeur est une machine, les «~instructions machine~». Un~[...]
2130
2131 \subsection{Méthodes de construction de programmes}
2132 Nous avons décrit ci-dessus le processus élémentaire de la
2133 programmation, celui qui consiste à~écrire les instructions ou les
2134 expressions qui vont composer un programme.
2135
2136 \subsubsection{La programmation structurée}
2137 Le premier courant de pensée qui associa la recherche d'une syntaxe
2138 claire et expressive à~une organisation logique et commode des unités
2139 de programme fut la \emph{programmation
2140 structurée}\index{programmation!structurée} des années 1970, dont~[...]
2141
2142 \subsubsection{La programmation par objets}
2143 Après la programmation structurée vint un autre courant significatif:
2144 la programmation par objets\index{programmation!par objets}, inventée
2145 en Norvège à~la fin des années 1960 par l'équipe de~[...]
2146
2147 \subsubsection{Excès dans la pensée}
2148 Il y a eu beaucoup de verbiage autour de l'aptitude supposée du
2149 modèle~[...]
2150 \end{document}
2151 </mtc – liv>

```

## 4.22 The mtc-mem.tex document file

This example shows the use of the minitoc package in a memoir class document. First, the preamble:

```
2152 (*mtc – mem)
```

```

2153 \documentclass%
2154   [oneside]{memoir}
2155 \ProvidesFile{mtc-mem.tex}%
2156   [2007/01/04]
2157 \usepackage{lipsum}
2158 %%\usepackage{hyperref}

```

<pre> 2159 %%\usepackage{memhfixc} 2160 \usepackage% 2161 [tight]{minitoc} 2162 %%\usepackage{mtcoff} 2163 \begin{document}  We use the starred form \tableofcontents* specific of the memoir class. Note that the the \chapter command has <i>two</i> optional arguments in the memoir class.  2164 \dominitoc 2165 \tableofcontents* 2166 2167 \chapter[oneA][oneB]{oneC} 2168 \minitoc 2169 \lipsum[1] </pre>	<pre> 2170 \newpage 2171 \lipsum[2] 2172 \section{S-1-one} 2173 \lipsum[3] 2174 \section{S-1-two} 2175 \lipsum[4] 2176 2177 \chapter[twoA][twoB]{twoC} 2178 \minitoc 2179 \lipsum[4] 2180 \newpage 2181 \lipsum[5] 2182 \section{S-2-one} 2183 \lipsum[6] 2184 \section{S-2-two} 2185 \lipsum[7] 2186 \end{document} 2187 &lt;/mtc - mem&gt; </pre>
--	---

## 4.23 The mtc-mm1.tex document file

This example shows the use of the minitoc package in a memoir class document and shows some of the adaptations necessary for fonts. First, the preamble:

```

2188 <*mtc - mm1>
2189 \documentclass[oneside]{memoir}
2190 \ProvidesFile{mtc-mm1.tex}%
2191 [2007/01/04]
2192 \usepackage{lipsum} % filling text

```

We inhibit some font commands of the memoir class:

```

2193 \providecommand{\cftsecfont}{\empty}
2194 \providecommand{\cftsubsecfont}{\empty}

```

Then we redefine them:

```

2195 \renewcommand{\cftsubsecfont}{\normalsize\scshape}
2196 \renewcommand{\cftsubsecfont}{\normalsize\scshape}

```

We load the minitoc package and try to use some minitoc font commands, without success:

```

2197 %% hyperref before minitoc, optional
2198 %%\usepackage[linktocpage=true]{hyperref}\usepackage{memhfixc}
2199 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
2200 \mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\normalsize\scshape} % <- no scshape
2201 \mtcsetfont{minitoc}{subsection}{\normalsize\scshape}% <- no scshape

```

But if we use the font commands of the memoir class, it works!

```
2202 \providecommand{\cftsecfont}{\empty}
2203 \providecommand{\cftsubsecfont}{\empty}
2204 \renewcommand{\cftsubsecfont}{\normalsize\rmfamily\scshape}
2205 \renewcommand{\cftsubsecfont}{\normalsize\rmfamily\scshape}
```

But for mini-table titles (font and text), we can use the minitoc commands:

```
2206 \mtcsettitlefont{minitoc}{\Large\scshape}
2207 %% this is working beautifully ->
2208 \mtcsettitle{minitoc}{Chapter Contents}
```

The document body:

```
2209 \begin{document}
2210 \dominitoc
2211 \tableofcontents*
2212
2213 \chapter[OneA][OneB]{OneC}
2214 \minitoc
2215 \section{This section}
2216 \lipsum[1]
2217 \section{Second section}
2218 \lipsum[2]
2219 \section{Third section}
2220 \lipsum[3]
2221 \end{document}
2222 </mtc - mm1>
```

## 4.24 The mtc-mu.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document, the minitoc being inserted in the text with the wrapfig package [11].

```
2223 <*mtc - mu>
2224 \documentclass[12pt]{report}
2225 \ProvidesFile{mtc-mu.tex}%
2226 [2007/01/04]
2227 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
2228 \setlength{\mtcindent}{0pt}
2229 \usepackage{wrapfig}
2230 \newcommand{\LangSig}[1]{\textsc{[#1]}} % smallcaps
2231 \begin{document}
2232 \dominitoc
2233 \tableofcontents
```

A chapter, with its minitoc set in a minipage, included in a wrapfigure environment on the half of the text width, with some vertical adjustments:

```

2234 \chapter{Mulspren}\label{chapter+mulspre}
2235 \begin{wrapfigure}{r}{0.5\linewidth}
2236 \begin{minipage}{\linewidth}
2237 \vspace{-2.\baselineskip}
2238 \minitoc
2239 \vspace{-1.\baselineskip}
2240 \end{minipage}
2241 \end{wrapfigure}

```

The remaining of the text:

```

2242 The previous chapter examined many end-user programming environments
2243 and found that most contain cognitive programming gulfs.
2244 These gulfs were often created when programming environments used
2245 multiple notations, and could manifest themselves in a variety of
2246 usability problems, ranging from users being unable to understand
2247 a program representation, to not wanting to execute their programs.
2248 Conversely, the previous chapter also found circumstances where multiple
2249 notations helped users understand programs.
2250 It concluded that there was a place for multiple notation programming
2251 environments, but developers had to be very careful to avoid creating
2252 programming gulfs.
2253 It concluded that there was a place for multiple notation programming
2254 environments, but developers had to be very careful to avoid creating
2255 programming gulfs.
2256
2257 This chapter introduces our programming environment, Mulspren.
2258 Mulspren was designed to avoid these gulfs and gain the potential
2259 benefits of multiple notations.
2260 Users program using two notations, one similar to English and one
2261 similar to conventional code.
2262 Changes in one notation are immediately reflected in the other notation,
2263 and users can move rapidly and seamlessly between the notations.
2264 This is programming using dual notations.
2265 When the program is executed, both notations are animated.
2266 Mulspren's language signature is \LangSig{Re/Wr/Wa + Re/Wr/Wa + Wa}.
2267
2268 Papers describing Mulspren have been published in~\cite{Wright02-2}
2269 and~\cite{Wright03-3}.
2270
2271 \section{section 1}
2272 \section{section 2 bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla}
2273 bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla}
2274 \section{section 3}
2275 \section{section 4}
2276 \section{section 5 bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla bla}
2277 bla bla bla bla bla}

```

I tried to find some articles of the net to fill the citations:

```

2278 \begin{thebibliography}{1}
2279 \bibitem{Wright02-2}
2280 Tim Wright and Andy Cockburn.
2281 \newblock Mulspreen: a multiple language simulation programming
2282   environment.
2283 \newblock In {\em HCC '02: Proceedings of the IEEE 2002 Symposia
2284   on Human Centric Computing Languages and Environments (HCC'02)},
2285   page 101, Washington, DC, USA, 2002. IEEE Computer Society.
2286
2287 \bibitem{Wright03-3}
2288 Tim Wright and Andy Cockburn.
2289 \newblock Evaluation of two textual programming notations for children.
2290 \newblock In {\em AUIC '05: Proceedings of the Sixth Australasian
2291   conference on User interface}, pages 55--62, Darlinghurst, Australia,
2292   Australia, 2005.
2293   Australian Computer Society, Inc.
2294 \end{thebibliography}
2295 \end{document}
2296 </mtc - mu>

```

## 4.25 The mtc-sbf.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package with a document containing subfigures (here with the subfigure package [100]). We show how to use minilofs and to adjust their depth.

The preamble loads the subfigure package and redefines the format of subfigure entries in the list of figures:

```

2297 <*mtc - sbf>
2298 \documentclass[12pt]{report}
2299 \ProvidesFile{mtc-sbf.tex}%
2300   [2007/01/04]
2301 \usepackage{subfigure}
2302 \makeatletter
2303 \renewcommand{\l@subfigure}{%
2304   \@dottedxxxline{\ext@subfigure}{2}{3.9em}{3.3em}}
2305 \makeatother

```

We load the varioref package (to have nice cross-references) and the minitoc package:

```

2306 \usepackage{varioref}
2307 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}

```

We define some features for the layout of the subfigures, then the depth of the list of figures:

```
2308 \newcommand{\goodap}{%
2309   \hspace{\subfigtopskip}%
2310   \hspace{\subfigbottomskip}}
2311 \setcounter{lofdepth}{2}
2312 \begin{document}
```

We define the depth of the mini-lists of figures, then some fonts:

```
2313 \mtcsetdepth{minilof}{2}
2314 \mtcsetfont{minitoc}{section}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
2315 \mtcsetfont{partlof}{subfigure}{\small\rmfamily\slshape\bfseries}
2316 \mtcsetfont{partlof}{figure}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
2317 \mtcsetfont{minilof}{subfigure}{\small\rmfamily\slshape\bfseries}
2318 \mtcsetfont{minilof}{figure}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
2319 %% no tables in this document
2320 %% \mtcsetfont{partlot}{subtable}{\small\rmfamily\slshape\bfseries}
2321 %% \mtcsetfont{partlot}{table}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
2322 %% \mtcsetfont{minilot}{subtable}{\small\rmfamily\slshape\bfseries}
2323 %% \mtcsetfont{minilot}{table}{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
```

We prepare the minilofs, the table of contents and the list of figures:

```
2324 \dominilof
2325 \tableofcontents
2326 \listoffigures
```

A chapter, with is minilof, twice but with different depths:

```
2327 \chapter{First Chapter}
2328 \minilof
2329 \mtcskip
2330 \mtcsetdepth{minilof}{1}
2331 \minilof
```

A figure containing three subfigures and their captions:

```
2332 \begin{figure}
2333 \centering
2334   \fbox{%
2335     \begin{minipage}{3.5in}%
2336       \raggedright
2337       \begin{center}
2338         \subfigure[First]{%
2339           \fbox{\hbox to 20mm{\vbox to 15mm{\vfil\null}\hfil}}}%
2340         \hspace{\subfigtopskip}\hspace{\subfigbottomskip}%
2341         \subfigure[Second Figure]{%
2342           \fbox{\hbox to 20mm{\vbox to 10mm{\vfil\null}\hfil}}}\
2343         \subfigure[Third]{\label{3figs-c}%
2344           \fbox{\hbox to 20mm{\vbox to 10mm{\vfil\null}\hfil}}}\

```



```

2345      \caption{Three subfigures.}%
2346      \label{3figs}%
2347      \end{center}
2348      \vspace{4pt}%
2349      This figure contains two top ‘subfigures’ and
2350      Figure~\ref{3figs-c}.
2351      \end{minipage}}
2352 \end{figure}
2353 Figure~\vref{3figs} contains two top ‘‘subfigures’’ and
2354 Figure~\vref{3figs-c}.
2355 \end{document}
2356 </mtc – sbf>

```

## 4.26 The mtc-scr.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package with a KOMA-Script document class [157, 207], scrreprt. Some precautions are needed, because these classes have specific interfaces with the TOC (class options and commands).

```

2357 <*mtc – scr>
2358 \documentclass[12pt,halfparskip,liststotoc,bibtotoc]{scrreprt}
2359 \ProvidesFile{mtc-scr.tex}%
2360 [2007/01/04]
2361 \setcounter{secnumdepth}{4}
2362 \setcounter{tocdepth}{4}
2363 \usepackage[latin1]{inputenc}
2364 \usepackage{longtable}

```

The hyperref package, if used, must be loaded *before* minitoc:

```

2365 \usepackage{hyperref}

```

With a KOMA-Script class [157, 207], use the k-tight package option in place of tight; as it is a document in german, use also a language package option:

```

2366 \usepackage[k-tight,germanb]{minitoc}
2367 \usepackage[germanb]{babel}
2368 \begin{document}
2369 \pagenumbering{Roman} % page number in Roman, reset to 1 (I)
2370 \dominitoc
2371 \tableofcontents

```

In this document class, with the liststotoc class option, the \listoftables macro adds a chapter entry in the TOC, so we must add \mtcaddchapter after \listoftables:

```

2372 \listoftables
2373 \mtcaddchapter

```

With the `bibtotoc` class option, it is necessary to add a `\adjustmtc` command after `\bibliography`. This problem is similar to the one of compatibility with the `tocbibind` package.

```

2374 \clearpage
2375 \pagenumbering{arabic} % page number in arabic digits
2376 \setcounter{page}{1} % forced to 1
2377
2378 \chapter{Test 1}\label{cha:test-1}
2379
2380 Text.
2381
2382 \section{Tabelle}\label{sec:tabelle}
2383
2384 \begin{table}
2385   \centering
2386   \begin{longtable}[l]{ll}
2387     \underline{Ausbildungsbetrieb} & \hspace{10mm} & Kommanditgesellschaft \\
2388     \\
2389     \underline{Ausbildender} & & Hammer \\
2390     Ausbildungsstätte & & XXXXX Ort \\
2391   \end{longtable}
2392   \caption{Ausbildungsbetrieb}
2393 \end{table}
2394
2395 Text.
2396
2397 \appendix
2398 \chapter{Dokumente}
2399 \minitoc % Aufruf Minitoc
2400
2401 \section{Anhang}\label{sec:anhang}
2402 Text.\\
2403 Hier sollte nun der Anhang sein, davor das Verzeichnis dafür.
2404 \end{document}
2405 </mtc – scr>

```

## 4.27 The `mtc-syn.tex` document file

This document shows the use of the `minitoc` package when the table of contents is not at the beginning of the document, but is preceded by some starred chapters.

We have the preamble, then we invoke `\dominitoc` to prepare the minitocs:

```

2406 <*mtc – syn>
2407 \documentclass[a4paper,twoside,12pt]{book}
2408 \ProvidesFile{mtc-syn.tex}%
2409   [2007/01/04]
2410 \usepackage{minitoc}
2411 \begin{document}

```

2412 \dominitoc

Some starred chapters, with calls to \mtcaddchapter to synchronize. The optional argument is used when an entry in the ToC is wanted:

```

2413 \chapter*{ } % Dedication chapter, no title
2414 \mtcaddchapter          % Added for a starred chapter
2415                        % without entry in the ToC
2416 Dedication goes here
2417
2418 \chapter*{Abstract}
2419 \mtcaddchapter[Abstract] % Added for a starred chapter
2420                        % with an entry in the ToC
2421 Abstract goes here
2422
2423 \chapter*{Declaration}
2424 \mtcaddchapter[Declaration] % Added for a starred chapter
2425                        % with an entry in the ToC
2426 Declaration goes here

```

The table of contents comes here. Looking at the *document.log* file shows that the minitoc files inserted after here are from one chapter to far: we add a correction.

```

2427 \tableofcontents
2428 \decrementmtc % Synchro added (look at the .log file)

```

The following chapters are normal (unstarred):

```

2429 \chapter{Chapter One}
2430 \minitoc
2431
2432 \section{Section 1}
2433 Some text.
2434
2435 \section{Section 2}
2436 Some text.
2437
2438 \chapter{Chapter Two}
2439 \minitoc
2440
2441 \section{Another Section 1}
2442 Some more text.
2443
2444 \section{Another Section 2}
2445 Some more text.
2446
2447 \end{document}
2448 </mtc – syn>

```

## 4.28 The `mtc-tbi.tex` document file

This document shows the use of the `mini-toc` package with a document using the `tocbibind` package [268].

```
2449 \*mtc - tbi>
2450 \documentclass[a4paper]{report}
2451 \ProvidesFile{mtc-tbi.tex}%
2452 [2007/01/04]
```

We don't want an entry for the TOC in the TOC: option `nottoc` for the `tocbibind` package:

```
2453 \usepackage[nottoc]{tocbibind}
2454 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}
2455 \begin{document}
2456 \dominitoc
2457 \tableofcontents
```

As there is no entry for the TOC in the TOC, no correction is necessary; we comment out the usual correction<sup>4</sup>:

```
2458 %% tocbibind compatibility
2459 %% not used if nottoc option :
2460 %% \mtcaddchapter[]
```

A starred chapter with an entry in the TOC; we add it;

```
2461 \chapter*{Introduction}
2462 \mtcaddchapter[Introduction]
```

Some normal chapters:

```
2463 \chapter{Title of chapter~1}
2464 \minitoc
2465 \section{as1}
2466 \section{as2}
2467 \chapter{Title of chapter~2}
2468 \minitoc
2469 \section{bs1}
2470 \section{bs2}
2471 \chapter{Title of chapter~3}
2472 \minitoc
2473 \section{cs1}
```

```
2474 \section{cs2}
2475 \chapter{Title of chapter~4}
2476 \minitoc
2477 \section{ds1}
2478 \section{ds2}
```

Another starred chapter, with an entry in the TOC:

```
2479 \chapter*{Conclusion}
2480 \mtcaddchapter[Conclusion]
```

Yet another starred chapter, with an entry in the TOC, but with starred sections, also listed in the TOC:

```
2481 \chapter*{Appendices}
2482 \mtcaddchapter[Appendices]
2483 \minitoc
2484 \section*{first appendix}
2485 \addcontentsline{toc}{section}%
2486 {first appendix}
2487 \section*{second appendix}
2488 \addcontentsline{toc}{section}%
2489 {second appendix}
```

The list of figures has an entry in the TOC (via the `tocbibind` package), so a correction must be applied:

```
2490 \listoffigures
2491 %% tocbibind compatibility
2492 \mtcaddchapter
```

The `tocbibind` package adds an entry in the TOC for the bibliography, so we must add the recommended correction:

```
2493 \begin{thebibliography}{3}
2494 \bibitem{s1}{title ...}
2495 \end{thebibliography}
2496 %% tocbibind compatibility
2497 \adjustmtc
2498 \end{document}
2499 \</mtc - tbi>
```

<sup>4</sup> It is recommended to keep this comment; you could change your mind.

## 4.29 The mtc-tlc.tex document file

This document shows the use of the minitoc package in a document of the article class. It is the example of [201, page 58], modernized.

```
2500 <*mtc – tlc>
2501 \documentclass{article}
2502 \ProvidesFile{mtc-tlc.tex}%
2503 [2007/01/04]
```

Dimensions of the text on the page:

```
2504 \setlength{\textwidth}%
2505 {124.20126pt}
2506 \setlength{\textheight}%
2507 {19\baselineskip}
```

We load the minitoc package and set some parameters (indentation, base font and depth) for the secttocs:

```
2508 \usepackage{minitoc}
2509 \setlength{\stcindent}{0pt}
2510 \mtcsetfont{secttoc}{*}%
2511 {\footnotesize}
2512 \mtcsetdepth{secttoc}{3}
```

We prepare the secttocs, without title, and the table of contents which is not printed:

```
2513 \begin{document}
2514 \dosecttoc[e]
2515 \faketableofcontents
2516
2517 \section{Afghanistan}
2518 \secttoc
2519 \subsection{Geography}
2520 \subsubsection{Total area}
2521 647,500 km2
2522 \subsubsection{Land area}
2523 647,500 km2
2524 \subsection{History} \ldots
2525
2526 \section{Albania}
2527 \secttoc
2528 \subsection{Geography}
2529 \subsubsection{Total area}
2530 28,750 km2
2531 \subsubsection{Land area}
2532 27,400 km2
2533 \subsection{History} \ldots
2534 \end{document}
2535 </mtc – tlc>
```

## 4.30 The mtc-tlo.tex document file

The mtc-tlo.tex document file is described in section 2.46 on page 75.

## 4.31 The mtc-tsfc.tex document file

This document<sup>5</sup> shows the use of the minitoc package with a document containing subfigures (here with the subfig package [102]). We show how to use minilofs and to adjust their depth.

The preamble loads the subfig package and redefines the format of subfigure entries in the list of figures:

<sup>5</sup> It is derived from one of the examples distributed with the subfig package [102].

```

2536 <*mtc - tsf>
2537 \documentclass{report}
2538 \ProvidesFile{mtc-tsf.tex}%
2539 [2007/01/04]
2540 \usepackage{fullpage}
2541 \usepackage[config=altsf]{subfig}
2542 \usepackage[tight]{minitoc}

```

This is utility code to make graduated rules and a box around a figure.

```

2543 \newdimen\testtemp
2544 \newcommand{\ru}[1]{%
2545   \testtemp #1%
2546   \advance\testtemp .5pt%
2547   \divide\testtemp 2%
2548   \hbox to \testtemp{\leaders\hbox to 1mm{%
2549     \vrule height1mm depth0pt width.25pt\hfil}\hfil}%
2550   \hbox to 0pt{\hss\vrule height3mm depth0pt width.25pt\hss}%
2551   \hbox to \testtemp{\leaders\hbox to 1mm{%
2552     \hfil\vrule height1mm depth0pt width.25pt\hfil}}
2553   %}
2554 \fboxsep=-\fboxrule
2555 \newcommand{\figbox}[1]{%
2556   \fbox{%
2557     \vbox to 1in{%
2558       \vfil
2559       \hbox to 2in{%
2560         \parbox{2in}{%
2561           \centering
2562           #1}}%
2563       \vfil
2564       \vbox to 0pt{%
2565         \vss
2566         \hbox to 2in{%
2567           \hfil
2568           \ru{1.1in}%
2569           \hfil}}}}}}

```

The body of the document. We set the depth of the list of figures and prepare the minilofs and the list of figures:

```

2570 \begin{document}
2571 \setcounter{lofdepth}{2}
2572 \dominilof
2573 \listoffigures
2574 \newpage

```

A chapter containing a figure with subfigures. We print a minilof twice, with different depths:

```

2575 \chapter{Reference Test}
2576 \minilof
2577 \mtcskip

```

```

2578 \mtcsetdepth{minilof}{1}
2579 \minilof
2580
2581 \begin{figure}[ht]%
2582   \centering
2583   \subfigure{%
2584     \label{fig+A}%
2585     \figbox{SUBFIGURE ONE:\\
2586             (no opt)}}
2587   \quad
2588   \subfigure[]{%
2589     \label{fig+B}%
2590     \figbox{SUBFIGURE TWO:\\
2591             (empty opt)}}\\
2592
2593   \subfigure[Subfigure Three.]{%
2594     \label{fig+C}%
2595     \figbox{SUBFIGURE THREE:\\
2596             (opt)}}
2597   \quad
2598   \subfigure[][Subfigure Four.]{%
2599     \label{fig+D}%
2600     \figbox{SUBFIGURE FOUR:\\
2601             (empty opt and opt)}}
2602   \quad
2603   \subfigure[][]{%
2604     \label{fig+E}%
2605     \figbox{SUBFIGURE FIVE:\\
2606             (both empty opt)}}\\
2607
2608   \subfigure[The Sixth Subfigure.][Subfigure Six.]{%
2609     \label{fig+F}%
2610     \figbox{SUBFIGURE SIX:\\
2611             (both opt)}}
2612   \quad
2613   \subfigure[The Seventh Subfigure][]{%
2614     \label{fig+G}%
2615     \figbox{SUBFIGURE SEVEN:\\
2616             (opt and empty opt)}}
2617
2618   \caption{Optional argument test.}%
2619   \label{fig+main}%
2620 \end{figure}
2621
2622 The figure~\ref{fig+main} on page~\pageref{fig+main} is composed
2623 of the seven subfigures~\subref{fig+A} (aka: \ref{fig+A}),
2624 \subref{fig+B} (aka: \ref{fig+B}), \subref{fig+C} (aka: \ref{fig+C}),
2625 \subref{fig+D} (aka: \ref{fig+D}), \subref{fig+E} (aka: \ref{fig+E}),
2626 \subref{fig+F} (aka: \ref{fig+F}), and \subref{fig+G} (aka: \ref{fig+G}).
2627
2628 \section{Centering Test}
2629 Note that figures~\ref{fig+B}, \ref{fig+E} and \ref{fig+G} are centered.
2630 This means that \verb|\subfigcapskip| has been set to zero and is not
2631 offsetting the simple label to the left. Also the remaining captioned

```

```
2632 subfigures (figures~\ref{fig+C}, \ref{fig+D}, and \ref{fig+F}) should
2633 have centered labels.
2634 \end{document}
2635 </mtc - tsf>
```



# Chapter 5

## Messages

### Contents

<b>5.1</b>	<b>Introduction</b>	<b>145</b>
<b>5.2</b>	<b>Messages from the minitoc package</b>	<b>147</b>
5.2.1	Informative messages	147
5.2.1.1	Informative messages for hints	155
5.2.2	Warning messages	158
5.2.2.1	Warning messages for hints	163
5.2.3	Error messages	179
<b>5.3</b>	<b>Messages from the mtcff package</b>	<b>192</b>
5.3.1	Warning messages	192
<b>5.4</b>	<b>Message from the mtcpatchmem package</b>	<b>194</b>

### 5.1 Introduction

This chapter lists and comments the messages given by the minitoc package, and its associates, mtcff and mtcpatchmem<sup>1</sup>.

- The first line of each message contains usually the name of the package and an unique identifier (this identifier may be useful to search in this chapter of the documentation, but has no special meaning, except the leading letter: I for informative, W for warning, and E for error).
- Informative messages are written only in the *document.log* file; the prefix is F for the warning messages from the mtcff package and M for the informative message from the mtcpatchmem package.
- Warning messages are shown on the screen (but often too quickly to be seen, because normally L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X does not stop for warnings) and written in the *document.log* file.

<sup>1</sup> The texts of the messages given in this chapter may slightly differ from the real text, because some messages contain variable elements and the layout may differ.

- Error messages are shown on the screen and written in the *document.log* file, but  $\LaTeX$  stops, so you can ask for help by typing “h”.
- In this chapter, some words in the messages are typeset in italic characters; they represent the variable parts of the message:
  - *ARG1* The first argument of the command.
  - *ARG2* The second argument of the command.
  - *ARG3* The third argument of the command.
  - *CLASS* The name of the class of your document.
  - *command* The name of the command.
  - *counter* The name of a  $\LaTeX$  counter.
  - *document* The name of your document, without its *.tex* extension.
  - *extension* The extension part of the name of a file.
  - *file* The name of a file (often a minitoc auxiliary file, the *document.toc* file, the *document.lof* file, or the *document.lot* file).
  - *internal\_name* The name of an internal macro redefined by a `\mtcset...` command.
  - *LANGUAGE* The name of the language (for `\mtcselectlanguage`).
  - *LINE* The number of the line in the source file.
  - *macro* The name of a minitoc font command redefined by `\mtcsetfont`.
  - *new\_title* The new value of a title redefined by `\mtcsettitle`.
  - *NUMBER* The number of mini-tables of the given type in your document (when you are using short extensions and that number is greater than 99).
  - *PREPARATION* The name of a minitoc preparation command.
  - *sequence* A sequence of commands used to redefine an internal macro via a `\mtcset...` command.
  - *STRING* A string of characters, often part of a command name.
  - *value* The new value of a counter.

The messages are produced using macros from the `mtcmess` package, described in chapter 11 on page 434.

## 5.2 Messages from the minitoc package

### 5.2.1 Informative messages

---

```
Package: minitoc 2007/02/12 v52 Package minitoc (JPFD)
```

This is the announce message of the minitoc package, with its name, date and version. “JPFD” are my initials. This message has no identifier because it is emitted by \ProvidesPackage.

---

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0001>
(minitoc)             *** minitoc package, version 52 ***.
```

Remember the version of the package.

---

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0002>
(minitoc)             Autoconfiguration of extensions.
```

The minitoc package tries to determine if short or long extensions for file names are used by the operating system.

---

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0003>
(minitoc)             chapter level macros available.
```

The \chapter sectionning command is available, so you can use the mini-table commands at the chapter level, but *not* the mini-table commands at the section level.

---

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0004>
(minitoc)             chapter level macros NOT available.
```

The \chapter sectionning command is *not* available, so you cannot use the mini-table commands at the chapter level, but, if the \section sectionning command is available, you can use mini-table commands at the section level.

---

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0005>
(minitoc)           compatible with hyperref.
```

This version of minitoc is compatible with the `hyperref` package.

---

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0006>
(minitoc)           document.extension is empty on input line LINE.
```

The auxiliary file for a mini-table is found empty (or inexistent) when minitoc tries to insert it. If the `checkfiles` option is active, it is skipped.

---

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0007>
(minitoc)           Horizontal rules are activated
(minitoc)           for the ARGIs on input line LINE.
```

The horizontal rules will be present in the mini-tables of type `ARGI`.

---

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0008>
(minitoc)           Horizontal rules are inhibited
(minitoc)           for the ARGIs on input line LINE.
```

The horizontal rules will be omitted in the mini-tables of type `ARGI`.

---

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0009>
(minitoc)           Listing minitoc auxiliary files.
(minitoc)           Creating the document.maf file.
```

You have used the `listfiles` package option. A list of the minitoc auxiliary files is written in the `document.maf` file. It may be helpful to delete these files. See section 1.7 on page 49. This option is the default since version #48.

---

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0010>
Package minitoc Info: The LANGUAGE language is selected.
(minitoc)                on input line LINE.

```

The *LANGUAGE.mld* file has been successfully loaded for the *LANGUAGE* language<sup>2</sup> by the `\mtcselectlanguage` command at line *LINE*. The titles for the mini-tables are changed.

---

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0011>
(minitoc)                LANGUAGE language object selected.
(minitoc)                on input line LINE.

```

The `\mtcselectlanguage` macro has successfully (indirectly) loaded the *LANGUAGE.mlo* minitoc object file.

---

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0012>
(minitoc)                Long extensions (Unix-like) will be used.

```

The autoconfiguration has detected that your operating system is able to use long extensions; this will be the default.

---

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0013>
(minitoc)                \mtcsetdepth redefines the counter
(minitoc)                "counter" as "value" on input line LINE.

```

The `\mtcsetdepth` macro changes the value of the specified depth counter and forces it to *value*.

---

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0014>
(minitoc)                \mtcsetfeature redefines the macro
(minitoc)                "internal_name" as
(minitoc)                "sequence" on input line LINE.

```

---

<sup>2</sup> The *english.mld* file is always loaded first, to have english as default language.

The `\mtcsetfeature` macro has redefined the internal macro *internal\_name* with the given *sequence*.

---

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0015>
(minitoc)           \mtcsetfont redefines the macro
(minitoc)           "macro" as "sequence" on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcsetfont` command redefines the (old style) *macro* by the given *sequence* of font commands.

---

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0016>
(minitoc)           \mtcsetformat redefines the macro
(minitoc)           "\internal_name" as "ARG3" on input line LINE.
```

The macro `\mtcsetformat` redefines an internal macro with the value given by its third argument.

---

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0017>
(minitoc)           \mtcsettitle redefines the macro
(minitoc)           "internal_name" as
(minitoc)           "new_title" on input line LINE.
```

A mini-table title is redefined via the `\mtcsettitle` macro.

---

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0018>
(minitoc)           \mtcsettitlefont redefines the macro
(minitoc)           "\internal_name" as
(minitoc)           "sequence" on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcsettitlefont` macro redefines the (old style) `\internal_name` macro which the given *sequence*.

---

```

Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0019>
(minitoc(hints))           No hints have been written
(minitoc(hints))           in the document.log file.

```

The hints package option has detected no potential problem.

---

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0020>
(minitoc)             old version of the memoir class.

```

The version of the memoir class is old. The minitoc package does not need to patch this class.

---

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0021>
(minitoc)             Page numbers are activated
(minitoc)             for the ARGIs on input line LINE.

```

The page numbers will be present in the mini-tables of type *ARGI*.

---

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0022>
(minitoc)             Page numbers are inhibited
(minitoc)             for the ARGIs on input line LINE.

```

The page numbers will be omitted in the mini-tables of type *ARGI*.

---

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0023>
(minitoc)             part level macros available.

```

The `\part` sectionning command is available, so you can use the mini-table commands at the part level.

---

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0024>
(minitoc)             PREPARING MINITOCs FROM file on input line LINE.
```

A `\dominitoc` command prepares the minitoc auxiliary files for minitocs from *file*.

---

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0025>
(minitoc)             PREPARING PARTTOCS FROM file on input line LINE.
```

A `\doparttoc` command prepares the parttoc auxiliary files for parttocs from *file*.

---

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0026>
(minitoc)             PREPARING SECTTOCS FROM file on input line LINE.
```

A `\dosecttoc` command prepares the secttoc auxiliary files for secttocs from *file*.

---

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0027>
(minitoc)             recent version of the memoir class.
```

The version of the memoir class is recent. The minitoc package will try to patch it.

---

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0028>
(minitoc)             section level macros available.
```

The `\section` sectionning command is available but the `\chapter` sectionning command is *not* available, so you can use the mini-table commands at the section level.

---

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0029>
(minitoc)             section level macros NOT available.
```

The `\section` sectionning command is not defined (by the document class), so the section level commands of the minitoc package are not available.



---

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0030>
(minitoc)             the memoir class is loaded:
(minitoc)             compatibility attempted.

```

The memoir document class is used. The minitoc package tries to ensure compatibility.

---

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0031>
(minitoc)             ==> this version is configured for UNIX-like
(minitoc)             (long extensions) file names.

```

The autoconfiguration has detected that your operating uses UNIX-like (long extensions) file names.

---

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0032>
(minitoc)             This version of the memoir class uses
(minitoc)             a version of \chapter which is
(minitoc)             incompatible with the minitoc package.
(minitoc)             We try to patch.

```

The memoir class uses a version of the `\chapter` command which needs to be corrected because its syntax has been changed. A patch is loaded.

---

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0033>
(minitoc)             Writing document.extension.

```

An auxiliary file for a mini-table is written by a minitoc preparation command (like `\dominitoc`).

---

```

Package minitoc Info: <I0034>
(minitoc)             PREPARING MINILOFS FROM file on input line LINE.

```

A `\dominilof` command prepares the minilof auxiliary files for minilofs from *file*.

---

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0035>
(minitoc)             PREPARING PARTLOFS FROM file on input line LINE.
```

A \dopartlof command prepares the partlof auxiliary files for partlofs from *file*.

---

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0036>
(minitoc)             PREPARING SECTLOFS FROM file on input line LINE.
```

A \dosectlof command prepares the sectlof auxiliary files for sectlofs from *file*.

---

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0037>
(minitoc)             PREPARING MINILOTS FROM file on input line LINE.
```

A \dominilot command prepares the minilot auxiliary files for minilots from *file*.

---

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0038>
(minitoc)             PREPARING PARTLOTS FROM file on input line LINE.
```

A \dopartlot command prepares the partlot auxiliary files for partlots from *file*.

---

```
Package minitoc Info: <I0039>
(minitoc)             PREPARING SECTLOTS FROM file on input line LINE.
```

A \dosectlot command prepares the sectlot auxiliary files for sectlots from *file*.

### 5.2.1.1 Informative messages for hints

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0040>
(minitoc(hints))           The ‘‘abstract’’ package has been
(minitoc(hints))           loaded with the ‘‘addtotoc’’ option.
(minitoc(hints))           You need to look at the
(minitoc(hints))           documentation to adjust.
```

As you are using the `abstract` package with its `addtotoc` option, you should look at the `minitoc` package documentation for specific precautions. See section 2.27 on page 67.

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0041>
(minitoc(hints))           --- The amsbook class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))           See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))           for specific precautions.
```

As you are using the `amsbook` class, you should look at the `minitoc` package documentation for specific precautions. See section 2.24 on page 63.

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0042>
(minitoc(hints))           --- The appendix package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))           See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))           for specific precautions.
```

As you are using also the `appendix` package, you should look at the `minitoc` package documentation for specific precautions. See section 2.20 on page 60.

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0043>
(minitoc(hints))           --- The KOMAScript CLASS class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))           See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))           for specific precautions.
```

As you are using also the `CLASS` class, you should look at the `minitoc` package documentation for specific precautions. See section 1.5.5 on page 47. The classes involved here are `scrbook`, `scrreprt`, and `scrartcl`, i.e., the KOMA-Script classes [157, 207] compatible with `minitoc`.

---

```

Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0044>
(minitoc(hints))          --- The memoir class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))          for specific precautions.

```

As you are using the memoir class, you should look at the minitoc package documentation for specific precautions. See section 2.22 on page 62.

---

```

Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0045>
(minitoc(hints))          The \PREPARATION command
(minitoc(hints))          has been invoked more than once
(minitoc(hints))          on input line LINE.

```

A minitoc preparation command has been invoked more than once.

---

```

Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0046>
(minitoc(hints))          --- The tocbibind package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))          for specific precautions.

```

As you are using also the tocbibind package, you should look at the minitoc package documentation for specific precautions. See section 1.5.5 on page 47.

---

```

Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0047>
(minitoc(hints))          --- The tocloft package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          See the minitoc package documentation
(minitoc(hints))          for specific precautions.

```

As you are using also the tocloft package, you should look at the minitoc package documentation for specific precautions. See section 2.21 on page 61.

---

```

Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0048>
(minitoc(hints))           Using \mtcprepare may induce some
(minitoc(hints))           hints about the preparation commands,
(minitoc(hints))           because it invokes ALL the preparation
(minitoc(hints))           commands allowed by the document class,
(minitoc(hints))           without any previous check.

```

The `\mtcprepare` command invoke all the possible preparation commands, depending only on the document class and the available contents files. It does not know exactly what you want, so it can prepare too many mini-tables files.

---

```

Package minitoc(hints) Info: <I0049>
(minitoc(hints))           ==> You requested the hints option
(minitoc(hints))           Some hints are eventually given below.

```

As you have requested the `hints` package option (which is set by default), some “hints” are eventually given in the `document.log` file. You can find them easily by searching for the string “`minitoc(hints)`” with a text editor.

---

```

Package minitoc Warning: <I0050>
(minitoc)                  The required "LANGUAGE.mld" file is missing.
(minitoc)                  The "LANGUAGE" language option
(minitoc)                  will not be available.
(minitoc)                  Please install it from a recent distribution
(minitoc)                  or from the CTAN archives.

```

The `LANGUAGE.mld` has not been installed on your system. You should take it from a recent distribution or from the CTAN archives to complete your installation, else the `LANGUAGE` language option will not be available.

---

```

Package minitoc Warning: <I0051>
(minitoc)                  The required "LANGUAGE.mlo" file is missing.
(minitoc)                  The "LANGUAGE" language option
(minitoc)                  will not be available.
(minitoc)                  Please install it from a recent distribution
(minitoc)                  or from the CTAN archives.

```

The *LANGUAGE.mlo* has not been installed on your system. You should take it from a recent distribution or from the CTAN archives to complete your installation, else the *LANGUAGE* language option will not be available.

### 5.2.2 Warning messages

---

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0001>
(minitoc)                \chapter and \section are undefined.
(minitoc)                Cannot use \mtcfixglossary without
(minitoc)                optional argument [part].
```

The sectionning commands `\chapter` and `\section` are not defined (by the document class), hence the `\mtcfixglossary` macro cannot be used without an optional argument (try `\part`). This situation is very unlikely to happen, so also verify your document class.

---

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0002>
(minitoc)                \chapter and \section are undefined.
(minitoc)                Cannot use \mtcfixindex without
(minitoc)                optional argument [part].
```

The sectionning commands `\chapter` and `\section` are not defined (by the document class), hence the `\mtcfixindex` macro cannot be used without an optional argument (try `\part`). This situation is very unlikely to happen, so also verify your document class.

---

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0003>
(minitoc)                \firstchapteris is an obsolete
(minitoc)                command on input line LINE.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstchapteris`). You should remove it.

---

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0004>
(minitoc)                \firstpartis is an obsolete
(minitoc)                command on input line LINE.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstpartis`). You should remove it.

---

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0005>
(minitoc)                \firstsectionis is an obsolete
(minitoc)                command on input line LINE.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstsectionis`). You should remove it.

---

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0006>
(minitoc)                \mtcfixglossary can only be used
(minitoc)                with the [part] optional argument,
(minitoc)                which becomes the default.
```

The `\mtcfixglossary` macro can only use `[part]` as optional argument (which becomes the default), because `\chapter` and `\section` are not defined.

---

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0007>
(minitoc)                \mtcfixindex can only be used
(minitoc)                with the [part] optional argument,
(minitoc)                which becomes the default.
```

The `\mtcfixindex` macro can only use `[part]` as optional argument (which becomes the default), because `\chapter` and `\section` are not defined.

---

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0008>
(minitoc)                No file file.
(minitoc)                MINILOFS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *file* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dominilof` command. Please check if you have called `\dominilof` in the correct sequence of commands.

---

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0009>
(minitoc)                No file file.
(minitoc)                MINILOTS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *file* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dominilot` command. Please check if you have called `\dominilot` in the correct sequence of commands.

---

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0010>
(minitoc)                No file file.
(minitoc)                MINITOCs NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *file* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dominitoc` command. Please check if you have called `\dominitoc` in the correct sequence of commands.

---

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0011>
(minitoc)                No file file.
(minitoc)                PARTLOFS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *file* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dopartlof` command. Please check if you have called `\dopartlof` in the correct sequence of commands.

---

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0012>
(minitoc)                No file file.
(minitoc)                PARTLOTS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *file* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dopartlot` command. Please check if you have called `\dopartlot` in the correct sequence of commands.

---

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0013>
(minitoc)                No file file.
(minitoc)                PARTTOCS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *file* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\doparttoc` command. Please check if you have called `\doparttoc` in the correct sequence of commands.

---

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0014>
(minitoc)                No file file.
(minitoc)                SECTLOFS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *file* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dosectlof` command. Please check if you have called `\dosectlof` in the correct sequence of commands.



---

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0015>
(minitoc)                No file file.
(minitoc)                SECTLOTS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *file* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dosectlot` command. Please check if you have called `\dosectlot` in the correct sequence of commands.

---

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0016>
(minitoc)                No file file.
(minitoc)                SECTTOCS NOT PREPARED on input line LINE.
```

The *file* cannot be found, because it has not been created by a `\dosecttoc` command. Please check if you have called `\dosecttoc` in the correct sequence of commands.

---

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0017>
(minitoc)                no section or chapter level macros available
(minitoc)                PLEASE VERIFY YOUR MAIN DOCUMENT CLASS.
```

The `\chapter` and `\section` sectionning commands are not defined. Your document class is likely without any sectionning command, so the minitoc package is pointless. *Verify your main document class.*

---

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0018>
Package minitoc Warning: part level macros NOT available.
```

The `\part` sectionning command is not defined (by the document class), so the part level commands of the minitoc package are not available. It is a warning message because most classes with sectionning commands define the `\part` command, so you should verify which class you are using.

---

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0019>
(minitoc)                Short extensions (MSDOS-like) will be used.
(minitoc)                ==> this version is configured for MSDOS-like
(minitoc)                (8+3) file names.
```

The autofiguration has found that the operating system uses file names with short extensions (8+3 scheme).

---

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0020>
(minitoc)                You have forced the use of short extensions.
```

You have used the `shorttext` package option to force the use of short extensions (8+3 scheme). This action limits the number of usable mini-tables of each kind and may be problematic if you have more that 99 mini-tables of the same kind. If your operating system allows for long extensions, do not use the `shorttext` package option, except for testing purposes.

---

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0021>
(minitoc)                Your version of latex.tex is obsolete.
(minitoc)                Trying to continue...
```



You are using an obsolete version of  $\text{\LaTeX}$ , but the minitoc package will try to continue. It would be better to update your  $\text{\LaTeX}$  installation.

---

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0022>
Package minitoc Warning: Your version of latex.tex is very obsolete.
(minitoc)                Trying to continue... crossing fingers.
```



Your version of  $\text{\LaTeX}$  is very obsolete, and almost unusable with the minitoc package. You can try to continue the compilation, but you are urged to update your  $\text{\LaTeX}$  installation as soon as possible.

---

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0093>
(minitoc)                Some "*.mld" or "*.mlo" files are missing
(minitoc)                in your installation.
(minitoc)                Search for the I0050 and I0051 info messages
(minitoc)                in the \jobname.log file.
(minitoc)                Please install the missing files from
(minitoc)                a recent distribution
(minitoc)                or from the CTAN archives.
```

Some .mld or .mlo files have not been installed on your system. Search for the I0050 and I0051 info messages in the *document.log* file to find which files are missing. You can retrieve them from a recent distribution or from the CTAN archives to complete your installation, else some language options will not be available. The list of the missing files is given in the W0094 warning message.

---

```
Package minitoc Warning: <W0094>
(minitoc)                Missing minitoc language file(s):
(minitoc)                ...
```

Some .mld or .mlo files have not been installed on your system. The list is given in the message.

### 5.2.2.1 Warning messages for hints

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0023>
(minitoc(hints))          --- It may be the consequence
(minitoc(hints))          of loading the ‘hyperref’ package.
```

Some sectionning commands have been altered *after* the loading of the minitoc package. The *hyperref* package does that, but it is harmless. For other packages or user-made alterations, it is recommended to alter the sectionning commands only *before* loading the minitoc package. See section 2.17 on page 59.

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0024>
(minitoc(hints))          Some hints have been written
(minitoc(hints))          in the document.log file.
```

The hints package option has detected some potential problems and written hints into the *document.log* file. You can search it for the “minitoc(hints)” string with a text editor.

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0025>
(minitoc(hints))          --- The alphanum package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))          with the minitoc package.
```

You are using the `alphanum` package which is incompatible with the `minitoc` package. The compilation can continue, but the result could be unsatisfactory.

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0026>
(minitoc(hints))          --- The amsart class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))          with the minitoc package.
```

You are using the `amsart` document class which is incompatible with the `minitoc` package. The compilation can continue, but the result could be unsatisfactory.

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0027>
(minitoc(hints))          --- The amsproc class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))          with the minitoc package.
```

You are using the `amsproc` document class which is incompatible with the `minitoc` package. The compilation can continue, but the result could be unsatisfactory.

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0028>
(minitoc(hints))          --- The \chapter command is altered
                           after minitoc.
```

Some packages alter the sectionning commands, like `\chapter`. Most of them should be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. The `hyperref` package, even if it is loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (as recommended), alters the sectionning commands in an `\AtBeginDocument`, so this message is always printed when you use the `hyperref` package with `minitoc`, but then it is harmless.

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0029>
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: --- The jura class is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))          with the minitoc package.
```

You are using the `jura` document class which is incompatible with the `minitoc` package. The compilation can continue, but the result could be unsatisfactory.

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0030>
(minitoc(hints))          --- The \part command is altered
                           after minitoc.
```

Some packages alter the sectionning commands, like `\part`. Most of them should be loaded *before* the minitoc package. The `hyperref` package, even if it is loaded *before* the minitoc package (as recommended), alters the sectionning commands in an `\AtBeginDocument`, so this message is always printed when you use the `hyperref` package with minitoc, but then it is harmless.

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0031>
(minitoc(hints))          --- The placeins package is loaded
(minitoc(hints))          without the section option,
(minitoc(hints))          but minitoc used the insection option
(minitoc(hints))          which implies it. Try to inverse the
(minitoc(hints))          loading order and use consistent options.
(minitoc(hints))          You may have got a message
(minitoc(hints))          ! LaTeX Error: Option clash for package placeins.
```

You are using the `placeins` package, but without its `section` option, while minitoc is called with its `insection` option which implies it. See page 29, near a “dangerous bend” symbol like the one shown in the margin.




---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0032>
(minitoc(hints))          --- The placeins package loaded is
(minitoc(hints))          too old. You should use a version
(minitoc(hints))          dated of 2005/04/18 at least.
```

You are using an obsolete version of the `placeins` package. Please update it from the CTAN archives or a recent distribution.

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0033>
(minitoc(hints))          The caption package should be
(minitoc(hints))          loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.
```

The `caption` package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.31 on page 69.

---

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0034>
(minitoc(hints))               The caption2 package should be
(minitoc(hints))               loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.

```

The caption2 package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.31 on page 69. Note that the caption2 package is now obsolete; please use a recent version of the caption package.

---

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0035>
(minitoc(hints))               The ccaption package should be
(minitoc(hints))               loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.

```

The ccaption package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.31 on page 69.

---

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0036>
(minitoc(hints))               The mcaption package should be
(minitoc(hints))               loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.

```

The mcaption package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.31 on page 69.

---

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0037>
(minitoc(hints))               The sectsty package should be
(minitoc(hints))               loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.

```

The sectsty package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.28 on page 67.

---

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0038>
(minitoc(hints))               The varsects package should be
(minitoc(hints))               loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.

```

The varsects package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.33 on page 69.

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0039>
(minitoc(hints))          --- The \section command is altered
                           after minitoc.
```

Some packages alter the sectioning commands, like `\section`. Most of them should be loaded *before* the minitoc package. The `hyperref` package, even if it is loaded *before* the minitoc package (as recommended), alters the sectioning commands in an `\AtBeginDocument`, so this message is always printed when you use the `hyperref` package with minitoc, but then it is harmless.

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0040>
(minitoc(hints))          --- The titletoc package is loaded.
(minitoc(hints))          It is incompatible
(minitoc(hints))          with the minitoc package.
```

You are trying to use also the `titletoc` package, but it is incompatible with the minitoc package. See note 18 on page 50.

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0041>
(minitoc(hints))          You have attempted to insert
                           empty minilofs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty minilofs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0042>
(minitoc(hints))          You have attempted to insert
                           empty minilots.
```

You have attempted to insert empty minilots. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0043>
(minitoc(hints))              You have attempted to insert
                               empty minitocs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty minitocs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0044>
(minitoc(hints))              You have attempted to insert
                               empty partlofs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty partlofs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0045>
(minitoc(hints))              You have attempted to insert
                               empty partlots.
```

You have attempted to insert empty partlots. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0046>
(minitoc(hints))              You have attempted to insert
                               empty parttocs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty parttocs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.



---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0047>
(minitoc(hints))           You have attempted to insert
                           empty sectlofs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty sectlofs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0048>
(minitoc(hints))           You have attempted to insert
                           empty sectlots.
```

You have attempted to insert empty sectlots. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0049>
(minitoc(hints))           You have attempted to insert
                           empty secttocs.
```

You have attempted to insert empty secttocs. If you have used the `nocheckfiles` package option, you will get some ugly empty mini-tables, with only a title and two horizontal rules. By default (`checkfiles` package option), you will only get this harmless message.

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0050>
(minitoc(hints))           You have invoked an obsolete
                           command: \firstchapteris.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstchapteris`). You should remove it.

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0051>
(minitoc(hints))           You have invoked an obsolete
                           command: \firstpartis.
```

You have used an obsolete command (`\firstpartis`). You should remove it.

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0052>
(minitoc(hints))              You have invoked an obsolete
                              command: \firstsectionis.
```

You have used an obsolete command (\firstsectionis). You should remove it.

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0053>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used short extensions
(minitoc(hints))              and more than 99 chapters (NUMBER).
```

You have used short extensions (limited to 3 characters) and more than 99 chapters, so the number of the auxiliary file does not fit in the extension. *NUMBER* is the number of effective chapters in your document. See section 1.9 on page 51.

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0054>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used short extensions
(minitoc(hints))              and more than 99 parts (NUMBER).
```

You have used short extensions (limited to 3 characters) and more than 99 parts, so the number of the auxiliary file does not fit in the extension. *NUMBER* is the number of effective parts in your document. See section 1.9 on page 51.

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0055>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used short extensions
(minitoc(hints))              and more than 99 sections (NUMBER).
```

You have used short extensions (limited to 3 characters) and more than 99 sections, so the number of the auxiliary file does not fit in the extension. *NUMBER* is the number of effective sections in your document. See section 1.9 on page 51.

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0056>
(minitoc(hints))              You are using \dosectlof and/or
(minitoc(hints))              \dosectlot, \sectlof and/or \sectlot,
(minitoc(hints))              hence the ‘‘insection’’ package
(minitoc(hints))              option is recommended.
```

You are asking for mini-lists of figures or tables at the section level. But as floats (figures and tables) could drift somewhere outside the printing area of the text of the section, the `sectlofs` and `sectlots` can be rather strange. In order to have a better behaviour of these mini-tables, it may be useful to add the `insection` package option. See page [29](#).

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0057>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \minilof,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dominilof.
```

You have attempted to insert some minilofs (via `\minilof`), but the minilofs have not been prepared (via `\dominilof`).

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0058>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \minilot,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dominilot.
```

You have attempted to insert some minilots (via `\minilot`), but the minilots have not been prepared (via `\dominilot`).

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0059>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \minitoc,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dominitoc.
```

You have attempted to insert some minitocs (via `\minitoc`), but the minitocs have not been prepared (via `\dominitoc`).

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0060>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \partlof,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dopartlof.
```

You have attempted to insert some partlofs (via `\partlof`), but the partlofs have not been prepared (via `\dopartlof`).

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0061>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \partlot,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dopartlot.
```

You have attempted to insert some partlots (via `\partlot`), but the partlots have not been prepared (via `\dopartlot`).

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0062>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \parttoc,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \doparttoc.
```

You have attempted to insert some parttocs (via `\parttoc`), but the parttocs have not been prepared (via `\doparttoc`).

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0063>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \sectlof,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dosectlof.
```

You have attempted to insert some sectlofs (via `\sectlof`), but the sectlofs have not been prepared (via `\dosectlof`).

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0064>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \sectlot,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dosectlot.
```

You have attempted to insert some sectlots (via `\sectlot`), but the sectlots have not been prepared (via `\dosectlot`).

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0065>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \secttoc,
(minitoc(hints))              but not \dosecttoc.
```

You have attempted to insert some secttocs (via `\secttoc`), but the secttocs have not been prepared (via `\dosecttoc`).

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0066>
(minitoc(hints))               You have used \minilof,
(minitoc(hints))               but not \listoffigures nor
(minitoc(hints))               \fakelistoffigures.
```

You have tried to insert some minilofs (via `\minilof`), but the *document.lof* file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoffigures` nor `\fakelistoffigures`.

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0067>
(minitoc(hints))               You have used \minilot but not
(minitoc(hints))               \listoftables nor
(minitoc(hints))               \fakelistoftables.
```

You have tried to insert some minilots (via `\minilot`), but the *document.lot* file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoftables` nor `\fakelistoftables`.

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0068>
(minitoc(hints))               You have used \minitoc but not
(minitoc(hints))               \tableofcontents
(minitoc(hints))               nor \faketableofcontents.
```

You have tried to insert some minitocs (via `\minitoc`), but the *document.toc* file is not available because you have not invoked `\tableofcontents` nor `\faketableofcontents`.

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0069>
(minitoc(hints))               You have used \partlof but not
(minitoc(hints))               \listoffigures
(minitoc(hints))               nor \fakelistoffigures.
```

You have tried to insert some partlofs (via `\partlof`), but the *document.lof* file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoffigures` nor `\fakelistoffigures`.

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0070>
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \partlot but not
(minitoc(hints))                \listoftables
(minitoc(hints))                nor \fakelistoftables.
```

You have tried to insert some partlots (via `\partlot`), but the *document.lot* file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoftables` nor `\fakelistoftables`.

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0071>
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \parttoc but not
(minitoc(hints))                \tableofcontents
(minitoc(hints))                nor \faketableofcontents.
```

You have tried to insert some parttocs (via `\parttoc`), but the *document.toc* file is not available because you have not invoked `\tableofcontents` nor `\faketableofcontents`.

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0072>
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \sectlof but not
(minitoc(hints))                \listoffigures
(minitoc(hints))                nor \fakelistoffigures.
```

You have tried to insert some sectlofs (via `\sectlof`), but the *document.lof* file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoffigures` nor `\fakelistoffigures`.

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0073>
(minitoc(hints))                You have used \sectlot but not
(minitoc(hints))                \listoftables
(minitoc(hints))                nor \fakelistoftables.
```

You have tried to insert some sectlots (via `\sectlot`), but the *document.lot* file is not available because you have not invoked `\listoftables` nor `\fakelistoftables`.

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0074>
(minitoc(hints))               You have used \secttoc but not
(minitoc(hints))               \tableofcontents
(minitoc(hints))               nor \faketableofcontents.
```

You have tried to insert some secttocs (via `\secttoc`), but the *document.toc* file is not available because you have not invoked `\tableofcontents` nor `\faketableofcontents`.

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0075>
(minitoc(hints))               You have used \doparttoc
(minitoc(hints))               but not \parttoc.
```

You have prepared some parttocs (via `\doparttoc`), but you never used one of them.

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0076>
(minitoc(hints))               You have used \dopartlof
(minitoc(hints))               but not \partlof.
```

You have prepared some partlofs (via `\dopartlof`), but you never used one of them.

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0077>
(minitoc(hints))               You have used \dopartlot
(minitoc(hints))               but not \partlot.
```

You have prepared some partlots (via `\dopartlot`), but you never used one of them.

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0078>
(minitoc(hints))               You have used \dominitoc
(minitoc(hints))               but not \minitoc.
```

You have prepared some minitocs (via `\dominitoc`), but you never used one of them.

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0079>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \dominilof
(minitoc(hints))              but not \minilof.
```

You have prepared some minilofs (via `\dominilof`), but you never used one of them.

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0080>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \dominilot
(minitoc(hints))              but not \minilot.
```

You have prepared some minilots (via `\dominilot`), but you never used one of them.

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0081>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \dosecttoc
(minitoc(hints))              but not \secttoc.
```

You have prepared some secttocs (via `\dosecttoc`), but you never used one of them.

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0082>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \dosectlof
(minitoc(hints))              but not \sectlof.
```

You have prepared some sectlofs (via `\dosectlof`), but you never used one of them.

---

```
Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0083>
(minitoc(hints))              You have used \dosectlot
(minitoc(hints))              but not \sectlot.
```

You have prepared some sectlots (via `\dosectlot`), but you never used one of them.



---

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0084>
(minitoc(hints))      --- The placeins package is loaded
(minitoc(hints))      with the above option,
(minitoc(hints))      but minitoc used the insection option
(minitoc(hints))      which is incompatible with it.
(minitoc(hints))      Try to remove the above option and
(minitoc(hints))      use consistent options.

```

You are using the `placeins` package, but with its `above` option, while `minitoc` is called with its `insection` option which is incompatible with it. See page 29, near a “dangerous bend” symbol like the one shown in the margin.




---

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0085>
(minitoc(hints))      --- The placeins package is loaded
(minitoc(hints))      with the below option,
(minitoc(hints))      but minitoc used the insection option
(minitoc(hints))      which is incompatible with it.
(minitoc(hints))      Try to remove the below option
(minitoc(hints))      and use consistent options.

```

You are using the `placeins` package, but with its `below` option, while `minitoc` is called with its `insection` option which is incompatible with it. See page 29, near a “dangerous bend” symbol like the one shown in the margin.




---

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0086>
(minitoc(hints))      The fncychap package should be
(minitoc(hints))      loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.

```

The `fncychap` package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. See section 2.38 on page 72.

---

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0087>
(minitoc(hints))      The quotchap package should be
(minitoc(hints))      loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.

```

The `quotchap` package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package. See section 2.39 on page 72.

---

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0088>
(minitoc(hints))               The romannum package should be
(minitoc(hints))               loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.

```

The romannum package alters the numbering of some sectionning commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.40 on page 72.

---

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0089>
(minitoc(hints))               The sfheaders package should be
(minitoc(hints))               loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.

```

The sfheaders package alters the sectionning commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.41 on page 72.

---

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0090>
(minitoc(hints))               The alnumsec package should be
(minitoc(hints))               loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.

```

The alnumsec package alters the sectionning commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.42 on page 73.

---

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0091>
(minitoc(hints))               The captcont package should be
(minitoc(hints))               loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.

```

The captcont package alters the caption commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.43 on page 73.

---

```

Package minitoc(hints) Warning: <W0092>
(minitoc(hints))               The hangcaption package should be
(minitoc(hints))               loaded BEFORE the minitoc package.

```

The hangcaption package alters some commands and must be loaded *before* the minitoc package. See section 2.47 on page 76.

### 5.2.3 Error messages

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0001>
(minitoc)                But \part is undefined.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
\mtcfixglossary not usable
```

There are no adequate sectionning command available to use the `\mtcfixglossary` macro; even `\part` is undefined. Verify your document class.

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0002>
(minitoc)                But \part is undefined.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
\mtcfixindex not usable
```

There are no adequate sectionning command available to use the `\mtcfixindex` macro; even `\part` is undefined. Verify your document class.

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0003>
(minitoc)                Imbrication of mtchideinmainlof environments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect
```

Some `mtchideinmainlof` environments are incorrectly imbricated (overlapping), so the hiding in the main list of figures will be strange.

---

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0004>
(minitoc)          Imbrication of mtchideinmainlot environments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect

```

Some `mtchideinmainlot` environments are incorrectly imbricated (overlapping), so the hiding in the main list of tables will be strange.

---

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0005>
(minitoc)          Imbrication of mtchideinmaintoc environments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main ToC could be incorrect

```

Some `mtchideinmaintoc` environments are incorrectly imbricated (overlapping), so the hiding in the main table of contents will be strange.

---

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0006>
(minitoc)          LANGUAGE is not a known language,
(minitoc)          LANGUAGE.mld not found.
(minitoc)          Command ignored.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
See the minitoc documentation.
Correct the source using a valid language name.
Press RETURN

```

The `\mtcselectlanguage` macro has attempted to load the `LANGUAGE.mld` minitoc language definition file, but has not found it. First, verify the name of the language (likely to be misspelt), then check if your installation contains *all* the many distributed `.mld` files of the minitoc package, at the right place. If it is a local `.mld` file, it should be installed in the right place (in a local hierarchy) or be in the working directory.

---

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0007>
(minitoc)          LANGUAGE is not a known minitoc
(minitoc)          language object file (.mlo),
(minitoc)          LANGUAGE.mlo not found.
(minitoc)          Command ignored.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
See the minitoc documentation.
Correct the source using a valid language name.
Press RETURN

```

The `\mtcselectlanguage` macro has attempted to load indirectly the `LANGUAGE.mlo` minitoc language object file, but has not found it. First, verify the name of the language (likely to be misspelt), then check if your installation contains *all* the many distributed `.mlo` files of the minitoc package, at the right place. If it is a local `.mlo` file, it should be installed in the right place (in a local hierarchy) or be in the working directory.

---

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0008>
(minitoc)          \mtcsetdepth attempts to use
(minitoc)          an undefined counter (ARG/depth).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

You are trying to set the depth for an inexistent or undefined type of mini-table. Verify the type given and the document class, and the loaded packages.

---

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0009>
(minitoc)          \mtcsetdepth has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARGI).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetdepth` macro is incorrect. It should be a type of mini-table (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

---

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0010>
(minitoc)          \mtcsetdepth: Illegal type of table (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetdepth` macro is incorrect. It should be a mini-table type (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

---

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0011>
(minitoc)          \mtcsetfeature has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARG1).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetfeature` macro is incorrect. It should be a mini-table type (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

---

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0012>
(minitoc) \mtcsetfeature has a wrong second argument
(minitoc)          (ARG2).
(minitoc)          It should be a feature param
(minitoc)          (before, after, pagestyle).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The second argument of the `\mtcsetfeature` macro is incorrect. It should be `before`, `after`, or `thispagestyle`.

---

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0013>
(minitoc)          \mtcsetfont has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (arg1).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of `\mtcsetfont` is incorrect; it should be the type of a mini-table (`parttoc ...`, `sectlot`).

---

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0014>
(minitoc)          \mtcsetfont has a wrong second argument
(minitoc)          (ARG2).
(minitoc)          It should be a sectionning level
(minitoc)          (part...subparagraph) or * .
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The second argument of `\mtcsetfont` is incorrect; it should be a sectionning level (i.e., a sectionning command without its backslash), like `part ...`, `subparagraph`.

---

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0015>
(minitoc)          \mtcsetformat has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARG1).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of a `\mtcsetformat` macro is incorrect. It should be a mini-table type (`parttoc, ...`, `sectlot`).

---

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0016>
(minitoc)                \mtcsetformat has a wrong second argument
(minitoc)                (ARG2).
(minitoc)                It should be a formatting param choosen from:
(minitoc)                pagenumwidth, tocrightmargin, dotinterval.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The second argument of the `\mtcsetformat` macro is wrong. It should be one of the following keywords: `pagenumwidth`, `tocrightmargin`, or `dotinterval`.

---

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0017>
(minitoc)                \mtcsetpagenumbers has a wrong first
(minitoc)                argument (ARG1)..
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)                (parttoc...sectlot)
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetpagenumbers` macro must be a type of minitable (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

---

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0018>
(minitoc)                \mtcsetpagenumbers has a wrong second
(minitoc)                argument (ARG2).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It should be a boolean value (0/1, yes/no, on/off, ...)
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```



The second argument of the `\mtcsetpagenumbers` must be a keyword chosen in the following lists<sup>3</sup> :

- on, ON, yes, YES, y, Y, true, TRUE, t, T, vrai, VRAI, v, V, oui, OUI, o, O, +, and 1;
- off, OFF, no, NO, n, N, false, FALSE, faux, FAUX, f, F, non, NON, -, and 0.

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0019>
(minitoc)                \mtcsetrules has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)                (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)                (parttoc...sectlot)
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of the `\mtcsetrules` is incorrect. It should be a mini-table type (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0020>
(minitoc)                \mtcsetrules has a wrong second argument
(minitoc)                (ARG2).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It should be a boolean value (0/1, yes/no, on/off, ...)
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The second argument of the `\mtcsetrules` must be a keyword chosen in the following lists<sup>3</sup> :

- on, ON, yes, YES, y, Y, true, TRUE, t, T, vrai, VRAI, v, V, oui, OUI, o, O, +, and 1;
- off, OFF, no, NO, n, N, false, FALSE, faux, FAUX, f, F, non, NON, -, and 0.

<sup>3</sup> O and o are the letter O, 0 is the zero digit.

---

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0021>
(minitoc)          \mtcsettitle has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARG1).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of a `\mtcsettitle` macro is incorrect; it should be a mini-table type (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`).

---

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0022>
(minitoc)          \mtcsettitlefont has a wrong first argument
(minitoc)          (ARG1).
(minitoc)          It should be a mini-table type
(minitoc)          (parttoc...sectlot).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of the `\mtcsettitlefont` must be a mini-table type. You likely misspelt it.

---

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0023>
(minitoc)          The macro \mtcsetfeature has incompatible
(minitoc)          first (ARG1) and second (ARG2) arguments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first and second arguments of the `\mtcsetfeature` macro are incompatible. You should verify them.

---

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0024>
(minitoc)                The macro \mtcsetfont has incompatible
(minitoc)                first (ARG1) and second (ARG2) arguments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The `\mtcsetfont` macro takes a mini-table type as first argument, a sectionning level as second argument (or a star), and a sequence of font commands as third argument. The second argument must have a lower level than the first one (i.e., it is meaningless to specify the font for the chapter level entries for a minitoc or a secttoc).

---

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0025>
(minitoc)                The macro \mtcsetformat has incompatible
(minitoc)                first (ARG1) and second (ARG2) arguments.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first and second arguments of a `\mtcsetformat` macro are incompatible. One is likely to be misspelt.

---

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0026>
(minitoc)                The optional argument of \mtcfixglossary
(minitoc)                is wrong.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It must be omitted (chapter), or be part, chapter or section

```

The optional argument of the `\mtcfixglossary` macro is incorrect: it should be omitted (then it defaults to chapter) or be part, chapter, or section.

---

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0027>
(minitoc)           The optional argument of \mtcfindex
(minitoc)           is wrong.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It must be omitted (chapter), or be part, chapter or section

```

The optional argument of the `\mtcfindex` macro is incorrect: it should be omitted (then it defaults to chapter) or be part, chapter, or section.

---

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0028>
(minitoc)           Unable to patch the memoir class.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
So it remains incompatible. Sorry.

```

Your version of the memoir class is really incompatible with the minitoc package and cannot be automatically patched. Please update the memoir class and/or the minitoc package from the CTAN archives or a recent distribution.

---

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0029>
(minitoc)           Unbalanced mtchideinmainlof environment.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect

```

A `mtchideinmainlof` environment is unbalanced, so the hiding in the main list of figures could be incorrect.

---

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0030>
(minitoc)           Unbalanced mtchideinmainlot environment.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect

```

A `mtchideinmainlot` environment is unbalanced, so the hiding in the main list of tables could be incorrect.

---

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0031>
(minitoc)                Unbalanced mtchideinmaintoc environment.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
The hiding in main ToC could be incorrect
```

A `mtchideinmaintoc` environment is unbalanced, so the hiding in the main table of contents could be incorrect.

---

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0032>
(minitoc)                You are using the \mtcloadmlo command
(minitoc)                outside of a .mld file.
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
It will be ignored
```

It is *forbidden* to use the `\mtcloadmlo` macro outside of a `.mld` file (which is loaded via `\mtcselectlanguage`). The command is ignored.

---

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0033>
(minitoc)                The macro \mtcsettitle uses
(minitoc)                an illegal type of table (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

The first argument of a minitoc macro is incorrect. It should be a type of mini-table, like `parttoc`, `partlof`, `partlot`, `minitoc`, `minilof`, `minilot`, `secttoc`, `sectlof`, or `sectlot`.

---

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0034>
(minitoc)          The macro \mtcsettitlefont uses
(minitoc)          an illegal type of table (ARG1).
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return>  for immediate help.
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The first argument of a minitoc macro is incorrect. It should be a type of mini-table, like parttoc, partlof, partlot, minitoc, minilof, minilot, secttoc, sectlof, or sectlot.

---

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0035>
(minitoc)          You have used the 'insection' option in
(minitoc)          a document where chapters are defined.
(minitoc)          This is not compatible: option ignored.
Type H <return>  for immediate help.
? h
Remove this option.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX

```

The insection package option is intended for article-like document classes, to prevent floats from drifting out of their section. It is pointless for book-like or report-like document classes, where floats are contained in their chapter.

---

```

! Package minitoc Error: <E0036>
(minitoc)          Your minitoc installation is incomplete.
(minitoc)          The minitoc language object file (.mld),
(minitoc)          english.mld is not found.
(minitoc)          We will try to continue with default values.
Type H <return>  for immediate help.
? h
See the minitoc documentation.
Please fix your minitoc installation.
Type <return> to continue

```

The english.mld language definition file can not be found. You should verify your installation of the minitoc package. As an interim solution, we provide the missing english titles.

---

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0037>
(minitoc)                The \command command is incompatible
(minitoc)                with the document class.
```

```
See the minitoc package documentation for explanation.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
...
```

```
1.39 \dominitoc[r]
```

```
? h
Correct the source code.
Type <return> and rerun LaTeX
```

You have used a preparation or insertion command (*\command*) which is not available for the document class you are using. Please verify that the document class is compatible with minitoc and if the level of the mini-table is available in the document class (section-level mini-tables are not available in book- or report-like classes, chapter-level mini-tables are not available in article-like classes, mini-tables are not available in letter-like classes, etc.).

---

```
! Package minitoc Error: <E0038>
(minitoc)                Your minitoc installation is incomplete.
(minitoc)                A mandatory minitoc language object file,
(minitoc)                LANGUAGE.mld, is not found.
(minitoc)                We will try to continue with
(minitoc)                current/default values.
Type H <return> for immediate help.
? h
See the minitoc documentation.
Please fix your minitoc installation.
Type <return> to continue
```

The mandatory *LANGUAGE.mld* language definition file can not be found. You should verify your installation of the minitoc package. As an interim solution, we provide the default english titles.

## 5.3 Messages from the mtcoff package

The mtcoff package gives only warning messages; their numbers begin with F.

### 5.3.1 Warning messages

---

```
Package mtcoff Warning: <F0001>
(mtcoff)                \addstarredchapter{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}
(mtcoff)                on input line LINE.
```

The `\addstarredchapter` command is specific of the minitoc package and simulated by the mtcoff package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}` command.

---

```
Package mtcoff Warning: <F0002>
(mtcoff)                \addstarredpart{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}
(mtcoff)                on input line LINE.
```

The `\addstarredpart` command is specific of the minitoc package and simulated by the mtcoff package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}` command.

---

```
Package mtcoff Warning: <F0003>
(mtcoff)                \addstarredsection{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}
(mtcoff)                on input line LINE.
```

The `\addstarredsection` command is specific of the minitoc package and simulated by the mtcoff package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}` command.



---

```
Package mtcoff Warning: <F0004>
(mtcoff)                \mtcaddchapter{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}
(mtcoff)                on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcaddchapter` command is specific of the `minitoc` package and simulated by the `mtcoff` package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}` command.

---

```
Package mtcoff Warning: <F0005>
(mtcoff)                \mtcaddpart{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}
(mtcoff)                on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcaddpart` command is specific of the `minitoc` package and simulated by the `mtcoff` package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}` command.

---

```
Package mtcoff Warning: <F0006>
(mtcoff)                \mtcaddsection{...} should be replaced
(mtcoff)                by \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}
(mtcoff)                on input line LINE.
```

The `\mtcaddsection` command is specific of the `minitoc` package and simulated by the `mtcoff` package. If necessary, it should be replaced by the equivalent `\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}` command.

---

```
Package mtcoff Warning: <F0007>
(mtcoff)                You should scan (backwards) your .log
(mtcoff)                file to find some commands needing
(mtcoff)                to be replaced if you decide to
(mtcoff)                DEFINITELY stop using minitoc for this
(mtcoff)                document. It is more wise to keep the
(mtcoff)                \usepackage lines for minitoc and mtcoff
(mtcoff)                and to comment out only one of them.
```

You have replaced the use of the `minitoc` package by its substitute `mtcoff`. It is recommended to keep the `\usepackage` lines for both `minitoc` and `mtcoff` and to comment out only one of them. If you decide to *definitely* stop using `minitoc` for this document, it is wise to scan (backwards) the `document.log` file (after a compilation using `mtcoff`) to locate some commands needing to be replaced.

---

```
Package mtcoff Warning: <F0008>
(mtcoff)                The macro \string\kernafterSTRING
(mtcoff)                should not be used out of context
(mtcoff)                on line LINE.
```

You are using one of the `\kernafterSTRING` macros with the `mtcoff` package. The result may be unpredictable. You can only redefine these macros to adjust the position of the bottom rule of a type of minitables. Any other usage is meaningless without the `minitoc` package.

## 5.4 Message from the `mtcpatchmem` package

---

```
Package mtcpatchmem Info: <M0001>
Package mtcpatchmem Info: mtcpatchmem package to patch the memoir class.
```

You are using a version of the `memoir` class which needs a correction. This correction has been automatically loaded if necessary. Very recent versions should not need it anymore. See chapter 12 on page 435.

# Chapter 6

## Jargon

### Tables

6.1	Category codes	201
6.2	Encoding schemes implemented in CJK	201
6.3	Standard document classes	202
6.4	Depths for sectionning commands	204
6.5	Various encodings	205
6.6	Most common font encodings	216
6.7	Most common font families	217
6.8	Most common font series	217
6.9	Most common font shapes	217
6.10	The five font parameters for some fonts	217
6.11	Author commands for fonts	218
6.12	Some systems derived from T <sub>E</sub> X and L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X	219

This chapter attempts to explain some terms used in this documentation, and describes some useful files and suffixes. Many data come from the documentations of various cited packages, and from [3, 4, 103, 106, 156, 157, 168, 174, 175, 176, 188, 189, 192, 201, 207, 209, 210, 257].

- .aux** The suffix of the name for an *auxiliary* file of a L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X document. It carries some information from a L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X run to the next.
- .cls** The suffix for the name of a document class file, loaded via `\documentclass`.
- .dtx** The suffix of the name for a documented source file of a L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X package or class. This file is often associated with a `.ins` file to generate the package or class. Compiling a `.dtx` file with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X generates the documentation.
- .F** The base suffix of the name for a minilof file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.Fnn` where *nn* is the absolute number of the minilof.
- .G** The base suffix of the name for a partlof file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.Gnn` where *nn* is the absolute number of the partlof.

<b>.H</b>	The base suffix of the name for a sectlof file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <i>.Hnn</i> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the sectlof.
<b>.ins</b>	The suffix of the name for an installation file of a L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X package or class. When compiled with L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X, it extracts the files of the package or class from an <i>.dtx</i> file.
<b>.lof</b>	The suffix of the name of the “list of figures” file.
<b>.log</b>	The suffix of the name of the log file (compilation report).
<b>.lot</b>	The suffix of the name of the “list of tables” file.
<b>.M</b>	The base suffix of the name for a minitoc file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <i>.Mnn</i> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the minitoc.
<b>.maf</b>	The suffix of the name of the file generated by the <code>listfiles</code> package option. This file contains the list of the minitoc auxiliary files.
<b>.mld</b>	The suffix for the name of a minitoc language definition file. A minitoc language definition file contains the definitions for the mini-table titles in a given language.
<b>.mlf</b>	The base suffix of the name for a minilof file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <i>.mlfnn</i> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the minilof.
<b>.mlo</b>	The suffix for the name of a minitoc language object file. For some exotic languages, the encoding makes not easy to put directly the titles in a <i>.mld</i> file; hence the <i>.mld</i> file must load a <i>.mlo</i> file.
<b>.mlt</b>	The base suffix of the name for a minilot file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <i>.mltmn</i> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the minilot.
<b>.mtc</b>	The base suffix of the name for a minitoc file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <i>.mtcmn</i> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the minitoc.
<b>.P</b>	The base suffix of the name for a parttoc file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <i>.Pnn</i> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the parttoc.
<b>.plf</b>	The base suffix of the name for a partlof file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <i>.plfnn</i> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the partlof.
<b>.plt</b>	The base suffix of the name for a partlot file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <i>.pltmn</i> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the partlot.
<b>.ptc</b>	The base suffix of the name for a parttoc file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <i>.ptcmn</i> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the parttoc.
<b>.S</b>	The base suffix of the name for a secttoc file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <i>.Snn</i> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the secttoc.
<b>.slf</b>	The base suffix of the name for a sectlof file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <i>.slfnn</i> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the sectlof.
<b>.slt</b>	The base suffix of the name for a sectlot file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <i>.sltmn</i> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the sectlot.
<b>.stc</b>	The base suffix of the name for a secttoc file when long extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is <i>.stcmn</i> where <i>nn</i> is the absolute number of the secttoc.

- .sty** The suffix for the name of a package file, loaded via `\usepackage`.
- .T** The base suffix of the name for a minilot file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.Tnn` where *nn* is the absolute number of the minilot.
- .tex** The suffix of the name of a  $\text{\TeX}$  or  $\text{\LaTeX}$  normal source file.
- .toc** The suffix of the name of the “table of contents” file.
- .U** The base suffix of the name for a partlot file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.Unn` where *nn* is the absolute number of the partlot.
- .V** The base suffix of the name for a sectlot file when short extensions (suffixes) are used. The full suffix is `.Vnn` where *nn* is the absolute number of the sectlot.

**absolute numbering** The auxiliary files for the mini-tables have a suffix containing an *absolute number*, i.e., the number is unique and always increasing from the first part, chapter or section; this has solved some obscure problems, and also made obsolete some commands, like `\firstpartis`, `\firstchapteris`, and `\firstsectionis`. The absolute numbering has been introduced in version #23.

**abstract** The abstract package [266] (by Peter R. WILSON) needs some precautions if used with its `addtotoc` option.

**adjustment** Some minitoc commands and environments are known as “adjustment commands” because they are used in some circumstances to “adjust” a counter or to alter the displaying of contents files. These commands and environments are `\adjustptc`, `\adjustmtc`, `\adjuststc`, `\decrementptc`, `\decrementmtc`, `\decrementstc`, `\incrementptc`, `\incrementmtc`, `\incrementstc`, `\mtcaddpart`, `\mtcaddchapter`, `\mtcaddsection`, `\mtcfixglossary`, `\mtcfixindex`, `mtchideinmaintoc`, `mtchideinmainlof`, and `mtchideinmainlot`. It is *strongly recommended* that the user verifies the result of such adjustments in the final document.



**after** A type of *feature* (see this term) which is executed *after* a given type of mini-table. Look at the documentation of the `\mtcsetfeature` command, in section 1.10 on page 45.

**alnumsec** The `alnumsec` package [162] allows you to use alphanumeric section numbering, e.g. A. Introduction; III. International Law. Its output is similar to the `alphanum` package (part of the `jura` class [88]), but you can use the standard  $\text{\LaTeX}$  sectioning commands. Thus it is possible to switch numbering schemes easily. Greek letters, double letters (bb) and different delimiters around them are supported. It must be loaded *before* the minitoc package (see point 1.8 on page 50 and section 2.42 on page 73).

**alphanum** The `alphanum` package, which is part of the specialized `jura` class [88], by Felix BRAUN, is *incompatible* with the minitoc package.



**$\mathcal{AMS}$**  The American Mathematical Society. This society has developed some document classes: unfortunately, `amsart` and `amsproc` are *incompatible* with the minitoc package; `amsbook` is compatible but needs precautions.





**amsart, amsart.cls** A document class for articles, provided by the American Mathematical Society ( $\mathcal{AMS}$ ). Unfortunately, this class is *incompatible* with the minitoc package.

**amsbook, amsbook.cls** A document class for books, provided by the American Mathematical Society ( $\mathcal{AMS}$ ). This class is compatible with the minitoc package, but needs some precautions. See section 2.24 on page 63.



**amsproc, amsproc.cls** A document class for conference proceedings, provided by the American Mathematical Society ( $\mathcal{AMS}$ ). Unfortunately, this class is *incompatible* with the minitoc package.

**Antomega** Antomega [160] (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) is a language support package for *Lambda* ( $\Lambda$ ), based on the original *omega.sty* file of the Omega project ( $\Omega$ ). However, it provides some additional useful functionalities. Some languages definition files (.mld) use titles taken from Antomega: *greek-mono.mld*, *greek-polydemo.mld*, *greek-polykatha.mld*, *latvian.mld*, *polish2.mld*, *russian2m.mld*, *russian2o.mld*, and *spanish3.mld*.

**appendices** See appendix below.

**appendix** The appendix package [267] (by Peter R. WILSON) provides various ways of formatting the titles of appendices. Also (sub)appendices environments are provided that can be used, for example, for per chapter/section appendices. If this package is used with minitoc, some precautions are needed (see section 2.20 on page 60).

**Arabi** *Arabi* [145] is a system (by Youssef JABRI) to prepare  $\text{\LaTeX}$  documents in the arabic or farsi languages. The titles in *arabi.mld* and *farsi3.mld* come from the *arabic.ldf* and *farsi.ldf* files of this system.

**ArabTeX** *ArabTeX* [164, 165] is a package (by Klaus LAGALLY) to prepare  $\text{\LaTeX}$  documents in the arabic or hebrew languages. The titles in *arab.mld* (or *arabic.mld*), *arab2.mld* and *hebrew.mld* come from *ArabTeX*, while those of *hebrew2.mld* come from *babel* [40, 41].

**ArmTeX** *ArmTeX* [107] is a package (prepared by Serguei D'ACHIAN, Arak DALALYAN and Vartan AKOPIAN) to prepare  $\text{\LaTeX}$  documents in the armenian language. The titles in *armenian.mld* come from *ArmTeX*.

**article** A standard  $\text{\LaTeX}$  document class. It has sectioning commands: `\part` and `\section` (and below), but not `\chapter`. It is compatible with the minitoc package and you can make mini-tables at the part and section levels (but, of course, not at the chapter level).

**\AtBeginDocument** This standard macro allows to add code to be executed at the beginning of the document (if fact, at the very end of its preamble, but inside it, which implies some restrictions), at the point where `\begin{document}` is processed. This allows a package (or a class) to add code without creating any conflicts with other packages trying to do the same.

**\AtEndDocument** This standard macro allows to add code to be executed at the end of the document, at the point where `\end{document}` is processed. This allows a package (or a class) to add code without creating any conflicts with other packages trying to do the same.

**autoconfiguration** Since version #28, `minitoc` detects automatically if the extensions (suffixes) of the file names are limited to 3 characters (like under MS-DOS) or not. This process is named autoconfiguration. The package option `shorttext` forces the limitation to 3 characters.

**auxiliary** During the preparation of a document, the  $\LaTeX$  system uses some **auxiliary** files to store information. The standard auxiliary files are `document.aux` (for cross-reference labels, counters, etc.), `document.toc` for the table of contents, `document.lof` for the list of figures, and `document.lot` for the list of tables. The `minitoc` package creates its own auxiliary files, to store the contents of each mini-table. These files are the *minitoc auxiliary files*, whose names are `document.extension`, the table 1.11 on page 51 lists the possible extensions.

**babel** The `babel` package [40, 41] (by Johannes L. BRAAMS and others) is a large package useful to write  $\LaTeX$  documents in many languages, not only english. Many titles for mini-tables come from the `babel` package.

**BangTeX** A package for typesetting documents in the `bangla` language using the  $\TeX/\LaTeX$  systems; see [214].

**before** A type of *feature* (see this term) which is executed *before* a given type of mini-table. Look at the documentation of the `\mtcsetfeature` command, in section 1.10 on page 45.

**BibTeX** A program by Oren PATASHNIK to make bibliographies in  $\LaTeX$  documents. Distributed with  $\LaTeX$ . See [192, 218, 219, 238].

**bibtopic** A  $\LaTeX$  package [16] for including several bibliographies in a document. These bibliographies might be considered to cover different topics (hence the name) or bibliographic material (e.g., primary and secondary literature) and the like.

**bibunits** The `bibunits` package [130] allows separate bibliographies for different units or parts of the text. The units can be chapters, sections or `bibunit` environments. This package is compatible with a wide variety of packages, including, but not limited to, , and KOMA-Script classes [157, 207].

**book** A standard  $\LaTeX$  document class. It has sectioning commands: `\part`, `\chapter`, and `\section` (and below). It is compatible with the `minitoc` package and you can make mini-tables at the part and chapter levels (but not at the section level, to avoid too many auxiliary files).

**cappuccino** See “minutes” below.

**captcont** The `captcont` package [101] provides support for retaining a figure or caption number across several float environments — usually over several pages. It allows control over the contents of the List-of-Figures and the List-of-Tables pages. It should be compatible with all other packages that modify or extend the float environment and with the `subfig` package [102] in particular.

**caption** The caption package [240] provides many ways to customize the captions in floating environments such figure and table and cooperates with many other packages.

**caption2** The<sup>1</sup> caption2 package [239] used to be an experimental side-version of the regular caption package [240] and has been superseed by the new release of the regular caption package version 3.0 in December 2003. caption2 is still some kind of supported, that means it will be part of future releases and bugs will still be fixed, so existing documents using this package will still compile. But Axel SOMMERFELDT will *not* answer questions about this package anymore except questions on migrating to the regular version of the caption package. And it will *not* be adapted or enhanced in the future.

So please don't use this package for new documents. It's old, it's obsolete and it starts to begin smell bad!

Please ignore all hints in books or other documents which try to tell you that the caption2 package should be used instead of the caption package – these hints are outdated since December 2003.

**CATALOG** A plain text file which contains basic infos about the minitoc package (abstract, date, author, version, licence).

**catcode** Short for “category code”. In<sup>2</sup> the first place, it's wise to have a precise idea of what your keyboard sends to the machine. There are 256 characters that T<sub>E</sub>X might encounter at each step, in a file or in a line of text typed directly on your terminal. These 256 characters are classified into 16 categories numbered 0 to 15. See table 6.1 on the next page. It's not necessary for you to learn these code numbers; the point is only that T<sub>E</sub>X responds to 16 different types of characters. At first, “*The T<sub>E</sub>Xbook*” led you to believe that there were just two types—the escape character and the others—and then you were told about two more types, the grouping symbols { and }. The category code for any character can be changed at any time, but it is usually wise to stick to a particular scheme.

**ccaption** The ccaption package [270] provides commands for “continuation captions”, unnumbered captions, and a legend heading for any environment. Methods are provided to define captions for use outside float environments, and to define new float environments and subfloats. Tools are provided for defining your own captioning styles.

**Chapter 0** Some documents do not begin with chapter number one, but with chapter number zero (or even a weirder number). This caused a serious problem in old versions of the minitoc package: the minitocs appeared in the wrong chapters, and a first correction was the introduction of specific commands (\firstchapteris and co.). With the addition of the absolute numbering of the mini-table auxiliary files (see *absolute* above), the problem was solved in minitoc version #23, and these commands became obsolete. See section 1.5.4 on page 46.

**chapterbib** The chapterbib package [12] allows multiple bibliographies in a L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X document, including items \cite'd in more than one bibliography. Despite the name

<sup>1</sup> This text comes from the documentation of the caption package. The caption and caption2 packages have the same author, Axel SOMMERFELDT.

<sup>2</sup> This definition is taken from “*The T<sub>E</sub>Xbook*” [153].



Table 6.1: Category codes

	Category	Meaning
0	Escape character	(\ usually)
1	Beginning of group	{ usually)
2	End of group	} usually)
3	Math shift	(\$ usually)
4	Alignment tab	(& usually)
5	End of line	( <i>return</i> usually)
6	Parameter	(# usually)
7	Superscript	(^ usually)
8	Subscript	(_ usually)
9	Ignored character	( <i>null</i> usually)
10	Space	(_ usually)
11	Letter	(A, ..., Z and a, ..., z)
12	Other character	(none of the above or below)
13	Active character	(~ usually)
14	Comment character	(% usually)
15	Invalid character	( <i>delete</i> usually)

Table 6.2: Encoding schemes implemented in CJK

Encoding	1 byte	2 bytes	3 bytes
GB	0xA1–0xF7	0xA1–0xFE	—
Big 5	0xA1–0xF9	0x40–0xFE	—
JIS	0xA1–0xF4	0xA1–0xFE	—
SJIS	0xA1–0xFE	0x40–0xFC	—
KS	0xA1–0xFD	0xA1–0xFE	—
UTF 8	0xC0–0xEF	0x80–0xBF	0x80–0xBF
CNS	0xA1–0xFE	0xA1–0xFE	—

“chapterbib”, *the bibliographies are for each included file*, not necessarily for each chapter.

**checkfiles** A package option of `minitoc`. It checks every mini-table to look if it is empty; then empty mini-tables are *not* printed. This is the default. The opposite package option (`nocheckfiles`) prints even the empty mini-tables, which look ugly. See section 9.74.2 on page 380.

**CJK** The CJK system [179, 180] (by Werner LEMBERG and others), is a set of packages and fonts to prepare  $\text{\LaTeX}$  documents in some oriental language, like chinese, japanese, korean (with Hangûl or Hanja fonts), and thai, plus some variants of russian. The titles of mini-tables for these languages come from some CJK files and were inserted in `.mld` files when possible, or in `.mlo` files when the encoding is incompatible with the `.ins/.dtx` mechanism; then the `.mld` file must input the corresponding `.mlo` file. CJK implements the GB, Big 5, JIS, SJIS, KS, UTF 8, and CNS encodings (on 16 bits, except UTF 8 on 24 bits). See table 6.2.

Some encoding schemes (Big 5, SJIS) have gaps in the range of the second byte. It is difficult to input Big 5 and SJIS encoding directly into  $\text{\TeX}$  since some of the

Table 6.3: Standard document classes

Class	Usage
article	For articles in scientific journals, presentations, short reports, program documentation, invitations, . . .
proc	For preparing conference proceedings; analog to the article class.
ltxdoc	For preparing the documentation of a package or of a class; analog to the article class.
ltxnews	For preparing the announcement of a L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X release; analog to the article class.
report	For longer reports containing several chapters, small books, PhD theses, . . .
book	For real books.
letter	For letters; as this class has no sectionning commands, do not use minitoc with this class.
slides	For slides; the class uses big sans serif letters. You might want to consider using BeamerT <sub>E</sub> X <sup>a</sup> instead. Do not use minitoc with these classes.

<sup>a</sup> <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/beamer/doc/beameruserguide.pdf>

values used for the encodings' second bytes are reserved for control characters: '{', '}', and '\'. Redefining them breaks a lot of things in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X; to avoid this, preprocessors are normally used which convert the second byte into a number followed by a delimiter character. For further details, please refer to [188, 189]; Ken LUNDE discusses in great detail all CJK encodings which are or have been in use. Please note that the minitoc package uses the .mlo files as a workaround for this problem; see section 1.4.12 on page 41.

**class** The **class**<sup>3</sup> is the first information L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X needs to know when processing an input file; it is the type of document the author wants to create. This is specified with the `\documentclass` command.

`\documentclass[options]{class}`

Here *class* specifies the type of document to be created. Table 6.3 lists the standard document classes. The L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> distribution provides additional classes for other documents, including letters and slides, but the minitoc package has not been tested with all these classes. The *options* parameters customize the behaviour of the document class. The options have to be separated by commas. The standard classes supported by the minitoc package are listed in section 2.7 on page 56.

**cmk** An example of shell script to prepare the documentation files in PostScript format from the ones in PDF format. This script should be adapted to your needs.

**CMR** For “Computer Modern Roman”. The roman subset of the Computer Modern fonts. See “Computer Modern” below.

**comp.text.tex** The Usenet news group about T<sub>E</sub>X and L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X, in english.

**Computer Modern** A set of fonts [152] designed by Donald E. KNUTH for T<sub>E</sub>X. Initially they were built with METAFONT [108, 154] (a program also created by KNUTH), but PostScript type 1 (vector) versions exist today, with extensions (for accented

<sup>3</sup> This note is extracted from [210], then adapted.

characters, mainly): the EC-fonts (European Computer Modern), the cm-super fonts, etc.

**counter** A  $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$  register containing an integer value. There are 256 counters (from 0 to 255) in  $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ , but  $\text{L}^{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$  uses some of them, and many packages need some counters for their own usage. An extended version derived from  $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ ,  $\varepsilon\text{-T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$  [90], allows more counters. Omega ( $\Omega$ ) also offers more counters.

**CTAN** The *Comprehensive  $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$  Archive Network*, a set of computer archives containing most of the  $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$  related resources (like fonts, software, documentations, packages). They are accessible via Internet. The participating hosts in the Comprehensive TeX Archive Network are:

- `ftp.dante.de` (Koeln, Germany)
  - anonymous ftp `/tex-archive (/pub/tex /pub/archive)`
  - rsync access on `rsync://rsync.dante.de/CTAN/`
  - World Wide Web access on `http://www.dante.de/`
  - Administrator: `mailto:ftpmaint@dante.de`
- `ftp.tex.ac.uk` (Cambridge, England, UK)
  - anonymous ftp `/tex-archive (/pub/tex /pub/archive)`
  - rsync access on `rsync://rsync.tex.ac.uk/CTAN/`
  - NFS mountable from `nfs.tex.ac.uk/tex-archive`
  - World Wide Web access on `http://www.tex.ac.uk/`
  - Administrator: `mailto:ctan-uk@tex.ac.uk`
- `tug.ctan.org` (Colchester, Vermont, USA)
  - anonymous ftp `/tex-archive (/pub/archive)`
  - World Wide Web access on `http://www.ctan.org/`
  - Administrator: `mailto:tex@ctan.tug.org`

There are also many sites mirroring these main archives.

**de.comp.text.tex** The Usenet news group about  $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$  and  $\text{L}^{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ , in german.

**depth** In the standard documents classes (and in most classes) with sectionning commands, we have a notion of **depth**. The depth of a sectionning command determines the numbering level in its title (from the value of the `secnumdepth` counter), and the entries for a given sectionning command appear in the main table of contents if the depth of this sectionning command is lower than or equal to the value of the `tocdepth` counter; see table 6.4 on the following page for the depths of the sectionning commands in the main document classes.

The mechanism is analog for the `parttocs`, `minitocs`, and `secttocs`, using the values of the `parttocdepth`, `minitocdepth`, and `secttocdepth` counters. If you use sub-figures or sub-tables, the corresponding mini-tables use counters like `partlofdepth`, `partlotdepth`, `minilofdepth`, `minilotdepth`, `sectlofdepth`, and `sectlotdepth`.

**descriptor** (file descriptor). A software entity describing the interface between a program and a file. For most programs and operating systems, the number of file descriptors is limited. For  $\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$  (and  $\text{L}^{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ ), there are 16 file descriptors for writing and 16 file descriptors for reading.

Table 6.4: Depths for sectionning commands

Class:	book	report	article
secnumdepth	2	2	3
\part	-1	-1	0
\chapter	0	0	×
\section	1	1	1
\subsection	2	2	2
\subsubsection	3	3	3
\paragraph	4	4	4
\subparagraph	5	5	5

**devanagari.sty** The *Devanāgarī for T<sub>E</sub>X* (Devanāgarī) package [216] provides a way to typeset high-quality Devanāgarī text with T<sub>E</sub>X. Devanāgarī is a script used for writing and printing Sanskrit and a number of languages in Northern and Central India such as Hindi and Marathi, as well as Nepali. The Devanāgarī package was originally developed in May 1991 by Frans Velthuis for the University of Groningen, The Netherlands, and it was the first system to provide support for the Devanāgarī script for T<sub>E</sub>X.

**em** A length unit equal (approximatively) to the width of a “m” letter in the current font.

**emk** An example of shell script to prepare the english documentation of the minitoc package. The script `imk` must have be run previously. See item 9 on page 228.

**en-mtc.bst** A bibliographic style derived from the `plain.bst` standard style, but modified with the `urlbst` tool [124] to add an URL field. Family names of authors and editors are in small caps, years are in old style digits.

**encoding** This specifies the order that characters appear in the font (e.g., whether the 65th character is “A”). The most common value for TeX font encoding is OT1. The other predefined option is T1 (extended T<sub>E</sub>X). There’s also US ASCII (7 bit), ISO Latin-1 (8 bit), Adobe Standard Encoding, UTF8 (Unicode [99, 110, 251]), etc. See table 6.5 on the following page and [177].

**environment** An environment is a delimited domain in a document, where special rules apply. Such a domain is delimited by `\begin{env}` ... `\end{env}` and may take arguments, like this:

```
\begin{minipage}[t]{.5\textwidth}
\end{minipage}
```

**ethiop** A L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X package [31] giving the ethiopian language support for the babel package [40, 41].

**extension** The name of a file is often made of 2 parts: a *base name* and an *extension*, separated by a dot. On some old operating systems, the base name is limited to 8 characters and the extension to 3 characters (the “8+3” scheme). See also sections 1.9 on page 51 and 2.5 on page 56. It is strongly recommended to not have more than one dot in a file name.

Table 6.5: Various encodings

Encoding	Comment
<code>ansinew</code>	Windows 3.1 ANSI encoding, extension of Latin-1.
<code>applemac</code>	Macintosh encoding.
<code>ascii</code>	ASCII encoding for the range 32–127.
<code>cp1250</code>	Windows 1250 (Central and Eastern Europe) code page.
<code>cp1251</code>	Windows 1251 (Cyrillic) code page.
<code>cp1252</code>	Synonym for <code>ansinew</code> .
<code>cp437</code>	IBM 437 code page, which is the original American code page and contains letters, digits, mathematical symbols, and some characters useful in the construction of pseudographics.
<code>cp437de</code>	IBM 437 code page (German version).
<code>cp850</code>	IBM 850 code page, almost the same as ISO Latin 1, but character arrangement is not the same.
<code>cp852</code>	IBM 852 code page.
<code>cp855</code>	IBM 855 code page (Cyrillic).
<code>cp865]</code>	IBM 865 code page.
<code>cp866]</code>	IBM 866 code page (MS-DOS Cyrillic).
<code>decmulti</code>	DEC Multinational Character Set encoding.
<code>latin1</code>	ASCII encoding plus the characters needed for most Western European languages, including Danish, Dutch, English, Faroese, Finnish, Flemish, French, German, Icelandic, Italian, Norwegian, Portuguese, Spanish, and Swedish. Some non-European languages, such as Hawaiian and Indonesian, are also written in this character set.
<code>latin2</code>	ASCII encoding plus the characters needed for most Central European languages, including Croatian, Czech, Hungarian, Polish, Romanian, Slovak, and Slovenian.
<code>latin3</code>	ASCII encoding plus the characters needed for Esperanto, Maltese, Turkish, and Galicean. However, <code>latin5</code> is the preferred character set for Turkish.
<code>latin4</code>	ASCII encoding plus the characters needed for the Baltic languages (Latvian, Estonian, and Lithuanian), Greenlandic, and Lappish (Sámi).
<code>latin5</code>	Is essentially the same as <code>latin1</code> , except that some Turkish characters replace less commonly used Icelandic letters.
<code>next</code>	Next encoding.

**farsi.sty** See FarsiT<sub>E</sub>X below.

**FarsiT<sub>E</sub>X** A package [115] to typeset a document in the `farsi` (iranian, persian) language. See <http://www.farsitex.org>. But this package is today available only for L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X2.09. See also sections 13.52 on page 466 and 13.53 on page 466.

**features** A feature (for the `minitoc` package) is a set of actions executed at each occurrence of a mini-table of a given type. Three features are associated to each mini-table type: a “before” feature (executed before the mini-table), an “after” feature (executed after the mini-table), and a “thispagestyle” feature, which is executed with the mini-table to set its page style. Look at the documentation of the `\mtcsetfeature` command, in section 1.10 on page 45.

**filecontents** A special  $\LaTeX$  environment. It allows to create a file (whose name is passed as an argument of the environment) by writing the contents of the environment into that file:

```
\begin{filecontents}{file}
...contents ...
\end{filecontents}
```

This environment should be used *before* `\documentclass`. It is used in `minitoc.ins` to prepare the `.mlo` files (see section 1.4.12 on page 41) and some files used in the compilation of the documentation.

**\firstchapteris** An obsolete command, temporarily used as a workaround for the Chapter 0 problem; see **Chapter 0** and **absolute numbering** above, and section 1.5.4 on page 46.

**\firstpartis** Analog to `\firstchapteris` above.

**\firstsectionis** Analog to `\firstchapteris` above.

**\FloatBarrier** A macro from the `placeins` package [9]. It sets up a “barrier” against the drift of floats (like figures or tables).

**fminitoc.bib** A bibliographic data base for the french documentation of the `minitoc` package.

**fminitoc.dtx** The source file for the french documentation of the `minitoc` package. In fact, it just sets `\jobname` then loads `minitoc.dtx`, which itself loads `\jobname.lan` to select the language used in `minitoc.dtx`; `minitoc.dtx` contains both english and french documentation fragments, selected by `\ifcase` constructs with the `\LANG` variable, set to 0 by `minitoc.lan` or to 1 by `fminitoc.lan` (i.e., by `\jobname.lan`). `fminitoc.dtx` is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

**fminitoc.ist** This file contains a style for formatting the index in the french documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

**fminitoc.lan** A file used to force the french language in the documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

**fminitoc.pdf** The french documentation in PDF format.

**fminitoc.ps** The french documentation in PostScript format. No more distributed (but look at the `cmk` script).

**fmk** An example of shell script to prepare the french documentation of the `minitoc` package. The script `imk` must have been run previously. See item 9 on page 228.

**fncychap** The `fncychap` package [182] provides a set of commands for changing the format used for some headings (chapters) in the standard  $\LaTeX$  2<sub>ε</sub> document classes: `book` and `report`. It must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (see point 1.8 on page 50 and section 2.38 on page 72).

**fr.comp.text.tex** The Usenet newsgroup about  $\TeX$  and  $\LaTeX$ , in french.

**franc.sty** A small package file used to prepare the french documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

- frbib.sty** A small package file used to prepare the bibliography of the french documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.
- fr-mtc.bst** A bibliographic style file used to prepare the bibliography of the french documentation. It has been updated from the standard `plain.bst` for french by Ronan KERYELL, then I added some adaptations for french (like last names in small caps for authors and editors, years in old style digits), then modified with the `urlbst` [124] tool to add an URL field.
- frnew.sty** A small package file used to prepare the french documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.
- guarani** A  $\text{\LaTeX}$  package to compose text in Guarani, the main language spoken in Paraguay. The file `guarani.ldf`, included in this package, defines the titles. See [34] and section 13.72 on page 477.
- hangcaption** The `hangcaption` package [148] defines a variant of the `\caption` command to produce captions with hanging indentation. This package is likely obsolete (1992,  $\text{\LaTeX}$ 2.09).
- Hindi** For the Hindi language, see the `Devanāgarī` package [216] above. The `minitoc` package accepts the `devanagari` and `hindi` language options, which are synonyms. A `hindi-modern` language option is also available.
- hint** An indication, a clue to detect a problem. It is also a message written (into the `document.log` file) by the `hints` option (see below).
- hints** An option of the `minitoc` package. It verifies the loading order of some packages, the invocation order of some `minitoc` commands, the consistency between main `minitoc` commands, etc., and gives warnings and other useful hints (mainly in the `document.log` file). This is a default option (use the `nohints` option to skip these checks).
- H $\text{\LaTeX}$**  A system to write documents in the Korean language, using *Lambda* ( $\Lambda$ ) (see below). Written by KOAUNGH Un [156, in korean]. It uses special Hangul or Hanja fonts and the UTF-8 input encoding.
- hyperlink** In a document, a reference to another object which is dynamicaly found (via a click with the mouse). This requires a special type of document (PDF, PostScript with hypertext features) and a suitable viewer (PDF viewer, recent PS viewer). This is useful to navigate in a document or in many documents, which can be remote documents.
- hyperref** The `hyperref` package [227] is used to emend cross-referencing commands in  $\text{\LaTeX}$  to produce some sort of `\special` commands; there are backends for the `\special` set defined for `Hyper $\text{\TeX}$`  dvi processors, for embedded `pdfmark` commands for processing by Acrobat Distiller (**dvips** and **dvipsone**), for **dviwindo**, for **pdf $\text{\TeX}$** , for **T $\text{\E}$ X4ht**, and for **V $\text{\TeX}$** 's pdf and HTML backends.
- This package derives from, and builds on, the work of the `Hyper $\text{\TeX}$`  project, described in [223]. It extends the functionality of all the  $\text{\LaTeX}$  cross-referencing commands (including the table of contents, bibliographies, etc.) to produce `\special` commands which a driver can turn into hypertext links; it also provides new commands to allow the user to write *ad hoc* hypertext links (hyperlinks), including those to external documents and URLs.

**ifmtarg** The ifmtarg package [275] provides an if-then-else command for testing if a macro argument is empty (“empty” meaning zero or more spaces only).

**imk** An example of shell script, which prepares the minitoc package from minitoc.ins and minitoc.dtx; note that imk must be run before running emk or fmk. See item 9 on page 228.

**insection** The insection package option loads the placeins package [9] with adequate options to avoid the floats (like figures and tables) to drift outside of their sections. This package option is recommended if you use sectlofs or sectlots in your document. See section 1.2 on page 28.

**insertion** The insertion commands of the minitoc package insert a mini-table in the document. A corresponding *preparation* command must have been invoked (only once) before. The insertion commands are:

```
\parttoc, \partlof, \partlot,
\minitoc, \minilof, \minilot,
\secttoc, \sectlof, \sectlot,
\mtcprepare
```

**INSTALL** A text file describing the installation of the minitoc package. See chapter 7 on page 226.

**\jobname** A TeX primitive containing the name of the document in preparation, i.e., the name of the file read first by TeX (or L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X), without its extension. Very useful to build the names of other files.



**jura** The jura class [88], by Felix BRAUN, is *incompatible* with the minitoc package. It is used for german judicial documents.

**k-loose** A minitoc package option useful if your document is written with one of the KOMA-Script classes [157, 207]. This option tries to set a loose line spacing in the mini-tables. Analog to the loose package option for standard classes.

**k-tight** A minitoc package option useful if your document is written with one of the KOMA-Script classes [157, 207]. This option tries to set a tight line spacing in the mini-tables. Analog to the tight package option for standard classes.

**KOMA-Script** KOMA-Script [157, 207] is a very complex bundle. You may see this, because it is not only one class or one package but a bundle of many classes and packages. The classes (scrartcl, scrbook, scrlettr, scrlettr2, and scrreprt) are counterparts to the standard classes but never they come with only the same commands, environments, options and optional possibilities like the standard classes nor they result in the same look-a-like.

The scrbook, scrreprt, and scrartcl classes are compatible with the minitoc package, with some precautions (see section 1.5.5 on page 47). The scrlettr and scrlettr2 have no sectioning commands, so the minitoc package is pointless with them.

KOMA-Script comes with a lot of classes, packages, commands, environments and possibilities. Some of these you may find also at the standard classes, many of them you wouldn't. Some are even supplements to the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X kernel.

The main classes of the KOMA-Script bundle are designed as counterparts to the standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X classes. This means that the KOMA-Script bundle contains



replacements for the three standard classes `book`, `report`, and `article`. There is also a replacement for the standard class `letter`.

**Lambda** The  $\text{\LaTeX}$  format (in the  $\text{\TeX}$  meaning of that word) adapted to the special features of Omega ( $\Omega$ ) is called “*Lambda*” ( $\Lambda$ ).

**Lamed** The  $\text{\LaTeX}$  format (in the  $\text{\TeX}$  meaning of that word) adapted to the special features of *Aleph* ( $\aleph$ ) is called “*Lamed*” ( $\beth$ ).

**$\text{\LaTeX}$**   $\text{\LaTeX}$  [167] is a typesetting system that is very suitable for producing scientific and mathematical documents of high typographical quality. It is also suitable for producing all sorts of other documents, from simple letters to complete books.  $\text{\LaTeX}$  uses  $\text{\TeX}$  [153, 155] as its formatting engine (from [210]).

In fact,  $\text{\LaTeX}$  is a macro package that enables authors to typeset and print their work at the highest typographical quality, using a predefined, professional layout.  $\text{\LaTeX}$  was originally written by Leslie LAMPORT [167]. It uses the  $\text{\TeX}$  formatter as its typesetting engine. These days  $\text{\LaTeX}$  is maintained by Frank MITTELBACH and his team.

In 1994 the  $\text{\LaTeX}$  package was (deeply) updated by the  $\text{\LaTeX}3$  team, led by Frank MITTELBACH, to include some long-requested improvements, and to reunify all the patched versions which had cropped up since the release of  $\text{\LaTeX}2.09$  some years earlier. To distinguish the new version from the old, it is called  $\text{\LaTeX}2_{\epsilon}$ .

$\text{\LaTeX}$  is pronounced “Lay-tech” or “Lah-tech.” If you refer to  $\text{\LaTeX}$  in an ASCII environment, you type `LaTeX`.  $\text{\LaTeX}2_{\epsilon}$  is pronounced “Lay-tech two e” and typed `LaTeX2e`.

**$\text{\LaTeX}2.09$**  An obsolete version of the  $\text{\LaTeX}$  program, before 1994; it is no more supported. Do not use it<sup>4</sup>. Use the current version of  $\text{\LaTeX}2_{\epsilon}$ , which is supported and much more efficient.

**$\text{\LaTeX}2_{\epsilon}$**  The current version of the  $\text{\LaTeX}$  program, after 1994; it is supported.

**$\text{\LaTeX}3$**  The future version of  $\text{\LaTeX}$ , whose development is still in progress.

**leaders** A repetitive sequence of dots (or of one another small character), regularly spaced, used to link two objects on the same line (leading from a title to a page number in a table of contents or the like).

**letter** A standard document class to prepare letters for postal mail (mail on paper). As such documents have no sectionning commands nor structure, the `minitoc` package is pointless (hence *incompatible*) with them.



**lipsum** The `lipsum` package [132] allows to easily insert sentences in a test file with a minimum of typing. The sentences are in latin but are modified and made nearly senseless. I have used this package in some of the examples of documents. See also <http://lipsum.com> for the origin of this text (pieces of *De Finibus Bonorum et Malorum* by Marcus TULLIUS CICERO).

**listfiles** An option of the `minitoc` package. It creates a list of the `minitoc` auxiliary files (these files contains the mini-tables and may be removed after the  $\text{\LaTeX}$  run) in the `document.maf` file. Default. See section 1.7 on page 49.

<sup>4</sup> Except in the case of a very old document; if possible, try to convert it.

**LOF** An acronym for “list of figures”.

**lofdepth** This counter, if it exists, contains the depth of the list of figures.

**loose** An option of the minitoc package. It gives a loose line spacing in the mini-tables. It is the default. The opposite option is **tight**.

**LOT** An acronym for “list of tables”.

**lotdepth** This counter, if it exists, contains the depth of the list of tables.

**LPPL** The *LaTeX Project Public License*, available at

<http://www.latex-project.org/lppl.txt>

Its current version is 1.3 (2003-12-01). The minitoc package is distributed under this license.

**ltxdoc** A standard  $\LaTeX$  document class, for preparing the documentation of a package or of a class. For the minitoc package, it is very similar to the article document class; see above.

**ltxnews** A standard  $\LaTeX$  document class, for preparing the announcement of a  $\LaTeX$  release. For the minitoc package, it is very similar to the article document class; see above.

**\makeatletter** and **\makeatother** Many<sup>5</sup> internal commands of  $\LaTeX$ , of packages and classes contain the @ character in their names. This effectively prevents such names from being used in documents for user-defined commands. However, it also means that they cannot appear in a document, even in the preamble, without taking special precautions. As it is sometimes necessary to have such bits of “internal code” in the preamble, the commands **\makeatletter** and **\makeatother** make it easy to do: the difficult bit is to remember to add them, failure to do so can result in some strange errors. And these two commands should never be used in a package or class file.

**makefile** A special text file containing instructions describing the creation and the installation of a piece of software, using the “**make**” utility; **make** is a nice tool coming from the Unix operating system, but variants exists.

**mcaption** The mcaption package [141] provides a **margin**cap environment for putting captions in the outer document margin with either a top or bottom alignment.

**memoir**, **memoir.cls** A very general and powerful document class (by Peter R. WILSON, described in [272, 273]); this class is compatible with the minitoc package (with some precautions) if you use a recent version. See section 2.22 on page 62.

**mini-bibliography** See **minibbl** below.

**mini-list** Synonym for “mini-table” below.

**mini-lof** See “minilof” below.

**mini-lot** See “minilot” below.

---

<sup>5</sup> Informations from [201, page 843].

**mini-table** This term refers to a local table of contents (like a table of contents, a list of figures or a list of tables) for a sectioning unit (part, chapter or section), by opposition to a global table (the table of contents, the list of figures or the list of tables for the whole document). The main aim of the minitoc package is the creation of such mini-tables. But the term “minitoc” is also used to refer to such mini-table, as a generic term, because the first versions of the package allowed only table of contents for chapters.

**mini-toc** See “minitoc” below.

**minibbl** Short for “mini-bibliography”, i.e., to have a bibliography per part, chapter or section, or even by theme or subject. This is out of the domain of the minitoc package. See section 2.9 on page 57.

**minilof** A list of figures for a chapter.

**minilofdepth** This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the minilofs.

**minilot** A list of tables for a chapter.

**minilotdepth** This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the minilots.

**minitoc** A table of contents for a chapter. Also used as a generic term for any mini-table (see “mini-table” above).

**minitoc.bib** A bibliographic data base for the english documentation of the minitoc package.

**minitoc.bug** A plain text file containing a list of problems and questions about the minitoc package. See chapter 2 on page 53.

**minitocdepth** This counter contains the depth of the minitocs.

**minitoc.dtx** The file containing the documentation and the commented code of the minitoc package.

**minitoc-hyper.sty** A special version of the minitoc package which has been prepared by Bernd JAEHNE and Didier VERNA to work with the powerful hyperref package [227]; Heiko OBERDIEK has integrated their work so since version #31, minitoc is compatible with hyperref. *Hence the minitoc-hyper package is now obsolete and should no more be used. It is still present on the CTAN archives for compatibility with old documents.*



**minitoc.ins** The installation file for the minitoc package. Compiling it with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X produces most of the files of the minitoc package.

**minitoc.ist** This file contains a style for formatting the index in the english documentation. It is generated when compiling minitoc.ins.

**minitoc.l** A text file containing the list of all the files being included in the minitoc package. Files not listed in minitoc.l are files used only to install the package or to produce its documentation.

**minitoc.lan** A file used to force the english language in the documentation. It is generated when compiling minitoc.ins.

**minitoc.pdf** The english documentation in PDF format.

**minitoc.pre** This file contains a L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X preamble for the documentation. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

**minitoc.ps** The english documentation in PostScript format. No more distributed (but look at the `cmk` scripts).

**minitoc.sty** This file contains the main part of the minitoc package, with comments removed. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.

**minitoc.sum** A plain text file containing a commented list of the minitoc commands and environments. See chapter 3 on page 77.

**minitoc-texmf.zip** A ZIP archive of a TDS-compliant hierarchy containing all files in the minitoc package.

**minutes** The minutes package [181] (by Knut LICKERT) is used to prepare conference proceedings. The minitoc package allows to add “coffee breaks” in the table of contents via commands like `\addcoffeeline` and `\coffeeline` (and internal commands) whose names contain the string “coffee”, hence the footnote about “cappuccino” ☕ in the installation chapter!

**MonT<sub>E</sub>X** MonT<sub>E</sub>X [103, 106] is a large package to prepare documents in various dialects of the Mongol language (Bicig and Bicig2, Mongol, Bithe and Manju, Buryat, Xalx and Khalkha) and in a dialect of Russian used in Mongolia (Russianc). Bicig is another name for Uighur. You can find many things about Mongolia and Mongolian at the web site [105]. The following description is extracted from [106].

MonT<sub>E</sub>X is a package which offers support for writing documents in Mongolian, Manju, Buryat and Russian. Mongolian can be represented in traditional Uighur script (also known as Classical or Traditional Script) and Cyrillic. Manju resembles the Traditional Mongolian script (from which it is derived) but uses a rich choice of diacritics in order to eliminate numerous ambiguities of the Mongolian script ancestor. Modern Buryat, like Mongolian in its present form, is written with a Cyrillic alphabet, but both Mongolian (35 letters) and Buryat (36 letters) use more letters than Russian (33 letters).

**Mongolian** The word *Mongolian* is actually an umbrella term for several languages rather than the precise name of a single language. Things become more complicated when names of ethnic groups, languages and writing systems are mixed.

**Xalx** or Khalkha is the name of the Mongolian nationality residing in Mongolia proper. Their dialect forms the basis of Mongolian written with Cyrillic letters. Throughout this text, *Modern Mongolian* is used as a synonym.

**Buryat** is the name of the Mongolian nationality residing in Buryatia, north of Mongolia, east of Lake Baikal, being a part of the Russian Federation. The Buryat call themselves *Buryaad* while Xalx Mongolians call them *Buriad*. The English name follows the Russian orthography. Linguistically, Xalx and Buryat Mongol are fairly close languages; Buryat has a slightly different sound system in which the phoneme /s/ partially

shifted to /h/; the modern Buryat Cyrillic alphabet (virtually identical with the Cyrillic alphabet used for writing Modern Mongolian) has one additional letter (H/h, `\xa1x{H/h}`) for marking the difference to /s/.

**Bicig** (literally *script* in Mongolian) denotes text written in the traditional Mongolian script which is also referred to as Uighur. Throughout this document, the term *Bicig* will be used on an equal footing with *Classical* and *Traditional* Mongolian. The latter term is used in the names of the Unicode/ISO10646 character plane U1800 which contains Mongolian, Manju, Sibe and sets of special characters called Ali Gali or Galig. In order to identify Mongolian script related commands distinct for Mongolian and Manju, the Mongolian commands have the name root `bicig` whereas the Manju commands have the name root `bithe`.

Xalx Mongolian, or Modern Colloquial Mongolian, is about as different from the form written in Classical script as modern English in phonetical spelling (assume it be written in Shavian letters) from the highly historical orthography of Standard English. Beyond these differences, Mongolian written in Classical Script usually preserves a substantial amount of historical grammatical features which make it look a bit like Elizabethan English.

**Manju** Manju is a Tungusic language closely related to Mongolian. Though Manju is virtually not spoken anymore, it has been the official language during 300 years of Manju government in Qing Dynasty China. Vast amounts of official documents survive, as well as some of the finest multilingual dictionaries ever compiled, e. g. the Pentaglot, or Mirror in Five Languages, a dictionary with 18671 entries in five languages (Manju, Tibetan, Mongolian, Uighur and Chinese). See [104] for more details. Manju writing is derived from Uighur Mongolian by adding diacritics in the form of dots and circles (*tongki fuka sindaha hergen*, script with dots and circles).

**MS-DOS** (Microsoft® Disk Operating System) An old operating system for personal computers (PCs). From the minitoc point of view, its main drawback is the use of file-names with short extensions (the “8+3” scheme), which limits to 99 the number of mini-tables for each kind.

**mtc-2c.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with a two columns page layout.

**mtc-2nd.tex** An example of document using the minitoc package and its `french2` language option.

**mtc-add.bib** A small bibliographic data base for the `mtc-add.tex` and `mtc-ads.tex` example documents.

**mtc-3co.tex** An example of document using the minitoc package to prepare a minitoc on three columns.

**mtc-add.tex** An example document showing how to use `\mtcaddchapter` and the `tocbibind` package [268] with minitoc. See section 4.4 on page 92.

**mtc-ads.tex** An example document showing how to use `\mtcaddsection` and the `tocbibind` package [268] with minitoc. See section 4.5 on page 97. It also shows how it is challenging to manage the mini-lists of floats at the section level.

- mtc-amm.tex** An example file showing the use of the `appendices` environment in a memoir class document with the `minitoc` package.
- mtc-apx.tex** An example file showing the use of the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment to hide the entries of the appendices in the main TOC and to create a part-level TOC for the appendices.
- mtc-art.tex** An example of document (article class) using the `minitoc` package.
- mtc-bk.tex** An example of document (book or report class) using the `minitoc` package.
- mtc-bo.tex** An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package with a two columns page layout and using the `tocloft` package [265].
- mtc-ch0.tex** An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package in a document with a starred first chapter.
- mtc-cri.tex** An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package with starred parts and chapters.
- mtc-fo1.tex** An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package with changing some fonts.
- mtc-fo2.tex** Another example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package with changing some fonts.
- mtc-gap.tex** An example file showing the use of the `\mtcgapbeforeheads` and `\mtcgapafterheads` commands.
- mtc-hi1.tex** An example file showing the use of the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` specialized environments.
- mtc-hi2.tex** An example file showing the use of the following pairs of commands:
- `\mtchideinmainlof` and `\endmtchideinmainlof`,
  - `\mtchideinmainlot` and `\endmtchideinmainlot`.
- mtc-hia.tex** An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package to hide the entries for some tables in the main list of tables of an article class document.
- mtc-hir.tex** An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package to hide the entries for some tables in the main list of tables of a report class document.
- mtc-hop.tex** An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package with the `scrbook` document class.
- mtc-liv.tex** An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package in a book with customized table of contents an `minitocs`.
- mtc-mem.tex** An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package with the memoir class.
- mtc-mm1.tex** An example file showing the use of the `minitoc` package with the memoir class, if you want to change some fonts.


- mtc-mu.tex** A document using a minitoc set in a wrapfigure environment with the wrapfig package [11].
- mtc-sbf.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with the subfigure package [100].
- mtc-scr.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with a KOMA-Script class [157, 207], scrreprt.
- mtc-syn.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package when the table of contents is preceded by some starred chapters.
- mtc-tbi.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with the tocbind package [268].
- mtc-tlc.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package in a document of article class. It is the example of [201, page 58], modernized.
- mtc-tlo.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with the tocloft package [265] and their interaction about the page numbers in the mini-tables.
- mtc-tsfc.tex** An example file showing the use of the minitoc package with the subfig package [102].
- mtcmess** A package used to provide variants of the standard commands `\PackageInfo`, `\PackageWarning`, `\PackageWarningNoLine`, and `\PackageError` by adding an optional argument for an unique message identifier.
- mtcoff** A package which is used in place of the minitoc package to ignore all the commands and environments of the minitoc package. In fact, it defines them to do nothing. Useful if you want a version of your document without any mini-table.
-  **mtcpatchmem** A small package which is automatically loaded if necessary when you use the memoir document class with a version *incompatible* with the minitoc package, but correctible. It is generated when compiling `minitoc.ins`.
- mu** A length unit normally used in math mode ( $\mu$  means “math unit”); 18 math units make 1em (one quad), which is about the width of a “m” in the current font. So the size of 1mu is font dependent. The separation between dots in the dotted lines in the mini-tables is expressed in math units.
- multibib** The multibib package [131] allows to create references to multiple bibliographies within one document. It thus provides a complementary functionality to packages like bibunits [130] or chapterbib [12], which allow to create one bibliography for multiple, but different parts of the document.
- needspace** The needspace package [264] provides commands to reserve space at the bottom of a page. If there is not enough space on the current page (column) a new page (column) is started.
- NFSS** The *New Font Selection Scheme*. The  $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$  font selection system [176] was first released as the “New Font Selection Scheme” (NFSS) in 1989, and then in release 2 in 1993.  $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$  includes NFSS release 2 as standard.

Table 6.6: Most common font encodings

Encoding	Description
T1	L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X extended text (“Cork”)
TS1	L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X symbols (Latin)
T2A, T2B, T2C	L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X text (Cyrillic)
T3	L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X phonetic alphabet
TS3	L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X phonetic alphabet (extra symbols)
T4	L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X text (African languages)
T5	L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X text (Vietnamese)
T7	L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X text (reserved for Greek)
OT1	T <sub>E</sub> X text (as defined by Donald E. K <sub>N</sub> UTH)
OT2	T <sub>E</sub> X text for Cyrillic languages (obsolete)
OT3	International phonetic alphabet (obsolete)
OT4	T <sub>E</sub> X text with extensions for the Polish language
OT6	T <sub>E</sub> X text with extensions for the Armenian language
OML	T <sub>E</sub> X math italic (Donald E. K <sub>N</sub> UTH)
OMS	T <sub>E</sub> X math symbols (Donald E. K <sub>N</sub> UTH)
OMX	T <sub>E</sub> X math large symbols (Donald E. K <sub>N</sub> UTH)
X2	L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X extended text (Cyrillic)
U	Unknown
L<xx>	A local encoding
LTH	Encoding used for the Thai language
LV1	Encoding used with some V <sub>T</sub> eX fonts
LY1	Alternative to T1 encoding, for Y&Y software

Every text font in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X has five *attributes*:

**encoding** This specifies the order that characters appear in the font. The two most common text encodings used in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X are K<sub>N</sub>UTH’s “T<sub>E</sub>X text” encoding (OT1), and the “T<sub>E</sub>X text extended” encoding (T1) developed by the T<sub>E</sub>X Users Group members during a T<sub>E</sub>X Conference at Cork in 1990 (hence its informal name “Cork encoding”). See [177].

**family** The name for a collection of fonts, usually grouped under a common name by the font foundry. For example, “Adobe Times”, “ITC Garamond”, and K<sub>N</sub>UTH’s “Computer Modern Roman” are all font families.

**series** How heavy or expanded a font is. For example, “medium weight”, “narrow” and “bold extended” are all series.

**shape** The form of the letters within a font family. For example, “italic”, “oblique” and “upright” (sometimes called “roman”) are all font shapes.

**size** The design size of the font, for example “10pt”.

The possible values for these attributes are given short acronyms by L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X. The most common values for the font encoding are given in table 6.6.

The “local” encodings are intended for font encodings which are only locally available, for example a font containing an organisation’s logo in various sizes.



Table 6.7: Most common font families

Family	Description
<code>cmr</code>	Computer Modern Roman
<code>cmss</code>	Computer Modern Sans
<code>cmtt</code>	Computer Modern Typewriter
<code>cmm</code>	Computer Modern Math Italic
<code>cmsy</code>	Computer Modern Math Symbols
<code>cmex</code>	Computer Modern Math Extensions
<code>ptm</code>	Adobe Times
<code>phv</code>	Adobe Helvetica
<code>pcr</code>	Adobe Courier

Table 6.8: Most common font series

Series	Description
<code>m</code>	Medium
<code>b</code>	Bold
<code>bx</code>	Bold extended
<code>sb</code>	Semi-bold
<code>c</code>	Condensed

Table 6.9: Most common font shapes

Shape	Description
<code>n</code>	Normal (that is “upright” or “roman”)
<code>it</code>	Italic
<code>sl</code>	Slanted (or “oblique”)
<code>sc</code>	Caps and small caps

Table 6.10: The five font parameters for some fonts

$\LaTeX$ specification	Font	$\TeX$ name
OT1 <code>cmr</code> <code>m</code> <code>n</code> <code>10</code>	Computer Modern Roman 10 point	<code>cmr10</code>
OT1 <code>cmss</code> <code>m</code> <code>sl</code> <code>1pc</code>	Computer Modern Sans Oblique 1 pica	<code>cmssi12</code>
OML <code>cmm</code> <code>m</code> <code>it</code> <code>10pt</code>	Computer Modern Math Italic 10 point	<code>cmmi10</code>
T1 <code>ptm</code> <code>b</code> <code>it</code> <code>1in</code>	Adobe Times Bold Italic 1 inch	<code>ptmb8t at 1in</code>

There are far too many font families to list them all, but some common ones are listed in table 6.7. The most common values for the font series are listed in table 6.8. The most common values for the font shape are listed in table 6.9.

The font size is specified as a dimension, for example `10pt` or `1.5in` or `3mm`; if no unit is specified, `pt` is assumed. These five parameters specify every  $\LaTeX$  font, see table 6.10, for example.

These five parameters are displayed whenever  $\LaTeX$  gives an overfull box warning, for example:

```
Overfull \hbox (3.80855pt too wide) in paragraph at lines
314--318
[]\OT1/cmr/m/n/10 Normally [] and [] will be iden-ti-cal,
```

Table 6.11: Author commands for fonts

Author command	Attribute	Value in article class
<code>\textrm...</code> or <code>\rmfamily</code>	family	<code>cmr</code>
<code>\textsf...</code> or <code>\sffamily</code>	family	<code>cmss</code>
<code>\texttt...</code> or <code>\ttfamily</code>	family	<code>cmtt</code>
<code>\textmd...</code> or <code>\mdseries</code>	series	<code>m</code>
<code>\textbf...</code> or <code>\bfseries</code>	series	<code>bx</code>
<code>\textup...</code> or <code>\upshape</code>	shape	<code>n</code>
<code>\textit...</code> or <code>\itshape</code>	shape	<code>it</code>
<code>\textsl...</code> or <code>\slshape</code>	shape	<code>sl</code>
<code>\textsc...</code> or <code>\scshape</code>	shape	<code>sc</code>
<code>\tiny</code>	size	<code>5pt</code>
<code>\scriptsize</code>	size	<code>7pt</code>
<code>\footnotesize</code>	size	<code>8pt</code>
<code>\small</code>	size	<code>9pt</code>
<code>\normalsize</code>	size	<code>10pt</code>
<code>\large</code>	size	<code>12pt</code>
<code>\Large</code>	size	<code>14.4pt</code>
<code>\LARGE</code>	size	<code>17.28pt</code>
<code>\huge</code>	size	<code>20.74pt</code>
<code>\Huge</code>	size	<code>24.88pt</code>

The table 6.11 lists the author commands for fonts which set these five attributes<sup>6</sup>.

**nocheckfiles** A package option of `minitoc`. The opposite of the `checkfiles` package option (see above).

**nohints** A package option of `minitoc`. The opposite of the `hints` package option (see above).

**nolistfiles** An option of the `minitoc` package. It is the opposite of the `listfiles` above. See section 1.7 on page 49.

**notoccite** This option of the `minitoc` package loads the `notoccite` package [8] (by Donald ARSENEAU). It avoids problems with `\cite` commands in sectioning commands or captions. See section 1.6 on page 49.

**Omega** The Omega typesetting system<sup>7</sup> ( $\Omega$ ) (by Yannis HARALAMBOUS and John PLAICE) is an extension of  $\TeX$  that is aimed primarily at improving  $\TeX$ 's multilingual abilities.

When the  $\TeX$  program was originally developed in the mid seventies [*circa* 1975] by Professor Donald E. KNUTH it was mainly aimed at typesetting mathematical texts in the english language. Since then  $\TeX$  has made inroads in broader and broader areas of scientific, literary and other scholarly activities in many countries all over the world. In 1991, KNUTH froze  $\TeX$ , mainly in the interest of stability. However, he allows the  $\TeX$  code to be used as the basis for further developments, so long as the resulting system is distributed under a different name.

<sup>6</sup> The values used by these commands are determined by the document class.

<sup>7</sup> Most but not all of this note is taken in the Omega documentation [135, 136, 139, 225, 226].

Table 6.12: Some systems derived from T<sub>E</sub>X and L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{\Omega} & + & \text{L}_{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{\Lambda} \\
& & + & & & & + \\
\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X} & \longrightarrow & \varepsilon\text{-T}_{\text{E}}\text{X} & + & \text{L}_{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X} & \longrightarrow & \varepsilon\text{-L}_{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X} \\
\hline
& & \mathbf{\aleph} & + & \text{L}_{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{\beth}
\end{array}$$

In Omega all characters and pointers into data-structures are 31-bit wide, instead of 8-bit, thereby eliminating many of the trivial limitations of T<sub>E</sub>X. Omega also allows multiple input and output character sets, and uses programmable filters to translate from one encoding to another, to perform contextual analysis, etc. Internally, Omega uses the universal Unicode/ISO-10646 character set. Omega also includes support for multiple writing directions.

These improvements not only make it a lot easier for T<sub>E</sub>X users to cope with multiple or complex languages, like Arabic, Indic, Khmer, Chinese, Japanese or Korean, in one document, but also form the basis for future developments in other areas, such as native color support and hypertext features.

The L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X format (in the T<sub>E</sub>X meaning of that word) adapted to the special features of Omega is called “*Lambda*” (Λ). Extending Omega with the ε-T<sub>E</sub>X extensions is a separate project, known as “*Aleph*” (ℵ) [36, 125] and led by Giuseppe BILOTTA. The L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X for *Aleph* is known as “*Lamed*” (ℓ).

**package** Packages<sup>8</sup> are a very important feature of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X. These are extensions to the basic L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X commands that are written to files with names that end with .sty and are loaded with the command \usepackage in the preamble. Packages can be classified by they origin.

- **Core** packages (in fact, **base** and **required** packages) are an integral part of the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X basic installation and are therefore fully standard.
- **Tools** packages are a set written by members of the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 Team and should always be in the installation.
- **Graphics** packages are a standardized set for including pictures generated by other programs and for handling colors; they are at the same level as the tools packages.
- **AMS-L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X** packages, published by the American Mathematical Society, should be in any installation<sup>9</sup>.
- **Contributed** packages have been submitted by actual users; certain of these have established themselves as “essential” to standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X usage, but all are useful.

**partlof** A list of figures for a part.

**partlofdepth** This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the partlofs.

<sup>8</sup> This info is taken from [158, page 12–13] and adapted.

<sup>9</sup> They are indispensable if you use a lot of mathematics.

**partlot** A list of tables for a part.

**partlotdepth** This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the partlots.

**parttoc** A table of contents for a part.

**parttocdepth** This counter contains the depth of the parttocs.

**PDF** Portable Document Format [121]. A descendant of the PostScript language from Adobe, optimized for navigation on the Internet. It adds hypertext, font substitution, and compression features.

**placeins** The placeins package [9] keeps floats “in their place”, preventing them from floating past a `\FloatBarrier` command into another section. To use it, declare `\usepackage{placeins}` in the preamble and insert `\FloatBarrier` commands at places that floats should not move past, perhaps at every `\section`. The `insection` package option of the `minitoc` package does that with adequate options, and loads also the `flatter` package (described in [173] and [201, page 286]); see section 1.3.3 on page 28.

**placeins.txt** A plain text file containing the documentation of the placeins package [9].



**PLATEX** A version of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X customized for the polish (`polski`) language. See [211, 260]. But the *same* name refers also to a version of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X customized for the japanese language, P<sub>L</sub>A<sub>T</sub>E<sub>X</sub> 2<sub>ε</sub> [143].

**pmk** An example of shell script to prepare the minitoc package and its documentation; you should adapt it to your needs. See item 9 on page 228.

**PostScript** A page description language, by Adobe. It describes the appearance of a page, including elements such as text, graphics, and scanned images, to a printer or visualization device. Introduced by Adobe in 1985, it has become the language of choice in high quality printing.

**preamble** In the main file of a L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X source document, the part of it between the commands `\documentclass[...]{...}` and `\begin{document}`. In the preamble, you can insert global declarations and the loading of packages via `\usepackage` commands.

**preparation** The preparation commands of the minitoc package prepare the auxiliary files for the mini-tables of a given type. A *preparation* command must have been invoked (only once) before any insertion command for the mini-table type. The preparation commands are:

```
\doparttoc, \dopartlof, \dopartlot, (part level)
\dominitoc, \dominilof, \dominilot, (chapter level)
\dosecttoc, \dosectlof, \dosectlot, (section level)
\mtcprepare (all levels)
```

**proc** A standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X document class, for preparing conference proceedings. For the minitoc package, it is very similar to the `article` document class; see above.

**pseudo-chapter** Or starred chapter. A chapter introduced by a `\chapter*` command. By default, it has no entry in the table of contents. `\chapter*` needs some precautions with the minitoc package. See section 1.3.4 on page 32.

**quotchap** The quotchap package [245] provides a set of commands for adding quotations to some headings (chapters) in the standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> document classes: `book`, and `report`. It must be loaded *before* the minitoc package (see point 1.8 on page 50 and section 2.39 on page 72).

**README** is a plain text file (english) describing briefly the minitoc package, plus some useful infos.

**report** A standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X document class. It has sectionning commands: `\part`, `\chapter`, and `\section` (and below). It is compatible with the minitoc package and you can make mini-tables at the part and chapter levels (but not at the section level, to avoid too many auxiliary files).

**rmk** An example of shell script, which sorts the files of the minitoc package into classes (one directory for each class). It should be run after the scripts `imk` (mandatory) and `emk` and/or `fmk`, in that sequence. See item 9 on page 228.

**romannum** The romannum package [274] changes the numbers (for sectionning commands) generated by L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X from arabic digits to roman numerals. This package uses the `stdclsdv` package [263]. It must be loaded *before* the minitoc package (see point 1.8 on page 50 and section 2.40 on page 72).

**rubber** `rubber` [23] is a wrapper for L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X and companion programs. Its purpose is, given a L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X source to process, to compile it enough times to resolve all references, possibly running satellite programs such as **B<sub>u</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X**, `makeindex`, `Metapost`, etc., to produce appropriate data files. It has facilities to make some post-processing cleanup actions, like deleting the auxiliary files created by minitoc.

**scrartcl** See KOMA-Script above.

**scrbook** See KOMA-Script above.

**scrreprt** See KOMA-Script above.

**sectionning commands** These are the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X commands which specify the logical structure of your document. The main sectionning commands are `\part`, `\chapter`, `\section`, `\subsection`, `\subsubsection`, `\paragraph`, or `\subparagraph`. Some standard document classes have not the `\chapter` command (like the `article` and `proc` classes), some have no sectionning commands (like the `letter` class). In the later case, the minitoc package is pointless. If some of the `\part`, `\chapter`, or `\section` commands are not defined, the minitoc commands for that level are unavailable. If `\chapter` is defined, the minitoc commands at the section level are not defined in the current and older versions of the minitoc package, but if `\chapter` is not defined and `\section` is defined, then the minitoc commands at the section level are defined. See section 1.1.1 on page 25. In non-standard document classes, sectionning commands with non-standard names cannot be recognized by the minitoc package.

**sectlof** A list of figures for a section.

**sectlofdepth** This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the `sectlofs`.

**sectlot** A list of tables for a section.

**sectlotdepth** This counter, if defined, contains the depth of the sectlots.

**sectsty** The `sectsty` package [194] provides a set of commands for changing the font used for the various sectional headings in the standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> document classes: `article`, `book`, and `report`. This package also works with the KOMA-Script classes [157, 207] `scrartcl`, `scrbook`, and `scrreprt`. It must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (see point 1.8 on page 50 and section 2.28 on page 67).

**secttoc** A table of contents for a section.

**secttocdepth** This counter contains the depth of the secttocs.

**sfheaders** The `sfheaders` package [184] (for L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>) borrows some definitions from the standard `article/report/book` classes and modifies them in order to print the part, chapter, section, subsection... headers with the Sans-Serif variant of the current font. It must be loaded *before* the `minitoc` package (see point 1.8 on page 50 and section 2.41 on page 72).

**shell** In the Unix, Unix-like and Linux operating systems, the **shell** is a program used as an interface between the operating system and the user. It can also be used as a scripting language to write programs or scripts to prepare routinely used sequences of tasks. The main shells are the Bourne shell (**sh**), the C shell (**cs**h), the Korn shell (**ksh**), and their many successors (like **bash**, **tcsh**, etc.).

**shorttext** An option of the `minitoc` package. It forces the use of short extensions (3 characters) in the names of the `minitoc` auxiliary files. This option is inactive by default, but is automatically activated if your operating system needs short extensions. See **autoconfiguration** above and the section 2.5 on page 56.

**shorttoc** The `shorttoc` package [111] allows to create an other table of contents in a document, with an other title and an other depth than the main table of contents.

**SJIS** The SJIS character encoding (for the japanese language), also known as MS-Kanji (Kanji for Microsoft®), consists of two overlaid character sets: the so-called halfwidth Katakana (JIS X0201-1976, 1-byte characters encoded in the range 0xA1 to 0xDF) and the (fullwidth) JIS character set (JIS X0208-1990, mapped to the remaining code points). This information is taken from [179, 180].

**SL<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X** A version of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X customized for the swedish language. See [193].

**splitbib** A L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X package [191] which allows for sorting a bibliography into categories and subcategories; this is interesting for lists of publications, for grouping references by subject, by year, ...

**stdclsdv** The `stdclsdv` package [263] is intended to be used by the authors of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X packages that need to know about the sectional divisions provided by the document class.

**strut** A vertical invisible rule used to force a minimal separation between two lines of text.

**subfig** The `subfig` package [102] provides support for the inclusion of small, “sub-figures” and “sub-tables”. It simplifies the positioning, captioning and labeling of them within a single `figure` or `table` environment. In addition, this package allows such sub-captions to be written to the List of Figures or List of Tables if desired.

**subfigure** The subfigure package [100] is an obsolete version (by the same author) of the subfig package [102].

**suffix** See “extension” above.

**TDS** The T<sub>E</sub>X Directory Structure [248, 249]; a directory structure highly recommended to store macros, fonts, and the other implementation-independent T<sub>E</sub>X system files; it also suggests how to incorporate the rest of the T<sub>E</sub>X files in a single structure; the TDS has been designed to work on all modern systems.

**T<sub>E</sub>X** T<sub>E</sub>X is a computer program created by Donald E. KNUTH [153]. It is aimed at typesetting text and mathematical formulae. KNUTH started writing the T<sub>E</sub>X typesetting engine in 1977 to explore the potential of the digital printing equipment that was beginning to infiltrate the publishing industry at that time, especially in the hope that he could reverse the trend of deteriorating typographical quality that he saw affecting his own books and articles. T<sub>E</sub>X as we use it today was released in 1982, with some slight enhancements added in 1989 to better support 8-bit characters and multiple languages. T<sub>E</sub>X is renowned for being extremely stable, for running on many different kinds of computers, and for being virtually bug free. The version number of T<sub>E</sub>X is converging to  $\pi$  and is now at 3.141592.

T<sub>E</sub>X is pronounced “Tech,” with a “ch” as in the German word “Ach” or in the Scottish “Loch.” In an ASCII environment, T<sub>E</sub>X becomes TeX.

**thailatex** The thailatex package [195] allows to typeset documents in the Thai language. You can also use the CJK system [179, 180].

**thispagestyle** A type of *feature* (see this term) which is executed at each occurrence of a given type of mini-table, to force the page style to use for the current page. Look at the documentation of the `\mtcsetfeature` command, in section 1.10 on page 45.

**tight** An option of the minitoc package. It gives a tight line spacing in the mini-tables. The opposite option is *loose*.

**titlesec** The titlesec package [35] allows to change the sectioning titles. Amongst its many features it provides margin titles, different format in left and right pages, rules above and below the title, etc. Unfortunately, it is *incompatible* with the minitoc package.



**titletoc** The titletoc package is useful for toc entries formatting, providing the possibility of changing the format in the middle of a document, grouping the entries in a single paragraph, pretty free-forms entries, partial tocs, etc. Unfortunately, it is *incompatible* with the minitoc package.



The `titletoc.sty` file is not part of the titlesec package; it’s an independent package, but it’s described in the titlesec package documentation [35].

**tmk** A script file which creates a TDS hierarchy [248, 249] (to be adjusted to your system).

**TOC** Acronym for “table of contents”.

**tocbibind** The tocbibind package [268] can be used to add the ToC and/or bibliography and/or the index etc., to the Table of Contents listing. But it needs some precautions when used with the minitoc package. See section 1.5.5 on page 47.

**tocdepth** This counter contains the depth of the table of contents.

**tocloft** The tocloft package [265] provides means of controlling the typographic design of the Table of Contents, List of Figures and List of Tables. New kinds of “List of ...” can be defined. If you use the tocloft package and the minitoc package, see section 2.21 on page 61 about fixing some minor compatibility issues.

**TODO** is a plain text file (english) which lists some suggested developments of the package, not yet implemented. Comments and suggestions are welcome.



**token** A token<sup>10</sup> is either (a) a single character with an attached category code (see “cat-code” above), or (b) a control sequence. You *should* remember two chief things about T<sub>E</sub>X’s tokens: (1) A control sequence is considered to be a single object that is no longer composed of a sequence of symbols. Therefore long control sequence names are no harder for T<sub>E</sub>X to deal with than short ones, after they have been replaced by tokens. Furthermore, spaces are not ignored after control sequences inside a token list; the ignore-space rule applies only in an input file, during the time that strings of characters are being tokenized. (2) Once a category code has been attached to a character token, the attachment is permanent. For example, if character ‘{’ were suddenly declared to be of category 12 instead of category 1, the characters ‘{<sub>1</sub>’ already inside token lists of T<sub>E</sub>X would still remain of category 1; only newly made lists would contain ‘{<sub>12</sub>’ tokens. In other words, individual characters receive a fixed interpretation as soon as they have been read from a file, based on the category they have at the time of reading. Control sequences are different, since they can change their interpretation at any time. T<sub>E</sub>X’s digestive processes always know exactly what a character token signifies, because the category code appears in the token itself; but when the digestive processes encounter a control sequence token, they must look up the current definition of that control sequence in order to figure out what it means.

**UNIX** A modern operating system, available on many computers and in various flavors. From the minitoc point of view, it has the advantage of using filenames with long extensions (the length limit is too high to be a problem with the number of mini-tables).

**UNIX-like** Operating systems analog to Unix, with the same advantages. Linux is a good example, but others exist.

**urlbst** A PERL script, by Norman GRAY [124], to add a webpage B<sub>B</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X entry type, and add support for general url and lastchecked fields, to (most) B<sub>B</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X .bst files. Optionally adds basic support for eprint and doi fields, and HyperT<sub>E</sub>X/hyperref support, too. See [223, 227].

**UTF 8** UTF 8 (Unicode Transformation Format 8), also called UTF 2 or FSS-UTF, is a special representation of Unicode (resp. ISO 10646). It uses multibyte sequences of various lengths, but only 2-byte and 3-byte sequences are implemented in CJK. ASCII characters will be used as-is — without this property it would be impossible to use UTF 8 with T<sub>E</sub>X. See table 6.2 on page 201.

**varsects** The varsects package [244] provides a set of commands for changing the font used for the various sectional headings in the standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> document classes:

<sup>10</sup>This definition is taken from “The T<sub>E</sub>Xbook” [153].



article, book, and report. It must be loaded *before* the minitoc package (see point 1.8 on page 50 and section 2.33 on page 69).

- wrapfig** The wrapfig package [11] provides the wrapfigure and wraptable environments to place a figure or table at the side of the page and wrap text around it.
- xmk** An example of shell script, which typesets the example document files into PDF documents.
- xr** The xr package [92] implements a system for eXternal References. I wrote the first version of this package, but it had severe problems. David CARLISLE rewrote it in a much better and more robust way. With his permission, I used some of his code in the minitoc package to implement the preparation commands (like \dominitoc). If you use also the hyperref package [227], use xr-hyper [94] in place of the xr package.

# Chapter 7

## Installation

### Tables

7.1 List of files ( <code>minitoc.1</code> ) . . . . .	227
7.2 A TDS-conformant hierarchy for the <code>minitoc</code> files . . . . .	230

This chapter describes the installation of the `minitoc` package (version #52).

This package contains a lot of files. The list of all files is given in `minitoc.1`. See table 7.1 on the next page. The files are sorted into “classes” below (a file can appear in more than one class). Each class specifies the function and the placement of its files.

- (0) The files `minitoc.ins` and `minitoc.dtx` are the basic source files of this package. The file `fminitoc.dtx` loads `minitoc.dtx` but selects the french documentation. The language selection is done by using `\ifcase ... \or ... \fi` constructs.



- (1) The files `minitoc.sty`, `mtcoeff.sty`, `mtcmess.sty`, and *all* `*.mld` and `*.mlo` files are the package itself<sup>1</sup>.

The table 1.7 on page 36 lists the available languages; for each of these languages, a *language.mld* file is available; the languages in parentheses are aliases of a main language and their `.mld` files will load the `.mld` file of that main language.

`mtcpatchmem.sty` is a temporary fix for compatibility with the `memoir` class.

The files of this class must be *all* installed in a directory where  $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$  finds the `.sty` files.

- (2) Informative text files:

<sup>1</sup> The large number of `*.mld` files is (partially) a consequence of the fact that some languages have aliases (or dialects) and hence one `*.mld` file for each name (a `*.mld` file may load another one) and, if necessary, a `.mlo` file; the english and french languages are evident examples. For some languages, the multiplicity of the `*.mld` files corresponds to a multiplicity of fonts and/or encodings (chinese, greek, japanese, korean, malayalam, polish, russian, serbian), or even for spelling reforms (german, greek, norsk). *Note that the presence of the `english.mld` file is mandatory.* Since version #50, the `minitoc` package signals the missing `.mld` or `.mlo` files and gives their list in a warning message.

Table 7.1: List of files (minitoc.1)

<b>class (0) :</b> -minitoc.ins -minitoc.dtx -fminitoc.dtx  <b>class (1) :</b> -minitoc.sty -mtcoff.sty -mtcmess.sty -mtcpatchmem.sty -acadian.mld -acadien.mld -afrikaan.mld -afrikaans.mld -albanian.mld -american.mld -arab.mld -arab2.mld -arabi.mld -arabic.mld -armenian.mld -australian.mld -austrian.mld -bahasa.mld -bahasai.mld -bahasam.mld -bangla.mld -basque.mld -bicig.mld -bicig2.mld -bicig3.mld -bithe.mld -brazil.mld -brazilian.mld -breton.mld -british.mld -bulgarian.mld -bulgarianb.mld -buryat.mld -buryat2.mld -canadian.mld -canadien.mld -castillan.mld -castillian.mld -catalan.mld -chinese1.mld, chinese1.mlo -chinese2.mld, chinese2.mlo -croatian.mld -czech.mld -danish.mld -devanagari.mld -dutch.mld -english.mld -english1.mld -english2.mld -esperant.mld -esperanto.mld -estonian.mld -ethiopia.mld -ethiopian.mld -ethiopian2.mld -farsi1.mld, farsi1.mlo -farsi2.mld, farsi2.mlo -farsi3.mld -finnish.mld	-finnish2.mld -francais.mld -french.mld -french1.mld -french2.mld -frenchb.mld -frenchle.mld -frenchpro.mld -galician.mld -german.mld -germanb.mld -germanb2.mld -greek.mld -greek-mono.mld -greek-polydemo.mld -greek-polykatha.mld -guarani.mld -hangul1.mld, hangul1.mlo -hangul2.mld, hangul2.mlo -hangul3.mld, hangul3.mlo -hangul4.mld, hangul4.mlo -hangul-u8.mld, hangul-u8.mlo -hanja1.mld, hanja1.mlo -hanja2.mld, hanja2.mlo -hanja-u8.mld, hanja-u8.mlo -hebrew.mld -hebrew2.mld -hindi.mld -hindi-modern.mld -hungarian.mld -icelandic.mld -indon.mld -indonesian.mld -interlingua.mld -irish.mld -italian.mld -italian2.mld -japanese.mld, japanese.mlo -japanese2.mld, japanese2.mlo -japanese3.mld, japanese3.mlo -japanese4.mld, japanese4.mlo -japanese5.mld, japanese5.mlo -japanese6.mld, japanese6.mlo -kannada.mld -khalkha.mld -latin.mld -latin2.mld -latvian.mld -letton.mld -lithuanian.mld -lowersorbian.mld -lsorbian.mld -magyar.mld -magyar2.mld -magyar3.mld -malay.mld -malayalam-keli.mld -malayalam-omega.mld, malayalam-omega.mlo	-malayalam-rachana.mld -malayalam-rachana2.mld -manju.mld -meyalu.mld -mongol.mld -mongolb.mld -mongolian.mld -naustrian.mld -newzealand.mld -ngerman.mld -ngermanb.mld -ngermanb2.mld -norsk.mld -norsk2.mld -nynorsk.mld -nynorsk2.mld -polish.mld -polish2.mld -polski.mld -portuges.mld -portuguese.mld -romanian.mld -romanian2.mld -romanian3.mld -russian.mld -russianb.mld -russianc.mld -russian2m.mld -russian2o.mld -russian-cca.mld, russian-cca.mlo -russian-cca1.mld, russian-cca1.mlo -russian-lh.mld, russian-lh.mlo -russian-lhcyralt.mld, russian-lhcyralt.mlo -russian-lhcyrkoi.mld, russian-lhcyrkoi.mlo -russian-lhcyrwin.mld, russian-lhcyrwin.mlo -samin.mld -scottish.mld -serbian.mld -serbianc.mld -slovak.mld -slovene.mld -spanish.mld -spanish2.mld -spanish3.mld -spanish4.mld -swedish.mld -swedish2.mld -thai.mld, thai.mlo -turkish.mld -uighur.mld -uighur2.mld -uighur3.mld -UKenglish.mld -ukraineb.mld -ukrainian.mld -uppersorbian.mld -USenglish.mld -usorbian.mld -vietnam.mld	-vietnamese.mld -welsh.mld -xalx.mld -xalx2.mld -xalx3.mld  <b>class (2) :</b> -INSTALL, README, TODO, CATALOG -minitoc.l  <b>class (3) :</b> -mtc-2c.tex, mtc-2nd.tex, mtc-3co.tex, mtc-add.bib, mtc-add.tex, mtc-ads.tex, mtc-amm.tex, mtc-apx.tex, mtc-art.tex, mtc-bo.tex, mtc-bk.tex, mtc-ch0.tex, mtc-cri.tex, mtc-fo1.tex, mtc-fo2.tex, mtc-gap.tex, mtc-hi1.tex, mtc-hi2.tex, mtc-hia.tex, mtc-hir.tex, mtc-hop.tex, mtc-liv.tex, mtc-mem.tex, mtc-mm1.tex, mtc-mu.tex, mtc-sbf.tex, mtc-scr.tex, mtc-syn.tex, mtc-tbi.tex, mtc-tlc.tex, mtc-tlo.tex, mtc-tsfx.tex  <b>class (4) :</b> -minitoc.bug -minitoc.sum  <b>class (5) :</b> -minitoc.ins -minitoc.dtx -minitoc.bib -minitoc.ist -minitoc.lan -minitoc.pre -en-mtc.bst -lamed.eps, lamed.pdf, lamed.tex  <b>class (6) :</b> -minitoc.dtx -fminitoc.dtx -fminitoc.bib -fminitoc.ist -fminitoc.lan -minitoc.pre -franc.sty, frbib.sty, frnew.sty -fr-mtc.bst  <b>class (7) :</b> -minitoc.pdf  <b>class (8) :</b> -fminitoc.pdf  <b>class (9) :</b> -cmk, emk, fmk, imk, pmk, rmk, tmk, xmk  <b>class (10) :</b> -minitoc-texmf.zip
--	--	--	---

- `INSTALL` is a file describing the installation of the package. You are (almost) reading it (but it is shorter).
  - `minitoc.l` contains the list of all files of the minitoc distribution. See table 7.1 on the page before.
  - `README` is a file describing briefly the minitoc package, plus some useful infos.
  - `CATALOG` contains basic infos about the minitoc package (abstract, date, author, version, licence).
  - `TODO` lists some suggested developments of the package, not yet implemented. Comments and suggestions are welcome.
- (3) Examples of documents: `mtc-2c.tex`, `mtc-2nd.tex`, `mtc-3co.tex`, `mtc-add.tex`, `mtc-ads.tex`, `mtc-amm.tex`, `mtc-apx.tex`, `mtc-art.tex`, `mtc-bk.tex`, `mtc-bo.tex`, `mtc-ch0.tex`, `mtc-cri.tex`, `mtc-fo1.tex`, `mtc-fo2.tex`, `mtc-gap.tex`, `mtc-hi1.tex`, `mtc-hi2.tex`, `mtc-hia.tex`, `mtc-hir.tex`, `mtc-hop.tex`, `mtc-liv.tex`, `mtc-mem.tex`, `mtc-mm1.tex`, `mtc-mu.tex`, `mtc-sbf.tex`, `mtc-scr.tex`, `mtc-syn.tex`, `mtc-tbi.tex`, `mtc-tlc.tex`, `mtc-tlo.tex`, `mtc-tsfc.tex`, are example files, to play with. The associated .pdf files are provided. Another (*short*) examples are welcome.
- (4) `minitoc.bug`, `minitoc.sum` are plain text documentation: list of problems (faq, see chapter 2 on page 53) and summary of commands (see chapter 3 on page 77).
- (5) `minitoc.ins`, `minitoc.ist`, `minitoc.pre`, `minitoc.lan`, `en-mtc.bst`, `minitoc.dtx`, and `minitoc.bib` are the source of the documentation in (non perfect) english, `lamed.eps` and `lamed.pdf` are images to include, `lamed.tex` is the source code<sup>2</sup>. `minitoc.pre` is the common preamble code for the documentation.
- (6) `minitoc.dtx`, `fminitoc.dtx`, `fminitoc.bib`, `fminitoc.ist`, `fminitoc.lan`, `minitoc.pre`, `franc.sty`, `frbib.sty`, `frnew.sty`, `fr-mtc.bst` are the source (and tools) of the documentation in french<sup>3</sup>.
- (7) `minitoc.pdf`, is the documentation in (non perfect) english, in PDF format.
- (8) `fminitoc.pdf` is the documentation in french, in PDF format. The french documentation and its source files must not be left out.
- (9) `pmk` is a shell script<sup>4</sup> to prepare the package and its documentation; the `pmk` script uses the `/tmp/‘whoami’.imk` and `/tmp/‘whoami’.tmk` directories to not waste disk space under your home directory; there are also six partial scripts<sup>5</sup> and a supplementary one, `cmk` (all to be adapted):

<sup>2</sup> Compiling `lamed.tex` requires a specific hebrew font and a specific package (both obsolete), plus conversion into EPS or PDF; hence I prefer to provide also the image files.

<sup>3</sup> This seems rather strange. In fact, the english and french documentations are both contained in the `minitoc.dtx` file. `fminitoc.dtx` sets a flag then loads `minitoc.dtx`; hence the file `fminitoc.dtx` is much smaller than `minitoc.dtx`. Thus, `minitoc.ins` contains also some utility files which are automatically created (some .sty files, `minitoc.ist`, `fminitoc.ist`, `minitoc.lan`, `fminitoc.lan`). The english and french versions are not word-by-word translations, but they are in parallel in the file `minitoc.dtx`, and this helps the maintenance. Note that there is no more any `fminitoc.ins` file.

<sup>4</sup> You can sip a big cappuccino ☕ while this script is running! Be patient.

<sup>5</sup> In fact, `pmk` assembles the scripts `imk`, `emk`, `fmk`, `xmk`, `rmk`, and `tmk`.

- `imk`, which prepares the package from `minitoc.ins` and `minitoc.dtx`; note that `imk` must be run before running `emk` or `fmk`; it creates also some `.sty` files necessary to prepare the documentation but that are to be installed with it; the `imk` script uses the `/tmp/‘whoami’` `.imk` directory to not waste disk space under your home directory;
- `emk`, which prepares the english documentation from `minitoc.dtx`;
- `fmk`, which prepares the french documentation from `fminitoc.dtx` and `minitoc.dtx`;
- `xmk`, which typesets the example files (in PDF format);
- `rmk`, which sorts the files into classes (one directory for each class);
- `tmk`, which creates a TDS-conformant hierarchy [248, 249] (to be tailored to your system); see table 7.2 on the following page; this hierarchy is saved in `minitoc-texmf.zip`;
- `cmk`, which converts the PDF documentation files into PostScript files.

These scripts are currently written in C-shell, but they are very simple, and should be easy to convert in another classic shell. The documentation in PostScript format is no more distributed on the CTAN archives, but the `cmk` script can prepare it from the documentation in PDF formate (recto-verso printing ).

- (10) `minitoc-texmf.zip` is a ZIP-archive file containing a TDS-compliant hierarchy with all the files of the `minitoc` package.

Some remarks about the `rmk`, `tmk` and `pmk` scripts (which you should tailor to your needs):

- **with `rmk`:**
  1. the hierarchy is *not* TDS-compliant;
  2. the files of (0) must be installed in a directory where  $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$  finds `.dtx` and `.ins` files;
  3. the files of (1) must be installed in a directory where  $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$  finds `.sty` files;
  4. the files of (2), (3), (4), (5), (6) and (9) must be installed in a separate directory, but must not be left out;
  5. the files of (7) and (8) must be installed as on-line documentation;
  6. the directories created by the `rmk` script are under `/tmp/‘whoami’` `.rmk` to not waste disk space under your home directory.
- **with `tmk`:**
  1. the hierarchy is TDS-compliant;
  2. each file appears only once in the hierarchy;
  3. the installation is much easier: you only need a `.zip` or a `.tar` (or `.tgz`) dump file<sup>6</sup> of the hierarchy to be deployed into the installed TDS hierarchy; you should examine *very carefully* (by comparison with your TDS installation) and tailor the `tmk` script before using it;



<sup>6</sup> The `tmk` script creates the `minitoc-texmf.zip` file.

Table 7.2: A TDS-conformant hierarchy for the minitoc files

texmf/						
bibtex/		doc/	makeindex/	scripts/	source/	tex/
bib/	bst/	latex/	minitoc/	minitoc/	latex/	latex/
minitoc/	minitoc/	minitoc/	(D)	(E)	(F)	(G)
(A)	(B)	(C)				
		examples/				
		(H)				
(A) fminitoc.bib, minitoc.bib;			mtc-add.pdf, mtc-add.tex, mtc-ads.pdf, mtc-ads.tex, mtc-amm.pdf, mtc-amm.tex, mtc-apx.pdf, mtc-apx.tex, mtc-art.pdf, mtc-art.tex, mtc-bk.pdf, mtc-bk.tex, mtc-bo.pdf, mtc-bo.tex, mtc-ch0.pdf, mtc-ch0.tex, mtc-cri.pdf, mtc-cri.tex, mtc-fo1.pdf, mtc-fo1.tex, mtc-fo2.pdf, mtc-fo2.tex, mtc-gap.pdf, mtc-gap.tex, mtc-hi1.pdf, mtc-hi1.tex, mtc-hi2.pdf, mtc-hi2.tex, mtc-hia.pdf, mtc-hia.tex, mtc-hir.pdf, mtc-hir.tex, mtc-hop.pdf, mtc-hop.tex, mtc-liv.pdf, mtc-liv.tex, mtc-mem.pdf, mtc-mem.tex, mtc-mm1.pdf, mtc-mm1.tex, mtc-mu.pdf, mtc-mu.tex, mtc-sbf.pdf, mtc-sbf.tex, mtc-scr.pdf, mtc-scr.tex, mtc-syn.pdf, mtc-syn.tex, mtc-tbi.pdf, mtc-tbi.tex, mtc-tlc.pdf, mtc-tlc.tex, mtc-tlo.pdf, mtc-tlo.tex, mtc-tsf.pdf, mtc-tsf.tex.			
(B) en-mtc.bst, fr-mtc.bst;						
(C) INSTALL, README, TODO, CATALOG, fminitoc.lan, fminitoc.pdf, lamed.eps, lamed.pdf, lamed.tex, minitoc.bug, minitoc.l, minitoc.lan, minitoc.pdf, minitoc.pre, minitoc.sum, franc.sty, frbib.sty, frnew.sty;						
(D) fminitoc.ist, minitoc.ist;						
(E) cmk, emk, fmk, imk, pmk, rmk, tmk, xmk;						
(F) fminitoc.dtx, minitoc.dtx, minitoc.ins;						
(G) minitoc.sty, mtcmess.sty, mtcpatchmem.sty, mtccoeff.sty, *.mld, *.mlo;						
(H) mtc-2c.pdf, mtc-2c.tex, mtc-2nd.pdf, mtc-2nd.tex, mtc-3co.pdf, mtc-3co.tex,						

- the directories created by the `tmk` script are under `/tmp/‘whoami’ .tmk` to not waste disk space under your home directory;
- the file `minitoc-texmf.zip` (10) should not be installed; it is just a method to help making a TDS-compliant installation.

- **with `pmk`:**

- the `pmk` script performs the actions of `imk` (preparation of the basic files), `emk` and `fmk` (preparation of the english and french documentation), `xmk` (preparation of the examples of documents), `rmk` and `tmk` (repartition of files into classes and in a TDS-compliant hierarchy);
- the directories created by the `pmk` script are under `/tmp/‘whoami’ .rmk` and `/tmp/‘whoami’ .tmk` to not waste disk space under your home directory;
- the *same precautions* as for `tmk` are needed.



The file `minitoc-texmf.zip` contains a ZIP archive of a TDS-compliant hierarchy of all files of the minitoc package. It has been prepared by the `pmk` or `tmk` scripts.

Note that `minitoc.dtx` and hence `fminitoc.dtx` are (not so trivial) examples of using minitoc with `hyperref`. They show how the combinaison of these two packages may be useful.

## Chapter 8

## Postface

### Contents

8.1	The origins	232
8.2	New design in 1993	232
8.3	Developments in 1994	232
8.4	No developments in 1995	233
8.5	Developments en 1996	233
8.6	Developments in 1997	233
8.7	Developments in 1998	233
8.8	Developments in 1999	233
8.9	Developments in 2000	234
8.10	Developments in 2001	234
8.11	Developments in 2002	234
8.12	Developments in 2003	234
8.13	Developments in 2004	235
8.14	Developments in 2005	235
8.15	Developments in 2006	237
8.16	Developments in 2007	238

This chapter summarizes the evolution of the minitoc package, year by year. A more detailed history is available in “Changes History”, page 558. Many minor changes are skipped here.

In fact, this chapter is for the average user of the package, who wants to have an overview of its evolution; the chapter “Changes History” is more oriented towards peoples interested in the code of the package and the problems encountered during its development.

## 8.1 The origins

The minitoc package was initially written by Nigel WARD in 1990 and 1991, with major contributions by Dan JURAFSKY. But minitoc suffered of a major weakness: when the number of chapters exceeded 9 or 10, you got a rather mysterious error message:

```
No room for a new \write.
```

As I needed the basic fonctionnality of this package (printing mini-tables of contents for each chapter), I looked further in its code and finally found the culprit: minitoc used a `\newwrite` command to create a new file for the contents table of each chapter, allocating a new file descriptor each time. But the number of file descriptors for writing is limited to 16 under  $\LaTeX$  (in fact, by the underlying  $\TeX$  program itself). As some descriptors are already used by  $\LaTeX$ , writing more than 9 or 10 chapters was too much. Such errors are difficult to find when testing on too small documents: with few chapters, everything goes fine. But on a real document, with many chapters, the mysterious error happens.

## 8.2 New design in 1993

So I decided (June 1993, when I took the maintenance of the package) to change the allocation method to always use the same file descriptor for all the mini-table of contents files. Some major improvements happened in 1993: the addition of the `mtcoff` (minitocoff at this time) package and a rewrite of minitoc to extract the data from the `document.toc` file, with a selection mechanism. Then a first solution for the short extension problem was added (still manual). An elementary system for the fonts in the mini-tables was added. In December 1993, the `minilofs` and `minilots` were added.

## 8.3 Developments in 1994

The first improvements in 1994 were about the forming of the mini-tables: spacing was improved and the position of the title became ajustable (with the optional parameter of `\minitoc` or `\dominitoc`). But a major addition was done: part-level mini-tables (`parttocs`, `partlofs`, `partlots`) and, for articles, section-level mini-tables (`secttocs`, `sectlofs`, `sectlots`).

With the emergence of  $\LaTeX 2_{\epsilon}$ , replacing the ageing  $\LaTeX 2.09$ , some work was necessary to support the compatibility with this new version. This was not easy, but Denis B. ROEGEL and Frank MITTELBACH gave me many helpful hints.

Another major addition is the language option feature, with the concept of the *minitoc language definition file* (or `.mld` file), coming from the `babel` package [40, 41], by Johannes L. BRAAMS. But at this time, these files were still named as `.sty` files.



An important simplification is introduced by the notion of “absolute numbering”, which avoids many problems when the chapters are not numbered the standard way (consecutively, starting from 1, with arabic digits).

## 8.4 No developments in 1995

Sorry, I was busy with another project.

## 8.5 Developments in 1996

The very annoying problem with the starred sectioning commands received some (rather primitive) solutions, but it is very complex, so manual interventions are often required.

The names of the minitoc language definition files take now the extension `.mld`, more specific, and english is the default language. Some new languages are added.

The work on the starred sectioning commands continues.

The minitocoff companion package is renamed `mtc` to keep its name short.

## 8.6 Developments in 1997

The problem of short extensions for file names under some operating systems is addressed via the new `shorttext` package option and by the new autoconfiguration feature.

For the starred sectioning commands, the `\addstarredchapter` command is added (with analog commands for starred parts and sections).

## 8.7 Developments in 1998

The `tight` and `loose` package options are added to improve the line spacing in the mini-tables.

## 8.8 Developments in 1999

The `dotted` and `undotted` package options are added to add or suppress some lines of dots (leaders) in the mini-tables.

## 8.9 Developments in 2000

A major addition is the compatibility with the `hyperref` package [227], and I ought to thank loudly Heiko OBERDIEK, Didier VERNA and Bernd JAEHNE.

Some corrections about the starred sectioning commands are added by Heiko OBERDIEK.

The mini-tables features (`\beforeparttoc` and `co.`) commands are added.

Some adjustment commands, like `\mtcaddchapter`, are added, again about the problem with the starred sectioning commands.

The compatibility with the `tocbibind` package [268] is documented.

Aliases for some languages are added.

## 8.10 Developments in 2001

Added the `checkfiles` and `nocheckfiles` package options, to avoid the insertion of (ugly) empty mini-tables.

Added the `\mtcselectlanguage` command to change more easily the language of the mini-tables titles.

## 8.11 Developments in 2002

Correction of an interaction between `\tableofcontents` (creating a hidden `\chapter*` or `\section*` command) and the numbering of the mini-table files.

Added the `\mtcskip` and `\mtcskipamount` commands.

## 8.12 Developments in 2003

Added the `insection` package option (which was temporarily done by the `flsection` and `flsectionb` package options) to deal with floats drifting out of their section. The `placeins` package [9] (by Donald ARSENEAU) is used.

The font commands are made compatible with the `memoir` class [272, 273].

Added compatibility with the `notoccite` package [8].

## 8.13 Developments in 2004

Added comments in the .mld files needing special fonts. Better documentation about languages.

Added an explanation about making a local table of contents for an appendix, eventually masking it in the main table of contents. Compatibility with the `appendix` package [267].

A major addition is the `hints` package option, to detect some programming and compatibility problems.

## 8.14 Developments in 2005

All messages are now written via the standard interface commands (`\PackageInfo`, `\PackageWarning`, and `\PackageError`), so the `minitoc` package is less verbose on the terminal.

Added the `\mtcsetfont` and `\mtcsettitlefont` commands (from a suggestion by Benjamin BAYART) to replace many font commands by only one command with a better user interface.

Comments about the  $\mathcal{AMS}$  classes (some ones are incompatible with `minitoc`).

Added the `\mtcsetformat` and `\mtcsettitle` commands, again to have a simpler user interface.

Added various hints (`insection` package option, order of `minitoc` basic commands, short extensions).

Added the `\mtcsetpagenumbers` and `\mtcsetrules` commands, again to have a simpler user interface.

Added the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment, to hide a group of entries in the main table of contents; added also the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.

Added the `\mtcfixindex` and `\mtcsettitle` commands.

Added the description of the installation of the package (a new chapter and the file `INSTALL`).

Improved and added hints about consistency of `\dominitoc`/`\minitoc` and co.

Added the `\mtcsetfeature` command (very complex).

Added a hint about the `abstract` package [266].

The minitoc package is now written using the `.dtx-.ins` system. Some cleanup is done in the code.

Added the `\mtcfixglossary` command, like `\mtcfixindex`.

Some improvements are made to print the documentation.

Some new hints are added (sectsty package [194], empty mini-tables, obsolete commands).

Added the notion of depth for mini-tables of figures/tables. Added the `\mtcsetdepth` command.

The `hints` package option is now the default.

Added a method for making a bilingual documentation in one file (the `minitoc.dtx` file). This method could be used for more languages.

Added or improved some adjustment commands (`\adjustptc`, `\incrementptc`, `\decrementptc`, etc.).

Added the `k-tight` and `k-loose` package options, for the KOMA-Script [157, 207] document classes.

Added a patch for the recent version of the memoir class [272, 273].

Use `\mtcselectlanguage` in language options and in “secondary” `.mld` files.

Added the `\mtcloadmlo` command to be used in some `.mld` files to load a `.mlo` file. The extension `.mlo` means *minitoc language object*; such files contains characters not easily manipulated in a `.dtx` file.

The history of changes is now displayed in a much simpler way (using a glossary was too cumbersome).

Added the `listfiles` package option, to create a list of the minitoc auxiliary files, which can be removed after the  $\text{\LaTeX}$  compilation of the document. It is the `document.maf` file.

Added a remark in the FAQ chapter (and `minitoc.bug`) about precautions to take with the starred sectioning commands.

Added hints about the `caption`, `caption2`, `ccaption`, and `mcaption` packages (they must be loaded *before* minitoc).

A “Jargon” chapter is added. It will grow slowly.

Added a note about a problem with minitoc, hyperref and memoir used together.

Some bugs in the `\mtcset...` commands are fixed.

Added a hint about the varsects package [244].

Added a hint on the number of mini-tables when short extensions are used.

Added a chapter with all the (explained) messages.

## 8.15 Developments in 2006

Added the “\*” keyword as first argument of the `\mtcsetpagenumbers` and `\mtcsetrules` command, to get an action on all kinds of mini-tables.

Corrections in the `\mtcaddsection`, `\mtcfixglossary`, and `\mtcfixindex` commands.

In the PDF documentation, the panel of bookmarks shows initially only the bookmarks for parts and chapters, but you can open them to show deeper entries.

Added a comment about the initialization of fonts in the FAQ (point 34). It is still an open domain and I am working on it.

Added a hint about the KOMA-Script classes [157, 207], and an entry in the FAQ chapter (and in `minitoc.bug`).

Added the “Postface” chapter.

Added the `\mtcprepare` command.

Added an URL field in the bibliography (the styles are modified with the `urlbst` tool [124]).

Added the `mtcmess` package to add unique identifiers to the messages.

Suppressed the PostScript documentation files from the distribution (no more accepted on CTAN archives), but the scripts still creates them.

Corrections in the `insection` package option.

Reordering of the chapters in the user’s manual (part I).

Added hints about the `fncychap` [182], `quotchap` [245], `romannum` [274], `sfheaders` [184], `alnumsec` [162], and `captcont` [101] packages.

Added FAQ 44 and the `\mtcgapbeforeheads` and `\mtcgapafterheads` formatting commands.

Added the chapter 4, “Examples of documents”, page 86.

Added FAQ 45 and the `\kernafterparttoc` and `co.` commands for the vertical space between a minitable and its bottom rule.

Increased the text width and adjusted the format of the entries in the TOC in the documentation.

Correction of the preamble in the generated files (spurious lines have been eliminated, at least).

Added `devanagari.mld` and `hindi.mld`. Added `hindi-modern.mld`.

The bibliographic styles `plainurl.bst` and `frplain1.bst` are renamed `en-mtc.bst` and `fr-mtc.bst`.

All example documents are renamed with names beginning with “`mtc-`”.

The “`listfiles`” package option is active by default.

Better error messages about undefined preparation and insertion commands.

Added `japanese6.mld` and `japanese6.mlo`.

Added a hint about the `hangcaption` package [148].

Added (in the `memento`) a table of the classes and packages which are incompatible or need precautions with `minitoc`.

Added a validation of the language options with the presence of the `.mld` and `.mlo` files.

Added the `tmk` script and a table describing a TDS structure for `minitoc`.

Updated the `INSTALL` file and the “Installation” chapter.

Added the file `minitoc-texmf.zip` (a ZIP archive of a TDS-compliant hierarchy of all files of the package) to the distribution.

Improving the index (entries for: packages and classes, scripts, tools, names, examples, extensions, option, language options).

## 8.16 Developments in 2007

Corrections of minor bugs and in the documentation.

The names of some internal macros are shortened to fit into the margin.

Indexing the environments and the files.

Indexing the counters and depth counters.

The example files are in their own directory in the (proposed) TDS hierarchy.

Indexing referenced commands (begin).

Added `mongolb.mld` and `mongolb.mlo`.

Removed `mongolb.mlo` (new T2 and X2 Cyrillic encodings in `mongolb.mld`).

Added the `mtc-3co.tex` example file.

Added `mongolian.mld` (loads `mongolb.mld`).

Improved the layout of the index.

Indexing the names of authors.

# Acknowledgments

I ought to thank the following peoples <sup>1</sup>, for their help, their questions, their interventions in the news groups <sup>2</sup>, and/or for their packages, classes, documents, and tools:

Hassan ABOLHASSANI, Paul W. ABRAHAMS, Nabil ABU EL-ATA, Tommaso ADDABBO,  
Juan M. AGUIRREGABIRIA, Vartan AKOPIAN, A. J. ALEX, Mark ALFORD, Jacques ANDRÉ  
Jérôme ANDRIEUX, Ralf ANGELI, Walter APPEL, Achod André ARADIAN, Einar ÁRNASON,  
Tim ARNOLD, Donald ARSENEAU, Helmer ASLASKEN, David ASPINALL, Ivar ÅSSEN,  
Philipp BACHMANN, Gonçal BADENES, Marin BALGARENSKY, Pierre BASSO, Dorjgotov BATMUNKH,  
Jean-Yves BAUDAIS, David BAUSUM, Benjamin BAYART, Thierry BAYET, Claudio BECCARI,  
Emmanuel BEFFARA, Benoît BELET, Rachid BELMOUHOUB, József BÉRCES,  
Alexander BERDNIKOV, Karl BERRY, Berhanu BEYENE, Javier BEZOS, Giuseppe BILOTTA,  
Árpád BÍRÓ, Denis BITOUZÉ, Laurent BLOCH, Georgi BOSHPANOV, Patrice BOUGETTE,  
Daniel BOURBONNAIS, Victor BOYKO, Johannes L. BRAAMS, Felix BRAUN, Jim BREEN,  
Peter BREITENLOHNER, Mimi BURBANK, Mustafa BURC, Alexey BURYKIN, Olivier CARDI,  
David CARELLA, David CARLISLE, Kevin CARMODY, Manuel CARRIBA, Régis CASPAR,  
Jean-Côme CHARPENTIER, Jean-Pascal CHAUVET, Pehong CHEN, Céline CHEVALIER,  
Jana CHLEBÍKOVÁ, Otfried CHEONG, Pai H. CHOU, Marian CLEGG, Steven Douglas COCHRAN,  
Maurizio CODOGNO, David B. COOK, Emmanuel CORNET, Oliver CORFF, Prakash COUNTCHAM,  
Serguei D'ACHIAN, Adrian DAERR, Arnak DALALYAN, Patrick W. DALY, Holger DANIELSSON,  
Arnaldo Viegas DE LIMA, Sébastien DEMOUSTIER, Éric DEPARDEU, Ben DE RYDT,  
Bernard DESGRAUPES, Cécile DESPRAIRIES, Sébastien DESREUX, Dorjpalam DORJ,  
Denys DUCHIER, Lyndon DUDDING, Marko ËEHAJA, Ta Quang DUNG, Victor EIJKHOUT,  
Danie ELs, Behdad ESFAHBOD, Thomas ESSER, Gilhooly ETIENNE, Karl F. EVERITT,  
Mike FABIAN, Robin FAIRBAIRNS, Simon FEAR, Jürgen FENN, Michael J. FERGUSON, Jeff FESSLER,  
Ulrike FISCHER, Jean-Julien FLECK, Daniel FLIPO, Peter FLYNN, Jim Fox, Danny M. FÜRNISS,  
Tetsuo FURUKAWA, Diego GARCÍA MORATE, Hubert GÄSSLEIN, Maarten GELDERMAN,  
Chuck GENSCHE, Mohammad GHODSI, Helen GILHOOPLY, Markus GLEISZNER,  
Vitali GONTSHARUK, Michel GOOSSENS, Mathieu GOUTELLE, Fraser GRANT, Norman GRAY,  
Loïc GRENON, Charles GREYER, Olga A. GRINEVA, Sébastien GROT, Micael GUIGNARD,  
Marion GUNN, Eitan M. GURARI, Thomas HAFNER, Hans HAGEN, Boumediene HAMZI,  
Thé Thành HÀN, Thorsten HANSEN, Patrick HAPPEL, Yannis HARALAMBOUS,  
Kathryn A. HARGREAVES, Alexander HARIN, Russel L. HARRIS, Michael A. HARRISON,  
Danny HEAP, André HEIDER, Thorsten HEIN, Sten HELLMAN, Håvard HELSTRUP, Yvon HENEL,  
Stephan HENNIG, Florence HENRY, Stephen HERBORN, David HOADLEY, Alan HOENIG,

---

<sup>1</sup> And I apologize to all whose I forgot.

<sup>2</sup> Mainly, `fr.comp.text.tex` (in french) and `comp.text.tex` (in english), but also `de.comp.text.tex` (in german, but I do not read it well: send me also a mail in french or english).



Morten HØGHOLM, Alv Kjetil HOLME, Umstatter HORST, Don HOSEK, Yufan HU, Jean-Michel HUFFLEN, Dave W. HUSEBY, Helene HYNA, Hiroya IKEDA, Dmitry IVANOV, Per Steinar IVERSEN, Tetsuo IWAKUMA, Zunbeltz IZAOLA, Youssef JABRI, Bernd JAEHNE, Radwan JALAM, Michael JANICH, Alan JEFFREY, Regnor JERNSLETEN, Zhuhan JIANG, Loïc JOLY, David M. JONES, Christophe JORSSEN, Robert JUHASZ, Stefan JUNGE, Dan JURAFSKY, Mikko KANERVA, Theppitak KAROONBOONYANAN, David KASTRUP, Ronan KERYELL, Axel KIELHORN, Ki-Joo KIM, Bil KLEB, Peter KLEIWEG, Rune KLEVELAND, Jörg KNAPPEN, Donald E. KNUTH, Markus KOHM, Helmut KOPKA, Attila KOPPANYI, Adamantios KORAI, Vincent KRAKOVIAK, Thankmar KRONZUCKER, Siep KROONENBERG, Alexej M. KRYUKOV, Manfred KUDLEK, Markus G. KUHN, Florian KULZER, Toshiaki KUMAZAWA, Olaf KUMMER, Frank KÜSTER, Stéphane LABORDE, Thomas LACHAND-ROBERT, Klaus LAGALLY, Leslie LAMPORT, Fabio LANARI, Robert LANGE, Dag LANGMYHR, Olga G. LAPKO, Henning LARSEN, Jean-Marc LASGOUTTES, Jean-Philippe LAUFFENBURGER, Arnaud LAUNAY, Claire LAUVERNET, Boris LAVVA, André LEBACQ, Jeanne LEGRAND, Philipp LEHMAN, Werner LEMBERG, Thomas LEONHARDT, Erwan LE PENNEC, Stéphane LEPOLOZEC, Julien LE THUAUT, Adam LEWENBERG, Knut LICKERT, Ulf A. LINDGREN, Anselm LINGNAU, Pierre LOBEL, Milos LOKAJICEK, Stoffel LOMBARD, Maurizio LORETI, Tristan LORINO, Tim LOVE, Vincent LOZANO, Daniel H. LUECKING, Ken LUNDE, Anders LYHNE, Pierre A. MACKAY, Lars MADSEN, Richard MAHONEY, Irina A. MAKHOVAYA, Bob MARGOLIS, Nicolas MARKEY, Marcus MARR, Françoise MARRE-FOURNIER, Terry MART, Vadim MASLOV, Henri MASSIAS, Andreas MATTHIAS, Sven MATTISSON, Rowland McDONNELL, Ben MCKAY, Surapant MEKNAVIN, Sébastien MENGIN, Jochen METZINGER, Yanick MICHOU, Frank MITTELBAACH, Young Joon MOON, Ross MOORE, Jens-Uwe MORAWSKI, Lapo Filippo MORI, Michael A. MORRISON, Javier A. MÚGICA DE RIVERA, Dejan MUHAMEDAGIĆ, Sergei O. NAUMOV, Frank NEUKAM, Cuong NGUYEN, Julien NICOLAS, Rolf NIEPRASCHK, Josselin NOIREL, Heiko OBERDIEK, Tobias OETIKER, Mariusz OLKO, Tanguy ORTOLO, Erik ÖSTHOLS, Jörg OTT, Alan PAIĆ, Scott PAKIN, Palash Baran PAL, Anshuman PANDEY, Minje Byeng-sen PARK, Hubert PARTL, Oren PATASHNIK, Jonathan PECHTA, Kasper PEETERS, Matthias PELGER, Terje Engeset PETTERST, Paul PICAUREAU, Éric PICHERAL, Bruno PIGUET, Karel PŠKA, John PLAICE, Veerathanabutr POONLAP, Fabrice POPINEAU, Nico POPPELIER, Rama PORRAT, Camille-Aimé POSSAMAÏ, Roozbeh POURNADER, C. V. RADHAKRISHNAN, Sebastian RAHTZ, Bernd RAICHLE, Jose Pedro RAMALHETE, Keranen REINO, Adrian REZUŞ, A. J. “Tony” ROBERTS, Denis B. ROEGEL, Christian ROLLAND, Chris A. ROWLEY, Marti RUIZ-ALTABA, Jan Michael RYNNING, Young RYU, Enn SAAR, David SAMSOEN, Julio SÁNCHEZ, Morgan SANGEUX, Eddie SAUDRAIS, Elmar SCHALÜCK, Elisabeth SCHLEGL, Tobias SCHLEMMER, Walter SCHMIDT, Uwe SCHNEIDER, Rainer SCHÖPF, Martin SCHRÖDER, Elizabeth SCURFIELD, Michael SHELL, JUNGSHIK Shin, Ali SHOUKAT, Andrij M. SHVAIKA, Chanop SILPA-ANAN, Anna SITNIKOVA-RIOLAND, Jankovic SLOBODAN, John SMITH, Robin S. SOCHA, Nick SOFRONIOU, Axel SOMMERFELDT, Lianyi SONG, Yves SOULET, Arjen STEINER, D. P. STORY, Éric STREIT, Ralf STUBNER, Robert S. SUTOR, Chris SWOYER, Apostolos SYROPOULOS, Daniel TAUPIN<sup>†</sup>, Christina THIELE, Aurélien THUREAU, Karsten TINNEFELD, Ton ’t LAM, Sigita TOLUŠIS, Laurent TORDELLA, Mark TRETTIN, Antonis TSOLOMITIS, Ahto TRUU, Stefan ULRICH, Hideo UMEKI, KOAUNGH Un, Turgut UYAR, Jari VAARIO, Piet VAN OOSTRUM, Thomas VAN OUDENHOVE DE SAINT GÉRY, Vincent VAQUIN, Suki K. VENKATESAN, Didier VERNÉ, Sylvain VESCO, Alexandre VIAL, André VIOLANTE, Carl F. VOEGELIN, Florence M. VOEGELIN, Vladimir VOLOVICH, Stephan P. VON BECHTOLSHEIM, Herbert VOSS, Zdeněk WAGNER, Nigel WARD, John WARNOCK, Staszek WAWRYKIEWICZ, Stephan B. WEBANCK, Eduard WERNER, Daphne WEST, Graham WILLIAMS, Peter R. WILSON, Jeroen WIJNHOUT, Marcin WOLIŃSKI, Élisabeth WOLKOWSKI, Mark WOODING, Tim WRIGHT, Dominik WUJASTYK, Damien WYART, C. S. YOGANANDA, Adi ZAIMI, Lejzer Ludwig ZAMENOF, Danilo ZAVRTANIK,

Krzysztof Konrad ŹELECHOWSKI, Charlie S. ZENDER, Federico ZENITH, Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV,  
Uwe ZIEGENHAGEN, and Leon ŹLAJPAH.

## **Part II**

# **Implementation**

## Contents of the Second Part

---

<b>9</b>	<b>Commented code of the <code>minitoc</code> package</b>	<b>245</b>
<b>10</b>	<b>Commented code of the <code>mtcoff</code> package</b>	<b>419</b>
<b>11</b>	<b>Commented code of the <code>mtcmess</code> package</b>	<b>434</b>
<b>12</b>	<b>Patch for the <code>memoir</code> class</b>	<b>435</b>
<b>13</b>	<b>The language definition (<code>.mld</code>) and object (<code>.mlo</code>) files</b>	<b>437</b>

---

## Chapter 9

# Commented code of the minitoc package

### Contents

<b>9.1</b>	<b>Introduction</b>	<b>248</b>
<b>9.2</b>	<b>Identification code</b>	<b>249</b>
<b>9.3</b>	<b>A file descriptor to write</b>	<b>249</b>
<b>9.4</b>	<b>Indentation and skip</b>	<b>249</b>
<b>9.5</b>	<b>Tests and flags</b>	<b>250</b>
9.5.1	Flags for the <code>hints</code> option	250
9.5.2	Use of section-level mini-lists of floats	251
9.5.3	Presence of some packages and classes	251
9.5.4	Presence or absence of some sectioning commands	252
9.5.5	Flags to check if some commands are used	253
9.5.6	Check if the document has exactly 2 parts	254
<b>9.6</b>	<b>Preparation for the <code>notoccite</code> option</b>	<b>255</b>
<b>9.7</b>	<b>Preparation for the <code>tight</code> and <code>k-tight</code> options</b>	<b>255</b>
<b>9.8</b>	<b>Preparation to work with <code>hyperref</code></b>	<b>255</b>
<b>9.9</b>	<b>Checking the presence of some packages</b>	<b>256</b>
9.9.1	Check if the <code>sectsty</code> package is loaded, and when	256
9.9.2	Check if the <code>varsects</code> package is loaded, and when	256
9.9.3	Check if the <code>fncychap</code> package is loaded, and when	256
9.9.4	Check if the <code>hangcaption</code> package is loaded, and when	257
9.9.5	Check if the <code>quotchap</code> package is loaded, and when	257
9.9.6	Check if the <code>romannum</code> package is loaded, and when	257
9.9.7	Check if the <code>sfheaders</code> package is loaded, and when	257
9.9.8	Check if the <code>alnumsec</code> package is loaded, and when	258
9.9.9	Check if the <code>captcont</code> package is loaded, and when	258
9.9.10	Check if the <code>caption</code> package is loaded, and when	258
9.9.11	Check if the <code>caption2</code> package is loaded, and when	258
9.9.12	Check if the <code>ccaption</code> package is loaded, and when	259
9.9.13	Check if the <code>mcaption</code> package is loaded, and when	259
<b>9.10</b>	<b>Is the <code>memoir</code> class loaded?</b>	<b>259</b>
<b>9.11</b>	<b>Testing the emptiness of a file</b>	<b>260</b>

9.12	Internal macros to decrement minitoc counters	261
9.13	Patching the <code>\part</code> command	262
9.14	Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred part	262
9.15	Section level macros	263
9.16	Corrections for numbering	263
9.17	Patching the <code>\section</code> command	263
9.18	Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred section	264
9.19	Chapter level macros	264
9.20	Patching the <code>\chapter</code> command	265
9.21	Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred chapter	265
9.22	Miscellaneous declarations	265
9.23	Autoconfiguration of extensions	266
9.24	Detecting obsolete versions of $\text{\LaTeX}$	267
9.25	A macro to make a TOC entry without leaders nor page numbers	268
9.26	Default values for the page-number customizations	268
9.27	“Features” for the mini-tables	271
9.28	Fake tables of contents	273
9.29	Depth counters for minilofs and minilots	274
9.30	Chapter level commands	274
9.31	Starred parts, chapters or sections	274
9.32	Font commands for the mini-tables	276
9.33	Internal commands to position the mini-table titles	276
9.34	The <code>mtc@verse</code> environment	277
9.35	The <code>\minitoc</code> , <code>\minilof</code> , and <code>\minilot</code> commands	277
9.35.1	The <code>\minitoc</code> command	278
9.35.2	The <code>\minilof</code> command	281
9.35.3	The <code>\minilot</code> command	284
9.36	Patching the <code>\chapter</code> command, continued	287
9.37	The <code>\addstarred...</code> commands	288
9.38	TOC entries without leaders	288
9.39	Mini-tables with or without leaders	289
9.40	The <code>\dominitoc</code> command and its siblings	290
9.40.1	Analysis and splitting of the TOC file	293
9.41	Mini-lists of figures	296
9.41.1	Analysis and splitting of the list of figures file	297
9.42	Mini-lists of tables	299
9.42.1	Analysis and splitting of the list of tables file	299
9.43	Macro to write a contents line	302
9.44	Depth counters for partlofs and partlots	303
9.45	Part level commands	303
9.46	Fonts for the parttocs	304
9.47	Default titles for part-level mini-tables	305
9.48	The <code>ptc@verse</code> environment	307
9.49	The part level mini-tables: <code>\parttoc</code> , <code>\partlof</code> , and <code>\partlot</code>	307
9.49.1	The <code>\parttoc</code> command	307
9.49.2	The <code>\partlof</code> command	310
9.49.3	The <code>\partlot</code> command	313
9.50	Auxiliary commands for printing parttocs	316
9.51	Patching the <code>\part</code> command, continued	316
9.52	The <code>\doparttoc</code> command and its siblings	317
9.52.1	Processing macros for the parttocs	319
9.52.2	Processing macros for the partlofs	323
9.52.3	Processing macros for the partlots	325

<b>9.53</b>	<b>Depth counters for sectlofs and sectlots</b>	<b>328</b>
<b>9.54</b>	<b>Section-level commands</b>	<b>328</b>
<b>9.55</b>	<b>Fonts commands for secttocs and co.</b>	<b>329</b>
<b>9.56</b>	<b>Internal macros for title positioning</b>	<b>329</b>
<b>9.57</b>	<b>The stc@verse environment</b>	<b>330</b>
<b>9.58</b>	<b>The \secttoc, \sectlof, and \sectlot commands</b>	<b>330</b>
9.58.1	The \secttoc command	330
9.58.2	The \sectlof command	333
9.58.3	The \sectlot command	335
<b>9.59</b>	<b>Auxiliary internal commands, section level</b>	<b>338</b>
<b>9.60</b>	<b>Patching the \section command (continued)</b>	<b>338</b>
<b>9.61</b>	<b>The \dosectoc command and siblings</b>	<b>340</b>
<b>9.62</b>	<b>End of section-level commands</b>	<b>349</b>
<b>9.63</b>	<b>The \mtcprepare command</b>	<b>350</b>
<b>9.64</b>	<b>Necessary \l@... commands</b>	<b>350</b>
<b>9.65</b>	<b>The horizontal rules and their default values</b>	<b>351</b>
<b>9.66</b>	<b>The \mtcset... commands</b>	<b>352</b>
9.66.1	Keywords for the \mtcset... commands	352
9.66.2	The \mtcsetfont command	353
9.66.3	The \mtcsetttitlefont command	358
9.66.4	The \mtcsetttitle command	359
9.66.5	The \mtcsetformat command	360
9.66.6	The \mtcsetpagenumbers command	365
9.66.7	The \mtcsetrules command	367
9.66.8	The \mtcsetfeature command	369
9.66.9	The \mtcsetdepth command	372
<b>9.67</b>	<b>The mtchideinmaintoc environment and siblings</b>	<b>373</b>
<b>9.68</b>	<b>Fixing the “Glossary” entry in the TOC</b>	<b>375</b>
<b>9.69</b>	<b>Fixing the “Index” entry in the TOC</b>	<b>377</b>
<b>9.70</b>	<b>The \mtcselectlanguage command</b>	<b>378</b>
<b>9.71</b>	<b>The \mtcloadmlo internal command</b>	<b>378</b>
<b>9.72</b>	<b>The “coffee breaks”</b>	<b>379</b>
<b>9.73</b>	<b>Initialization of counters</b>	<b>380</b>
<b>9.74</b>	<b>Declarations for simple options</b>	<b>380</b>
9.74.1	Options tight and loose, k-tight and k-loose	380
9.74.2	Options checkfiles and nocheckfiles	380
9.74.3	Options dotted and undotted	380
9.74.4	Option notoccite	381
9.74.5	Option shorttext	381
<b>9.75</b>	<b>The insection option</b>	<b>381</b>
<b>9.76</b>	<b>The listfiles and nolistfiles options</b>	<b>382</b>
<b>9.77</b>	<b>Language options</b>	<b>382</b>
<b>9.78</b>	<b>The hints option</b>	<b>388</b>
9.78.1	First part: \mtc@hints@begindoc	388
9.78.1.1	Hint about the alphanum package	389
9.78.1.2	Hint about the appendix package	389
9.78.1.3	Hint about the tocbibind package	389
9.78.1.4	Hint about the KOMA-Script classes	390
9.78.1.5	Hint about the tocloft package	390
9.78.1.6	Hint about the titletoc package	390
9.78.1.7	Hint about the placeins package	391
9.78.1.8	Hint about the memoir class	392
9.78.1.9	Hint about the amsart and amsproc classes	392
9.78.1.10	Hint about the amsbook class	393

9.78.1.11 Hint about the <code>abstract</code> package	393
9.78.1.12 Hint about the <code>jura</code> class	394
9.78.1.13 Hint about the alteration of the sectionning commands	394
9.78.1.13.1 Alteration of <code>\part</code>	394
9.78.1.13.2 Alteration of <code>\chapter</code>	395
9.78.1.13.3 Alteration of <code>\section</code>	395
9.78.1.14 Hint about the consistency of the calling sequences of some commands	396
9.78.2 Final part: <code>\mtc@hints@enddoc</code>	397
9.78.2.1 Hint about <code>\sect-lof lot</code> and the <code>insection</code> option	397
9.78.2.2 Final part of the consistency tests	397
9.78.2.3 Check if the main tables have been prepared (first part)	399
9.78.2.4 Check if the main tables have been prepared (second part)	401
9.78.2.5 Check the number of mini-tables, in case of short extensions	404
9.78.2.6 Final part of the hint about the <code>sectsty</code> package	405
9.78.2.7 Final part of the hint about the <code>varsects</code> package	405
9.78.2.8 Final part of the hint about the <code>fncychap</code> package	405
9.78.2.9 Final part of the hint about the <code>hangcaption</code> package	406
9.78.2.10 Final part of the hint about the <code>quotchap</code> package	406
9.78.2.11 Final part of the hint about the <code>romannum</code> package	406
9.78.2.12 Final part of the hint about the <code>sfheaders</code> package	407
9.78.2.13 Final part of the hint about the <code>alnumsec</code> package	407
9.78.2.14 Final part of the hint about the <code>captcont</code> package	407
9.78.2.15 Final part of the hint about the <code>caption</code> package	408
9.78.2.16 Final part of the hint about the <code>caption2</code> package	408
9.78.2.17 Final part of the hint about the <code>ccaption</code> package	408
9.78.2.18 Final part of the hint about the <code>mcaption</code> package	409
9.78.2.19 Check if empty mini-tables have been detected	409
9.78.2.20 Check if obsolete commands have been used	411
9.78.2.21 Check if some hints have been written	412
<b>9.79 Processing of options</b>	<b>412</b>
9.79.1 Processing the <code>insection</code> option	413
9.79.2 Processing the <code>notoccite</code> option	414
9.79.3 Processing the <code>listfiles</code> option	414
9.79.4 Processing the <code>hints</code> option	415
9.79.5 Saving the sectionning commands	415
<b>9.80 Trapping the undefined preparation and insertion commands</b>	<b>416</b>
<b>9.81 The <code>fminitoc.dtx</code> file</b>	<b>418</b>

## 9.1 Introduction

This very long chapter presents the code of the `minitoc` package and attempts to explain it. Some comments of the original source file<sup>1</sup> are skipped, like the history, because they do not need further examination (they will be put in the change history).

The code is split in sections to make the reading easier, and the sections are sometimes reordered to make the reading easier.

<sup>1</sup> The source file of version #42. Version #43 includes the conversion of the package to `.dtx-.ins` format. Version #42 has not been distributed because of that.



Most of the minitoc external commands have `mtc`, `ptc`, `stc`, or one of the mini-table names (`parttoc`, ..., `sectlot`) in their names. Most of the minitoc internal commands have `@mtc`, `@ptc`, `@stc`, or `parttoc@`, ..., `sectlot@` in their names, or a similar convention. The few exceptions should be explicit enough to not conflict with other packages.

## 9.2 Identification code

The code of `minitoc.sty` starts here:

```
2636 <{*minitoc>
```

```
\NeedsTeXFormat This code section identifies the package with its name, version number and date. A trace is
\ProvidesPackage written in the document.log file. This package will not work with LATEX2.09.
\mtcPackageInfo
\RequirePackage 2637 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}[1996/06/02]%
                2638 \ProvidesPackage{minitoc}%
                2639 [2007/02/12 v52 Package minitoc (JPFD)]
                2640 \RequirePackage{mtcmess}[2006/03/14]
                2641 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0001>]{minitoc}%
                2642 {*** minitoc package, version 52 ***\@gobble}
```

## 9.3 A file descriptor to write

```
\tf@mtc A file descriptor is needed to write the files containing the mini-tables, it is \tf@mtc.
\newwrite
2643 \newwrite\tf@mtc
```

## 9.4 Indentation and skip

```
\mtcindent We define the indentation \mtcindent (both sides) of the mini-tables and the command
\mtcskip \mtcskip to make a vertical skip before a mini-table, its value is \mtcskipamount (default:
\mtcskipamount \bigskipamount).
\parskip
2644 \newlength\mtcindent
2645 \newskip\mtcskipamount
2646 \setlength{\mtcskipamount}{\bigskipamount}
2647 % %%%\def\mtcskip{\leavevmode\unskip\removelastskip%
2648 % %%% { \parskip=\z@\addvspace{\mtcskipamount}}
2649 \def\mtcskip{\{ \parskip=\z@\addvspace{\mtcskipamount}}}
```

Note that `\mtcskip` uses a local group to avoid the influence of `\parskip`.

```

\mtcgapbeforeheads We define the default values for the vertical gaps before and after titles part level mini-tables.
\mtcgapafterheads

2650 \def\mtcgapbeforeheads{50\p@}
2651 \def\mtcgapafterheads{40\p@}

\@ifundefined We define the vertical kernings between the minitables and their before the bottom rule. The
\kernafterparttoc names of these macros is rather explicit. The values are empirical and can be changed via
\kernafterpartlof \renewcommand.
\kernafterpartlot
\kernaftersecttoc 2652 \@ifundefined{part}{}{%
\kernaftersectlof 2653 \def\kernafterparttoc{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
\kernaftersectlot 2654 \def\kernafterpartlof{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
\kernafterminitoc 2655 \def\kernafterpartlot{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
\kernafterminilof 2656 }%
\kernafterminilot 2657 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
2658 \@ifundefined{section}{}{%
2659 }%
2660 \def\kernaftersecttoc{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
2661 \def\kernaftersectlof{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
2662 \def\kernaftersectlot{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
2663 }%
2664 }%
2665 }%
2666 \def\kernafterminitoc{\kern-.5\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
2667 \def\kernafterminilof{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern0.ex}%
2668 \def\kernafterminilot{\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern0.ex}%
2669 }%

```

## 9.5 Tests and flags

We need to declare some flags<sup>2</sup> (via `\newif`) to detect the loading of some packages or classes and the availability of some commands (this will be used by the `hints` option (section 9.78 on page 388) or to allow the definition of some minitoc commands).

```

\if@mtc@hints@
\if@mtc@hints@w@
\if@mtc@hints@giben@

```

### 9.5.1 Flags for the hints option

But first, we define some flags for the `hints` option:

- The flag `\if@mtc@hints@` is true if the `hints` option is required (default).

<sup>2</sup> Not so many years ago, some authors had a preference for using counters rather than flags, because a flag costs 3 control sequences (`\iffoo`, `\foofalse` and `\footrue`), which use memory. But the number of count registers is limited to 256 in the native  $\text{\TeX}$  engine (much more with  $\varepsilon\text{-}\text{\TeX}$ , but still limited in number), while memory has become rather cheap today. And a code programmed with flags (`\iffoo ... \else ... \fi`) is easier to structure than a code programmed with counters,  $\text{\imho}$ .

- The flag `\if@mtc@hints@w@` is set true if we detect that some sectionning commands have been altered since the loading of the document class.
- The flag `\if@mtc@hints@given@` is set true if the `hints` option detects something curious and writes messages in the `document.log` file. It will be used at the end of the document to signal that you should look for hints in the `document.log` file.

```
2670 \newif\if@mtc@hints@ \@mtc@hints@true
2671 \newif\if@mtc@hints@w@ \@mtc@hints@w@false
2672 \newif\if@mtc@hints@given@ \@mtc@hints@given@false
```

## 9.5.2 Use of section-level mini-lists of floats

```
\if@mtc@sect@floats@ We will check if the commands \dosectlof and \dosectlot are used:
\dosectlof
\dosectlot 2673 \newif\if@mtc@sect@floats@ \@mtc@sect@floats@false
```

## 9.5.3 Presence of some packages and classes

```
\if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@ We will check if the placeins package is loaded, then if the memoir is loaded (and if it is an
\if@mtc@memoirLoaded@ enough recent version), then if the sectsty package is loaded (before or after minitoc). We
\if@mtc@memoirnew@ do the same for some caption-related packages and the varsects package and other packages
\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@ altering the sectionning commands.
\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@
\if@mtc@captionLoaded@ 2674 \newif\if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@ \@mtc@placeinsLoaded@false
\if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@ 2675 \newif\if@mtc@memoirLoaded@ \@mtc@memoirLoaded@false
\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@ 2676 \newif\if@mtc@memoirnew@ \@mtc@memoirnew@false
\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@ 2677 \newif\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@ \@mtc@sectstyLoaded@false
\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@ 2678 \newif\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@ \@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@ 2679 \newif\if@mtc@captionLoaded@ \@mtc@captionLoaded@false
\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@ 2680 \newif\if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@ \@mtc@captionLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@ 2681 \newif\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@ \@mtc@captionIILoaded@false
\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@ 2682 \newif\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@ \@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@ 2683 \newif\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@ \@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@false
\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@ 2684 \newif\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@ \@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@ 2685 \newif\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@ \@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@false
\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@ 2686 \newif\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@ \@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@ 2687 \newif\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@ \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@false
\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@ 2688 \newif\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@ \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@ 2689 \newif\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@ \@mtc@fncychapLoaded@false
\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@ 2690 \newif\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@ \@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@ 2691 \newif\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@ \@mtc@HgcLoaded@false
\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@ 2692 \newif\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@ \@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@ 2693 \newif\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@ \@mtc@quotchapLoaded@false
\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@ 2694 \newif\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@ \@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@ 2695 \newif\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@ \@mtc@romannumLoaded@false
\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@ 2696 \newif\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@ \@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@false
\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@
\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@
```

```

2697 \newif\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@ \@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@false
2698 \newif\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@ \@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@false
2699 \newif\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@ \@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@false
2700 \newif\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@ \@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@false
2701 \newif\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@ \@mtc@captcontLoaded@false
2702 \newif\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@ \@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@false

```

\if@mtc@empty@parttoc@ We will check if you have attempted to insert some empty mini-tables:

```

\if@mtc@empty@partlof@
\if@mtc@empty@partlot@ 2703 \newif\if@mtc@empty@parttoc@ \@mtc@empty@parttoc@false
\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@ 2704 \newif\if@mtc@empty@partlof@ \@mtc@empty@partlof@false
\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@ 2705 \newif\if@mtc@empty@partlot@ \@mtc@empty@partlot@false
\if@mtc@empty@minilof@ 2706 \newif\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@ \@mtc@empty@minitoc@false
\if@mtc@empty@minilof@ 2707 \newif\if@mtc@empty@minilof@ \@mtc@empty@minilof@false
\if@mtc@empty@sectlot@ 2708 \newif\if@mtc@empty@minilof@ \@mtc@empty@minilof@false
\if@mtc@empty@sectlof@ 2709 \newif\if@mtc@empty@sectlof@ \@mtc@empty@sectlof@false
\if@mtc@empty@sectlof@ 2710 \newif\if@mtc@empty@sectlof@ \@mtc@empty@sectlof@false
\if@mtc@empty@sectlot@ 2711 \newif\if@mtc@empty@sectlot@ \@mtc@empty@sectlot@false

```

### 9.5.4 Presence or absence of some sectionning commands

We define and set flags about the presence of the sectionning commands (in fact, the counters associated with these commands).

\if@mtc@part@def@ The partpart counter:

```

2712 \newif\if@mtc@part@def@ \@mtc@part@def@false
2713 \ifundefined{part}{\@mtc@part@def@false}{\@mtc@part@def@true}

```

\if@mtc@chapter@def@ The chapterchapter counter:

```

2714 \newif\if@mtc@chapter@def@ \@mtc@chapter@def@false
2715 \ifundefined{chapter}{\@mtc@chapter@def@false}{\@mtc@chapter@def@true}

```

\if@mtc@section@def@ The sectionsection counter:

```

2716 \newif\if@mtc@section@def@ \@mtc@section@def@false
2717 \ifundefined{section}{\@mtc@section@def@false}{\@mtc@section@def@true}

```

We define and set flags about the absence of the sectionning commands.

`\if@mtc@part@undef@` The partpart counter:

```
2718 \newif\if@mtc@part@undef@ \@mtc@part@undef@true
2719 \ifundefined{part}{\@mtc@part@undef@true}{\@mtc@part@undef@false}
```

`\if@mtc@chapter@undef@` The chapterchapter counter:

```
2720 \newif\if@mtc@chapter@undef@ \@mtc@chapter@undef@true
2721 \ifundefined{chapter}{\@mtc@chapter@undef@true}{\@mtc@chapter@undef@false}
```

`\if@mtc@section@undef@` The sectionsection counter:

```
2722 \newif\if@mtc@section@undef@ \@mtc@section@undef@true
2723 \ifundefined{section}{\@mtc@section@undef@true}{\@mtc@section@undef@false}
```

### 9.5.5 Flags to check if some commands are used

We define a pair of flags for each mini-table type: one for the command itself and one for the preparation command (`\do...`). These flags will be used by the hints package option (section 9.78 on page 388).

`\if@parttoc@used@` For the part level:

```
\if@partlof@used@
\if@partlot@used@ 2724 \newif\if@parttoc@used@ \global\@parttoc@used@false
\if@doparttoc@used@ 2725 \newif\if@partlof@used@ \global\@partlof@used@false
\if@dopartlof@used@ 2726 \newif\if@partlot@used@ \global\@partlot@used@false
\if@dopartlot@used@ 2727 \newif\if@doparttoc@used@ \global\@doparttoc@used@false
2728 \newif\if@dopartlof@used@ \global\@dopartlof@used@false
2729 \newif\if@dopartlot@used@ \global\@dopartlot@used@false
```

`\if@minitoc@used@` For the chapter level:

```
\if@minilof@used@
\if@minilot@used@ 2730 \newif\if@minitoc@used@ \global\@minitoc@used@false
\if@dominitoc@used@ 2731 \newif\if@minilof@used@ \global\@minilof@used@false
\if@dominilof@used@ 2732 \newif\if@minilot@used@ \global\@minilot@used@false
\if@dominilot@used@ 2733 \newif\if@dominitoc@used@ \global\@dominitoc@used@false
2734 \newif\if@dominilof@used@ \global\@dominilof@used@false
2735 \newif\if@dominilot@used@ \global\@dominilot@used@false
```

```

\if@secttoc@used@ For the section level:
\if@sectlof@used@
\if@sectlot@used@ 2736 \newif\if@secttoc@used@ \global\@secttoc@used@false
\if@dosecttoc@used@ 2737 \newif\if@sectlof@used@ \global\@sectlof@used@false
\if@dosectlof@used@ 2738 \newif\if@sectlot@used@ \global\@sectlot@used@false
\if@dosectlot@used@ 2739 \newif\if@dosecttoc@used@ \global\@dosecttoc@used@false
2740 \newif\if@dosectlof@used@ \global\@dosectlof@used@false
2741 \newif\if@dosectlot@used@ \global\@dosectlot@used@false

```

```

\if@firstpartis@used@ We also detect the use of some obsolete commands:
\if@firstchapteris@used@
\if@firstsectionis@used@ 2742 \newif\if@firstpartis@used@ \global\@firstpartis@used@false
2743 \newif\if@firstchapteris@used@ \global\@firstchapteris@used@false
2744 \newif\if@firstsectionis@used@ \global\@firstsectionis@used@false

```

### 9.5.6 Check if the document has exactly 2 parts

`\ifmtcsecondpart` In french, the ordinal adjective is “deuxième” if the second object is not the last object, but “second” (masculine) or “seconde” (feminine) when it is also the last one. So we define a specific flag:

```
2745 \newif\ifmtcsecondpart \mtcsecondpartfalse
```

`\AtBeginDocument` At the beginning of the document, we test this flag and make it global:  
`\ifmtcsecondpart`

```

2746 \AtBeginDocument{%
2747   \ifmtcsecondpart
2748     \global\mtcsecondparttrue
2749   \else
2750     \global\mtcsecondpartfalse
2751   \fi}

```

`\AtEndDocument` At the end of the document, we set and memorize the value of the flag in the .aux file:  
`\ifmtcsecondpart`

```

\@mainaux 2752 \AtEndDocument{%
2753   \ifnum\value{part}=2\relax
2754     \mtcsecondparttrue
2755   \else
2756     \mtcsecondpartfalse
2757   \fi
2758   \if@files
2759     \ifmtcsecondpart
2760       \immediate\write\@mainaux
2761         {\string\global\string\mtcsecondparttrue}%

```

```

2762 \else
2763   \immediate\write\@mainaux
2764     {\string\global\string\mtcsecondpartfalse}%
2765 \fi
2766 \fi}

```

So we need two  $\LaTeX$  runs to get a correct result. The `french2.mld` language definition file (see section 13.60 on page 470) uses this trick to form the titles of part level mini-tables. See the `mtc-2nd.tex` example file in section 4.2 on page 88.

## 9.6 Preparation for the `notoccite` option

`\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` We declare a flag for the presence of this option and the new internal “hook” command (redefinable command) `\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile`, used by this option (this has been requested by Donald ARSENEAU for his `notoccite` package [8]). See section 1.6 on page 49.

```

2767 \newif\if@mtc@notoccite@ \@mtc@notoccite@false
2768 \ifundefined{mtc@hook@beforeinputfile}%
2769   {\let\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile\relax}{}

```

## 9.7 Preparation for the `tight` and `k-tight` options

`\iftightmtc` We just declare a flag for each of these options; they are set false by default (loose and `\ifktightmtc` k-loose options):

```

2770 \newif\iftightmtc \tightmtcfalse
2771 \newif\ifktightmtc \ktightmtcfalse

```

## 9.8 Preparation to work with `hyperref`

`\AtBeginDocument` This code prepares the interface with the `hyperref` package [227]. A flag is defined, then this preparation is performed in a `\AtBeginDocument` block if this package is loaded. This action defines some commands for the `hyperref` package.

```

2772 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0005>]{minitoc}{compatible with hyperref\@gobble}
2773 \newif\if@mtc@hyper@used@ \global\@mtc@hyper@used@false
2774 \AtBeginDocument{%
2775   \ifpackageloaded{hyperref}{%
2776     \global\@mtc@hyper@used@true
2777     \def\toclevel@xpart{1000}%

```

```

2778 \def\toclevel@xchapter{1000}%
2779 \def\toclevel@xsect{1000}%
2780 \def\toclevel@xsection{1000}%
2781 \let\toclevel@starpert\toclevel@part
2782 \let\toclevel@starchapter\toclevel@chapter
2783 \let\toclevel@starsection\toclevel@section
2784 \let\toclevel@starsubsection\toclevel@subsection
2785 \let\toclevel@starsubsubsection\toclevel@subsubsection
2786 \let\toclevel@starparagraph\toclevel@paragraph
2787 \let\toclevel@starsubparagraph\toclevel@subparagraph
2788 }{}

```

## 9.9 Checking the presence of some packages

### 9.9.1 Check if the sectsty package is loaded, and when

```

\AtBeginDocument We must test if the sectsty package [194] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test when
\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@ minitoc is loaded and also in a \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have been
\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@ loaded. See section 9.78.2.6 on page 405.
\@ifpackageloaded
2789 \@ifpackageloaded{sectsty}{\@mtc@sectstyLoaded@true}{}
2790 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{sectsty}{\@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@true}{}

```

### 9.9.2 Check if the varsects package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the varsects package [244] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in a \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.78.2.7 on page 405.
\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@
2791 \@ifpackageloaded{varsects}{\@mtc@varsectsLoaded@true}{}
2792 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{varsects}{\@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@true}{}

```

### 9.9.3 Check if the fncychap package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the fncychap package [182] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in a \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.78.2.8 on page 405.
\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@
2793 \@ifpackageloaded{fncychap}{\@mtc@fncychapLoaded@true}{}
2794 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{fncychap}{\@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@true}{}

```



### 9.9.4 Check if the hangcaption package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the hangcaption package [148] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we
\AtBeginDocument test when minitoc is loaded and also in a \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages
\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@ have been loaded. See section 9.78.2.9 on page 406.
\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@

2795 \@ifpackageloaded{hangcaption}{\@mtc@HgcLoaded@true}{}
2796 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{hangcaption}{\@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@true}{}

```

### 9.9.5 Check if the quotchap package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the quotchap package [245] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in a \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.78.2.10 on page 406.
\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@

2797 \@ifpackageloaded{quotchap}{\@mtc@quotchapLoaded@true}{}
2798 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{quotchap}{\@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@true}{}

```

### 9.9.6 Check if the romannum package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the romannum package [274] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in a \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.78.2.11 on page 406.
\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@

2799 \@ifpackageloaded{romannum}{\@mtc@romannumLoaded@true}{}
2800 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{romannum}{\@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@true}{}

```

### 9.9.7 Check if the sfheaders package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the sfheaders package [184] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in a \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.78.2.12 on page 407.
\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@

2801 \@ifpackageloaded{sfheaders}{\@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@true}{}
2802 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{sfheaders}{\@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@true}{}

```

### 9.9.8 Check if the alnumsec package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the alnumsec package [162] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in a \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.78.2.13 on page 407.
\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@

2803 \@ifpackageloaded{alnumsec}{\@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@true}{}
2804 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{alnumsec}{\@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@true}{}

```

### 9.9.9 Check if the captcont package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the captcont package [101] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in a \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.78.2.14 on page 407.
\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@

2805 \@ifpackageloaded{captcont}{\@mtc@captcontLoaded@true}{}
2806 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{captcont}{\@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@true}{}

```

### 9.9.10 Check if the caption package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the caption package [240] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test when
\AtBeginDocument minitoc is loaded and also in a \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have been
\if@mtc@captionLoaded@ loaded. See section 9.78.2.15 on page 408.
\if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@

2807 \@ifpackageloaded{caption}{\@mtc@captionLoaded@true}{}
2808 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{caption}{\@mtc@captionLoaded@a@true}{}

```

### 9.9.11 Check if the caption2 package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the caption2 package [239] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in a \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.78.2.16 on page 408.
\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@

2809 \@ifpackageloaded{caption2}{\@mtc@captionIILoaded@true}{}
2810 \AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{caption2}{\@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@true}{}

```

### 9.9.12 Check if the ccaption package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the ccaption package [270] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in a \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.78.2.17 on page 408.
\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@

2811 \@ifpackageloaded{ccaption}{\@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@true}{}
2812 \@AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{ccaption}{\@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@true}{} }

```

### 9.9.13 Check if the mcaption package is loaded, and when

```

\@ifpackageloaded We must test if the mcaption package [141] is loaded before or after minitoc, so we test
\AtBeginDocument when minitoc is loaded and also in a \AtBeginDocument block, when all packages have
\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@ been loaded. See section 9.78.2.18 on page 409.
\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@

2813 \@ifpackageloaded{mcaption}{\@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@true}{}
2814 \@AtBeginDocument{\@ifpackageloaded{mcaption}{\@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@true}{} }

```

## 9.10 Is the memoir class loaded?

```

\@ifclassloaded We test if the memoir [272, 273] class is loaded. This class needs some compatibility adjust-
\if@mtc@memoirLoaded@ ments or may be incompatible if too recent. In the later case, a patch is inserted (see chap-
\if@mtc@memoirnew@ ter 12 on page 435). This correction is no more necessary after the 2005/09/25 version of
\if@mtcpatchmemoir@ memoir.cls.

```

```

2815 \newif\if@mtcpatchmemoir@ \@mtcpatchmemoir@false
2816 \@ifclassloaded{memoir}{\@mtc@memoirLoaded@true\relax%
2817     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0030>]{minitoc}%
2818     {the memoir class is loaded:
2819     \MessageBreak
2820     compatibility attempted\@gobble}}%
2821     {\@mtc@memoirLoaded@false}
2822 \if@mtc@memoirLoaded@
2823 \@ifundefined{@m@chapter}%
2824     {\@mtc@memoirnew@false\mtcPackageInfo[<I0020>]{minitoc}%
2825     {old version of the memoir class\@gobble}}
2826     {\@mtc@memoirnew@true\mtcPackageInfo[<I0027>]{minitoc}%
2827     {recent version of the memoir class\@gobble}
2828     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0032>]{minitoc}%
2829     {This version of the memoir class uses
2830     \MessageBreak
2831     a version of \string\chapter\space which is
2832     \MessageBreak
2833     incompatible with the minitoc package.

```

```

2834      \MessageBreak
2835      We try to patch\@gobble}%
2836  \@mtcpatchmemoir@true}
2837 \fi

```

\if@mtcpatchmemoir@ And now the patch:

```

2838 \if@mtcpatchmemoir@
2839 \IfFileExists{mtcpatchmem.sty}{%
2840   \@ifclasslater{memoir}{2005/09/25}{{\RequirePackage{mtcpatchmem}}}{%
2841   \mtcPackageError[<E0028>]{minitoc}%
2842     {Unable to patch the memoir class}%
2843     {So it remains incompatible. Sorry.}}
2844 \fi

```

## 9.11 Testing the emptiness of a file

```

\mtc@ifmtarg Some macros for testing if an argument of a macro is empty (taken from the package
\mtc@xifmtarg ifmtarg [275], by Peter R. WILSON and Donald ARSENEAU, and from while.tip, by
\mtc@EndWhile Stephan P. VON BECHTOLSHEIM [259]). The group is necessary to keep local the catcode
\mtc@WhilePreCondition change of “Q”, hence a \gdef is needed for \mtc@ifmtarg.
\mtc@WhileCondition
\mtc@WhileBody
\mtc@While 2845 \begingroup
\mtc@While 2846 \catcode'\Q=3
\mtc@WhileNext 2847 \long\gdef\mtc@ifmtarg#1{%
2848 \mtc@xifmtarg#1QQ\@secondoftwo\@firstoftwo\@nil}
2849 \long\gdef\mtc@xifmtarg#1#2Q#3#4#5\@nil{#4}
2850 \endgroup
2851 \let\mtc@EndWhile = \fi
2852 \def\mtc@While #1#2#3\mtc@EndWhile{%
2853   \def\mtc@WhilePreCondition{#1}%
2854   \def\mtc@WhileCondition{#2}%
2855   \def\mtc@WhileBody{#3}%
2856   \mtc@@While
2857 }
2858 \def\mtc@@While{%
2859   \mtc@WhilePreCondition
2860   \mtc@WhileCondition
2861   \def\mtc@WhileNext{%
2862     \mtc@WhileBody
2863     \mtc@@While
2864   }%
2865   \else
2866   \def\mtc@WhileNext{}%
2867   \fi
2868   \mtc@WhileNext
2869 }

```

```

\if@mtc@checkfiles Some macros to test if a file is empty or not: \mtc@CkFile{file} returns \@mtc@FEtrue
\if@mtc@FE if the file is empty, \@mtc@FEfalse if the file is not empty. An inexistent file is empty.
\if@mtc@LI A file full of white space (space, tabulation, newline) is empty. Comments are empty.
\mtc@While
\mtc@Body Note: on a big empty file, the \mtc@While loop may be time consuming, but not an
\mtc@endWhile eternity (33 s for 106 lines on my computer), and the first non-empty line stops the loop.
\mtc@CkFile \jobname.mtc is used as scratch file. Its contents is erased after use.
\mtc@CkStr
\mtc@Rline 2870 \newif\if@mtc@LI\@mtc@LItrue
\tf@mtc 2871 \newif\if@mtc@FE\@mtc@FEtrue
\@inputcheck 2872 \newif\if@mtc@checkfiles\@mtc@checkfilestrue
2873 \def\mtc@Body{\immediate\read\@inputcheck to
2874 \mtc@Rline\relax
2875 \ifeof\@inputcheck\relax\@mtc@LIfalse\fi
2876 \expandafter\ifx\mtc@Rline\par\relax
2877 \def\mtc@Rline{}
2878 \else
2879 \ifeof\@inputcheck\relax\global\@mtc@LIfalse\fi
2880 \mtc@ifmtarg{\mtc@Rline}{\relax}%
2881 {\@mtc@FEfalse\@mtc@LIfalse}
2882 \fi
2883 }
2884 \def\mtc@CkFile#1{%
2885 \@mtc@LItrue\@mtc@FEtrue
2886 \if@mtc@checkfiles
2887 \IfFileExists{#1}{%
2888 \immediate\openin\@inputcheck #1\relax
2889 \mtc@While{}{\if@mtc@LI\relax}%
2890 {\mtc@Body}%
2891 \mtc@endWhile}%
2892 {\@mtc@FEtrue}%
2893 \else
2894 \@mtc@FEfalse%
2895 \fi}
2896 \closein\@inputcheck\relax
2897 \def\mtc@CkStr#1{%
2898 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc
2899 \immediate\write\tf@mtc{#1}%
2900 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
2901 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.mtc}%
2902 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc
2903 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}

```

## 9.12 Internal macros to decrement minitoc counters

```

\mtc@onebackpart It is sometimes necessary to decrement a minitoc counter (ptc, mtc or stc) by one. These
\mtc@onebackchapter macros are:
\mtc@onebacksection
\addtocounter 2904 \def\mtc@onebackpart{\addtocounter{ptc}{-1}}

```

```

2905 \def\mtc@onebackchap{\addtocounter{mtc}{-1}}
2906 \def\mtc@onebacksect{\addtocounter{stc}{-1}}

```

### 9.13 Patching the \part command

`\part` If the `\part` command is not defined (by the document class, usually), we cannot patch it and a warning is displayed<sup>3</sup>. Else, we patch its two branches, `\@part` (for the unstarred version) `\mtc@svspart` or `\@spart` (for the starred version, `\part*`): we add `\stepcounter{ptc}` to increment the `\mtc@svpart` parttoc counter ptc. See also section 9.51 on page 316.

`\@spart`

`\@part`

`\stepcounter` The code of the next section (section 9.14) is also skipped if `\part` is not defined.

```

2907 \@ifundefined{part}{%
2908   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0018>]{minitoc}%
2909   {part level macros NOT available}
2910 }{%% else undefined part (\part defined)
2911   \mtcPackageInfo[<I0023>]{minitoc}%
2912   {part level macros available\@gobble}
2913   \let\mtc@svspart\@spart
2914   \def\@spart{\stepcounter{ptc}\mtc@svspart}
2915   \let\mtc@svpart\@part
2916   \def\@part{\stepcounter{ptc}\mtc@svpart}

```

### 9.14 Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred part

`\mtcaddpart` To add an entry in the TOC for a starred part, we need the `\mtcaddpart` macro, which has an optional argument, the title of the part as it should appear in the TOC.

`\mtc@ifmtarg`

`\contentsline`

`\addcontentsline` By default, this argument is empty. If it is empty (tested via `\mtc@ifmtarg`) or omitted, we add a `\contentsline{xpart}{}{}...` line in the .toc file. If it is not empty, we add a `\contentsline{part}{title}{}...` line in the .toc file. We always add a `\l@xpart` `\contentsline{xpart}{}{}...` line in the .lof and .lot files. Then we increment the ptc counter, via `\adjustptc` (defined in section 9.45 on page 303). Using `xpart` as first argument of `\contentsline` means that `\l@xpart` will be invoked in place of `\l@part` to print the entry in the TOC, but `\l@xpart` uses a huge depth (10 000) for this entry, hence it will never be really printed (except if you cheat).

`\l@xpart`

`\l@part`

```

2917 \newcommand{\mtcaddpart}[1][{}]{%
2918   \mtc@ifmtarg{#1}{\addcontentsline{toc}{xpart}{}{}%
2919     {\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{#1}}}%
2920   \addcontentsline{lof}{xpart}{}{}%
2921   \addcontentsline{lot}{xpart}{}{}%

```

<sup>3</sup> Document classes with sectioning commands but no `\part` command are likely non standard, hence the warning displayed on the terminal.

```
2922 \adjustptc}
```

This code terminates (temporarily) the part level commands.

```
2923 }%
```

## 9.15 Section level macros

`\chapter` The section level macros are defined if `\chapter` is not defined and `\section` defined, i.e., in document classes like `article`, but not in document classes like `book` or `report`. So we test if `\chapter` is defined and if `\section` is defined, with adequate warnings. If neither are defined, you are in big trouble to use the minitoc package with the class of your document.

```
2924 \@ifundefined{chapter}{\mtcPackageInfo[<I0004>]{minitoc}%
2925     {chapter level macros NOT available\@gobble}%
2926 \@ifundefined{section}{\mtcPackageInfo[<I0029>]{minitoc}%
2927     {section level macros NOT available\@gobble}%
2928 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0017>]{minitoc}%
2929     {no section or chapter level macros available
2930     \MessageBreak
2931     PLEASE VERIFY YOUR MAIN DOCUMENT CLASS}}%
2932 {\mtcPackageInfo[<I0028>]{minitoc}%
2933     {section level macros available\@gobble}%
```

## 9.16 Corrections for numbering

`\mtc@onebacksect` As the TOC, the LOF and the LOT are considered as (starred) sections, we must decrement the secttoc counter (stc) via `\mtc@onebacksect` when the corresponding commands are executed. Hence we patch these commands.

```
\tableofcontents
\listoffigures
\listoftables
\mtcsv@tableofcontents 2934 \let\mtcsv@tableofcontents\tableofcontents
\mtcsv@listoffigures 2935 \let\mtcsv@listoffigures\listoffigures
\mtcsv@listoftables 2936 \let\mtcsv@listoftables\listoftables
2937 \def\tableofcontents{\mtcsv@tableofcontents\mtc@onebacksect}
2938 \def\listoffigures{\mtcsv@listoffigures\mtc@onebacksect}
2939 \def\listoftables{\mtcsv@listoftables\mtc@onebacksect}
```

## 9.17 Patching the `\section` command

`\mtc@svsection` If the `\section` command is not defined (by the document class, usually), we cannot patch it and a warning is displayed. Else, we patch its two branches, `\@sect` (for the unstarred version)

```
\mtc@svss
\@sect
\@sect
\section
\stepcounter
```

or `\@ssect` (for the starred version, `\section*`): we add `\stepcounter{stc}` to increment the `secttoc` counter `stc`, only in the unstarred case (the version #25 has removed a spurious decrementation of this counter).

```
2940 \let\mtc@svsection\section
2941 \def\section{\stepcounter{stc}\mtc@svsection}
2942 \let\mtc@svss\@ssect
```

## 9.18 Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred section

`\mtcaddsection` To add an entry in the TOC for a starred section, we need the `\mtcaddsection` macro, which has an optional argument, the title of the section as it should appear in the TOC. `\mtc@ifmtarg` By default, this argument is empty. If it is empty (tested via `\mtc@ifmtarg`) or omitted, `\contentsline` we add a `\contentsline{xsect}{}{}...` line in the `.toc` file. If it is not empty, we `\adjuststc` add a `\contentsline{section}{title...}...` line in the `.toc` file. We always add a `\l@xsect` `\contentsline{xsect}{}{}...` line in the `.lof` and `.lot` files. Then we increment the `\l@section` `stc` counter, via `\adjuststc` (this command is defined in section 9.54 on page 328). Using `xsect` as first argument of `\contentsline` means that `\l@xsect` will be invoked in place of `\l@section` to print the entry in the TOC, but `\l@xsect` uses a huge depth (10000) for this entry, hence it will never be really printed (except if you cheat).

```
2943 \newcommand{\mtcaddsection}[1][{}]{%
2944   \mtc@ifmtarg{#1}{\addcontentsline{toc}{xsect}{}{}%
2945     {\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{#1}}}%
2946   \addcontentsline{lof}{xsect}{}{}%
2947   \addcontentsline{lot}{xsect}{}{}%
2948   \adjuststc}
```

This code terminates (temporarily) the section level commands, and we continue with chapter level macros.

```
2949 }}%
2950 {%
```

## 9.19 Chapter level macros

`\chapter` The chapter level macros are defined if `\chapter` is defined, i.e., in document classes like `book` or `report`. So we test if `\chapter` is defined, with adequate warnings. The test is already done above, we are in the “else” branch of `\@ifundefined{chapter}`.

```
2951 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0003>]{minitoc}{chapter level macros available\@gobble}
```



## 9.20 Patching the `\chapter` command

`\chapter` The `\chapter` command is defined (by the document class, usually). We patch its two branches, `\@chapter` (for the unstarred version) or `\@schapter` (for the starred version, `\chapter*`): we add call to `\stepcounter{mtc}` to increment the minitoc counter `mtc`. `\mtc@svchapter` `\chapter*`: we add call to `\stepcounter{mtc}` to increment the minitoc counter `mtc`. `\stepcounter` Only the unstarred branch (`\@chapter`) is patched here. The other branch is patched later (section 9.36 on page 287).

```
2952 \let\mtc@svchapter\@chapter
2953 \def\@chapter{\stepcounter{mtc}\mtc@svchapter}
```

## 9.21 Adding an entry in the TOC for a starred chapter

`\mtcaddchapter` To add an entry in the TOC for a starred chapter, we need the `\mtcaddchapter` macro, which has an optional argument, the title of the chapter as it should appear in the TOC. `\mtc@ifmtarg` By default, this argument is empty. If it is empty (tested via `\mtc@ifmtarg`) or omitted, `\contentsline` we add a `\contentsline{xchapter}{...}` line in the `.toc` file. If it is not empty, we add a `\contentsline{chapter}{title...}` line in the `.toc` file. We always add a `\l@xchapter` `\contentsline{xchapter}{...}` line in the `.lof` and `.lot` files. Then we increment the `mtc` counter, via `\adjustmtc` (defined in section 9.31 on page 274). Using `xchapter` as first argument of `\contentsline` means that `\l@xchapter` will be invoked in place of `\l@chapter` to print the entry in the TOC, but `\l@xchapter` uses a huge depth (10 000) for this entry, hence it will never be really printed (except if you cheat).

```
2954 \newcommand{\mtcaddchapter}[1][ ]{%
2955   \mtc@ifmtarg{#1}{\addcontentsline{toc}{xchapter}{}}{%
2956     \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{#1}}%
2957   \addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{}%
2958   \addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{}%
2959   \adjustmtc}
```

This code terminates (temporarily) the chapter level commands, i.e., terminates the `\@ifundefined{chapter}` at the beginning of section 9.15 on page 263.

```
2960 }%
```

## 9.22 Miscellaneous declarations

`\newread` The `\newread` command must be redeclared as being `\outer` (as Donald ARSENEAU told me). `\newtoks` We need a token register (`\mtc@toks`), a temporary string (`\mtc@string`), struts (two kinds, each one using a box containing an invisible vertical rule), a rule with all dimensions equal to zero (`\mtc@zrule`) and a command discouraging page breaks (`\mtc@BBR`, for “bad break”). `\mtc@toks` `\mtc@string` `\mtc@strut` `\mtc@strutbox` `\mtc@hstrut` `\mtc@hstrutbox` `\mtc@v` `\mtc@zrule` `\mtc@BBR`

Table 9.1: Hack to detect the limitation to short extensions

Phase (time runs from left to right):		1	2	3
OS with long extensions	<code>\jobname.mtc1</code>	TRUE	TRUE	*
	<code>\jobname.mtc</code>		FALSE	
OS with short extensions	<code>\jobname.mtc(1)</code>	TRUE	FALSE	*

For the struts, which are boxes containing an invisible vertical rule, we use “ex” units, to follow the current font.

```

2961 \def\newread{\alloc@6\read\chardef\sixt@@n}
2962 \newtoks\mtc@toks
2963 \def\mtc@string{\relax}
2964 \newbox\mtc@strutbox
2965 \setbox\mtc@strutbox=\hbox{\rule[1.8ex]{\z@}{2.5ex}}
2966 \def\mtc@strut{\relax\ifmmode\copy\mtc@strutbox
2967             \else\unhcopy\mtc@strutbox\fi}
2968 \newbox\mtc@hstrutbox
2969 \setbox\mtc@hstrutbox=\hbox{\rule[1.ex]{\z@}{1.ex}}
2970 \def\mtc@hstrut{\relax\ifmmode\copy\mtc@hstrutbox
2971             \else\unhcopy\mtc@hstrutbox\fi}
2972 \def\mtc@v{\leavevmode\mtc@strut}
2973 \def\mtc@zrule{\rule[\z@]{\z@}{\z@}}
2974 \def\mtc@BBR{\unpenalty\nopagebreak[4]}

```

## 9.23 Autoconfiguration of extensions

`\tf@mtc` This code is a hack to determine if the operating system is able or unable to use long extensions (> 3 characters) in file names. We define a file descriptor (`\tf@mtc`) to write files<sup>4</sup>. This code is verbose if long extensions cannot be used, else the messages are only written in the *document.log* file. The sequencing of these operations is vital. The table 9.1 shows this sequence. A star (\*) denotes which file is read in phase 3.

<sup>4</sup> It is the *only* new file descriptor created by the minitoc package. All files written by minitoc use this descriptor, or one of the standard descriptors, e.g., for the *document.log* file. In fact, minitoc writes also in the *.toc*, *.lof* and *.lot* files, but via file descriptors already used by standard commands like `\tableofcontents`, `\listoffigures` and `\listoftables`. We can conclude that minitoc itself uses only one file descriptor (or write stream). Some other attempts to make per chapter TOCs have failed by quickly leading to exhaustion of file descriptors (TeX offers only 16 file descriptors for writing), because they called the standard internal `\starttoc` macro, which invokes `\newwrite`, for each mini-table. As minitoc writes into only one file at a time (and in the *document.log* file, and in the standard contents files, of course), we can reuse the same file descriptor and avoid this serious problem (which was present in the original version of the package). The minitoc package writes in the contents files when it encounters a major sectioning command (`\part`, `\chapter`, or `\section`), if necessary. It writes into the mini-table auxiliary files only via the mini-table preparing commands (`\doparttoc`, ..., `\dosectlot`), once at a time. You do not need a new hammer for each nail.

```

\if@longextensions@ (0) First, a message and a new flag:
  \tf@mtc 2975 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0002>]{minitoc}%
\openout 2976 {Autoconfiguration of extensions\@gobble}
  \write 2977 \newif\if@longextensions@\@longextensions@false
\closeout
  \input (1) We write “\@longextensions@true” in \jobname.mtc1. But if the OS has short
\jobname extensions, the real name of the file will be truncated to \jobname.mtc.
  2978 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc1
  2979 \immediate\write\tf@mtc{\string\@longextensions@true}
  2980 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc

  (2) We write “\@longextensions@false” in \jobname.mtc.
  2981 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc
  2982 \immediate\write\tf@mtc{\string\@longextensions@false}
  2983 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc

  (3) We read \jobname.mtc1. But if the OS has short extensions, the real name of the file will
  be truncated to \jobname.mtc.
  2984 \input{\jobname.mtc1}

  (4) Hence, the flag is true if we read really from \jobname.mtc1, but false if we read from
  \jobname.mtc. The text and the severity of the messages are different.
  2985 \if@longextensions@
  2986 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0012>]{minitoc}%
  2987 {Long extensions (Unix-like) will be used\@gobble}
  2988 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0031>]{minitoc}%
  2989 {==> this version is configured for UNIX-like
  2990 \MessageBreak
  2991 \space\space\space\space(long extensions) file names\@gobble}%
  2992 \else
  2993 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0019>]{minitoc}%
  2994 {Short extensions (MSDOS-like) will be used
  2995 \MessageBreak
  2996 ==> this version is configured for MSDOS-like
  2997 \MessageBreak
  2998 \space\space\space\space(8+3) file names}
  2999 \fi

  (5) We erase the contents of the two files (because \jobname.mtc is also used later as
  a scratch file, see section 9.11 on page 260).
  3000 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc
  3001 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
  3002 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.mtc1
  3003 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc

```

## 9.24 Detecting obsolete versions of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X

\@inputcheck This code detects old versions of the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X kernel that are no more supported and with which  
\reset@font the minitoc package can hardly work. The trick is to detect the absence of some internal L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X



commands, `\@inputcheck` and `\reset@font`. If you get one of these messages, you are in bad luck and should *urgently* update your L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X installation, which is rusting since... many years!

```

3004 \@ifundefined{@inputcheck}%
3005   {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0021>]{minitoc}%
3006     {Your version of latex.tex is obsolete.
3007       \MessageBreak
3008       Trying to continue..}\newread\@inputcheck\relax}{}}
3009 \@ifundefined{reset@font}%
3010   {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0022>]{minitoc}%
3011     {Your version of latex.tex is very obsolete.
3012       \MessageBreak
3013       Trying to continue... crossing fingers}%
3014   \let\reset@font\relax}{}}

```

## 9.25 A macro to make a TOC entry without leaders nor page numbers

`\@undottedtocline` The (internal) macro `\@undottedtocline` is a modified version of the standard command `\@dottedtocline`. It will be used in customization macros.

```

\undottedmtcfalse
3015 \newif\ifundottedmtc\undottedmtcfalse
3016 \def\@undottedtocline#1#2#3#4#5{%
3017   \ifnum #1>\c@tocdepth\relax \else
3018     \vskip \z@ plus.2\p@
3019     {\leftskip #2\relax \rightskip \@tocrmarg \parfillskip -\rightskip
3020      \parindent #2\relax\@afterindenttrue
3021      \interlinepenalty\@M
3022      \leavevmode
3023      \@tempdima #3\relax \advance\leftskip \@tempdima \hbox{}}%
3024     \hskip -\leftskip
3025     #4\nobreak\hfill \nobreak
3026     \null\par}%
3027   \fi}

```

## 9.26 Default values for the page-number customizations

`\if@mtc@memoirLoaded@` This section defines some customization macros for the presence or absence of page numbers in the mini-tables. But if the memoir class [272, 273] is loaded, it does the job. So, we test first `\if@mtc@memoirLoaded@` to use the commands of memoir when they are available.

```
3028 \if@mtc@memoirLoaded@
```

```
\mtcpagenumbers For entries in minitocs:
\nomtcpagenumbers
```

```
3029 \def\mtcpagenumbers{%
3030   \cftpagenumberon{section}
3031   \cftpagenumberon{subsection}
3032   \cftpagenumberon{subsubsection}
3033   \cftpagenumberon{paragraph}
3034   \cftpagenumberon{subparagraph}}
3035 \def\nomtcpagenumbers{%
3036   \cftpagenumbersoff{section}
3037   \cftpagenumbersoff{subsection}
3038   \cftpagenumbersoff{subsubsection}
3039   \cftpagenumbersoff{paragraph}
3040   \cftpagenumbersoff{subparagraph}}
```

```
\stcpagenumbers For entries in secttocs:
\nostcpagenumbers
```

```
3041 \def\stcpagenumbers{%
3042   \cftpagenumberon{subsection}
3043   \cftpagenumberon{subsubsection}
3044   \cftpagenumberon{paragraph}
3045   \cftpagenumberon{subparagraph}}
3046 \def\nostcpagenumbers{%
3047   \cftpagenumbersoff{subsection}
3048   \cftpagenumbersoff{subsubsection}
3049   \cftpagenumbersoff{paragraph}
3050   \cftpagenumbersoff{subparagraph}}
```

```
\ptcpagenumbers For entries in parttocs:
\noptcpagenumbers
```

```
3051 \def\ptcpagenumbers{%
3052   \cftpagenumberon{chapter}
3053   \cftpagenumberon{section}
3054   \cftpagenumberon{subsection}
3055   \cftpagenumberon{subsubsection}
3056   \cftpagenumberon{paragraph}
3057   \cftpagenumberon{subparagraph}}
3058 \def\noptcpagenumbers{%
3059   \cftpagenumbersoff{chapter}
3060   \cftpagenumbersoff{section}
3061   \cftpagenumbersoff{subsection}
3062   \cftpagenumbersoff{subsubsection}
3063   \cftpagenumbersoff{paragraph}
3064   \cftpagenumbersoff{subparagraph}}
```

```

\mlfpagenumbers For entries in minilofs, sectlofs, and partlofs:
\nomlfpagenumbers
\slfpagenumbers 3065 \def\mlfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberon{figure}}
\noslfpagenumbers 3066 \def\nomlfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{figure}}
\plfpagenumbers 3067 \def\slfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberon{figure}}
\noplfpagenumbers 3068 \def\noslfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{figure}}
3069 \def\plfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberon{figure}}
3070 \def\noplfpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{figure}}

```

```

\mltpagenumbers For entries in minilots, sectlots, and partlots:
\nomltpagenumbers
\sltpagenumbers 3071 \def\mltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberon{table}}
\nosltpagenumbers 3072 \def\nomltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{table}}
\pltpagenumbers 3073 \def\sltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberon{table}}
\nopltpagenumbers 3074 \def\nosltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{table}}
3075 \def\pltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumberon{table}}
3076 \def\nopltpagenumbers{\cftpagenumbersoff{table}}

```

Else, minitoc will use its own commands.

```
3077 \else
```

```

\mtcpagenumbers First, for minitocs, secttocs and parttocs:
\nomtcpagenumbers
\mlfpagenumbers 3078 \def\mtcpagenumbers{\let\mtc@pgno\relax}
\nomlfpagenumbers 3079 \def\nomtcpagenumbers{\let\mtc@pgno\relax}
\mltpagenumbers 3080 \def\stcpagenumbers{\let\stc@pgno\relax}
\nomltpagenumbers 3081 \def\nostcpagenumbers{\let\stc@pgno\relax}
3082 \def\ptcpagenumbers{\let\ptc@pgno\relax}
3083 \def\noptcpagenumbers{\let\ptc@pgno\relax}

```

```

\mlfpagenumbers Then, for minilofs, sectlofs and partlofs:
\nomlfpagenumbers
\mlfpagenumbers 3084 \def\mlfpagenumbers{\let\mlf@pgno\relax}
\nomlfpagenumbers 3085 \def\nomlfpagenumbers{\let\mlf@pgno\relax}
\mltpagenumbers 3086 \def\slfpagenumbers{\let\slf@pgno\relax}
\nomltpagenumbers 3087 \def\noslfpagenumbers{\let\slf@pgno\relax}
3088 \def\plfpagenumbers{\let\plf@pgno\relax}
3089 \def\noplfpagenumbers{\let\plf@pgno\relax}

```

```

\mltpagenumbers Then, for minilots, sectlots and partlots:
\nomltpagenumbers
\mltpagenumbers 3090 \def\mltpagenumbers{\let\mlt@pgno\relax}
\nomltpagenumbers 3091 \def\nomltpagenumbers{\let\mlt@pgno\relax}
\mltpagenumbers 3092 \def\sltpagenumbers{\let\slt@pgno\relax}
\nomltpagenumbers

```

```

3093 \def\nosltpagenumbers{\let\slt@pgno\relax}
3094 \def\pltpagenumbers{\let\plt@pgno\relax}
3095 \def\nopltpagenumbers{\let\plt@pgno\relax}
3096 \fi

```

`\ptcpagenumbers` Then the default values are set; page numbers are present:

```

\plfpagenumbers
\pltpagenumbers 3097 \ptcpagenumbers
\mtcpagenumbers 3098 \plfpagenumbers
\mlfpagenumbers 3099 \pltpagenumbers
\mltpagenumbers 3100 \mtcpagenumbers
\stcpagenumbers 3101 \mlfpagenumbers
\slfpagenumbers 3102 \mltpagenumbers
\sltpagenumbers 3103 \stcpagenumbers
3104 \slfpagenumbers
3105 \sltpagenumbers

```

## 9.27 “Features” for the mini-tables

Each kind of mini-table has three “features”: a “before” feature, an “after” feature and a “thispagestyle” feature.

A “before” feature is defined by a macro like `\beforeparttoc` which contains code to be executed before any mini-table of a given type: `\beforeparttoc` is executed before each `parttoc`. Usually such features contains only trivial commands like `\clear[double]page`, or `\empty`.

An “after” feature is analog but its code is executed after each mini-table of a given type.

A “thispagestyle” feature is defined by a macro like `\thispageparttocstyle` which contains code to define the page style implied by mini-tables of a given type: the command `\thispageparttocstyle` can be defined as `\thispagestyle{...}`. Usually, the “thispagestyle” feature is only defined for part-level mini-tables, which use page breaks in their before and after features. For chapter- and section-level mini-tables, the “thispagestyle” feature is usually defined as `\empty`.

We set the default values for the part-level features depending on the presence of the `\chapter` command, as article-like documents are different from the book- or report-like documents for the layout of part-level mini-tables.

```

\chapter If \chapter is not defined, the part level mini-tables have no “before” feature (by default):
\beforeparttoc
\beforepartlof 3106 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
\beforepartlot 3107 \let\beforeparttoc\empty
3108 \let\beforepartlof\empty
3109 \let\beforepartlot\empty}%

```

`\cleardoublepage` But if `\chapter` is defined, they have a `\cleardoublepage` as default “before” feature:

```
3110    {\let\beforeparttoc\cleardoublepage
3111     \let\beforepartlof\cleardoublepage
3112     \let\beforepartlot\cleardoublepage}
```

`\beforeinitoc` Chapter level mini-tables have no “before” feature (by default):

```
\beforeminilof
\beforeminilot 3113 \let\beforeinitoc\empty
3114 \let\beforeminilof\empty
3115 \let\beforeminilot\empty
```

`\beforesecttoc` Section level mini-tables have no “before” feature (by default):

```
\beforesectlof
\beforesectlot 3116 \let\beforesecttoc\empty
3117 \let\beforesectlof\empty
3118 \let\beforesectlot\empty
```

`\chapter` If `\chapter` is not defined, the part level mini-tables have no “after” feature (by default):

```
\afterparttoc
\afterpartlof 3119 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
\afterpartlot 3120 \let\afterparttoc\empty
3121 \let\afterpartlof\empty
3122 \let\afterpartlot\empty}%
```

`\cleardoublepage` But if `\chapter` is defined, they have a `\cleardoublepage` as default “after” feature:

```
3123    {\let\afterparttoc\cleardoublepage
3124     \let\afterpartlof\cleardoublepage
3125     \let\afterpartlot\cleardoublepage}
```

`\afterinitoc` Chapter level mini-tables have no “after” feature (by default):

```
\afterminilof
\afterminilot 3126 \let\afterinitoc\empty
3127 \let\afterminilof\empty
3128 \let\afterminilot\empty
```

`\aftersecttoc` Section level mini-tables have no “after” feature (by default):

```
\aftersectlof
\aftersectlot 3129 \let\aftersecttoc\empty
3130 \let\aftersectlof\empty
3131 \let\aftersectlot\empty
```



`\thispagestyle` By default, all the “thispagestyle” features (at part level) use the empty page style. It affects only the first page of the mini-table. If `\chapter` is not defined, there is no default “thispagestyle” features at the part level.

`\thispageparttocstyle`

`\thispagepartlofsty`

`\thispagepartlotstyle`

```

\thispageminitocstyle 3132 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
\thispageminilofstyle 3133 \def\thispageparttocstyle{\empty}
\thispageminilotstyle 3134 \def\thispagepartlofsty{\empty}
\thispagesecttocstyle 3135 \def\thispagepartlotstyle{\empty}}%
\thispagesectlofsty 3136 {\def\thispageparttocstyle{\thispagestyle{empty}}
\thispagesectlotstyle 3137 \def\thispagepartlofsty{\thispagestyle{empty}}
3138 \def\thispagepartlotstyle{\thispagestyle{empty}}}
3139 \def\thispageminitocstyle{\empty}
3140 \def\thispageminilofstyle{\empty}
3141 \def\thispageminilotstyle{\empty}
3142 \def\thispagesecttocstyle{\empty}
3143 \def\thispagesectlofsty{\empty}
3144 \def\thispagesectlotstyle{\empty}

```

`\mtcsetfeature` In section 9.66.8 on page 369, we will define the `\mtcsetfeature` macro which is much easier user interface to set the mini-tables “features”.

## 9.28 Fake tables of contents

`\faketableofcontents` If you don’t want a table of contents, but want minitocs, you need to create the .toc file, without inserting it into your document. This `\faketableofcontents` command is a stripped off version of the standard command `\tableofcontents`. We define in the same way the analog commands `\fakelistoffigures` and `\fakelistoftables`, using in fact just a stripped version `\fake@starttoc` of `\@starttoc`. But it is nice to reset to zero the ptc, mtc, and stc counters now, if they are defined<sup>5</sup>.

```

3145 \def\faketableofcontents{\fake@starttoc{toc}%
3146   \@ifundefined{c@ptc}{\setcounter{ptc}{0}}%
3147   \@ifundefined{c@mtc}{\setcounter{mtc}{0}}%
3148   \@ifundefined{c@stc}{\setcounter{stc}{0}}%
3149   }
3150 \def\fakelistoffigures{\fake@starttoc{lof}}
3151 \def\fakelistoftables{\fake@starttoc{lot}}
3152 \def\fake@starttoc#1{\begingroup
3153   \makeatletter
3154   \if@filesw \expandafter\newwrite\csname tf@#1\endcsname
3155     \immediate\openout \csname tf@#1\endcsname
3156     \jobname.#1\relax
3157   \fi
3158   \global\@nobeckfalse \endgroup}

```

This code uses the same file descriptors (for writing) than the original commands.

<sup>5</sup> Remember the infamous “stc0” bug.

## 9.29 Depth counters for minilofs and minilots

`\AtBeginDocument` If the counters `lofdepth` and `lotdepth` are defined, we create the necessary new counters:  
`\c@lofdepth` `minilofdepth` and `minilofdepth`. These counters are initialized to 2. This is done after the  
`\c@lotdepth` loading of the packages, in an `\AtBeginDocument` block:

```
3159 \AtBeginDocument{%
3160   \@ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{}%
3161   {\newcounter{minilofdepth}\setcounter{minilofdepth}{2}}%
3162   \@ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{}%
3163   {\newcounter{minilotdepth}\setcounter{minilotdepth}{2}}%
3164 }
```

## 9.30 Chapter level commands

From here, we define the chapter-level commands.

`\mtc@markboth` First, we memorize the marks (not used today, but...):  
`\@mkboth`

```
3165 \global\let\mtc@markboth\markboth
3166 \global\let\@mkboth\markboth
```

## 9.31 Starred parts, chapters or sections

`\addst@rred` We define commands to manage the starred sectioning commands: `\part*`, `\chapter*` and  
`\addcontentsline` `\section*`. The section-level is different depending if `\chapter` is defined or not. Eventu-  
`\stepcounter` ally, a counter is incremented. A contents line is added in the `.toc` file, with the right depth to  
`\c@ptc` print it (see `\l@star...` later, in section 9.64 on page 350).  
`\c@mtc`

```
\c@stc 3167 \def\addst@rred#1#2{%
3168   \addcontentsline{toc}{star#1}{#2}%
3169   \@ifundefined{c@ptc}{}%
3170   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\part\relax
3171     \stepcounter{ptc}%
3172   \fi
3173 }%
3174 \@ifundefined{c@mtc}{}%
3175   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter\relax
3176     \stepcounter{mtc}%
3177   \fi
3178 }%
3179 \@ifundefined{c@stc}{}%
3180   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section\relax
```

```

3181 %%      \@ifundefined{chapter}{\stepcounter{stc}}{}%
3182      \stepcounter{stc}%
3183      \fi
3184  }%
3185 }%

```

`\addstarredsection` If `\chapter` is not defined, we just define `\addstarredsection`:

```

\chapter
\addst@rred 3186 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
3187 \gdef\addstarredsection#1{\addst@rred{section}{#1}}
3188 }%

```

Else we begin to define the stuff for chapter-level commands (the “else” branch of `\@ifundefined{chapter}`):

```

3189 {%

```

```

\The@mtc We define now: the internal format of the mtc counter (\The@mtc), the obsolete command
\firstchapteris \firstchapteris (it just emits a harmless warning), the mtc counter (initialized to 0), the
\if@firstchapteris@used@ \adjustmtc command (increments the mtc counter, by 1 by default), the \decrementmtc
\adjustmtc command (decrements the mtc counter by 1), the \incrementmtc command (increments the
\decrementmtc mtc counter by 1), the format of the mtc counter (\themtc), the counter minitocdepth,
\incrementmtc initialized to 2, for the depth of a minitoc (analog to the standard tocdepth counter).
\themtc
\columnwidth
\mtc@rule We define the horizontal rules to draw before and after minitocs (\mtc@rule), and we copy
\mlf@rule that definition into analog macros for other kinds of mini-tables. We also set the default value
\mlt@rule (24pt) of \mtcindent, the indentation for minitocs (both sides). The rules are 0.4pt thick.
\plf@rule They are defined via \hrule to stay in vertical mode for the final \kern.
\plt@rule
\slf@rule 3190 \def\The@mtc{\arabic{mtc}}
\slt@rule 3191 \def\firstchapteris#1%
\mtcindent 3192 {\mtcPackageWarning[<W0003>]{minitoc}%
3193 {\string\firstchapteris \space is an obsolete
3194 \MessageBreak
3195 command}%
3196 \@firstchapteris@used@true}
3197 \newcounter{mtc}
3198 \setcounter{mtc}{0}
3199 \newcommand{\adjustmtc}[1][1]{\addtocounter{mtc}{#1}}
3200 \def\decrementmtc{\addtocounter{mtc}{-1}}
3201 \def\incrementmtc{\addtocounter{mtc}{+1}}
3202 \gdef\themtc{\arabic{mtc}}
3203 \newcounter{minitocdepth}
3204 \setcounter{minitocdepth}{2}
3205 \def\mtc@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule \@width\columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}
3206 \let\mlf@rule\mtc@rule
3207 \let\mlt@rule\mtc@rule

```

```

3208 \let\plf@rule\mtc@rule
3209 \let\plt@rule\mtc@rule
3210 \let\slf@rule\mtc@rule
3211 \let\slt@rule\mtc@rule
3212 \mtcindent=24\p@

```

### 9.32 Font commands for the mini-tables

`\mtcfont` We define these commands with full NFSS [176] descriptions. These definitions are effective if `\chapter` is defined. The fonts for titles are also defined here. See also the `\mtcsetfont` macro (section 9.66.2 on page 353) and the `\mtcsetttitlefont` macro later (section 9.66.3 on page 358).

```

\mtcSSfont
\mtcSSSfont
\mtcPfont
\mtcSPfont 3213 \def\mtcfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}
\mlffont 3214 \def\mtcSfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}
\mlfSfont 3215 \let\mtcSSfont\mtcfont
\mltfont 3216 \let\mtcSSSfont\mtcfont
\mltSfont 3217 \let\mtcPfont\mtcfont
\mtifont 3218 \let\mtcSPfont\mtcfont
3219 \let\mlffont\mtcfont
3220 \let\mlfSfont\mtcfont
3221 \let\mltfont\mtcfont
3222 \let\mltSfont\mtcfont
3223 \def\mtifont{\large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}

```

`\coffeeont` And `\coffeeont` is used for “coffee breaks ☕” in the minutes package [181].

```

3224 \def\coffeeont{\small\rmfamily\slshape\mdseries}

```

### 9.33 Internal commands to position the mini-table titles

`\df@mtitc` The commands `\miniXXX` and `\dominiXXX` accept an optional argument to left justify, center, right justify or omit the title of the chapter-level mini-tables. By default, these titles are left justified. The choice made in a `\dominiXXX` command is global and memorized in `\df@mtitc`, `\df@mtilf` or `\df@mtilt`; the choice made in a `\miniXXX` command is local and stored in `\do@mtitc`, `\do@mtilf` or `\do@mtilt`. See the `\minitoc@` macro later (section 9.35.1 on page 278). An empty title needs a vertical correction (Frank MITTELBACH).

```

\c@mti   Centering, flushleft, flushright or empty titles:
\l@mti
\r@mti   3225 \def\c@mti#1{\null\hfill #1\hfill\null}
\e@mti   3226 \def\l@mti#1{\null #1\hfill\null}
\n@mti   3227 \def\r@mti#1{\null\hfill #1\null}
          3228 \def\e@mti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}
          3229 \def\n@mti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}

```

```

\l@mti   Default: titles on left:
\do@mtitc
\df@mtitc 3230 \let\do@mtitc\l@mti
\do@mtilf 3231 \let\df@mtitc\l@mti
\df@mtilf 3232 \let\do@mtilf\l@mti
\do@mtilt 3233 \let\df@mtilf\l@mti
\df@mtilt 3234 \let\do@mtilt\l@mti
          3235 \let\df@mtilt\l@mti

```

### 9.34 The mtc@verse environment

mtc@verse Each minitoc is placed inside a mtc@verse environment. This environment is analog to the standard verse environment and hence defined via two commands: \mtc@verse and \endmtc@verse. As it is a list environment, we first define (in a local way) \, then call \list{} and set some dimensions like \itemsep, \itemindent, \listparindent, \topsep. \parsep is set to zero if the tight option is active (to reduce the spacing of the lines). \parskip is set to zero if the k-tight option is active (to reduce the spacing of the lines). Both margins are set to \mtcindent. \endmtc@verse terminates the list and discourages a page break.

```

\topsep
\parsep 3236 \def\mtc@verse{\let\=\@centercr
\mtcindent 3237 \list{}\itemsep\z@
          3238 \itemindent \z@
          3239 \listparindent \itemindent
          3240 \partopsep\z@
          3241 \iftightmtc \parsep\z@ \fi
          3242 \ifktightmtc \parskip\z@ \fi
          3243 \topsep=1ex
          3244 \leftmargin\mtcindent
          3245 \rightmargin\leftmargin\item[]
          3246 \def\endmtc@verse{\nopagebreak[4]\endlist}

```

### 9.35 The \minitoc, \minilof, and \minilot commands

These three commands are very similar, with only cosmetic differences.

### 9.35.1 The `\minitoc` command

`\minitoc`    The `\minitoc` command must be used after `\chapter` if you need a minitoc (no automatic `\chapter` minitoc).

`\dominitoc`    This command accepts an optional argument, whose default value has eventually been set earlier by a `\dominitoc` command. The letter “d” represents this default value. `\dominitoc` has itself an optional argument which sets the default value of the optional argument of `\minitoc`. The default value of the optional argument of the `\dominitoc` command is “1”. It seems tortuous, but it is simple to use: we have a default behaviour (1) which can be altered globally via the optional argument of `\dominitoc`, or locally via the optional argument of `\minitoc`.

`\minitoc`    So we define `\minitoc` with an optional argument and its (current) default value, and call `\minitoc@` the true code in the `\minitoc@` macro (which has one delimited argument); we use the `\@ifnextchar` `\@ifnextchar` trick to detect a left bracket for the optional argument:

```
3247 \def\minitoc{\@ifnextchar[{\minitoc@}{\minitoc@d}}
```

The real code of `\minitoc` is in `\minitoc@`, which has a mandatory argument (delimited by brackets) specifying the position of the title.

`\if@minitoc@used@`    First, we set the global flag `\@minitoc@used@true` to note that `\minitoc` has been called (this will be used by a hint later, section 9.78.2.2 on page 397).

```
3248 \def\minitoc@[#1]{%
3249 \global\@minitoc@used@true
```

`\@tocfile`    The name of the file containing the minitoc is constructed from `\jobname` and a suffix `\if@longextensions` `\@tocfile`, which is .mtc (long extensions) or .M (short extensions) followed by the absolute number of the minitoc.

```
3250 \if@longextensions@
3251 \def\@tocfile{mtc\The@mtc}%
3252 \else
3253 \def\@tocfile{M\The@mtc}%
3254 \fi
```

`\mtc@CkFile`    Then we test (via `\mtc@CkFile`) the emptiness of this file. A warning is given if the file is `\if@mtc@FE` empty and a flag is set (a hint will signal that an empty minitoc has been requested). `\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@`

```
3255        \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
3256        \if@mtc@FE
```

```

3257      \mtcPackageInfo[<I0006>]{minitoc}%
3258      {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
3259      \@mtc@empty@minitoc@true
3260      \else

```

`\thispagemininitocstyle` We call `\thispagemininitocstyle` to set the page style (by default, this does nothing because, by default, there is no page break before a minitoc). The marks are not treated, because usually there is no new page for a minitoc.

```

3261      \thispagemininitocstyle
3262 %%      \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\mtctitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\mtctitle}}%

```

`\beforeminitoc` We call `\beforeminitoc`, then begin a `samepage` environment (to try to discourage page breaks in a minitoc) and look at the position of the title. If the title is empty, the layout is corrected. We print the title with its font (`\mtifont`), then the top rule of the minitoc (if rules are present), using a `tabular` environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule). The font is set to `\mtcfont`.

```

\l@mti 3263      \beforeminitoc
\r@mti 3264      \relax\begin{samepage}%
\df@mtic 3265      \if #1e\let\do@mtitc\e@mti
\mtc@CkStr 3266      \else\if #1n\let\do@mtitc\n@mti
\mtctitle 3267      \else\if #1c\let\do@mtitc\c@mti
\if@mtc@FE 3268      \else\if #1l\let\do@mtitc\l@mti
\mtcfont 3269      \else\if #1r\let\do@mtitc\r@mti
\mtifont 3270      \else\if #1d\let\do@mtitc\df@mtitc
\mtc@rule 3271      \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
\columnwidth 3272      \mtc@CkStr{\mtctitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@mtitc\e@mti\relax\fi
3273      \raggedright
3274      \parskip=\z@%
3275      \reset@font\mtcfont%
3276      \parindent=\z@%
3277      \nopagebreak[4]%
3278      \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
3279      \par\noindent %
3280      \ifx\mtc@rule\relax
3281      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
3282      \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtitc{\mtc@v\mtctitle}\\
3283      \end{tabular}%
3284      \else
3285      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
3286      \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtitc{\mtc@v\mtctitle}\\ \hline
3287      \end{tabular}%
3288      \fi

```

`\mtc@zrule` We forbid a page break after the title and the top rule, then set some layout parameters and  
`\mtc@BBR` begin an `mtc@verse` environment:

`\mtcindent`

```
mtc@verse 3289      \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
          3290      \leftmargin\mtcindent
          3291      \rightmargin\mtcindent
          3292      \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
          3293      \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
          3294      \begin{mtc@verse}%
```

`\c@tocdepth` We force the effective depth of the mini-table (`\c@tocdepth`) to the required depth  
`\c@minitocdepth` (`\c@minitocdepth`), so the printing is done inside the `mtc@verse` environment, where  
`\` `tocdepth` has been forced to `minitocdepth`, to print only the entries whose level is low  
`\mtc@BBR` enough, then inhibit a page break. The blank line is necessary to avoid a parasite negative  
indentation.

```
3295      \c@tocdepth=\c@minitocdepth
3296      \leavevmode\\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip
```

`\mtc@pgno` We test the presence of leaders and page numbers, then print the minitoc by inputting the  
`\@dottedtocline` minitoc file. But before reading the minitoc file, we must call the hook macro (asked for  
`\@undottedtocline` by Donald ARSENEAU for his `notoccite` package [8]) `\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` and the  
`\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` macro `\mtc@setform` which adjusts some layout parameters (defined by the user via some  
`\mtc@setform` `\mtcsetformat` commands). We work in a group to keep local some macro redefinitions.

`\mtcsetformat`

```
\mtc@strut 3297 \beginngroup
          3298   \makeatletter
          3299   \@ifundefined{mtc@pgno}%
          3300   {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
          3301   \@filesfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
          3302   \mtc@setform%
          3303   \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}
          3304   \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-.5\baselineskip}
          3305   \leavevmode\mtc@strut
          3306   \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup
```

`mtc@verse` We close the `mtc@verse` environment, add the bottomrule (while preventing a page break),  
`\mtc@bottom@rule` then close the `samepage` environment, and call `\afterminitoc`. The blank line (`\`) is  
`\` essential.

`samepage`

```
\afterminitoc 3307      \end{mtc@verse}%
          3308      \kernafterminitoc
          3309      \nopagebreak[4]\mtc@bottom@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
          3310      \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule
          3311      \end{samepage}%
          3312      \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\afterminitoc\fi}
```



`\mtc@bottom@rule` And we define the bottom rule for a minitoc, with some space under the minitoc:

```

\mtc@rule
\columnwidth 3313 \def\mtc@bottom@rule{%
3314   \ifx\mtc@rule\relax\relax\else
3315     \vskip -2.5ex
3316     \rule[2.4\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}\fi}

```

### 9.35.2 The `\minilof` command

`\minilof` The `\minilof` command is very similar to the `\minitoc` command.

`\minilof` The `\minilof` command must be used after `\chapter` if you need a minilof (no automatic `\chapter` minilof).

`\dominilof` This command accepts an optional argument, whose default value has eventually been set earlier by a `\dominilof` command. The letter “d” represents this default value. `\dominilof` has itself an optional argument which sets the default value of the optional argument of `\minilof`. The default value of the optional argument of the `\dominilof` command is “1”. It seems tortuous, but it is simple to use: we have a default behaviour (1) which can be altered globally via the optional argument of `\dominilof`, or locally via the optional argument of `\minilof`.

`\minilof` So we define `\minilof` with an optional argument and its (current) default value, and call `\minilof@` the true code in the `\minilof@` macro (which has one delimited argument); we use the `\@ifnextchar` trick to detect a left bracket for the optional argument:

```
3317 \def\minilof{\@ifnextchar[{\minilof@}{\minilof@d}}
```

The real code of `\minilof` is in `\minilof@`, which has a mandatory argument (delimited by brackets) specifying the position of the title.

`\if@minilof@used@` First, we set the global flag `\@minilof@used@true` to note that `\minilof` has been called (this will be used by a hint later, section 9.78.2.2 on page 397).

```

3318 \def\minilof@[#1]{%
3319 \global\@minilof@used@true

```

`\@tocfile` The name of the file containing the minilof is constructed from `\jobname` and a suffix `\if@longextensions@` `\@tocfile`, which is `.mlf` (long extensions) or `.F` (short extensions) followed by the absolute number of the minilof.

```

3320 \if@longextensions@%
3321 \def\tocfile{mlf\The@mtc}%
3322 \else
3323 \def\tocfile{F\The@mtc}%
3324 \fi

```

\mtc@CkFile Then we test (via \mtc@CkFile) the emptiness of this file. A warning is given if the file is empty and a flag is set (a hint will signal that an empty minilof has been requested).

\if@mtc@FE

\if@mtc@empty@minilof@

```

3325 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
3326 \if@mtc@FE
3327 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0006>]{minitoc}%
3328 {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
3329 \@mtc@empty@minilof@true
3330 \else

```

\thispageminilofstyle We call \thispageminilofstyle to set the page style (by default, this does nothing because, by default, there is no page break before a minilof). The marks are not treated, because usually there is no new page for a minilof.

```

3331 \thispageminilofstyle
3332 % \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\mlftitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\mlftitle}}%

```

\beforeminilof We call \beforeminilof, then begin a samepage environment (to try to discourage page breaks in a minilof) and look at the position of the title. If the title is empty, the layout is corrected. We print the title with its font (\mtifont), then the top rule of the minilof (if rules are present), using a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule). The font is set to \mlffont.

```

\l@mti 3333 \beforeminilof
\r@mti 3334 \relax\begin{samepage}%
\df@mtic 3335 \if #1e\let\do@mtilf\e@mti
\mtc@CkStr 3336 \else\if #1n\let\do@mtilf\n@mti
\mtctitle 3337 \else\if #1c\let\do@mtilf\c@mti
\if@mtc@FE 3338 \else\if #1l\let\do@mtilf\l@mti
\mlffont 3339 \else\if #1r\let\do@mtilf\r@mti
\mtifont 3340 \else\if #1d\let\do@mtilf\df@mtilf
\mlf@rule 3341 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
\columnwidth 3342 \mtc@CkStr{\mlftitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@mtilf\e@mti\relax\fi
tabular 3343 \raggedright
3344 \parskip=\z@
3345 \reset@font\mlffont
3346 \parindent=\z@
3347 \nopagebreak[4]%
3348 \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
3349 \par\noindent
3350 \ifx\mlf@rule\relax
3351 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}

```

```

3352      \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtilf{\mtc@v\mlftitle}\\
3353      \end{tabular}%
3354      \else
3355      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
3356      \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtilf{\mtc@v\mlftitle}\\ \hline
3357      \end{tabular}%
3358      \fi

```

\mtc@zrule We forbid a page break after the title and the top rule, then set some layout parameters and  
 \mtc@BBR begin an mtc@verse environment:

\mtcindent

```

mtc@verse 3359      \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\ \mtc@BBR
3360      \leftmargin\mtcindent
3361      \rightmargin\mtcindent
3362      \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
3363      \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
3364      \begin{mtc@verse}%

```

\c@lofdepth We force the effective depth of the mini-table (\c@tocdepth) to the required depth  
 \c@minilofdepth (\c@minilofdepth), so the printing is done inside the mtc@verse environment, where  
 \\\ tocdepth has been forced to minilofdepth, to print only the entries whose level is low  
 \mtc@BBR enough, then inhibit a page break. The blank line is necessary to avoid a parasite negative  
 indentation.

```

3365      \@ifundefined{c@lofdepth}%
3366      {}%
3367      {\c@lofdepth=\c@minilofdepth
3368      \ifnum\c@lofdepth<1\relax\c@lofdepth=1\fi}
3369      \leavevmode\\ \mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip

```

\mtc@pgno We test the presence of leaders and page numbers, then print the minilof by inputting the  
 \@dottedtocline minilof file. But before reading the minilof file, we must call the hook macro (asked for  
 \@undottedtocline by Donald ARSENEAU for his notoccite package [8]) \mtc@hook@beforeinputfile and the  
 \mtc@hook@beforeinputfile macro \mlf@setform which adjusts some layout parameters (defined by the user via some  
 \mlf@setform \mtcsetformat commands). We work in a group to keep local some macro redefinitions.

\mtcsetformat

```

\mtc@strut 3370 \begin{group}
3371      \makeatletter
3372      \@ifundefined{mlf@pgno}%
3373      {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{%
3374      \@filesfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
3375      \mlf@setform
3376      \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}
3377      \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-\baselineskip}
3378      \leavevmode\mtc@strut
3379      \global\@nbreakfalse\end{group}

```

```

mtc@verse We close the mtc@verse environment, add the bottomrule (while preventing a page break),
\mtc@bottom@rule then close the samepage environment, and call \afterminilof. The blank line (\) is
\ essential.
samepage
\afterminilof 3380 \end{mtc@verse}%
3381 \kernafterminilof
3382 \nopagebreak[4]\mlf@rule\null\leavevmode\%
3383 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
3384 \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\afterminilof\fi}%

```

### 9.35.3 The `\minilot` command

`\minilot` The `\minilot` command is absolutely similar to the `\minilof` command:

`\minilot` The `\minilot` command must be used after `\chapter` if you need a minilot (no automatic  
`\chapter` minilot).

`\dominilot` This command accepts an optional argument, whose default value has eventually been set ear-  
`\minilot` lier by a `\dominilot` command. The letter “d” represents this default value. `\dominilot` has  
itself an optional argument which sets the default value of the optional argument of `\minilot`.  
The default value of the optional argument of the `\dominilot` command is “1”. It seems tor-  
tuous, but it is simple to use: we have a default behaviour (1) which can be altered globally via  
the optional argument of `\dominilot`, or locally via the optional argument of `\minilot`.

`\minilot` So we define `\minilot` with an optional argument and its (current) default value, and call  
`\minilot@` the true code in the `\minilot@` macro (which has one delimited argument); we use the  
`\ifnextchar` `\ifnextchar` trick to detect a left bracket for the optional argument:

```
3385 \def\minilot{\ifnextchar[{\minilot@}{\minilot@d}}
```

The real code of `\minilot` is in `\minilot@`, which has a mandatory argument (delimited by  
brackets) specifying the position of the title.

`\if@minilot@used@` First, we set the global flag `\@minilot@used@true` to note that `\minilot` has been called  
(this will be used by a hint later, section 9.78.2.2 on page 397).

```

3386 \def\minilot@[#1]{%
3387 \global\@minilot@used@true

```

`\@tocfile` The name of the file containing the minilot is constructed from `\jobname` and a suffix  
`\if@longextensions@` `\@tocfile`, which is `.mlt` (long extensions) or `.T` (short extensions) followed by the absolute  
number of the minilot.

```
3388 \if@longextensions@%
3389 \def\@tocfile{mlt\The@mtc}%
3390 \else
3391 \def\@tocfile{T\The@mtc}%
3392 \fi
```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then we test (via `\mtc@CkFile`) the emptiness of this file. A warning is given if the file is  
`\if@mtc@FE` empty and a flag is set (a hint will signal that an empty minilot has been requested).  
`\if@mtc@empty@minilot@`

```
3393 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
3394 \if@mtc@FE
3395 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0006>]{minitoc}%
3396 {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}%
3397 \@mtc@empty@minilot@true
3398 \else
```

`\thispageminilotstyle` We call `\thispageminilotstyle` to set the page style (by default, this does nothing because,  
by default, there is no page break before a minilot). The marks are not treated, because usually  
there is no new page for a minilot.

```
3399 \thispageminilotstyle
3400 %% \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\mlttitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\mlttitle}}%
```

`\beforeminilot` We call `\beforeminilot`, then begin a `samepage` environment (to try to discourage page  
`samepage` breaks in a minilot) and look at the position of the title. If the title is empty, the layout is  
`\do@mtitc` corrected. We print the title with its font (`\mtifont`), then the top rule of the minilot (if rules  
`\e@mti` are present), using a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the  
`\n@mti` top rule). The font is set to `\mltfont`.

```
\c@mti
\l@mti 3401 \beforeminilot
\r@mti 3402 \relax\begin{samepage}%
\df@mtic 3403 \if #1e\let\do@mtilt\e@mti
\mtc@CkStr 3404 \else\if #1n\let\do@mtilt\n@mti
\mtctitle 3405 \else\if #1c\let\do@mtilt\c@mti
\if@mtc@FE 3406 \else\if #1l\let\do@mtilt\l@mti
\mltfont 3407 \else\if #1r\let\do@mtilt\r@mti
\mtifont 3408 \else\if #1d\let\do@mtilt\df@mtilt
\mlt@rule 3409 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
\columnwidth 3410 \mtc@CkStr{\mlttitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@mtilt\e@mti\relax\fi
tabular 3411 \raggedright
3412 \parskip=\z@%
3413 \reset@font\mltfont%
3414 \parindent=\z@%
```

```

3415      \nopagebreak[4]%
3416      \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
3417      \par\noindent
3418      \ifx\mlt@rule\relax
3419      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
3420      \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtilt{\mtc@v\mltttitle}\\
3421      \end{tabular}%
3422      \else
3423      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
3424      \reset@font\mtifont\do@mtilt{\mtc@v\mltttitle}\\\hline
3425      \end{tabular}%
3426      \fi

```

\mtc@zrule We forbid a page break after the title and the top rule, then set some layout parameters and  
 \mtc@BBR begin an mtc@verse environment:

```

\mtcindent
mtc@verse 3427      \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
3428      \leftmargin\mtcindent
3429      \rightmargin\mtcindent
3430      \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
3431      \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
3432      \begin{mtc@verse}%

```

\c@lotdepth We force the effective depth of the mini-table (\c@lotdepth) to the required depth  
 \c@minilotdepth (\c@minilotdepth), so the printing is done inside the mtc@verse environment, where  
 \\\ lotdepth has been forced to minilotdepth, to print only the entries whose level is low  
 \mtc@BBR enough, then inhibit a page break. The blank line is necessary to avoid a parasite negative  
 indentation.

```

3433      \@ifundefined{c@lotdepth}%
3434      {}%
3435      {\c@lotdepth=\c@minilotdepth
3436      \ifnum\c@lotdepth<1\relax\c@lotdepth=1\fi}
3437      \leavevmode\\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip

```

\mtc@pgno We test the presence of leaders and page numbers, then print the minilot by inputting the  
 \@dottedtocline minilot file. But before reading the minilot file, we must call the hook macro (asked for  
 \@undottedtocline by Donald ARSENEAU for his notocite package [8]) \mtc@hook@beforeinputfile and the  
 \mtc@hook@beforeinputfile macro \mlt@setform which adjusts some layout parameters (defined by the user via some  
 \mlt@setform \mtcsetformat commands). We work in a group to keep local some macro redefinitions.

```

\mtcsetformat
\mtc@strut 3438 \begingroup
3439      \makeatletter
3440      \@ifundefined{mlt@pgno}%
3441      {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}}
3442      \@filesfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
3443      \mlt@setform

```

```

3444 \input{\jobname.\@tocfile}
3445 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-\baselineskip}
3446 \leavevmode\mtc@strut
3447 \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup

```

```

mtc@verse We close the mtc@verse environment, add the bottomrule (while preventing a page break),
\mtc@bottom@rule then close the samepage environment, and call \afterminilot. The blank line (\) is
\ essential.
samepage
\afterminilot 3448 \end{mtc@verse}%
3449 \kernafterminilot
3450 \nopagebreak[4]\mkt@rule\null\leavevmode\%
3451 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
3452 \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\afterminilot\fi%

```

### 9.36 Patching the \chapter command, continued

```

\l@xchapter First, we define \l@xchapter which is like \l@chapter, but with a huge depth, to inhibit its
\@dottedtocline printing (except if you cheat):
\l@chapter
\l@chapter 3453 \def\l@xchapter{\@dottedtocline{\M}{1em}{2.3em}}
3454 \def\l@xchapter{\l@chapter}

```

```

\@chapter Then we patch \@chapter (the non-starred branch of \chapter) to add pseudo-chapter
\sv@chapter entries in the LOF and the LOT (these entries will be used by the \dominiXXX commands
\addcontentsline to split the LOF and the LOT into slices).
\ignorespaces
3455 \let\sv@chapter\@chapter
3456 \def\@chapter[#1]#2{\sv@chapter[{#1}]{#2}\relax%
3457 \addcontentsline{lof}{xchapter}{#1}%
3458 \addcontentsline{lot}{xchapter}{#1}%
3459 \ignorespaces}

```

```

\mtc@schapter We also patch \@schapter (the starred branch of \chapter) to add marks in the TOC
\@schapter to delimit chapters; these marks will be used by the \dominiXXX commands to take slices
\addtocontents from the LOF and the LOT; as they are defined as \relax, they should not perturbate other
\chapterbegin packages.
\chapterend
3460 \let\mtc@schapter\@schapter
3461 \def\@schapter{\addtocontents{toc}{\protect\chapterend}\mtc@schapter}
3462 \def\@schapter{\addtocontents{@@@}{\protect\chapterbegin}\mtc@schapter}
3463 \let\chapterbegin\relax
3464 \let\chapterend\relax

```

### 9.37 The `\addstarred...` commands

`\addstarredsection` If the command `\chapter` is undefined, we define the command `\addstarredsection`  
`\addstarredchapter` (only if `\section` is defined). If the command `\chapter` is defined, we define the com-  
`\addstarredpart` mand `\addstarredchapter`. If the command `\part` is defined, we define the command  
`\chapter` `\addstarredpart`. We use the utility command `\addst@rred` defined in section 9.31 on  
`\section` page 274.  
`\part`  
`\addst@rred`

```

3465 \ifundefined{chapter}%
3466   {\@ifundefined{section}%
3467     {\def\addstarredsection#1{\addst@rred{section}{#1}}}%
3468     {\def\addstarredchapter#1{\addst@rred{chapter}{#1}}}
3469 \ifundefined{part}%
3470   {\def\addstarredpart#1{\addst@rred{part}{#1}}}
```

### 9.38 TOC entries without leaders

`\@Undottedtocline` We define two internal macros to format TOC entries without leaders. The macro  
`\coffeeont` `\@Undottedtocline` prints no page number, but `\@Undottedtoclinep` prints it.

```

3471 \def\@Undottedtocline#1#2#3#4#5{%
3472   \ifnum #1>\c@tocdepth\relax \else
3473     \vskip \z@ \@plus.2\p@
3474     {\leftskip #2\relax \rightskip \@tocrmarg \parfillskip -\rightskip
3475      \parindent #2\relax\@afterindenttrue
3476      \interlinepenalty\@M
3477      \leavevmode
3478      \@tempdima #3\relax
3479      \advance\leftskip \@tempdima \null\nobreak\hskip -\leftskip
3480      {\coffeeont #4}\nobreak
3481      \nobreak\null
3482      \par}%
3483   \fi}
```

`\@Undottedtoclinep` The same but with the page number:  
`\coffeeont`

```

3484 \def\@Undottedtoclinep#1#2#3#4#5{%
3485   \ifnum #1>\c@tocdepth\relax \else
3486     \vskip \z@ \@plus.2\p@
3487     {\leftskip #2\relax \rightskip \@tocrmarg \parfillskip -\rightskip
3488      \parindent #2\relax\@afterindenttrue
3489      \interlinepenalty\@M
3490      \leavevmode
3491      \@tempdima #3\relax
3492      \advance\leftskip \@tempdima \null\nobreak\hskip -\leftskip
3493      {#4}\nobreak}
```



```

3494         \hfill
3495     \nobreak\null
3496     \hb@xt@{\pnumwidth{\hfil\normalfont \normalcolor #5}}%
3497     \par}%
3498 \fi}

```

### 9.39 Mini-tables with or without leaders

`\minitoc@` This code sets the flag to false, then patches each mini-table command (its internal part).  
`\minilof@` We alter the commands `\minitoc@`, `\minilof@`, etc., to test the flag `\ifundottedmtc` and,  
`\minilot@` if true, replace locally `\@dottedtocline` by its dotless version `\@Undottedtoclinep`.  
`\@dottedtocline` Of course, we must also test the availability of the `\chapter`, `\part` and `\section`  
`\@Undottedtoclinep` commands, to avoid to define many unnecessary commands.

```

\sv@minitoc@
\sv@minilof@ 3499 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{%
\sv@minilot@ 3500 \let\sv@minitoc@\minitoc@
3501 \def\minitoc@[#1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi
3502 \sv@minitoc@[#1]}}%
3503 \let\sv@minilof@\minilof@
3504 \def\minilof@[#1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi
3505 \sv@minilof@[#1]}}%
3506 \let\sv@minilot@\minilot@
3507 \def\minilot@[#1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi
3508 \sv@minilot@[#1]}}}

```

`\sv@parttoc@` For the part level:

```

\sv@partlof@
\sv@partlot@ 3509 \@ifundefined{part}{}{%
\ifundottedmtc 3510 \let\sv@parttoc@\parttoc@
\parttoc@ 3511 \def\parttoc@[#1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi
\partlof@ 3512 \sv@parttoc@[#1]}}%
\partlot@ 3513 \let\sv@partlof@\partlof@
3514 \def\partlof@[#1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi
3515 \sv@partlof@[#1]}}%
3516 \let\sv@partlot@\partlot@
3517 \def\partlot@[#1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi
3518 \sv@partlot@[#1]}}}

```

`\sv@secttoc@` For the section level:

```

\sv@sectlof@
\sv@sectlot@ 3519 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
\ifundottedmtc 3520 \@ifundefined{section}{}{%
\secttoc@ 3521 \let\sv@secttoc@\secttoc@
\sectlof@ 3522 \def\secttoc@[#1]{{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi
\sectlot@ 3523 \sv@secttoc@[#1]}}%
3524 \let\sv@sectlof@\sectlof@

```

```

3525 \def\sectlof@[#1]{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi
3526 \sv@sectlof@[#1]}}%
3527 \let\sv@sectlot@\sectlot@
3528 \def\sectlot@[#1]{\ifundottedmtc\let\@dottedtocline\@Undottedtoclinep\fi
3529 \sv@sectlot@[#1]}}}}

```

## 9.40 The `\dominitoc` command and its siblings

`\dominitoc` The three commands `\dominitoc`, `\dominilof` and `\dominilot` are, of course, very similar. They take the `\jobname.toc` file (resp. the `\jobname.lof` and `\jobname.lot` files) produced by the previous  $\text{\LaTeX}$  run and cut it in slices (one slice per chapter or starred chapter) into the `\jobname.mtc<N>` files (resp. the `\contentsline` `\jobname.mlf<N>` and `\jobname.mlt<N>` files), using specific lines in the `\jobname.toc` (resp. `\jobname.lof` and `\jobname.lot`) file. These lines are essentially chapter-level entry commands (like `\contentsline{chapter}...`, `\contentsline{xchapter}...`, `\contentsline{starchapter}...`, `\chapbegin`) delimiting chapters in the TOC (or in the LOF or the LOT). Analog part-level lines delimit parts, hence also chapters.

`\dominitoc` As `\dominitoc` has an optional argument, whose default value is “1” (left), it calls `\dominitoc@` with an argument delimited by brackets.

`\if@dominitoc@used@` The macros are `\dominitoc` (user interface), which calls `\dominitoc@[1]` (or with the optional argument of `\dominitoc`). Then `\dominitoc@[1]` processes its argument and calls `\@dominitoc`. `\@dominitoc` calls `\@dominitoc` (passing `\jobname` as argument) then close the minitoc file written. `\@dominitoc` reset to zero the counter of mini-tables, calls `\MTC@next#1.toc` (where `#1` is the value of `\jobname`), then reset again to zero the counter of mini-tables. Each call to `\dominitoc@` (i.e., to `\dominitoc`) sets the flag `\@dominitoc@used@true`. This will be used later for a hint (which detects that you have correctly called `\minitoc` after `\dominitoc` and that both or neither have been called). See section 9.78.2.2 on page 397. The code is similar for `\dominilof` and `\dominilot`.

`\dominitoc` The `\dominitoc` command extracts information from the `.toc` file and create the minitocs files, with the adequate extension.

```

\@dominitoc
\MTC@next
3530 \def\@dominitoc#1{%
3531 \makeatletter
3532 \setcounter{mtc}{0}
3533 \MTC@next#1.toc\relax\}\setcounter{mtc}{0}}
3534 \def\dominitoc{\@ifnextchar[\@dominitoc@]{\dominitoc@[1]}

```

`\dominilof` The `\dominilof` command extracts information from the `.lof` file and create the minilofs files, with the adequate extension.  
`\@dominilof`  
`\MLF@next`

```
3535 \def\@dominilof#1{%
3536   \makeatletter
3537   \setcounter{mtc}{0}
3538   \MLF@next#1.lof\relax\}\setcounter{mtc}{0}}
3539 \def\dominilof{\@ifnextchar[{\dominilof@}{\dominilof@[1]}}
```

`\dominilot` The `\dominilot` command extracts information from the `.lot` file and create the minilots files, with the adequate extension.  
`\@dominilot`  
`\MLT@next`

```
3540 \def\@dominilot#1{%
3541   \makeatletter
3542   \setcounter{mtc}{0}
3543   \MLT@next#1.lot\relax\}\setcounter{mtc}{0}}
3544 \def\dominilot{\@ifnextchar[{\dominilot@}{\dominilot@[1]}}
```

`\if@dominitoc@used@` Some code to flag the use of the command and manage the position of the minitoc title; a hint  
`\if@mtc@hints@` detects any spurious invocation.  
`\@mtc@hints@given@true`

```
\df@mtitc 3545 \def\dominitoc@[#1]{%
\@mti 3546 \if@mtc@hints@
\@nmti 3547   \if@dominitoc@used@
\@cmti 3548   \mtcPackageInfo[<I0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\@lmti 3549   {The \string\dominitoc \space command
\@rmti 3550   \MessageBreak
\@dominitoc 3551   has been invoked more than once
3552   \MessageBreak}
3553   \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
3554   \fi
3555 \fi
3556 \global\@dominitoc@used@true
3557 \if #1e\let\df@mtitc\@mti%
3558 \else\if #1n\let\df@mtitc\@nmti%
3559 \else\if #1c\let\df@mtitc\@cmti%
3560 \else\if #1l\let\df@mtitc\@lmti%
3561 \else\if #1r\let\df@mtitc\@rmti%
3562 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
3563 \@dominitoc}
```

`\if@dominilof@used@` Some code to flag the use of the command and manage the position of the minilof title; a hint  
`\if@mtc@hints@` detects any spurious invocation.  
`\@mtc@hints@given@true`

```
\df@mtilf 3564 \def\dominilof@[#1]{%
\@mti 3565 \if@mtc@hints@
\@nmti 3566   \if@dominilof@used@
\@cmti
\@lmti
\@rmti
\@dominilof
```

```

3567 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%
3568 {The \string\dominilof \space command
3569 \MessageBreak
3570 has been invoked more than once
3571 \MessageBreak}
3572 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
3573 \fi
3574 \fi
3575 \global\@dominilof@used@true
3576 \if #1e\let\df@mtilf\e@mti%
3577 \else\if #1n\let\df@mtilf\n@mti%
3578 \else\if #1c\let\df@mtilf\c@mti%
3579 \else\if #1l\let\df@mtilf\l@mti%
3580 \else\if #1r\let\df@mtilf\r@mti%
3581 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
3582 \@@dominilof}

```

\if@dominilof@used@ Some code to flag the use of the command and manage the position of the minilof title; a hint  
 \if@mtc@hints@ detects any spurious invocation.  
 \@mtc@hints@given@true

```

\df@mtilt 3583 \def\dominilof[#1]{%
\l@mti 3584 \if@mtc@hints@
\l@mti 3585 \if@dominilof@used@
\l@mti 3586 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\l@mti 3587 {The \string\dominilof \space command
\l@mti 3588 \MessageBreak
\l@mti 3589 has been invoked more than once
\l@mti 3590 \MessageBreak}
\l@mti 3591 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
\l@mti 3592 \fi
\l@mti 3593 \fi
\l@mti 3594 \global\@dominilof@used@true
\l@mti 3595 \if #1e\let\df@mtilt\e@mti%
\l@mti 3596 \else\if #1n\let\df@mtilt\n@mti%
\l@mti 3597 \else\if #1c\let\df@mtilt\c@mti%
\l@mti 3598 \else\if #1l\let\df@mtilt\l@mti%
\l@mti 3599 \else\if #1r\let\df@mtilt\r@mti%
\l@mti 3600 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
\l@mti 3601 \@@dominilof}

```

\@@dominitoc These macros invoke the \@domini... macros to create the mini-table file, then close the file  
 \@@dominilof descriptor.  
 \@@dominilof

```

\tf@mtc 3602 \def\@@dominitoc{\@dominitoc{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
3603 \def\@@dominilof{\@dominilof{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
3604 \def\@@dominilof{\@dominilof{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}

```

### 9.40.1 Analysis and splitting of the TOC file

This is done via a loop managed by the following macros <sup>6</sup>:

```

\MTC@next Processes the next entry in the list and removes it from the head of the list:
\MTC@list
\MTC@loop 3605 \def\MTC@next#1\relax#2\{\%
          3606   \edef\MTC@list{#2}%
          3607   \MTC@loop{#1}%
          3608 }

\MTC@toc Check if the list is empty:
\MTC@list
\MTC@explist 3609 \def\MTC@toc{%
          3610   \ifx\MTC@list\@empty\else\expandafter\MTC@explist\fi
          3611 }

\MTC@contentsline The macro \MTC@contentsline analyses the lines read from the TOC file and detects inter-
\arabic          esting keywords. If \chapter is found, the mtc counter (which simulates the chapter counter,
\chapter          but is absolute) is incremented and a new minitoc file is created.
\themtc
\tf@mtc 3612 \def\MTC@contentsline#1#2#3#4{% %%HO/BJ: 4 instead of 3 parameters
          3613   \gdef\themtc{\arabic{mtc}}% %%HO: space removed
          3614   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter
          3615     \stepcounter{mtc}%

\if@longextensions@ We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open
\themtc it (after closing the file descriptor):
\mtcname
\tf@mtc 3616   \if@longextensions@
\closeout 3617     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
\openout 3618     {Writing\space\jobname.mtc\themtc\@gobble}%
          3619     \def\mtcname{\jobname.mtc\themtc}%
          3620   \else
          3621     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
          3622     {Writing\space\jobname.M\themtc\@gobble}%
          3623     \def\mtcname{\jobname.M\themtc}%
          3624   \fi
          3625   \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
          3626   \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\mtcname
          3627   \fi

```

<sup>6</sup> This code is derived from the `xr` package [92], by David CARLISLE, with his permission. The strings “HO”, “DV”, and “BJ” in the comments denote modifications made by Heiko OBERDIEK, Didier VERNA, and Bernd JAEHNE for the support of `hyperref`, essentially by adding an argument to some macros, to use the `hyperlink` argument in the contents lines.

`\mtc@toks` Now, we filter the relevant contents lines, the token register `\mtc@toks` is used as a verbatim memory.

```
3628 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%
```

`\MTC@WriteContentsline` Each interesting contents line is copied, with a font command added before it. We begin with the standard sectionning commands, below `\chapter`:

`\section`

```
\subsection 3629 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section
```

```
\paragraph 3630 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcS}{#3}{#4}%
```

```
\subparagraph 3631 \fi
```

```
3632 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsection
```

```
3633 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSS}{#3}{#4}%
```

```
3634 \fi
```

```
3635 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsubsection
```

```
3636 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
```

```
3637 \fi
```

```
3638 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\paragraph
```

```
3639 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcP}{#3}{#4}%
```

```
3640 \fi
```

```
3641 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subparagraph
```

```
3642 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSP}{#3}{#4}%
```

```
3643 \fi
```

`\coffee` A coffee break contents line ☕ is written for `\coffee`:

`\MTC@WriteCoffeeline`

```
3644 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\coffee
```

```
3645 \MTC@WriteCoffeeline{#1}{#3}%
```

```
3646 \fi
```

`\starchapter` If it is `\starchapter` (for a starred chapter), we increment the `mtc` counter, build a new minitoc file name, close the file descriptor and open it with this new file.

`\stepcounter`

`\if@longextensions@`

```
\mtcname 3647 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starchapter
```

```
\themtc 3648 \stepcounter{mtc}%
```

```
\tf@mtc 3649 \if@longextensions@
```

```
\closeout 3650 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
```

```
\openout 3651 {Writing\space\jobname.mtc\themtc\@gobble}%
```

```
3652 \def\mtcname{\jobname.mtc\themtc}%
```

```
3653 \else
```

```
3654 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
```

```
3655 {Writing\space\jobname.M\themtc\@gobble}%
```

```
3656 \def\mtcname{\jobname.M\themtc}%
```

```
3657 \fi
```

```
3658 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
```

```
3659 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\mtcname
```

```
3660 \fi
```

```

\starsection For starred sectionning commands lower than \chapter, a contents line is written into the
\MTC@WriteContentsline minitoc file, with a font command added:
\starsubsection
\starsubsubsection 3661 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsection
\starparagraph 3662 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcS}{#3}{#4}%
\starsubparagraph 3663 \fi
3664 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsection
3665 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSS}{#3}{#4}%
3666 \fi
3667 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsubsection
3668 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
3669 \fi
3670 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starparagraph
3671 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcP}{#3}{#4}%
3672 \fi
3673 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubparagraph
3674 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mtcSP}{#3}{#4}%
3675 \fi
3676 }

\MTC@explist The loop to read the lines of the TOC file; it expands the list of entries and call \MTC@next to
\MTC@next process the first one:
\MTC@list
3677 \def\MTC@explist{\expandafter\MTC@next\MTC@list\}

\MTC@loop If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise,
\openin process the next entry in the list.
\@inputcheck
\MTC@toc 3678 \def\MTC@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
\MTC@read 3679 \ifeof\@inputcheck
3680 \mtcPackageWarning[<W0010>]{minitoc}%
3681 {No file #1.
3682 \MessageBreak
3683 MINITOCs NOT PREPARED}%
3684 \expandafter\MTC@toc
3685 \else
3686 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0024>]{minitoc}{PREPARING MINITOCs FROM #1}%
3687 \expandafter\MTC@read
3688 \fi
3689 }

\MTC@read Read the next entry of the .toc file.
\read
\@inputcheck 3690 \def\MTC@read{%
\MTC@line 3691 \read\@inputcheck to\MTC@line

```

```

\MTC@test The ..... make sure that \MTC@test has enough arguments:
\MTC@line
  \MTC@ 3692 \expandafter\MTC@test\MTC@line.....\MTC@% %%H0: . added
        3693 }%

\MTC@test The \MTC@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the TOC file, mainly to delimit
\contentsline chapters:
\MTC@contentsline
  \mtc@string 3694 %%H0/BJ: now patch \MTC@test,
  \@input 3695 %%H0/BJ: call \MTC@contentsline with 4 instead of 3 parameters
  \MTC@list
\chapterend Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add
\closeout the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process
\tf@mtc the next file in the list. Thanks to A. J. “Tony” ROBERTS.
\openout
\chapterbegin
\addtocounter 3696 \long\def\MTC@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\MTC@{% %%H0: #6 added
  \MTC@toc 3697 \ifx#1\contentsline
    \MTC@toc 3698 \let\mtc@string\string
    \MTC@read 3699 \MTC@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
    3700 %%H0/BJ: 4. parameter added by Tony Roberts
    3701 \let\mtc@string\relax
    3702 \else\ifx#1\@input
    3703 \edef\MTC@list{\MTC@list#2\relax}%
    3704 \else\ifx#1\chapterend
    3705 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
    3706 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
    3707 \else\ifx#1\chapterbegin
    3708 \addtocounter{mtc}{-1}%
    3709 \fi\fi\fi\fi
    3710 \ifeof\@inputcheck
    3711 \expandafter\MTC@toc
    3712 \else
    3713 \expandafter\MTC@read
    3714 \fi
    3715 }%

```

## 9.41 Mini-lists of figures

The code is similar to the code for mini-tables of contents, but with less commands to recognize.



**9.41.1 Analysis and splitting of the list of figures file**

`\MLF@next` This is done via a loop managed by the following macros:

`\MLF@list`

`\MLF@loop` Processes the next entry in the list and removes it from the head of the list:

```
3716 \def\MLF@next#1\relax#2\{\%
3717   \edef\MLF@list{#2}%
3718   \MLF@loop{#1}}
```

`\MLF@lof` Checks if the list is empty:

`\MLF@list`

```
\MLF@explist 3719 \def\MLF@lof{%
3720   \ifx\MLF@list\@empty\else\expandafter\MLF@explist\fi}
```

`\MLF@contentsline` The macro `\MLF@contentsline` analyses the lines read from the LOF file and detects interesting keywords. If `\xchapter` is found, the counter `mtc` is incremented and a new minilof file is created.

`\arabic`

`\xchapter`

```
3721 \def\MLF@contentsline#1#2#3#4{% %%H0: added #4
3722   \gdef\themtc{\arabic{mtc}} %%H0: space removed
3723   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xchapter
3724     \stepcounter{mtc}%
```

`\if@longextensions@` The name of the minilof file is built from `\jobname` and a long or short extension:

`\themtc`

`\mlfname` 3725 `\if@longextensions@`

`\closeout` 3726 `\mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%`

`\tf@mtc` 3727 `{Writing\space\jobname.mlf\themtc\@gobble}`

`\openout` 3728 `\def\mlfname{\jobname.mlf\themtc}%`

3729 `\else`

3730 `\mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%`

3731 `{Writing\space\jobname.F\themtc\@gobble}`

3732 `\def\mlfname{\jobname.F\themtc}%`

3733 `\fi`

3734 `\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc`

3735 `\immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\mlfname`

3736 `\fi`

`\figure` If we found a `\figure` entry, we copy it into the minilof file:

`\subfigure`

`\mtc@toks` 3737 `\expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\figure`

`\MTC@WriteContentsline` 3738 `\mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%`

3739 `\MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mlf}{#3}{#4}%`

3740 `\fi`

```

3741 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subfigure
3742 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
3743 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mlfS}{#3}{#4}%
3744 \fi
3745 }

```

\MLF@explist The loop to read the LOF file; it expands the list of entries and calls \MLF@next to process the first one:

\MLF@next

\MLF@list

```

3746 \def\MLF@explist{\expandafter\MLF@next\MLF@list\}

```

\MLF@loop And now, we scan the .lof file:

\openin

\@inputcheck 3747 \def\MLF@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax

\MLF@lof 3748 \ifeof\@inputcheck

\MLF@read 3749 \mtcPackageWarning[<W0008>]{minitoc}%

3750 {No file #1.

3751 \MessageBreak

3752 MINILOFS NOT PREPARED}%

3753 \expandafter\MLF@lof

3754 \else

3755 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0034>]{minitoc}%

3756 {PREPARING MINILOFS FROM #1}%

3757 \expandafter\MLF@read\fi}

\MLF@read Read the next entry in the .lof file:

\read

\@inputcheck 3758 \def\MLF@read{%

3759 \read\@inputcheck to\MLF@line

\MLF@line The ..... make sure that \MLF@test has enough arguments:

\MLF@test

\MLF@ 3760 \expandafter\MLF@test\MLF@line.....\MLF@% %%H0: . added

3761 }%

\MLF@test The \MLF@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOF file, mainly to delimit chapters.

```

\contentsline Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add
\mtc@string the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process
\MLF@contentsline the next file in the list.
\@input
\MLF@list 3762 \long\def\MLF@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\MLF@{% %%H0: #6 added
\chapterend 3763 \ifx#1\contentsline
\closeout 3764 \let\mtc@string\string
\tf@mtc 3765 \MLF@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}% %%H0: #4 added
\openout 3766 \let\mtc@string\relax
\chapterbegin 3767 \else\ifx#1\@input
\addtocounter 3768 \edef\MLF@list{\MLF@list#2\relax}%
\MLF@lof 3769 \else\ifx#1\chapterend
\MLF@read 3770 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
3771 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
3772 \else\ifx#1\chapterbegin
3773 \addtocounter{mtc}{-1}%
3774 \fi\fi\fi\fi
3775 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\MLF@lof
3776 \else\expandafter\MLF@read\fi}%

```

## 9.42 Mini-lists of tables

The code is similar to the code for mini-tables of contents, but with less commands to recognize.

### 9.42.1 Analysis and splitting of the list of tables file

```

\MLT@next This is done via a loop managed by the following macros:
\MLT@list
\MLT@loop Processes the next entry in the list and removes it from the head of the list:

3777 \def\MLT@next#1\relax#2\{\%
3778 \edef\MLT@list{#2}%
3779 \MLT@loop{#1}}

\MLT@lot Checks if the list is empty:
\MLT@list
\MLT@explist 3780 \def\MLT@lot{%
3781 \ifx\MLT@list\@empty\else\expandafter\MLT@explist\fi}

```

`\MLT@contentsline` The macro `\MLT@contentsline` analyses the lines read from the LOT file and detects interesting keywords. If `\xchapter` is found, the mtc counter is incremented and a new minilot file is created.

```

3782 \def\MLT@contentsline#1#2#3#4{% %%H0: added #4
3783   \gdef\themtc{\arabic{mtc}}% %%H0: space removed
3784   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xchapter
3785     \stepcounter{mtc}%

```

`\if@longextensions@` The name of the minilot file it build from `\jobname` and a long or short extension:

```

\themtc
\mltname 3786   \if@longextensions@%
\closeout 3787   \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
\tf@mtc 3788     {Writing\space\jobname.mlt\themtc\@gobble}%
\openout 3789     \def\mltname{\jobname.mlt\themtc}%
3790   \else
3791     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
3792     {Writing\space\jobname.T\themtc\@gobble}%
3793     \def\mltname{\jobname.T\themtc}%
3794   \fi
3795   \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
3796   \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\mltname
3797 \fi

```

`\table` If we found a `\table` entry, we copy it into the minilot file:

```

\subtable
\mtc@toks 3798   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\table
\MTC@WriteContentsline 3799   \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
3800   \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mlt}{#3}{#4}%
3801   \fi
3802   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subtable
3803   \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
3804   \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{mltS}{#3}{#4}%
3805   \fi
3806 }

```

`\MLT@explist` The loop to read the LOT file; it expands the list of entries and calls `\MLT@next` to process the first one:

```

\MLT@list
3807 \def\MLT@explist{\expandafter\MLT@next\MLT@list\}

```

`\MLT@loop` And now, we scan the .lot file:

```

\openin
\@inputcheck 3808 \def\MLT@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
\MLT@lot 3809   \ifeof\@inputcheck
\MLT@read 3810   \mtcPackageWarning[<W0009>]{minitoc}%

```

```

3811      {No file #1.
3812      \MessageBreak
3813      MINILOTS NOT PREPARED}%
3814      \expandafter\MLT@lot
3815      \else
3816      \mtcPackageInfo[<I0037>]{minitoc}%
3817      {PREPARING MINILOTS FROM #1}%
3818      \expandafter\MLT@read\fi}

```

```

\MLT@read  Read the next entry in the .lot file:
\read
\@inputcheck 3819 \def\MLT@read{%
3820      \read\@inputcheck to\MLT@line

```

```

\MLT@line  The ..... make sure that \MLT@test has enough arguments:
\MLT@test
\MLT@ 3821      \expandafter\MLT@test\MLT@line.....\MLT@% %%H0: . added
3822      }%

```

```

\MLT@test  The \MLT@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOT file, mainly to delimit
chapters.

```

```

\contentsline  Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add
\mtc@string    the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process
\MLT@contentsline the next file in the list.
\@input
\MLT@list 3823 \long\def\MLT@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\MLT@{% %%H0: #6 added
\chapterend 3824      \ifx#1\contentsline
\closeout 3825      \let\mtc@string\string
\tf@mtc 3826      \MLT@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}% %%H0: #4 added
\openout 3827      \let\mtc@string\relax
\chapterbegin 3828      \else\ifx#1\@input
\addtocounter 3829      \edef\MLT@list{\MLT@list#2\relax}%
\MLT@lot 3830      \else\ifx#1\chapterend
\MLT@read 3831      \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
3832      \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
3833      \else\ifx#1\chapterbegin
3834      \addtocounter{mtc}{-1}%
3835      \fi\fi\fi\fi
3836      \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\MLT@lot
3837      \else\expandafter\MLT@read\fi}%

```

Note that we terminate with a closing brace to end the chapter-level macros (end of the *else* branch of a `\@ifundefined{chapter}` alternative).

```

3838 }%

```

### 9.43 Macro to write a contents line

`\mtc@dot` The `\MTC@WriteContentsline` macro makes the definition of `\MTC@contentsline` shorter.  
`\MTC@WriteContentsline` An extra `\edef` level is removed (Heiko OBERDIEK):

`\mtc@param`

`\write`

The arguments of `\MTC@WriteContentsline` are:

`\tf@mtc`

`\@resetfont`

`\mtc@string`

#1: the #1 argument of `\MTC@contentsline`;

`\contentsline`

#2: font shorthand =: `\csname #2font\endcsname`;

`\mtc@toks`

#3: the #3 argument of `\MTC@contentsline`;

#4: the #4 argument of `\MTC@contentsline` (hyperlink).

```

3839 \def\mtc@dot{.}
3840 \def\MTC@WriteContentsline#1#2#3#4{%
3841   \def\mtc@param{#4}%
3842   \immediate\write\tf@mtc{%
3843     {\string\reset@font
3844       \expandafter\string\csname #2font\endcsname
3845       \string\mtc@string
3846       \string\contentsline{#1}%
3847       {\the\mtc@toks}%
3848       {\string\reset@font
3849         \expandafter\string\csname #2font\endcsname
3850         \space #3%
3851       }%
3852       \ifx\mtc@dot\mtc@param
3853       \else
3854         {#4}% %H0/BJ: #4 is hyperlink
3855       \fi
3856     }%
3857   }%
3858 }
```

`\MTC@WriteCoffeeline` And the same for a “coffee” ☕ line. The arguments of the macro `\MTC@WriteCoffeeline` are:

`\write`

`\tf@mtc`

`\@resetfont`

`\coffee@font`

#1: the #1 argument of `\MTC@contentsline`;

`\mtc@string`

#2: the #3 argument of `\MTC@contentsline`.

`\mtc@toks`

```

3859 \def\MTC@WriteCoffeeline#1#2#3{%
3860   \immediate\write\tf@mtc{%
3861     {\string\reset@font \string\coffee@font \string\mtc@string
3862     {\the\mtc@toks}%
3863     {\string\reset@font \string\coffee@font \space #3%
3864     }%
3865   }
```

```

3865     }%
3866   }%
3867 }

```

## 9.44 Depth counters for partlofs and partlots

```

\AtBeginDocument If the counters lofdepth and lotdepth are defined, we create the corresponding new coun-
  \newcounter     ters: partlofdepth and partlotdepth. These counters are initialised to 2. This is done
  \setcounter     after the loading of the packages, in an \AtBeginDocument block:
  \c@lofdepth
  \c@lotdepth
3868 \AtBeginDocument{%
3869   \@ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{}%
3870     {\newcounter{partlofdepth}\setcounter{partlofdepth}{2}}%
3871   \@ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{}%
3872     {\newcounter{partlotdepth}\setcounter{partlotdepth}{2}}%
3873 }

```

## 9.45 Part level commands

```

  \xpart If \part is defined, we define some utility commands, a counter (ptc) for the parttocs and
  \theptc related commands (\theptc, \Thepart, \adjustptc, \decrementptc, \incrementptc),
  \Thepart the obsolete command \firstpartis, and the depth counter parttocdepth.
  \adjustptc
\decrementptc 3874 \@ifundefined{part}{}%
\incrementptc 3875 {%
  \firstpartis 3876 \def\xpart{xpart}
  \firstpartis 3877 \def\Thepart{\arabic{ptc}}
\if@firstpartis@used@ 3878 \def\firstpartis#1%
  \newcounter 3879   {\mtcPackageWarning[<W0004>]{minitoc}%
  \setcounter 3880     {\string\firstpartis \space is an obsolete
  3881       \MessageBreak
  3882       command}%
  3883     \@firstpartis@used@true}
  3884 \newcounter{ptc}
  3885 \setcounter{ptc}{0}
  3886 \newcommand{\adjustptc}[1][1]{\addtocounter{ptc}{#1}}
  3887 \def\decrementptc{\addtocounter{ptc}{-1}}
  3888 \def\incrementptc{\addtocounter{ptc}{+1}}
  3889 \def\theptc{\arabic{ptc}}
  3890 \newcounter{parttocdepth}
  3891 \setcounter{parttocdepth}{2}

```

`\ptc@rule` But, sometimes, we need to make a difference between book/report and article classes (is  
`\columnwidth` `\chapter` defined?), to have a different layout: the definition of `\ptc@rule` is empty except  
 if `\chapter` is undefined. By default, there is no rule before/after parttocs, partlofs, and  
 partlots for books. You should redeclare `\ptc@rule` if you want these rules.

```
3892 \@ifundefined{chapter}%
3893   {\def\ptc@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}}%
3894   {\let\ptc@rule\relax}
```

`\ptcindent` And we declare the default indentation (both sides) of the parttocs:

```
3895 \newlength\ptcindent
3896 \@ifundefined{chapter}{\ptcindent=24\p@}{\ptcindent=\z@}
```

## `\ptcfont` **9.46 Fonts for the parttocs**

`\ptcSfont`  
`\ptcSSfont`  
`\ptcSSSfont` We define the fonts for the parttocs. Note that they are larger if `\chapter` is defined  
`\ptcPfont` (book/report-like document classes) than when it is not (article-like document classes):  
`\ptcSPfont`

```
\plffont 3897 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
\plfSfont 3898   \def\ptcfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries} % the parttoc
\pltfont 3899   \def\ptcSfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}% (sections)
\pltSfont 3900   \let\ptcSSfont\ptcfont      % (subsections)
\ptifont 3901   \let\ptcSSSfont\ptcfont    % (subsubsections)
3902   \let\ptcPfont\ptcfont      % (paragraphs)
3903   \let\ptcSPfont\ptcfont    % (subparagraphs)
3904   \let\plffont\ptcfont      % (figures)
3905   \let\plfSfont\ptcfont     % (subfigures)
3906   \let\pltfont\ptcfont      % (tables)
3907   \let\pltSfont\ptcfont     % (subtables)
3908   \def\ptifont{\Large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}% titles
3909 }%
```

`\ptcfont` If `\chapter` is defined, the fonts are larger and `\ptcCfont` must be defined:  
`\ptcCfont`  
`\ptcSfont` 3910 {%  
`\ptcSSfont` 3911 \def\ptcfont{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries} % the parttoc  
`\ptcSSSfont` 3912 \def\ptcCfont{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}% (chapters)  
`\ptcPfont` 3913 \def\ptcSfont{\normalsize\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}% (sections)  
`\ptcSPfont` 3914 \let\ptcSSfont\ptcfont % (subsections)  
`\plffont` 3915 \let\ptcSSSfont\ptcfont % (subsubsections)  
`\plfSfont` 3916 \let\ptcPfont\ptcfont % (paragraphs)  
`\pltfont` 3917 \let\ptcSPfont\ptcfont % (subparagraphs)  
`\pltSfont` 3918 \let\plffont\ptcfont % (figures)  
`\ptifont`



```

3919 \let\plfSfont\ptcfont      % (subfigures)
3920 \let\pltfont\ptcfont       % (tables)
3921 \let\pltSfont\ptcfont      % (subtables)
3922 \def\ptifont{\LARGE\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}% titles
3923 }

```

### 9.47 Default titles for part-level mini-tables

<code>\parttoc</code>	We define the default position, the fonts and the layout for titles of the part-level mini-tables
<code>\partlof</code>	( <code>\parttoc</code> , <code>\partlof</code> and <code>\partlot</code> ). This formatting is different if <code>\chapter</code> is defined or
<code>\partlot</code>	undefined.

`\c@pti` If `\chapter` is undefined, the definitions are very simple, for centered, flushleft, flushright or  
`\l@pti` empty titles. Here, empty titles need a vertical correction (Frank MITTELBACH).

```

\r@pti
\@pti 3924 \ifundefined{chapter}{%
\n@pti 3925 \def\c@pti#1{\null\hfill #1\hfill\null}
3926 \def\l@pti#1{\null #1\hfill\null}
3927 \def\r@pti#1{\null\hfill #1\null}
3928 \def\@pti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}
3929 \def\n@pti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}
3930 }%

```

But, if `\chapter` is defined, we must simulate the formatting of a chapter head, which is more complex. Here, empty titles need a vertical correction (Frank MITTELBACH).

```

3931 {%
3932 \def\e@pti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}
3933 \def\n@pti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}

```

	\l@pti	For a title on the left, we must test if the main text is on two columns:
	\if@twocolumn	
	\@topnewpage	3934 \def\l@pti#1{\if@twocolumn
\@afterheading	3935	\@topnewpage[\@makephead@l{#1}]%
\ptifont	3936	\else
\@makephead@l	3937	\@makephead@l{#1}%
\mtcgapbeforeheads	3938	\@afterheading
\mtcgapafterheads	3939	\fi}
	3940	\def\@makephead@l#1{%
	3941	\vspace*{\mtcgapbeforeheads}%
	3942	{\parindent \z@ \raggedright
	3943	\ptifont
	3944	#1\par
	3945	\nobreak

```

3946     \vskip \mtcgapafterheads\hbox{}
3947     }}

```

`\r@pti` For a title on the right, we must also test if the main text is on two columns:

```

\if@twocolumn
\@topnewpage 3948 \def\r@pti#1{\if@twocolumn
\@makehead@r 3949     \@topnewpage[\@makehead@r{#1}]\%
\@afterheading 3950     \else
\ptifont 3951     \@makehead@r{#1}%
\mtcgapbeforeheads 3952     \@afterheading
\mtcgapafterheads 3953     \fi}
3954 \def\@makehead@r#1{%
3955     \vspace*\mtcgapbeforeheads}%
3956     {\parindent \z@ \raggedleft
3957     \ptifont
3958     #1\par
3959     \nobreak
3960     \vskip \mtcgapafterheads\hbox{}
3961     }}

```

`\c@pti` For a centered title, we must also test if the main text is on two columns:

```

\if@twocolumn
\@topnewpage 3962 \def\c@pti#1{\if@twocolumn
\@makehead@c 3963     \@topnewpage[\@makehead@c{#1}]\%
\@afterheading 3964     \else
\ptifont 3965     \@makehead@c{#1}%
\mtcgapbeforeheads 3966     \@afterheading
\mtcgapafterheads 3967     \fi}
3968 \def\@makehead@c#1{%
3969     \vspace*\mtcgapbeforeheads}%
3970     {\parindent \z@ \centering
3971     \ptifont
3972     #1\par
3973     \nobreak
3974     \vskip \mtcgapafterheads\hbox{}
3975     }}%
3976 }

```

`\l@pti` By default, titles are on left:

```

\do@ptitc
\df@ptitc 3977 \let\do@ptitc\l@pti
\do@ptilf 3978 \let\df@ptitc\l@pti
\df@ptilf 3979 \let\do@ptilf\l@pti
\do@ptilt 3980 \let\df@ptilf\l@pti
\df@ptilt 3981 \let\do@ptilt\l@pti
3982 \let\df@ptilt\l@pti

```

## 9.48 The `ptc@verse` environment

`ptc@verse` Each parttoc is placed inside a `ptc@verse` environment. This environment is analog to the standard `verse` environment and hence defined via two commands: `\ptc@verse` and `\endptc@verse`. As it is a list environment, we first define (in a local way) `\`, then call `\list{}` and set some dimensions like `\itemsep`, `\itemindent`, `\listparindent`, `\@centercr`, `\itemindent`, `\partopsep`, `\topsep`. `\parsep` is set to zero if the `tight` option is active (this reduces the spacing between the lines). `\parskip` is set to zero if the `k-tight` option is active (this reduces the spacing between the lines). Both margins are set to `\ptcindent`. `\itemindent` `\endptc@verse` terminates the list and discourages a page break.

```

\listparindent
\topsep 3983 \def\ptc@verse{\let\=\@centercr
\parsep 3984 \list{ }\itemsep\z@
\parskip 3985 \itemindent \z@
\partopsep 3986 \listparindent \itemindent
\ptcindent 3987 \partopsep\z@
\iftightmtc 3988 \iftightmtc \parsep\z@ \fi
\ifktightmtc 3989 \ifktightmtc \parskip\z@ \fi
3990 \topsep=lex
3991 \leftmargin\ptcindent
3992 \rightmargin\leftmargin\item[]
3993 \def\endptc@verse{\nopagebreak[4]\endlist}

```

## 9.49 The part level mini-tables: `\parttoc`, `\partlof`, and `\partlot`

`\parttoc` These commands are essentially similar to the `\minitoc` command, except that they should be placed after a `\part` command to produce a `parttoc`, a `partlof` or a `partlot`, and the formatting is different and depends of the availability of the `\chapter` command (for the fonts and the horizontal rules). The code is very similar. The `\partlof` and `\partlot` commands are siblings of the `\parttoc` command. Note that `\parttoc`, `\partlof` and `\partlot` use page styles, because `\beforepart...` and `\afterpart...` commands imply usually a `\clear[double]page` command, and hence `\markboth{...}{...}` must be called.

### 9.49.1 The `\parttoc` command

`\parttoc` This command must be used after `\part` if you need a `parttoc` (no automatic `parttoc`). First, `\parttoc@` detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, `d`, if it is missing. Then, `\parttoc@` is called with the effective position as argument:

```
3994 \def\parttoc{\@ifnextchar[\{\parttoc@\}\parttoc@[d]}
```

`\parttoc@` The `\parttoc@` macro does the real work. It first sets the flag `\if@parttoc@used@` (for a consistency hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the parttoc file):

```
\@tocfile
\Thepart 3995 \def\parttoc@[#1]{%
          3996 \global\@parttoc@used@true
          3997 \if@longextensions@%
          3998 \def\@tocfile{ptc\Thepart}%
          3999 \else
          4000 \def\@tocfile{P\Thepart}%
          4001 \fi
```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then, we check the presence of the parttoc file and give a warning if it is not here:

```
\if@mtc@FE
\@tocfile 4002 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
          4003 \if@mtc@FE
          4004 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0006>]{minitoc}%
          4005 {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
          4006 \@mtc@empty@parttoc@true
          4007 \else
```

`\beforeparttoc` If the parttoc file is present, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation code: first, `\beforeparttoc`, of course:

```
4008 \beforeparttoc
```

`\mtc@markboth` If `\chapter` is defined, we just set the page marks with the parttoc title and set the page style:

```
\@mkboth
\thispageparttocstyle 4009 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{}%
\MakeUppercase 4010 \global\let\mtc@markboth\markboth
\ptctitle 4011 \global\let\@mkboth\markboth
          4012 \thispageparttocstyle
          4013 \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\ptctitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\ptctitle}}%
          4014 }%
```

`\do@ptitc` A samepage environment is begun, then the argument is treated to set the position of the parttoc title. If the title string is empty, this forces the positioning.

```
\e@pti
\n@pti
\c@pti 4015 \relax\begin{samepage}%
\l@pti 4016 \if #1e\let\do@ptitc\e@pti
\r@pti 4017 \else\if #1n\let\do@ptitc\n@pti
\df@pti 4018 \else\if #1c\let\do@ptitc\c@pti
\mtc@CkStr 4019 \else\if #1l\let\do@ptitc\l@pti
\ptctitle 4020 \else\if #1r\let\do@ptitc\r@pti
\if@mtc@FE 4021 \else\if #1d\let\do@ptitc\df@ptitc
samepage 4022 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
          4023 \mtc@CkStr{\ptctitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@ptitc\e@pti\relax\fi
```

`\raggedright` We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the parttoc,  
`\parskip` then we set the font:  
`\ptcfont`

```

4024      \raggedright
4025      \parskip=\z@%
4026      \reset@font\ptcfont%
4027      \parindent=\z@%
4028      \nopagebreak[4]%
4029      \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
4030      \par\noindent
4031      \nopagebreak[4]%

```

`\ptc@rule` The parttoc title is set in a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and  
`tabular` the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an `\hline`. It is the top rule of  
`\columnwidth` the parttoc.

```

\ptifont
\do@ptitc 4032      \ifx\ptc@rule\relax
\mtc@v    4033      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
\ptctitle 4034      \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptitc{\mtc@v\ptctitle}\\
\hline    4035      \end{tabular}%
          4036      \else
          4037      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
          4038      \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptitc{\mtc@v\ptctitle}\\ \hline
          4039      \end{tabular}%
          4040      \fi

```

`\mtc@zrule` Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting  
`\mtc@BBR` parameters:

```

\ptcindent
          4041      \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\*[-\baselineskip]\mtc@BBR
          4042      \leftmargin\ptcindent
          4043      \rightmargin\ptcindent
          4044      \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
          4045      \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%

```

`ptc@verse` We enter in a `ptc@verse` environment to format the parttoc. The toc depth is forced (locally)  
`\c@tocdepth` to `parttocdepth`. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position. A blank line is necessary  
`\c@parttocdepth` to avoid a negative indentation.

```

\mtc@BBR
          4046      \begin{ptc@verse}\c@tocdepth=\c@parttocdepth%
          4047      \leavevmode\\ \mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip

```

```

\ptc@pgno  If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro \@dottedtocline with
\@dottedtocline its undotted version. For chapter-level entries, we must invoke \l@chapter ignoring the
\@undottedtocline page number argument. A hook (redefinissable command) is added, and the formatting set-
\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile tings coming from \mtcsetformat are activated via \ptc@setform. Then the parttoc file is
\ptc@setform inserted, followed by a strut, and the ptc@verse environment is terminated.
\@tocfile
\mtc@strut 4048 \begingroup
ptc@verse 4049 \makeatletter
4050 \ifundefined{ptc@pgno}%
4051 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}\%
4052 \ifundefined{ptc@pgno}%
4053 {\let\l@chapter@SVPN\l@chapter%
4054 \def\l@chapter##1##2{\l@chapter@SVPN{##1}{\hbox{}}}\%
4055 \@fileswfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
4056 \ptc@setform
4057 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}
4058 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-1\baselineskip}
4059 \leavevmode\mtc@strut
4060 \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup
4061 \end{ptc@verse}%

\ptc@rule  The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break (if \chapter
\mtc@zrule is not defined), and \afterparttoc.
samepage
\afterparttoc 4062 \kernafterparttoc
4063 \nopagebreak[4]\ptc@rule\null\leavevmode\%
4064 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
4065 \par\ifundefined{chapter}{\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}}%
4066 \afterparttoc\fi}%

```

### 9.49.2 The \partlof command

\partlof This command must be used after \part if you need a partlof (no automatic partlof). First, \partlof@ detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, d, if it is missing. Then, \partlof@ is called with the effective position as argument:

```
4067 \def\partlof{\ifnextchar{\partlof@}{\partlof@d}}
```

\partlof@ The \partlof@ macro does the real work. It first sets the flag \if@partlof@used@ (for a consistency hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the partlof file):

```

\@tocfile
\Thepart 4068 \def\partlof@[#1]{%
4069 \global\@partlof@used@true
4070 \if@longextensions@%
4071 \def\@tocfile{plf\Thepart}%

```

```

4072 \else
4073 \def\tocfile{G\Thepart}%
4074 \fi

```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then, we check the presence of the partlof file and give a warning if it is not here:

```

\ifmtc@FE
\@tocfile 4075 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
4076 \ifmtc@FE
4077 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0006>]{minitoc}%
4078 {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
4079 \@mtc@empty@partlof@true
4080 \else

```

`\beforepartlof` If the partlof file is present, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation code: first, `\beforepartlof`, of course:

```

4081 \beforepartlof

```

`\mtc@markboth` If `\chapter` is defined, we just set the page marks with the partlof title and set the page style:

```

\@mkboth
\thispagepartlofstyle 4082 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{%
\MakeUppercase 4083 \global\let\mtc@markboth\markboth
\plftitle 4084 \global\let\@mkboth\markboth
4085 \thispagepartlofstyle
4086 \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\plftitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\plftitle}}%
4087 }%

```

`\do@ptilf` A `samepage` environment is begun, then the argument is treated to set the position of the partlof title. If the title string is empty, this forces the positionning.

```

\@pti
\@npti
\@c@pti 4088 \relax\begin{samepage}%
\@l@pti 4089 \if #1e\let\do@ptilf\@e@pti
\@r@pti 4090 \else\if #1n\let\do@ptilf\@n@pti
\@df@pti 4091 \else\if #1c\let\do@ptilf\@c@pti
\mtc@CkStr 4092 \else\if #1l\let\do@ptilf\@l@pti
\plftitle 4093 \else\if #1r\let\do@ptilf\@r@pti
\ifmtc@FE 4094 \else\if #1d\let\do@ptilf\@df@ptilf
4095 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
samepage 4096 \mtc@CkStr{\plftitle}\ifmtc@FE \let\do@ptilf\@e@pti\relax\fi

```

`\raggedright` We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the parttoc, then we set the font:

```

\parskip
\plffont
4097 \raggedright
4098 \parskip=\z@%
4099 \reset@font\plffont%

```

`\plf@rule` The parttoc title is set in a `tabular` environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an `\hline`. It is the top rule of the partlof.

```

\columnwidth \ptifont
\do@ptilf 4100 \parindent=\z@%
\mtc@v 4101 \nopagebreak[4]%
\plftitle 4102 \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
\hline 4103 \par\noindent
4104 \ifx\plf@rule\relax
4105 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
4106 \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptilf{\mtc@v\plftitle}\\
4107 \end{tabular}%
4108 \else
4109 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
4110 \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptilf{\mtc@v\plftitle}\\\hline
4111 \mtc@hstrut\\
4112 \end{tabular}%
4113 \fi

```

`\mtc@zrule` Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting parameters:

```

\mtc@BBR
\ptcindent
4114 \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\*[-\baselineskip]\mtc@BBR
4115 \leftmargin\ptcindent
4116 \rightmargin\ptcindent
4117 \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
4118 \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%

```

`ptc@verse` We enter in a `ptc@verse` environment to format the partlof. If necessary, the toc depth is forced (locally) to `partlofdepth`. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position. A blank line is necessary to avoid a negative indentation.

```

4119 \begin{ptc@verse}%
4120 \@ifundefined{c@lofdepth}%
4121 {}%
4122 {\c@lofdepth=\c@partlofdepth
4123 \ifnum\c@lofdepth<1\relax\c@lofdepth=1\fi}
4124 \leavevmode\\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip

```

`\plf@pgno` If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro `\@dottedtocline` with its undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from `\mtcsetformat` are activated via `\plf@setform`. Then the partlof file is inserted, followed by a strut, and the `ptc@verse` environment is terminated.

```

\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
\plf@setform
\@tocfile 4125 \begingroup
\mtc@strut 4126 \makeatletter
ptc@verse 4127 \@ifundefined{plf@pgno}%

```



```

4128 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
4129 \@filesfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
4130 \plf@setform
4131 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}
4132 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-1\baselineskip}
4133 \leavevmode\mtc@strut
4134 \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup
4135 \end{ptc@verse}%

```

`\plf@rule` The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break (if `\chapter` is not defined), and `\afterpartlof`. The blank line (`\`) is essential.

```

\mtc@zrule
  samepage
\afterpartlof 4136 \kernafterpartlof
4137 \nopagebreak[4]\plf@rule\null\leavevmode\%
4138 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
4139 \par\@ifundefined{chapter}{\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}}%
4140 \afterpartlof\fi}

```

### 9.49.3 The `\partlot` command

`\partlot` This command must be used after `\part` if you need a partlot (no automatic partlot). First, `\partlot@` detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, `d`, if it is missing. Then, `\partlot@` is called with the effective position as argument:

```

4141 \def\partlot{\@ifnextchar{\partlot@}{\partlot@d}}

```

`\partlot@` The `\partlot@` macro does the real work. It first sets the flag `\if@partlot@used@` (for a consistency hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the partlot file):

```

\if@partlot@used@
\if@longextensions@
  \@tocfile
  \Thepart 4142 %
4143 \def\partlot@[#1]{%
4144 \global\@partlot@used@true
4145 \if@longextensions@%
4146 \def\@tocfile{plt\Thepart}%
4147 \else
4148 \def\@tocfile{U\Thepart}%
4149 \fi

```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then, we check the presence of the partlot file and give a warning if it is not here:

```

\if@mtc@FE
  \@tocfile 4150 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
4151 \if@mtc@FE
4152 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0006>]{minitoc}%

```

```

4153         {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
4154     \@mtc@empty@partlof@true
4155     \else

```

`\beforepartlot` If the partlot file is present, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation code: first, `\beforepartlot`, of course:

```

4156     \beforepartlot

```

`\mtc@markboth` If `\chapter` is defined, we just set the page marks with the partlot title and set the page style:

```

    \@mkboth
\thispagepartlotstyle 4157     \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{%
    \MakeUppercase 4158     \global\let\mtc@markboth\markboth
    \plttitle 4159     \global\let\@mkboth\markboth
    4160     \thispagepartlotstyle
    4161     \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\plttitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\plttitle}}%
    4162     }%

```

`\do@ptilt` A `samepage` environment is begun, then the argument is treated to set the position of the partlof title. If the title string is empty, this forces the positionning.

```

    \e@pti
    \n@pti
    \c@pti 4163     \relax\begin{samepage}%
    \l@pti 4164     \if #1e\let\do@ptilt\e@pti
    \r@pti 4165     \else\if #1n\let\do@ptilt\n@pti
    \df@pti 4166     \else\if #1c\let\do@ptilt\c@pti
    \mtc@CkStr 4167     \else\if #1l\let\do@ptilt\l@pti
    \plttitle 4168     \else\if #1r\let\do@ptilt\r@pti
    \if@mtc@FE 4169     \else\if #1d\let\do@ptilt\df@ptilt
    samepage 4170     \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
    4171     \mtc@CkStr{\plttitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@ptilt\e@pti\relax\fi

```

`\raggedright` We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the partlot, then we set the font:

```

    \parskip
    \pltfont
    4172     \raggedright
    4173     \parskip=\z@%
    4174     \reset@font\pltfont%
    4175     \parindent=\z@%
    4176     \nolinebreak[4]%
    4177     \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nolinebreak[4]%
    4178     \par\noindent

```

`\plt@rule` The partlot title is set in a `tabular` environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an `\hline`. It is the top rule of the partlot.

```

\columnwidth
\ptifont
\do@ptilt 4179      \ifx\plt@rule\relax
\mtc@v 4180      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
\plttitle 4181      \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptilt{\mtc@v\plttitle}\\
\hline 4182      \end{tabular}%
4183      \else
4184      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
4185      \reset@font\ptifont\do@ptilt{\mtc@v\plttitle}\\ \hline
4186      \mtc@hstrut\\
4187      \end{tabular}%
4188      \fi

```

`\mtc@zrule` Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting parameters:

```

\mtc@BBR
\ptcindent
4189      \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\*[-\baselineskip]\mtc@BBR
4190      \leftmargin\ptcindent
4191      \rightmargin\ptcindent
4192      \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
4193      \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%

```

`ptc@verse` We enter in a `ptc@verse` environment to format the parttoc. If necessary, the toc depth is forced (locally) to `partlotdepth`. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position.

```

4194      \begin{ptc@verse}%
4195      \@ifundefined{c@lotdepth}%
4196      {}%
4197      {\c@lotdepth=\c@partlotdepth
4198      \ifnum\c@lotdepth<1\relax\c@lotdepth=1\fi}
4199      \leavevmode\\ \mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip

```

`\plt@pgno` If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro `\@dottedtocline` with its undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from `\mtcsetformat` are activated via `\plt@setform`. Then the partlot file is inserted, followed by a strut, and the `ptc@verse` environment is terminated.

```

\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
\plt@setform
\@tocfile 4200 \begingroup
\mtc@strut 4201 \makeatletter
ptc@verse 4202 \@ifundefined{plt@pgno}%
4203 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{%
4204 \@fileswfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
4205 \plt@setform
4206 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}
4207 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-1\baselineskip}

```

```

4208 \leavevmode\mtc@strut
4209 \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup
4210 \end{ptc@verse}%

```

\ptc@rule The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break (if \chapter is not defined), and \afterpartlot. The blank line (\) is essential.

```

\mtc@zrule
samepage
\afterpartlot 4211 \kernafterpartlot
4212 \nopagebreak[4]\plt@rule\null\leavevmode\%
4213 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
4214 \par\@ifundefined{chapter}{\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}}%
4215 \afterpartlot\fi}

```

## 9.50 Auxiliary commands for printing parttocs

\@dottedtocline The following auxiliary commands are used in the printing of parttocs. Note that \l@xpart uses a huge depth to inhibit the printing of its contents line (except if you cheat). These commands are similar to \l@section, only the arguments have been altered:

```

\l@pchapter
\l@psect
\pchapter 4216 \def\l@xpart{\@dottedtocline{\@M}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
\psect 4217 \def\l@pchapter{\@dottedtocline{1}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
4218 \def\l@psect{\@dottedtocline{2}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
4219 \def\pchapter{pchapter}
4220 \def\psect{psect}

```

## 9.51 Patching the \part command, continued

\sv@part We patch both branches of the \part command: \@part (unstarred \part) and \@spart (\part\*). We add the incrementation of the ptc counter to both branches. In the unstarred branch, we add xpart entries in the TOC, the LOF and the LOT. In the starred branch, we add a \partbegin line in the TOC. This command is just a marker and does nothing real

```

\sv@spart (\relax).
\ptc@spart
\@spart 4221 \let\sv@part\mtc@svpart
\stepcounter 4222 \def\@part[#1]#2{\sv@part[#1]{#2}\relax
\partbegin 4223 \addcontentsline{lof}{xpart}{#1}%
\partend 4224 \addcontentsline{lot}{xpart}{#1}%
4225 \addcontentsline{toc}{xpart}{#1}%
4226 \stepcounter{ptc}}
4227 \let\sv@spart\@spart
4228 \def\@spart{\stepcounter{ptc}\sv@spart}
4229 \let\ptc@spart\@spart
4230 \def\@spart{\addtocontents{toc}{\protect\partend}\ptc@spart}

```

```

4231 \def\@spart{\addtocontents{toc}{\protect\partbegin}\ptc@spart}
4232 \let\partend\relax
4233 \let\partbegin\relax

```

## 9.52 The \doparttoc command and its siblings

\doparttoc The \doparttoc command works like the \dominitoc command, \dopartlof like \dopartlof and \dopartlot like \dominilot.

\@doparttoc The \@doparttoc command extracts information from the .toc file and creates the .ptc(N) files (.ptc becomes .P on MS-DOS).

```

4234 \def\@doparttoc#1{%
4235   \makeatletter
4236   \setcounter{ptc}{0}%
4237   \PTC@next#1.toc\relax\}\setcounter{ptc}{0}}%

```

\@dopartlof The \@dopartlof command extracts information from the .lof file and creates the .plf(N) files (.plf becomes .G on MS-DOS).

```

4238 \def\@dopartlof#1{%
4239   \makeatletter
4240   \setcounter{ptc}{0}%
4241   \PLF@next#1.lof\relax\}\setcounter{ptc}{0}}%

```

\@dopartlot The \@dopartlot command extracts information from the .lot file and creates the .plt(N) files (.plt becomes .U on MS-DOS).

```

4242 \def\@dopartlot#1{%
4243   \makeatletter
4244   \setcounter{ptc}{0}%
4245   \PLT@next#1.lot\relax\}\setcounter{ptc}{0}}%

```

\doparttoc We define the user macros, who detect the optional argument:

\dopartlof

```

\dopartlot 4246 \def\doparttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\doparttoc@}{\doparttoc@[1]}}
4247 \def\dopartlof{\@ifnextchar[{\dopartlof@}{\dopartlof@[1]}}
4248 \def\dopartlot{\@ifnextchar[{\dopartlot@}{\dopartlot@[1]}}

```

```

\doparttoc@ We treat the optional argument of \doparttoc (it becomes the default position for titles of
\if@mtc@hints@ parttoc) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation.
\if@doparttoc@used@
\@mtc@hints@given@true 4249 \def\doparttoc@[#1]{%
\df@ptitc 4250 \if@mtc@hints@
\@pti 4251 \if@doparttoc@used@
\@pti 4252 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\c@pti 4253 {The \string\doparttoc \space command
\l@pti 4254 \MessageBreak
\r@pti 4255 has been invoked more than once
4256 \MessageBreak}
4257 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
4258 \fi
4259 \fi
4260 \global\@doparttoc@used@true
4261 \if #1e\let\df@ptitc\@pti%
4262 \else\if #1n\let\df@ptitc\n@pti%
4263 \else\if #1c\let\df@ptitc\c@pti%
4264 \else\if #1l\let\df@ptitc\l@pti%
4265 \else\if #1r\let\df@ptitc\r@pti%
4266 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
4267 \@@doparttoc}

```

```

\dopartlof@ We treat the optional argument of \dopartlof (it becomes the default position for titles of
\if@dopartlof@used@ partlof) and flag this macro as used, a hint detects any spurious invocation.
\if@mtc@hints@
\@mtc@hints@given@true 4268 \def\dopartlof@[#1]{%
\df@ptilf 4269 \if@mtc@hints@
\@pti 4270 \if@dopartlof@used@
\@pti 4271 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\c@pti 4272 {The \string\dopartlof \space command
\l@pti 4273 \MessageBreak
\r@pti 4274 has been invoked more than once
4275 \MessageBreak}
4276 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
4277 \fi
4278 \fi
4279 \global\@dopartlof@used@true
4280 \if #1e\let\df@ptilf\@pti%
4281 \else\if #1n\let\df@ptilf\n@pti%
4282 \else\if #1c\let\df@ptilf\c@pti%
4283 \else\if #1l\let\df@ptilf\l@pti%
4284 \else\if #1r\let\df@ptilf\r@pti%
4285 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
4286 \@@dopartlof}

```

```

\dopartlot@ We treat the optional argument of \dopartlot (it becomes the default position for titles of
\if@mtc@hints@ partlofs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation.
\@mtc@hints@given@true
\if@dopartlot@used@ 4287 \def\dopartlot@[#1]{%
\df@ptilt 4288 \if@mtc@hints@
\@pti 4289 \if@dopartlot@used@
\@npti 4290 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\@cpti 4291 {The \string\dopartlot \space command
\@lpti 4292 \MessageBreak
\@rpti 4293 has been invoked more than once
4294 \MessageBreak}
4295 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
4296 \fi
4297 \fi
4298 \global\@dopartlot@used@true
4299 \if #1e\let\df@ptilt\@pti%
4300 \else\if #1n\let\df@ptilt\@npti%
4301 \else\if #1c\let\df@ptilt\@cpti%
4302 \else\if #1l\let\df@ptilt\@lpti%
4303 \else\if #1r\let\df@ptilt\@rpti%
4304 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
4305 \@@dopartlot}

\@@doparttoc These macros invoke the @dopart... commands to create the mini-table file, then close the
\@@dopartlof file descriptor.
\@@dopartlot
\tf@mtc 4306 \def\@@doparttoc{\@doparttoc{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
4307 \def\@@dopartlof{\@dopartlof{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
4308 \def\@@dopartlot{\@dopartlot{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}

```

### 9.52.1 Processing macros for the parttoes

```

\PTC@next Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:
\PTC@list
\PTC@loop 4309 \def\PTC@next#1\relax#2\{\%
4310 \edef\PTC@list{#2}%
4311 \PTC@loop{#1}}

\PTC@toc Check if the list is empty:
\PTC@list
\PTC@explist 4312 \def\PTC@toc{%
4313 \ifx\PTC@list\@empty\else\expandafter\PTC@explist\fi}

```

```

\PTC@contentsline The macro \PTC@contentsline analyses the lines read from the TOC file and detects inter-
  \part          esting keywords. If \part is found, the ptc counter is incremented and a new partlof file is
  \theptc        created.
  \tf@mtc
  \ptcname
\MTC@WriteContentsLine 4314 \def\PTC@contentsline#1#2#3#4{% %%HO/DV: 4 instead of 3 parameters
  4315   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\part
  4316     \stepcounter{ptc}%
  4317     \if@longextensions@%
  4318       \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
  4319       {Writing\space\jobname.ptc\theptc\@gobble}%
  4320       \def\ptcname{\jobname.ptc\theptc}%
  4321     \else
  4322       \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
  4323       {Writing\space\jobname.P\theptc\@gobble}%
  4324       \def\ptcname{\jobname.P\theptc}%
  4325     \fi
  4326     \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
  4327     \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\ptcname
  4328   \fi
  4329   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starp\relax
  4330     \stepcounter{ptc}%

```

\if@longextensions@ We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open it:

```

4331   \if@longextensions@%
4332     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
4333     {Writing\space\jobname.ptc\theptc}%
4334     \def\ptcname{\jobname.ptc\theptc}%
4335   \else
4336     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
4337     {Writing\space\jobname.P\theptc}%
4338     \def\ptcname{\jobname.P\theptc}%
4339   \fi
4340   \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4341   \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\ptcname
4342 \fi

```

\mtc@toks The token register \mtc@toks is used to pass the entry to \MTC@WriteContentsline:

```

4343   \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%

```

```

\MTC@WriteContentsline Now, we filter the relevant contents lines; this code extracts and writes info for chapters,
  \chapter            sections, etc.:
  \pchapter
  \section 4344   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter
  \coffee 4345   \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcC}{#3}{#4}%
  \subsection 4346 \fi
  \subsubsection
  \paragraph
  \subparagraph

```



```

4347 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\pchapter
4348 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcC}{#3}{#4}%
4349 \fi
4350 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section
4351 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcS}{#3}{#4}%
4352 \fi
4353 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\coffee
4354 \MTC@WriteCoffeeline{#1}{#3}%
4355 \fi
4356 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsection
4357 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSS}{#3}{#4}%
4358 \fi
4359 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsubsection
4360 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
4361 \fi
4362 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\paragraph
4363 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcP}{#3}{#4}%
4364 \fi
4365 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subparagraph
4366 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSP}{#3}{#4}%
4367 \fi

```

\MTC@WriteContentsline And for the starred sectionning commands:

```

\starchapter
\starsection 4368 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starchapter
\starsubsection 4369 %%H0: the following line should be disabled: \stepcounter{ptc}%
\starsubsubsection 4370 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcC}{#3}{#4}%
\starparagraph 4371 \fi
\starsubparagraph 4372 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsection
4373 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcS}{#3}{#4}%
4374 \fi
4375 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsection
4376 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSS}{#3}{#4}%
4377 \fi
4378 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsubsection
4379 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
4380 \fi
4381 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starparagraph
4382 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcP}{#3}{#4}%
4383 \fi
4384 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubparagraph
4385 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{ptcSP}{#3}{#4}%
4386 \fi
4387 }

```

\PTC@explist The loop to read the lines of the TOC file; expands the list of entries and call \PTC@next to  
 \PTC@next process the first one:  
 \PTC@list

```

4388 \def\PTC@explist{\expandafter\PTC@next\PTC@list\}

```

\PTC@loop If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise,  
 \PTC@toc process the next entry in the list.

```
\PTC@read
4389 \def\PTC@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
4390   \ifeof\@inputcheck
4391     \mtcPackageWarning[<W0013>]{minitoc}%
4392     {No file #1
4393       \MessageBreak
4394       PARTTOCS NOT PREPARED}%
4395     \expandafter\PTC@toc
4396   \else
4397     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0025>]{minitoc}%
4398     {PREPARING PARTTOCS FROM #1}%
4399     \expandafter\PTC@read\fi}
```

\PTC@read Read the next entry of the .toc file.

```
\PTC@line
4400 \def\PTC@read{%
4401   \read\@inputcheck to\PTC@line
```

\PTC@test The ..... make sure that \PTC@test has enough arguments:

```
\PTC@line
4402   \expandafter\PTC@test\PTC@line.....\PTC@% %%H0: . added
4403   }%
```

\PTC@test The \PTC@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the TOC file, mainly to delimit parts:

```
4404 %%H0/BJ: now patch \PTC@test,
4405 %%H0/BJ: call \PTC@contentsline with 4 instead of 3 parameters
```

\PTC@contentsline Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add  
 \mtc@string the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process  
 \PTC@list the next file in the list.

```
\PTC@toc
\PTC@read 4406 \long\def\PTC@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\PTC@{% %%H0: #6 added
\partend 4407   \ifx#1\contentsline
4408     \let\mtc@string\string
4409     \PTC@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}%
4410     %%H0/DV: 4 instead of 3 parameters
4411     \let\mtc@string\relax
4412   \else\ifx#1\@input
4413     \edef\PTC@list{\PTC@list#2\relax}%
4414   \else\ifx#1\partend
4415     \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4416     \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
```

```

4417 \else\ifx#1\partbegin
4418     \addtocounter{ptc}{-1}%
4419 \fi\fi\fi\fi
4420 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\PTC@toc
4421 \else\expandafter\PTC@read\fi}%

```

### 9.52.2 Processing macros for the partlofs

`\PLF@next` Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:

`\PLF@list`

```

\PLF@loop 4422 \def\PLF@next#1\relax#2\{\%
4423     \edef\PLF@list{#2}%
4424     \PLF@loop{#1}}

```

`\PLF@lof` Check if the list is empty:

`\PLF@list`

```

\PLF@explist 4425 \def\PLF@lof%
4426     \ifx\PLF@list\@empty\else\expandafter\PLF@explist\fi}

```

`\PLF@contentsline` The macro `\PLF@contentsline` analyses the lines read from the LOF file and detects interesting keywords. If `\part` is found, the `ptc` counter is incremented and a new partlof file is created.

`\tf@mtc`

```

\plfname 4427 \def\PLF@contentsline#1#2#3#4{\% %HO: #4 added

```

```

\PLF@WriteContentsLine 4428 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xpart
4429     \stepcounter{ptc}%

```

`\if@longextensions@` We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open it:

`\plfname`

```

4430 \if@longextensions@
4431     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
4432     {Writing\space\jobname.plf\theptc}%
4433     \def\plfname{\jobname.plf\theptc}%
4434 \else
4435     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
4436     {Writing\space\jobname.G\theptc}%
4437     \def\plfname{\jobname.G\theptc}%
4438 \fi
4439 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4440 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\plfname
4441 \fi

```

`\mtc@toks` The token register `\mtc@toks` is used to pass the entry to `\MTC@WriteContentsline`:

`\figure` Now, we filter the relevant contents lines:

```
\subfigure
\mtc@toks 4442 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\figure
\MTC@WriteContentsline 4443 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
4444 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{plf}{#3}{#4}%
4445 \fi
4446 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subfigure
4447 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
4448 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{plfs}{#3}{#4}%
4449 \fi
4450 }
```

`\PLF@explist` The loop to read the lines of the LOF file; expands the list of entries and call `\PLF@next` to process the first one:

```
\PLF@list
4451 \def\PLF@explist{\expandafter\PLF@next\PLF@list\}
```

`\PLF@loop` If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise, `\PLF@lof` process the next entry in the list.

```
\PLF@read
4452 \def\PLF@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
4453 \ifeof\@inputcheck
4454 \mtcPackageWarning[<W0011>]{minitoc}%
4455 {No file #1
4456 \MessageBreak
4457 PARTLOFS NOT PREPARED}%
4458 \expandafter\PLF@lof
4459 \else
4460 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0035>]{minitoc}%
4461 {PREPARING PARTLOFS FROM #1}%
4462 \expandafter\PLF@read\fi}
```

`\PLF@read` Read the next entry of the `.lof` file.

```
\PLF@line
4463 \def\PLF@read{%
4464 \read\@inputcheck to\PLF@line
```

`\PLF@test` The ..... make sure that `\PLF@test` has enough arguments:

```
\PLF@line
4465 \expandafter\PLF@test\PLF@line.....\PLF@% %H0: . added
4466 }%
```

`\PLF@test` The `\PLF@test` macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOF file, mainly to delimit parts:

```
4467 %%H0/BJ: now patch \PLF@test,
4468 %%H0/BJ: call \PLF@contentsline with 4 instead of 3 parameters
```

`\PLF@contentsline` Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is `\@input`, add the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process the next file in the list.

`\PLF@list`

`\PLF@lof`

```
\PLF@read 4469 \long\def\PLF@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\PLF@{% %%H0: #6 added
\partend 4470 \ifx#1\contentsline
4471 \let\mtc@string\string
4472 \PLF@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}% %%H0: #4 added
4473 \let\mtc@string\relax
4474 \else\ifx#1\@input
4475 \edef\PLF@list{\PLF@list#2\relax}%
4476 \else\ifx#1\partend
4477 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4478 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
4479 \else\ifx#1\partbegin
4480 \addtocounter{ptc}{-1}%
4481 \fi\fi\fi\fi
4482 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\PLF@lof
4483 \else\expandafter\PLF@read\fi}%

```

### 9.52.3 Processing macros for the partlots

`\PLT@next` Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:

`\PLT@list`

```
\PLT@loop 4484 \def\PLT@next#1\relax#2\{\%
4485 \edef\PLT@list{#2}%
4486 \PLT@loop{#1}}
```

`\PLT@lot` Check if the list is empty:

`\PLT@list`

```
\PLT@explist 4487 \def\PLT@lot{%
4488 \ifx\PLT@list\@empty\else\expandafter\PLT@explist\fi}
```

`\PLT@contentsline` The macro `\PLT@contentsline` analyses the lines read from the LOT file and detects interesting keywords. If `\part` is found, the `ptc` counter is incremented and a new partlot file is created.

`\theptc`

`\tf@mtc`

`\pltname`

```
4489 \def\PLT@contentsline#1#2#3#4{% %%H0: #4 added
```

`\PLT@WriteContentsLine`

```

4490 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xpart
4491 \stepcounter{ptc}%

```

\if@longextensions@ We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open it:

```

4492 \if@longextensions@%
4493 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
4494 {Writing\space\jobname.plt\theptc}%
4495 \def\pltname{\jobname.plt\theptc}%
4496 \else
4497 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
4498 {Writing\space\jobname.U\theptc}%
4499 \def\pltname{\jobname.U\theptc}%
4500 \fi
4501 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4502 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\pltname
4503 \fi

```

\mtc@toks The token register \mtc@toks is used to pass the entry to \MTC@WriteContentsline:

```

\table Now, we filter the relevant contents lines:
\subtable
\mtc@toks 4504 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\table
\MTC@WriteContentsline 4505 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
4506 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{plt}{#3}{#4}%
4507 \fi
4508 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subtable
4509 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode#2}%
4510 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{pltS}{#3}{#4}%
4511 \fi
4512 }

```

\PLT@explist The loop to read the lines of the LOT file; expands the list of entries and call \PLT@next to process the first one:

```

\PLT@next
\PLT@list
4513 \def\PLT@explist{\expandafter\PLT@next\PLT@list\}

```

\PLT@loop If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise, process the next entry in the list.

```

\PLT@lot
\PLT@read
4514 \def\PLT@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
4515 \ifeof\@inputcheck
4516 \mtcPackageWarning[<W0012>]{minitoc}%

```

```

4517      {No file #1
4518      \MessageBreak
4519      PARTLOTS NOT PREPARED}%
4520      \expandafter\PLT@lot
4521      \else
4522      \mtcPackageInfo[<I0038>]{minitoc}%
4523      {PREPARING PARTLOTS FROM #1}%
4524      \expandafter\PLT@read\fi}

```

\PLT@read Read the next entry of the .lot file.

\PLT@line

```

4525 \def\PLT@read{%
4526   \read\@inputcheck to\PLT@line

```

\PLT@test The ..... make sure that \PLT@test has enough arguments:

\PLT@line

```

4527   \expandafter\PLT@test\PLT@line.....\PLT@% %%H0: . added
4528   }%

```

\PLT@test The \PLT@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOT file, mainly to delimit parts:

```

4529 %%H0/BJ: now patch \PLT@test,
4530 %%H0/BJ: call \PLT@contentsline with 4 instead of 3 parameters

```

\PLT@contentsline Look at the first token of the line. If it is an interesting entry, process it. If it is \@input, add the file to the list. Otherwise ignore. Go around the loop if not at end of file. Finally process the next file in the list.

\PLT@lot

```

\PLT@read 4531 \long\def\PLT@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\PLT@{% %%H0: #6 added
\partend 4532   \ifx#1\contentsline
4533     \let\mtc@string\string
4534     \PLT@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}% %%H0: #4 added
4535     \let\mtc@string\relax
4536   \else\ifx#1\@input
4537     \edef\PLT@list{\PLT@list#2\relax}%
4538   \else\ifx#1\partend
4539     \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4540     \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
4541   \else\ifx#1\partbegin
4542     \addtocounter{ptc}{-1}%
4543   \fi\fi\fi\fi
4544   \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\PLT@lot
4545   \else\expandafter\PLT@read\fi}%

```

End of the part level stuff (begun in section 9.45 on page 303):

```
4546 }%
```

## 9.53 Depth counters for sectlofs and sectlots

```
\AtBeginDocument  If the counters lofdepth and lotdepth are defined, we create new counters for the depths
\c@lofdepth        of the corresponding mini-tables: sectlofdepth and sectlotdepth. These counters are
\c@lotdepth        initialised to 2. This is done after the loading of the packages, in an \AtBeginDocument
\newcounter        block:
\setcounter

4547 \AtBeginDocument{%
4548   \@ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{}%
4549   {\newcounter{sectlofdepth}\setcounter{sectlofdepth}{2}}%
4550   \@ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{}%
4551   {\newcounter{sectlotdepth}\setcounter{sectlotdepth}{2}}%
4552 }
```

## 9.54 Section-level commands

```
\if@mtc@chapter@undef@  The section-level commands are defined only if \chapter is not defined, hence in article-like
\if@mtc@section@def@    document classes, and only if \section is defined:
```

```
4553 \if@mtc@chapter@undef@
4554 \if@mtc@section@def@
```

```
\firstsectionis  We define the obsolete command \firstsectionis (with its harmless warning), the counter
\adjuststc       stc of secttocs, the \adjuststc, \decrementstc and \incrementstc commands, the
\decrementstc    depth counter secttocdepth and its default value 2 (to include at least the subsections),
\incrementstc     the horizontal rule \stc@rule (rule before/after secttoc/sectlof/sectlot), the indentation (both
\stc@rule        sides) \stcindent for the secttocs (with its default values).
\stcindent
\columnwidth     4555 \def\firstsectionis#1%
4556   {\mtcPackageWarning[<W0005>]{minitoc}%
4557   {\string\firstsectionis \space is an obsolete
4558   \MessageBreak
4559   command}}%
4560   \@firstsectionis@used@true}
4561 \newcounter{stc}\setcounter{stc}{0}%
4562 \newcommand{\adjuststc}[1][1]{\addtocounter{stc}{#1}}%
4563 \def\decrementstc{\addtocounter{stc}{-1}}%
4564 \def\incrementstc{\addtocounter{stc}{+1}}%
4565 \newcounter{secttocdepth}\setcounter{secttocdepth}{2}%
```



```

4566 \def\stc@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}%
4567 \newlength\stcindent \stcindent=24\p@

```

## 9.55 Fonts commands for secttocs and co.

```

\stcfont    We define the fonts commands for the secttocs, sectlofs and sectlots and their titles:
\stcSSfont
\stcSSSfont 4568 \def\stcfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\mdseries}    % secttoc
\stcPfont   4569 \def\stcSSfont{\small\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}  % (subsections)
\stcSPfont  4570 \let\stcSSSfont\stcfont    % (subsubsections)
\slffont    4571 \let\stcPfont\stcfont      % (paragraphs)
\slfSfont   4572 \let\stcSPfont\stcfont     % (subparagraphs)
\sltfont    4573 \let\slffont\stcfont        % sectlof (figures)
\sltSfont   4574 \let\slfSfont\stcfont      % sectlof (subfigures)
\stifont    4575 \let\sltfont\stcfont        % sectlot (tables)
\stifont    4576 \let\sltSfont\stcfont      % sectlot (subtables)
\stifont    4577 \def\stifont{\large\rmfamily\upshape\bfseries}    % titles

```

## 9.56 Internal macros for title positionning

Some internal macros for title positionning, from the optional arguments of `\dosecttoc` and `\secttoc` commands (and siblings):

```

\l@sti      Centering, flushleft, flushright or empty titles (with a vertical correction for empty titles, from
\c@sti      Frank MITTELBACH):
\r@sti
\l@sti      4578 \def\c@sti#1{\null\hfill #1\hfill\null}
\l@sti      4579 \def\l@sti#1{\null #1\hfill\null}
\l@sti      4580 \def\r@sti#1{\null\hfill #1\null}
\l@sti      4581 \def\l@sti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}
\l@sti      4582 \def\r@sti#1{\vspace{-\baselineskip}}

\do@stitle  By default, titles are flushleft.
\df@stitle
\do@stilf   4583 \let\do@stitle\l@sti
\df@stilf   4584 \let\df@stitle\l@sti
\do@stilt   4585 \let\do@stilf\l@sti
\df@stilt   4586 \let\df@stilf\l@sti
\l@sti      4587 \let\do@stilt\l@sti
\l@sti      4588 \let\df@stilt\l@sti

```

## 9.57 The `stc@verse` environment

`stc@verse` The `stc@verse` environment is a very simple list environment, analog to the standard `\iftightmtc` `verse` environment. Some formatting parameters are adjusted. The `tight/loose` and `\ifktightmtc` `k-tight/k-loose` package options are honored.

```

4589 \def\stc@verse{\let\=\@centercr
4590 \list{}\itemsep\z@
4591 \itemindent \z@
4592 \listparindent \itemindent
4593 \partopsep \z@
4594 \iftightmtc \parsep \z@ \fi
4595 \ifktightmtc \parskip \z@ \fi
4596 \topsep 1ex %% 20060731 was \z@
4597 \leftmargin\stcindent
4598 \rightmargin\leftmargin}\item[]}
4599 \def\endstc@verse{\nopagebreak[4]\endlist}

```

## 9.58 The `\secttoc`, `\sectlof`, and `\sectlot` commands

These three commands are very similar.

### 9.58.1 The `\secttoc` command

`\secttoc` The `\secttoc` command must be used after `\section` if you need a `secttoc` (no automatic `\secttoc@` `secttoc`). Its code is similar to the code of `\minitoc` (but simpler). First, `\secttoc` detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, `d`, if it is missing. Then, `\secttoc@` is called with the effective position as argument:

```

4600 \def\secttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\secttoc@}{\secttoc@d}}

```

`\secttoc@` The `\secttoc@` macro does the real work. It first sets the flag `\if@secttoc@used@` (for `\if@secttoc@used@` a consistency hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the `\if@longextensions@` `secttoc` file):

```

\@tocfile
\thestc 4601 \def\secttoc@[#1]{%
4602 \global\@secttoc@used@true
4603 \if@longextensions@%
4604 \def\@tocfile{stc\thestc}%
4605 \else
4606 \def\@tocfile{S\thestc}%
4607 \fi

```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then, we check the presence and the emptiness of the secttoc file and give a warning if it is  
`\if@mtc@FE` not here or is empty:  
`\@tocfile`

```

4608      \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
4609      \if@mtc@FE
4610      \mtcPackageInfo[<I0006>]{minitoc}%
4611          {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
4612      \@mtc@empty@secttoc@true
4613      \else

```

`\beforesecttoc` If the secttoc file is present and not empty, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation  
`\thispagesecttocstyle` code: first, `\beforesecttoc`, of course, and the page style feature:

```

4614      \beforesecttoc
4615      \thispagesecttocstyle

```

`\do@stitle` We begin a samepage environment, then treat the positionning argument. If the title is empty,  
`\e@sti` we simulate the “e” positionning.

```

\@n@sti
\@c@sti 4616 %      \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\stctitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\stctitle}}%
\@l@sti 4617      \relax\begin{samepage}%
\@r@sti 4618      \if #1e\let\do@stitle\@e@sti
\@df@sti 4619      \else\if #1n\let\do@stitle\@n@sti
\mtc@CkStr 4620      \else\if #1c\let\do@stitle\@c@sti
\stctitle 4621      \else\if #1l\let\do@stitle\@l@sti
\if@mtc@FE 4622      \else\if #1r\let\do@stitle\@r@sti
samepage 4623      \else\if #1d\let\do@stitle\@df@stitle
4624      \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
4625      \mtc@CkStr{\stctitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@stitle\@e@sti\relax\fi

```

`\raggedright` We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the secttoc,  
`\parskip` then we set the font:  
`\stcfont`

```

4626      \raggedright
4627      \parskip=\z@%
4628      \reset@font\stcfont%
4629      \parindent=\z@%
4630      \nopagebreak[4]%

```

`\stc@rule` The secttoc title is set in a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and  
`tabular` the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an `\hline`. It is the top rule of  
`\columnwidth` the secttoc.

```

\stifont
\do@stitle 4631      \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
\mtc@v 4632      \par\noindent
\stctitle
\hline

```

```

4633 \nopagebreak[4]%
4634 \ifx\stc@rule\relax
4635 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
4636 \reset@font\stifont\do@stitle{\mtc@v\stctitle}\\
4637 \end{tabular}%
4638 \else
4639 \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
4640 \reset@font\stifont\do@stitle{\mtc@v\stctitle}\\\hline
4641 \end{tabular}%
4642 \fi

```

\mtc@zrule Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting parameters:  
 \mtc@BBR  
 \stcindent

```

4643 \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
4644 \leftmargin\stcindent
4645 \rightmargin\stcindent
4646 \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
4647 \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%

```

stc@verse We enter in a stc@verse environment to format the secttoc. The toc depth is forced (locally) to secttocdepth. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position.  
 \c@tocdepth  
 \c@secttocdepth  
 \mtc@BBR 4648 \begin{stc@verse}\c@tocdepth=\c@secttocdepth%  
 4649 \leavevmode\\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip

\stc@pgno If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro \@dottedtocline with its undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from \mtcsetformat are activated via \stc@setform. Then the secttoc file is inserted, followed by a strut, and the \mtc@hook@beforeinputfile stc@verse environment is terminated.  
 \stc@setform  
 \@tocfile 4650 \begin{group}  
 \mtc@strut 4651 \makeatletter  
 stc@verse 4652 \stc@setform%  
 4653 \@ifundefined{stc@pgno}%  
 4654 {\let\@dottedtocline\undottedtocline}{  
 4655 \@filesfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile  
 4656 \stc@setform%  
 4657 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}  
 4658 \vspace{-1ex} \vspace{-.5\baselineskip}  
 4659 \leavevmode\mtc@strut  
 4660 \global\@nbreakfalse\end{group}  
 4661 \end{stc@verse}%

```

\stc@rule The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break and
\mtc@zrule \aftersecttoc.
samepage
\aftersecttoc 4662 \kernaftersecttoc
4663 \nopagebreak[4]\stc@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
4664 \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
4665 \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\aftersecttoc\fi}%

```

### 9.58.2 The \sectlof command

`\sectlof` The `\sectlof` command must be used after `\section` if you need a sectlof (no automatic sectlof). Its code is similar to the code of `\minilof` (but simpler). First, `\sectlof` detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, `d`, if it is missing. Then, `\sectlof@` is called with the effective position as argument:

```
4666 \def\sectlof{\ifnextchar[{\sectlof@}{\sectlof@d}}}
```

`\sectlof@` The `\sectlof@` macro does the real work. It first sets the flag `\if@sectlof@used@` (for a consistency hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the sectlof file):

```

\if@sectlof@used@
\if@longextensions@
\@tocfile
\thestc 4667 \def\sectlof@[#1]{%
4668 \global\@sectlof@used@true
4669 \if@longextensions@%
4670 \def\@tocfile{slf\thestc}%
4671 \else
4672 \def\@tocfile{H\thestc}%
4673 \fi

```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then, we check the presence and the emptiness of the sectlof file and give a warning if it is not here or is empty:

```

\@tocfile
4674 \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
4675 \if@mtc@FE
4676 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0006>]{minitoc}%
4677 {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
4678 \@mtc@empty@sectlof@true
4679 \else

```

`\beforesectlof` If the sectlof file is present and not empty, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation code: first, `\beforesectlof`, of course, and the page style feature:

```

4680 \thispagesectlofstyle
4681 %% \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{\slftitle}}{\MakeUppercase{\slftitle}}%
4682 \beforesectlof

```

```

\do@stilf We begin a samepage environment, then treat the positionning argument. If the title is empty,
  \e@sti we simulate the “e” positionning.
  \n@sti
  \c@sti 4683      \relax\begin{samepage}%
  \l@sti 4684      \if #1e\let\do@stilf\e@sti
  \r@sti 4685      \else\if #1n\let\do@stilf\n@sti
  \df@sti 4686      \else\if #1c\let\do@stilf\c@sti
\mtc@CkStr 4687      \else\if #1l\let\do@stilf\l@sti
\slftitle 4688      \else\if #1r\let\do@stilf\r@sti
\if@mtc@FE 4689      \else\if #1d\let\do@stilf\df@stilf
  samepage 4690      \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
  4691      \mtc@CkStr{\slftitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@stilf\e@sti\relax\fi

\raggedright We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the sectlof,
  \parskip then we set the font:
  \slffont
  4692      \raggedright
  4693      \parskip=\z@%
  4694      \reset@font\slffont%
  4695      \parindent=\z@%
  4696      \nepagebreak[4]%

\slf@rule The sectlof title is set in a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and
  tabular the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an \hline. It is the top rule of
  \stifont the sectlof.
\columnwidth
\do@stilf 4697      \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nepagebreak[4]%
  \mtc@v 4698      \par\noindent
\slftitle 4699      \ifx\slf@rule\relax
  \hline 4700      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
  4701      \reset@font\stifont\do@stilf{\mtc@v\slftitle}\\
  4702      \end{tabular}%
  4703      \else
  4704      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
  4705      \mtc@hstrut
  4706      \reset@font\stifont\do@stilf{\mtc@v\slftitle}\\\hline
  4707      \end{tabular}%
  4708      \fi

\mtc@zrule Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting
  \mtc@BBR parameters:
\stcindent
  4709      \nepagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\\mtc@BBR
  4710      \leftmargin\stcindent
  4711      \rightmargin\stcindent
  4712      \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
  4713      \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%
```

`stc@verse` We enter in a `stc@verse` environment to format the `sectlof`. The toc depth is forced (locally) to `sectlofdepth`. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position.

`\c@tocdepth`

`\c@sectlofdepth`

```

\mtc@BBR 4714      \begin{stc@verse}%
4715      \@ifundefined{c@lofdepth}%
4716      {}%
4717      {c@lofdepth=c@sectlofdepth
4718      \ifnumc@lofdepth<1\relaxc@lofdepth=1\fi}
4719      \leavevmode\\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip

```

`\slf@pgno` If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro `\@dottedtocline` with its undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from `\mtcsetformat` are activated via `\slf@setform`. Then the `sectlof` file is inserted, followed by a strut, and the `stc@verse` environment is terminated.

`\@dottedtocline`

`\@undottedtocline`

`\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile`

```

\slf@setform
\@tocfile 4720 \begingroup
\mtc@strut 4721 \makeatletter
stc@verse 4722 \@ifundefined{slf@pgno}%
4723 {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
4724 \@filesfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
4725 \slf@setform%
4726 \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}
4727 \global\@nobreakfalse\endgroup
4728 \end{stc@verse}%

```

`\stc@rule` The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break and

`\mtc@zrule` `\aftersectlof`. The blank line (`\\`) is essential.

`samepage`

`\aftersectlof`

```

4729      \kernaftersectlof
4730      \nopagebreak[4]\slf@rule\null\leavevmode\\%
4731      \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
4732      \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\aftersectlof\fi}%

```

### 9.58.3 The `\sectlot` command

`\sectlot` The `\sectlot` command must be used after `\section` if you need a `sectlot` (no automatic `sectlot`). Its code is similar to the code of `\minilot` (but simpler). First, `\sectlot` detects the presence of its optional argument, and uses its default value, `d`, if it is missing. Then, `\sectlot@` is called with the effective position as argument:

`\sectlot@`

```

4733 \def\sectlot{\@ifnextchar[{\sectlot@}{\sectlot@d}}

```

`\sectlot@` The `\sectlot@` macro does the real work. It first sets the flag `\if@sectlot@used@` (for a consistency hint) and checks if long extensions are used or not (to create the name of the sectlot file):

```

\if@sectlot@used@
\if@longextensions@
  \@tocfile
    \thestc 4734 \def\sectlot@[#1]{%
              4735 \global\@sectlot@used@true
              4736 \if@longextensions@%
              4737 \def\@tocfile{slt\thestc}%
              4738 \else
              4739 \def\@tocfile{I\thestc}%
              4740 \fi

```

`\mtc@CkFile` Then, we check the presence and the emptiness of the sectlot file and give a warning if it is not here or is empty:

```

\@tocfile
  4741      \mtc@CkFile{\jobname.\@tocfile}
  4742      \if@mtc@FE
  4743      \mtc@PackageInfo[<I00006>]{minitoc}%
  4744          {\jobname.\@tocfile\space is empty}
  4745      \@mtc@empty@sectlot@true
  4746      \else

```

`\beforesectlot` If the sectlot file is present and not empty, we can insert it, but we must add some presentation code: first, `\beforesectlot`, of course, and the page style feature:

```

  4747      \thispagesectlotstyle
  4748      %%      \mtc@markboth{\MakeUppercase{slttitle}}{\MakeUppercase{slttitle}}%
  4749      \beforesectlot

```

`\do@stilt` We begin a `samepage` environment, then treat the positionning argument. If the title is empty, `\e@sti` we simulate the “e” positionning.

```

\@n@sti
\@c@sti 4750      \relax\begin{samepage}%
\@l@sti 4751      \if #1e\let\do@stilt\e@sti
\@r@sti 4752      \else\if #1n\let\do@stilt\n@sti
\@df@sti 4753      \else\if #1c\let\do@stilt\c@sti
\mtc@CkStr 4754      \else\if #1l\let\do@stilt\l@sti
\slttitle 4755      \else\if #1r\let\do@stilt\r@sti
\if@mtc@FE 4756      \else\if #1d\let\do@stilt\df@stilt
\if@mtc@FE 4757      \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi
samepage 4758      \mtc@CkStr{\slttitle}\if@mtc@FE \let\do@stilt\e@sti\relax\fi

```

`\raggedright` We adjust some formatting parameters and avoid a page break between the title and the sectlot, `\parskip` then we set the font: `\sltfont`



```

4759      \raggedright
4760      \parskip=\z@%
4761      \reset@font\sltfont%
4762      \parindent=\z@%
4763      \nopagebreak[4]%

```

`\stc@rule` The sectlot title is set in a tabular environment (to inhibit a page break between the title and the top rule), with a rule at its bottom if necessary. This rule is an `\hline`. It is the top rule of the sectlot.

```

\columnrule
\do@stilt 4764      \kern-0.8\baselineskip\nopagebreak[4]%
      \mtc@v 4765      \par\noindent
\sltttitle 4766      \ifx\slt@rule\relax
      \hline 4767      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
4768      \reset@font\stifont\do@stilt{\mtc@v\sltttitle}\\
4769      \end{tabular}%
4770      \else
4771      \begin{tabular}{@{}p{\columnwidth}@{}}
4772      \mtc@hstrut
4773      \reset@font\stifont\do@stilt{\mtc@v\sltttitle}\\
4774      \end{tabular}%
4775      \fi

```

`\mtc@zrule` Then, we adjust the position under the top rule and set the indentation and some formatting parameters:

```

\mtc@BBR
\stcindent
4776      \nopagebreak[4]\null\leavevmode\mtc@zrule\\
4777      \leftmargin\stcindent
4778      \rightmargin\stcindent
4779      \itemindent=\z@\labelwidth=\z@%
4780      \labelsep=\z@\listparindent=\z@%

```

`stc@verse` We enter in a `stc@verse` environment to format the sectlot. The toc depth is forced (locally) to `sectlotdepth`. A little trick is necessary to adjust the position.

```

\c@sectlotdepth
\mtc@BBR 4781      \begin{stc@verse}%
4782      \ifundefined{c@lotdepth}%
4783      {}%
4784      {\c@lotdepth=\c@sectlotdepth
4785      \ifnum\c@lotdepth<1\relax\c@lotdepth=1\fi}
4786      \leavevmode\\
\mtc@BBR\vskip -.5\baselineskip

```

`\slt@pgno` If the contents lines must have no numbers, we replace the macro `\@dottedtocline` with its undotted version. A hook is added, and the formatting settings coming from `\mtcsetformat` are activated via `\slt@setform`. Then the sectlot file is inserted, followed by a strut, and the `stc@verse` environment is terminated.

```

\@undottedtocline
\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
\slt@setform
\@tocfile
\mtc@strut
stc@verse

```

```

4787 \begingroup
4788   \makeatletter
4789   \@ifundefined{slt@pgno}%
4790   {\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}
4791   \gdef\thetoc{\arabic{stc}}
4792   \@fileswfalse\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile
4793   \slt@setform%
4794   \@input{\jobname.\@tocfile}
4795   \global\@nbreakfalse\endgroup
4796   \end{stc@verse}%

```

```

\stc@rule The final part is just to add the bottom rule, if necessary, a possible page break and
\mtc@zrule \aftersectlot.
samepage
\aftersectlot 4797   \kernaftersectlof
4798   \nopagebreak[4]\slt@rule\@null\leavevmode\%
4799   \vskip-1.0\baselineskip\mtc@zrule\end{samepage}%
4800   \par\pagebreak[1]\vspace*{-1ex}\aftersectlot\fi}%

```

## 9.59 Auxiliary internal commands, section level

```

\l@xsect We define auxiliary commands, used for the mini-tables and as delimiters in the TOC file (and
\l@xsection LOF and LOT files). The depth of xsect is huge to inhibit the printing of its contents line
\@dottedtocline (except if you cheat).
\l@schapter
\l@xsect 4801 \def\l@xsect{\@dottedtocline{\@M}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
\l@xsection 4802 \def\l@xsection{\@dottedtocline{\@M}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
\l@schapter 4803 \def\l@schapter{\@dottedtocline{1}{1.0em}{2.3em}}
4804 \def\xsect{xsect}
4805 \def\xsection{xsection}
4806 \def\schapter{schapter}

```

## 9.60 Patching the \section command (continued)

```

\@sect We patch the both branches of the \section command: \@sect for the unstarred version and
\addcontentsline \@ssect for the starred version. First, for the unstarred version (\@sect), we add a xsect
contents line in the LOF and in the LOT. The test \ifnum #2=1 restricts the action to the
section level macros (because \@sect is also used by \subsection and below, which have
no mini-tables).

4807 \let\sv@sect\@sect
4808 \gdef\@sect#1#2#3#4#5#6[#7]#8{%
4809 \ifnum #2=1\relax

```

```

4810 \addcontentsline{lof}{xsect}{#7}%
4811 \addcontentsline{lot}{xsect}{#7}%
4812 \fi
4813 \sv@sect{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}{#4}{#5}{#6}[[{#7}]{#8}}

```

\section If it is a section (unstarred or starred via \starsection), we add a xsect entry in the LOF  
\starsection and in the LOT.  
\addcontentsline

```

4814 \def\@sect#1#2#3#4#5#6[#7]#8{
4815 \expandafter
4816 \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section\relax
4817 \addcontentsline{lof}{xsect}{#7}%
4818 \addcontentsline{lot}{xsect}{#7}%
4819 \fi
4820 \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsection\relax
4821 \addcontentsline{lof}{xsect}{#7}%
4822 \addcontentsline{lot}{xsect}{#7}%
4823 \fi

```

\@svsec And the remainder of the section header formatting:  
\refstepcounter  
\@tempskipa 4824 \ifnum #2>\c@secnumdepth\relax  
\@hangfrom 4825 \let\@svsec\@empty  
\addcontentsline 4826 \else  
\numberline 4827 \refstepcounter{#1}%  
\@svsechd 4828 \edef\@svsec{\csname the#1\endcsname\hskip 1em}%  
\@xsect 4829 \fi  
4830 \@tempskipa #5\relax  
4831 \ifdim \@tempskipa>\z@  
4832 \begingroup #6\relax  
4833 \@hangfrom{\hskip #3\relax\@svsec}%  
4834 {\interlinepenalty \@M #8\par}%  
4835 \endgroup  
4836 \csname #1mark\endcsname{#7}\addcontentsline  
4837 {toc}{#1}{\ifnum #2>\c@secnumdepth\relax  
4838 \else  
4839 \protect\numberline{\csname the#1\endcsname}%  
4840 \fi  
4841 #7}%  
4842 \else  
4843 \def\@svsechd{#6\hskip #3\relax  
4844 \@svsec #8\csname #1mark\endcsname  
4845 {#7}\addcontentsline  
4846 {toc}{#1}{\ifnum #2>\c@secnumdepth\relax  
4847 \else  
4848 \protect\numberline{\csname the#1\endcsname}  
4849 \fi  
4850 #7}}%  
4851 \fi  
4852 \@xsect{#5}}

```

\@sect Then we patch the unstarred branch (\@sect). We define also the delimiting commands
\sectbegin \sectbegin and \sectend commands. We do not add \sectbegin if it is a subsection
\sectend or deeper.
\stc@sect
\addtocontents 4853 \let\stc@sect\@sect
4854 \def\@sect#1#2#3#4#5#6[#7]#8{%
4855   \ifnum #2<1 \relax
4856   \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\sectbegin}
4857   \fi
4858   \stc@sect{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}{#6}[[#7]][#8]}
4859 \let\sectend\relax
4860 \let\sectbegin\relax

```

## 9.61 The \dosecttoc command and siblings

The \dosecttoc command is very similar to \dominitoc.

```

\dosecttoc The \dosecttoc command extracts information from the .toc file and creates the .stc(N)
\@dosecttoc files (.stc becomes .S on MS-DOS).
\STC@next

```

```

4861 \def\@dosecttoc#1{%
4862   \makeatletter
4863   \setcounter{stc}{0}
4864   \STC@next#1.toc\relax\}\setcounter{stc}{0}}

```

```

\dosectlof The \dosectlof command extracts information from the .lof file and creates the .slf(N)
\@dosectlof files (.slf becomes .H on MS-DOS).
\SLF@next

```

```

4865 \def\@dosectlof#1{%
4866   \makeatletter
4867   \setcounter{stc}{0}
4868   \SLF@next#1.lof\relax\}\setcounter{stc}{0}}

```

```

\dosectlot The \dosectlot command extracts information from the .lot file and creates the .slt(N)
\@dosectlot files (.slt becomes .V on MS-DOS).
\PLT@next

```

```

4869 \def\@dosectlot#1{%
4870   \makeatletter
4871   \setcounter{stc}{0}
4872   \SLT@next#1.lot\relax\}\setcounter{stc}{0}}

```

`\dosecttoc` We define the user-level macros, who detect the optional argument:

`\dosectlof`

```
\dosectlot 4873 \def\dosecttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\dosecttoc@}{\dosecttoc@[1]}}
4874 \def\dosectlof{\@ifnextchar[{\dosectlof@}{\dosectlof@[1]}}
4875 \def\dosectlot{\@ifnextchar[{\dosectlot@}{\dosectlot@[1]}}
```

`\dosecttoc@` We treat the optional argument of `\dosecttoc` (it becomes the default position for titles of secttocs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation.

`\if@mtc@hints@`

`\@mtc@hints@given@true`

```
\if@dosecttoc@used@ 4876 \def\dosecttoc@[#1]{%
\df@stitle 4877 \if@mtc@hints@
\@e@sti 4878 \if@dosecttoc@used@
\@n@sti 4879 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\@c@sti 4880 {The \string\dosecttoc \space command
\@l@sti 4881 \MessageBreak
\@r@sti 4882 has been invoked more than once
4883 \MessageBreak}
4884 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
4885 \fi
4886 \fi
4887 \global\@dosecttoc@used@true
4888 \if #1e\let\df@stitle\@e@sti%
4889 \else\if #1n\let\df@stitle\@n@sti%
4890 \else\if #1c\let\df@stitle\@c@sti%
4891 \else\if #1l\let\df@stitle\@l@sti%
4892 \else\if #1r\let\df@stitle\@r@sti%
4893 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
4894 \@@dosecttoc}
```

`\dosectlof@` We treat the optional argument of `\dosectlof` (it becomes the default position for titles of sectlofs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation.

`\if@mtc@hints@`

`\@mtc@hints@given@true`

```
\if@dosectlof@used@ 4895 \def\dosectlof@[#1]{%
\df@stilf 4896 \if@mtc@hints@
\@e@sti 4897 \if@dosectlof@used@
\@n@sti 4898 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\@c@sti 4899 {The \string\dosectlof \space command
\@l@sti 4900 \MessageBreak
\@r@sti 4901 has been invoked more than once
4902 \MessageBreak}
4903 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true
4904 \fi
4905 \fi
4906 \global\@dosectlof@used@true
4907 \if #1e\let\df@stilf\@e@sti%
4908 \else\if #1n\let\df@stilf\@n@sti%
4909 \else\if #1c\let\df@stilf\@c@sti%
4910 \else\if #1l\let\df@stilf\@l@sti%
4911 \else\if #1r\let\df@stilf\@r@sti%
4912 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%
```

4913 \@@dosectlof}

\dosectlot@ We treat the optional argument of \dosectlot (it becomes the default position for titles of  
 \if@mtc@hints@ sectlofs) and flag this macro as used; a hint detects any spurious invocation.  
 \@mtc@hints@given@true  
 \if@dosectlot@used@ 4914 \def\dosectlot@[#1]{%  
 \df@stilt 4915 \if@mtc@hints@  
 \e@sti 4916 \if@dosectlot@used@  
 \n@sti 4917 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%  
 \c@sti 4918 {The \string\dosectlot \space command  
 \l@sti 4919 \MessageBreak  
 \r@sti 4920 has been invoked more than once  
 4921 \MessageBreak}  
 4922 \global\@mtc@hints@given@true  
 4923 \fi  
 4924 \fi  
 4925 \global\@dosectlot@used@true  
 4926 \if #1e\let\df@stilt\e@sti%  
 4927 \else\if #1n\let\df@stilt\n@sti%  
 4928 \else\if #1c\let\df@stilt\c@sti%  
 4929 \else\if #1l\let\df@stilt\l@sti%  
 4930 \else\if #1r\let\df@stilt\r@sti%  
 4931 \fi\fi\fi\fi\fi%  
 4932 \@@dosectlot}

\@@dosecttoc These macros invoke the \@@dosect... commands to create the mini-table file, then close the  
 \@@dosectlof file descriptor.  
 \@@dosectlot

\tf@mtc 4933 \def\@@dosecttoc{\@@dosecttoc{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}  
 4934 \def\@@dosectlof{\@@dosectlof{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}  
 4935 \def\@@dosectlot{\@@dosectlot{\jobname}\immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}

\STC@next Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:

\STC@list

\STC@loop 4936 \def\STC@next#1\relax#2\\{%  
 4937 \edef\STC@list{#2}%  
 4938 \STC@loop{#1}}

\STC@toc Check if the list is empty:

\STC@list

\STC@explist 4939 \def\STC@toc{%  
 4940 \ifx\STC@list\@empty\else\expandafter\STC@explist\fi}

```

\STC@contentsline The macro \STC@contentsline analyses the lines read from the TOC file. If \section is
\section found, the stc counter is incremented and a new secttoc file is created.
\thestc
\tf@mtc 4941 \def\STC@contentsline#1#2#3#4{% %%H0: #4 added
\stcname 4942 \gdef\thestc{\arabic{stc}}% %%H0: space removed
\MTC@WriteContentsLine 4943 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section
4944 \stepcounter{stc}%
4945 %% \def\thestc{\arabic{stc}} %% H0: removed

\if@longextensions@ We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open
\stcname it:

4946 \if@longextensions@%
4947 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
4948 {Writing\space\jobname.stc\thestc}%
4949 \def\stcname{\jobname.stc\thestc}%
4950 \else
4951 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
4952 {Writing\space\jobname.S\thestc}%
4953 \def\stcname{\jobname.S\thestc}%
4954 \fi
4955 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4956 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\stcname
4957 \fi

\mtc@toks Now, we filter the relevant contents lines:
\MTC@WriteCoffeeline
\MTC@WriteContentsline 4958 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%
\coffee 4959 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\coffee
\subsection 4960 \MTC@WriteCoffeeline{#1}{#3}%
\subsubsection 4961 \fi
\paragraph 4962 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsection
\subparagraph 4963 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSS}{#3}{#4}%
4964 \fi
4965 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subsubsection
4966 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
4967 \fi
4968 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\paragraph
4969 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcP}{#3}{#4}%
4970 \fi
4971 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subparagraph
4972 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSP}{#3}{#4}%
4973 \fi

\starsection A starred section terminates the current section and creates a new secttoc file:
\stepcounter
\thestc 4974 \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsection
\arabic 4975 \stepcounter{stc}%
\if@longextensions@
\stcname
\closeout
\openout

```

```

4976 \gdef\thestc{\arabic{stc}}
4977 \if@longextensions@%
4978   \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
4979   {Writing\space\jobname.stc\thestc}%
4980   \def\stcname{\jobname.stc\thestc}%
4981 \else
4982   \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
4983   {Writing\space\jobname.S\thestc}%
4984   \def\stcname{\jobname.S\thestc}%
4985 \fi
4986 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
4987 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\stcname
4988 \fi

```

\MTC@WriteContentsline We process the entries for starred sectionning commands:

```

\starsubsection
\starsubsubsection 4989 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsection
\starparagraph 4990 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSS}{#3}{#4}%
\starsubparagraph 4991 \fi
4992 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubsubsection
4993 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSSS}{#3}{#4}%
4994 \fi
4995 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starparagraph
4996 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcP}{#3}{#4}%
4997 \fi
4998 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\starsubparagraph
4999 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{stcSP}{#3}{#4}%
5000 \fi
5001 }

```

\STC@explist The loop to read the lines of the TOC file; expands the list of entries and call \STC@next to process the first one.

```

\STC@list
5002 \def\STC@explist{\expandafter\STC@next\STC@list\}

```

\STC@loop If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise, process the next entry in the list.

```

\STC@read
5003 \def\STC@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
5004 \ifeof\@inputcheck
5005   \mtcPackageWarning[<W0016>]{minitoc}%
5006   {No file #1
5007   \MessageBreak
5008   SECTTOCS NOT PREPARED}%
5009   \expandafter\STC@toc
5010 \else
5011   \mtcPackageInfo[<I0026>]{minitoc}%
5012   {PREPARING SECTTOCS FROM #1}%
5013   \expandafter\STC@read\fi}

```



\STC@read Read the next entry of the .toc file.

\STC@line

```
5014 \def\STC@read{%
5015   \read\@inputcheck to\STC@line
```

\STC@test The ..... make sure that \STC@test has enough arguments:

\STC@line

```
5016   \expandafter\STC@test\STC@line.....\STC@% %%H0: . added
5017   }%
```

\STC@test The \STC@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the TOC file, mainly to delimit sections;

\mtc@string

```
\STC@list 5018 \long\def\STC@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\STC@{% %%H0: #6 added
```

```
\STC@toc 5019   \ifx#1\contentsline
```

```
\STC@read 5020     \let\mtc@string\string
```

```
\sectend 5021     \STC@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}% %%H0: #4 added
```

```
\sectbegin 5022     \let\mtc@string\relax
```

```
5023     \else\ifx#1\@input
```

```
5024       \edef\STC@list{\STC@list#2\relax}%
```

```
5025     \else\ifx#1\sectend
```

```
5026       \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
```

```
5027       \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
```

```
5028     \else\ifx#1\sectbegin
```

```
5029       \addtocounter{stc}{-1}%
```

```
5030     \fi\fi\fi\fi
```

```
5031     \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\STC@toc
```

```
5032     \else\expandafter\STC@read\fi}%
```

\SLF@next Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:

\SLF@list

```
\SLF@loop 5033 \def\SLF@next#1\relax#2\{\%
```

```
5034   \edef\SLF@list{#2}%
```

```
5035   \SLF@loop{#1}}
```

\SLF@lof Check if the list is empty:

\SLF@list

```
\SLF@explist 5036 \def\SLF@lof{%
```

```
5037   \ifx\SLF@list\@empty\else\expandafter\SLF@explist\fi}
```

\SLF@contentsline The macro \SLF@contentsline analyses the lines read from the LOF file. If \section is found, the stc counter is incremented and a new sectlof file is created.

\thetoc

\tf@mtc

```
5038 \def\SLF@contentsline#1#2#3#4{% %%H0: #4 added
```

\slfname

\MTC@WriteContentsLine

```

5039 \gdef\thestc{\arabic{stc}}% %%H0: space removed
5040 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xsect
5041 \stepcounter{stc}%
5042 %% \gdef\thestc{\arabic{stc}} %%H0: removed

```

\if@longextensions@ We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open  
 \slfname it:

```

5043 \if@longextensions@%
5044 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
5045 {Writing\space\jobname.slf\thestc}%
5046 \def\slfname{\jobname.slf\thestc}%
5047 \else
5048 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
5049 {Writing\space\jobname.H\thestc}%
5050 \def\slfname{\jobname.H\thestc}%
5051 \fi
5052 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
5053 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\slfname
5054 \fi

```

\mtc@toks Now, we filter the relevant contents lines:

\MTC@WriteContentsline

```

\figure 5055 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%
\subfigure 5056 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\figure
5057 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{slf}{#3}{#4}%
5058 \fi
5059 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subfigure
5060 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{slfS}{#3}{#4}%
5061 \fi
5062 }

```

\SLF@explist The loop to read the lines of the LOF file; expands the list of entries and call \SLF@next to  
 \SLF@next process the first one.

\SLF@list

```

5063 \def\SLF@explist{\expandafter\SLF@next\SLF@list\}

```

\SLF@loop If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise,  
 \SLF@lof process the next entry in the list.

\SLF@read

```

5064 \def\SLF@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
5065 \ifeof\@inputcheck
5066 \mtcPackageWarning[<W0014>]{minitoc}%
5067 {No file #1
5068 \MessageBreak
5069 SECTLOFS NOT PREPARED}%

```

```

5070 \expandafter\SLF@lof
5071 \else
5072 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0036>]{minitoc}%
5073 {PREPARING SECTLOFS FROM #1}%
5074 \expandafter\SLF@read\fi}

```

Read the next entry of the .lof file.

\SLF@read The ..... make sure that \SLF@test has enough arguments:

\SLF@test

```

\SLF@line 5075 \def\SLF@read{%
5076 \read\@inputcheck to\SLF@line
5077 \expandafter\SLF@test\SLF@line.....\SLF@% %%H0: . added
5078 }%

```

\SLF@test The \SLF@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOF file, mainly to delimit sections;

\mtc@string

```

\SLF@list 5079 \long\def\SLF@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\SLF@{% %%H0: #6 added
\SLF@lof 5080 \ifx#1\contentsline
\SLF@read 5081 \let\mtc@string\string
\sectend 5082 \SLF@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}% %%H0: #4 added
\sectbegin 5083 \let\mtc@string\relax
5084 \else\ifx#1\@input
5085 \edef\SLF@list{\SLF@list#2\relax}%
5086 \else\ifx#1\sectend
5087 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
5088 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
5089 \else\ifx#1\sectbegin
5090 \addtocounter{stc}{-1}%
5091 \fi\fi\fi\fi
5092 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\SLF@lof
5093 \else\expandafter\SLF@read\fi}%

```

\SLT@next Processing the next entry in the list and remove it from the head of the list:

\SLT@list

```

\SLT@loop 5094 \def\SLT@next#1\relax#2\{\%
5095 \edef\SLT@list{#2}%
5096 \SLT@loop{#1}}

```

\SLT@lot Check if the list is empty:

\SLT@list

```

\SLT@explist 5097 \def\SLT@lot{%
5098 \ifx\SLT@list\@empty\else\expandafter\SLT@explist\fi}

```

```

\SLT@contentsline The macro \SLT@contentsline analyses the lines read from the LOT file. If \section is
\section found, the stc counter is incremented and a new sectlot file is created.
\thestc
\tf@mtc 5099 \def\SLT@contentsline#1#2#3#4{% %%H0: #4 added
\sltname 5100 \gdef\thestc{\arabic{stc}} %%H0: space removed
\MTC@WriteContentsLine 5101 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\xsect
5102 \stepcounter{stc}%
5103 %% \gdef\thestc{\arabic{stc}} %%H0: removed

```

```

\if@longextensions@ We test if long or short extensions are used, to build the name of the mini-table file, then open
\sltname it:

```

```

5104 \if@longextensions@%
5105 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
5106 {Writing\space\jobname.slt\thestc}%
5107 \def\sltname{\jobname.slt\thestc}%
5108 \else
5109 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0033>]{minitoc}%
5110 {Writing\space\jobname.V\thestc}%
5111 \def\sltname{\jobname.V\thestc}%
5112 \fi
5113 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
5114 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\sltname
5115 \fi

```

```

\mtc@toks Now, we filter the relevant contents lines:
\MTC@WriteContentsline
\table 5116 \mtc@toks{\noexpand\leavevmode #2}%
\subtable 5117 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\table
5118 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{slt}{#3}{#4}%
5119 \fi
5120 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\subtable
5121 \MTC@WriteContentsline{#1}{sltS}{#3}{#4}%
5122 \fi
5123 }

```

```

\SLT@explist The loop to read the lines of the LOT file; expands the list of entries and call \SLT@next to
\SLT@next process the first one.
\SLT@list
5124 \def\SLT@explist{\expandafter\SLT@next\SLT@list\}

```

```

\SLT@loop If an entry is found, loop through line by line, looking for interesting entries. Otherwise,
\SLT@lot process the next entry in the list.
\SLT@read
5125 \def\SLT@loop#1{\openin\@inputcheck#1\relax
5126 \ifeof\@inputcheck

```

```

5127 \mtcPackageWarning[<W0015>]{minitoc}%
5128     {No file #1
5129     \MessageBreak
5130     SECTLOTS NOT PREPARED}%
5131 \expandafter\SLT@lot
5132 \else
5133 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0039>]{minitoc}%
5134     {PREPARING SECTLOTS FROM #1}%
5135 \expandafter\SLT@read\fi}

```

Read the next entry of the .lot file.

```

\SLT@read The . . . . . make sure that \SLT@test has enough arguments:
\SLT@test
\SLT@line 5136 \def\SLT@read{%
5137     \read\@inputcheck to\SLT@line
5138     \expandafter\SLT@test\SLT@line. . . . \SLT@ %%H0: . added
5139 }%

```

```

\SLT@test The \SLT@test macro finds the “interesting” commands in the LOT file, mainly to delimit
\SLT@contentsline sections;
\mtc@string
\SLT@list 5140 \long\def\SLT@test#1#2#3#4#5#6\SLT@{% %%H0: #6 added
\SLT@lot 5141 \ifx#1\contentsline
\SLT@read 5142 \let\mtc@string\string
\sectend 5143 \SLT@contentsline{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}% %%H0: #4 added
\sectbegin 5144 \let\mtc@string\relax
5145 \else\ifx#1\@input
5146 \edef\SLT@list{\SLT@list#2\relax}%
5147 \else\ifx#1\sectend
5148 \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
5149 \immediate\openout\tf@mtc=\jobname.mtc
5150 \else\ifx#1\sectbegin
5151 \addtocounter{stc}{-1}%
5152 \fi\fi\fi\fi
5153 \ifeof\@inputcheck\expandafter\SLT@lot
5154 \else\expandafter\SLT@read\fi}%

```

## 9.62 End of section-level commands

We terminate the *else* branch of the test `\@ifundefined{section}`, the *true* branch of the test `\@ifundefined{chapter}` and add an empty *else* branch to that test:

```

5155 \fi% end of \if@mtc@section@def@
5156 \fi% end of \if@mtc@chapter@undef@

```

### 9.63 The `\mtcprepare` command

```

\mtcprepare This command tests the availability of the \do... minitoc preparation commands and of the
\@ifnextchar contents files, then calls as much as possible of these preparation commands. A hint is given.
\mtcprepare@
\@ifundefined 5157 \def\mtcprepare{\@ifnextchar[\mtcprepare@]{\mtcprepare@[1]}}%
\IfFileExists 5158 \def\mtcprepare@{#1}{%
  \jobname 5159 \@ifundefined{part}{}{%
    \doparttoc 5160 \IfFileExists{\jobname.toc}{\doparttoc[#1]}}{%
    \dopartlof 5161 \IfFileExists{\jobname.lof}{\dopartlof[#1]}}{%
    \dopartlot 5162 \IfFileExists{\jobname.lot}{\dopartlot[#1]}}{%
    \dominitoc 5163 }%
    \dominilof 5164 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
    \dominilot 5165 \@ifundefined{section}{}%
    \dosecttoc 5166 {}%
    \dosectlof 5167 \IfFileExists{\jobname.toc}{\dosecttoc[#1]}}{%
    \dosectlot 5168 \IfFileExists{\jobname.lof}{\dosectlof[#1]}}{%
    \dosectlot 5169 \IfFileExists{\jobname.lot}{\dosectlot[#1]}}{%
\mtcPackageInfo 5170 }%
  5171 }{}%
  5172 \IfFileExists{\jobname.toc}{\dominitoc[#1]}}{%
  5173 \IfFileExists{\jobname.lof}{\dominilof[#1]}}{%
  5174 \IfFileExists{\jobname.lot}{\dominilot[#1]}}{%
  5175 }%
  5176 \if@mtc@hints@
  5177 \@mtc@hints@given@true
  5178 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0048>]{minitoc(hints)}%
  5179 {Using \string\mtcprepare\space may induce some
  5180 \MessageBreak
  5181 hints about the preparation commands,
  5182 \MessageBreak
  5183 because it invokes ALL the preparation
  5184 \MessageBreak
  5185 commands allowed by the document class,
  5186 \MessageBreak
  5187 without any previous check\@gobble}%
  5188 \fi
  5189 }

```

### 9.64 Necessary `\l@...` commands

```

\l@listof Some \l@... commands (analog to \l@section or \l@paragraph) are required to format
\l@starpart some entries in the mini-tables, for starred sectionning commands essentially:
\l@starchapter
\l@starsection 5190 \@ifundefined{section}{}{\let\l@listof\l@section}
\l@starsubsection 5191 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\let\l@listof\l@chapter}
\l@starsubsubsection 5192 \@ifundefined{part}{}{\let\l@starpart\l@part}
\l@starparagraph 5193 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\let\l@starchapter\l@chapter}
\l@starsubparagraph

```

```

5194 \@ifundefined{section}{}{\let\l@starsection\l@section}
5195 \@ifundefined{subsection}{}{\let\l@starsubsection\l@subsection}
5196 \@ifundefined{subsubsection}{}{\let\l@starsubsubsection\l@subsubsection}
5197 \@ifundefined{paragraph}{}{\let\l@starparagraph\l@paragraph}
5198 \@ifundefined{subparagraph}{}{\let\l@starsubparagraph\l@subparagraph}

```

## 9.65 The horizontal rules and their default values

```

\noptcrule We define here the various commands to activate ou inhibit the horizontal rules in the vari-
\nomtcrule ous kinds of mini-tables. Each such command is an indirect definition of the corresponding
\nostcrule horizontal rule. The rules are .4 pt high horizontal rules.
\ptcrule
\mtcrule 5199 \def\noptcrule{\let\ptc@rule\relax}
\stcrule 5200 \def\nomtcrule{\let\mtc@rule\relax}
\noplfrule 5201 \def\nostcrule{\let\stc@rule\relax}
\nomlfrule 5202 \def\ptcrule{\def\ptc@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\noslfrule 5203 \def\mtcrule{\def\mtc@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\plfrule 5204 \def\stcrule{\def\stc@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\mlfrule 5205 \def\ptc@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
\slfrule 5206 \def\mtc@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
5207 \def\stc@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
\nopltrule
\nomltrule 5208 \def\noplfrule{\let\plf@rule\relax}
\nosltrule 5209 \def\nomlfrule{\let\mlf@rule\relax}
\pltrule 5210 \def\noslfrule{\let\slf@rule\relax}
\mltrule 5211 \def\plfrule{\def\plf@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\sltrule 5212 \def\mlfrule{\def\mlf@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
\columnwidth 5213 \def\slfrule{\def\slf@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
5214 \def\plf@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
5215 \def\mlf@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
5216 \def\slf@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}

5217 \def\nopltrule{\let\plt@rule\relax}
5218 \def\nomltrule{\let\mlt@rule\relax}
5219 \def\nosltrule{\let\slt@rule\relax}
5220 \def\pltrule{\def\plt@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
5221 \def\mltrule{\def\mlt@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
5222 \def\sltrule{\def\slt@rule{\kern-3\p@ \hrule width \columnwidth \kern2.6\p@}}
5223 \def\plt@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
5224 \def\mlt@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}
5225 \def\slt@rule{\rule[3\p@]{\columnwidth}{.4\p@}\vspace*{2.6\p@}}

```

## 9.66 The `\mtcset...` commands

These commands<sup>7</sup> have been introduced to build a nicer user interface, and each of them replaces numerous user commands, offering a rather unified and logical syntax.

### 9.66.1 Keywords for the `\mtcset...` commands

`\@namedef` We define some common keywords for the `\mtcset...` commands. A keyword is created via `\@nameuse` the `\@namedef – \@nameuse` mechanism the following way:

```
\@namedef{mtc@family@name}{abbreviation}
```

where *family* is the name of a group of keywords relative to one or several `\mtcset...` macros, *name* is the keyword that the user gives as argument to the `\mtcset...` macro, and *abbreviation* is a string used to build the name of the macro effectively used. As some `\mtcset...` macros have several keyword parameters, this method can reduce the number of macros at the user level, at the cost of few keyword families.

`\@namedef` We define a family (typetable) of keywords for the types of mini-tables:

```
5226 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@parttoc}{ptc}\def\mtc@typetable@parttoc{ptc}
5227 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@partlof}{plf}\def\mtc@typetable@partlof{plf}
5228 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@partlot}{plt}\def\mtc@typetable@partlot{plt}
5229 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@minitoc}{mtc}\def\mtc@typetable@minitoc{mtc}
5230 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@minilof}{mlf}\def\mtc@typetable@minilof{mlf}
5231 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@minilot}{mlt}\def\mtc@typetable@minilot{mlt}
5232 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@secttoc}{stc}\def\mtc@typetable@secttoc{stc}
5233 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@sectlof}{slf}\def\mtc@typetable@sectlof{slf}
5234 \@namedef{mtc@typetable@sectlot}{slt}\def\mtc@typetable@sectlot{slt}
```

`\@namedef` Then another family (typetitle) for the titles of the mini-tables:

```
5235 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@parttoc}{pti}\def\mtc@typetitle@parttoc{pti}
5236 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@partlof}{pti}\def\mtc@typetitle@partlof{pti}
5237 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@partlot}{pti}\def\mtc@typetitle@partlot{pti}
5238 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@minitoc}{mti}\def\mtc@typetitle@minitoc{mti}
5239 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@minilof}{mti}\def\mtc@typetitle@minilof{mti}
5240 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@minilot}{mti}\def\mtc@typetitle@minilot{mti}
5241 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@secttoc}{sti}\def\mtc@typetitle@secttoc{sti}
5242 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@sectlof}{sti}\def\mtc@typetitle@sectlof{sti}
5243 \@namedef{mtc@typetitle@sectlot}{sti}\def\mtc@typetitle@sectlot{sti}
```

---

<sup>7</sup> The general concept of the `\mtcset...` commands was proposed by Benjamin BAYART.



`\@namedef` We define a family (YN) of keywords to recognize the keywords “off” and “on”, with their many synonyms<sup>8</sup> and meaning false or true<sup>9</sup>:

```

5244 \@namedef{mtc@YN@off}{no}\def\mtc@YN@off{no}
5245 \@namedef{mtc@YN@OFF}{no}\def\mtc@YN@OFF{no}
5246 \@namedef{mtc@YN@no}{no}\def\mtc@YN@no{no}
5247 \@namedef{mtc@YN@NO}{no}\def\mtc@YN@NO{no}
5248 \@namedef{mtc@YN@n}{no}\def\mtc@YN@n{no}
5249 \@namedef{mtc@YN@N}{no}\def\mtc@YN@N{no}
5250 \@namedef{mtc@YN@false}{no}\def\mtc@YN@false{no}
5251 \@namedef{mtc@YN@FALSE}{no}\def\mtc@YN@FALSE{no}
5252 \@namedef{mtc@YN@faux}{no}\def\mtc@YN@faux{no}
5253 \@namedef{mtc@YN@FAUX}{no}\def\mtc@YN@FAUX{no}
5254 \@namedef{mtc@YN@f}{no}\def\mtc@YN@f{no}
5255 \@namedef{mtc@YN@F}{no}\def\mtc@YN@F{no}
5256 \@namedef{mtc@YN@NON}{no}\def\mtc@YN@NON{no}
5257 \@namedef{mtc@YN@non}{no}\def\mtc@YN@non{no}
5258 \@namedef{mtc@YN@0}{no}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@YN@0\endcsname{no}
5259 \@namedef{mtc@YN@-}{no}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@YN@-\endcsname{no}
5260 %
5261 \@namedef{mtc@YN@on}{no}\def\mtc@YN@on{no}
5262 \@namedef{mtc@YN@ON}{no}\def\mtc@YN@ON{no}
5263 \@namedef{mtc@YN@yes}{no}\def\mtc@YN@yes{no}
5264 \@namedef{mtc@YN@YES}{no}\def\mtc@YN@YES{no}
5265 \@namedef{mtc@YN@y}{no}\def\mtc@YN@y{no}
5266 \@namedef{mtc@YN@Y}{no}\def\mtc@YN@Y{no}
5267 \@namedef{mtc@YN@true}{no}\def\mtc@YN@true{no}
5268 \@namedef{mtc@YN@TRUE}{no}\def\mtc@YN@TRUE{no}
5269 \@namedef{mtc@YN@t}{no}\def\mtc@YN@t{no}
5270 \@namedef{mtc@YN@T}{no}\def\mtc@YN@T{no}
5271 \@namedef{mtc@YN@vrai}{no}\def\mtc@YN@vrai{no}
5272 \@namedef{mtc@YN@VRAI}{no}\def\mtc@YN@VRAI{no}
5273 \@namedef{mtc@YN@v}{no}\def\mtc@YN@v{no}
5274 \@namedef{mtc@YN@V}{no}\def\mtc@YN@V{no}
5275 \@namedef{mtc@YN@OUI}{no}\def\mtc@YN@OUI{no}
5276 \@namedef{mtc@YN@oui}{no}\def\mtc@YN@oui{no}
5277 \@namedef{mtc@YN@O}{no}\def\mtc@YN@O{no}
5278 \@namedef{mtc@YN@o}{no}\def\mtc@YN@o{no}
5279 \@namedef{mtc@YN@1}{no}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@YN@1\endcsname{no}
5280 \@namedef{mtc@YN@+}{no}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@YN@+\endcsname{no}

```

## 9.66.2 The `\mtcsetfont` command

`\@namedef` We define the sectionning level keywords (note that part is not a member of this family (sectlevel), because no contents line for a part can appear in a mini-table, part being the

<sup>8</sup> This (deliberately extreme) case shows the easyness for creating synonyms of frequently used keywords. Note also that when a keyword contains a non-letter character, we must use a hack with `\expandafter\csname ... \endcsname`.

<sup>9</sup> 0 and o are the letter O, Ø is the zero digit.

highest sectionning level); “\*” represents “any level”, and is used to set the global default font for a given kind of mini-table.

```

5281 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@chapter}{C}\def\mtc@sectlevel@chapter{C}
5282 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@section}{S}\def\mtc@sectlevel@section{S}
5283 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subsection}{SS}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subsection{SS}
5284 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subsubsection}{SSS}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subsubsection{SSS}
5285 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@paragraph}{P}\def\mtc@sectlevel@paragraph{P}
5286 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subparagraph}{SP}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subparagraph{SP}
5287 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@*}{*}\expandafter\def\csname mtc@sectlevel@*\endcsname{}
5288 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@figure}{F}\def\mtc@sectlevel@figure{F}
5289 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@table}{T}\def\mtc@sectlevel@table{T}
5290 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subfigure}{SF}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subfigure{SF}
5291 \@namedef{mtc@sectlevel@subtable}{ST}\def\mtc@sectlevel@subtable{ST}

```

`\mtcsetfont` The `\mtcsetfont` command has the following syntax:

```
\mtcsetfont{mini-table}{level-name}{font commands}
```

The *mini-table* type is a keyword like *minitoc*, the *level-name* is a sectionning level like *subsection* (no backslash). The *font commands* are a font specification, using NFSS [176] basic commands usually.

`\if@mtc@setfont@` First, we declare a flag, set true:

```
5292 \newif\if@mtc@setfont@\@mtc@setfont@true
```

`\mtcsetfont` Then, we begin the command, which has three arguments:

```
5293 \newcommand{\mtcsetfont}[3]{%
```

`\mtc@mta@abbrev` The two first arguments of this command are keywords. They must be translated into the effective strings. We process the first argument, a keyword from the *typetable* family. The `\if@mtc@setfont@` result is stored in `\mtc@mta@abbrev`. Example: if #1 is *minitoc*, we get *mtc*.  
`\@nameuse`

```

5294 \def\mtc@mta@abbrev{X}
5295 \@mtc@setfont@true
5296 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
5297   \@mtc@setfont@false
5298   \def\mtc@mta@abbrev{X}
5299   \mtcPackageError[<E0013>]{minitoc}%
5300     {\string\mtcsetfont \space has a wrong first argument
5301      \MessageBreak
5302      (#1).
5303      \MessageBreak

```

```

5304      It should be a mini-table type
5305      \MessageBreak
5306      (parttoc...sectlot))%
5307      {Correct the source code.
5308      \MessageBreak
5309      Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5310 \else
5311   \edef\mtc@mta@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
5312 \fi

```

\mtc@level@abbrev The second argument, a keyword from the family sectlevel, is processed the same way and the result is stored into a macro \mtc@level@abbrev. Example: if #2 is the subparagraph keyword, we get SP.

```

5313 \def\mtc@level@abbrev{X}
5314 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@sectlevel@#2\endcsname\relax
5315   \@mtc@setfont@false
5316   \def\mtc@level@abbrev{X}
5317   \mtcPackageError[<E0014>]{minitoc}%
5318     {\string\mtcsetfont \space has a wrong second argument
5319     \MessageBreak
5320     (#2).
5321     \MessageBreak
5322     It should be a sectionning level
5323     \MessageBreak
5324     (part...subparagraph) or * }%
5325     {Correct the source code.
5326     \MessageBreak
5327     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5328 \else
5329   \edef\mtc@level@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@sectlevel@#2}}
5330 \fi

```

\mtc@tmp@name Then, we construct the effective macro to be applied:  
 \mtc@mta@abbrev  
 \mtc@level@abbrev 5331 \def\mtc@tmp@name{\mtc@mta@abbrev\mtc@level@abbrev font}

Example: if #1 is minitoc and #2 is subsection, we get mtcSSfont, which is the name of the command for the font of a subsection entry in a minitoc (the backslash is missing, but we will use a \csname ... \endcsname pair to apply the constructed command).

\if@mtc@setfont@ But all combinaisons are not legal (the level of the entry must be lower than the level of the mini-table), so we must test. Special care must be taken for testing via internal defined commands (*quarks*) with @mtcqk at the end of their names).

```

5332 \def\parttoc@mtcqk{parttoc@mtcqk}
5333 \def\minitoc@mtcqk{minitoc@mtcqk}
5334 \def\secttoc@mtcqk{secttoc@mtcqk}

```

```

5335 \def\partlof@mtcck{partlof@mtcck}
5336 \def\minilof@mtcck{minilof@mtcck}
5337 \def\sectlof@mtcck{sectlof@mtcck}
5338 \def\partlot@mtcck{partlot@mtcck}
5339 \def\minilot@mtcck{minilot@mtcck}
5340 \def\sectlot@mtcck{sectlot@mtcck}
5341 \def\part@mtcck{part@mtcck}
5342 \def\chapter@mtcck{chapter@mtcck}
5343 \def\section@mtcck{section@mtcck}
5344 \def\subsection@mtcck{subsection@mtcck}
5345 \def\subsubsection@mtcck{subsubsection@mtcck}
5346 \def\paragraph@mtcck{paragraph@mtcck}
5347 \def\subparagraph@mtcck{subparagraph@mtcck}
5348 \def\figure@mtcck{figure@mtcck}
5349 \def\table@mtcck{table@mtcck}
5350 \def\subfigure@mtcck{subfigure@mtcck}
5351 \def\subtable@mtcck{subtable@mtcck}
5352 \@mtc@setfont@true
5353 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\parttoc@mtcck\relax
5354   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\figure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5355   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subfigure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5356   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\table@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5357   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subtable@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5358 \fi
5359 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\partlof@mtcck\relax
5360   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\table@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5361   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subtable@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5362 \fi
5363 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\partlot@mtcck\relax
5364   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\figure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5365   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subfigure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5366 \fi
5367 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\minitoc@mtcck\relax
5368   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\part@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5369   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\chapter@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5370   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\figure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5371   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subfigure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5372   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\table@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5373   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subtable@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5374 \fi
5375 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\minilof@mtcck\relax
5376   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\part@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5377   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\chapter@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5378   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\table@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5379   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subtable@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5380 \fi
5381 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\minilot@mtcck\relax
5382   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\part@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5383   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\chapter@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5384   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\figure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5385   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subfigure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5386 \fi
5387 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\secttoc@mtcck\relax
5388   \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\part@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi

```

```

5389 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\chapter@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5390 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\section@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5391 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\figure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5392 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subfigure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5393 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\table@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5394 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subtable@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5395 \fi
5396 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\sectlof@mtcck\relax
5397 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\part@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5398 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\chapter@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5399 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\section@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5400 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\table@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5401 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subtable@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5402 \fi
5403 \expandafter\ifx\csname #1@mtcck\endcsname\sectlot@mtcck\relax
5404 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\part@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5405 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\chapter@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5406 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\section@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5407 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\figure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5408 \expandafter\ifx\csname #2@mtcck\endcsname\subfigure@mtcck\relax\@mtc@setfont@false\fi
5409 \fi

```

\if@mtc@setfont@ If the combinaison is legal, we apply it, i.e., we redefine the meaning of the constructed macro  
\mtc@tmp@name with the sequence of commands given as third argument of \mtcsetfont and we log that  
\mtc@mta@abbrev event (we store the third argument in a token register to can print it *verbatim*).  
\mtc@level@abbrev  
\mtc@toks If the combinaison is not legal, an error message is displayed.

```

5410 \if@mtc@setfont@
5411 \def\mtc@tmp@name{\mtc@mta@abbrev\mtc@level@abbrev font}
5412 \mtc@toks{#3}
5413 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0015>]{minitoc}%
5414 { \string\mtcsetfont\space redefines the macro
5415 \MessageBreak
5416 "\mtc@tmp@name" as "\the\mtc@toks"}
5417 \expandafter\def\csname\mtc@tmp@name\endcsname{#3}
5418 \else
5419 \mtcPackageError[<E0024>]{minitoc}%
5420 {The macro \string\mtcsetfont\space has incompatible
5421 \MessageBreak
5422 first (#1) and second (#2) arguments}%
5423 {Correct the source code.
5424 \MessageBreak
5425 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5426 \fi
5427 }

```

### 9.66.3 The `\mtcsettitlefont` command

`\mtcsettitlefont` This command is very similar to the `\mtcsetfont` command. Its syntax is almost identical:

```
\mtcsettitlefont{mini-table}{font commands}
```

`\if@mtc@settitlefont@` The *mini-table* type is a keyword like *minitoc*. The *font commands* are a font specification, using NFSS [176] basic commands usually. The difference is the absence of the second keyword argument, because the *font commands* will be applied to the title of each mini-table of the given kind.

First, we declare a flag, set true:

```
5428 \newif\if@mtc@settitlefont@\@mtc@settitlefont@true
```

`\mtcsettitlefont` And we begin the definition of the `\mtcsettitlefont` command, which has two arguments:

```
5429 \newcommand{\mtcsettitlefont}[2]{%
```

`\mtc@mtatf@abbrev` We process the first argument, a keyword of the *typetitle* family, then the result is stored into `\mtc@mtatf@abbrev`:  
`\if@mtc@settitlefont@`  
`\@nameuse`

```
5430 \def\mtc@mtatf@abbrev{X}
5431 \@mtc@settitlefont@true
5432 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetitle@#1\endcsname\relax
5433   \@mtc@settitlefont@false
5434   \def\mtc@mtatf@abbrev{X}
5435   \mtcPackageError[<E0022>]{minitoc}%
5436     {\string\mtcsettitlefont \space has a wrong first argument
5437     \MessageBreak
5438     (#1).
5439     \MessageBreak
5440     It should be a mini-table type
5441     \MessageBreak
5442     (parttoc...sectlot))%
5443     {Correct the source code.
5444     \MessageBreak
5445     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5446 \else
5447   \edef\mtc@mtatf@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetitle@#1}}
5448 \fi
```

`\if@mtc@settitlefont@` Then we build the name of the effective command and apply this command:

```

\mtc@tmptf@name
\mtc@mtatf@abbrev 5449 \if@mtc@settitlefont@
\mtc@toks 5450 \def\mtc@tmptf@name{\mtc@mtatf@abbrev font}
5451 \mtc@toks{#2}
5452 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0018>]{minitoc}%
5453 {\string\mtcsettitlefont\space redefines the macro
5454 \MessageBreak
5455 "\mtc@tmptf@name" as
5456 \MessageBreak
5457 "\the\mtc@toks"}
5458 \expandafter\def\csname\mtc@tmptf@name\endcsname{#2}
5459 \else
5460 \mtcPackageError[<E0034>]{minitoc}%
5461 {The macro \string\mtcsettitlefont\space uses
5462 \MessageBreak
5463 an illegal type of table (#1)}%
5464 {Correct the source code.
5465 \MessageBreak
5466 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}{\relax}
5467 \fi
5468 }
```

#### 9.66.4 The `\mtcsettitle` command

`\mtcsettitle` This command is very similar to the `\mtcsettitlefont` command. Its syntax is almost identical:

```
\mtcsettitle{mini-table}{text}
```

The *mini-table* type is a keyword like `minitoc`. The *text* is the text for a mini-table title.

`\if@mtc@settitle@` First, we declare a flag, set true:

```
5469 \newif\if@mtc@settitle@\@mtc@settitle@true
```

`\mtcsettitle` Then we define the `\mtcsettitle` command, which has two arguments:

```
5470 \newcommand{\mtcsettitle}[2]{%
```

```

\mtc@mtati@abbrev We process the first argument, a keyword of the typetable family. The result is stored in
\if@mtc@settitle@ \mtc@mtati@abbrev:
\@nameuse
5471 \def\mtc@mtati@abbrev{X}
```

```

5472 \@mtc@settitle@true
5473 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
5474   \@mtc@settitle@false
5475   \def\mtc@mtati@abbrev{X}
5476   \mtcPackageError[<E0021>]{minitoc}%
5477     {\string\mtcsettitle \space has a wrong first argument
5478     \MessageBreak
5479     (#1).
5480     \MessageBreak
5481     It should be a mini-table type
5482     \MessageBreak
5483     (parttoc...sectlot)}}%
5484   {Correct the source code.
5485   \MessageBreak
5486   Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5487 \else
5488   \edef\mtc@mtati@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
5489 \fi

```

\if@mtc@settitle@ And we construct the name of the effective macro and apply it:

```

\mtc@tmpti@name
\mtc@mtati@abbrev 5490 \if@mtc@settitle@
\mtc@toks 5491   \def\mtc@tmpti@name{\mtc@mtati@abbrev title}
5492   \mtc@toks{#2}
5493   \mtcPackageInfo[<I0017>]{minitoc}%
5494   {\string\mtcsettitle\space redefines the macro
5495   \MessageBreak
5496   "\mtc@tmpti@name" as
5497   \MessageBreak
5498   "\the\mtc@toks"}
5499   \expandafter\def\csname\mtc@tmpti@name\endcsname{#2}
5500 \else
5501   \mtcPackageError[<E0033>]{minitoc}%
5502   {The macro \string\mtcsettitle\space uses
5503   \MessageBreak
5504   an illegal type of table (#1)}}%
5505   {Correct the source code.
5506   \MessageBreak
5507   Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}{\relax}
5508 \fi
5509 }

```

### 9.66.5 The \mtcsetformat command

\@namedef We define first the keywords (family formatparam) for the three formatting parameters that this command can alter:

```

5510 \@namedef{mtc@formatparam@dotinterval}{dotsep}%
5511 \def\mtc@arg@dotinterval{dotsep}

```



```

5512 \namedef{mtc@formatparam@tocrightmargin}{tocrmarg}%
5513 \def\mtc@arg@tocrightmargin{tocrightmargin}
5514 \namedef{mtc@formatparam@pagenumwidth}{pnumwidth}%
5515 \def\mtc@arg@pagenumwidth{\mtc@arg@pagenumwidth}
5516 %% \namedef{mtc@arg@numwidth}{numwidth} %not yet available
5517 %% \def\mtc@arg@numwidth{\mtc@arg@numwidth} %not yet available

```

\AtBeginDocument The \mtcsetformat command needs an initialization to be done at the beginning of the document, to set the defaults values of the formatting parameters:

```

5518 \AtBeginDocument{%

```

```

    \@pnumwidth We take, if possible, the default value of \@pnumwidth for each type of mini-tables:
\ptcpnumwidth
\mtcpnumwidth 5519 \@ifundefined{ptcpnumwidth}{\let\ptcpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\stcpnumwidth 5520 \@ifundefined{stcpnumwidth}{\let\stcpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\plfpnumwidth 5521 \@ifundefined{mtcpnumwidth}{\let\mtcpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\mlfpnumwidth 5522 \@ifundefined{plfpnumwidth}{\let\plfpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\slfpnumwidth 5523 \@ifundefined{mlfpnumwidth}{\let\mlfpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\pltpnumwidth 5524 \@ifundefined{slfpnumwidth}{\let\slfpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\mltpnumwidth 5525 \@ifundefined{pltpnumwidth}{\let\pltpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
\sltpnumwidth 5526 \@ifundefined{mltpnumwidth}{\let\mltpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%
5527 \@ifundefined{sltpnumwidth}{\let\sltpnumwidth\@pnumwidth}{}%

```

```

    \@tocrmarg We take, if possible, the default value of \@tocrmarg for each type of mini-tables:
\ptctocrmarg
\mtcclofrmarg 5528 \@ifundefined{ptctocrmarg}{\let\ptctocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\stclotrmarg 5529 \@ifundefined{mtctocrmarg}{\let\mtctocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\plftocrmarg 5530 \@ifundefined{stctocrmarg}{\let\stctocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\mlfclofrmarg 5531 \@ifundefined{plftocrmarg}{\let\plftocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\slfclotrmarg 5532 \@ifundefined{mlftocrmarg}{\let\mlftocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\plttocrmarg 5533 \@ifundefined{slftocrmarg}{\let\slftocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\mltclofrmarg 5534 \@ifundefined{plttocrmarg}{\let\plttocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
\sltlotrmarg 5535 \@ifundefined{mlttocrmarg}{\let\mlttocrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%
5536 \@ifundefined{sltlotrmarg}{\let\sltlotrmarg\@tocrmarg}{}%

```

```

    \@dotsep We take, if possible, the default value of \@dotsep for each type of mini-tables:
\ptcdotsep
\mtcdotsep 5537 \@ifundefined{ptcdotsep}{\let\ptcdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\stcdotsep 5538 \@ifundefined{mtcdotsep}{\let\mtcdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\plfdotsep 5539 \@ifundefined{stcdotsep}{\let\stcdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\mlfdotsep 5540 \@ifundefined{plfdotsep}{\let\plfdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\slfdotsep 5541 \@ifundefined{mlfdotsep}{\let\mlfdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\pltdotsep 5542 \@ifundefined{slfdotsep}{\let\slfdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\mltdotsep 5543 \@ifundefined{pltdotsep}{\let\pltdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
5544 \@ifundefined{mltdotsep}{\let\mltdotsep\@dotsep}{}%
\sltdotsep 5545 \@ifundefined{sltdotsep}{\let\sltdotsep\@dotsep}{}%

```

And we terminate the `\AtBeginDocument` block:

```
5546 }
```

`\mtcsetformat` The executive part is done via the following macros, which are invoked in the `mtc@verse`-like environments for each kind of mini-table. These commands activate the values recorded by `\mtcsetformat`.

`\ptc@setform` The `\ptc@setform` macro is invoked in `ptc@verse` to set format parameters:  
`ptc@verse`

```
5547 \def\ptc@setform{%
5548 \let\@pnumwidth\ptcpnumwidth\relax
5549 \let\@tocrmarg\ptctocrmarg\relax
5550 \let\@dotsep\ptcdotsep\relax
5551 }
```

`\mtc@setform` The `\mtc@setform` macro is invoked in `mtc@verse` to set format parameters:  
`mtc@verse`

```
5552 \def\mtc@setform{%
5553 \let\@pnumwidth\mtcpnumwidth\relax
5554 \let\@tocrmarg\mtctocrmarg\relax
5555 \let\@dotsep\mtcdotsep\relax
5556 }
```

`\stc@setform` The `\stc@setform` macro is invoked in `stc@verse` to set format parameters:  
`stc@verse`

```
5557 \def\stc@setform{%
5558 \let\@pnumwidth\stcpnumwidth\relax
5559 \let\@tocrmarg\stctocrmarg\relax
5560 \let\@dotsep\stcdotsep\relax
5561 }
```

`\plf@setform` The `\plf@setform` macro is invoked in `ptc@verse` to set format parameters:  
`ptc@verse`

```
5562 \def\plf@setform{%
5563 \let\@pnumwidth\plfpnumwidth\relax
5564 \let\@tocrmarg\plftocrmarg\relax
5565 \let\@dotsep\plfdotsep\relax
5566 }
```

`\mlf@setform` The `\mlf@setform` macro is invoked in `mtc@verse` to set format parameters:  
`mtc@verse`

```
5567 \def\mlf@setform{%
5568 \let\@pnumwidth\mlfpnumwidth\relax
5569 \let\@tocrmarg\mlftocrmarg\relax
5570 \let\@dotsep\mlfdotsep\relax
5571 }
```

`\slf@setform` The `\slf@setform` macro is invoked in `stc@verse` to set format parameters:  
`stc@verse`

```
5572 \def\slf@setform{%
5573 \let\@pnumwidth\slfpnumwidth\relax
5574 \let\@tocrmarg\slftocrmarg\relax
5575 \let\@dotsep\slfdotsep\relax
5576 }
```

`\plt@setform` The `\plt@setform` macro is invoked in `ptc@verse` to set format parameters:  
`ptc@verse`

```
5577 \def\plt@setform{%
5578 \let\@pnumwidth\pltpnumwidth\relax
5579 \let\@tocrmarg\plttocrmarg\relax
5580 \let\@dotsep\pltdotsep\relax
5581 }
```

`\mlt@setform` The `\mlt@setform` macro is invoked in `mtc@verse` to set format parameters:  
`mtc@verse`

```
5582 \def\mlt@setform{%
5583 \let\@pnumwidth\plfpnumwidth\relax
5584 \let\@tocrmarg\plftocrmarg\relax
5585 \let\@dotsep\plfdotsep\relax
5586 }
```

`\slt@setform` The `\slt@setform` macro is invoked in `stc@verse` to set format parameters:  
`stc@verse`

```
5587 \def\slt@setform{%
5588 \let\@pnumwidth\plfpnumwidth\relax
5589 \let\@tocrmarg\plftocrmarg\relax
5590 \let\@dotsep\plfdotsep\relax
5591 }
```

`\if@mtc@setformat@` We now define a flag and the `\mtcsetformat` command, which has the following syntax:  
`\mtcsetformat`

```
\mtcsetformat{mini-table}{parameter-name}{value}
```

where *mini-table* is a keyword of the `typetable` family, *parameter-name* is a keyword of the `formatparam` family and *value*, the value of this parameter for the given kind of mini-table.

```
5592 \newif\if@mtc@setformat@\@mtc@setformat@true
5593 \newcommand{\mtcsetformat}[3]{%
```

`\mtc@mtf@abbrev` We now process the first argument and store the result in `\mtc@mtf@abbrev`:  
`\mtc@fparam@abbrev`

```
5594 \def\mtc@mtf@abbrev{X}
5595 \def\mtc@fparam@abbrev{X}
5596 \@mtc@setformat@true
5597 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
5598   \@mtc@setformat@false
5599   \def\mtc@mtf@abbrev{X}
5600   \mtcPackageError[<E0015>]{minitoc}%
5601     {\string\mtcsetformat \space has a wrong first argument
5602      \MessageBreak
5603      (#1).
5604      \MessageBreak
5605      It should be a mini-table type
5606      \MessageBreak
5607      (parttoc...sectlot)}}%
5608   {Correct the source code.
5609    \MessageBreak
5610    Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5611 \else
5612   \edef\mtc@mtf@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
5613 \fi
```

`\mtc@fparam@abbrev` Then we process the second argument and store the result into a macro `\mtc@fparam@abbrev`:  
`\@nameuse`

```
5614 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@formatparam@#2\endcsname\relax
5615   \@mtc@setformat@false
5616   \def\mtc@fparam@abbrev{X}
5617   \mtcPackageError[<E0016>]{minitoc}%
5618     {\string\mtcsetformat \space has a wrong second argument
5619      \MessageBreak
5620      (#2).
5621      \MessageBreak
5622      It should be a formatting param choosen from:
5623      \MessageBreak
5624      pagenumwidth, tocrighmargin, dotinterval}%
5625   {Correct the source code.
5626    \MessageBreak
5627    Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5628 \else
5629   \edef\mtc@fparam@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@formatparam@#2}}
5630 \fi
```

```

\if@mtc@setformat@ The name of the storage macro is built and it receives the third parameter as value:
  \mtc@tmpfm@name
  \mtc@mtf@abbrev 5631 \if@mtc@setformat@
\mtc@fparam@abbrev 5632 \def\mtc@tmpfm@name{\mtc@mtf@abbrev\mtc@fparam@abbrev}
                    5633 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0016>]{minitoc}%
                    5634 {\string\mtcsetformat\space redefines the macro
                    5635 \MessageBreak
                    5636 "\mtc@tmpfm@name" as "\string#3"}
                    5637 \expandafter\def\csname\mtc@tmpfm@name\endcsname{#3}
                    5638 \else
                    5639 \mtcPackageError[<E0025>]{minitoc}%
                    5640 {The macro \string\mtcsetformat\space has incompatible
                    5641 \MessageBreak
                    5642 first (#1) and second (#2) arguments}%
                    5643 {Correct the source code.
                    5644 \MessageBreak
                    5645 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
                    5646 \fi
                    5647 }

```

### 9.66.6 The `\mtcsetpagenumbers` command

This command activates or inhibits page numbers in the mini-tables of a given kind. Its syntax is the following:

```
\mtcsetpagenumbers{mini-table}{on|off}
```

where *mini-table* is a keyword for a kind of mini-table (`parttoc`, ... `sectlot`), or `on` and `off` a keyword to activate (`on`) or inhibit (`off`) the page numbers. `on` and `off` have many synonyms.

```

\if@mtc@setpagenumbers@ We define some flags:
  \if@mtc@spn@ok@
                    5648 \newif\if@mtc@setpagenumbers@ \@mtc@setpagenumbers@false
                    5649 \newif\if@mtc@spn@ok@

```

```

\mtcsetpagenumbers We define the user-level macro. If the first argument is a star, we call the internal macro
  \@ifundefined \mtcsetpagenumbers@ for each type of mini-table available; else, we call this internal macro
\mtcsetpagenumbers@ only once, for the specified type of mini-table.

```

```

5650 \newcommand{\mtcsetpagenumbers}[2]{%
5651   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\*\relax
5652   \@ifundefined{part}{}%
5653   {\mtcsetpagenumbers@{parttoc}{#2}}
5654   \mtcsetpagenumbers@{partlof}{#2}}

```

```

5655 \mtcsetpagenumbers@{partlot}{#2}}
5656 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
5657 {\mtcsetpagenumbers@{minitoc}{#2}
5658 \mtcsetpagenumbers@{minilof}{#2}
5659 \mtcsetpagenumbers@{minilot}{#2}}
5660 \@ifundefined{section}{}%
5661 {\mtcsetpagenumbers@{secttoc}{#2}
5662 \mtcsetpagenumbers@{sectlof}{#2}
5663 \mtcsetpagenumbers@{sectlot}{#2}}
5664 \else
5665 \mtcsetpagenumbers@{#1}{#2}%
5666 \fi
5667 }

```

`\mtcsetpagenumber@` Then the `\mtcsetpagenumbers@` internal macro, with two arguments:

```

5668 \newcommand{\mtcsetpagenumbers@}[2]{%

```

`\mtc@mttpn@abbrev` We process the first argument, a keyword of the `typetable` family, and store the result in  
`\mtc@pns@abbrev` `\mtc@mttpn@abbrev`:

```

5669 \def\mtc@mttpn@abbrev{X}
5670 \@mtc@setpagenumbers@true
5671 \def\mtc@pns@abbrev{}
5672 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
5673 \@mtc@setpagenumbers@false
5674 \def\mtc@pns@abbrev{X}
5675 \def\mtc@mttpn@abbrev{X}
5676 \mtcPackageError[<E0017>]{minitoc}%
5677 {\string\mtcsetpagenumbers \space has a wrong first
5678 \MessageBreak
5679 argument (#1)}%
5680 {It should be a mini-table type
5681 \MessageBreak
5682 (parttoc...sectlot)
5683 \MessageBreak
5684 Correct the source code.
5685 \MessageBreak
5686 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5687 \else
5688 \edef\mtc@mttpn@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
5689 \fi

```

`\if@mtc@spn@ok@` Then the second argument, a keyword of the `YN` family, and store the result into a macro  
`\mtc@pns@abbrev` `\mtc@pns@abbrev`. The name of the effective macro is built and the macro executed.  
`\mtc@mttpn@abbrev`

```

\if@mtc@setpagenumbers@ 5690 \@mtc@spn@ok@true
\mtc@tmppn@name 5691 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@YN@#2\endcsname\relax
5692 \@mtc@spn@ok@false

```

```

5693 \def\mtc@pns@abbrev{X}
5694 \def\mtc@mtt@abbrev{X}
5695 \@mtc@setpagenumbers@false
5696 \def\mtc@mtt@abbrev{X}
5697 \mtcPackageError[<E0018>]{minitoc}%
5698   {\string\mtcsetpagenumbers \space has a wrong second
5699   \MessageBreak
5700   argument (#2)}%
5701   {It should be a boolean value (0/1, yes/no, on/off, ...)}
5702   \MessageBreak
5703   Correct the source code.
5704   \MessageBreak
5705   Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5706 \else
5707   \edef\mtc@pns@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@YN@#2}}
5708   \def\mtc@pns@abbrevX{X}
5709   \def\mtc@noX{mtc@noX}
5710   \def\mtc@tmppn@name{\mtc@pns@abbrev\mtc@mtt@abbrev pagenumbers}
5711   \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@\mtc@pns@abbrev X\endcsname\mtc@noX
5712     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0022>]{minitoc}%
5713     {Page numbers are inhibited
5714     \MessageBreak
5715     for the #1s}
5716   \else
5717     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0021>]{minitoc}%
5718     {Page numbers are activated
5719     \MessageBreak for the #1s}
5720   \fi
5721   \csname\mtc@tmppn@name\endcsname{}
5722 \fi
5723 }

```

### 9.66.7 The `\mtcsetrules` command

This macro is very similar to `\mtcsetpagenumbers` and its syntax is the same:

```
\mtcsetrules{mini-table}{on|off}
```

where *mini-table* is a keyword for a kind of mini-table (`parttoc`, ... `sectlot`), or `on` and `off` a keyword to activate (`on`) or inhibit (`off`) the horizontal rules. `on` and `off` have many synonyms.

Hence the code is similar.

```

\if@mtc@setrules@ We define some flags:
\if@mtc@sru@ok@
5724 \newif\if@mtc@setrules@ \@mtc@setrules@false
5725 \newif\if@mtc@sru@ok@

```

`\mtcsetrules` We define the user-level macro. If the first argument is a star, we call the internal macro `\@ifundefined` `\mtcsetrules@` for each type of mini-table available; else, we call this internal macro only once, for the specified type of mini-table.

```

5726 \newcommand{\mtcsetrules}[2]{%
5727   \expandafter\ifx\csname #1\endcsname\*\relax
5728   \@ifundefined{part}{}%
5729   {\mtcsetrules@parttoc}{#2}
5730   \mtcsetrules@partlof}{#2}
5731   \mtcsetrules@partlot}{#2}}
5732 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}%
5733 {\mtcsetrules@minitoc}{#2}
5734 \mtcsetrules@minilof}{#2}
5735 \mtcsetrules@minilot}{#2}}
5736 \@ifundefined{section}{}%
5737 {\mtcsetrules@secttoc}{#2}
5738 \mtcsetrules@sectlof}{#2}
5739 \mtcsetrules@sectlot}{#2}}
5740 \else
5741 \mtcsetrules@{#1}{#2}%
5742 \fi
5743 }
```

`\mtcsetrules@` Then the `\mtcsetrules@` internal macro, which has two arguments:

```

5744 \newcommand{\mtcsetrules@}[2]{%
```

`\mtc@mttru@abbrev` We process the first argument, a keyword of the `typetable` family and store the result in a macro `\mtc@mttru@abbrev`:  
`\if@mtc@setrules@`  
`\mtc@rusw@abbrev`

```

\@nameuse 5745 \def\mtc@mttru@abbrev{X}
5746 \@mtc@setrules@true
5747 \def\mtc@rusw@abbrev{}
5748 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@typetable@#1\endcsname\relax
5749   \@mtc@setrules@false
5750   \def\mtc@rusw@abbrev{X}
5751   \def\mtc@mttru@abbrev{X}
5752   \mtcPackageError[<E0019>]{minitoc}%
5753   {\string\mtcsetrules \space has a wrong first argument
5754    \MessageBreak
5755    (#1)}%
5756   {It should be a mini-table type
5757    \MessageBreak
5758    (parttoc...sectlot)
5759    \MessageBreak
5760    Correct the source code.
5761    \MessageBreak
5762    Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5763 \else
5764   \edef\mtc@mttru@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@typetable@#1}}
```



5765 \fi

```

\if@mtc@sru@ok@ Then the second argument, a keyword of the YN family, and store the result in a macro
\mtc@rusw@abbrev \mtc@rusw@abbrev. The name of the effective macro is built and the macro executed.
\mtc@mttru@abbrev
if@setrules@false 5766 \@mtc@sru@ok@true
\mtc@noX 5767 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@YN@#2\endcsname\relax
\mtc@tmppn@name 5768 \mtc@sru@ok@false
5769 \def\mtc@rusw@abbrev{X}
5770 \def\mtc@mttru@abbrev{X}
5771 \@mtc@setrules@false
5772 \mtcPackageError[<E0020>]{minitoc}%
5773 {\string\mtcsetrules \space has a wrong second argument
5774 \MessageBreak
5775 (#2)}%
5776 {It should be a boolean value (0/1, yes/no, on/off, ...)}
5777 \MessageBreak
5778 Correct the source code.
5779 \MessageBreak
5780 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5781 \else
5782 \edef\mtc@rusw@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@YN@#2}}
5783 \def\mtc@rusw@abbrevX{X}
5784 \def\mtc@noX{mtc@noX}
5785 \def\mtc@tmppn@name{\mtc@rusw@abbrev\mtc@mttru@abbrev rule}
5786 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@\mtc@rusw@abbrev X\endcsname\mtc@noX
5787 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0008>]{minitoc}%
5788 {Horizontal rules are inhibited
5789 \MessageBreak
5790 for the #1s}
5791 \else
5792 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0007>]{minitoc}%
5793 {Horizontal rules are activated
5794 \MessageBreak
5795 for the #1s}
5796 \fi
5797 \csname\mtc@tmppn@name\endcsname{}
5798 \fi
5799 }

```

### 9.66.8 The \mtcsetfeature command

For this command, we must define three families of keywords, but the third is just used to add the word “style” for the “pagestyle” when “thispage” is used.

A family (ltypetable) for the long names of the types of mini-tables:

```
5800 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@parttoc}{parttoc}\def\mtc@ltypetable@parttoc{parttoc}
```

```

5801 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@partlof}{partlof}\def\mtc@ltypetable@partlof{partlof}
5802 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@partlot}{partlot}\def\mtc@ltypetable@partlot{partlot}
5803 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@minitoc}{minitoc}\def\mtc@ltypetable@minitoc{minitoc}
5804 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@minilof}{minilof}\def\mtc@ltypetable@minilof{minilof}
5805 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@minilot}{minilot}\def\mtc@ltypetable@minilot{minilot}
5806 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@secttoc}{secttoc}\def\mtc@ltypetable@secttoc{secttoc}
5807 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@sectlof}{sectlof}\def\mtc@ltypetable@sectlof{sectlof}
5808 \@namedef{mtc@ltypetable@sectlot}{sectlot}\def\mtc@ltypetable@sectlot{sectlot}

```

A family (`featureparam`) for the type of feature:

```

5809 \@namedef{mtc@featureparam@before}{before}%
5810   \def\mtc@featureparam@before{before}
5811 \@namedef{mtc@featureparam@after}{after}%
5812   \def\mtc@featureparam@after{after}
5813 \@namedef{mtc@featureparam@pagestyle}{thispage}%
5814   \def\mtc@featureparam@pagestyle{thispage}

```

And a family (`ft3`) to add “style” if it is a “pagestyle” feature:

```

5815 \@namedef{mtc@ft3@before}{ }\expandafter\def\csname mtc@ft3@before\endcsname{}
5816 \@namedef{mtc@ft3@after}{ }\expandafter\def\csname mtc@ft3@after\endcsname{}
5817 \@namedef{mtc@ft3@pagestyle}{style}%
5818   \expandafter\def\csname mtc@ft3@pagestyle\endcsname{style}

```

The `\mtcsetfeature` command has the following syntax:

```
\mtcsetfeature{mini-table}{feature-name}{commands}
```

where *mini-table* is a keyword of the `ltypetable` family, *feature-name* is a keyword of the `featureparam` family (but also of the `ft3` family), and *commands* are the commands which constitute the selected feature.

`\if@mtc@setfeature@` We define a flag and the `\mtcsetfeature` command, with three arguments:  
`\mtcsetfeature`

```

5819 \newif\if@mtc@setfeature@\@mtc@setfeature@true
5820 \newcommand{\mtcsetfeature}[3]{%

```

`\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev` We process the first argument, a keyword of the `ltypetable` family, and store the result in  
`\mtc@featparam@abbrev` `\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev`:

```

5821 \def\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev{X}
5822 \def\mtc@featparam@abbrev{X}
5823 \@mtc@setfeature@true
5824 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@ltypetable@#1\endcsname\relax
5825   \@mtc@setfeature@false
5826   \def\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev{X}

```

```

5827 \mtcPackageError[<E0011>]{minitoc}%
5828 {\string\mtcsetfeature \space has a wrong first argument
5829 \MessageBreak
5830 (#1).
5831 \MessageBreak
5832 It should be a mini-table type
5833 \MessageBreak
5834 (parttoc...sectlot)}}%
5835 {Correct the source code.
5836 \MessageBreak
5837 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5838 \else
5839 \edef\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@ltypetable@#1}}
5840 \fi

```

\if@mtc@setfeature@ The second argument is a keyword of the featureparam family, the result is stored in \mtc@featparam@; and the complement is computed from the first argument, interpreted as a keyword of the ft3 family and whose result is stored in \mtc@featparam@third.

\@nameuse

```

5841 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@featureparam@#2\endcsname\relax
5842 \@mtc@setfeature@false
5843 \def\mtc@featparam@abbrev{X}
5844 \def\mtc@featparam@third{X}
5845 \mtcPackageError[<E0012>]{minitoc}%
5846 {\string\mtcsetfeature \space has a wrong second argument
5847 \MessageBreak
5848 (#2).
5849 \MessageBreak
5850 It should be a feature param
5851 \MessageBreak
5852 (before, after, pagestyle)}}%
5853 {Correct the source code.
5854 \MessageBreak
5855 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5856 \else
5857 \edef\mtc@featparam@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@featureparam@#2}}
5858 \edef\mtc@featparam@third{\@nameuse{mtc@ft3@#2}}
5859 \fi

```

\if@mtc@setfeature@ The name of the effective macro is built by concatenating these three pieces (named \mtc@featparam@abbrev, \mtc@mtfeat@abbrev, and \mtc@featparam@third respectively), then this macro is executed:

\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev

\mtc@featparam@third

```

5860 \if@mtc@setfeature@
5861 \def\mtc@tmpfeat@name%
5862 {\mtc@featparam@abbrev\mtc@mtfeat@abbrev\mtc@featparam@third}
5863 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0014>]{minitoc}%
5864 {\string\mtcsetfeature\space redefines the macro
5865 \MessageBreak
5866 "\csname mtc@tmpfeat@name\endcsname" as

```

```

5867 \MessageBreak
5868 "\string#3"}
5869 \expandafter\def\csname\mtc@tmpfeat@name\endcsname{#3}
5870 \else
5871 \mtcPackageError[<E0023>]{minitoc}%
5872 {The macro \string\mtcsetfeature\space has incompatible
5873 \MessageBreak
5874 first (#1) and second (#2) arguments}%
5875 {Correct the source code.
5876 \MessageBreak
5877 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5878 \fi}

```

### 9.66.9 The `\mtcsetdepth` command

This command is very similar to the `\mtcsetttitle` command. Its syntax is almost identical:

```
\mtcsetdepth{mini-table}{depth}
```



The *mini-table* type is a keyword like `minitoc`. The *depth* is the depth for a mini-table. If it is a mini-table for a list of figures or tables, the corresponding depth counter *must be available*, i.e., must have been created (often by an adequate package, like the `subfig` package [102]).

`\if@mtc@setdepth@` First, we declare a flag, set true:

```
5879 \newif\if@mtc@setdepth@\@mtc@setdepth@true
```

`\mtcsetdepth` Then we define the `\mtcsetdepth` command, with two arguments:

```
5880 \newcommand{\mtcsetdepth}[2]{%
```

`\mtc@mtade@abbrev` We process the first argument, a keyword of the `ltypetable` family. The result is stored in  
`\if@mtc@setdepth@` `\mtc@mtade@abbrev:`  
`\@nameuse`

```

5881 \def\mtc@mtade@abbrev{X}
5882 \@mtc@setdepth@true
5883 \expandafter\ifx\csname mtc@ltypetable@#1\endcsname\relax
5884 \@mtc@setdepth@false
5885 \def\mtc@mtade@abbrev{X}
5886 \mtcPackageError[<E0009>]{minitoc}%
5887 { \string\mtcsetdepth \space has a wrong first argument
5888 \MessageBreak
5889 (#1).
5890 \MessageBreak
5891 It should be a mini-table type
5892 \MessageBreak

```

```

5893      (parttoc...sectlot)}}%
5894      {Correct the source code.
5895      \MessageBreak
5896      Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
5897 \else
5898   \edef\mtc@mtade@abbrev{\@nameuse{mtc@ltypetable@#1}}
5899 \fi

```

```

\if@mtc@setdepth@ And we construct the name of the effective counter and gave it the value:
\mtc@tmpde@name
\mtc@mtade@abbrev 5900 \if@mtc@setdepth@
\mtc@toks 5901   \def\mtc@tmpde@name{\mtc@mtade@abbrev depth}
\setcounter 5902   \expandafter\noexpand\@ifundefined{c@\mtc@mtade@abbrev depth}%
5903     {\mtcPackageError[<E0008>]{minitoc}%
5904     {\string\mtcsetdepth \space attempts to use
5905     \MessageBreak
5906     an undefined counter (#1depth).}%
5907     {Correct the source code.
5908     \MessageBreak
5909     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}}}%
5910   \mtc@toks{#2} % trick for explicit message using \the.
5911   \mtcPackageInfo[<I0013>]{minitoc}%
5912   {\string\mtcsetdepth\space redefines the counter
5913   \MessageBreak
5914   "\mtc@tmpde@name" as "\the\mtc@toks"}%
5915   \expandafter\csname c@\mtc@tmpde@name\endcsname=#2}%
5916 \else
5917   \mtcPackageError[<E0010>]{minitoc}%
5918   {\string\mtcsetdepth:\space Illegal type of table (#1)}%
5919   {Correct the source code.
5920   \MessageBreak
5921   Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}{\relax}
5922 \fi}% end of \mtcsetdepth

```

## 9.67 The mtchideinmaintoc environment and siblings

\if@mtc@Himtoc@ The flag \if@mtc@Himtoc@ is used to detect an incorrect imbrication of this environment:

```

5923 \newif\if@mtc@Himtoc@ \@mtc@Himtoc@false

```

```

\mtc@savetocdepth We define a macro \mtc@savetocdepth to save the current value of the counter tocdepth.
\mtc@restoretocdepth Then we define this environment, which inserts into the TOC file this command and commands
mtchideinmaintoc of the form \setcounter{tocdepth}{...}. Note that \xdef is necessary! It also save and
\if@mtc@Himtoc@ restore the value of the counter tocdepth, as the optional argument is the hiding depth of the
\mtc@sv@tocdepth entries in the main TOC.
\arabic
\addtocontents
\setcounter

```

```

5924 \newcommand{\mtc@savetocdepth}{\xdef\mtc@sv@tocdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}}%
5925 \newcommand{\mtc@restoretocdepth}{\setcounter{tocdepth}{\mtc@sv@tocdepth}}%
5926 \newenvironment{mtchideinmaintoc}[1][-1]%
5927 {\if@mtc@Himtoc@{\mtcPackageError[<E0005>]{minitoc}%
5928   {Imbrication of mtchideinmaintoc environments}%
5929   {The hiding in main ToC could be incorrect}}\fi
5930 \global\@mtc@Himtoc@true
5931 \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\mtc@savetocdepth}%
5932 \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{#1}}%
5933 {\if@mtc@Himtoc@{\else\mtcPackageError[<E0031>]{minitoc}%
5934   {Unbalanced mtchideinmaintoc environment}%
5935   {The hiding in main ToC could be incorrect}}\fi
5936 \global\@mtc@Himtoc@false
5937 \addtocontents{toc}{\protect\mtc@restoretocdepth}}%

```

\AtBeginDocument The mtchideinmainlof and mtchideinmainlot environments are similar, but we must verify the presence of the associated depth counter, so we have two versions of each of these environments. This must be done *after* the loading of the packages.

\mtc@sv@lofdepth  
\mtc@sv@tocdepth First, for the list of figures:  
\mtc@svf@tocdepth

```

\arabic 5938 \newif\if@mtc@Himlof@ \@mtc@Himlof@false
\addtocontents 5939 \AtBeginDocument{%
\setcounter 5940 \@ifundefined{c@lofdepth}{%
5941   \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlof}[1][-1]%
5942   {\if@mtc@Himlof@{\mtcPackageError[<E0003>]{minitoc}%
5943     {Imbrication of mtchideinmainlof environments}%
5944     {The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect}}\fi
5945   \global\@mtc@Himlof@true
5946   \def\mtc@sv@tocdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}%
5947   \def\mtc@sv@lofdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}%
5948   \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\mtc@savetocdepth}%
5949   \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{#1}}%
5950   {\if@mtc@Himlof@{\else\mtcPackageError[<E0029>]{minitoc}%
5951     {Unbalanced mtchideinmainlof environment}%
5952     {The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect}}\fi
5953   \global\@mtc@Himtoc@false
5954   \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\mtc@restoretocdepth}%
5955 }}%
5956 {%
5957   \newcommand{\mtc@savelofdepth}{\xdef\mtc@sv@lofdepth{\arabic{lofdepth}}}%
5958   \newcommand{\mtc@restorelofdepth}{\setcounter{lofdepth}{\mtc@sv@lofdepth}}%
5959   \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlof}[1][-1]%
5960   {\if@mtc@Himlof@{\mtcPackageError[<E0003>]{minitoc}%
5961     {Imbrication of mtchideinmainlof environments}%
5962     {The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect}}\fi
5963   \global\@mtc@Himlof@true
5964   \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\mtc@savelofdepth}%
5965   \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{#1}}%
5966   {\if@mtc@Himlof@{\else\mtcPackageError[<E0029>]{minitoc}%
5967     {Unbalanced mtchideinmainlof environment}%
5968     {The hiding in main LoF could be incorrect}}\fi

```

```

5969 \global\@mtc@Himlof@false
5970 \addtocontents{lof}{\protect\mtc@restoretocdepth}}}}

\AtBeginDocument Then for the list of tables:
\if@mtc@Himlot@
mtchideinmainlot 5971 \newif\if@mtc@Himlot@ \@mtc@Himlot@false
\mtc@sv@lotdepth 5972 \AtBeginDocument{%
\mtc@sv@tocdepth 5973 \@ifundefined{c@lotdepth}{%
\mtc@svt@tocdepth 5974 \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlot}[1][-1]%
\arabic 5975 {\if@mtc@Himlot@\mtcPackageError[<E0004>]{minitoc}%
\addtocontents 5976 {Imbrication of mtchideinmainlot environments}%
\setcounter 5977 {The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect}\fi
5978 \global\@mtc@Himlot@true
5979 \def\mtc@sv@tocdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}%
5980 \def\mtc@sv@lotdepth{\arabic{tocdepth}}%
5981 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\mtc@savetocdepth}%
5982 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\setcounter{tocdepth}{#1}}}%
5983 {\if@mtc@Himlot@\else\mtcPackageError[<E0030>]{minitoc}%
5984 {Unbalanced mtchideinmainlot environment}%
5985 {The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect}\fi
5986 \global\@mtc@Himlot@false
5987 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\mtc@restoretocdepth}%
5988 }}%
5989 {%
5990 \newcommand{\mtc@savelotdepth}{\xdef\mtc@sv@lotdepth{\arabic{lotdepth}}}%
5991 \newcommand{\mtc@restorelotdepth}{\setcounter{lotdepth}{\mtc@sv@lotdepth}}%
5992 \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlot}[1][-1]%
5993 {\if@mtc@Himlot@\mtcPackageError[<E0004>]{minitoc}%
5994 {Imbrication of mtchideinmainlot environments}%
5995 {The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect}\fi
5996 \global\@mtc@Himlot@true
5997 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\mtc@savelotdepth}%
5998 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\setcounter{lotdepth}{#1}}}%
5999 {\if@mtc@Himlot@\else\mtcPackageError[<E0030>]{minitoc}%
6000 {Unbalanced mtchideinmainlot environment}%
6001 {The hiding in main LoT could be incorrect}\fi
6002 \global\@mtc@Himlot@false
6003 \addtocontents{lot}{\protect\mtc@restorelotdepth}}}}

```

## 9.68 Fixing the “Glossary” entry in the TOC

This macro is complex. Its syntax is:

```
\mtcfixglossary[part|chapter|section]
```

`\@ifundefined` Depending of the document class, the “Glossary” entry in the TOC is treated as a starred chapter or a starred section. Hence we must first determine the default value of the optional argument. The default value is then stored in the macro `\mtc@glofix@level`. This is done by the following code, which eventually gives a warning message:

```

6004 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
6005   \@ifundefined{section}%
6006     {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0001>]{minitoc}%
6007      {\string\chapter\space and \string\section\space are undefined.%
6008       \MessageBreak
6009       Cannot use \string\mtcfixglossary \space without
6010       \MessageBreak
6011       optional argument [part]}}%
6012   \@ifundefined{part}%
6013     {\mtcPackageError[<E0001>]{minitoc}%
6014      {But \string\part\space is undefined}%
6015      {\string\mtcfixglossary\space not usable}}%
6016   {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0006>]{minitoc}%
6017    {\string\mtcfixglossary\space can only be used
6018     \MessageBreak
6019     with the [part] optional argument,
6020     \MessageBreak
6021     which becomes the default}%
6022    \def\mtc@glofix@level{part}}%
6023   }}%
6024   {\def\mtc@glofix@level{section}}}%
6025 {\def\mtc@glofix@level{chapter}}

```

`\if@mtcfixglossary@` Then we define a flag (`\if@mtcfixglossary@`) and the command `\mtcfixglossary`, which adds the necessary lines in the TOC, the LOF and the LOT.

`\mtcfixglossary`

`\addcontentsline`

```

6026 \newif\if@mtcfixglossary@ \@mtcfixglossary@false
6027 \newcommand{\mtcfixglossary}[1][\mtc@glofix@level]{%
6028   \@mtcfixglossary@false
6029   \expandafter%
6030   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\part\relax\@mtcfixglossary@true\fi
6031   \expandafter%
6032   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter\relax\@mtcfixglossary@true\fi
6033   \expandafter%
6034   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section\relax\@mtcfixglossary@true\fi
6035   \if@mtcfixglossary@
6036     \addcontentsline{lof}{x\mtc@glofix@level}{}%
6037     \addcontentsline{lot}{x\mtc@glofix@level}{}%
6038     \csname mtcadd\mtc@glofix@level\endcsname\relax
6039   \else
6040     \mtcPackageError[<E0026>]{minitoc}%
6041     {The optional argument of \string\mtcfixglossary
6042      \MessageBreak
6043      is wrong}%
6044     {It must be omitted (\mtc@glofix@level), or be part, chapter or section}%
6045   \fi
6046 }%

```



## 9.69 Fixing the “Index” entry in the TOC

This macro is complex. Its syntax is:

```
\mtcfixindex[part|chapter|section]
```

\@ifundefined \mtc@ixfix@level Depending of the document class, the “Index” entry in the TOC is treated as a starred chapter or a starred section. Hence we must first determine the default value of the optional argument. The default value is then stored in the macro \mtc@ixfix@level. This is done by the following code, which eventually gives a warning message:

```
6047 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
6048   \@ifundefined{section}%
6049     {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0002>]{minitoc}%
6050      {\string\chapter\space and \string\section\space are undefined.%
6051       \MessageBreak
6052       Cannot use \string\mtcfixindex \space without
6053       \MessageBreak
6054       optional argument [part]}}%
6055   \@ifundefined{part}%
6056     {\mtcPackageError[<E0002>]{minitoc}%
6057      {But \string\part\space is undefined}%
6058      {\string\mtcfixindex\space not usable}}%
6059   {\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0007>]{minitoc}%
6060    {\string\mtcfixindex\space can only be used with
6061     \MessageBreak
6062     the [part] optional argument,
6063     \MessageBreak
6064     which becomes the default}}%
6065   \def\mtc@ixfix@level{part}}%
6066   }%
6067   {\def\mtc@ixfix@level{section}}}%
6068 {\def\mtc@ixfix@level{chapter}}
```

\if@mtcfixindex@ \mtcfixindex \addcontentsline Then we define a flag and the command \mtcfixindex, which adds the necessary lines in the TOC, the LOF and the LOT.

```
6069 \newif\if@mtcfixindex@ \@mtcfixindex@false
6070 \newcommand{\mtcfixindex}[1][\mtc@ixfix@level]{%
6071   \@mtcfixindex@false
6072   \expandafter%
6073   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\part\relax\@mtcfixindex@true\fi
6074   \expandafter%
6075   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\chapter\relax\@mtcfixindex@true\fi
6076   \expandafter%
6077   \ifx\csname #1\endcsname\section\relax\@mtcfixindex@true\fi
6078   \if@mtcfixindex@
6079     \addcontentsline{lof}{x\mtc@ixfix@level}{}}%
```

```

6080 \addcontentsline{lot}{x\mtc@ixfix@level}{}%
6081 \csname mtcadd\mtc@ixfix@level\endcsname\relax
6082 \else
6083 \mtcPackageError[<E0027>]{minitoc}%
6084 {The optional argument of \string\mtcfixindex
6085 \MessageBreak
6086 is wrong}%
6087 {It must be omitted (\mtc@ixfix@level), or be part, chapter or section}%
6088 \fi
6089 }%

```

## 9.70 The `\mtcselectlanguage` command

`\mtcselectlanguage` This command loads a minitoc language definition file *language.mld* to set the language-dependent titles for the mini-tables. But first, we verify that this file exists. The flag `\if@mtc@insellang@` `\IfFileExists` `\if@mtc@insellang@` is true while we are in this macro.

```

\@input
6090 \newif\if@mtc@insellang@ \@mtc@insellang@false
6091 \def\mtcselectlanguage#1{%
6092   \@mtc@insellang@true
6093   \InputIfFileExists{#1.mld}%
6094   {\mtcPackageInfo[<I0010>]{minitoc}{The #1 language is selected.%
6095     \MessageBreak
6096   }}%
6097   {\mtcPackageError[<E0006>]{minitoc}%
6098     {#1 is not a known language,
6099     \MessageBreak
6100     #1.mld not found.
6101     \MessageBreak
6102     Command ignored}%
6103     {See the minitoc documentation.
6104     \MessageBreak
6105     Correct the source using a valid language name.
6106     \MessageBreak
6107     Press RETURN}}%
6108   \@mtc@insellang@false
6109 }

```

## 9.71 The `\mtcloadmlo` internal command

`\mtcloadmlo` This command loads a minitoc language object file *language.mlo* to set the language-dependent titles for the mini-tables when exotic characters are needed. This command is used `\if@mtc@insellang@` `\IfFileExists` `\@input` only in some *.mld* files when the title strings can not be generated by the normal processing of *minitoc.dtx*. The *.mlo* files are generated by *filecontents* environments in the *minitoc.ins* file. But first, we verify that this *.mlo* file exists.



*This command should not be invoked directly by the user. This is verified via the flag `\if@mtc@insellang@`.*

```

6110 \def\mtcloadmlo#1{%
6111     \if@mtc@insellang@
6112     \InputIfFileExists{#1.mlo}%
6113     {\mtcPackageInfo[<I0011>]{minitoc}%
6114      {#1 minitoc language object selected.
6115       \MessageBreak}}%
6116     {\mtcPackageError[<E0007>]{minitoc}%
6117      {#1 is not a known minitoc
6118       \MessageBreak
6119       language object file (.mlo),
6120       \MessageBreak
6121       #1.mlo not found.
6122       \MessageBreak
6123       Command ignored}%
6124      {See the minitoc documentation.
6125       \MessageBreak
6126       Correct the source using a valid language name.
6127       \MessageBreak
6128       Press RETURN}}%
6129     \else
6130     \mtcPackageError[<E0032>]{minitoc}%
6131     {You are using the \string\mtcloadmlo\space command
6132     \MessageBreak
6133     outside of a .mld file}%
6134     {It will be ignored}
6135     \@mtc@insellang@false
6136     \fi
6137 }
```

## 9.72 The “coffee breaks”

`\addcoffeeline` For the minutes package [181] (by Knut LICKERT), we need some commands to insert special entries, undotted, in the TOC to mark “coffee breaks” ☕ in a conference. Hence we define `\addcoffeeline`, `\coffeeline` and `\l@coffee`, and internal commands analog to the standard internal commands to format the TOC.

`\@Undottedtocline`

```

6138 \def\addcoffeeline#1#2#3{%
6139     \addtocontents{#1}{\protect\coffeeline{#2}{#3}{\null}}
6140 \def\coffeeline#1{\csname l@#1\endcsname}
6141 \newcommand*\l@coffee{\@Undottedtocline{1}{1.5em}{2.3em}}
```

## 9.73 Initialization of counters

`\AtBeginDocument` At the beginning of the document, we initialize the absolute counters for parts, chapters and sections, if they are defined.

```

\@ifundefined
\setcounter

6142 \AtBeginDocument{%
6143 \@ifundefined{c@ptc}{}{\setcounter{ptc}{0}}
6144 \@ifundefined{c@mtc}{}{\setcounter{mtc}{0}}
6145 \@ifundefined{c@stc}{}{\setcounter{stc}{0}}}
```

## 9.74 Declarations for simple options

These options are just setting a flag.

### 9.74.1 Options **tight** and **loose**, **k-tight** and **k-loose**

`\DeclareOption` These options influence the interline separation in the mini-tables.

```

\iftightmtc
\ifktightmtc 6146 \DeclareOption{tight}{\tightmtctrue}
6147 \DeclareOption{loose}{\tightmtcfalse} % default
6148 \DeclareOption{k-tight}{\ktightmtctrue}
6149 \DeclareOption{k-loose}{\ktightmtcfalse} % default
```

### 9.74.2 Options **checkfiles** and **nocheckfiles**

`\DeclareOption` These options activate or inhibit the checking for empty mini-table files.

```

\if@mtc@checkfiles
6150 \DeclareOption{checkfiles}{\@mtc@checkfilestrue} % default
6151 \DeclareOption{nocheckfiles}{\@mtc@checkfilesfalse}
```

### 9.74.3 Options **dotted** and **undotted**

`\DeclareOption` These options activate or inhibit the leaders (lines of dots) in the mini-tables.

```

\ifundottedmtc
6152 \DeclareOption{undotted}{\undottedmtctrue}
6153 \DeclareOption{dotted}{\undottedmtcfalse} % default
```

### 9.74.4 Option notoccite

```
\DeclareOption This option will later load the notoccite package [8].
\if@mtc@notoccite@
6154 \DeclareOption{notoccite}{\@mtc@notoccite@true}
```

### 9.74.5 Option shorttext

```
\DeclareOption This option forces the use of short extensions.
\if@longextensions@
6155 \DeclareOption{shorttext}{\@longextensions@false
6156 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0020>]{minitoc}%
6157 {You have forced the use of short extensions}}
```

## 9.75 The insection option

`\if@mtc@ss@insection@` This option is available only if `\chapter` is not defined and `\section` defined. It is to be revised when chapter/section level commands will ever be allowed together, sometime in the  
`\@ifundefined` revised when chapter/section level commands will ever be allowed together, sometime in the  
`\DeclareOption` far away future, with a lot of luck (and work)<sup>10</sup>.

```
6158 \newif\if@mtc@ss@insection@ \@mtc@ss@insection@false
6159 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
6160   \ifundefined{section}{\DeclareOption{insection}{%
6161     \mtcPackageError[<E0035>]{minitoc}%
6162     {You have used the 'insection' option in
6163     \MessageBreak
6164     a document where chapters are defined.
6165     \MessageBreak
6166     This is not compatible: option ignored.}%
6167     {Remove this option.
6168     \MessageBreak
6169     Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}
6170     }}%
6171   {%
6172     \DeclareOption{insection}%
6173     {\@mtc@ss@insection@true}%
6174   }%
6175 }{}}
```

---

<sup>10</sup>Please, do not dream too much!

## 9.76 The listfiles and nolistfiles options

`\if@mtc@listfiles@` The `listfiles` option creates a file containing a list of the auxiliary files created by the minitoc package. This is the default. This file is named *document.maf*. The `nolistfiles` option inhibits this listing.

```
6176 \newif\if@mtc@listfiles@ \@mtc@listfiles@true
6177 \DeclareOption{listfiles}{\@mtc@listfiles@true}
6178 \DeclareOption{nolistfiles}{\@mtc@listfiles@false}
```

## 9.77 Language options

`\@gobblethree` First, we define an utility macro (`\@gobblethree`), a list of the missing files (accumulated in the `\mtc@listmisslanguages` macro), and a macro (`\mtc@addmisslanguage`) to add a file name to the list:

```
\mtc@LML
\MessageBreak
6179 \def\@gobblethree#1#2#3{\empty}
6180 \def\mtc@listmisslanguages{}
6181 \def\mtc@addmisslanguage#1{%
6182     \let\mtc@LML\mtc@listmisslanguages
6183     \edef\mtc@listmisslanguages{\mtc@LML \MessageBreak #1}}
```

`\if@mtc@misslang` Before defining a language option, we must verify that the corresponding *.mld* file exists, and, if necessary, that the corresponding *.mlo* file exists. Hence, we must first define a flag `\mtc@setlangopt` and two macros to test the presence of these files; if the files are available, we define the language option.

```
\mtc@setlangopt
\IfFileExists
\DeclareOption
\mtc@addmisslanguage
\mtcPackageWarningNoLine
6184 \newif\if@mtc@misslang\@mtc@misslangfalse
6185 \newcommand{\mtc@setlangopt}[1]{%
6186     \IfFileExists{#1.mld}%
6187     {\DeclareOption{#1}{\mtcselectlanguage{#1}}}%
6188     {\@mtc@misslangtrue
6189     \mtc@addmisslanguage{#1.mld}
6190     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0050>]{minitoc}%
6191     {The required "#1.mld" file is missing.
6192     \MessageBreak
6193     The "#1" language option
6194     \MessageBreak
6195     will not be available.
6196     \MessageBreak
6197     Please install it from a recent distribution
6198     \MessageBreak
6199     or from the CTAN archives\@gobble}}%
6200 }%
6201 \newcommand{\mtc@setlangopto}[1]{%
6202     \IfFileExists{#1.mlo}%
```

```

6203     {\mtc@setlangopt{#1}}%
6204     {\@mtc@misslangtrue
6205     \mtc@addmisslanguage{#1.mlo}
6206     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0051>]{minitoc}%
6207     {The required "#1.mlo" file is missing.
6208     \MessageBreak
6209     The "#1" language option
6210     \MessageBreak
6211     will not be available.
6212     \MessageBreak
6213     Please install it from a recent distribution
6214     \MessageBreak
6215     or from the CTAN archives\@gobble}%
6216 \IfFileExists{#1.mld}{}%
6217     {\@mtc@misslangtrue
6218     \mtc@addmisslanguage{#1.mld}
6219     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0050>]{minitoc}%
6220     {The required "#1.mld" file is missing.
6221     \MessageBreak
6222     The "#1" language option will not be available.
6223     \MessageBreak
6224     Please install it from a recent distribution
6225     \MessageBreak
6226     or from the CTAN archives\@gobble}%
6227     }%
6228 }%
6229 }%

```

```

\if@mtc@misslang Some .mld files are mandatory (english.mld because english is the default language), so
\mtc@setlangoptm their absence is a serious error:
\IfFileExists
\DeclareOption 6230 \newcommand{\mtc@setlangoptm}[1]{%
\mtcPackageError 6231 \IfFileExists{#1.mld}%
\mtc@addmisslanguage 6232 {\DeclareOption{#1}{\mtcselectlanguage{#1}}}%
6233 {\@mtc@misslangtrue
6234 \mtc@addmisslanguage{#1.mld}
6235 \mtcPackageError[<E0038>]{minitoc}%
6236 {Your minitoc installation is incomplete.
6237 \MessageBreak
6238 A mandatory minitoc language object file,
6239 \MessageBreak
6240 #1.mld, is not found.
6241 \MessageBreak
6242 We will try to continue with
6243 \MessageBreak
6244 current/default values}%
6245 {See the minitoc documentation.
6246 \MessageBreak
6247 Please fix your minitoc installation.
6248 \MessageBreak
6249 Press <return> to continue}%

```

\providecommand We must define the default titles (english):

```

\ptctitle
\plftitle 6250      \providecommand{\ptctitle}{Table of Contents}%
\plttitle 6251      \providecommand{\plftitle}{List of Figures}%
\mtctitle 6252      \providecommand{\plttitle}{List of Tables}%
\mlftitle 6253      \providecommand{\mtctitle}{Contents}%
\mlttitle 6254      \providecommand{\mlftitle}{Figures}%
\stctitle 6255      \providecommand{\mlttitle}{Tables}%
\slftitle 6256      \providecommand{\stctitle}{Contents}%
\slttitle 6257      \providecommand{\slftitle}{Figures}%
           6258      \providecommand{\slttitle}{Tables}%
           6259 }}%
```

\AtEndDocument If a .mld or .mlo file is missing, we signal that at the end of the document:

```

\if@mtc@misslang
\mtcPackageWarningNoLine 6260 \AtEndDocument{%
  \MessageBreak 6261   \if@mtc@misslang
\mtc@listmisslanguages 6262   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0093>]{minitoc}%
  \@gobblethree 6263     {Some "*.mld" or "*.mlo" files are missing
                        6264     \MessageBreak
                        6265     in your installation.
                        6266     \MessageBreak
                        6267     Search for the I0050 and I0051 info messages
                        6268     \MessageBreak
                        6269     in the \string\jobname.log file.
                        6270     \MessageBreak
                        6271     Please install the missing files from
                        6272     \MessageBreak
                        6273     a recent distribution
                        6274     \MessageBreak
                        6275     or from the CTAN archives}%
  6276   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0094>]{minitoc}%
  6277   {Missing minitoc language file(s)\string:
  6278   \MessageBreak
  6279   \mtc@listmisslanguages\@gobblethree}%
  6280   \fi
  6281 }%
```

\DeclareOption Each language option reads the corresponding *language.mld* file via the specialized macro \mtc@setlangopt, after verification by \mtc@setlangopt or \mtc@setlangopto (when a .mlo file is required), by \mtc@setlangoptm when the language is mandatory. If the file does not exist, a standard error message is displayed. The language options are (should be) in alphabetical order (to make maintenance easier). Several options could load the same file, but, by convention, there should be a *language.mld* file for each language option, given that this file may load another one (as *american.mld* loads *english.mld*).

```

6282 \mtc@setlangopt{acadian}%
6283 \mtc@setlangopt{acadien}%
6284 \mtc@setlangopt{afrikaan}%
6285 \mtc@setlangopt{afrikaans}%
```



```

6286 \mtc@setlangopt{albanian}%
6287 \mtc@setlangopt{american}%
6288 \mtc@setlangopt{arab}%
6289 \mtc@setlangopt{arab2}%
6290 \mtc@setlangopt{arabi}%
6291 \mtc@setlangopt{arabic}%
6292 \mtc@setlangopt{armenian}%
6293 \mtc@setlangopt{australian}%
6294 \mtc@setlangopt{austrian}%
6295 \mtc@setlangopt{bahasa}%
6296 \mtc@setlangopt{bahasai}%
6297 \mtc@setlangopt{bahasam}%
6298 \mtc@setlangopt{bangla}%
6299 \mtc@setlangopt{basque}%
6300 \mtc@setlangopt{bicig}%
6301 \mtc@setlangopt{bicig2}%
6302 \mtc@setlangopt{bicig3}%
6303 \mtc@setlangopt{bi the}%
6304 \mtc@setlangopt{brazil}%
6305 \mtc@setlangopt{brazilian}%
6306 \mtc@setlangopt{breton}%
6307 \mtc@setlangopt{british}%
6308 \mtc@setlangopt{bulgarian}%
6309 \mtc@setlangopt{bulgarianb}%
6310 \mtc@setlangopt{buryat}%
6311 \mtc@setlangopt{buryat2}%
6312 \mtc@setlangopt{canadian}%
6313 \mtc@setlangopt{canadien}%
6314 \mtc@setlangopt{castillan}%
6315 \mtc@setlangopt{castillian}%
6316 \mtc@setlangopt{catalan}%
6317 \mtc@setlangopto{chinese1}%      % .mlo
6318 \mtc@setlangopto{chinese2}%      % .mlo
6319 \mtc@setlangopt{croatian}%
6320 \mtc@setlangopt{czech}%
6321 \mtc@setlangopt{danish}%
6322 \mtc@setlangopt{devanagari}%
6323 \mtc@setlangopt{dutch}%
6324 \mtc@setlangoptm{english}%        % mandatory
6325 \mtc@setlangopt{english1}%
6326 \mtc@setlangopt{english2}%
6327 \mtc@setlangopt{esperant}%
6328 \mtc@setlangopt{esperanto}%
6329 \mtc@setlangopt{estonian}%
6330 \mtc@setlangopt{ethiopia}%
6331 \mtc@setlangopt{ethiopian}%
6332 \mtc@setlangopt{ethiopian2}%
6333 \mtc@setlangopto{farsi1}%         % .mlo
6334 \mtc@setlangopto{farsi2}%         % .mlo
6335 \mtc@setlangopt{farsi3}%
6336 \mtc@setlangopt{finnish}%
6337 \mtc@setlangopt{finnish2}%
6338 \mtc@setlangopt{francais}%
6339 \mtc@setlangopt{french}%

```

```

6340 \mtc@setlangopt{french1}%
6341 \mtc@setlangopt{french2}%
6342 \mtc@setlangopt{frenchb}%
6343 \mtc@setlangopt{frenchle}%
6344 \mtc@setlangopt{frenchpro}%
6345 \mtc@setlangopt{galician}%
6346 \mtc@setlangopt{german}%
6347 \mtc@setlangopt{germanb}%
6348 \mtc@setlangopt{germanb2}%
6349 \mtc@setlangopt{greek}%
6350 \mtc@setlangopt{greek-mono}%
6351 \mtc@setlangopt{greek-polydemo}%
6352 \mtc@setlangopt{greek-polykatha}%
6353 \mtc@setlangopt{guarani}%
6354 \mtc@setlangopt{hangul1}%           % .mlo
6355 \mtc@setlangopt{hangul2}%           % .mlo
6356 \mtc@setlangopt{hangul3}%           % .mlo
6357 \mtc@setlangopt{hangul4}%           % .mlo
6358 \mtc@setlangopt{hangul-u8}%          % .mlo
6359 \mtc@setlangopt{hanja1}%            % .mlo
6360 \mtc@setlangopt{hanja2}%            % .mlo
6361 \mtc@setlangopt{hanja-u8}%          % .mlo
6362 \mtc@setlangopt{hebrew}%
6363 \mtc@setlangopt{hebrew2}%
6364 \mtc@setlangopt{hindi}%
6365 \mtc@setlangopt{hindi-modern}%
6366 \mtc@setlangopt{hungarian}%
6367 \mtc@setlangopt{icelandic}%
6368 \mtc@setlangopt{indon}%
6369 \mtc@setlangopt{indonesian}%
6370 \mtc@setlangopt{interlingua}%
6371 \mtc@setlangopt{irish}%
6372 \mtc@setlangopt{italian}%
6373 \mtc@setlangopt{italian2}%
6374 \mtc@setlangopt{japanese}%          % .mlo
6375 \mtc@setlangopt{japanese2}%         % .mlo
6376 \mtc@setlangopt{japanese3}%         % .mlo
6377 \mtc@setlangopt{japanese4}%         % .mlo
6378 \mtc@setlangopt{japanese5}%         % .mlo
6379 \mtc@setlangopt{japanese6}%         % .mlo
6380 \mtc@setlangopt{kannada}%
6381 \mtc@setlangopt{khalkha}%
6382 \mtc@setlangopt{latin}%
6383 \mtc@setlangopt{latin2}%
6384 \mtc@setlangopt{latvian}%
6385 \mtc@setlangopt{letton}%
6386 \mtc@setlangopt{lithuanian}%
6387 \mtc@setlangopt{lowersorbian}%
6388 \mtc@setlangopt{lsorbian}%
6389 \mtc@setlangopt{magyar}%
6390 \mtc@setlangopt{magyar2}%
6391 \mtc@setlangopt{magyar3}%
6392 \mtc@setlangopt{malay}%
6393 \mtc@setlangopt{malayalam-keli}%

```

```

6394 \mtc@setlangopto{malayalam-omega}%      % .mlo
6395 \mtc@setlangopt{malayalam-rachana}%
6396 \mtc@setlangopt{malayalam-rachana2}%
6397 \mtc@setlangopt{manju}%
6398 \mtc@setlangopt{meyalu}%
6399 \mtc@setlangopt{mongol}%
6400 \mtc@setlangopt{mongolb}%
6401 \mtc@setlangopt{mongolian}%
6402 \mtc@setlangopt{naustrian}%
6403 \mtc@setlangopt{ngerman}%
6404 \mtc@setlangopt{newzealand}%
6405 \mtc@setlangopt{ngermanb}%
6406 \mtc@setlangopt{ngermanb2}%
6407 \mtc@setlangopt{norsk}%
6408 \mtc@setlangopt{norsk2}%
6409 \mtc@setlangopt{nynorsk}%
6410 \mtc@setlangopt{nynorsk2}%
6411 \mtc@setlangopt{polish}%
6412 \mtc@setlangopt{polish2}%
6413 \mtc@setlangopt{polski}%
6414 \mtc@setlangopt{portuges}%
6415 \mtc@setlangopt{portuguese}%
6416 \mtc@setlangopt{romanian}%
6417 \mtc@setlangopt{romanian2}%
6418 \mtc@setlangopt{romanian3}%
6419 \mtc@setlangopt{russian}%
6420 \mtc@setlangopt{russianb}%
6421 \mtc@setlangopt{russianc}%
6422 \mtc@setlangopt{russian2m}%
6423 \mtc@setlangopt{russian2o}%
6424 \mtc@setlangopto{russian-cca}%           % .mlo
6425 \mtc@setlangopto{russian-cca1}%          % .mlo
6426 \mtc@setlangopto{russian-lh}%            % .mlo
6427 \mtc@setlangopto{russian-lhcyralt}%      % .mlo
6428 \mtc@setlangopto{russian-lhcyrkoi}%      % .mlo
6429 \mtc@setlangopto{russian-lhcyrwin}%      % .mlo
6430 \mtc@setlangopt{samin}%
6431 \mtc@setlangopt{scottish}%
6432 \mtc@setlangopt{serbian}%
6433 \mtc@setlangopt{serbianc}%
6434 \mtc@setlangopt{slovak}%
6435 \mtc@setlangopt{slovene}%
6436 \mtc@setlangopt{spanish}%
6437 \mtc@setlangopt{spanish2}%
6438 \mtc@setlangopt{spanish3}%
6439 \mtc@setlangopt{spanish4}%
6440 \mtc@setlangopt{swedish}%
6441 \mtc@setlangopt{swedish2}%
6442 \mtc@setlangopto{thai}%                  % .mlo
6443 \mtc@setlangopt{turkish}%
6444 \mtc@setlangopt{uighur}%
6445 \mtc@setlangopt{uighur2}%
6446 \mtc@setlangopt{uighur3}%
6447 \mtc@setlangopt{UKenglish}%

```

```

6448 \mtc@setlangopt{ukraineb}%
6449 \mtc@setlangopt{ukrainian}%
6450 \mtc@setlangopt{uppersorbian}%
6451 \mtc@setlangopt{USenglish}%
6452 \mtc@setlangopt{usorbian}%
6453 \mtc@setlangopt{vietnam}%
6454 \mtc@setlangopt{vietnamese}%
6455 \mtc@setlangopt{welsh}%
6456 \mtc@setlangopt{xalx}%
6457 \mtc@setlangopt{xalx2}%
6458 \mtc@setlangopt{xalx3}%

```

## 9.78 The hints option

`\DeclareOption` We declare the hints (default) and nohints options:  
`\if@mtc@hints@`

```

6459 \DeclareOption{hints}{\@mtc@hints@true}
6460 \DeclareOption{nohints}{\@mtc@hints@false}

```

`\mtc@hints@begindoc` The hints option is made of three parts: the first, `\mtc@hints@begindoc`, is executed via  
`\AtBeginDocument` `\AtBeginDocument` and looks if some packages or classes are loaded, then gives warnings about their compatibility with minitoc.

The second part is made of tiny pieces of code inserted in the minitoc code, to verify that some macros are called in the right order.

`\mtc@hints@enddoc` The third and last part, `\mtc@hints@enddoc`, is executed via `\AtEndDocument` and examines  
`\AtEndDocument` some flags set by the first and the second parts. Then, if necessary, it writes some infos in the *document.log* file and/or warnings on the screen and in the *document.log* file. Note that the hints option does not signal errors, only infos and warnings, so it does not stop the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X run.

### 9.78.1 First part: `\mtc@hints@begindoc`

`\if@mtc@abstract@loaded@` We declare some flags and the first part of the hints option (for a `\AtBeginDocument` block):  
`\mtc@hints@begindoc`

```

\if@mtc@toc@used@ 6461 \newif\if@mtc@abstract@loaded@ \@mtc@abstract@loaded@false
\if@mtc@lof@used@ 6462 \newif\if@mtc@toc@used@ \global\@mtc@toc@used@false
\if@mtc@lot@used@ 6463 \newif\if@mtc@lof@used@ \global\@mtc@lof@used@false
6464 \newif\if@mtc@lot@used@ \global\@mtc@lot@used@false
6465 \def\mtc@hints@begindoc{%
6466 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0049>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6467 {==> You requested the hints option

```

```

6468 \MessageBreak
6469 Some hints are eventually given below\@gobble}%

```

### 9.78.1.1 Hint about the alphanum package

`\@ifpackageloaded` We test the presence of the `alphanum` package (part of the `jura` class [88]), and emit a warning, `\if@mtc@hints@given@` because this package is *incompatible* with `minitoc`:

```

6470 \@ifpackageloaded{alphanum}%
6471   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6472     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0025>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6473     {--- The alphanum package is loaded.
6474       \MessageBreak
6475       It is incompatible
6476       \MessageBreak
6477       with the minitoc package}}}%

```

### 9.78.1.2 Hint about the appendix package

`\@ifpackageloaded` We test the presence of the `appendix` package [267]: `\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

6478 \@ifpackageloaded{appendix}{%
6479 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6480 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0042>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6481 {--- The appendix package is loaded.
6482 \MessageBreak
6483 See the minitoc package documentation
6484 \MessageBreak
6485 for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%

```

### 9.78.1.3 Hint about the tocibind package

`\@ifpackageloaded` We test the presence of the `tocibind` package [268]: `\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

6486 \@ifpackageloaded{tocibind}%
6487   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6488     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0046>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6489     {--- The tocibind package is loaded.
6490       \MessageBreak
6491       See the minitoc package documentation
6492       \MessageBreak
6493       for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%

```

**9.78.1.4 Hint about the KOMA-Script classes**

`\@ifclassloaded` We test the presence of each minitoc-compatible KOMA-Script class [157, 207]:  
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

6494 \@ifclassloaded{scrbook}%
6495   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6496     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0043>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6497     {--- The KOMAScript scrbook class is loaded.
6498       \MessageBreak
6499       See the minitoc package documentation
6500       \MessageBreak
6501       for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%
6502 \@ifclassloaded{scrreprt}%
6503   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6504     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0043>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6505     {--- The KOMAScript scrreprt class is loaded.
6506       \MessageBreak
6507       See the minitoc package documentation
6508       \MessageBreak
6509       for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%
6510 \@ifclassloaded{scrartcl}%
6511   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6512     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0043>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6513     {--- The KOMAScript scrartcl class is loaded.
6514       \MessageBreak
6515       See the minitoc package documentation
6516       \MessageBreak
6517       for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%

```

**9.78.1.5 Hint about the tocloft package**

`\@ifpackageloaded` We test the presence of the tocloft package [265]:  
`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

6518 \@ifpackageloaded{tocloft}%
6519   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6520     \mtcPackageInfo[<I0047>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6521     {--- The tocloft package is loaded.
6522       \MessageBreak
6523       See the minitoc package documentation
6524       \MessageBreak
6525       for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%

```

**9.78.1.6 Hint about the titletoc package**

`\@ifpackageloaded` We test the presence of the titletoc package [35], and emit a warning, because this package is  
`\if@mtc@hints@given@` *incompatible* with minitoc:

```

6526 \@ifpackageloaded{titletoc}%
6527   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6528     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0040>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6529     {--- The titletoc package is loaded.
6530       \MessageBreak
6531       It is incompatible
6532       \MessageBreak
6533       with the minitoc package}}}%

```

### 9.78.1.7 Hint about the placeins package

\@ifpackageloaded We test if the placeins package [9] is loaded and, if yes, we check that the right options are selected:  
 \if@mtc@ss@insection@

```

\@ifpackagewith
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6534 \@ifpackageloaded{placeins}%
6535   {\if@mtc@ss@insection@
6536     \@ifpackagewith{placeins}{section}}}%
6537     {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6538       \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0031>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6539       {--- The placeins package is loaded
6540         \MessageBreak
6541         without the section option,
6542         \MessageBreak
6543         but minitoc used the insection option
6544         \MessageBreak
6545         which implies it. Try to inverse the
6546         \MessageBreak
6547         loading order and use consistent options.
6548         \MessageBreak
6549         You may have got a message
6550         \MessageBreak
6551         ! LaTeX Error: Option clash for package placeins}%
6552         }%
6553     \@ifpackagewith{placeins}{above}%
6554     {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6555       \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0084>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6556       {--- The placeins package is loaded
6557         \MessageBreak
6558         with the above option,
6559         \MessageBreak
6560         but minitoc used the insection option
6561         \MessageBreak
6562         which is incompatible with it.
6563         \MessageBreak
6564         Try to remove the above option
6565         \MessageBreak
6566         and use consistent options}%
6567       }}}%
6568     \@ifpackagewith{placeins}{below}%
6569     {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6570       \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0085>]{minitoc(hints)}%

```

```

6571      {--- The placeins package is loaded
6572      \MessageBreak
6573      with the below option,
6574      \MessageBreak
6575      but minitoc used the insection option
6576      \MessageBreak
6577      which is incompatible with it.
6578      \MessageBreak
6579      Try to remove the below option
6580      \MessageBreak
6581      and use consistent options}%
6582  }{}%
6583 \fi
6584 \@ifpackagelater{placeins}{2005/04/18}{}{}%
6585   \@mtc@hints@given@true
6586   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0032>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6587   {--- The placeins package loaded is
6588   \MessageBreak
6589   too old. You should use a version
6590   \MessageBreak
6591   dated of 2005/04/18 at least}%
6592 }%
6593 }{}%

```

#### 9.78.1.8 Hint about the memoir class

```

\@ifclassloaded We test if the memoir class [272, 273] is loaded:
\if@mtc@hints@given@
6594 \@ifclassloaded{memoir}%
6595   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6596   \mtcPackageInfo[<I0044>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6597   {--- The memoir class is loaded.
6598   \MessageBreak
6599   See the minitoc package documentation
6600   \MessageBreak
6601   for specific precautions\@gobble}{}%
6602   }{}%

```

#### 9.78.1.9 Hint about the amsart and amsproc classes

```

\@ifclassloaded We test if the amsart or amsproc class is loaded and emit a warning, because these classes are
\if@mtc@hints@given@ incompatible with minitoc:

6603 \@ifclassloaded{amsart}%
6604   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6605   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0026>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6606   {--- The amsart class is loaded.

```



```

6607      \MessageBreak
6608      It is incompatible
6609      \MessageBreak
6610      with the minitoc package}}}%
6611 \@ifclassloaded{amsproc}%
6612   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6613    \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0027>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6614     {--- The amsproc class is loaded.
6615     \MessageBreak
6616     It is incompatible
6617     \MessageBreak with the minitoc package}}}%

```

#### 9.78.1.10 Hint about the amsbook class

```

\@ifclassloaded We test if the amsbook class is loaded:
\if@mtc@hints@given@
6618 \@ifclassloaded{amsbook}%
6619   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6620    \mtcPackageInfo[<I0041>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6621     {--- The amsbook class is loaded.
6622     \MessageBreak
6623     See the minitoc package documentation
6624     \MessageBreak
6625     for specific precautions\@gobble}}}%
6626   }}}%

```

#### 9.78.1.11 Hint about the abstract package

```

\@ifpackageloaded We test the presence of the abstract package [266], then its options:
\@ifpackagewith
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6627 \@ifpackageloaded{abstract}%
6628   {\@mtc@abstract@loaded@true%
6629    \@ifpackagewith{abstract}{addtotoc}%
6630     {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6631      \mtcPackageInfo[<I0040>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6632       {The ‘‘abstract’’ package has been
6633       \MessageBreak
6634       loaded with the ‘‘addtotoc’’ option.
6635       \MessageBreak
6636       You need to look at the
6637       \MessageBreak
6638       documentation to adjust.
6639       \MessageBreak}
6640     }}}%

```

**9.78.1.12 Hint about the jura class**

`\@ifclassloaded` We test if the jura class is loaded and emit a warning, because this class is *incompatible* with  
`\if@mtc@hints@given@` minitoc:

```
6641 \@ifclassloaded{jura}%
6642   {\@mtc@hints@given@true
6643     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0029>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6644     {--- The jura class is loaded.
6645       \MessageBreak
6646       It is incompatible
6647       \MessageBreak with the minitoc package}}}%
```

**9.78.1.13 Hint about the alteration of the sectionning commands**

`\part` To check if the sectionning commands `\part`, `\chapter` or `\section` have been  
`\chapter` altered by some package or in the preamble, we compare them (when executing a  
`\section` `\AtBeginDocument` block) with their saved versions (saved by the minitoc package when  
`\AtBeginDocument` it is loaded) `\mtc@hints@part`, `\mtc@hints@chapter` and `\mtc@hints@section`. For  
`\mtc@hints@part` each sectionning command, we must perform the comparaison for the command itself, its  
`\mtc@hints@chapter` unstarred branch and its starred branch. But the `hyperref` package [227] may interfere,  
`\mtc@hints@section` hence the formal precautions in the messages.

**9.78.1.13.1 Alteration of `\part`**

`\if@mtc@hints@w@` We check the alteration of `\part`, `\@part` and `\@spart`:  
`\@ifundefined`  
`\part` 6648 `\@mtc@hints@w@false`  
`\mtc@hints@part` 6649 `\@ifundefined{part}{\ifx\part\mtc@hints@part\relax`  
`\@part` 6650 `\else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}`  
`\mtc@hints@@part` 6651 `\@ifundefined{part}{\ifx\part\mtc@hints@@part\relax`  
`\@spart` 6652 `\else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}`  
`\mtc@hints@@spart` 6653 `\@ifundefined{part}{\ifx\@spart\mtc@hints@@spart\relax`  
`\if@mtc@hints@given@` 6654 `\else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}`  
`\if@mtc@hyper@used@` 6655 `\if@mtc@hints@w@\@mtc@hints@given@true%`  
6656 `\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0030>]{minitoc(hints)}%`  
6657 `{--- The \string\part\space command is altered`  
6658 `\MessageBreak`  
6659 `after minitoc}`  
6660 `\if@mtc@hyper@used@`  
6661 `\mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0023>]{minitoc(hints)}%`  
6662 `{--- It may be the consequence`  
6663 `\MessageBreak`  
6664 `of loading the ‘hyperref’ package}`  
6665 `\fi`  
6666 `\fi`

**9.78.1.13.2 Alteration of \chapter**

```

\if@mtc@hints@w@ We check the alteration of \chapter, \@chapter and \@schapter:
\@ifundefined
  \chapter 6667 \@mtc@hints@w@false
\mtc@hints@chapter 6668 \@ifundefined{chapter}{\ifx\chapter\mtc@hints@chapter\relax
  \@chapter 6669 \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}%
\mtc@hints@@chapter 6670 \@ifundefined{chapter}{\ifx\@chapter\mtc@hints@@chapter\relax
  \@schapter 6671 \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}%
\mtc@hints@@schapter 6672 \@ifundefined{chapter}{\ifx\@schapter\mtc@hints@@schapter\relax
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6673 \else\@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}%
\if@mtc@hyper@used@ 6674 \if@mtc@hints@w@\@mtc@hints@given@true%
6675 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0028>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6676 {--- The \string\chapter\space command is altered
6677 \MessageBreak
6678 after minitoc}
6679 \if@mtc@hyper@used@
6680 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0023>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6681 {--- It may be the consequence
6682 \MessageBreak
6683 of loading the ‘‘hyperref’’ package}
6684 \fi
6685 \fi

```

**9.78.1.13.3 Alteration of \section**

```

\if@mtc@hints@w@ We check the alteration of \section, \@sect and \@ssect:
\@ifundefined
  \section 6686 \@mtc@hints@w@false
\mtc@hints@section 6687 \@ifundefined{chapter}%
  \@sect 6688 {\@ifundefined{section}{\ifx\section\mtc@hints@section\relax\else
\mtc@hints@@sect 6689 \@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
  \@ssect 6690 \@ifundefined{section}{\ifx\@sect\mtc@hints@@sect\relax\else
\mtc@hints@@ssect 6691 \@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6692 \@ifundefined{section}{\ifx\@ssect\mtc@hints@@ssect\relax\else
\if@mtc@hyper@used@ 6693 \@mtc@hints@w@true\fi}
6694 \if@mtc@hints@w@\@mtc@hints@given@true%
6695 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0039>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6696 {--- The \string\section\space command is altered
6697 \MessageBreak
6698 after minitoc}
6699 \if@mtc@hyper@used@
6700 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0023>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6701 {--- It may be the consequence
6702 \MessageBreak
6703 of loading the ‘‘hyperref’’ package}
6704 \fi
6705 \relax\else\fi}%

```

**9.78.1.14 Hint about the consistency of the calling sequences of some commands**

And finally, we prepare the consistency tests about the calling sequences of triplets of associated commands like `\doparttoc`, `\parttoc` and `\[fake]tableofcontents`, and similar: to be able to use `\parttoc`, a table of contents file must have been created via `\[fake]tableofcontents` and splitted into `parttoc` files via `\doparttoc`.

```

\if@mtc@hints@ Hence we initialize some flags:
\if@mtc@toc@used@
\if@mtc@lof@used@ 6706 \if@mtc@hints@
\if@mtc@lot@used@ 6707 \global\@mtc@toc@used@false
                  6708 \global\@mtc@lof@used@false
                  6709 \global\@mtc@lot@used@false

\mtc@sv@tableofcontents Then we patch the involved commands to set the corresponding flag when they are used. First,
\tableofcontents the commands for the main summaries:
\if@mtc@toc@used@
\mtc@sv@listoffigures 6710 \let\mtc@sv@tableofcontents\tableofcontents
\listoffigures 6711 \def\tableofcontents%
\if@mtc@lof@used@ 6712 {\global\@mtc@toc@used@true\mtc@sv@tableofcontents}
\mtc@sv@listoftables 6713 \let\mtc@sv@listoffigures\listoffigures
\listoftables 6714 \def\listoffigures%
\if@mtc@lot@used@ 6715 {\global\@mtc@lof@used@true\mtc@sv@listoffigures}
                  6716 \let\mtc@sv@listoftables\listoftables
                  6717 \def\listoftables%
                  6718 {\global\@mtc@lot@used@true\mtc@sv@listoftables}

\mtc@sv@fktableofcontents Then, their “fake” siblings:
\fake\tableofcontents
\if@mtc@toc@used@ 6719 \let\mtc@sv@fktableofcontents\fake\tableofcontents
\mtc@sv@fklistoffigures 6720 \def\fake\tableofcontents%
\fake\listoffigures 6721 {\global\@mtc@toc@used@true\mtc@sv@fktableofcontents}
\if@mtc@lof@used@ 6722 \let\mtc@sv@fklistoffigures\fake\listoffigures
\mtc@sv@fklistoftables 6723 \def\fake\listoffigures%
\fake\listoftables 6724 {\global\@mtc@lof@used@true\mtc@sv@fklistoffigures}
\if@mtc@lot@used@ 6725 \let\mtc@sv@fklistoftables\fake\listoftables
                  6726 \def\fake\listoftables%
                  6727 {\global\@mtc@lot@used@true\mtc@sv@fklistoftables}
                  6728 \fi

\mtc@hints@beginndoc And the \mtc@hints@beginndoc definition is finished (it begins in section 9.78.1 on page 388):
6729 }
```

### 9.78.2 Final part: `\mtc@hints@enddoc`

`\mtc@hints@enddoc` The final part of the `hints` option is executed via `\AtEndDocument`. Its code is in the `\AtEndDocument` `\mtc@hints@enddoc` macro. It is a sequence of tests on the packages or classes loaded and the flags set during the first and the second parts of this option. First, we declare the `\mtc@hints@enddoc` macro:

```
6730 \def\mtc@hints@enddoc{%
```

#### 9.78.2.1 Hint about `\sect-lof|lot` and the `insection` option

`\if@mtc@sect@floats@` We look if some section-level lists of figures or tables have been requested.

```
\if@dosectlof@used@
\if@dosectlot@used@ 6731 \if@dosectlof@used@\@mtc@sect@floats@true\fi
\if@sectlof@used@ 6732 \if@dosectlot@used@\@mtc@sect@floats@true\fi
\if@sectlot@used@ 6733 \if@sectlof@used@\@mtc@sect@floats@true\fi
\if@mtc@section@def@ 6734 \if@sectlot@used@\@mtc@sect@floats@true\fi
6735 \if@mtc@section@def@
```

`\if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@` If yes, we verify that the `placeins` package [9] has been loaded with the correct options or that the `insection` option of the `minitoc` package has been invoked. If not, a warning is given.

```
\if@mtc@sect@floats@
\if@mtc@hints@w@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6736 \if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@ \else
6737 \if@mtc@sect@floats@%
6738 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0056>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6739 {You are using \string\dosectlof\space and/or
6740 \MessageBreak
6741 \string\dosectlot, \string\sectlof\space and/or \string\sectlot,
6742 \MessageBreak
6743 hence the ‘insection’ package
6744 \MessageBreak
6745 option is recommended}%
6746 \@mtc@hints@w@true \@mtc@hints@given@true
6747 \fi
6748 \fi
```

#### 9.78.2.2 Final part of the consistency tests

We test if `\parttoc` has been used without `\doparttoc`, etc., for each pair of preparation/insertion commands.

```

\if@mtc@part@def@ For the part level commands:
\if@parttoc@used@
\if@doparttoc@used@ 6749 \if@mtc@part@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6750 \if@parttoc@used@
\if@partlof@used@ 6751 \if@doparttoc@used@\else
\if@dopartlof@used@ 6752 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0062>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@partlot@used@ 6753 {You have used \string\parttoc,
\if@dopartlot@used@ 6754 \MessageBreak
6755 but not \string\doparttoc}
6756 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6757 \fi
6758 \fi
6759 \if@partlof@used@
6760 \if@dopartlof@used@\else
6761 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0060>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6762 {You have used \string\partlof,
6763 \MessageBreak
6764 but not \string\dopartlof}
6765 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6766 \fi
6767 \fi
6768 \if@partlot@used@
6769 \if@dopartlot@used@\else
6770 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0061>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6771 {You have used \string\partlot,
6772 \MessageBreak
6773 but not \string\dopartlot}
6774 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6775 \fi
6776 \fi
6777 \fi

\if@mtc@chapter@def@ For the chapter level commands:
\if@minitoc@used@
\if@dominitoc@used@ 6778 \if@mtc@chapter@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6779 \if@minitoc@used@
\if@minilof@used@ 6780 \if@dominitoc@used@\else
\if@dominilof@used@ 6781 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0059>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@minilot@used@ 6782 {You have used \string\minitoc,
\if@dominilot@used@ 6783 \MessageBreak
6784 but not \string\dominitoc}
6785 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6786 \fi
6787 \fi
6788 \if@minilof@used@
6789 \if@dominilof@used@\else
6790 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0057>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6791 {You have used \string\minilof,
6792 \MessageBreak
6793 but not \string\dominilof}
6794 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6795 \fi

```

```

6796 \fi
6797 \if@minilot@used@
6798   \if@dominilot@used@\else
6799     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0058>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6800     {You have used \string\minilot,
6801       \MessageBreak
6802       but not \string\dominilot}
6803   \@mtc@hints@given@true
6804 \fi
6805 \fi
6806 \fi

```

```

\if@mtc@section@def@ For the section level commands:
  \if@secttoc@used@
    \if@dosecttoc@used@ 6807 \if@mtc@section@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6808 \if@secttoc@used@
  \if@sectlof@used@ 6809   \if@dosecttoc@used@\else
\if@dosectlof@used@ 6810   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0065>]{minitoc(hints)}%
  \if@sectlot@used@ 6811     {You have used \string\secttoc,
\if@dosectlot@used@ 6812       \MessageBreak
6813       but not \string\dosecttoc}
6814   \@mtc@hints@given@true
6815 \fi
6816 \fi
6817 \if@sectlof@used@
6818   \if@dosectlof@used@\else
6819     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0063>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6820     {You have used \string\sectlof,
6821       \MessageBreak
6822       but not \string\dosectlof}
6823   \@mtc@hints@given@true
6824 \fi
6825 \fi
6826 \if@sectlot@used@
6827   \if@dosectlot@used@\else
6828     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0064>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6829     {You have used \string\sectlot,
6830       \MessageBreak
6831       but not \string\dosectlot}
6832 \fi
6833 \fi
6834 \fi

```

### 9.78.2.3 Check if the main tables have been prepared (first part)

Now, we test if a `\doparttoc` macro has been called but without any matching `\parttoc`, hence it is a vain call. We do the same for each analog command.

```

\if@mtc@part@def@ Part level commands:
\if@doparttoc@used@
\if@parttoc@used@ 6835 \if@mtc@part@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6836 \if@doparttoc@used@
\if@dopartlof@used@ 6837 \if@parttoc@used@\else
\if@partlof@used@ 6838 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0075>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@dopartlot@used@ 6839 {You have used \string\doparttoc,
\if@partlot@used@ 6840 \MessageBreak
6841 but not \string\parttoc}
6842 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6843 \fi
6844 \fi
6845 \if@dopartlof@used@
6846 \if@partlof@used@\else
6847 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0076>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6848 {You have used \string\dopartlof,
6849 \MessageBreak
6850 but not \string\partlof}
6851 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6852 \fi
6853 \fi
6854 \if@dopartlot@used@
6855 \if@partlot@used@\else
6856 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0077>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6857 {You have used \string\dopartlot,
6858 \MessageBreak
6859 but not \string\partlot}
6860 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6861 \fi
6862 \fi
6863 \fi

\if@mtc@chapter@def@ Chapter level commands:
\if@dominitoc@used@
\if@minitoc@used@ 6864 \if@mtc@chapter@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6865 \if@dominitoc@used@
\if@dominilof@used@ 6866 \if@minitoc@used@\else
\if@minilof@used@ 6867 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0078>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@dominilot@used@ 6868 {You have used \string\dominitoc,
\if@minilot@used@ 6869 \MessageBreak
6870 but not \string\minitoc}
6871 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6872 \fi
6873 \fi
6874 \if@dominilof@used@
6875 \if@minilof@used@\else
6876 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0079>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6877 {You have used \string\dominilof,
6878 \MessageBreak
6879 but not \string\minilof}
6880 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6881 \fi

```



```

6882 \fi
6883 \if@dominilot@used@
6884 \if@minilot@used@\else
6885 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0080>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6886 {You have used \string\dominilot,
6887 \MessageBreak
6888 but not \string\minilot}
6889 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6890 \fi
6891 \fi
6892 \fi

```

```

\if@mtc@section@def@ Section level commands:
\if@dosecttoc@used@
\if@secttoc@used@ 6893 \if@mtc@section@def@
\if@mtc@hints@given@ 6894 \if@dosecttoc@used@
\if@dosectlof@used@ 6895 \if@secttoc@used@\else
\if@sectlof@used@ 6896 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0081>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@dosectlot@used@ 6897 {You have used \string\dosecttoc,
\if@sectlot@used@ 6898 \MessageBreak
6899 but not \string\secttoc}
6900 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6901 \fi
6902 \fi
6903 \if@dosectlof@used@
6904 \if@sectlof@used@\else
6905 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0082>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6906 {You have used \string\dosectlof,
6907 \MessageBreak
6908 but not \string\sectlof}
6909 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6910 \fi
6911 \fi
6912 \if@dosectlot@used@
6913 \if@sectlot@used@\else
6914 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0083>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6915 {You have used \string\dosectlot,
6916 \MessageBreak
6917 but not \string\sectlot}
6918 \fi
6919 \fi
6920 \fi
6921 \fi

```

#### 9.78.2.4 Check if the main tables have been prepared (second part)

Another consistency test verifies that if the macro `\parttoc` has been called, then the macro `\tableofcontents` or `\faketableofcontents` has also been called (to create the necessary contents file); and similar tests are made for the other mini-table commands.

```

\if@mtc@part@def@ Part level commands:
\if@mtc@hints@given@
\if@parttoc@used@ 6922 \if@mtc@part@def@
\ifmtc@toc@used@ 6923 \if@parttoc@used@
\if@partlof@used@ 6924 \if@mtc@toc@used@ \else
\ifmtc@lof@used@ 6925 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0071>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@partlot@used@ 6926 {You have used \string\parttoc\space but not
\ifmtc@lot@used@ 6927 \MessageBreak
6928 \string\tableofcontents
6929 \MessageBreak
6930 nor \string\fake\tableofcontents}
6931 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6932 \fi
6933 \fi
6934 \if@partlof@used@
6935 \if@mtc@lof@used@ \else
6936 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0069>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6937 {You have used \string\partlof\space but not
6938 \MessageBreak
6939 \string\listoffigures
6940 \MessageBreak
6941 nor \string\fake\listoffigures}
6942 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6943 \fi
6944 \fi
6945 \if@partlot@used@
6946 \if@mtc@lot@used@ \else
6947 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0070>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6948 {You have used \string\partlot\space but not
6949 \MessageBreak
6950 \string\listoftables
6951 \MessageBreak
6952 nor \string\fake\listoftables}
6953 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6954 \fi
6955 \fi
6956 \fi

```

```

\if@mtc@chapter@def@ Chapter level commands:
\if@mtc@hints@given@
\if@minitoc@used@ 6957 \if@mtc@chapter@def@
\ifmtc@toc@used@ 6958 \if@minitoc@used@
\if@minilof@used@ 6959 \if@mtc@toc@used@ \else
\ifmtc@lof@used@ 6960 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0068>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@minilot@used@ 6961 {You have used \string\minitoc\space but not
\ifmtc@lot@used@ 6962 \MessageBreak
6963 \string\tableofcontents
6964 \MessageBreak
6965 nor \string\fake\tableofcontents}
6966 \@mtc@hints@given@true
6967 \fi
6968 \fi

```

```

6969 \if@minilof@used@
6970   \if@mtc@lof@used@\else
6971     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0066>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6972     {You have used \string\minilof\space but not
6973       \MessageBreak
6974       \string\listoffigures
6975       \MessageBreak
6976       nor \string\fake\listoffigures}
6977   \@mtc@hints@given@true
6978   \fi
6979 \fi
6980 \if@minilot@used@
6981   \if@mtc@lot@used@\else
6982     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0067>]{minitoc(hints)}%
6983     {You have used \string\minilot\space but not
6984       \MessageBreak
6985       \string\listoftables
6986       \MessageBreak
6987       nor \string\fake\listoftables}
6988   \@mtc@hints@given@true
6989   \fi
6990 \fi
6991 \fi

```

\if@mtc@section@def@ Section level commands:

\if@mtc@hints@given@

```

\if@secttoc@used@ 6992 \if@mtc@section@def@
\ifmtc@toc@used@ 6993 \if@secttoc@used@
\if@sectlof@used@ 6994   \if@mtc@toc@used@\else
\ifmtc@lof@used@ 6995     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0074>]{minitoc(hints)}%
\if@sectlot@used@ 6996     {You have used \string\secttoc\space but not
\ifmtc@lot@used@ 6997       \MessageBreak
6998       \string\tableofcontents
6999       \MessageBreak
7000       nor \string\fake\tableofcontents}
7001   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7002   \fi
7003 \fi
7004 \if@sectlof@used@
7005   \if@mtc@lof@used@\else
7006     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0072>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7007     {You have used \string\sectlof\space but not
7008       \MessageBreak
7009       \string\listoffigures
7010       \MessageBreak
7011       nor \string\fake\listoffigures}
7012   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7013   \fi
7014 \fi
7015 \if@sectlot@used@
7016   \if@mtc@lot@used@\else
7017     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0073>]{minitoc(hints)}%

```

```

7018      {You have used \string\sectlot\space but not
7019      \MessageBreak
7020      \string\listoftables
7021      \MessageBreak
7022      nor \string\fake\listoftables}
7023    \@mtc@hints@given@true
7024    \fi
7025  \fi
7026 \fi

```

### 9.78.2.5 Check the number of mini-tables, in case of short extensions

```

\mtc@hints@checklongext If short extensions are used, you can use only 99 mini-tables of each kind. If more are created,
  \if@longextensions@ the auxiliary files can be overwritten: the hundredth minitoc file \jobname.U100 has its name
    \if@mtc@part@def@ truncated to \jobname.U10, which is already the tenth minitoc file. Thus, we need a hint to
      \value signal this situation. The code is rather simple, but the remedy is bitter and costly: either use a
\if@mtc@hints@given@true better operating system 11, either redesign the document.
  \if@mtc@chapter@def@
  \if@mtc@section@def@
7027 \def\mtc@hints@checklongext{%
7028 \if@longextensions@
7029 \else
7030   \if@mtc@part@def@
7031     \ifnum 99 < \value{ptc}\relax
7032       \@mtc@hints@given@true
7033       \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0054>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7034       {You have used short extensions
7035       \MessageBreak
7036       and more than 99 parts (\arabic{ptc})}
7037     \fi
7038   \fi
7039   \if@mtc@chapter@def@
7040     \ifnum 99 < \value{mtc}\relax
7041       \@mtc@hints@given@true
7042       \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0053>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7043       {You have used short extensions
7044       \MessageBreak
7045       and more than 99 chapters (\arabic{mtc})}
7046     \fi
7047   \else
7048     \if@mtc@section@def@
7049       \ifnum 99 < \value{stc}\relax
7050         \@mtc@hints@given@true
7051         \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0055>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7052         {You have used short extensions
7053         \MessageBreak
7054         and more than 99 sections (\arabic{stc})}
7055       \fi
7056     \fi
7057   \fi

```

---

<sup>11</sup> On the long term, a good investment.

```

7058 \fi}
7059 \mtc@hints@checklongext

```

#### 9.78.2.6 Final part of the hint about the sectsty package

\if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@ We test if sectsty has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See section 9.9.1 on page 256.

\if@mtc@hints@given@

```

7060 \if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@else
7061   \if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@
7062     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0037>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7063     {The sectsty package should be
7064       \MessageBreak
7065       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7066     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7067   \fi
7068 \fi

```

#### 9.78.2.7 Final part of the hint about the varsects package

\if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@ We test if varsects has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See section 9.9.2 on page 256.

\if@mtc@hints@given@

```

7069 \if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@else
7070   \if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@
7071     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0038>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7072     {The varsects package should be
7073       \MessageBreak
7074       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7075     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7076   \fi
7077 \fi

```

#### 9.78.2.8 Final part of the hint about the fncychap package

\if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@ We test if fncychap has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See section 9.9.3 on page 256.

\if@mtc@hints@given@

```

7078 \if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@else
7079   \if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@
7080     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0086>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7081     {The fncychap package should be
7082       \MessageBreak
7083       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}

```

```

7084     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7085   \fi
7086 \fi

```

### 9.78.2.9 Final part of the hint about the hangcaption package

\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@ We test if hangcaption has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See section 9.9.4 on page 257.

```

\if@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@
\if@mtc@hints@given@
7087 \if@mtc@HgcLoaded@else
7088   \if@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@
7089     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0092>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7090     {The hangcaption package should be
7091       \MessageBreak
7092       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7093     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7094   \fi
7095 \fi

```

### 9.78.2.10 Final part of the hint about the quotchap package

\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@ We test if quotchap has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See section 9.9.5 on page 257.

```

\if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@
\if@mtc@hints@given@
7096 \if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@else
7097   \if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@
7098     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0087>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7099     {The quotchap package should be
7100       \MessageBreak
7101       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7102     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7103   \fi
7104 \fi

```

### 9.78.2.11 Final part of the hint about the romannum package

\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@ We test if romannum has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See section 9.9.6 on page 257.

```

\if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@
\if@mtc@hints@given@
7105 \if@mtc@romannumLoaded@else
7106   \if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@
7107     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0088>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7108     {The romannum package should be
7109       \MessageBreak

```

```

7110         loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7111     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7112 \fi
7113 \fi

```

#### 9.78.2.12 Final part of the hint about the `sfheaders` package

`\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@` We test if `sfheaders` has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See section 9.9.7 on page 257.

`\if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@`

`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7114 \if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@\else
7115     \if@mtc@sfheadersLoaded@a@
7116         \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0089>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7117         {The sfheaders package should be
7118         \MessageBreak
7119         loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7120     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7121 \fi
7122 \fi

```

#### 9.78.2.13 Final part of the hint about the `alnumsec` package

`\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@` We test if `alnumsec` has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See section 9.9.8 on page 258.

`\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@`

`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7123 \if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@\else
7124     \if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@
7125         \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0090>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7126         {The alnumsec package should be
7127         \MessageBreak
7128         loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7129     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7130 \fi
7131 \fi

```

#### 9.78.2.14 Final part of the hint about the `captcont` package

`\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@` We test if `captcont` has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See section 9.9.9 on page 258.

`\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@`

`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7132 \if@mtc@captcontLoaded@\else
7133     \if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@
7134         \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0091>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7135         {The captcont package should be

```

```

7136      \MessageBreak
7137      loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7138      \@mtc@hints@given@true
7139  \fi
7140 \fi

```

#### 9.78.2.15 Final part of the hint about the caption package

`\if@mtc@captionLoaded@` We test if caption has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See section 9.9.10 on page 258.

`\if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@`

`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7141 \if@mtc@captionLoaded@ \else
7142   \if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@
7143     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0033>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7144     {The caption package should be
7145       \MessageBreak
7146       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7147     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7148   \fi
7149 \fi

```

#### 9.78.2.16 Final part of the hint about the caption2 package

`\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@` We test if caption2 has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See section 9.9.11 on page 258.

`\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@`

`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7150 \if@mtc@captionIILoaded@ \else
7151   \if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@
7152     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0034>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7153     {The caption2 package should be
7154       \MessageBreak
7155       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7156     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7157   \fi
7158 \fi

```

#### 9.78.2.17 Final part of the hint about the ccaption package

`\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@` We test if ccaption has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See section 9.9.12 on page 259.

`\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@`

`\if@mtc@hints@given@`

```

7159 \if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@ \else
7160   \if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@
7161     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0035>]{minitoc(hints)}%

```



```

7162     {The ccaption package should be
7163       \MessageBreak
7164       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7165     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7166   \fi
7167 \fi

```

### 9.78.2.18 Final part of the hint about the mcaption package

\if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@ We test if mcaption has been loaded before (correct) or after (incorrect) minitoc. See  
 \if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@ section 9.9.13 on page 259.  
 \if@mtc@hints@given@

```

7168 \if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@ \else
7169   \if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@
7170     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0036>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7171     {The mcaption package should be
7172       \MessageBreak
7173       loaded BEFORE the minitoc package}
7174     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7175   \fi
7176 \fi

```

### 9.78.2.19 Check if empty mini-tables have been detected

We test for each kind of mini-tables.

\if@mtc@empty@parttoc@ For parttocs:

```

7177 \if@mtc@empty@parttoc@
7178   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0046>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7179   {You have attempted to insert
7180     \MessageBreak
7181     empty parttocs}
7182   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7183 \fi

```

\if@mtc@empty@partlof@ For partlofs:

```

7184 \if@mtc@empty@partlof@
7185   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0044>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7186   {You have attempted to insert
7187     \MessageBreak
7188     empty partlofs}
7189   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7190 \fi

```

`\if@mtc@empty@partlot@` For partlots:

```

7191 \if@mtc@empty@partlot@
7192   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0045>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7193   {You have attempted to insert
7194   \MessageBreak
7195   empty partlots}
7196   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7197 \fi

```

`\if@mtc@empty@minitoc@` For minitocs:

```

7198 \if@mtc@empty@minitoc@
7199   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0043>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7200   {You have attempted to insert
7201   \MessageBreak
7202   empty minitocs}
7203   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7204 \fi

```

`\if@mtc@empty@minilofs@` For minilofs:

```

7205 \if@mtc@empty@minilofs@
7206   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0041>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7207   {You have attempted to insert
7208   \MessageBreak
7209   empty minilofs}
7210   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7211 \fi

```

`\if@mtc@empty@minilots@` For minilots:

```

7212 \if@mtc@empty@minilots@
7213   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0042>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7214   {You have attempted to insert
7215   \MessageBreak
7216   empty minilots}
7217   \@mtc@hints@given@true
7218 \fi

```

`\if@mtc@empty@secttoc@` For secttocs:

```

7219 \if@mtc@empty@secttoc@
7220   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0049>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7221   {You have attempted to insert
7222   \MessageBreak

```

```

7223     empty secttocs}
7224     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7225 \fi

```

\if@mtc@empty@sectlof@ For sectlofs:

```

7226 \if@mtc@empty@sectlof@
7227     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0047>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7228     {You have attempted to insert
7229     \MessageBreak
7230     empty sectlofs}
7231     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7232 \fi

```

\if@mtc@empty@sectlot@ For sectlots:

```

7233 \if@mtc@empty@sectlot@
7234     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0042>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7235     {You have attempted to insert
7236     \MessageBreak
7237     empty sectlots}
7238     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7239 \fi

```

#### 9.78.2.20 Check if obsolete commands have been used

This hint is just a reminder if you have used obsolete commands, which are also signalled in the *document.log* file.

\if@firstpartis@used@ Obsolete macro \firstpartis:

```

7240 \if@firstpartis@used@
7241     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0051>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7242     {You have invoked an obsolete
7243     \MessageBreak
7244     command: \string\firstpartis}
7245     \@mtc@hints@given@true
7246 \fi

```

\if@firstchapteris@used@ Obsolete macro \firstchapteris:

```

7247 \if@firstchapteris@used@
7248     \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0050>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7249     {You have invoked an obsolete

```

```

7250 \MessageBreak
7251 command: \string\firstchapteris}
7252 \@mtc@hints@given@true
7253 \fi

```

`\if@firstsectionis@used@` Obsolete macro `\firstsectionis`:

```

7254 \if@firstsectionis@used@
7255 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0052>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7256 {You have invoked an obsolete
7257 \MessageBreak
7258 command: \string\firstsectionis}
7259 \@mtc@hints@given@true
7260 \fi

```

#### 9.78.2.21 Check if some hints have been written

`\if@mtc@hints@given@` We come at the end of the third part of the `hints` option: if problems have been detected, a warning is displayed; the warning is not displayed but only written in the `document.log` file if no problems have been detected. And we terminate the `\mtc@hints@enddoc` macro by a closing brace.

```

7261 \if@mtc@hints@given@
7262 \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<W0024>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7263 {Some hints have been written
7264 \MessageBreak
7265 in the \jobname.log file}
7266 \else
7267 \mtcPackageInfo[<I0019>]{minitoc(hints)}%
7268 {No hints have been written
7269 \MessageBreak
7270 in the \jobname.log file.\@gobble}
7271 \fi
7272 }

```

## 9.79 Processing of options

`\InputIfFileExists` First, if possible, we apply the default language option, `english`:  
`\ExecuteOptions`

```

7273 \InputIfFileExists{english.mld}%
7274 {\ExecuteOptions{english}}%

```

```

\mtcPackageError Else, we signal a severe error and provide the missing default titles:
\providecommand
  \ptctitle 7275      {\mtcPackageError[<E0036>]{minitoc}%
  \plftitle 7276      {Your minitoc installation is incomplete.
  \plttitle 7277      \MessageBreak
  \mtctitle 7278      The minitoc language object file (.mld),
  \mlftitle 7279      \MessageBreak
  \mlttitle 7280      english.mld is not found.
  \stctitle 7281      \MessageBreak
  \slftitle 7282      We will try to continue with default values}%
  \slttitle 7283      {See the minitoc documentation.
  7284      \MessageBreak
  7285      Please fix your minitoc installation.
  7286      \MessageBreak
  7287      Press <return> to continue}%
  7288      \providecommand{\ptctitle}{Table of Contents}%
  7289      \providecommand{\plftitle}{List of Figures}%
  7290      \providecommand{\plttitle}{List of Tables}%
  7291      \providecommand{\mtctitle}{Contents}%
  7292      \providecommand{\mlftitle}{Figures}%
  7293      \providecommand{\mlttitle}{Tables}%
  7294      \providecommand{\stctitle}{Contents}%
  7295      \providecommand{\slftitle}{Figures}%
  7296      \providecommand{\slttitle}{Tables}%
  7297      }%

```

\ProcessOptions\* Then, we execute all requested options: for most options, it is just setting a flag, or loading a file for the language options.

```
7298 \ProcessOptions*
```

We now examine the flags for some options and execute the necessary actions.

### 9.79.1 Processing the insection option

```

\if@mtc@ss@insection@ For the insection option, we load the placeins package [9] with its options verbose and
  \RequirePackage section, after the flafter package (described in [173] and [201, page 286]); the correct loading
  \@ifpackageloaded is verified:
\if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@
  7299 \if@mtc@ss@insection@
  7300   \RequirePackage{flafter}[2000/07/23]%
  7301   \RequirePackage[section,verbose]{placeins}[2005/04/18]%
  7302   \@ifpackageloaded{placeins}%
  7303   {\@mtc@placeinsLoaded@true}{\@mtc@placeinsLoaded@false}%
  7304 \fi

```

### 9.79.2 Processing the notoccite option

`\if@mtc@notoccite@` For the notoccite option, we just load the notoccite package [8]:  
`\RequirePackage`

```
7305 \if@mtc@notoccite@
7306   \RequirePackage{notoccite}%
7307 \fi
```

### 9.79.3 Processing the listfiles option

`\mtc@maf` We define the `\mtc@maf` macro which closes `\tf@mtc` and reopens it to write into the file  
`\tf@mtc` *document.maf*. It calls `\mtc@maf@long` or `\mtc@maf@short` (long or short extensions),  
`\if@longextensions@` then closes `\tf@mtc`. `\mtc@maf@long` or `\mtc@maf@short` writes the names of the exist-  
`\mtc@maf@long` ing auxiliary files using decrementing loops on the associated counters, and includes *docu-*  
`\mtc@maf@short` *ment.mtc* in the list (but *not* the *document.maf*<sup>12</sup> file). We must also check the existence of  
`\mtc@addtomaf` `\jobname.mtc1` if long extensions are used.  
`\IfFileExists`

```
\jobname 7308 \def\mtc@maf{%
7309   \mtcPackageInfo[<I0009>]{minitoc}%
7310           {Listing minitoc auxiliary files.
7311           \MessageBreak
7312           Creating the \jobname.maf file\@gobble}
7313   \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc
7314   \immediate\openout\tf@mtc \jobname.maf
7315   \if@longextensions@\mtc@maf@long\else\mtc@maf@short\fi
7316   \immediate\closeout\tf@mtc}
7317 \def\mtc@addtomaf#1{%
7318   \IfFileExists{#1}{\immediate\write\tf@mtc{#1}}{}}
7319 \def\mtc@maf@long{%
7320   \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mtc}
7321   \@ifundefined{c@ptc}{\loop\ifnum\c@ptc>\z@\relax
7322     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.ptc\arabic{ptc}}
7323     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.plf\arabic{ptc}}
7324     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.plt\arabic{ptc}}
7325     \advance\c@ptc\m@ne\repeat}
7326   \@ifundefined{c@mtc}{\mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mtc1}}{%
7327     \loop\ifnum\c@mtc>\z@\relax
7328       \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mtc\arabic{mtc}}
7329       \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mlf\arabic{mtc}}
7330       \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mlt\arabic{mtc}}
7331       \advance\c@mtc\m@ne\repeat}
7332   \@ifundefined{c@stc}{\loop\ifnum\c@stc>\z@\relax
7333     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.stc\arabic{stc}}
7334     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.slf\arabic{stc}}
7335     \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.slt\arabic{stc}}
7336     \advance\c@stc\m@ne\repeat}
7337 \def\mtc@maf@short{%
```

<sup>12</sup>Some users could made a cleanup using this file as a list of files to delete, so it should not be in the list.

```

7338      \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.mtc}
7339 \@ifundefined{c@ptc}{\loop\ifnum\c@ptc>\z@\relax
7340      \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.P\arabic{ptc}}
7341      \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.G\arabic{ptc}}
7342      \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.U\arabic{ptc}}
7343      \advance\c@ptc\m@ne\repeat}
7344 \@ifundefined{c@mtc}{\loop\ifnum\c@mtc>\z@\relax
7345      \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.M\arabic{mtc}}
7346      \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.F\arabic{mtc}}
7347      \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.T\arabic{mtc}}
7348      \advance\c@mtc\m@ne\repeat}
7349 \@ifundefined{c@stc}{\loop\ifnum\c@stc>\z@\relax
7350      \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.S\arabic{stc}}
7351      \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.H\arabic{stc}}
7352      \mtc@addtomaf{\jobname.V\arabic{stc}}
7353      \advance\c@stc\m@ne\repeat}}

```

```

\if@mtc@listfiles@ If this option is active, we call \mtc@maf in a \AtEndDocument block.
\AtEndDocument
\mtc@maf 7354 \if@mtc@listfiles@\AtEndDocument{\mtc@maf}}\else\fi

```

### 9.79.4 Processing the hints option

```

\if@mtc@hints@ For the hints option, we set its first part in a \AtBeginDocument block and its third (last)
\AtBeginDocument part in a \AtEndDocument block:
\mtc@hints@begindoc
\AtEndDocument 7355 \if@mtc@hints@
\mtc@hints@enddoc 7356 \AtBeginDocument{\mtc@hints@begindoc}%
7357 \AtEndDocument{\mtc@hints@enddoc}%
7358 \fi

```

### 9.79.5 Saving the sectionning commands

And, at least, we save the definitions of sectionning commands (and of their unstarred and starred branches), for comparaisons (this is a part of the `hints` option executed in the preamble):

```

\@ifundefined For the \part command:
\mtc@hints@part
\part 7359 \@ifundefined{part}{\let\mtc@hints@part\part
\mtc@hints@@part 7360 \let\mtc@hints@@part\@part
\@part 7361 \let\mtc@hints@@spart\@spart}
\mtc@hints@@spart
\@spart

```

```

\@ifundefined For the \chapter command:
\mtc@hints@chapter
\chapter 7362 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\let\mtc@hints@chapter\chapter
\mtc@hints@@chapter 7363 \let\mtc@hints@@chapter\@chapter
\@chapter 7364 \let\mtc@hints@@schapter\@schapter}
\mtc@hints@schapter
\@schapter

```

```

\@ifundefined For the \section command:
\mtc@hints@section
\section 7365 \@ifundefined{section}{}{\let\mtc@hints@section\section
\mtc@hints@@sect 7366 \let\mtc@hints@@sect\@sect
\@sect 7367 \let\mtc@hints@@ssect\@ssect}
\mtc@hints@ssect
\@ssect

```

## 9.80 Trapping the undefined preparation and insertion commands

\mtc@classck It may happen that you use a preparation command (like \dominitoc) or an insertion command (like \dominitoc) in a document using a class where that command is not available (like article). To get a better diagnostic for such errors, we intercept such commands by providing a default definition which just emits an error message. These default definitions are made in a \AtBeginDocument block.

```

7368 \def\mtc@classck#1{%
7369 \mtcPackageError[<E0037>]{minitoc}%
7370 {The \csname #1\endcsname\space command is incompatible
7371 \MessageBreak
7372 with the document class}%
7373 {Correct the source code.
7374 \MessageBreak
7375 Type <return> and rerun LaTeX}%
7376 }

```

A \AtBeginDocument bloc:

```

\AtBeginDocument

7377 \AtBeginDocument{%

\providecommand Part-level preparation commands:
\doarttoc
\doartlof 7378 \providecommand{\doarttoc}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{\doarttoc}}%
\doartlot 7379 \providecommand{\doartlof}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{\doartlof}}%
7380 \providecommand{\doartlot}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{\doartlot}}%

```



```

\dominitoc Chapter-level preparation commands:
\dominilof
\dominilot 7381 \providecommand{\dominitoc}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{dominitoc}}%
7382 \providecommand{\dominilof}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{dominilof}}%
7383 \providecommand{\dominilot}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{dominilot}}%

\dosecttoc Section-level preparation commands:
\dosectlof
\dosectlot 7384 \providecommand{\dosecttoc}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{dosecttoc}}%
7385 \providecommand{\dosectlof}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{dosectlof}}%
7386 \providecommand{\dosectlot}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{dosectlot}}%

\parttoc
\partlof
\partlot 7387 % \ifcase\LANG\relax
7388 % Part-level insertion commands:
7389 % \or\relax
7390 % Commandes d'insertion au niveau partie:
7391 % \fi
7392 \providecommand{\parttoc}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{parttoc}}%
7393 \providecommand{\partlof}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{partlof}}%
7394 \providecommand{\partlot}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{partlot}}%

\minitoc Chapter-level insertion commands:
\minilof
\minilot 7395 \providecommand{\minitoc}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{minitoc}}%
7396 \providecommand{\minilof}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{minilof}}%
7397 \providecommand{\minilot}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{minilot}}%

\secttoc Section-level insertion commands:
\sectlof
\sectlot 7398 \providecommand{\secttoc}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{secttoc}}%
7399 \providecommand{\sectlof}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{sectlof}}%
7400 \providecommand{\sectlot}[1][1]{\mtc@classck{sectlot}}%
7401 }

```

And the package is terminated.

```
7402 </minitoc>
```

## 9.81 The `fminitoc.dtx` file

`\jobname` This short file is necessary to create the french documentation. Its rôle is to set `\jobname`  
`\input` to `fminitoc` in place of `minitoc`. As `minitoc.ins` generates the `minitoc.lan` and  
`fminitoc.lan` files which set a language number `\LANG`, and `minitoc.dtx` reads then the  
`\jobname.lan` file, the documentation can be in several languages (english and french here)  
in `minitoc.dtx`, the language being selected by `\ifcase\LANG\relax ... \or\relax ...`  
`\fi` constructs. The `\relax` primitives are necessary to avoid bad surprises.

```
7403 <fminitoc>
7404 \ProvidesFile{fminitoc.dtx}%
7405           [2007/02/12 minitoc v52 french documentation start file]
7406 \input{minitoc.dtx}
7407 </fminitoc>
```

## Chapter 10

# Commented code of the mtcoff package

### Contents

10.1	Why mtcoff? . . . . .	420
10.2	Identification of the package . . . . .	420
10.3	Faking counters and dimensions . . . . .	421
10.4	Faking simple commands . . . . .	423
10.5	Faking commands with one optional argument . . . . .	423
10.6	Disabling the internal commands . . . . .	424
10.7	Disabling the font commands . . . . .	425
10.8	Disabling the \mtcset... commands . . . . .	426
10.9	Disabling the new \l@... commands . . . . .	426
10.10	Ignore the obsolete commands . . . . .	427
10.11	Disabling the \mtcselectlanguage command . . . . .	427
10.12	Disabling the \mtcloadmlo command . . . . .	427
10.13	Disabling the commands for the horizontal rules . . . . .	427
10.14	Disabling the commands for the page numbers . . . . .	428
10.15	Disabling the mini-table features commands . . . . .	428
10.16	Disabling miscellaneous flags and commands . . . . .	429
10.17	Caution for some commands . . . . .	429
10.18	Disabling commands for “coffee” . . . . .	431
10.19	Disabling the mtchideinmain... environments . . . . .	431
10.20	Inhibition of the \mtc@saveXXXdepth and \mtc@restoreXXXdepth internal commands . . . . .	431
10.21	Disabling the \mtcfixglossary command . . . . .	432
10.22	Disabling the \mtcfixindex command . . . . .	432
10.23	Disabling the \addstarred... commands . . . . .	432

## 10.1 Why mtcoff?

The minitoc package [112, 113] requires that the user inserts many commands in the source code of her/his document, and not only into the preamble of the document. Hence the concept of a replacement package, mtcoff (means “minitoc off”), which substitutes to all commands and environments of the minitoc package some alternative commands and environments with the same names and syntaxes, but doing nothing (except emitting some harmless warnings, for special cases). This way, to turn off easily the minitoc package, you just have to write, in the preamble of your document, something like:

```
\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}
%\usepackage{mtcoff}
```

then the minitoc package is activated with the specified options. If you modify this two lines this way:

```
%\usepackage[...options...]{minitoc}
\usepackage{mtcoff}
```

then the minitoc package is deactivated and all its commands and environments are ignored. This is much easier, faster and safer than commenting out all the commands and environments of minitoc. Moreover, this operation is reversible.

## 10.2 Identification of the package

`\NeedsTeXFormat` First, we identify the package and check the version of  $\text{\LaTeX}$ <sup>1</sup>; we need the mtcmess package  
`\ProvidesPackage` to write messages with unique identifiers.

```
7408 (*mtcoff)
7409 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}%
7410 \ProvidesPackage{mtcoff}[2006/06/27 v3.0 The mtcoff package]
7411 \RequirePackage{mtcmess}[2006/03/14]
```

---

<sup>1</sup> This checking is not really useful for the mtcoff package itself, but it is good to check that your version of  $\text{\LaTeX}$  is not too old to support minitoc.

### 10.3 Faking counters and dimensions

`\count@` As minitoc declares some counters and dimensions registers, we fake them using `\count@`  
`\dimen@` or `\dimen@`. For `\mtcskipamount`, we must use its default definition, `\bigskipamount`.  
`\c@minitocdepth`  
`\mtcindent` 7412 `\let\c@minitocdepth\count@`  
`\mtcskipamount` 7413 `\let\mtcindent\dimen@`  
`\bigskipamount` 7414 `\let\mtcskipamount\bigskipamount`  
`\c@parttocdepth` 7415 `\let\c@parttocdepth\count@`  
`\mtcindent` 7416 `\let\ptcindent\dimen@`  
`\c@secttocdepth` 7417 `\let\c@secttocdepth\count@`  
`\stcindent` 7418 `\let\stcindent\dimen@`

`\c@mtc` The basic mini-table counters are provided by `\count@`:  
`\c@ptc`  
`\c@stc` 7419 `\let\c@mtc\count@`  
7420 `\let\c@ptc\count@`  
7421 `\let\c@stc\count@`

`\mtcgapbeforeheads` The gaps before and after parttoc heads receive their default values:  
`\mtcgapafterheads`  
7422 `\def\mtcgapbeforeheads{50\p@}`  
7423 `\def\mtcgapafterheads{40\p@}`

`\@ifundefined` We must define the macros for the vertical kernings between the minitables and their before  
`\kernafterparttoc` the bottom rule. The default values are used. We must issue a warning if one of these macros  
`\kernafterpartlof` is used.  
`\kernafterpartlot`  
`\kernaftersecttoc` 7424 `\@ifundefined{part}{\}%`  
`\kernaftersectlof` 7425 `\def\kernafterparttoc{%`  
`\kernaftersectlot` 7426 `\mtcoffwarn>true`  
`\kernafterminitoc` 7427 `\mtcPackageWarning[<F0008>]{mtcoff}%`  
`\kernafterminilof` 7428 `{The macro \string\kernafterparttoc`  
`\kernafterminilot` 7429 `\MessageBreak`  
7430 `should not be used out of context`  
7431 `\MessageBreak}%`  
7432 `\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%`  
7433 `\def\kernafterpartlof{%`  
7434 `\mtcoffwarn>true`  
7435 `\mtcPackageWarning[<F0008>]{mtcoff}%`  
7436 `{The macro \string\kernafterpartlof`  
7437 `\MessageBreak`  
7438 `should not be used out of context`  
7439 `\MessageBreak}%`  
7440 `\kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%`  
7441 `\def\kernafterpartlot{%`

```

7442     \mtcoffwarn@true
7443     \mtcPackageWarning[<F0008>]{mtcoff}%
7444     {The macro \string\kernafterpartlot
7445     \MessageBreak
7446     should not be used out of context
7447     \MessageBreak}%
7448     \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
7449     }%
7450 \@ifundefined{chapter}{%
7451 \@ifundefined{section}{}%
7452     {%
7453     \def\kernaftersecttoc{%
7454         \mtcoffwarn@true
7455         \mtcPackageWarning[<F0008>]{mtcoff}%
7456         {The macro \string\kernaftersecttoc
7457         \MessageBreak
7458         should not be used out of context
7459         \MessageBreak}%
7460         \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
7461     \def\kernaftersectlof{%
7462         \mtcoffwarn@true
7463         \mtcPackageWarning[<F0008>]{mtcoff}%
7464         {The macro \string\kernaftersectlof
7465         \MessageBreak
7466         should not be used out of context
7467         \MessageBreak}%
7468         \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
7469     \def\kernaftersectlot{%
7470         \mtcoffwarn@true
7471         \mtcPackageWarning[<F0008>]{mtcoff}%
7472         {The macro \string\kernaftersectlot
7473         \MessageBreak
7474         should not be used out of context
7475         \MessageBreak}%
7476         \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
7477     }%
7478     }%
7479     {%
7480     \def\kernafterminitoc{%
7481         \mtcoffwarn@true
7482         \mtcPackageWarning[<F0008>]{mtcoff}%
7483         {The macro \string\kernafterminitoc
7484         \MessageBreak
7485         should not be used out of context
7486         \MessageBreak}%
7487         \kern-.5\baselineskip\kern.5ex}%
7488     \def\kernafterminilof{%
7489         \mtcoffwarn@true
7490         \mtcPackageWarning[<F0008>]{mtcoff}%
7491         {The macro \string\kernafterminilof
7492         \MessageBreak
7493         should not be used out of context
7494         \MessageBreak}%
7495         \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern0.ex}%

```

```

7496      \def\kernafterterminilot{%
7497          \mtcoffwarn@true
7498          \mtcPackageWarning[<F0008>]{mtcoff}%
7499          {The macro \string\kernafterterminilot
7500           \MessageBreak
7501           should not be used out of context
7502           \MessageBreak}%
7503          \kern-1.\baselineskip\kern0.ex}%
7504      }%

```

## 10.4 Faking simple commands

```

\mtcskip Some user commands are easy to fake:
\fakeableofcontents
\fakeableofcontents 7505 \let\mtcskip\relax
\fakeableoftables 7506 \let\fakeableofcontents\relax
\adjustptc 7507 \let\fakeableoftables\relax
\adjustmtc 7508 \let\fakeableoftables\relax
\adjuststc 7509 \newcommand{\adjustptc}[1][1]{\relax}
\decrementptc 7510 \newcommand{\adjustmtc}[1][1]{\relax}
\decrementmtc 7511 \newcommand{\adjuststc}[1][1]{\relax}
\decrementstc 7512 \let\decrementptc\relax
\decrementstc 7513 \let\decrementmtc\relax
\incrementptc 7514 \let\decrementstc\relax
\incrementmtc 7515 \let\incrementptc\relax
\incrementstc 7516 \let\incrementmtc\relax
7517 \let\incrementstc\relax

```

```

\partend The following commands are not directly called by the user, in normal circumstances, but must
\partbegin be faked:
\chapterend
\chapterbegin 7518 \let\partend\relax
\sectend 7519 \let\partbegin\relax
\sectbegin 7520 \let\chapterend\relax
7521 \let\chapterbegin\relax
7522 \let\sectend\relax
7523 \let\sectbegin\relax

```

## 10.5 Faking commands with one optional argument

\gobbleopt@ The user commands with an optional argument are faked using the internal  $\LaTeX$  macro \ifnextchar (to get the optional argument) and the new utility command \gobbleopt@.

```

7524 \def\gobbleopt@[#1]{\relax}

```

```

\@ifnextchar  Commands for part level mini-tables:
\doarttoc
\doartlof 7525 \def\doarttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\doartlot 7526 \def\doartlof{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\parttoc 7527 \def\doartlot{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\partlof 7528 \def\parttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\partlot 7529 \def\partlof{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
7530 \def\partlot{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}

\@ifnextchar  Commands for chapter level mini-tables:
\dominitoc
\dominilof 7531 \def\dominitoc{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\dominilot 7532 \def\dominilof{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\minitoc 7533 \def\dominilot{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\minilof 7534 \def\minitoc{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\minilot 7535 \def\minilof{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
7536 \def\minilot{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}

\@ifnextchar  Commands for section level mini-tables:
\dosecttoc
\dosectlof 7537 \def\dosecttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\dosectlot 7538 \def\dosectlof{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\secttoc 7539 \def\dosectlot{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\sectlof 7540 \def\secttoc{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
\sectlot 7541 \def\sectlof{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}
7542 \def\sectlot{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}

\@ifnextchar  Command \mtcprepare:
\mtcprepare
7543 \def\mtcprepare{\@ifnextchar[{\gobbleopt@}{\gobbleopt@[1]}}

```

## 10.6 Disabling the internal commands

```

\@gobbletwo  We need also to disable some minitoc commands, with \relax (macros with no argument) or
\tf@mtc      \@gobbletwo (macros with two arguments):
\mtc@string
\appendixmtc 7544 \let\tf@mtc\count@
\l@xchapter 7545 \let\mtc@string\relax
\chapter      7546 \let\appendixmtc\relax
\pchapter     7547 \let\l@xchapter\@gobbletwo
\psect        7548 \let\chapter\relax
\l@xpart      7549 \let\pchapter\relax
\part         7550 \let\psect\relax
\l@xsect      7551 \let\l@xpart\@gobbletwo
\sect

```



```

7552 \let\xpart\relax
7553 \let\l@xsect\@gobbletwo
7554 \let\xsect\relax

```

## 10.7 Disabling the font commands

`\empty` We disable the minitoc font commands (like `\mtcSSfont`) with `\empty`, because some users might have used:

```
\renewcommand{\mtcSSfont}{...}
```

which will not work if we use `\relax` here.

```

\ptcfont  Fonts for part level mini-tables:
\ptcCfont
\ptcSfont 7555 \let\ptcfont\empty
\ptcSSfont 7556 \let\ptcCfont\empty
\ptcSSSfont 7557 \let\ptcSfont\empty
\ptcPfont 7558 \let\ptcSSfont\empty
\ptcSPfont 7559 \let\ptcSSSfont\empty
\plffont 7560 \let\ptcPfont\empty
\plfSfont 7561 \let\ptcSPfont\empty
\pltfont 7562 \let\plffont\empty
\pltSfont 7563 \let\plfSfont\empty
\ptifont 7564 \let\pltfont\empty
          7565 \let\pltSfont\empty
          7566 \let\ptifont\empty

\mtcfont  Fonts for chapter level mini-tables:
\mtcSfont
\mtcSSfont 7567 \let\mtcfont\empty
\mtcSSSfont 7568 \let\mtcSfont\empty
\mtcPfont 7569 \let\mtcSSfont\empty
\mtcSPfont 7570 \let\mtcSSSfont\empty
\mlffont 7571 \let\mtcPfont\empty
\mlfSfont 7572 \let\mtcSPfont\empty
\mltfont 7573 \let\mlffont\empty
\mltSfont 7574 \let\mlfSfont\empty
\mtifont 7575 \let\mltfont\empty
          7576 \let\mltSfont\empty
          7577 \let\mtifont\empty

```

```

\stcfont   Fonts for section level mini-tables:
\stcSSfont
\stcSSSfont 7578 \let\stcfont\empty
\stcPfont   7579 \let\stcSSfont\empty
\stcSPfont  7580 \let\stcSSSfont\empty
\slffont    7581 \let\stcPfont\empty
\slfSfont   7582 \let\stcSPfont\empty
\sltfont    7583 \let\slffont\empty
\sltSfont   7584 \let\slfSfont\empty
\stifont    7585 \let\sltfont\empty
            7586 \let\sltSfont\empty
            7587 \let\stifont\empty

```

\coffeeFont Font for “coffee” ☕ lines:

```
7588 \let\coffeeFont\empty
```

## 10.8 Disabling the \mtcset... commands

```

\@gobbletwo These commands use two or three mandatory arguments:
\mtcsetdepth
\mtcsetfont 7589 \let\mtcsetdepth\@gobbletwo
\mtcsettitlefont 7590 \def\mtcsetfont#1#2#3{\empty}
\mtcsettitle 7591 \let\mtcsettitlefont\@gobbletwo
\mtcsetformat 7592 \let\mtcsettitle\@gobbletwo
\mtcsetfeature 7593 \def\mtcsetformat#1#2#3{\empty}
\mtcsetpagenumbers 7594 \def\mtcsetfeature#1#2#3{\empty}
\mtcsetrules 7595 \let\mtcsetpagenumbers\@gobbletwo
            7596 \let\mtcsetrules\@gobbletwo

```

## 10.9 Disabling the new \l@... commands

```

\l@starpart The minitoc package defines the \l@starXXX commands to format TOC entries for starred
\l@starchapter sectioning commands. We reset to the unstarred version, when necessary:
\l@starsection
\l@starsubsection 7597 \@ifundefined{part}{}{\let\l@starpart\l@part}
\l@starsubsubsection 7598 \@ifundefined{chapter}{}{\let\l@starchapter\l@chapter}
\l@starparagraph 7599 \@ifundefined{section}{}{\let\l@starsection\l@section}
\l@starsubparagraph 7600 \@ifundefined{subsection}{}{\let\l@starsubsection\l@subsection}
                    7601 \@ifundefined{subsubsection}{}{\let\l@starsubsubsection\l@subsubsection}
                    7602 \@ifundefined{paragraph}{}{\let\l@starparagraph\l@paragraph}
                    7603 \@ifundefined{subparagraph}{}{\let\l@starsubparagraph\l@subparagraph}

```

## 10.10 Ignore the obsolete commands

```

\@gobble We just ignore the obsolete commands (with one mandatory argument):
\firstpartis
\firstchapteris 7604 \let\firstpartis\@gobble
\firstsectionis 7605 \let\firstchapteris\@gobble
                7606 \let\firstsectionis\@gobble

```

## 10.11 Disabling the \mtcselectlanguage command

```

\@gobble This command has one mandatory argument:
\mtcselectlanguage
                7607 \let\mtcselectlanguage\@gobble

```

## 10.12 Disabling the \mtcloadmlo command

```

\@gobble This command has one mandatory argument:
\mtcloadmlo
                7608 \let\mtcloadmlo\@gobble

```

## 10.13 Disabling the commands for the horizontal rules

```

\ptcrule These commands have no argument:
\noptcrule
\mtcrule 7609 \let\ptcrule\relax
\nomtcrule 7610 \let\noptcrule\relax
\stcrule 7611 \let\mtcrule\relax
\nostcrule 7612 \let\nomtcrule\relax
\plfrule 7613 \let\stcrule\relax
\noplfrule 7614 \let\nostcrule\relax
\mlfrule 7615 \let\plfrule\relax
\nomlfrule 7616 \let\noplfrule\relax
\slfrule 7617 \let\mlfrule\relax
\noslfrule 7618 \let\nomlfrule\relax
\pltrule 7619 \let\noslfrule\relax
\nopltrule 7620 \let\pltrule\relax
\mltrule 7621 \let\nopltrule\relax
\nomltrule 7622 \let\mltrule\relax
\sltrule 7623 \let\nomltrule\relax
\nosltrule 7624 \let\nomltrule\relax
\nosltrule

```

```
7625 \let\sltrule\relax
7626 \let\nosltrule\relax
```

## 10.14 Disabling the commands for the page numbers

```
\ptcpagenumbers  These commands have no argument:
\noptcpagenumbers
\mtcpagenumbers  7627 \let\mtcpagenumbers\relax
\nomtcpagenumbers 7628 \let\nomtcpagenumbers\relax
\stcpagenumbers  7629 \let\stcpagenumbers\relax
\nostcpagenumbers 7630 \let\nostcpagenumbers\relax
\plfpagenumbers  7631 \let\ptcpagenumbers\relax
\noplfpagenumbers 7632 \let\noptcpagenumbers\relax
\mlfpagenumbers  7633 \let\mlfpagenumbers\relax
\nomlfpagenumbers 7634 \let\nomlfpagenumbers\relax
\slfpagenumbers  7635 \let\slfpagenumbers\relax
\noslfpagenumbers 7636 \let\noslfpagenumbers\relax
\pltpagenumbers  7637 \let\plfpagenumbers\relax
\nopltpagenumbers 7638 \let\noplfpagenumbers\relax
\mltpagenumbers  7639 \let\mltpagenumbers\relax
\nomltpagenumbers 7640 \let\nomltpagenumbers\relax
\sltpagenumbers  7641 \let\sltpagenumbers\relax
\nosltpagenumbers 7642 \let\nosltpagenumbers\relax
\pltpagenumbers  7643 \let\pltpagenumbers\relax
\nopltpagenumbers 7644 \let\nopltpagenumbers\relax
```

## 10.15 Disabling the mini-table features commands

We disable the commands for features (like `\beforeparttoc`) with `\empty`, because some users may have used:

```
\renewcommand{\beforeparttoc}{...}
```

which will not work if we use `\relax` here. These commands have no argument,

```
\beforeparttoc  Commands for part level mini-tables:
\nbeforepartlof
\nbeforepartlot  7645 \let\beforeparttoc\empty
\nafterparttoc  7646 \let\nbeforepartlof\empty
\nafterpartlof  7647 \let\nbeforepartlot\empty
\nafterpartlot  7648 \let\nafterparttoc\empty
\nthispageparttocstyle 7649 \let\nafterpartlof\empty
\nthispagepartlofsty 7650 \let\nafterpartlot\empty
\nthispagepartlotstyle
```

```

7651 \let\thispageparttocstyle\empty
7652 \let\thispagepartlofsty\empty
7653 \let\thispagepartlotstyle\empty

```

```

\beforeminitoc  Commands for chapter level mini-tables:
\beforeminilof
\beforeminilot 7654 \let\beforeminitoc\empty
\afterminitoc  7655 \let\beforeminilof\empty
\afterminilof  7656 \let\beforeminilot\empty
\afterminilot  7657 \let\afterminitoc\empty
\thispagemininitocstyle 7658 \let\afterminilof\empty
\thispageminilofstyle  7659 \let\afterminilot\empty
\thispageminilotstyle  7660 \let\thispagemininitocstyle\empty
\thispageminilofstyle  7661 \let\thispageminilofstyle\empty
\thispageminilotstyle  7662 \let\thispageminilotstyle\empty

```

```

\beforesecttoc  Commands for section level mini-tables:
\beforesectlof
\beforesectlot  7663 \let\beforesecttoc\empty
\aftersecttoc   7664 \let\beforesectlof\empty
\aftersectlof   7665 \let\beforesectlot\empty
\aftersectlot   7666 \let\aftersecttoc\empty
\thispagesecttocstyle 7667 \let\aftersectlof\empty
\thispagesectlofsty  7668 \let\aftersectlot\empty
\thispagesectlotstyle 7669 \let\thispagesecttocstyle\empty
\thispagesectlofsty  7670 \let\thispagesectlofsty\empty
\thispagesectlotstyle 7671 \let\thispagesectlotstyle\empty

```

## 10.16 Disabling miscellaneous flags and commands

```

\if@longextensions@  There are some flags and commands that it is wise to declare:
\iftightmtc
\ifktightmtc 7672 \newif\if@longextensions@ \@longextensions@true
\ifundottedmtc 7673 \newif\iftightmtc \tightmtcfalse
\l@listof 7674 \newif\ifktightmtc \ktightmtcfalse
\ifmtcsecondpart 7675 \newif\ifundottedmtc \undottedmtcfalse
\chapter 7676 \newif\ifmtcsecondpart \mtcsecondpartfalse
7677 \let\l@listof\chapter

```



## 10.17 Caution for some commands

`\AtBeginDocument` Some minitoc commands should eventually be replaced if you decide to *definitely* stop using  
`\ifmtcoffwarn@` the minitoc package with your document. So we declare a flag and a `\AtEndDocument` block  
to signal that you have used these commands:

```

7678 \newif\ifmtcoffwarn@ \mtcoffwarn@false
7679 \AtEndDocument{\ifmtcoffwarn@
7680   \mtcPackageWarningNoLine[<F0007>]{mtcoff}%
7681   {You should scan (backwards) your .log
7682   \MessageBreak
7683   file to find some commands needing
7684   \MessageBreak
7685   to be replaced if you decide to
7686   \MessageBreak
7687   DEFINITELY stop using minitoc for this
7688   \MessageBreak
7689   document. It is more wise to keep the
7690   \MessageBreak
7691   \string\usepackage\space lines for minitoc and mtcoff
7692   \MessageBreak
7693   and to comment out only one of them}
7694 \fi}

```

`\mtcaddchapter` Then these commands are disabled and they set the flag and give a warning (useful to get the  
`\mtcaddsection` line number):

```

\mtcaddpart
\ifmtcoffwarn@ 7695 \newcommand{\mtcaddchapter}[1][\mtcoffwarn@true
\mtc@ck 7696   \mtcPackageWarning[<F0004>]{mtcoff}%
7697   {\protect\mtcaddchapter{...} should be replaced
\addcontentsline 7698   \MessageBreak
7699   by \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}
7700   \MessageBreak}
7701 \def\mtc@ck{#1}
7702 \ifx\mtc@ck\empty
7703 \else
7704   \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{#1}%
7705 \fi}
7706 \newcommand{\mtcaddsection}[1][\mtcoffwarn@true
7707   \mtcPackageWarning[<F0006>]{mtcoff}%
7708   {\protect\mtcaddsection{...} should be replaced
7709   \MessageBreak
7710   by \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}
7711   \MessageBreak}
7712 \def\mtc@ck{#1}
7713 \ifx\mtc@ck\empty
7714 \else
7715   \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{#1}%
7716 \fi}
7717 \newcommand{\mtcaddpart}[1][\mtcoffwarn@true
7718   \mtcPackageWarning[<F0005>]{mtcoff}%
7719   {\protect\mtcaddpart{...} should be replaced
7720   \MessageBreak
7721   by \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}

```

```

7722      \MessageBreak}
7723 \def\mtc@ck{#1}
7724 \ifx\mtc@ck\empty
7725 \else
7726   \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{#1}%
7727 \fi}

```

## 10.18 Disabling commands for “coffee”

```

\addcoffeeline We disable the commands relative to “coffee” lines, and the specific version of contents lines
\coffeeline without leaders of dots:
\@gobble
\@Undottedtocline 7728 \def\addcoffeeline#1#2#3{\relax}
\@Undottedtoclinep 7729 \let\coffeeline\@gobble
7730 \let\l@coffee\relax
7731 \def\@Undottedtocline#1#2#3#4#5{\relax}
7732 \def\@Undottedtoclinep#1#2#3#4#5{\relax}

```

## 10.19 Disabling the `mtchideinmain...` environments

```

mtchideinmaintoc These environments accept one optional argument:
mtchideinmainlof
mtchideinmainlot 7733 \newenvironment{mtchideinmaintoc}[1][-1]%
7734   {\empty}{\empty}
7735 \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlof}[1][-1]%
7736   {\empty}{\empty}
7737 \newenvironment{mtchideinmainlot}[1][-1]%
7738   {\empty}{\empty}

```

## 10.20 Inhibition of the `\mtc@saveXXXdepth` and `\mtc@restoreXXXdepth` internal commands

```

\mtc@savetocdepth We must inhibit these commands, inserted in the .toc, .lof and .lot files by the hiding
\mtc@savelofdepth commands. So we will not have to delete these files when switching from the minitoc package
\mtc@savelotdepth to the mtcOFF package.
\mtc@restoretocdepth
\mtc@restorelofdepth 7739 \let\mtc@savetocdepth\empty
\mtc@restotelotdepth 7740 \let\mtc@savelofdepth\empty
7741 \let\mtc@savelotdepth\empty
7742 \let\mtc@restoretocdepth\empty

```

```
7743 \let\mtc@restorelofdepth\empty
7744 \let\mtc@restorelotdepth\empty
```

## 10.21 Disabling the `\mtcfixglossary` command

`\mtcfixglossary` This command accepts one optional argument:

```
7745 \newcommand{\mtcfixglossary}[1][\relax]
```

## 10.22 Disabling the `\mtcfixindex` command

`\mtcfixindex` This command accepts one optional argument:

```
7746 \newcommand{\mtcfixindex}[1][\relax]
```

## 10.23 Disabling the `\addstarred...` commands

`\ifmtcoffwarn@` These commands should be replaced by standard commands, but `mtcoff` simulates and gives a warning, which will be reminded at the end of document:

```
\addstarredpart
\addstarredchapter
\addstarredsection 7747 \def\addstarredpart#1{\mtcoffwarn@true
\addcontentsline 7748   \mtcPackageWarning[<F0002>]{mtcoff}%
7749   {\protect\addstarredpart{...} should be replaced by
7750   \MessageBreak
7751   \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{...}
7752   \MessageBreak}
7753   \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{#1}}
7754 \def\addstarredchapter#1{\mtcoffwarn@true
7755   \mtcPackageWarning[<F0001>]{mtcoff}%
7756   {\protect\addstarredchapter{...} should be replaced by
7757   \MessageBreak
7758   \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{...}
7759   \MessageBreak}
7760   \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{#1}}
7761 \def\addstarredsection#1{\mtcoffwarn@true
7762   \mtcPackageWarning[<F0003>]{mtcoff}%
7763   {\protect\addstarredsection{...} should be replaced by
7764   \MessageBreak
7765   \protect\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{...}
7766   \MessageBreak}
7767   \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{#1}}
```



And the mtcoff package is terminated.

7768 </mtcoff>

## Chapter 11

# Commented code of the mtcmess package

```
\mtcPackageInfo  To make easier the search of a message in the documentation1, we will assign an unique identifier to each message of the minitoc and mtcoff packages. As the standard commands for such messages do not include this feature, we make extended versions, with the same syntax, plus a first optional argument:
\PackageInfo
\MessageBreak
\mtcPackageWarning \PackageWarning
\mtcPackageWarningNoLine 7769 <*mtcmess>
\PackageWarningNoLine 7770 \ProvidesPackage{mtcmess}[2006/03/14]%
\mtcPackageError 7771 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}[1996/06/01]%
\PackageError 7772 \newcommand{\mtcPackageInfo}[3][{}]{%
7773   {\PackageInfo{#2}{#1\MessageBreak #3}}}%
7774 \newcommand{\mtcPackageWarning}[3][{}]{%
7775   {\PackageWarning{#2}{#1\MessageBreak #3}}}%
7776 \newcommand{\mtcPackageWarningNoLine}[3][{}]{%
7777   {\PackageWarningNoLine{#2}{#1\MessageBreak #3}}}%
7778 \newcommand{\mtcPackageError}[4][{}]{%
7779   {\PackageError{#2}{#1\MessageBreak #3}{#4}}}%
7780 </mtcmess>
```

Hence the first line of the message will contain the package name and the unique identifier of the message.

These macros are defined in a separate package because they are used by at least two packages (minitoc and mtcoff) and because they could be useful for other packages.

---

<sup>1</sup> By example, using the search facility of some PDF reader utility.

## Chapter 12

# Patch for the memoir class



This code must be loaded to fix an *incompatibility* of the minitoc package with some recent versions of the memoir class. This correction is no more necessary after the 2005/09/25 version of memoir.

```
7781 (*mtcpatchmem)
7782 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}[1996/06/01]%
7783 \ProvidesPackage{mtcpatchmem}%
7784   [2007/02/12 v52 Package mtcpatchmem]
7785 \RequirePackage{mtcmess}[2006/03/14]
7786 \mtcPackageInfo[<M0001>]{mtcpatchmem}%
7787   {mtcpatchmem package to patch the memoir class\@gobble}
7788 \renewcommand{\@m@chapter}[1][ ]{%
7789   \def\ch@pt@c{#1}% capture first optional arg
7790   \@ifnextchar[{\@chapter}{\@chapter[]}%
7791 }
7792 \def\@chapter[#1]#2{%
7793 % if |\ch@pt@c| is empty, no [ was found at all. Use #2| as
7794 % entry for all fields.
7795   \ifx\ch@pt@c\@empty
7796     \def\f@rtoc{#2}%
7797     \def\f@rhdr{#2}%
7798   \else
7799 % otherwise at least one [ was found. If #1| is empty then only
7800 % one was found.
7801     \let\f@rtoc\ch@pt@c
7802     \ifx\@empty#1\@empty
7803       \let\f@rhdr\ch@pt@c
7804     \else
7805       \def\f@rhdr{#1}%
7806     \fi
7807   \fi
7808   \ifnum \c@secnumdepth > \m@ne \relax
7809     \if@mainmatter
7810       \refstepcounter{chapter}%
```

```

7811     \fi
7812 \fi
7813 \chaptermark{\f@rhdr}%
7814 \ifartopt
7815     \@makechapterhead{#2}%
7816     \@afterheading
7817 \else
7818     \insertchapterspace
7819     \if@twocolumn
7820         \@topnewpage[\@makechapterhead{#2}]%
7821     \else
7822         \@makechapterhead{#2}%
7823     \fi
7824     \@afterheading
7825 \fi
7826 \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >\m@ne\relax
7827     \if@mainmatter
7828         \ifanappendix
7829             \addcontentsline{toc}{appendix}{%
7830                 \protect\chapternumberline{\thechapter}\f@rtoc}%
7831         \else
7832             \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{%
7833                 \protect\chapternumberline{\thechapter}\f@rtoc}%
7834         \fi
7835     \else
7836         \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{\f@rtoc}%
7837     \fi
7838 \else
7839     \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{\f@rtoc}%
7840 \fi
7841 \ifheadnameref\M@gettitle{\f@rhdr}\else\M@gettitle{\f@rtoc}\fi
7842 }
7843 </mtcpatchmem>

```

## Chapter 13

# The language definition (.mld) and object (.mlo) files

### Contents

13.1	“Acadian” language: acadian.mld	441
13.2	“Acadien” language: acadien.mld	442
13.3	“Afrikaan” language: afrikaan.mld	442
13.4	“Afrikaans” language: afrikaans.mld	443
13.5	“Albanian” language: albanian.mld	443
13.6	“American” language: american.mld	443
13.7	“Arab” language: arab.mld	444
13.8	“Arab2” language: arab2.mld	444
13.9	“Arabi” language: arabi.mld	445
13.10	“Arabic” language: arabic.mld	445
13.11	“Armenian” language: armenian.mld	445
13.12	“Australian” language: australian.mld	446
13.13	“Austrian” language: austrian.mld	446
13.14	“Bahasa” language: bahasa.mld	446
13.15	“Bahasai” language: bahasai.mld	447
13.16	“Bahasam” language: bahasam.mld	447
13.17	“Bangla” language: bangla.mld	448
13.18	“Basque” language: basque.mld	448
13.19	“Bicig” language: bicig.mld	449
13.20	“Bicig2” language: bicig2.mld	450
13.21	“Bicig3” language: bicig3.mld	450
13.22	“Bithe” language: bithe.mld	451
13.23	“Brazil” language: brazil.mld	451
13.24	“Brazilian” language: brazilian.mld	452
13.25	“Breton” language: breton.mld	452
13.26	“British” language: british.mld	453
13.27	“Bulgarian” language: bulgarian.mld	453
13.28	“Bulgarianb” language: bulgarianb.mld	454
13.29	“Buryat” language: buryat.mld	454
13.30	“Buryat2” language: buryat2.mld	455

13.31	“Canadian” language: canadian.mld	455
13.32	“Canadien” language: canadien.mld	456
13.33	“Castillan” language: castillan.mld	456
13.34	“Castillian” language: castillian.mld	456
13.35	“Catalan” language: catalan.mld	456
13.36	“Chinese1” language: chinese1.mld and chinese1.mlo	457
13.37	“Chinese2” language: chinese2.mld and chinese2.mlo	457
13.38	“Croatian” language: croatian.mld	458
13.39	“Czech” language: czech.mld	458
13.40	“Danish” language: danish.mld	459
13.41	“Devanagari” language: devanagari.mld	459
13.42	“Dutch” language: dutch.mld	460
13.43	“English” language: english.mld	461
13.44	“English1” language: english1.mld	461
13.45	“English2” language: english2.mld	462
13.46	“Esperant” language: esperant.mld	462
13.47	“Esperanto” language: esperanto.mld	463
13.48	“Estonian” language: estonian.mld	463
13.49	“Ethiopia” language: ethiopia.mld	464
13.50	“Ethiopian” language: ethiopian.mld	465
13.51	“Ethiopian2” language: ethiopian2.mld	465
13.52	“Farsi1” language: farsi1.mld and farsi1.mlo	466
13.53	“Farsi2” language: farsi2.mld and farsi2.mlo	466
13.54	“Farsi3” language: farsi3.mld	467
13.55	“Finnish” language: finnish.mld	467
13.56	“Finnish2” language: finnish2.mld	468
13.57	“Francais” language: francais.mld	468
13.58	“French” language: french.mld	468
13.59	“French1” language: french1.mld	469
13.60	“French2” language: french2.mld	470
13.61	“Frenchb” language: frenchb.mld	470
13.62	“Frenchle” language: frenchle.mld	471
13.63	“Frenchpro” language: frenchpro.mld	471
13.64	“Galician” language: galician.mld	471
13.65	“German” language: german.mld	472
13.66	“Germanb” language: germanb.mld	473
13.67	“Germanb2” language: germanb2.mld	473
13.68	“Greek” language: greek.mld	474
13.69	“Greek-mono” language: greek-mono.mld	474
13.70	“Greek-polydemo” language: greek-polydemo.mld	475
13.71	“Greek-polykatha” language: greek-polykatha.mld	476
13.72	“Guarani” language: guarani.mld	477
13.73	“Hangul1” language: hangul1.mld and hangul1.mlo	478
13.74	“Hangul2” language: hangul2.mld and hangul2.mlo	478
13.75	“Hangul3” language: hangul3.mld and hangul3.mlo	479
13.76	“Hangul4” language: hangul4.mld and hangul4.mlo	479
13.77	“Hangul-u8” language: hangul-u8.mld and hangul-u8.mlo	480
13.78	“Hanja1” language: hanja1.mld and hanja1.mlo	480
13.79	“Hanja2” language: hanja2.mld and hanja2.mlo	481
13.80	“Hanja-u8” language: hanja-u8.mld and hanja-u8.mlo	481
13.81	“Hebrew” language: hebrew.mld	482
13.82	“Hebrew2” language: hebrew2.mld	483
13.83	“Hindi” language: hindi.mld	483

13.84	“Hindi-modern” language: hindi-modern.mld	484
13.85	“Hungarian” language: hungarian.mld	484
13.86	“Icelandic” language: icelandic.mld	485
13.87	“Indon” language: indon.mld	485
13.88	“Indonesian” language: indonesian.mld	485
13.89	“Interlingua” language: interlingua.mld	486
13.90	“Irish” language: irish.mld	486
13.91	“Italian” language: italian.mld	487
13.92	“Italian2” language: italian2.mld	487
13.93	“Japanese” language: japanese.mld and japanese.mlo	488
13.94	“Japanese2” language: japanese2.mld and japanese2.mlo	488
13.95	“Japanese3” language: japanese3.mld and japanese3.mlo	489
13.96	“Japanese4” language: japanese4.mld and japanese4.mlo	489
13.97	“Japanese5” language: japanese5.mld and japanese5.mlo	490
13.98	“Japanese6” language: japanese6.mld and japanese6.mlo	490
13.99	“Kannada” language: kannada.mld	491
13.100	“Khalka” language: khalkha.mld	491
13.101	“Latin” language: latin.mld	492
13.102	“Latin2” language: latin2.mld	492
13.103	“Latvian” language: latvian.mld	493
13.104	“Letton” language: letton.mld	493
13.105	“Lithuanian” language: lithuanian.mld	493
13.106	“Lowersorbian” language: lowersorbian.mld	494
13.107	“Lsorbian” language: lsorbian.mld	495
13.108	“Magyar” language: magyar.mld	495
13.109	“Magyar2” language: magyar2.mld	495
13.110	“Magyar3” language: magyar3.mld	496
13.111	“Malay” language: malay.mld	496
13.112	“Malayalam-keli” language: malayalam-keli.mld	497
13.113	“Malayalam-omega” language: malayalam-omega.mld and malayalam-omega.mlo	497
13.114	“Malayalam-rachana” language: malayalam-rachana.mld	498
13.115	“Malayalam-rachana2” language: malayalam-rachana2.mld	498
13.116	“Manju” language: manju.mld	499
13.117	“Meyalu” language: meyalu.mld	499
13.118	“Mongol” language: mongol.mld	499
13.119	“Mongolb” language: mongolb.mld	500
13.120	“Mongolian” language: mongolian.mld	501
13.121	“Naustrian” language: naustrian.mld	501
13.122	“Newzealand” language: newzealand.mld	502
13.123	“Ngerman” language: ngerman.mld	502
13.124	“Ngermanb” language: ngermanb.mld	502
13.125	“Ngermanb2” language: ngermanb2.mld	503
13.126	“Norsk” language: norsk.mld	503
13.127	“Norsk2” language: norsk2.mld	504
13.128	“Nynorsk” language: nynorsk.mld	504
13.129	“Nynorsk2” language: nynorsk2.mld	505
13.130	“Polish” language: polish.mld	505
13.131	“Polish2” language: polish2.mld	506
13.132	“Polski” language: polski.mld	507
13.133	“Portuges” language: portuges.mld	507
13.134	“Portuguese” language: portuguese.mld	507
13.135	“Romanian” language: romanian.mld	508

13.136 “Romanian2” language: romanian2.mld	509
13.137 “Romanian3” language: romanian3.mld	509
13.138 “Russian” language: russian.mld	510
13.139 “Russian2m” language: russian2m.mld	510
13.140 “Russian2o” language: russian2o.mld	511
13.141 “Russianb” language: russianb.mld	512
13.142 “Russianc” language: russianc.mld	513
13.143 “Russian-cca” language: russian-cca.mld and russian-cca.mlo	514
13.144 “Russian-cca1” language: russian-cca1.mld and russian-cca1.mlo	514
13.145 “Russian-lh” language: russian-lh.mld and russian-lh.mlo	515
13.146 “Russian-lhcyralt” language: russian-lhcyralt.mld and russian-lhcyralt.mlo	515
13.147 “Russian-lhcyrkoi” language: russian-lhcyrkoi.mld and russian-lhcyrkoi.mlo	516
13.148 “Russian-lhcyrwin” language: russian-lhcyrwin.mld and russian-lhcyrwin.mlo	516
13.149 “Samin” language: samin.mld	517
13.150 “Scottish” language: scottish.mld	517
13.151 “Serbian” language: serbian.mld	518
13.152 “Serbianc” language: serbianc.mld	518
13.153 “Slovak” language: slovak.mld	519
13.154 “Slovene” language: slovene.mld	519
13.155 “Spanish” language: spanish.mld	520
13.156 “Spanish2” language: spanish2.mld	521
13.157 “Spanish3” language: spanish3.mld	521
13.158 “Spanish4” language: spanish4.mld	522
13.159 “Swedish” language: swedish.mld	522
13.160 “Swedish2” language: swedish2.mld	523
13.161 “Thai” language: thai.mld and thai.mlo	523
13.162 “Turkish” language: turkish.mld	524
13.163 “Uighur” language: uighur.mld	524
13.164 “Uighur2” language: uighur2.mld	524
13.165 “Uighur3” language: uighur3.mld	525
13.166 “UKenglish” language: UKenglish.mld	525
13.167 “Ukraineb” language: ukraineb.mld	525
13.168 “Ukrainian” language: ukrainian.mld	525
13.169 “Uppersorbian” language: uppersorbian.mld	526
13.170 “USenglish” language: USenglish.mld	527
13.171 “Usorbian” language: usorbian.mld	527
13.172 “Vietnam” language: vietnam.mld	527
13.173 “Vietnamese” language: vietnamese.mld	528
13.174 “Welsh” language: welsh.mld	528
13.175 “Xalx” language: xalx.mld	529
13.176 “Xalx2” language: xalx2.mld	529
13.177 “Xalx3” language: xalx3.mld	530

This chapter shows the code of each .mld file. A .mld file is a *minitoc language definition* file, which defines the titles of the mini-tables for a given language. It contains often some comments about its origin, if you need further details. It is loaded either via a package option<sup>1</sup> in the \usepackage command for the minitoc package, either via the command:

<sup>1</sup> It can also be a global option for the document.



`\mtcselectlanguage`      `\mtcselectlanguage{\langle language \rangle}`

`\ptctitle`    Each .mld file must define the nine following commands (for the mini-tables of contents, mini-lists of figures and mini-lists of tables, at the part, chapter and section levels):

<code>\plftitle</code>	<code>\plttitle</code>	<code>\mtctitle</code>	• <code>\ptctitle</code>	• <code>\mtctitle</code>	• <code>\stctitle</code>
<code>\mlftitle</code>	<code>\mlttitle</code>	<code>\slftitle</code>	• <code>\plftitle</code>	• <code>\mlftitle</code>	• <code>\slftitle</code>
<code>\stctitle</code>	<code>\slttitle</code>		• <code>\plttitle</code>	• <code>\mlttitle</code>	• <code>\slttitle</code>



Many .mld files require special fonts adequate for the corresponding language; as this is a language-dependent issue, the user must set up the correct language and font context for each language, like using the babel package [39, 40, 41, 59], the CJK system [179, 180], the H<sub>A</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X system [156, in korean], the Antomega system [160], the ArabT<sub>E</sub>X [164, 165], BangT<sub>E</sub>X [214], Devanāgarī for T<sub>E</sub>X [216], ethiop [31], FarsiT<sub>E</sub>X [115]<sup>2</sup>, guarani [34], malayalam [3] et omal [4], MonT<sub>E</sub>X [103, 106], or ArmT<sub>E</sub>X [107] packages. Note that it is often the *english* name of the language which is used to name the corresponding .mld file.



But for some oriental languages<sup>3</sup>, the source of the titles use some *exotic encodings*, difficult to manipulate in a .dtx file, the .mld file is then just a wrapper loading a .mlo file<sup>4</sup>, not generated by the .dtx files in the current version of minitoc package. The adequate input encoding must be set up by the user *before* loading the .mld file via `\mtcselectlanguage`.



To go around this limitation, the minitoc.ins file uses filecontents environments to generate the .mlo files.



Since version #49, the minitoc package checks the presence of the *language*.mld file (and of the *language*.mlo file if necessary) for each language option of the package, before validating the option. If a .mld or .mlo is missing, the corresponding language option is not enabled and a warning message is written in the *document.log* file. But the presence of the *english*.mld file is mandatory, because english is the default language.

## 13.1 “Acadian” language: *acadian.mld*

The acadian language<sup>5</sup> is just french, so we load the *french.mld* file (see section 13.58 on page 468):

<sup>2</sup> By Mohammad GHODSI (ghodsi@rose.ipm.ac.ir) and FarsiT<sub>E</sub>X Project Group. See the FarsiT<sub>E</sub>X site at <http://www.farsitex.org>

<sup>3</sup> Mainly for chinese, farsi (iranian), hangûl (korean), hanja (korean), japanese, malayalam-omega, thai, and russian variants.

<sup>4</sup> The extension .mlo means *minitoc language object*.

<sup>5</sup> Spoken in some parts of the south of the USA, like Louisiane.

```

7844 <*acadian>
7845 \ProvidesFile{acadian.mld}[2004/12/14]
7846 \mtcselectlanguage{french}%
7847 </acadian>

```

## 13.2 “Acadien” language: `acadien.mld`

The “acadien” language<sup>6</sup> is just french (“acadien” is the french term for “acadian”), so we load the `french.mld` file (see section 13.58 on page 468):

```

7848 <*acadien>
7849 \ProvidesFile{acadien.mld}[2004/12/14]
7850 \mtcselectlanguage{french}%
7851 </acadien>

```

## 13.3 “Afrikaan” language: `afrikaan.mld`

The titles for the “afrikaan” language<sup>7</sup> come from the `dutch.dtx` file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS and Stoffel LOMBARD) in the `babel` package [40, 41, 42]:

```

7852 <*afrikaan>
7853 \ProvidesFile{afrikaan.mld}[2006/01/13]
7854 %% Afrikaan(s) titles for minitoc.sty
7855 %% from dutch.dtx (babel)
7856 %% Braams, Johannes~L.
7857 \def\ptctitle{Inhoudsopgawe}%
7858 \def\plftitle{Lys van figure}%
7859 \def\pltttitle{Lys van tabelle}%
7860 %%
7861 \def\mtctitle{Inhoudsopgawe}%
7862 \def\mlftitle{Lys van figure}%
7863 \def\mltttitle{Lys van tabelle}%
7864 %%
7865 \def\stctitle{Inhoudsopgawe}%
7866 \def\slftitle{Lys van figure}%
7867 \def\sltttitle{Lys van tabelle}%
7868 </afrikaan>

```

---

<sup>6</sup> Spoken in some parts of the south of the USA, like Louisiane.

<sup>7</sup> Spoken in South Africa, it has dutch origins; compare with section 13.42 on page 460.

## 13.4 “Afrikaans” language: afrikaans.mld

The term “afrikaans” is a synonym of “afrikaan”, so we just load afrikaan.mld (see section 13.3 on the page before):

```
7869 <*afrikaans>
7870 \ProvidesFile{afrikaans.mld}[2004/12/14]
7871 \mtcselectlanguage{afrikaan}%
7872 </afrikaans>
```

## 13.5 “Albanian” language: albanian.mld

The titles for the “albanian” language are taken from the albanian.dtx file (with a contribution of Adi Zaimi) in the babel package [40, 41, 86]:

```
7873 <*albanian>
7874 \ProvidesFile{albanian.mld}[2006/01/13]
7875 %% Albanian titles for minitoc.sty.
7876 %% from albabian.dtx (babel)
7877 %% Contribution of Adi Zaimi (zamilst at yahoo.com).
7878 \def\ptctitle{P\ "ermbajta}%
7879 \def\plftitle{Figurat}%
7880 \def\plttitle{Tabelat}%
7881 %%
7882 \def\mtctitle{P\ "ermbajta}%
7883 \def\mlftitle{Figurat}%
7884 \def\mltitle{Tabelat}%
7885 %%
7886 \def\stctitle{P\ "ermbajta}%
7887 \def\slftitle{Figurat}%
7888 \def\slttitle{Tabelat}%
7889 </albanian>
```

## 13.6 “American” language: american.mld

The “american” language is just like “english”<sup>8</sup>, so we just load english.mld (see section 13.43 on page 461):

```
7890 <*american>
7891 \ProvidesFile{american.mld}[2004/12/14]
7892 \mtcselectlanguage{english}%
7893 </american>
```

---

<sup>8</sup> It should be true for the mini-table titles; the languages themselves have some differences, like the hyphenation rules.

## 13.7 “Arab” language: arab.mld

The titles for the “arab” language are taken from the ArabTeX package [164, 165] (by Klaus LAGALLY), which should be used, with the associated fonts.

```

7894 <*arab>
7895 \ProvidesFile{arab.mld}[1999/03/16]
7896 %% Arabic titles for minitoc.sty
7897 %% Needs arabic fonts (cf. documentation of arabtex)
7898 %% (strings taken from arabtex; to be used with arabtex)
7899 \def\ptctitle{al-mu.htawayAtu}%
7900 \def\plftitle{qA'imaTu a.s-.suwari}%
7901 \def\pltttitle{qA'imaTu al-^gadAwili}
7902 %%
7903 \def\mtctitle{al-mu.htawayAtu}%
7904 \def\mlftitle{qA'imaTu a.s-.suwari}%
7905 \def\mltttitle{qA'imaTu al-^gadAwili}%
7906 %%
7907 \def\stctitle{al-mu.htawayAtu}%
7908 \def\slftitle{qA'imaTu a.s-.suwari}%
7909 \def\slttitle{qA'imaTu al-^gadAwili}%
7910 </arab>

```

## 13.8 “Arab2” language: arab2.mld

The titles for the “arab2” language are taken from the ArabTeX package [164, 165] (by Klaus LAGALLY), which should be used, with the associated fonts. It is a variant of the “arab” language.

```

7911 <*arab2>
7912 \ProvidesFile{arab2.mld}[2006/03/31]
7913 %% Arabic titles for minitoc.sty. Variant.
7914 %% Needs arabic fonts (cf. documentation of arabtex)
7915 %% (strings taken from arabtex; to be used with arabtex)
7916 {\makeatletter\global\let\mtcArabTok\@tok}%
7917 \def\ptctitle{\mtcArabTok(al-muHtawayAtu)}%
7918 \def\plftitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu aS-Suwari)}%
7919 \def\pltttitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu al-GadAwili)}%
7920 %%
7921 \def\mtctitle{\mtcArabTok(al-muHtawayAtu)}%
7922 \def\mlftitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu aS-Suwari)}%
7923 \def\mltttitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu al-GadAwili)}%
7924 %%
7925 \def\stctitle{\mtcArabTok(al-muHtawayAtu)}%
7926 \def\slftitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu aS-Suwari)}%
7927 \def\slttitle{\mtcArabTok(qAQAIMaTu al-GadAwili)}%
7928 </arab2>

```

## 13.9 “Arabi” language: arabi.mld

The titles for the “arabi” language are taken from the *Arabi* package [145] (by Youssef JABRI), which should be used, with the associated fonts.

```

7929 <*arabi>
7930 \ProvidesFile{arabi.mld}[2006/07/27]
7931 %% Arabic titles for minitoc.sty.
7932 %% Needs arabic fonts (cf. documentation of the Arabi package,
7933 %% Youssef Jabri)
7934 %% (strings taken from arabi.ldf; to be used with arabi)
7935 \def\ptctitle{\R{\alef\lam\fa\ha\ra\seen}}%
7936 \def\plftitle{\R{\qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\T\space \alef\lam\alefhamza\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
7937 \def\pltttitle{\R{\qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\T\space \alef\lam\jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
7938 %%
7939 \def\mtctitle{\R{\alef\lam\fa\ha\ra\seen}}%
7940 \def\mlftitle{\R{\qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\T\space \alef\lam\alefhamza\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
7941 \def\mltttitle{\R{\qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\T\space \alef\lam\jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
7942 %%
7943 \def\stctitle{\R{\alef\lam\fa\ha\ra\seen}}%
7944 \def\slftitle{\R{\qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\T\space \alef\lam\alefhamza\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
7945 \def\sltttitle{\R{\qaf\alef\yahamza\meem\T\space \alef\lam\jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
7946 %%
7947 </arabi>

```

## 13.10 “Arabic” language: arabic.mld

The “arabic” language is a synonym for “arab”, so we just load arab.mld (see section 13.7 on the page before):

```

7948 <*arabic>
7949 \ProvidesFile{arabic.mld}[2005/02/10]
7950 \mtcselectlanguage{arab}%
7951 </arabic>

```

## 13.11 “Armenian” language: armenian.mld

The titles for the “armenian” language are taken from the *ArmTeX* package [107] (by Serguei D’ACHIAN, Arnak DALALYAN and Vartan AKOPIAN), which should be used, with the associated fonts.

```

7952 <*armenian>
7953 \ProvidesFile{armenian.mld}[1999/06/28]
7954 %% Armenian titles for minitoc.sty

```

```

7955 %% from ArmTeX
7956 %% Sergei D'Achian (Serguei.Dachian@univ-lemans.fr)
7957 \def\ptctitle{Bovandakuthyun}%
7958 \def\plftitle{Patkernerî cank}%
7959 \def\plttitle{Aghyusaknerî cank}%
7960 %%
7961 \def\mtctitle{Bovandakuthyun}%
7962 \def\mlftitle{Patkernerî cank}%
7963 \def\mlttitle{Aghyusaknerî cank}%
7964 %%
7965 \def\stctitle{Bovandakuthyun}%
7966 \def\slftitle{Patkernerî cank}%
7967 \def\slttitle{Aghyusaknerî cank}%
7968 </armenian>

```

### 13.12 “Australian” language: `australian.mld`

The “australian” language is just like “english”, so we just load `english.mld` (see section 13.43 on page 461):

```

7969 < *australian>
7970 \ProvidesFile{australian.mld}[2006/01/11]
7971 \mtcselectlanguage{english}%
7972 < /australian>

```

### 13.13 “Austrian” language: `austrian.mld`

For the mini-table titles, the “austrian” language is like the “german” language, so we load `german.mld` (see section 13.65 on page 472):

```

7973 < *austrian>
7974 \ProvidesFile{austrian.mld}[2004/12/14]
7975 \mtcselectlanguage{german}%
7976 < /austrian>

```

### 13.14 “Bahasa” language: `bahasa.mld`

The “bahasa” language is just like “bahasai”, so we just load `bahasai.mld` (see section 13.15 on the following page):

```

7977 < *bahasa>
7978 \ProvidesFile{bahasa.mld}[2006/01/11]
7979 \mtcselectlanguage{bahasai}%
7980 </bahasa>

```

### 13.15 “Bahasai” language: `bahasai.mld`

The titles of the mini-tables for the “bahasai” language<sup>9</sup> (bahasa indonesia / bahasa meyalu) are taken from the file `bahasa.dtx` (by Jörg KNAPPEN and Terry MART) in the `babel` package [40, 41, 67]. Specific fonts are needed. See also section 13.16. The word “bahasa” means “language” in bahasa. For other names for this language, see sections 13.14 on the preceding page, 13.87 on page 485, and 13.88 on page 485.

```

7981 < *bahasai>
7982 \ProvidesFile{bahasai.mld}[2006/01/13]
7983 %% Bahasa Indonesia titles for minitoc.sty
7984 %% From bahasa.dtx in the babel package
7985 %% Knappen, Jörg and Mart, Terry
7986 \def\ptctitle{Daftar Isi}%
7987 \def\plftitle{Daftar Gambar}%
7988 \def\plttitle{Daftar Tabel}%
7989 %%
7990 \def\mtctitle{Daftar Isi}%
7991 \def\mlftitle{Daftar Gambar}%
7992 \def\mlttitle{Daftar Tabel}%
7993 %%
7994 \def\stctitle{Daftar Isi}%
7995 \def\slftitle{Daftar Gambar}%
7996 \def\slttitle{Daftar Tabel}%
7997 </bahasai>

```

### 13.16 “Bahasam” language: `bahasam.mld`

The titles of the mini-tables for the “bahasam” language (Bahasa Malaysia)<sup>10</sup> are taken from the file `bahasam.dtx` (by Jörg KNAPPEN, Terry MART and Bob MARGOLIS) in the `babel` package [40, 41, 68]. Specific fonts are needed. See also section 13.14 on the page before. For other names for this language, see sections 13.111 on page 496 and 13.117 on page 499.

```

7998 < *bahasam>
7999 \ProvidesFile{bahasam.mld}[2006/12/19]
8000 %% Bahasa Malaysia titles for minitoc.sty

```

<sup>9</sup> Bahasa is spoken in Indonesia and Malaysia, with different pronunciations and titles but the same writing. Bahasai is the indonesian variant.

<sup>10</sup> Spoken in Indonesia and Malaysia, with different pronunciations and titles but the same writing. Bahasam is the malaysian variant.

```

8001 %% From bahasam.dtx in the babel package
8002 %% Knappen, Jörg and Mart, Terry and Margolis, Bob
8003 \def\ptctitle{Kandungan}%
8004 \def\plftitle{Senarai Gambar}%
8005 \def\plttitle{Senarai Jadual}%
8006 %%
8007 \def\mtctitle{Kandungan}%
8008 \def\mlftitle{Senarai Gambar}%
8009 \def\mlttitle{Senarai Jadual}%
8010 %%
8011 \def\stctitle{Kandungan}%
8012 \def\slftitle{Senarai Gambar}%
8013 \def\slttitle{Senarai Jadual}%
8014 </bahasam>

```

### 13.17 “Bangla” language: `bangla.mld`

The titles for the “bangla” language<sup>11</sup> are taken from the BangTeX package [214] (by Palash Baran PAL); they need specific fonts.

```

8015 <(*bangla)
8016 \ProvidesFile{bangla.mld}[2006/03/31]
8017 %% Bangla titles for minitoc.sty
8018 %% from BangTeX
8019 %% Needs specific fonts
8020 \def\ptctitle{suu\*c*ipotRo}%
8021 \def\plftitle{cho\*b*ir ta\*l*ika}%
8022 \def\plttitle{cho\*k*er ta\*l*ika}%
8023 %%
8024 \def\mtctitle{suu\*c*i}%
8025 \def\mlftitle{cho\*b*ir ta\*l*ika}%
8026 \def\mlttitle{cho\*k*er ta\*l*ika}%
8027 %%
8028 \def\stctitle{suu\*c*i}%
8029 \def\slftitle{cho\*b*ir ta\*l*ika}%
8030 \def\slttitle{cho\*k*er ta\*l*ika}%
8031 </bangla>

```

### 13.18 “Basque” language: `basque.mld`

The titles for the “basque” language<sup>12</sup> are taken from the `basque.dtx` file in the babel package [40, 41, 47], by Juan M. AGUIRREGABIRIA and Julio SÁNCHEZ, with help from Zunbeltz IZAOLA. It seems that 8 bits fonts are preferable.

<sup>11</sup> Spoken in Bangladesh and some parts of India.

<sup>12</sup> Spoken in the Basque country, in the north of Spain and south-west of France.



```

8032 <*basque>
8033 \ProvidesFile{basque.mld}[2006/01/13]
8034 %% Basque titles for minitoc.sty
8035 %% from basque.dtx (babel)
8036 %% Aguirregabiria, Juan M. and Sanchez, Julio
8037 %% Needs special fonts
8038 \def\ptctitle{Gaien Aurkibidea}%
8039 \def\plftitle{Irudien Zerrenda}%
8040 \def\plttitle{Taulen Zerrenda}%
8041 %%
8042 \def\mtctitle{Gaien Aurkibidea}%
8043 \def\mlftitle{Irudien Zerrenda}%
8044 \def\mlttitle{Taulen Zerrenda}%
8045 %%
8046 \def\stctitle{Gaien Aurkibidea}%
8047 \def\slftitle{Irudien Zerrenda}%
8048 \def\slttitle{Taulen Zerrenda}%
8049 </basque>

```

## 13.19 “Bicig” language: bicig.mld

The titles for the “bicig” language<sup>13</sup> are taken from the MonT<sub>E</sub>X package [103, 106]. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.118 on page 499, 13.20 on the following page, and 13.21 on the next page.

```

8050 <*bicig>
8051 \ProvidesFile{bicig.mld}[1999/03/16]
8052 %% Mongol (Bicig) titles for minitoc.sty
8053 %% needs mongol fonts
8054 \def\ptctitle{\bcg{GarciG}}%
8055 \def\plftitle{\bcg{zuraG-un zigsaaIt}}%
8056 \def\plttitle{\bcg{k"usn"agti"iIn jagsaaIt}}%
8057 %%
8058 \def\mtctitle{\bcg{GarciG}}%
8059 \def\mlftitle{\bcg{zuraG-un zigsaaIt}}%
8060 \def\mlttitle{\bcg{k"usn"agti"iIn jagsaaIt}}%
8061 %%
8062 \def\stctitle{\bcg{GarciG}}%
8063 \def\slftitle{\bcg{zuraG-un zigsaaIt}}%
8064 \def\slttitle{\bcg{k"usn"agti"iIn jagsaaIt}}%
8065 </bicig>

```

---

<sup>13</sup>The bicig is a written form of the mongolian language. It is also known as Uighur. See also section 13.163 on page 524.

## 13.20 “Bicig2” language: bicig2.mld

The titles for the “bicig2” language<sup>14</sup> are taken from the  $\text{MonTeX}$  package [103, 106]. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.118 on page 499, 13.19 on the preceding page, and 13.21.

```

8066 <*bicig2>
8067 \ProvidesFile{bicig2.mld}[2005/11/16]
8068 %% Mongol (Bicig2) titles for minitoc.sty
8069 %% needs mongol fonts
8070 \def\ptctitle{garcag}%
8071 \def\plftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
8072 \def\pltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
8073 %%
8074 \def\mtctitle{garcag}%
8075 \def\mlftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
8076 \def\mltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
8077 %%
8078 \def\stctitle{garcag}%
8079 \def\slftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
8080 \def\sltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
8081 </bicig2>

```

## 13.21 “Bicig3” language: bicig3.mld

The titles for the “bicig3” language<sup>15</sup> are taken from the  $\text{MonTeX}$  package [103, 106]. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.118 on page 499, 13.19 on the preceding page and 13.20.

```

8082 <*bicig3>
8083 \ProvidesFile{bicig3.mld}[2006/03/31]
8084 %% Mongol (Bicig3) titles for minitoc.sty
8085 %% needs mongol fonts
8086 \def\ptctitle{aguulag=a}%
8087 \def\plftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
8088 \def\pltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
8089 %%
8090 \def\mtctitle{aguulag=a}%
8091 \def\mlftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
8092 \def\mltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%
8093 %%
8094 \def\stctitle{aguulag=a}%
8095 \def\slftitle{zirug-un zigsagalda}%
8096 \def\sltttitle{kuisunukdu-yin zigsagalda}%

```

<sup>14</sup>The bicig, or uighur, is a written form of the mongolian language, bicig2 is a variant. See also section 13.164 on page 524.

<sup>15</sup>The bicig, or uighur, is a written form of the mongolian language, bicig3 is a variant. See also section 13.165 on page 525.

```
8097 </bicig3>
```

## 13.22 “Bithe” language: `bithe.mld`

The titles for the “bithe” language<sup>16</sup> are taken from the `MonTeX` package [103, 106]. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.118 on page 499 and 13.116 on page 499.

The Manju writing, or *bithe* system is a close relative of the Mongolian system; the basical letter shapes are the same. Yet for Manju, a set of diacritics (*dots and circles*) was designed to the effect that all the ambiguities of Mongolian are eliminated.

```
8098 < *bithe>
8099 \ProvidesFile{bithe.mld}[2005/11/16]
8100 %% Manju (bithe) titles for minitoc.sty
8101 %% needs mongol fonts
8102 \def\ptctitle{garcag}%
8103 \def\plftitle{zirug-un? afaha}%
8104 \def\plttitle{kuisunukdu-yin? afaha}%
8105 %%
8106 \def\mtctitle{garcag}%
8107 \def\mlftitle{zirug-un? afaha}%
8108 \def\mlttitle{kuisunukdu-yin? afaha}%
8109 %%
8110 \def\stctitle{garcag}%
8111 \def\slftitle{zirug-un? afaha}%
8112 \def\slttitle{kuisunukdu-yin? afaha}%
8113 </bithe>
```

## 13.23 “Brazil” language: `brazil.mld`

The titles for the “brazil” language<sup>17</sup> are taken from the `portuges.dtx` file (for portugese titles by Jose Pedro RAMALHETE) in the `babel` package [40, 41, 77]:

```
8114 < *brazil>
8115 \ProvidesFile{brazil.mld}[2006/01/13]
8116 %% Portugues (brazil) titles for minitoc.sty
8117 %% from portuges.dtx (babel)
8118 %% Ramalhete, Jose Pedro and "de Lima", Arnaldo Viegas
8119 \def\ptctitle{Sum\'ario}%
8120 \def\plftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
8121 \def\plttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
8122 %%
```

<sup>16</sup>The *bithe* is a written form of the *manju* variant of the mongolian language.

<sup>17</sup>It is the portuguese dialect spoken in Brazil. These titles are *different* in Brazil and in Portugal. Arnaldo Viegas DE LIMA contributed brasilian translations. See section 13.134 on page 507.

```

8123 \def\mtctitle{Sum\'ario}%
8124 \def\mlftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
8125 \def\mltttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
8126 %%
8127 \def\stctitle{Sum\'ario}%
8128 \def\slftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
8129 \def\sltttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
8130 </brazil>

```

## 13.24 “Brazilian” language: brazilian.mld

The “brazilian” language is just like “brazil”, so we just load `brazil.mld` (see section 13.23 on the page before):

```

8131 <(*brazilian)
8132 \ProvidesFile{brazilian.mld}[2005/07/11]
8133 \mtcselectlanguage{brazil}%
8134 </brazilian>

```

## 13.25 “Breton” language: breton.mld

The titles for the “breton” language<sup>18</sup> are taken from `breton.dtx` file (by Christian ROLLAND) in the `babel` package [40, 41, 78]:

```

8135 <(*breton)
8136 \ProvidesFile{breton.mld}[2006/01/13]
8137 %% Breton titles for minitoc.sty
8138 %% from breton.dtx (babel)
8139 %% Rolland, Christian
8140 \def\ptctitle{Taolenn}%
8141 \def\plftitle{Listenn ar Figurenno\'u}%
8142 \def\pltttitle{Listenn an taolenno\'u}%
8143 %%
8144 \def\mtctitle{Taolenn}%
8145 \def\mlftitle{Listenn ar Figurenno\'u}%
8146 \def\mltttitle{Listenn an taolenno\'u}%
8147 %%
8148 \def\stctitle{Taolenn}%
8149 \def\slftitle{Listenn ar Figurenno\'u}%
8150 \def\sltttitle{Listenn an taolenno\'u}%
8151 </breton>

```

---

<sup>18</sup>Spoken as a local celtic dialect in french Brittany.

## 13.26 “British” language: `british.mld`

The “british” language is just like “english”, so we just load `english.mld` (see section 13.43 on page 461):

```
8152 <{*british}
8153 \ProvidesFile{british.mld}[2005/07/11]
8154 \mtcselectlanguage{english}%
8155 </{*british}
```

## 13.27 “Bulgarian” language: `bulgarian.mld`

The titles for the “bulgarian” language are taken from the `bulgarian.dtx` (adapted from russian by Georgi BOSHNAKOV) file in the `babel` package [40, 41, 52]; they require specific cyrillic fonts. See also section 13.28 on the next page.

```
8156 <{*bulgarian}
8157 \ProvidesFile{bulgarian.mld}[2006/01/13]
8158 %% Bulgarian titles for minitoc.sty
8159 %% from bulgarian.dtx (babel)
8160 %% Boshnakov, Georgi
8161 %% Needs special fonts
8162 \def\ptctitle{%
8163   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrhrdsn\cyrd\cyrhrdsn\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
8164 \def\plftitle{%
8165   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyr\cyrhrdsn\cyrk\ %
8166     \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrf\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
8167 \def\plttitle{%
8168   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyr\cyrhrdsn\cyrk\ %
8169     \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
8170 %%
8171 \def\mtctitle{%
8172   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrhrdsn\cyrd\cyrhrdsn\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
8173 \def\mlftitle{%
8174   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyr\cyrhrdsn\cyrk\ %
8175     \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrf\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
8176 \def\mlttitle{%
8177   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyr\cyrhrdsn\cyrk\ %
8178     \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
8179 %%
8180 \def\stctitle{%
8181   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrhrdsn\cyrd\cyrhrdsn\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
8182 \def\slftitle{%
8183   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyr\cyrhrdsn\cyrk\ %
8184     \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrf\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
8185 \def\slttitle{%
8186   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrp\cyri\cyr\cyrhrdsn\cyrk\ %
8187     \cyrn\cyra\ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri\cyrt\cyre}}%
```

8188 </bulgarian>

## 13.28 “Bulgarianb” language: bulgarianb.mld

The titles for the “bulgarianb” (upper bulgarian) language are taken from the `russianb.dtx` file (by Olga G. LAPKO, Vladimir VOLOVICH, Werner LEMBERG, and Irina A. MAKHOVAYA) of the `babel` package [40, 41, 69, 171]; they require specific cyrillic fonts. See also section 13.27 on the preceding page.

```

8189 <*bulgarianb>
8190 \ProvidesFile{bulgarianb.mld}[2006/03/06]
8191 %% Upper bulgarian titles for minitoc.sty
8192 %% From russianb.dtx
8193 %% Needs cyrillic fonts for upper bulgarian
8194 \def\ptctitle{%
8195   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrrhdsn\cyrd\cyrrhdsn\cyrr\cyrrh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
8196 \def\plftitle{% Figuri
8197   {\cyr \CYRF\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri}}%
8198 \def\pltttitle{% Tablici
8199   {\cyr \CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri}}%
8200 %%
8201 \def\mtctitle{% Sydyrzhanie
8202   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrrhdsn\cyrd\cyrrhdsn\cyrr\cyrrh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
8203 \def\mlftitle{% Figurite
8204   {\cyr \CYRF\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri}}%
8205 \def\mltttitle{% Tablici
8206   {\cyr \CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri}}%
8207 %%
8208 \def\stctitle{% Sydyrzhanie
8209   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrrhdsn\cyrd\cyrrhdsn\cyrr\cyrrh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
8210 \def\slftitle{% Figuri
8211   {\cyr \CYRF\cyri\cyrg\cyru\cyrr\cyri}}%
8212 \def\sltttitle{% Tablici
8213   {\cyr \CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyri}}%
8214 </bulgarianb>

```

## 13.29 “Buryat” language: buryat.mld

The titles for the “buryat” language<sup>19</sup> are taken from the `MonTeX` package [103, 106]. This language requires specific fonts. See also section 13.118 on page 499.

```

8215 <*buryat>
8216 \ProvidesFile{buryat.mld}[1999/03/16]
8217 %% Buryat titles for minitoc.sty

```

<sup>19</sup>Spoken in some regions of Mongolia, in the Buryat republic, near Lake Baikal.

```

8218%% Needs special fonts
8219\def\ptctitle{{\mnr Gar{\sh}ag}}%
8220\def\plftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
8221\def\plttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
8222%%
8223\def\mtctitle{{\mnr Gar{\sh}ag}}%
8224\def\mlftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
8225\def\mltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
8226%%
8227\def\stctitle{{\mnr Gar{\sh}ag}}%
8228\def\slftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
8229\def\slttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
8230</buryat>

```

### 13.30 “Buryat2” language: buryat2.mld

The titles for the “buryat2” language (a variant for the “buryat” language, see section 13.29 on the preceding page) are taken from the MonTeX package [103, 106]. This language requires specific fonts. See also section 13.118 on page 499.

```

8231<*buryat2>
8232\ProvidesFile{buryat2.mld}[1999/03/16]
8233%% Buryat2 titles for minitoc.sty
8234%% Needs special fonts
8235\def\ptctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
8236\def\plftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
8237\def\plttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
8238%%
8239\def\mtctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
8240\def\mlftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
8241\def\mltttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
8242%%
8243\def\stctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
8244\def\slftitle{{\mnr Zuraga"i jagsaalt}}%
8245\def\slttitle{{\mnr X"usn"ag"at"a"i jagsaalt}}%
8246</buryat2>

```

### 13.31 “Canadian” language: canadian.mld



The “canadian” language (note the final “ian”) is just the english language spoken in Canada. We just load the file english.mld (see section 13.43 on page 461):

```

8247<*canadian>
8248\ProvidesFile{canadian.mld}[2004/12/14]
8249\mtcselectlanguage{english}%
8250</canadian>

```

### 13.32 “Canadien” language: `canadien.mld`



The “canadien” language (note the final “ien”) is just the french language spoken in Canada. We just load the file `french.mld` (see section 13.58 on page 468):

```
8251 \*canadien>
8252 \ProvidesFile{canadien.mld}[2004/12/14]
8253 \mtcselectlanguage{french}%
8254 \canadien>
```

### 13.33 “Castillan” language: `castillan.mld`

The “castillan” language is more known as “spanish”, but is spoken mainly in Castile, a part of central Spain. We just load the `spanish.mld` file (see section 13.155 on page 520):

```
8255 \*castillan>
8256 \ProvidesFile{castillan.mld}[2004/12/14]
8257 %% Castillan (spanish) titles for minitoc.sty
8258 \mtcselectlanguage{spanish}%
8259 \castillan>
```

### 13.34 “Castillian” language: `castillian.mld`

The “castillian” language is more known as “spanish”, but is spoken mainly in Castile, a part of central Spain. “Castillian” is the english name for “castillan”. We just load the `spanish.mld` file (see section 13.155 on page 520):

```
8260 \*castillian>
8261 \ProvidesFile{castillian.mld}[2005/07/01]
8262 %% Castillian (spanish) titles for minitoc.sty
8263 \mtcselectlanguage{spanish}%
8264 \castillian>
```

### 13.35 “Catalan” language: `catalan.mld`

The titles for the “catalan” language<sup>20</sup> are taken from the `catalan.dtx` file (adapted from spanish by Gonçal BADENES and Jörg KNAPPEN) in the `babel` package [40, 41, 49]:

---

<sup>20</sup>Spoken in Catalunya, the eastern part of Spain, around Barcelona.



```

8265 <*catalan>
8266 \ProvidesFile{catalan.mld}[2006/01/13]
8267 %% Catalan titles for minitoc.sty
8268 %% from catalan.dtx (babel)
8269 %% Badenes, Gonçal
8270 \def\ptctitle{\`Index}%
8271 \def\plftitle{\`Index de figures}%
8272 \def\plttitle{\`Index de taules}%
8273 %%
8274 \def\mtctitle{\`Index}%
8275 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
8276 \def\mlttitle{Taules}%
8277 %%
8278 \def\stctitle{\`Index}%
8279 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
8280 \def\slttitle{Taules}%
8281 </catalan>

```

### 13.36 “Chinese1” language: chinese1.mld and chinese1.mlo

There are several variants for the chinese language. The “chinese1” language uses titles taken from the Bg5.cap file in the CJK system [179, 180] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also section 13.37.

The titles for the “chinese1” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load chinese1.mlo.

```

8282 <*chinese1>
8283 \ProvidesFile{chinese1.mld}[2005/01/28]
8284 %% From the file file Bg5.cap of the CJK package
8285 %%   for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
8286 %%   created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
8287 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
8288 %% Chinese captions: character set: Big 5, encoding: Big 5
8289 %%
8290 \mtcloadmlo{chinese1}%
8291 </chinese1>

```

### 13.37 “Chinese2” language: chinese2.mld and chinese2.mlo

The “chinese2” language uses titles taken from the Bg5.cpx file in the CJK system [179, 180] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also section 13.36.

The titles for the “chinese2” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `chinese2.mlo`.

```

8292 <*chinese2>
8293 \ProvidesFile{chinese2.mld}[2005/01/28]
8294 %% From the file Bg5.cpx of the CJK package
8295 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
8296 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
8297 %%
8298 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
8299 %% Chinese captions: character set: Big 5, encoding: Big 5, preprocessed
8300 %%
8301 \mtcloadmlo{chinese2}%
8302 </chinese2>

```

### 13.38 “Croatian” language: `croatian.mld`

The titles for the “croatian” language are taken from the file `croatian.dtx` file (by Alan Paić) in the `babel` package [40, 41, 74]:

```

8303 <*croatian>
8304 \ProvidesFile{croatian.mld}[2006/01/13]
8305 %% Croatian titles for minitoc.sty
8306 %% from croatian.dtx (babel)
8307 %% Pai\{c}, Alan
8308 \def\ptctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
8309 \def\plftitle{Slike}%
8310 \def\pltttitle{Tablice}%
8311 %%
8312 \def\mtctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
8313 \def\mlftitle{Slike}%
8314 \def\mltttitle{Tablice}%
8315 %%
8316 \def\stctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
8317 \def\slftitle{Slike}%
8318 \def\sltttitle{Tablice}%
8319 </croatian>

```

### 13.39 “Czech” language: `czech.mld`

The titles for the “czech” language are taken from the file `czech.dtx` (contributions by Milos LOKAJCEK) in the `babel` package [40, 41, 72]:

```

8320 <*czech>
8321 \ProvidesFile{czech.mld}[2006/01/13]

```

```

8322 %% Czech titles for minitoc.sty
8323 %% from czech.dtx (babel)
8324 %% Lokajicek, Milos
8325 %% Warning: defines \w as a ring accent
8326 \def\w#1{\accent'27 #1}
8327 \def\ptctitle{Obsah}%
8328 \def\plftitle{Seznam obr\'azk\w{u}}%
8329 \def\plttitle{Seznam tabulek}%
8330 %%
8331 \def\mtctitle{Obsah}%
8332 \def\mlftitle{Seznam obr\'azk\w{u}}%
8333 \def\mlttitle{Seznam tabulek}%
8334 %%
8335 \def\stctitle{Obsah}%
8336 \def\slftitle{Seznam obr\'azk\w{u}}%
8337 \def\slttitle{Seznam tabulek}%
8338 </czech>

```

### 13.40 “Danish” language: `danish.mld`

The titles for the “danish” language are taken from the `danish.dtx` file (by Henning LARSEN) in the `babel` package [40, 41, 70]:

```

8339 <{*danish}
8340 \ProvidesFile{danish.mld}[2006/01/13]
8341 %% Danish titles for minitoc.sty
8342 %% from danish.dtx (babel)
8343 %% Larsen, Henning
8344 \def\ptctitle{Indholdsfortegnelse}%
8345 \def\plftitle{Figurer}%
8346 \def\plttitle{Tabeller}%
8347 %%
8348 \def\mtctitle{Indholdsfortegnelse}%
8349 \def\mlftitle{Figurer}%
8350 \def\mlttitle{Tabeller}%
8351 %%
8352 \def\stctitle{Indholdsfortegnelse}%
8353 \def\slftitle{Figurer}%
8354 \def\slttitle{Tabeller}%
8355 </danish>

```

### 13.41 “Devanagari” language: `devanagari.mld`

The titles for the “devanagari” language are taken from the `devanagari.sty` file (by Anshuman PANDEY, C. V. RADHAKRISHNAN, Zdeněk WAGNER, John SMITH, Kevin CARMODY, Richard MAHONEY and Dominik WUJASTYK) in the Devanāgarī package [216] (Devanāgarī).

See also section 13.83 on page 483. Specific fonts are required. The home page of the package is <http://devnag.ramovar.org>.

```

8356 (*devanagari)
8357 \ProvidesFile{devanagari.mld}[2006/08/25]
8358 %% Devanagari (hindi) titles for minitoc.sty
8359 %% from devanagari.sty by
8360 %% Pandey, Anshuman
8361 %% Radhakrishnan, C.~V.
8362 %% Wagner, Zden\v{e}k
8363 %% Smith, John
8364 %% Carmody, Kevin
8365 %% Mahoney, Richard
8366 %% Wujastyk, Dominik
8367 \def\ptctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
8368 \def\plftitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
8369 \def\pltttitle{{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
8370 %%
8371 \def\mtctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
8372 \def\mlftitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
8373 \def\mltttitle{{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
8374 %%
8375 \def\stctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
8376 \def\slftitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
8377 \def\sltttitle{{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
8378 </devanagari>

```

## 13.42 “Dutch” language: dutch.mld

The titles for the “dutch” language are taken from the dutch.dtx file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS) in the babel package [40, 41, 42]:

```

8379 (*dutch)
8380 \ProvidesFile{dutch.mld}[2006/01/13]
8381 % Dutch titles for minitoc.sty
8382 %% from dutch.dtx (babel)
8383 %% Braams, Johannes~L.
8384 \def\ptctitle{Inhoudsopgave}%
8385 \def\plftitle{Lijst van figuren}%
8386 \def\pltttitle{Lijst van tabellen}%
8387 %%
8388 \def\mtctitle{Inhoudsopgave}%
8389 \def\mlftitle{Lijst van figuren}%
8390 \def\mltttitle{Lijst van tabellen}%
8391 %%
8392 \def\stctitle{Inhoudsopgave}%
8393 \def\slftitle{Lijst van figuren}%
8394 \def\sltttitle{Lijst van tabellen}%
8395 </dutch>

```

### 13.43 “English” language: english.mld



The titles for the “english” language are taken from the english.dtx file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS) in the babel package [40, 41, 43]. *The presence of the english.mld file is mandatory, because english is the default language.*

See also sections 13.6 on page 443, 13.12 on page 446, 13.26 on page 453, 13.31 on page 455, 13.122 on page 502, 13.166 on page 525, and 13.170 on page 527.

```
8396 <*english>
8397 \ProvidesFile{english.mld}[2006/01/13]
8398 %% English titles for minitoc.sty
8399 %% from english.dtx (babel)
8400 %% Braams, Johannes~L.
8401 \def\ptctitle{Table of Contents}%
8402 \def\plftitle{List of Figures}%
8403 \def\pltttitle{List of Tables}%
8404 %%
8405 \def\mtctitle{Contents}%
8406 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
8407 \def\mltttitle{Tables}%
8408 %%
8409 \def\stctitle{Contents}%
8410 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
8411 \def\slttitle{Tables}%
8412 </english>
```

### 13.44 “English1” language: english1.mld

The titles for the “english1” language come from the english.dtx file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS) in the babel package [40, 41, 43], with some adaptations for the part-level titles.

```
8413 <*english1>
8414 \ProvidesFile{english1.mld}[2006/03/30]
8415 %% English titles for minitoc.sty
8416 %% from english.dtx (babel) Braams, Johannes~L.
8417 %% ptctitle, plftitle and pltttitle modified (JPFD)
8418 \def\ptctitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
8419   Table of Contents of the First Part\relax
8420   \else Table of Contents of Part~\Roman{part}\fi}%
8421 \def\plftitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
8422   List of Figures in the First Part\relax
8423   \else List of Figures in Part~\Roman{part}\fi}%
8424 \def\pltttitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
8425   List of Tables in the First Part\relax
8426   \else List of Tables in Part~\Roman{part}\fi}%
8427 %%
8428 \def\mtctitle{Contents}%
```

```

8429 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
8430 \def\mltttitle{Tables}%
8431 %%
8432 \def\stctitle{Contents}%
8433 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
8434 \def\slttitle{Tables}%
8435 </english1>

```

### 13.45 “English2” language: english2.mld

The titles for the “english2” language are again taken from the english.dtx file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS) in the babel package [40, 41, 43], with some adaptations for the titles at the part level.

```

8436 <{*english2>
8437 \ProvidesFile{english2.mld}[2006/03/30]
8438 %% English titles for minitoc.sty
8439 %% from english.dtx (babel) Braams, Johannes~L.
8440 %% ptctitle, plftitle and pltttitle modified (JFPD)
8441 \def\mtcEnglishIIpart{\ifcase\value{part}%
8442 \or the First Part\or the Second Part\or
8443 the Third Part\or the Fourth Part\or the Fifth Part\or
8444 the Sixth Part\or the Seventh Part\or the Eighth Part\or
8445 the Ninth Part\or the Tenth Part\or the Eleventh Part\or
8446 the Twelfth Part\or the Thirteenth Part\or the Fourteenth Part\or
8447 the Fifteenth Part\or the Sixteenth Part\or the Seventeenth Part\or
8448 the Eighteenth Part\or the Nineteenth Part\or
8449 the Twentieth Part\else Part~\Roman{part}\fi}
8450 \def\ptctitle{Contents of \mtcEnglishIIpart}
8451 \def\plftitle{List of Figures in \mtcEnglishIIpart}
8452 \def\pltttitle{List of Tables in \mtcEnglishIIpart}
8453 %%
8454 \def\mtctitle{Contents}%
8455 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
8456 \def\mltttitle{Tables}%
8457 %%
8458 \def\stctitle{Contents}%
8459 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
8460 \def\slttitle{Tables}%
8461 </english2>

```

### 13.46 “Esperant” language: esperant.mld

The titles for the “esperant” (esperanto) language are taken from the esperanto.dtx file (by Marti RUIZ-ALTABA and Jörg KNAPPEN) in the babel package [40, 41, 79]. The esperanto

(artificial) language was created in the 1877–1885 years by Doctor Lejzer Ludwig ZAMENOF<sup>21</sup> (1859–1917) of Warsaw, Poland.

```

8462 <*esperant>
8463 \ProvidesFile{esperant.mld}[2006/12/19]
8464 %% Esperanto titles for minitoc.sty
8465 %% from esperanto.dtx (babel)
8466 %% Ruiz-Altaba, Marti and Knappen. Jörg
8467 \def\ptctitle{Enhavo}%
8468 \def\plftitle{Listo de figuroj}%
8469 \def\plttitle{Listo de tabeloj}%
8470 %%
8471 \def\mtctitle{Enhavo}%
8472 \def\mlftitle{Listo de figuroj}%
8473 \def\mlttitle{Listo de tabeloj}%
8474 %%
8475 \def\stctitle{Enhavo}%
8476 \def\slftitle{Listo de figuroj}%
8477 \def\slttitle{Listo de tabeloj}%
8478 </esperant>

```

### 13.47 “Esperanto” language: `esperanto.mld`

The “esperanto” and “esperant” languages are synonyms, so we just load the `esperant.mld` file (see section 13.46 on the preceding page):

```

8479 <*esperanto>
8480 \ProvidesFile{esperanto.mld}[2004/12/14]
8481 \mtcselectlanguage{esperant}%
8482 </esperanto>

```

### 13.48 “Estonian” language: `estonian.mld`

The titles for the “estonian” language are taken from the `estonian.dtx` file (by Enn SAAR) in the `babel` package [40, 41, 80]:

```

8483 <*estonian>
8484 \ProvidesFile{estonian.mld}[2006/01/13]
8485 %% Estonian titles for minitoc.sty
8486 %% from estonian.dtx (babel)
8487 %% Saar, Enn
8488 \def\ptctitle{Sisukord}%
8489 \def\plftitle{Joonised}%

```

---

<sup>21</sup> See <http://uea.org/> and <http://www.esperanto-france.org/> for more information.

```

8490 \def\pltttitle{Tabelid}%
8491 %%
8492 \def\mtcttitle{Sisukord}%
8493 \def\mlfttitle{Joonised}%
8494 \def\mltttitle{Tabelid}%
8495 %%
8496 \def\stcttitle{Sisukord}%
8497 \def\slfttitle{Joonised}%
8498 \def\slttitle{Tabelid}%
8499 </estonian>

```

## 13.49 “Ethiopia” language: ethiopia.mld

The titles for the “ethiopia” language are taken from the `ethiop` package [31] (written by Berhanu BEYENE, Manfred KUDLEK, Olaf KUMMER, and Jochen METZINGER). Specific fonts are needed. See also section 13.51 on the next page.

```

8500 <*ethiopia>
8501 \ProvidesFile{ethiopia.mld}[1999/03/16]
8502 %% Ethiopian titles for minitoc.sty
8503 %% Needs special fonts
8504 \def\ptcttitle{yezate}%
8505 \def\plfttitle{%
8506     ya\eth@doaltchar{85}'elo\eth@doaltchar{109}
8507     mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
8508 \def\pltttitle{%
8509     yasane\eth@doaltchar{176}ra\eth@doaltchar{149}
8510     mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
8511 %%
8512 \def\mtcttitle{yezate}%
8513 \def\mlfttitle{%
8514     ya\eth@doaltchar{85}'elo\eth@doaltchar{109}
8515     mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
8516 \def\mltttitle{%
8517     yasane\eth@doaltchar{176}ra\eth@doaltchar{149}
8518     mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
8519 %%
8520 \def\stcttitle{yezate}%
8521 \def\slfttitle{%
8522     ya\eth@doaltchar{85}'elo\eth@doaltchar{109}
8523     mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
8524 \def\slttitle{%
8525     yasane\eth@doaltchar{176}ra\eth@doaltchar{149}
8526     mAwe\eth@doaltchar{187}}%
8527 </ethiopia>

```



## 13.50 “Ethiopian” language: `ethiopian.mld`

The “ethiopian” language is just a synonym for the “ethiopia” language, so we just load the `ethiopia.mld` file (see section 13.49 on the preceding page). See also section 13.49 on the page before.

```
8528 (*ethiopian)
8529 \ProvidesFile{ethiopian.mld}[2004/12/14]
8530 %% Needs ethopian special fonts
8531 \mtcselectlanguage{ethiopia}%
8532 \ethiopian
```

## 13.51 “Ethiopian2” language: `ethiopian2.mld`

The titles for the “ethiopian2” language (for Omega) are taken from the `ethiop` package [31] (by Berhanu BEYENE, Manfred KUDLEK, Olaf KUMMER, and Jochen METZINGER). Specific fonts are needed. See also section 13.49 on the preceding page.

```
8533 (*ethiopian2)
8534 \ProvidesFile{ethiopian2.mld}[2006/01/30]
8535 %% Ethiopian titles for minitoc.sty with Omega.
8536 %% Needs special fonts
8537 \def\ptctitle{^^^12ed^^^12d8^^^1275}%
8538 \def\plftitle{^^^12e8^^^1225^^^12d5^^^120e^^^127d
8539   ^^121b^^12cd^^132b}%
8540 \def\pltttitle{^^^12e8^^^1230^^^1295^^^1320^^^1228^^^12e5
8541   ^^121b^^12cd^^132b}%
8542 %%
8543 \def\mtctitle{^^^12ed^^^12d8^^^1275}%
8544 \def\mlftitle{^^^12e8^^^1225^^^12d5^^^120e^^^127d
8545   ^^121b^^12cd^^132b}%
8546 \def\mltttitle{^^^12e8^^^1230^^^1295^^^1320^^^1228^^^12e5
8547   ^^121b^^12cd^^132b}%
8548 %%
8549 \def\stctitle{^^^12ed^^^12d8^^^1275}%
8550 \def\slftitle{^^^12e8^^^1225^^^12d5^^^120e^^^127d
8551   ^^121b^^12cd^^132b}%
8552 \def\sltttitle{^^^12e8^^^1230^^^1295^^^1320^^^1228^^^12e5
8553   ^^121b^^12cd^^132b}%
8554 \ethiopian2
```

## 13.52 “Farsi1” language: farsi1.mld and farsi1.mlo

There are several variants for the farsi language, spoken in Iran. The “farsi1” language uses titles taken from the `farsi.sty` file in the FarsiTeX [115] system<sup>22</sup>, by Mohammad GHODSI, Behdad ESFAHBOD, Roozbeh POURNADER, Hassan ABOLHASSANI, and others. Special fonts are needed, of course. See also section 13.53.

The titles for the “farsi1” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `farsi1.mlo`.

```
8555 <farsi1>
8556 \ProvidesFile{farsi1.mld}[2005/09/13]
8557 %% From farsi.sty of the FarsiTeX project
8558 %% by Dr Mohammad Ghodsi,
8559 %% Roozbeh Pournader (roozbeh@sharif.edu),
8560 %% Hassan Abolhassani, and others.
8561 %% http://www.farsitex.org
8562 \mtcloadmlo{farsi1}%
8563 </farsi1>
```

## 13.53 “Farsi2” language: farsi2.mld and farsi2.mlo

There are several variants for the farsi language, spoken in Iran. The “farsi2” language uses titles taken from the `farsi.sty` file in the FarsiTeX system [115]<sup>22</sup>, by Mohammad GHODSI, Roozbeh POURNADER, Behdad ESFAHBOD, Hassan ABOLHASSANI, and others. Special fonts are needed, of course. See also section 13.52.

The titles for the “farsi2” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `farsi2.mlo`.

```
8564 <farsi2>
8565 \ProvidesFile{farsi2.mld}[2005/09/13]
8566 %% From farsi.sty of the FarsiTeX project
8567 %% by Dr Mohammad Ghodsi,
8568 %% Roozbeh Pournader (roozbeh@sharif.edu),
8569 %% Hassan Abolhassani, and others.
8570 %% http://www.farsitex.org
8571 \mtcloadmlo{farsi2}%
8572 </farsi2>
```

---

<sup>22</sup>By Mohammad GHODSI (ghodsi@rose.ipm.ac.ir) and FarsiTeX Project Group. See the FarsiTeX site at <http://www.farsitex.org>

## 13.54 “Farsi3” language: farsi3.mld

There are several variants for the farsi language, spoken in Iran. The “farsi3” language uses titles taken from the farsi.ldf file in the *Arabi* system[145], by Youssef JABRI. Special fonts are needed, of course.

```

8573 <farsi3>
8574 \ProvidesFile{farsi3.mld}[2006/07/27]
8575 %% From farsi.ldf of the Arabi system
8576 %% by Youssef Jabri.
8577 \def\ptctitle{\FR{\fa\ha\ra\seen\taa\space\meem\nun\dal\ra\jeem\alef\taa}}%
8578 \def\plftitle{\FR{\lam\ya\seen\taa\ \alef\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
8579 \def\pltttitle{\FR{\lam\ya\seen\taa\ \jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
8580 %%
8581 \def\mtctitle{\FR{\fa\ha\ra\seen\taa\space\meem\nun\dal\ra\jeem\alef\taa}}%
8582 \def\mlftitle{\FR{\lam\ya\seen\taa\ \alef\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
8583 \def\mltttitle{\FR{\lam\ya\seen\taa\ \jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
8584 %%
8585 \def\stctitle{\FR{\fa\ha\ra\seen\taa\space\meem\nun\dal\ra\jeem\alef\taa}}%
8586 \def\slftitle{\FR{\lam\ya\seen\taa\ \alef\sheen\kaf\alef\lam}}%
8587 \def\sltttitle{\FR{\lam\ya\seen\taa\ \jeem\dal\alef\waw\lam}}%
8588 </farsi3>

```

## 13.55 “Finnish” language: finnish.mld

The titles for the “finnish” language are taken from the finnish.dtx file (by Mikko KANERVA and Keranen REINO) in the babel package [40, 41, 65]. See also section 13.56 on the next page.

```

8589 <finnish>
8590 \ProvidesFile{finnish.mld}[2006/03/20]
8591 %% Finnish titles for minitoc.sty
8592 %% from finnish.dtx (babel)
8593 %% Kanerva, Mikko and Reino, Keranen
8594 \def\ptctitle{Sis\alt{o}}%
8595 \def\plftitle{Kuvat}%
8596 \def\pltttitle{Taulukot}%
8597 %%
8598 \def\mtctitle{Sis\alt{o}}%
8599 \def\mlftitle{Kuvat}%
8600 \def\mltttitle{Taulukot}%
8601 %%
8602 \def\stctitle{Sis\alt{o}}%
8603 \def\slftitle{Kuvat}%
8604 \def\sltttitle{Taulukot}%
8605 </finnish>

```

### 13.56 “Finnish2” language: `finnish2.mld`

The titles for the “finnish2” language are taken from a variant proposed by the `finnish.dtx` file (by Mikko KANERVA and Keranen REINO) in the `babel` package [40, 41, 65]. See also section 13.55 on the preceding page.

```

8606 <(*finnish2)
8607 \ProvidesFile{finnish2.mld}[2006/01/13]
8608 %% Finnish titles for minitoc.sty (variant)
8609 %% from finnish.dtx (babel)
8610 %% Kanerva, Mikko and Reino, Keranen
8611 \def\ptctitle{Sis\ "allys}%
8612 \def\plftitle{Kuvat}%
8613 \def\pltttitle{Taulukot}%
8614 %%
8615 \def\mtctitle{Sis\ "allys}%
8616 \def\mlftitle{Kuvat}%
8617 \def\mltttitle{Taulukot}%
8618 %%
8619 \def\stctitle{Sis\ "allys}%
8620 \def\slftitle{Kuvat}%
8621 \def\slttitle{Taulukot}%
8622 </finnish2>

```

### 13.57 “Francais” language: `francais.mld`

The “francais”<sup>23</sup> language is a synonym for the “french” language, so we load the file `french.mld` (see section 13.58):

```

8623 <(*francais)
8624 \ProvidesFile{francais.mld}[2004/12/14]
8625 \mtcselectlanguage{french}%
8626 </francais>

```

### 13.58 “French” language: `french.mld`

The titles for the “french” language are taken from the `frenchb.dtx` file (by Daniel FLIPO) in the `babel` package [40, 41, 60]. See also sections 13.1 on page 441, 13.2 on page 442, 13.32 on page 456, 13.57, 13.61 on page 470, 13.62 on page 471, and 13.63 on page 471.

```

8627 <(*french)
8628 \ProvidesFile{french.mld}[2006/03/21]

```

---

<sup>23</sup>The right spelling is “français”, but I did not dare using a cedilla in a file name.

```

8629%% French titles for minitoc.sty
8630%% from frenchb.dtx (babel)
8631%% Flipo, Daniel
8632\def\ptctitle{Table des mati\`eres}%
8633\def\plftitle{Liste des figures}%
8634\def\pltttitle{Liste des tableaux}%
8635%%
8636\def\mtctitle{Sommaire}%
8637\def\mlftitle{Figures}%
8638\def\mltttitle{Tableaux}%
8639%%
8640\def\stctitle{Sommaire}%
8641\def\slftitle{Figures}%
8642\def\slttitle{Tableaux}%
8643</french>

```

## 13.59 “French1” language: french1.mld

The titles for the “french1” language are taken from the frenchb.dtx (by Daniel FLIPO) file in the babel package [40, 41, 60], with some adaptations for the part-level titles.

```

8644(*french1)
8645\ProvidesFile{french1.mld}[2006/03/29]
8646%% French titles for minitoc.sty
8647%% from frenchb.dtx (babel) Flipo, Daniel
8648%% ptctitle, plftitle and pltttitle modified (JPFD)
8649\def\ptctitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
8650  Sommaire de la premi\`ere partie\relax
8651  \else Sommaire de la partie~\Roman{part}\fi}%
8652\def\plftitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
8653  Liste des figures de la premi\`ere partie\relax
8654  \else Liste des figures de la partie~\Roman{part}\fi}%
8655\def\pltttitle{\ifnum\value{part}=1\relax
8656  Liste des tableaux de la premi\`ere partie\relax
8657  \else Liste des tableaux de la partie~\Roman{part}\fi}%
8658%%
8659\def\mtctitle{Sommaire}%
8660\def\mlftitle{Figures}%
8661\def\mltttitle{Tableaux}%
8662%%
8663\def\stctitle{Sommaire}%
8664\def\slftitle{Figures}%
8665\def\slttitle{Tableaux}%
8666</french1>

```

## 13.60 “French2” language: french2.mld

The titles for the “french2” language are taken from the frenchb.dtx file (by Daniel Flipo) in the babel package [40, 41, 60], with some adaptations for the part-level titles<sup>24</sup>. See also section 9.5.6 on page 254, for the subtle distinction between “deuxième” and “seconde”. See the mtc-2nd.tex example file in section 4.2 on page 88.

```

8667 (*french2)
8668 \ProvidesFile{french2.mld}[2006/07/07]
8669 %% French titles for minitoc.sty
8670 %% from frenchb.dtx (babel) Flipo, Daniel
8671 %% ptctitle, plftitle and pltttitle modified (JPFD)
8672 \def\mtcFrenchIIpart{\ifcase\value{part}%
8673 \or premi\`ere partie\or
8674 {\ifmtcsecondpart seconde\else deuxi\`eme\fi} partie\or
8675 troisi\`eme partie\or quatri\`eme partie\or cinqui\`eme partie\or
8676 sixi\`eme partie\or septi\`eme partie\or huiti\`eme partie\or
8677 neuvi\`eme partie\or dixi\`eme partie\or onzi\`eme partie\or
8678 douzi\`eme partie\or treizi\`eme partie\or quatorzi\`eme partie\or
8679 quinzi\`eme partie\or seizi\`eme partie\or dix-septi\`eme partie\or
8680 dix-huiti\`eme partie\or dix-neuvi\`eme partie\or
8681 vingti\`eme partie\else partie~\Roman{part}\fi}
8682 \def\ptctitle{\ifnum\value{part}<1\relax
8683 Sommaire \else
8684 Sommaire de la \mtcFrenchIIpart\fi}
8685 \def\plftitle{\ifnum\value{part}<1\relax
8686 Liste des figures\else
8687 Liste des figures de la \mtcFrenchIIpart\fi}
8688 \def\pltttitle{\ifnum\value{part}<1\relax
8689 Liste des tableaux\else
8690 Liste des tableaux de la \mtcFrenchIIpart}
8691 %%
8692 \def\mtctitle{Sommaire}%
8693 \def\mlftitle{Figures}%
8694 \def\mltttitle{Tableaux}%
8695 %%
8696 \def\stctitle{Sommaire}%
8697 \def\slftitle{Figures}%
8698 \def\sltttitle{Tableaux}%
8699 \end{french2}

```

## 13.61 “Frenchb” language: frenchb.mld

The “frenchb” language is a synonym for the “french” language, so we load the french.mld file. See section 13.58 on page 468.

<sup>24</sup>This is an example of a .mld file needing some support from code in the minitoc package.

```

8700 <{*frenchb}
8701 \ProvidesFile{frenchb.mld}[2003/02/11]
8702 \mtcselectlanguage{french}%
8703 </frenchb>

```

### 13.62 “Frenchle” language: frenchle.mld

The “frenchle” language is a synonym for the “french” language, so we load the french.mld file. See section 13.58 on page 468.

```

8704 <{*frenchle}
8705 \ProvidesFile{frenchle.mld}[2003/02/20]
8706 \mtcselectlanguage{french}%
8707 </frenchle>

```

### 13.63 “Frenchpro” language: frenchpro.mld

The “frenchpro” language is a synonym for the “french” language, so we load the french.mld file. See section 13.58 on page 468.

```

8708 <{*frenchpro}
8709 \ProvidesFile{frenchpro.mld}[2003/02/20]
8710 \mtcselectlanguage{french}%
8711 </frenchpro>

```

### 13.64 “Galician” language: galician.mld

The titles for the “galician” language<sup>25</sup> are taken from the galician.dtx file, derived from the spanish.dtx file (by Javier BEZOS) (by Manuel CARRIBA and Javier A. MÚGICA DE RIVERA) in the babel package [40, 41, 55, 56]:

```

8712 <{*galician}
8713 \ProvidesFile{galician.mld}[2007/02/01]
8714 %% Galician titles for minitoc.sty
8715 %% from galician.dtx (babel)
8716 %% Carriba, Manuel (mcarriba@eunetcom.net)
8717 %% Javier A. Música de Rivera (jmugica@digi21.net)
8718 \expandafter\ifx\curname chapter\endcurname\relax
8719 \def\ptctitle{\`Indice}%

```

---

<sup>25</sup>Spoken in Galice, in the north-west part of Spain, around Santiago de Compostela.

```

8720 \else
8721 \def\ptctitle{\`Indice xeral}%
8722 \fi
8723 \def\plftitle{\`Indice de figuras}%
8724 \def\plttitle{\`Indice de cuadros}%
8725 %%
8726 \expandafter\ifx\cscname chapter\endcsname\relax
8727 \def\mtctitle{\`Indice}%
8728 \else
8729 \def\mtctitle{\`Indice xeral}%
8730 \fi
8731 \def\mlftitle{\`Indice de figuras}%
8732 \def\mlttitle{\`Indice de cuadros}%
8733 %%
8734 \expandafter\ifx\cscname chapter\endcsname\relax
8735 \def\stctitle{\`Indice}%
8736 \else
8737 \def\stctitle{\`Indice xeral}%
8738 \fi
8739 \def\slftitle{\`Indice de figuras}%
8740 \def\slttitle{\`Indice de cuadros}%
8741 </galician>

```

## 13.65 “German” language: `german.mld`

The titles for the “german” language are taken from the babel package [40, 41]. See also the section 13.13 on page 446.

```

8742 <*german>
8743 \ProvidesFile{german.mld}[1999/03/16]
8744 %% German titles for minitoc.sty
8745 \def\ptctitle{Inhaltsangabe}%
8746 \def\plftitle{Figuren}%
8747 \def\plttitle{Tabellen}%
8748 %%
8749 \def\mtctitle{Inhaltsangabe}%
8750 \def\mlftitle{Figuren}%
8751 \def\mlttitle{Tabellen}%
8752 %%
8753 \def\stctitle{Inhaltsangabe}%
8754 \def\slftitle{Figuren}%
8755 \def\slttitle{Tabellen}%
8756 </german>

```



## 13.66 “Germanb” language: `germanb.mld`

The “`germanb`” language is a variant for the “`german`” language. The titles are taken from the `germanb.dtx` file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS and Bernd RAICHLE) in the `babel` package [40, 41, 75]:

```

8757 <*germanb>
8758 \ProvidesFile{germanb.mld}[2006/01/13]
8759 %% German titles (variant) for minitoc.sty
8760 %% from germanb.dtx (babel)
8761 %% Braams, Johannes~L. and Raichle, Bernd
8762 \def\ptctitle{Inhaltsverzeichnis}%
8763 \def\plftitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
8764 \def\plttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
8765 %%
8766 \def\mtctitle{Inhaltsverzeichnis}%
8767 \def\mlftitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
8768 \def\mlttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
8769 %%
8770 \def\stctitle{Inhalt}%
8771 \def\slftitle{Abbildungen}%
8772 \def\slttitle{Tabellen}%
8773 </germanb>

```

## 13.67 “Germanb2” language: `germanb2.mld`

The “`germanb2`” language is a variant for the “`german`” language, with short titles. See also section 13.66. The titles are taken from the file `germanb.dtx` (by Johannes L. BRAAMS and Bernd RAICHLE) in the `babel` package [40, 41]:

```

8774 <*germanb2>
8775 \ProvidesFile{germanb2.mld}[2005/09/27]
8776 %% German titles (variant) for minitoc.sty
8777 \def\ptctitle{Inhalt}%
8778 \def\plftitle{Abbildungen}%
8779 \def\plttitle{Tabellen}%
8780 %%
8781 \def\mtctitle{Inhalt}%
8782 \def\mlftitle{Abbildungen}%
8783 \def\mlttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
8784 %%
8785 \def\stctitle{Inhalt}%
8786 \def\slftitle{Abbildungen}%
8787 \def\slttitle{Tabellen}%
8788 </germanb2>

```

## 13.68 “Greek” language: greek.mld

The titles for the “greek” language (modern greek) are taken from the greek.dtx file (by Apostolos SYROPOULOS) in the babel package [40, 41, 83]. Greek fonts are required.

```

8789 <*greek>
8790 \ProvidesFile{greek.mld}[2006/01/13]
8791 %% Greek titles for minitoc.sty
8792 %% from greek.dtx (babel)
8793 %% Syropoulos, Apostolos
8794 %% Needs greek fonts.
8795 \def\ptctitle{Perieq'omena}%
8796 \def\plftitle{Kat'alogoc Sqhm'atwn}%
8797 \def\plttitle{Kat'alogoc Pin'akwn}%
8798 %%
8799 \def\mtctitle{Perieq'omena}%
8800 \def\mlftitle{Kat'alogoc Sqhm'atwn}%
8801 \def\mlttitle{Kat'alogoc Pin'akwn}%
8802 %%
8803 \def\stctitle{Perieq'omena}%
8804 \def\slftitle{Kat'alogoc Sqhm'atwn}%
8805 \def\slttitle{Kat'alogoc Pin'akwn}%
8806 </greek>

```

## 13.69 “Greek-mono” language: greek-mono.mld

The titles for the “greek-mono” language<sup>26</sup> are taken from the omega-greek.ldf file (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) in the Antomega project [160]:

```

8807 <*greek – mono>
8808 \ProvidesFile{greek-mono.mld}[2005/02/08]
8809 %% from omega-greek.ldf (Antomega project)
8810 %% Needs Omega
8811 %% Alexej M. Kryukov
8812 %% Dmitry Ivanov
8813 %%
8814 \def\ptctitle{\localgreek%
8815 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^03cc^03bc%
8816 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
8817 \def\plftitle{\localgreek%
8818 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8819 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^03ac^03c4^03c9%
8820 ^03bd}}%
8821 \def\plttitle{\localgreek%
8822 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8823 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^03ac^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%

```

<sup>26</sup>Monotonic greek, from a recent (1982) but strongly contested – and contestable – reform of the greek language.

```

8824 %%
8825 \def\mtctitle{\localgreek%
8826 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^03cc^03bc%
8827 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
8828 \def\mlftitle{\localgreek%
8829 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8830 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^03ac^03c4^03c9%
8831 ^03bd}}%
8832 \def\mlftitle{\localgreek%
8833 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8834 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^03ac^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
8835 %%
8836 \def\stctitle{\localgreek%
8837 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^03cc^03bc%
8838 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
8839 \def\slftitle{\localgreek%
8840 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8841 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^03ac^03c4^03c9%
8842 ^03bd}}%
8843 \def\slftitle{\localgreek%
8844 {^039a^03b1^03c4^03ac^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8845 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^03ac^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
8846 </greek – mono>

```

## 13.70 “Greek-polydemo” language: greek-polydemo.mld

The titles for the “greek-polydemo” language<sup>27</sup> are taken from the file omega-greek.ldf (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) in the Antomega project [160]:

```

8847 <*greek – polydemo>
8848 \ProvidesFile{greek-polydemo.mld}[2005/02/08]
8849 %% from omega-greek.ldf (Antomega project)
8850 %% Needs Omega
8851 %% Alexej M. Kryukov
8852 %% Dmitry Ivanov
8853 %%
8854 \def\ptctitle{\localgreek%
8855 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^1f79^03bc%
8856 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
8857 \def\plftitle{\localgreek%
8858 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8859 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^1f71^03c4^03c9%
8860 ^03bd}}%
8861 \def\pltttitle{\localgreek%
8862 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8863 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^1f71^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
8864 %%
8865 \def\mtctitle{\localgreek%

```

<sup>27</sup>Polytonic demotic (popular) greek, for classical greek.

```

8866 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^1f79^03bc%
8867 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
8868 \def\mlftitle{\localgreek%
8869 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8870 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^1f71^03c4^03c9%
8871 ^03bd}}%
8872 \def\mltttitle{\localgreek%
8873 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8874 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^1f71^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
8875 %%
8876 \def\stctitle{\localgreek%
8877 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^1f79^03bc%
8878 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
8879 \def\slftitle{\localgreek%
8880 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8881 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^1f71^03c4^03c9%
8882 ^03bd}}%
8883 \def\sltttitle{\localgreek%
8884 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8885 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^1f71^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
8886 /greek – polydemo)

```

### 13.71 “Greek-polykatha” language: greek-polykatha.mld

The titles for the “greek-polykatha” language<sup>28</sup> are taken from the omega-greek.ldf (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) in the Antomega project [160]:

```

8887 (*greek – polykatha)
8888 \ProvidesFile{greek-polykatha.mld}[2005/02/08]
8889 %% from omega-greek.ldf (Antomega project)
8890 %% Needs Omega
8891 %% Alexej M. Kryukov
8892 %% Dmitry Ivanov
8893 %%
8894 \def\ptctitle{\localgreek%
8895 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^1f79^03bc%
8896 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
8897 \def\plftitle{\localgreek%
8898 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8899 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^1f71^03c4^03c9%
8900 ^03bd}}%
8901 \def\plttitle{\localgreek%
8902 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8903 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^1f71^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
8904 %%

```

<sup>28</sup>Polytonic greek, « kathaverousa » (purified) style, a form of the Greek language created during the early XIX-th century by Adamantios KORAIS, to purify the language from the Byzantine and non-greek vocabulary. It has now been obsoleted by the demotic (popular) greek, but it has left a very noticeable trace in the modern Greek language.

```

8905 \def\mtctitle{\localgreek%
8906 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^1f79^03bc%
8907 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
8908 \def\mlftitle{\localgreek%
8909 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8910 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^1f71^03c4^03c9%
8911 ^03bd}}%
8912 \def\mltttitle{\localgreek%
8913 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8914 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^1f71^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
8915 %
8916 \def\stctitle{\localgreek%
8917 {^03a0^03b5^03c1^03b9^03b5^03c7^1f79^03bc%
8918 ^03b5^03bd^03b1}}%
8919 \def\slftitle{\localgreek%
8920 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8921 ^03c2 ^03c3^03c7^03b7^03bc^1f71^03c4^03c9%
8922 ^03bd}}%
8923 \def\sltttitle{\localgreek%
8924 {^039a^03b1^03c4^1f71^03bb^03bf^03b3^03bf%
8925 ^03c2 ^03c0^03b9^03bd^1f71^03ba^03c9^03bd}}%
8926 </greek – polykatha>

```

## 13.72 “Guarani” language: guarani.mld

The “guarani” language is the main language spoken in Paraguay. Very often, a mixture of Guarani and Spanish, known as Jopara, is spoken. The titles are taken from the `guarani.ldf` file by Javier Bezos [34]. A special input encoding (`win-gn.def`) is needed. These files are available on the CTAN archives.

```

8927 <(*guarani)
8928 \ProvidesFile{guarani.mld}[2005/08/26]
8929 %% Guarani titles for minitoc.sty
8930 %% from guarani.ldf by Javier Bezos.
8931 %% Input encoding win-gn.def is needed.
8932 %%
8933 \def\ptctitle{\'Indice general}%
8934 \def\plftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
8935 \def\plttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%
8936 %%
8937 \def\mtctitle{\'Indice general}%
8938 \def\mlftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
8939 \def\mltttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%
8940 %%
8941 \def\stctitle{\'Indice general}%
8942 \def\slftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
8943 \def\sltttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%
8944 </guarani>

```

### 13.73 “Hangul1” language: hangul1.mld and hangul1.mlo

The Korean language was originally written using the Chinese characters; it is now mainly written in Hangûl, the Korean writing system, optionally incorporating Hanja to write Sino-Korean words [254]. See [134, page 150] and [217].

The titles for the “hangul1” language (korean in hangûl script, first variant) are taken from the file hangul.cap of the CJK system [179, 180] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.74, 13.75 on the next page, 13.76 on the following page, 13.77 on page 480, 13.78 on page 480, 13.79 on page 481, and 13.80 on page 481.

The titles for the “hangul1” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load hangul1.mlo.

```

8945 <{*hangul1}
8946 \ProvidesFile{hangul1.mld}[2005/01/28]
8947 %% From the file hangul.cap of the CJK package
8948 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
8949 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
8950 %%
8951 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
8952 %% Hangul captions
8953 %% character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992), encoding: EUC (=Wansung)
8954 %%
8955 \mtcloadmlo{hangul1}%
8956 </hangul1>

```

### 13.74 “Hangul2” language: hangul2.mld and hangul2.mlo

The titles for the “hangul2” language (korean in hangûl script, second variant) are taken from the file hangul.cpx of the CJK system [179, 180] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.73, 13.75 on the following page, 13.76 on the next page, 13.77 on page 480, 13.78 on page 480, 13.79 on page 481, and 13.80 on page 481.

The titles for the “hangul2” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load hangul2.mlo.

```

8957 <{*hangul2}
8958 \ProvidesFile{hangul2.mld}[2005/01/28]
8959 %% From the file hangul.cpx of the CJK package
8960 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
8961 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
8962 %%
8963 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)

```

```

8964 %% Hangul captions
8965 %% character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992),
8966 %% encoding: EUC (=Wansung), preprocessed
8967 %%
8968 \mtcloadmlo{hangul2}%
8969 </hangul2>

```

### 13.75 “Hangul3” language: hangul3.mld and hangul3.mlo

The titles for the “hangul3” language (korean in hangûl script, third variant) are taken from the file hangul2.cap of the CJK system [179, 180] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.73 on the preceding page, 13.74 on the page before, 13.76, 13.77 on the next page, 13.78 on the following page, 13.79 on page 481, and 13.80 on page 481.

The titles for the “hangul3” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load hangul3.mlo.

```

8970 <{*hangul3}
8971 \ProvidesFile{hangul3.mld}[2005/01/28]
8972 %% From the file hangul2.cap of the CJK package
8973 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
8974 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
8975 %%
8976 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
8977 %% Hangul captions set 2
8978 %% character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992), encoding: EUC (=Wansung)
8979 %%
8980 \mtcloadmlo{hangul3}%
8981 </hangul3>

```

### 13.76 “Hangul4” language: hangul4.mld and hangul4.mlo

The titles for the “hangul4” language (korean in hangûl script, fourth variant) are taken from the file hangul2.cpx of the CJK system [179, 180] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.73 on the page before, 13.74 on the preceding page, 13.75, 13.77 on the following page, 13.78 on the next page, 13.79 on page 481, and 13.80 on page 481.

The titles for the “hangul4” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load hangul4.mlo.

```

8982 \*hangul4
8983 \ProvidesFile{hangul4.mld}[2005/01/28]
8984 %% From the file hangul2.cpx of the CJK package
8985 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
8986 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
8987 %%
8988 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
8989 %% Hangul captions set 2, character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992),
8990 %% encoding: EUC (=Wansung), preprocessed
8991 %%
8992 \mtcloadmlo{hangul4}%
8993 \end{hangul4}

```

### 13.77 “Hangul-u8” language: hangul-u8.mld and hangul-u8.mlo

The titles for the “hangul-u8” language (korean in hangûl script, for *Lambda*  $\Lambda$ ) are taken from the file `u8hangul.tex` of the H<sub>L</sub>A<sub>T</sub>E<sub>X</sub> system [156, in korean] by KOAUNGH<sub>I</sub> Un. Special fonts are needed, of course. Input encoding is UTF-8.

See also sections 13.73 on page 478, 13.74 on page 478, 13.75 on the preceding page, 13.76 on the page before, 13.78, 13.79 on the next page, and 13.80 on the following page. See [134, page 150] and [217].

The titles for the “hangul-u8” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `hangul-u8.mlo`.

```

8994 \*hangul-u8
8995 \ProvidesFile{hangul-u8.mld}[2006/02/21]
8996 %% From the file u8hangul.tex of the HLaTeX package
8997 %% by Koaunghi Un (koaunghi@kornet.net)
8998 %%
8999 %% Hangul captions for Lambda
9000 %%
9001 \mtcloadmlo{hangul-u8}%
9002 \end{hangul-u8}

```

### 13.78 “Hanja1” language: hanja1.mld and hanja1.mlo

The titles for the “hanja1” language (korean in the old script hanja, first variant) are taken from the file `hanja.cpx` of the CJK system [179, 180] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.73 on page 478, 13.74 on page 478, 13.75 on the page before, 13.76 on the preceding page, 13.77, 13.79 on the following page, and 13.80 on the next page.



The titles for the “hanja1” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `hanja1.mlo`.

```

9003 \(*hanja1)
9004 \ProvidesFile{hanja1.mld}[2005/01/28]
9005 %% From the file hanja.cpx of the CJK package
9006 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
9007 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
9008 %%
9009 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
9010 %% Hanja captions, character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992),
9011 %% encoding: EUC (=Wansung), preprocessed
9012 %%
9013 \mtcloadmlo{hanja1}%
9014 \</hanja1)

```

### 13.79 “Hanja2” language: `hanja2.mld` and `hanja2.mlo`

The titles for the “hanja2” language (Korean in the old script hanja, second variant) are taken from the file `hanja.cap` of the CJK system [179, 180] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.73 on page 478, 13.74 on page 478, 13.75 on page 479, 13.76 on page 479, 13.77 on the preceding page, 13.78 on the page before, and 13.80.

The titles for the “hanja2” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `hanja2.mlo`.

```

9015 \(*hanja2)
9016 \ProvidesFile{hanja2.mld}[2005/01/28]
9017 %% From the file hanja.cap of the CJK package
9018 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
9019 %% created by Werner Lemberg <a7971428@unet.univie.ac.at>
9020 %%
9021 %% Version 4.1.3 (20-Jun-1997)
9022 %% Hanja captions, character set: KS X 1001:1992 (=KS C 5601-1992),
9023 %% encoding: EUC (=Wansung)
9024 %%
9025 \mtcloadmlo{hanja2}%
9026 \</hanja2)

```

### 13.80 “Hanja-u8” language: `hanja-u8.mld` and `hanja-u8.mlo`

The titles for the “hanja-u8” language (korean in hanja script, for *Lambda*  $\Lambda$ ) are taken from the file `u8hanja.tex` of the  $\text{\LaTeX}$  system [156, in korean] by KOAUNGHI Un. Special fonts

are needed, of course. Input encoding is UTF-8. See also section 13.73 on page 478, 13.74 on page 478, 13.75 on page 479, 13.76 on page 479, 13.77 on page 480, 13.78 on page 480, and 13.79 on the page before. See [134, page 150] and [217].

The titles for the “hanja-u8” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load hanja-u8.mlo.

```

9027 <*hanja – u8>
9028 \ProvidesFile{hanja-u8.mld}[2006/02/21]
9029 %% From the file hanja-u8.tex of the HLaTeX package
9030 %% by Koaunghi Un (koaunghi@kornet.net)
9031 %%
9032 %% Hanja captions for Lambda
9033 %%
9034 \mtcloadmlo{hanja-u8}%
9035 </hanja – u8>

```

### 13.81 “Hebrew” language: hebrew.mld

The titles for the “hebrew” language are taken from the ArabTeX package [164, 165] (by Klaus LAGALLY), which should be used, with the associated fonts. See also section 13.82 on the following page.

```

9036 <*hebrew>
9037 \ProvidesFile{hebrew.mld}[2001/02/28]
9038 %% Hebrew titles for minitoc.sty
9039 %% Need hebrew fonts (see arabtex documentation)
9040 \def\ptctitle{\tav\vav\kaf\finalnun\
9041             \ayin\nun\yod\nun\yod\finalmem}%
9042 \def\plftitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\
9043             \alef\yod\vav\resh\yod\finalmem}%
9044 \def\pltttitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\
9045             \tet\bet\lamed\alef\vav\tav}%
9046 %%
9047 \def\mtctitle{\tav\vav\kaf\finalnun\
9048             \ayin\nun\yod\nun\yod\finalmem}%
9049 \def\mlftitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\
9050             \alef\yod\vav\resh\yod\finalmem}%
9051 \def\mltttitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\
9052             \tet\bet\lamed\alef\vav\tav}%
9053 %%
9054 \def\stctitle{\tav\vav\kaf\finalnun\
9055             \ayin\nun\yod\nun\yod\finalmem}%
9056 \def\slftitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\
9057             \alef\yod\vav\resh\yod\finalmem}%
9058 \def\sltttitle{\resh\shin\yod\mem\tav\
9059             \tet\bet\lamed\alef\vav\tav}%
9060 </hebrew>

```

## 13.82 “Hebrew2” language: `hebrew2.mld`

The titles for the “hebrew2” language are taken from the file `hebrew.dtx` (by Boris LAVVA and Rama PORRAT) in the `babel` package [40, 41, 71], which should be used, with the associated fonts and encodings. See also section 13.81 on the page before.

```

9061 (*hebrew2)
9062 \ProvidesFile{hebrew2.mld}[2006/01/11]
9063 %% From hebrew.dtx in the Babel package.
9064 %% Boris Lavva (lavva@tx.technion.ac.il)
9065 %% Need hebrew fonts.
9066 \def\ptctitle{\@ensure@R{%
9067   \hebtav\hebvav\hebka\hebfinalnun\ %
9068   \hebayin\hebnun\hebyod\hebyod\hebnun\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}%
9069 \def\plftitle{\@ensure@R{%
9070   \hebrech\hebshin\hebyod\hebm\hebtav\ %
9071   \hebalef\hebyod\hebvav\hebrech\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}%
9072 \def\pltttitle{\@ensure@R{%
9073   \hebrech\hebshin\hebyod\hebm\hebtav\
9074   \hebtet\hebbet\heblamed\hebalef\hebvav\hebtav}}%
9075 %%
9076 \def\mtctitle{\@ensure@R{%
9077   \hebtav\hebvav\hebka\hebfinalnun\ %
9078   \hebayin\hebnun\hebyod\hebyod\hebnun\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}%
9079 \def\mlftitle{\@ensure@R{%
9080   \hebrech\hebshin\hebyod\hebm\hebtav\ %
9081   \hebalef\hebyod\hebvav\hebrech\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}%
9082 \def\mltttitle{\@ensure@R{%
9083   \hebrech\hebshin\hebyod\hebm\hebtav\
9084   \hebtet\hebbet\heblamed\hebalef\hebvav\hebtav}}%
9085 %%
9086 \def\stctitle{\@ensure@R{%
9087   \hebtav\hebvav\hebka\hebfinalnun\ %
9088   \hebayin\hebnun\hebyod\hebyod\hebnun\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}%
9089 \def\slftitle{\@ensure@R{%
9090   \hebrech\hebshin\hebyod\hebm\hebtav\ %
9091   \hebalef\hebyod\hebvav\hebrech\hebyod\hebfinalmem}}%
9092 \def\sltttitle{\@ensure@R{%
9093   \hebrech\hebshin\hebyod\hebm\hebtav\
9094   \hebtet\hebbet\heblamed\hebalef\hebvav\hebtav}}%
9095 (/hebrew2)

```

## 13.83 “Hindi” language: `hindi.mld`

The “hindi” language is just like “devanagari”, so we just load `devanagari.mld` (see section 13.41 on page 459):

```

9096 <{*hindi}
9097 \ProvidesFile{hindi.mld}[2006/08/24]
9098 \mtcselectlanguage{devanagari}%
9099 </hindi>

```

### 13.84 “Hindi-modern” language: hindi-modern.mld

The titles for the “hindi-modern” language are taken from the captions.dn file (by Anshuman PANDEY, C. V. RADHAKRISHNAN, Zdeněk WAGNER, John SMITH, Kevin CARMODY, Richard MAHONEY and Dominik WUJASTYK) in the Devanāgarī package [216] (Devanāgarī) after conversion. See also section 13.41 on page 459. Specific fonts are required. The home page of the package is <http://devnag.ramovar.org>.

```

9100 <{*hindi – modern}
9101 \ProvidesFile{hindi-modern.mld}[2006/08/29]
9102 %% Hindi modern titles for minitoc.sty
9103 %% from captions.dn in ‘Devanagari for TeX’ by
9104 %% Pandey, Anshuman
9105 %% Radhakrishnan, C.~V.
9106 %% Wagner, Zden\v{e}k
9107 %% Smith, John
9108 %% Carmody, Kevin
9109 %% Mahoney, Richard
9110 %% Wujastyk, Dominik
9111 \def\ptctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
9112 \def\plftitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
9113 \def\pltttitle{{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
9114 %%
9115 \def\mtctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
9116 \def\mlftitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
9117 \def\mltttitle{{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
9118 %%
9119 \def\stctitle{{\dn Evqy{\rs -\re}\8{s}cF}}%
9120 \def\slftitle{{\dn Ec/o{\qva} kF \8{s}cF}}%
9121 \def\slttitle{{\dn tAElkAao\2 kF \8{s}cF}}%
9122 </hindi – modern>

```

### 13.85 “Hungarian” language: hungarian.mld

The “hungarian” language is a synonym of the “magyar” language, so we load magyar.mld. See section 13.108 on page 495.

```

9123 <{*hungarian}
9124 \ProvidesFile{hungarian.mld}[2004/12/14]
9125 \mtcselectlanguage{magyar}%
9126 </hungarian>

```

### 13.86 “Icelandic” language: `icelandic.mld`

The titles for the “icelandic” language are taken from the `icelandic.dtx` file (by Einar ÁRNASON) in the `babel` package [40, 41, 48]:

```

9127 <*icelandic>
9128 \ProvidesFile{icelandic.mld}[2006/01/13]
9129 %% Icelandic titles for minitoc.sty
9130 %% from icelandic.dtx (babel)
9131 %% Árnason, Einar
9132 %% need inputenc with 8-bits encoding
9133 \def\ptctitle{Efnisyfirlit}%
9134 \def\plftitle{Myndaskrá}%
9135 \def\plttitle{Töfluskrá}%
9136 %%
9137 \def\mtctitle{Efnisyfirlit}%
9138 \def\mlftitle{Myndaskrá}%
9139 \def\mlttitle{Töfluskrá}%
9140 %%
9141 \def\stctitle{Efnisyfirlit}%
9142 \def\slftitle{Myndaskrá}%
9143 \def\slttitle{Töfluskrá}%
9144 </icelandic>

```

### 13.87 “Indon” language: `indon.mld`

The “indon” language is just like “bahasai”, so we just load `bahasai.mld` (see section 13.15 on page 447):

```

9145 <*indon>
9146 \ProvidesFile{indon.mld}[2006/01/13]
9147 \mtcselectlanguage{bahasai}%
9148 </indon>

```

### 13.88 “Indonesian” language: `indonesian.mld`

The “indonesian” language is just like “bahasai”, so we just load `bahasai.mld` (see section 13.15 on page 447):

```

9149 <*indonesian>
9150 \ProvidesFile{indonesian.mld}[2006/01/13]
9151 \mtcselectlanguage{bahasai}%
9152 </indonesian>

```

### 13.89 “Interlingua” language: `interlingua.mld`

The titles for the “interlingua” language are taken from the `interlingua.dtx` file (by Peter KLEIWEG) in the `babel` package [40, 41, 66]. Interlingua is an auxiliary language, built from the common vocabulary of Spanish/Portuguese, English, Italian and French, with some normalisation of spelling. The grammar is very easy, more similar to English’s than to neolatin languages. The site <http://www.interlingua.com> is mostly written in interlingua (as is <http://interlingua.altervista.org>), in case you want to read some sample of it. You can have a look at the grammar at <http://www.geocities.com/linguablau>

```

9153 <*interlingua>
9154 \ProvidesFile{interlingua.mld}[2006/01/13]
9155 %% Interlingua titles for minitoc.sty
9156 %% from interlingua.dtx (babel)
9157 %% Kleiweg, Peter
9158 \def\ptctitle{Contento}%
9159 \def\plftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
9160 \def\plttitle{Lista de Tabellas}%
9161 %%
9162 \def\mtctitle{Contento}%
9163 \def\mlftitle{Figuras}%
9164 \def\mlttitle{Tabellas}%
9165 %%
9166 \def\stctitle{Contento}%
9167 \def\slftitle{Figuras}%
9168 \def\slttitle{Tabellas}%
9169 </interlingua>

```

### 13.90 “Irish” language: `irish.mld`

The titles for the “irish” language come from the `irish.dtx` file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS, Marion GUNN and Fraser GRANT) in the `babel` package [40, 41, 44]:

```

9170 <*irish>
9171 \ProvidesFile{irish.mld}[2006/02/28]
9172 %% Irish titles for minitoc.sty
9173 %% from irish.dtx (babel)
9174 %% Braams, Johannes~L. and Gunn, Marion and Grant, Fraser
9175 \def\ptctitle{Cl\'ar \'Abhair}%
9176 \def\plftitle{L\'ear\'aid\'{\i}}%
9177 \def\plttitle{T\'abla\'{\i}}%
9178 %%
9179 \def\mtctitle{Cl\'ar \'Abhair}%
9180 \def\mlftitle{L\'ear\'aid\'{\i}}%
9181 \def\mlttitle{T\'abla\'{\i}}%
9182 %%
9183 \def\stctitle{Cl\'ar \'Abhair}%
9184 \def\slftitle{L\'ear\'aid\'{\i}}%

```

```

9185 \def\sltttitle{T\'abla\'\{i}}%
9186 </irish>

```

## 13.91 “Italian” language: `italian.mld`

The titles for the “italian” language come from the file `italian.dtx` (by Maurizio CODOGNO and Claudio BECCARI) in the `babel` package [40, 41, 58]. See also section 13.92.

```

9187 <*italian>
9188 \ProvidesFile{italian.mld}[2006/01/13]
9189 %% Italian titles for minitoc.sty
9190 %% from italian.dtx (babel)
9191 %% Maurizio Codogno, (mau@beatles.cselt.stet.it)
9192 %% and Claudio Beccari, (beccari@polito.it)
9193 \def\ptctitle{Indice}%
9194 \def\plftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
9195 \def\plttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
9196 %%
9197 \def\mtctitle{Indice}%
9198 \def\mlftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
9199 \def\mlttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
9200 %%
9201 \def\stctitle{Indice}%
9202 \def\slftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
9203 \def\sltttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
9204 </italian>

```

## 13.92 “Italian2” language: `italian2.mld`

The titles for the “italian2” language are the same as for the “italian” language, except at the part level (“Contenuto”). See also section 13.91.

```

9205 <*italian2>
9206 \ProvidesFile{italian2.mld}[2006/01/13]
9207 %% Italian titles for minitoc.sty. Variant.
9208 %% from italian.dtx (babel)
9209 %% Maurizio Codogno, (mau@beatles.cselt.stet.it)
9210 %% and Claudio Beccari, (beccari@polito.it)
9211 \def\ptctitle{Contenuto}%
9212 \def\plftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
9213 \def\plttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
9214 %%
9215 \def\mtctitle{Contenuto}%
9216 \def\mlftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
9217 \def\mlttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
9218 %%

```

```

9219 \def\stctitle{Contenuto}%
9220 \def\slftitle{Elenco delle figure}%
9221 \def\slttitle{Elenco delle tabelle}%
9222 </italian2>

```

### 13.93 “Japanese” language: `japanese.mld` and `japanese.mlo`

They are several variants for the japanese titles. The titles for a first variant of the “japanese” language have been found (by a Google search) on the Web site of Professor Toshiki KUMAZAWA<sup>29</sup>. See also sections 13.94, 13.95 on the following page, 13.96 on the next page, 13.97 on page 490, and 13.98 on page 490. The titles for the “japanese” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese.mlo`.

```

9223 <(*japanese)>
9224 \ProvidesFile{japanese.mld}[2006/01/13]
9225 %% Japanese titles for minitoc.sty
9226 %% Needs japanese fonts (CJK) and special input encoding.
9227 %% From Kumazawa Toshiki
9228 %% kumazawa@biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp
9229 %% http://www.biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp/sensei/kumazawa/tex/minitoc.html
9230 \mtcloadmlo{japanese}%
9231 </japanese>

```

### 13.94 “Japanese2” language: `japanese2.mld` and `japanese2.mlo`

The titles for the “japanese2” language (japanese, second variant) are taken from file JIS.cap of the CJK system [179, 180] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.93, 13.95 on the next page, 13.96 on the following page, 13.97 on page 490, and 13.98 on page 490. The titles for the “japanese2” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese2.mlo`.

```

9232 <(*japanese2)>
9233 \ProvidesFile{japanese2.mld}[2006/01/13]
9234 %% From the file JIS.cap of the CJK package
9235 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
9236 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
9237 %%
9238 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
9239 %% Japanese captions, character set: JIS X 0208:1997 (or JIS X 0208-1990),
9240 %% encoding: EUC

```

---

<sup>29</sup> <http://www.biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp/sensei/kumazawa/tex/minitoc.html>



```

9241 %%
9242 \mtcloadmlo{japanese2}%
9243 </japanese2>

```

### 13.95 “Japanese3” language: `japanese3.mld` and `japanese3.mlo`

The titles for the “japanese3” language (japanese, third variant) are taken from file `JIS.cpx` of the CJK system [179, 180] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.93 on the page before, 13.94 on the preceding page, 13.96, 13.97 on the following page, and 13.98 on the next page. The titles for the “japanese3” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese3.mlo`.

```

9244 <(*japanese3)
9245 \ProvidesFile{japanese3.mld}[2006/01/13]
9246 %% From the file JIS.cpx of the CJK package
9247 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
9248 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
9249 %%
9250 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
9251 %% Japanese captions, character set: JIS X 0208:1997 (or JIS X 0208-1990)
9252 %% encoding: EUC, preprocessed
9253 %%
9254 \mtcloadmlo{japanese3}%
9255 </japanese3>

```

### 13.96 “Japanese4” language: `japanese4.mld` and `japanese4.mlo`

The titles for the “japanese4” language (japanese, fourth version) are taken from file `SJIS.cap` of the CJK system [179, 180] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.93 on the preceding page, 13.94 on the page before, 13.95, 13.97 on the next page, and 13.97 on the following page. The titles for the “japanese4” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese4.mlo`.

```

9256 <(*japanese4)
9257 \ProvidesFile{japanese4.mld}[2006/01/13]
9258 %% From the file SJIS.cap of the CJK package
9259 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
9260 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
9261 %%
9262 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
9263 %% Japanese captions
9264 %% character set: JIS X 0208:1997 (or JIS X 0208-1990), encoding: SJIS

```

```

9265 %%
9266 \mtcloadmlo{japanese4}%
9267 </japanese4>

```

### 13.97 “Japanese5” language: `japanese5.mld` and `japanese5.mlo`

The titles for the “japanese5” (japanese, fifth variant) language are taken from file `SJIS.cpx` of the CJK system [179, 180] (by Werner LEMBERG). Special fonts are needed, of course. See also sections 13.93 on page 488, 13.94 on page 488, 13.95 on the page before, 13.96 on the preceding page, and 13.98. The titles for the “japanese5” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese5.mlo`.

```

9268 <(*japanese5)
9269 \ProvidesFile{japanese5.mld}[2006/01/13]
9270 %% From the file SJIS.cpx of the CJK package
9271 %% for using Asian logographs (Chinese/Japanese/Korean) with LaTeX2e
9272 %% created by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
9273 %%
9274 %% Version 4.5.2 (28-Mar-2003)
9275 %% Japanese captions
9276 %% character set: JIS X 0208:1997 (or JIS X 0208-1990),
9277 %% encoding: SJIS, preprocessed
9278 %%
9279 \mtcloadmlo{japanese5}%
9280 </japanese5>

```

### 13.98 “Japanese6” language: `japanese6.mld` and `japanese6.mlo`

The titles for the “japanese6” (japanese, sixth variant) language have been found (by a Google search) on the Web site of Professor Toshiki KUMAZAWA<sup>30</sup>. See also sections 13.93 on page 488, 13.94 on page 488, 13.95 on the preceding page, 13.96 on the page before, and 13.97. The titles for the “japanese6” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `japanese6.mlo`.

```

9281 <(*japanese6)
9282 \ProvidesFile{japanese6.mld}[2006/10/31]
9283 %% Japanese6 titles for minitoc.sty
9284 %% Needs japanese fonts (CJK) and special input encoding.
9285 %% From Kumazawa Toshiki
9286 %% kumazawa@biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp

```

<sup>30</sup> <http://www.biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp/sensei/kumazawa/tex/minitoc.html>

```

9287 %% http://www.biwako.shiga-u.ac.jp/sensei/kumazawa/tex/minitoc.html
9288 \mtcloadmlo{japanese6}%
9289 </japanese6>

```

## 13.99 “Kannada” language: kannada.mld

The Kannada (“kannada”) (or Kannara) language is a dravidian language spoken in the Karnataka state of India. The titles are taken from the kanlel.sty package file from the KannadaT<sub>E</sub>X project<sup>31</sup> by C. S. YOGANANDA. Specific fonts are required.

```

9290 <*kannada>
9291 \ProvidesFile{kannada.mld}[2006/02/14]
9292 %% from kanlel.sty of Kannadatex (C. S. Yogananda yoga@math.iisc.ernet.in)
9293 %%
9294 \def\ptctitle{pariviDi}
9295 \def\plftitle{citarxgaLa paTiTx}
9296 \def\plftitle{koVSaTxkagaLa paTiTx}
9297 %%
9298 \def\mtctitle{pariviDi}
9299 \def\mlftitle{citarxgaLa paTiTx}
9300 \def\mlftitle{koVSaTxkagaLa paTiTx}
9301 %%
9302 \def\stctitle{pariviDi}
9303 \def\slftitle{citarxgaLa paTiTx}
9304 \def\slftitle{koVSaTxkagaLa paTiTx}
9305 </kannada>

```

## 13.100 “Khalkha” language: khalkha.mld

“khalkha” is a synonym for “xalx”, so we just load xalx.mld (see sections 13.175 on page 529, 13.176 on page 529, and 13.177 on page 530):

```

9306 <*khalkha>
9307 \ProvidesFile{khalkha.mld}[2005/11/16]
9308 \mtcselectlanguage{xalx}%
9309 </khalkha>

```

---

<sup>31</sup> <http://Sarovar.org/projects/kannadatex>

### 13.101 “Latin” language: latin.mld

The titles for the “latin” language are taken from the `latin.dtx` file (by Claudio BECCARI and Krzysztof Konrad ŻELECHOWSKI) in the `babel` package [40, 41, 50]. See also section 13.102.

```

9310 <*latin>
9311 \ProvidesFile{latin.mld}[2006/01/13]
9312 %% Latin titles for minitoc.sty
9313 %% from latin.dtx (babel)
9314 %% Beccari, Claudio
9315 \def\ptctitle{Index}%
9316 \def\plftitle{Conspectus descriptionum}%
9317 \def\plttitle{Conspectus tabularum}%
9318 %%
9319 \def\mtctitle{Index}%
9320 \def\mlftitle{Conspectus descriptionum}%
9321 \def\mlttitle{Conspectus tabularum}%
9322 %%
9323 \def\stctitle{Index}%
9324 \def\slftitle{Conspectus descriptionum}%
9325 \def\slttitle{Conspectus tabularum}%
9326 </latin>

```

### 13.102 “Latin2” language: latin2.mld

The titles for the “latin2” language (latin, abbreviated variant) are taken from the `latin.dtx` (by Claudio BECCARI and Krzysztof Konrad ŻELECHOWSKI) file in the `babel` package [40, 41, 50], but abbreviated. See also section 13.101.

```

9327 <*latin2>
9328 \ProvidesFile{latin2.mld}[2006/01/13]
9329 %% Latin titles (shortened) for minitoc.sty
9330 %% from latin.dtx (babel)
9331 %% Beccari, Claudio
9332 \def\ptctitle{Index}%
9333 \def\plftitle{Conspectus descriptionum}%
9334 \def\plttitle{Conspectus tabularum}%
9335 %%
9336 \def\mtctitle{Index}%
9337 \def\mlftitle{Descriptiones}%
9338 \def\mlttitle{Tabulae}%
9339 %%
9340 \def\stctitle{Index}%
9341 \def\slftitle{Descriptiones}%
9342 \def\slttitle{Tabulae}%
9343 </latin2>

```

### 13.103 “Latvian” language: `latvian.mld`

The titles for the “latvian” language<sup>32</sup> come from the `latvian.ldf` file (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) in the Antomega project [160]. See also section 13.104.

```

9344 <*latvian>
9345 \ProvidesFile{latvian.mld}[2005/02/08]
9346 %% from latvian.ldf (Antomega project)
9347 %% Needs Omega
9348 %% Alexej M. Kryukov
9349 %% Dmitry Ivanov
9350 %%
9351 \def\ptctitle{\locallatvian{Saturš}}%
9352 \def\plftitle{\locallatvian{Att^^^0113lu saraksts}}%
9353 \def\plttitle{\locallatvian{Tabulu saraksts}}%
9354 %%
9355 \def\mtctitle{\locallatvian{Saturš}}%
9356 \def\mlftitle{\locallatvian{Att^^^0113lu saraksts}}%
9357 \def\mlttitle{\locallatvian{Tabulu saraksts}}%
9358 %%
9359 \def\stctitle{\locallatvian{Saturš}}%
9360 \def\slftitle{\locallatvian{Att^^^0113lu saraksts}}%
9361 \def\slttitle{\locallatvian{Tabulu saraksts}}%
9362 </latvian>

```

### 13.104 “Letton” language: `letton.mld`

The “letton” language is a synonym for the “latvian” language, so we just load `latvian.mld`. See section 13.103.

```

9363 <*letton>
9364 \ProvidesFile{letton.mld}[2005/02/08]
9365 \mtcselectlanguage{latvian}%
9366 </letton>

```

### 13.105 “Lithuanian” language: `lithuanian.mld`

The titles for the “lithuanian” language are taken from the `lithuanian.ldf` file<sup>33</sup> (by Sigitas TOLUŠIS) for the babel package [40, 41]:

<sup>32</sup>Note that “latvian” is the original name for “letton”.

<sup>33</sup>Found in <http://www.vtex.lt/tex/download/texinput/babel/babel.zip>.

```

9367 <{*lithuanian}
9368 \ProvidesFile{lithuanian.mld}[2006/01/13]
9369 %% Lithuanian titles for minitoc.sty
9370 %% from lithuanian.ldf
9371 %% in http://www.vtex.lt/tex/download/texinput/babel/babel.zip
9372 %% Tolusis, Sigitas (sigitas@vtex.lt)
9373 \def\ptctitle{Turinys}%
9374 \def\plftitle{Paveiksl\protect\c u s\protect\c ara\protect\v sas}%
9375 \def\plttitle{Lentel\protect\es}%
9376 %%
9377 \def\mtctitle{Turinys}%
9378 \def\mlftitle{Paveiksl\protect\c u s\protect\c ara\protect\v sas}%
9379 \def\mlttitle{Lentel\protect\es}%
9380 %%
9381 \def\stctitle{Turinys}%
9382 \def\slftitle{Paveiksl\protect\c u s\protect\c ara\protect\v sas}%
9383 \def\slttitle{Lentel\protect\es}%
9384 </lithuanian>

```

### 13.106 “Lowersorbian” language: lowersorbian.mld

The titles for the “lowsorbian” language<sup>34</sup> are taken from the `lsorbian.dtx` file (by Eduard WERNER) in the `babel` package [40, 41, 84]. See also section 13.169 on page 526. A shorter language name is `lsorbian` (see section 13.107 on the next page).

```

9385 <{*lowsorbian}
9386 \ProvidesFile{lowersorbian.mld}[2006/02/28]
9387 %% Lower sorbian titles for minitoc.sty
9388 %% from lsorbian.dtx (babel)
9389 %% Werner, Eduard
9390 \def\ptctitle{Wop\'simje\'se}%
9391 \def\plftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
9392 \def\plttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
9393 %%
9394 \def\mtctitle{Wop\'simje\'se}%
9395 \def\mlftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
9396 \def\mlttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
9397 %%
9398 \def\stctitle{Wop\'simje\'se}%
9399 \def\slftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
9400 \def\slttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
9401 </lowsorbian>

```

---

<sup>34</sup>Lower sorbian. Sorbian, or wendisch, is a member of the west slavic subgroup of indo-european languages spoken in Lower Lusatia in the german *länder* of Saxony and Brandenburg. The Sorbs are descendants of the Wends, the german name for the slavic tribes who occupied the area between the Elbe and Saale rivers in the west and the Odra (Oder) river in the east during the medieval period (vi-th century).

### 13.107 “Lsorbian” language: lsorbian.mld

The “lsorbian” language is a synonym for “lowersorbian”, so we just load lowersorbian.mld. See section 13.106 on the preceding page.

```

9402 <*lsorbian>
9403 \ProvidesFile{lsorbian.mld}[2006/01/23]
9404 %% Lower sorbian titles for minitoc.sty
9405 %% from lsorbian.dtx (babel)
9406 %% Werner, Eduard
9407 \selectlanguage{lowersorbian}%
9408 </lsorbian>

```

### 13.108 “Magyar” language: magyar.mld

The titles for the “magyar” language are taken from the magyar.dtx (by József BÉRCES and Árpád BÍRÓ, with help from Attila KOPPANYI) file in the babel package [40, 41, 51]. A synonym of “magyar” is “hungarian” (see section 13.85 on page 484). See also sections 13.109 and 13.110 on the next page for variants (it seems that magyar.dtx might have evolved).

```

9409 <*magyar>
9410 \ProvidesFile{magyar.mld}[2006/03/08]
9411 %% Magyar titles for minitoc.sty
9412 %% from magyar.dtx (babel)
9413 %% Bíró, Árpád and Bérces, József
9414 \def\ptctitle{Tartalom}%
9415 \def\plftitle{\'Abr\'ak}%
9416 \def\plttitle{T\'abl\'azatok}%
9417 %%
9418 \def\mtctitle{Tartalom}%
9419 \def\mlftitle{\'Abr\'ak}%
9420 \def\mlttitle{T\'abl\'azatok}%
9421 %%
9422 \def\stctitle{Tartalom}%
9423 \def\slftitle{\'Abr\'ak}%
9424 \def\slttitle{T\'abl\'azatok}%
9425 </magyar>

```

### 13.109 “Magyar2” language: magyar2.mld

The titles for the “magyar2” language are taken from a variant proposed in the magyar.dtx file of the babel package [40, 41] (by József BÉRCES, Árpád BÍRÓ, and Attila KOPPANYI). See also sections 13.108 and 13.110 on the next page.

```

9426 <*magyar2>
9427 \ProvidesFile{magyar.mld}[2006/03/08]
9428 %% Magyar2 titles for minitoc.sty (variant)
9429 %% from magyar.dtx (babel)
9430 %% Bíró, Árpád and Bérces, József
9431 \def\ptctitle{Tartalom}%
9432 \def\plftitle{\`Abr\`ak list\`aja}%
9433 \def\pltttitle{T\`abl\`azatok list\`aja}%
9434 %%
9435 \def\mtctitle{Tartalom}%
9436 \def\mlftitle{\`Abr\`ak list\`aja}%
9437 \def\mltttitle{T\`abl\`azatok list\`aja}%
9438 %%
9439 \def\stctitle{Tartalom}%
9440 \def\slftitle{\`Abr\`ak list\`aja}%
9441 \def\sltttitle{T\`abl\`azatok list\`aja}%
9442 </magyar2>

```

### 13.110 “Magyar3” language: magyar3.mld

The titles for the “magyar3” language (third variant of magyar) are taken from the `magyar.dtx` file (by József BÉRCES, Árpád BÍRÓ, and Attila KOPPANYI) in the `babel` package [40, 41, 51]. See also sections 13.108 on the preceding page and 13.109 on the page before.

```

9443 <*magyar3>
9444 \ProvidesFile{magyar3.mld}[2006/03/08]
9445 %% Magyar3 titles for minitoc.sty (variant)
9446 %% from magyar.dtx (babel)
9447 %% Bíró, Árpád and Bérces, József
9448 \def\ptctitle{Tartalomjegyz\`ek}%
9449 \def\plftitle{\`Abr\`ak jegyz\`eke}%
9450 \def\pltttitle{T\`abl\`azatok jegyz\`eke}%
9451 %%
9452 \def\mtctitle{Tartalomjegyz\`ek}%
9453 \def\mlftitle{\`Abr\`ak jegyz\`eke}%
9454 \def\mltttitle{T\`abl\`azatok jegyz\`eke}%
9455 %%
9456 \def\stctitle{Tartalomjegyz\`ek}%
9457 \def\slftitle{\`Abr\`ak jegyz\`eke}%
9458 \def\sltttitle{T\`abl\`azatok jegyz\`eke}%
9459 </magyar3>

```

### 13.111 “Malay” language: malay.mld

The “malay” language is just like “bahasam”, so we just load `bahasam.mld` (see section 13.16 on page 447):



```

9460 (*malay)
9461 \ProvidesFile{malay.mld}[2006/01/11]
9462 \mtcselectlanguage{bahasam}%
9463 \end{malay}

```

### 13.112 “Malayalam-keli” language: malayalam-keli.mld

The titles for the “malayalam-keli” language<sup>35</sup>, with the “Keli” fonts, are taken from the malayalam package [3] by A. J. ALEX. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.114 on the next page and 13.115 on the following page.

```

9464 (*malayalam – keli)
9465 \ProvidesFile{malayalam-keli.mld}[2006/01/13]
9466 %%
9467 %% Malayalam: Keli fonts
9468 %%
9469 \def\ptctitle{\mm \X{\<68>}\X{\<197>}\X{\<83>}\X{\<161>}\<119>}%
9470 \def\plftitle{\mm \X{\<78>\<110>}\X{\<123>\<88>}\X{\<167>}\X{\<196>}}%
9471 \def\pltttitle{\mm \X{\<116>\<83>}\X{\<95>\<110>}\X{\<102>\<112>}\X{\<73>}\X{\<196>}}%
9472 %%
9473 \def\mtctitle{\mm \X{\<68>}\X{\<197>}\X{\<83>}\X{\<161>}\<119>}%
9474 \def\mlftitle{\mm \X{\<78>\<110>}\X{\<123>\<88>}\X{\<167>}\X{\<196>}}%
9475 \def\mltttitle{\mm \X{\<116>\<83>}\X{\<95>\<110>}\X{\<102>\<112>}\X{\<73>}\X{\<196>}}%
9476 %%
9477 \def\stctitle{\mm \X{\<68>}\X{\<197>}\X{\<83>}\X{\<161>}\<119>}%
9478 \def\slftitle{\mm \X{\<78>\<110>}\X{\<123>\<88>}\X{\<167>}\X{\<196>}}%
9479 \def\sltttitle{\mm \X{\<116>\<83>}\X{\<95>\<110>}\X{\<102>\<112>}\X{\<73>}\X{\<196>}}%
9480 \end{malayalam – keli}

```

### 13.113 “Malayalam-omega” language: malayalam-omega.mld and malayalam-omega.mlo

This is the Malayalam language implementation “malayalam-omega” based on *Lambda* ( $\Lambda$ ) (the version of  $\text{\LaTeX}$  for Omega) via the omal package [4] (by A. J. ALEX) of the Malayalam-Omega project<sup>36</sup>. As the titles contain characters in a special encoding, we must load a .mlo file. A lot of fonts are available via options of the omal package.

```

9481 (*malayalam – omega)
9482 \ProvidesFile{malayalam-omega.mld}[2006/02/13]
9483 % from omal.sty (Alex A.J. indicTeX@gmail.com)

```

<sup>35</sup>The Malayalam language is spoken from the western coast of Malabar to the extreme southern India, mainly in the Kerala state. It is one of the dravidian languages strongly bound to the Tamil language. The alphabet and the script are dated from the 8th or 9th centuries.

<sup>36</sup><http://Sarovar.org/projects/malayalam>

```

9484 \mtcloadmlo{malayalam-omega}
9485 %
9486 </malayalam – omega>

```

### 13.114 “Malayalam-rachana” language: malayalam-rachana.mld

The titles for the “malayalam-rachana” language, with the traditionnal “Rachana” fonts (old lipi), are taken from the malayalam package [3] by A. J. ALEX. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.112 on the page before and 13.115.

```

9487 (*malayalam – rachana)
9488 \ProvidesFile{malayalam-rachana.mld}[2005/06/07]
9489 %%
9490 %% Malayalam: Rachana fonts, traditionnal.
9491 %%
9492 \def\ptctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%
9493 \def\plftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<C>}\X{<94>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%
9494 \def\pltttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{<F>}\<59>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}%
9495 %%
9496 \def\mtctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%
9497 \def\mlftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<C>}\X{<94>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%
9498 \def\mltttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{<F>}\<59>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}%
9499 %%
9500 \def\stctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%
9501 \def\slftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<C>}\X{<94>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%
9502 \def\sltttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{<F>}\<59>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}%
9503 </malayalam – rachana>

```

### 13.115 “Malayalam-rachana2” language: malayalam-rachana2.mld

The titles for the “malayalam-rachana2” language, with the reformed “Rachana” fonts (new lipi), are taken from the malayalam package [3] by A. J. ALEX. This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.112 on the page before and 13.114.

```

9504 (*malayalam – rachana2)
9505 \ProvidesFile{malayalam-rachana2.mld}[2006/01/13]
9506 %%
9507 %% Malayalam: Rachana fonts, reformed.
9508 %%
9509 \def\ptctitle{\mm \X{<68>}\X{<201>}\X{<83>}\X{<183>}\<119>}%
9510 \def\plftitle{\mm \X{<78>}\<111>}\X{<125>}\<88>}\X{<186>}\X{<179>}}%
9511 \def\pltttitle{\mm \X{<117>}\<83>}\X{<95>}\<111>}\X{<106>}\<113>}\X{<73>}\X{<179>}}%

```

```

9512 %%
9513 \def\mtctitle{\mm \X{\<68>}\X{\<201>}\X{\<83>}\X{\<183>}\<119>}%
9514 \def\mlftitle{\mm \X{\<78>\<111>}\X{\<125>\<88>}\X{\<186>}\X{\<179>}}%
9515 \def\mltttitle{\mm \X{\<117>\<83>}\X{\<95>\<111>}\X{\<106>\<113>}\X{\<73>}\X{\<179>}}%
9516 %%
9517 \def\stctitle{\mm \X{\<68>}\X{\<201>}\X{\<83>}\X{\<183>}\<119>}%
9518 \def\slftitle{\mm \X{\<78>\<111>}\X{\<125>\<88>}\X{\<186>}\X{\<179>}}%
9519 \def\slttitle{\mm \X{\<117>\<83>}\X{\<95>\<111>}\X{\<106>\<113>}\X{\<73>}\X{\<179>}}%
9520 </malayalam – rachana2>

```

### 13.116 “Manju” language: manju.mld

The “manju” language is a synonym for “bithe”, so we just load `bithe.mld` (see section 13.22 on page 451):

```

9521 <(*manju>
9522 \ProvidesFile{manju.mld}[2005/11/16]
9523 \mtcselectlanguage{bithe}%
9524 </manju>

```

### 13.117 “Meyalu” language: meyalu.mld

The “meyalu” language is just like “bahasam”, so we just load `bahasam.mld` (see section 13.16 on page 447):

```

9525 <(*meyalu>
9526 \ProvidesFile{meyalu.mld}[2006/01/13]
9527 \mtcselectlanguage{bahasam}%
9528 </meyalu>

```

### 13.118 “Mongol” language: mongol.mld

The titles for the “mongol” language are taken from the `MonTeX` package [103, 106] (by Oliver CORFF and Dorjpalam DORJ). This language requires specific fonts. See also sections 13.19 on page 449, 13.20 on page 450, 13.21 on page 450, 13.22 on page 451, 13.29 on page 454, 13.30 on page 455, 13.175 on page 529, 13.176 on page 529, and 13.177 on page 530.

```

9529 <(*mongol>
9530 \ProvidesFile{mongol.mld}[1999/03/16]
9531 %% Mongol (xalx) titles for minitoc.sty

```

```

9532 %% Needs mongol fonts
9533 \def\ptctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
9534 \def\plftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
9535 \def\plttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
9536 %%
9537 \def\mtctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
9538 \def\mlftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
9539 \def\mlttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
9540 %%
9541 \def\stctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
9542 \def\slftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
9543 \def\slttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
9544 </mongol>

```

### 13.119 “Mongolb” language: mongolb.mld

This is an other variant for the mongolian titles, taken from the `mongolian.dtx` file [17] (by Dorjgotov BATMUNKH) for the `babel` package [40, 41] (hence the final “b” in “textttmongolb”).

The titles for the “mongolb” language now use cyrillic characters and the X2 and T2 encodings and are derived from the `russianb.dtx` file (by Olga G. LAPKO, Vladimir VOLOVICH and Werner LEMBERG).

```

9545 < *mongolb >
9546 \ProvidesFile{mongolb.mld}[2007/01/29]
9547 %% Mongolian titles for minitoc.sty
9548 %% From mongolian.dtx for the babel package
9549 %% Dorjgotov Batmunkh (batmunkh@num.edu.mn)
9550 %% Needs some cyrillic fonts and special cyrillic encoding T2 and X2.
9551 %% Vladimir Volovich (TeX@vvv.vsu.ru)
9552 %% Werner Lemberg (wl@gnu.org)
9553 %%
9554 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
9555   \def\ptctitle{{\cyr\CYRA\cyrg\cyru\cyru\cyr\cyrg\cyra}}\relax%
9556 \else\relax
9557   \def\ptctitle{{\cyr\CYRG\cyra\cyrr\cyrch\cyri\cyrg}}\relax%
9558 \fi
9559 \def\plftitle{{{\cyr\CYZ\cyru\cyrr\cyrg\cyri\cyrishrt\cyrn
9560   \ \cyrzh\cyra\cyrg\cyrs\cyra\cyra\cyr\cyrt}}}%
9561 \def\plttitle{{\cyr\CYRH\cyr\cyrs\cyrn\cyrerev\cyrg\cyrt\cyri\cyrishrt\cyrn
9562   \ \cyrzh\cyra\cyrg\cyrs\cyra\cyra\cyr\cyrt}}}%
9563 %%
9564 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
9565   \def\mtctitle{{\cyr\CYRA\cyrg\cyru\cyru\cyr\cyrg\cyra}}\relax%
9566 \else\relax
9567   \def\mtctitle{{\cyr\CYRG\cyra\cyrr\cyrch\cyri\cyrg}}\relax%
9568 \fi
9569 \def\mlftitle{{{\cyr\CYZ\cyru\cyrr\cyrg\cyri\cyrishrt\cyrn
9570   \ \cyrzh\cyra\cyrg\cyrs\cyra\cyra\cyr\cyrt}}}%
9571 \def\mlttitle{{\cyr\CYRH\cyr\cyrs\cyrn\cyrerev\cyrg\cyrt\cyri\cyrishrt\cyrn

```

```

9572 \ \cyrzh\cyra\cyrg\cyrs\cyra\cyra\cyrl\cyrt}}%
9573 %%
9574 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
9575 \def\stctitle{{\cyr\CYRA\cyrg\cyru\cyru\cyrl\cyrg\cyra}}\relax%
9576 \else\relax
9577 \def\stctitle{{\cyr\CYRG\cyra\cyrr\cyrch\cyri\cyrg}}\relax%
9578 \fi
9579 \def\slftitle{{{\cyr\CYRZ\cyru\cyrr\cyrg\cyri\cyrishrt\cyrn
9580 \ \cyrzh\cyra\cyrg\cyrs\cyra\cyra\cyrl\cyrt}}}%
9581 \def\slttitle{{{\cyr\CYRH\cyry\cyrs\cyrn\cyrerev\cyrg\cyrt\cyri\cyrishrt\cyrn
9582 \ \cyrzh\cyra\cyrg\cyrs\cyra\cyra\cyrl\cyrt}}}%
9583 \</mongolb>

```

### 13.120 “Mongolian” language: mongolian.mld

This is an other name for the “mongolb” language, because the `babel` package [40, 41] uses the name “mongolian”. We just load `mongolb.mld`. See section 13.119 on the preceding page.

```

9584 \<*mongolian>
9585 \ProvidesFile{mongolian.mld}[2007/02/05]
9586 %% Mongolian titles for minitoc.sty
9587 %% From mongolian.dtx for the babel package
9588 %% Dorjgotov Batmunkh (batmunkh@num.edu.mn)
9589 %% Needs some cyrillic fonts and special cyrillic encoding T2 and X2.
9590 %% Vladimir Volovich (TeX@vzv.vsu.ru)
9591 %% Werner Lemberg (wl@gnu.org)
9592 %%
9593 \mtcselectlanguage{mongolb}
9594 \</mongolian>

```

### 13.121 “Naustrian” language: naustrian.mld

The “naustrian” language is a synonym of the “ngermanb” language (a revised version of the `germanb` variant of the `german` language), so we just load the `ngermanb.mld` file. See also section 13.124 on the next page.

```

9595 \<*naustrian>
9596 \ProvidesFile{naustrian.mld}[2004/12/14]
9597 \mtcselectlanguage{ngermanb}%
9598 \</naustrian>

```

### 13.122 “Newzealand” language: newzealand.mld

The “newzealand” language is just like “english”, so we just load english.mld (see section 13.43 on page 461):

```
9599 < *newzealand >
9600 \ProvidesFile{newzealand.mld}[2006/01/11]
9601 \mtcselectlanguage{english}%
9602 < /newzealand >
```

### 13.123 “Ngerman” language: ngerman.mld

The “ngerman” language is a synonym of the “ngermanb” language<sup>37</sup>, so we just load the ngermanb.mld file. See also section 13.124.

```
9603 < *ngerman >
9604 \ProvidesFile{ngerman.mld}[2004/12/14]
9605 \mtcselectlanguage{ngermanb}%
9606 < /ngerman >
```

### 13.124 “Ngermanb” language: ngermanb.mld

The titles for the “ngermanb” language<sup>38</sup> are taken from the file ngermanb.dtx file (by Bernd RAICHLE and Walter SCHMIDT) in the babel package [40, 41, 76]. See also sections 13.121 on the preceding page, and 13.123.

```
9607 < *ngermanb >
9608 \ProvidesFile{ngermanb.mld}[2006/01/13]
9609 %% New german (B) titles for minitoc.sty
9610 %% from ngermanb.dtx (babel)
9611 %% Raichle, Bernd and Schmidt, Walter
9612 \def\ptctitle{Inhaltsverzeichnis}% % oder nur: Inhalt
9613 \def\plftitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
9614 \def\pltttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
9615 %%
9616 \def\mtctitle{Inhalt}%
9617 \def\mlftitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
9618 \def\mltttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
9619 %%
9620 \def\stctitle{Inhalt}%
9621 \def\slftitle{Abbildungsverzeichnis}%
```

<sup>37</sup> A revised version of the germanb variant of the german language.

<sup>38</sup> A variant of the german language, with revised spelling.

```

9622 \def\sltttitle{Tabellenverzeichnis}%
9623 \end{ngermanb}

```

### 13.125 “Ngermanb2” language: ngermanb2.mld

The titles for the “ngermanb2” language<sup>39</sup> are taken from the `ngermanb.dtx` file (by Bernd RAICHLE and Walter SCHMIDT) in the `babel` package [40, 41, 76], and abbreviated. See also section 13.124 on the preceding page.

```

9624 \begin{ngermanb2}
9625 \ProvidesFile{ngermanb2.mld}[2005/09/27]
9626 %% New german (B) short (2) titles for minitoc.sty
9627 \def\ptcttitle{Inhalt}%
9628 \def\plfttitle{Abbildungen}%
9629 \def\plttitle{Tabellen}%
9630 %%
9631 \def\mtcttitle{Inhalt}%
9632 \def\mlfttitle{Abbildungen}%
9633 \def\mlttitle{Tabellen}%
9634 %%
9635 \def\stcttitle{Inhalt}%
9636 \def\slfttitle{Abbildungen}%
9637 \def\slttitle{Tabellen}%
9638 \end{ngermanb2}

```

### 13.126 “Norsk” language: norsk.mld

The titles for the “norsk” language (or *bokmål*, “language of the kingdom”) are taken from the `norsk.dtx` file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS, Håvard HELSTRUP, Alv Kjetil HOLME, Per Steinar IVERSEN, Terje Engeset PETTERST and Rune KLEVELAND) in the `babel` package [40, 41, 45], with help from Dag LANGMYHR. See also section 13.128 on the next page.

```

9639 \begin{norsk}
9640 \ProvidesFile{norsk.mld}[2006/01/13]
9641 %% Norsk titles for minitoc.sty
9642 %% from norsk.dtx (babel)
9643 %% Braams, Johannes~L. and Helstrup, Haavard and Holme, Alv Kjetil and
9644 %% Iversen, Per Steinar and Petterst, Terje Engeset and Kleveland, Rune
9645 %% Thanks to Dag Langmyhr (dag@ifi.uio.no)
9646 \def\ptcttitle{Innhold}%
9647 \def\plfttitle{Figurer}%
9648 \def\plttitle{Tabeller}%
9649 %%
9650 \def\mtcttitle{Innhold}%

```

---

<sup>39</sup> A variant of the german language, with revised spelling and short titles.

```

9651 \def\mlfttitle{Figurer}%
9652 \def\mltttitle{Tabeller}%
9653 %%
9654 \def\stcttitle{Innhold}%
9655 \def\slfttitle{Figurer}%
9656 \def\slttitle{Tabeller}%
9657 \</norsk>

```

### 13.127 “Norsk2” language: norsk2.mld

The titles for the “norsk2” language (or *bokmål*, “language of the kingdom”) are taken from the `babel` package [40, 41, 45], with help from Dag LANGMYHR. These are variants of the titles of section 13.126 on the preceding page.

```

9658 \< *norsk2>
9659 \ProvidesFile{norsk2.mld}[2005/09/27]
9660 %% Short norsk titles for minitoc.sty
9661 %% Thanks to Dag Langmyhr (dag@ifi.uio.no)
9662 \def\ptcttitle{Innhold}%
9663 \def\plfttitle{Figurliste}%
9664 \def\plttitle{Tabelliste}%
9665 %%
9666 \def\mtcttitle{Innhold}%
9667 \def\mlfttitle{Figurliste}%
9668 \def\mltttitle{Tabelliste}%
9669 %%
9670 \def\stcttitle{Innhold}%
9671 \def\slfttitle{Figurliste}%
9672 \def\slttitle{Tabelliste}%
9673 \</norsk2>

```

### 13.128 “Nynorsk” language: nynorsk.mld

The titles for the “nynorsk” language<sup>40</sup> are taken from `norsk.dtx` file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS, Håvard HELSTRUP, Alv Kjetil HOLME, Per Steinar IVERSEN, Terje Engeset PETTERST and Rune KLEVELAND) in the `babel` package [40, 41, 45], with help from Dag LANGMYHR. See also section 13.126 on the page before.

```

9674 \< *nynorsk>
9675 \ProvidesFile{nynorsk.mld}[2006/01/13]
9676 %% Nynorsk titles for minitoc.sty
9677 %% from norsk.dtx (babel)

```

<sup>40</sup>Created around 1800 by Ivar ÅSSEN to make a real independent and national norwegian language, in reaction to danish, from the various dialect spoken in the country. But nynorsk has never gained much popularity outside rural regions.



```

9678 %% Braams, Johannes~L. and Helstrup, Haavard and Holme, Alv Kjetil and
9679 %% Iversen, Per Steinar and Petterst, Terje Engeset and Kleveland, Rune
9680 %% Thanks to Dag Langmyhr (dag@ifi.uio.no)
9681 \def\mtctitle{Innhald}%
9682 \def\mlftitle{Figurar}%
9683 \def\mltttitle{Tabellar}%
9684 %%
9685 \def\ptctitle{Innhald}%
9686 \def\plftitle{Figurar}%
9687 \def\pltttitle{Tabellar}%
9688 %%
9689 \def\stctitle{Innhald}%
9690 \def\slftitle{Figurar}%
9691 \def\slttitle{Tabellar}%
9692 </nynorsk>

```

### 13.129 “Nynorsk2” language: nynorsk2.mld

The titles for the “nynorsk2” language are variants of the titles of the “nynorsk” language. See also section 13.128 on the preceding page.

```

9693 < *nynorsk2>
9694 \ProvidesFile{nynorsk.mld}[1999/03/16]
9695 %% Nynorsk titles for minitoc.sty
9696 %% Thanks to Dag Langmyhr (dag@ifi.uio.no)
9697 \def\mtctitle{Innhald}%
9698 \def\mlftitle{Figurliste}%
9699 \def\mltttitle{Tabelliste}%
9700 %%
9701 \def\ptctitle{Innhald}%
9702 \def\plftitle{Figurliste}%
9703 \def\pltttitle{Tabelliste}%
9704 %%
9705 \def\stctitle{Innhald}%
9706 \def\slftitle{Figurliste}%
9707 \def\slttitle{Tabelliste}%
9708 </nynorsk2>

```

### 13.130 “Polish” language: polish.mld

The titles for the “polish” language are taken from the polish.dtx file (by Elmar SCHALÜCK and Michael JANICH) in the babel package [40, 41, 81]. See also sections 13.131 on the next page and 13.132 on page 507.

```

9709 <*polish>
9710 \ProvidesFile{polish.mld}[2006/01/13]
9711 %% Polish titles for minitoc.sty
9712 %% from polish.dtx (babel)
9713 %% Schalück, Elmar and Janich, Michael
9714 \def\ptctitle{Spis rzeczy}%
9715 \def\plftitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
9716 \def\plttitle{Spis tablic}%
9717 %%
9718 \def\mtctitle{Spis rzeczy}%
9719 \def\mlftitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
9720 \def\mlttitle{Spis tablic}%
9721 %%
9722 \def\stctitle{Spis rzeczy}%
9723 \def\slftitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
9724 \def\slttitle{Spis tablic}%
9725 </polish>

```

### 13.131 “Polish2” language: polish2.mld

The titles for the “polish2” language<sup>41</sup> are taken from the `omega-polish.ldf` (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) in the Antomega project [160]. See also sections 13.130 on the page before and 13.132 on the following page.

```

9726 <*polish2>
9727 \ProvidesFile{polish2.mld}[2005/02/08]
9728 %% from omega-polish.ldf (Antomega project)
9729 %% Needs Omega
9730 %% Alexej M. Kryukov
9731 %% Dmitry Ivanov
9732 %%
9733 \def\ptctitle{\localpolish{Spis tre^^^^00b1ci}}%
9734 \def\plftitle{\localpolish{Spis rysunk^^^^00adw}}%
9735 \def\plttitle{\localpolish{Spis tablic}}%
9736 %%
9737 \def\mtctitle{\localpolish{Spis tre^^^^00b1ci}}%
9738 \def\mlftitle{\localpolish{Spis rysunk^^^^00adw}}%
9739 \def\mlttitle{\localpolish{Spis tablic}}%
9740 %%
9741 \def\stctitle{\localpolish{Spis tre^^^^00b1ci}}%
9742 \def\slftitle{\localpolish{Spis rysunk^^^^00adw}}%
9743 \def\slttitle{\localpolish{Spis tablic}}%
9744 </polish2>

```

---

<sup>41</sup> “Polish2” is a variant of “polish”.

### 13.132 “Polski” language: polski.mld

The titles for the “polski” language (variant for polish) are taken from the polski.dtx file (by Mariusz Olko and Marcin WOLIŃSKI) in the L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X package [211, 260]. See also sections 13.130 on page 505 and 13.131 on the preceding page.

```

9745 <*polski>
9746 \ProvidesFile{polski.mld}[2006/02/28]
9747 %% Polski titles for minitoc.sty
9748 %% from polski.dtx (PLaTeX)
9749 %% Mariusz Olko, Marcin Woliński.
9750 %%
9751 \def\ptctitle{Spis tre\'sci}%
9752 \def\plftitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
9753 \def\plttitle{Spis tabel}%
9754 %%
9755 \def\mtctitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
9756 \def\mlftitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
9757 \def\mlttitle{Spis tabel}%
9758 %%
9759 \def\stctitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
9760 \def\slftitle{Spis rysunk\'ow}%
9761 \def\slttitle{Spis tabel}%
9762 </polski>

```

### 13.133 “Portuges” language: portuges.mld

The name “portuges” is another spelling for “portuguese” (see section 13.134), so we just load portuguese.mld:

```

9763 <*portuges>
9764 \ProvidesFile{portuges.mld}[2005/06/07]
9765 \mtcselectlanguage{portuguese}%
9766 </portuges>

```

### 13.134 “Portuguese” language: portuguese.mld

The titles for the “portuguese” language are taken from the portuges.dtx file (by Jose Pedro RAMALHETE) in the babel package [40, 41, 77].

See also section 13.23 on page 451, because the titles are different in Brazil, even if the language is also portuguese.

```

9767 <*portuguese>
9768 \ProvidesFile{portuguese.mld}[2006/01/13]
9769 %% Portuguese titles for minitoc.sty
9770 %% from portuges.dtx (babel)
9771 %% Ramalhete, Jose Pedro
9772 \def\ptctitle{Conte\'udo}%
9773 \def\plftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
9774 \def\plttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
9775 %%
9776 \def\mtctitle{Conte\'udo}%
9777 \def\mlftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
9778 \def\mlttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
9779 %%
9780 \def\stctitle{Conte\'udo}%
9781 \def\slftitle{Lista de Figuras}%
9782 \def\slttitle{Lista de Tabelas}%
9783 </portuguese>

```

### 13.135 “Romanian” language: `romanian.mld`

The titles for the “romanian” language come from the `romanian.dtx` file (by Umstatter Horst and Robert JUHASZ) in the `babel` package [40, 41, 63].

```

9784 <*romanian>
9785 \ProvidesFile{romanian.mld}[2006/01/13]
9786 %% Romanian titles for minitoc.sty
9787 %% from romanian.dtx (babel)
9788 %% Horst, Umstatter and Juhasz, Robert
9789 \def\ptctitle{Cuprins}%
9790 \def\plftitle{List\u{a} de figuri}%
9791 \def\plttitle{List\u{a} de tabele}%
9792 %%
9793 \def\mtctitle{Cuprins}%
9794 \def\mlftitle{List\u{a} de figuri}%
9795 \def\mlttitle{List\u{a} de tabele}%
9796 %%
9797 \def\stctitle{Cuprins}%
9798 \def\slftitle{List\u{a} de figuri}%
9799 \def\slttitle{List\u{a} de tabele}%
9800 </romanian>

```

### 13.136 “Romanian2” language: `romanian2.mld`

The titles for the “romanian2” language come from the `romanian.dtx` file (by Adrian REZUȘ and Bernd RAICHLE) in the RomanianT<sub>E</sub>X package [230]. See also sections 13.135 on the page before and 13.137. Alas, RomanianT<sub>E</sub>X is not compatible with the babel package [40, 41].

```

9801 <*romanian2>
9802 \ProvidesFile{romanian2.mld}[2006/08/03]
9803 %% Romanian titles for minitoc.sty
9804 %% from RomanianTeX (romanian.dtx)
9805 %% Adrian Rezus (adriaan@cs.kun.nl)
9806 %% Bernd Raichle
9807 \def\ptctitle{Cuprins}%
9808 \def\plftitle{Lista de figuri}%
9809 \def\plttitle{Lista de tabele}%
9810 %%
9811 \def\mtctitle{Cuprins}%
9812 \def\mlftitle{Lista de figuri}%
9813 \def\mlttitle{Lista de tabele}%
9814 %%
9815 \def\stctitle{Cuprins}%
9816 \def\slftitle{Lista de figuri}%
9817 \def\slttitle{Lista de tabele}%
9818 </romanian2>

```

### 13.137 “Romanian3” language: `romanian3.mld`

The titles for the “romanian3” language come from the `romanian.dtx` file (by Adrian REZUȘ and Bernd RAICHLE) in the RomanianT<sub>E</sub>X package [230]. See also sections 13.135 on the page before and 13.136. Alas, RomanianT<sub>E</sub>X is not compatible with the babel package [40, 41].

```

9819 <*romanian3>
9820 \ProvidesFile{romanian3.mld}[2006/08/03]
9821 %% Romanian titles for minitoc.sty
9822 %% from RomanianTeX (romanian.dtx) variant.
9823 %% Adrian Rezus (adriaan@cs.kun.nl)
9824 %% Bernd Raichle
9825 \def\ptctitle{Tabla de materii}%
9826 \def\plftitle{Indice de figuri}%
9827 \def\plttitle{Tabele}%
9828 %%
9829 \def\mtctitle{Tabla de materii}%
9830 \def\mlttitle{Indice de figuri}%
9831 \def\mlttitle{Tabele}%
9832 %%
9833 \def\stctitle{Tabla de materii}%
9834 \def\slttitle{Indice de figuri}%
9835 \def\slttitle{Tabele}%

```

```
9836 </romanian3>
```

### 13.138 “Russian” language: russian.mld

The titles for the “russian” language are taken from the babel package [40, 41]. Specific cyrillic fonts are required.

```
9837 <*russian>
9838 \ProvidesFile{russian.mld}[1999/03/16]
9839 %% Russian titles for minitoc.sty
9840 \def\ptctitle{Oglavlenie}%
9841 \def\plftitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} risunkov}%
9842 \def\plttitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} tablic}%
9843 %%
9844 \def\mtctitle{Oglavlenie}%
9845 \def\mlftitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} risunkov}%
9846 \def\mlttitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} tablic}%
9847 %%
9848 \def\stctitle{Oglavlenie}%
9849 \def\slftitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} risunkov}%
9850 \def\slttitle{Pere{\cz}en{\mz} tablic}%
9851 </russian>
```

### 13.139 “Russian2m” language: russian2m.mld

The titles for the “russian2m” language (“russian2m” is a modern variant of “russian”) are taken from the russian2m.ldf file (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) in the Antomega project [160]. Specific cyrillic fonts are required. See also section 13.138.

```
9852 <*russian2m>
9853 \ProvidesFile{russian2m.mld}[2005/02/08]
9854 %% from russian2m.ldf (Antomega project, russian modern)
9855 %% Needs Omega and cyrillic fonts
9856 %% Alexej M. Kryukov
9857 %% Dmitry Ivanov
9858 %%
9859 \def\ptctitle{\localrussian%
9860 {^041e^0433^043b^0430^0432^043b^0435^043d%
9861 ^0438^0435}}%
9862 \def\plftitle{\localrussian%
9863 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a ^0438^043b%
9864 ^043b^044e^0441^0442^0440^0430^0446^0438%
9865 ^0439}}%
9866 \def\plttitle{\localrussian%
9867 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a ^0442^0430%
```

```

9868 ^^^^0431^^^043b^^^0438^^^0446}}%
9869 %%
9870 \def\mtctitle{\localrussian%
9871 {^^^041e^^^0433^^^043b^^^0430^^^0432^^^043b^^^0435^^^043d%
9872 ^^^0438^^^0435}}%
9873 \def\mlftitle{\localrussian%
9874 {^^^0421^^^043f^^^0438^^^0441^^^043e^^^043a ^^^0438^^^043b%
9875 ^^^043b^^^044e^^^0441^^^0442^^^0440^^^0430^^^0446^^^0438%
9876 ^^^0439}}%
9877 \def\mltttitle{\localrussian%
9878 {^^^0421^^^043f^^^0438^^^0441^^^043e^^^043a ^^^0442^^^0430%
9879 ^^^0431^^^043b^^^0438^^^0446}}%
9880 %%
9881 \def\stctitle{\localrussian%
9882 {^^^041e^^^0433^^^043b^^^0430^^^0432^^^043b^^^0435^^^043d%
9883 ^^^0438^^^0435}}%
9884 \def\slftitle{\localrussian%
9885 {^^^0421^^^043f^^^0438^^^0441^^^043e^^^043a ^^^0438^^^043b%
9886 ^^^043b^^^044e^^^0441^^^0442^^^0440^^^0430^^^0446^^^0438%
9887 ^^^0439}}%
9888 \def\sltttitle{\localrussian%
9889 {^^^0421^^^043f^^^0438^^^0441^^^043e^^^043a ^^^0442^^^0430%
9890 ^^^0431^^^043b^^^0438^^^0446}}%
9891 </russian2m>

```

### 13.140 “Russian2o” language: russian2o.mld

The titles for the “russian2o” language (“russian2o” is an old variant of “russian”) are taken from the `omega-russian.ldf` file (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV and Dmitry IVANOV) in the Antomega project [160]. Specific cyrillic fonts are required. See also section 13.138 on the preceding page.

```

9892 (*russian2o)
9893 \ProvidesFile{russian2o.mld}[2005/02/08]
9894 %% from russian2o.mld (Antomega project - russian old)
9895 %% Needs Omega and cyrillic fonts
9896 %% Alexej M. Kryukov
9897 %% Dmitry Ivanov
9898 %%
9899 \def\ptctitle{\localrussian%
9900 {^^^041e^^^0433^^^043b^^^0430^^^0432^^^043b^^^0435^^^043d%
9901 ^^^0456^^^0435}}%
9902 \def\plftitle{\localrussian%
9903 {^^^0421^^^043f^^^0438^^^0441^^^043e^^^043a^^^044a ^^^0438%
9904 ^^^043b^^^043b^^^044e^^^0441^^^0442^^^0440^^^0430^^^0446%
9905 ^^^0456^^^0439}}%
9906 \def\pltttitle{\localrussian%
9907 {^^^0421^^^043f^^^0438^^^0441^^^043e^^^043a^^^044a ^^^0442%
9908 ^^^0430^^^0431^^^043b^^^0438^^^0446^^^044a}}%
9909 %%

```

```

9910 \def\mtctitle{\localrussian%
9911 {^041e^0433^043b^0430^0432^043b^0435^043d%
9912 ^0456^0435}}%
9913 \def\mlftitle{\localrussian%
9914 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a^044a ^0438%
9915 ^043b^043b^044e^0441^0442^0440^0430^0446%
9916 ^0456^0439}}%
9917 \def\mltttitle{\localrussian%
9918 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a^044a ^0442%
9919 ^0430^0431^043b^0438^0446^044a}}%
9920 %
9921 \def\stctitle{\localrussian%
9922 {^041e^0433^043b^0430^0432^043b^0435^043d%
9923 ^0456^0435}}%
9924 \def\slftitle{\localrussian%
9925 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a^044a ^0438%
9926 ^043b^043b^044e^0441^0442^0440^0430^0446%
9927 ^0456^0439}}%
9928 \def\slttitle{\localrussian%
9929 {^0421^043f^0438^0441^043e^043a^044a ^0442%
9930 ^0430^0431^043b^0438^0446^044a}}%
9931 </russian2o>

```

### 13.141 “Russianb” language: russianb.mld

The titles for the “russianb” language (“russianb” is a variant of “russian”) are taken from the russianb.dtx file (by Olga G. LAPKO, Vladimir VOLOVICH, Werner LEMBERG, and Irina A. МАКHOVAYA) in the babel package [40, 41, 69, 171]. Specific cyrillic fonts are required. See also section 13.138 on page 510. The parttoc title varies depending if chapters are defined or not by the document class.

```

9932 <{*russianb}>
9933 \ProvidesFile{russianb.mld}[2006/02/15]
9934 %% Russian (russianb) titles for minitoc.sty
9935 %% from russianb.dtx (babel)
9936 %% Lapko, Olga and Volovitch, Vladimir and Lemberg, Werner
9937 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
9938 \def\ptctitle{%
9939   {\cyr\CYRS\cyro\cyrd\cyre\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrn\cyri\cyre}}%
9940 \else
9941 \def\ptctitle{%
9942   {\cyr \CYRO\CYRg\CYRl\CYRa\CYRv\CYRl\CYRe\CYRn\CYRi\CYRe}}%
9943 \fi
9944 \def\plftitle{%
9945   {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
9946     \CYRi\CYRl\CYRl\CYRyu\CYRs\CYRt\CYRr\CYRa\CYRc\CYRi\CYRishrt}}%
9947 \def\pltttitle{%
9948   {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
9949     \CYRt\CYRa\CYRb\CYRl\CYRi\CYRc}}%
9950 %%

```



```

9951 \def\mtctitle{%
9952   {\cyr \CYRO\CYRg\CYRL\CYRa\CYRv\CYRL\CYRe\CYRn\CYRi\CYRe}}%
9953 \def\mlftitle{%
9954   {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
9955     \CYRi\CYRL\CYRL\CYRyu\CYRs\CYRt\CYRr\CYRa\CYRc\CYRi\CYRishrt}}%
9956 \def\mltttitle{%
9957   {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
9958     \CYRt\CYRa\CYRb\CYRL\CYRi\CYRc}}%
9959 %%
9960 \def\stctitle{%
9961   {\cyr \CYRO\CYRg\CYRL\CYRa\CYRv\CYRL\CYRe\CYRn\CYRi\CYRe}}%
9962 \def\slftitle{%
9963   {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
9964     \CYRi\CYRL\CYRL\CYRyu\CYRs\CYRt\CYRr\CYRa\CYRc\CYRi\CYRishrt}}%
9965 \def\sltttitle{%
9966   {\cyr \CYRS\CYRp\CYRi\CYRs\CYRo\CYRk\space
9967     \CYRt\CYRa\CYRb\CYRL\CYRi\CYRc}}%
9968 </russianb>

```

### 13.142 “Russianc” language: russianc.mld

The titles for the “russianc” language (“russianc” is a variant of “russian”, used in the part of Mongolia under russian influence) are taken from the file `russian.def` in the `MonTeX` package [103, 106]. Specific cyrillic fonts are required. See also section 13.138 on page 510.

```

9969 <*russianc>
9970 \ProvidesFile{russianc.mld}[1999/03/16]
9971 %% Russian titles for minitoc.sty
9972 %% Needs cyrillic fonts
9973 \def\ptctitle{\xalx{Oglawlenie}}%
9974 \def\plftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
9975 \def\pltttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
9976 %%
9977 \def\mtctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%
9978 \def\mlftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
9979 \def\mltttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
9980 %%
9981 \def\stctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%
9982 \def\slftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
9983 \def\sltttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
9984 </russianc>

```

### 13.143 “Russian-cca” language: `russian-cca.mld` and `russian-cca.mlo`

They are several variants for the russian titles with the cmcyralt fonts. The titles for a first variant of the “russian-cca” are taken from the `russian.sty` (by Victor Boyko and Vadim MASLOV) file in the cmcyralt package [38].

The titles for the “russian-cca” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `russian-cca.mlo`.

```

9985 \(*russian – cca)
9986 \ProvidesFile{russian-cca.mld}[2006/03/08]
9987 %% Russian-cca titles for minitoc.sty
9988 %% From russian.sty in the cmcyralt package
9989 %% Vadim Maslov (vadik@cs.umd.edu)
9990 %% Victor Boyko (vb1890@cs.nyu.edu)
9991 %% Needs cmcyralt fonts and special input encoding.
9992 \mtcloadmlo{russian-cca}%
9993 \(/russian – cca)

```

### 13.144 “Russian-cca1” language: `russian-cca1.mld` and `russian-cca1.mlo`

They are several variants for the russian titles with the cmcyralt fonts. The titles for the “russian-cca1” language are taken from the `cmcyralt.sty` file (by Vadim MASLOV, Alexander HARIN and Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV) in the cmcyralt package [140].

The titles for the “russian-cca1” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `russian-cca1.mlo`.

```

9994 \(*russian – cca1)
9995 \ProvidesFile{russian-cca1.mld}[2006/03/08]
9996 %% Russian-cca1 titles for minitoc.sty
9997 %% From cmcyralt.sty in the cmcyralt package
9998 %% cmcyr fonts in alt encoding
9999 %% Vadim Maslov (vadik@cs.umd.edu)
10000 %% Alexander Harin (harin@lourie.und.ac.za)
10001 %% and Vadim V. Zhytnikov (vvzhy@phy.ncu.edu.tw)
10002 \mtcloadmlo{russian-cca1}%
10003 \(/russian – cca1)

```

### 13.145 “Russian-lh” language: `russian-lh.mld` and `russian-lh.mlo`

The russian titles for the LH fonts (“russian-lh” language) are taken from the `russian.sty` file (by Sergei O. NAUMOV) in the LH package [206].

The titles for the “russian-lh” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `russian-lh.mlo`.

```
10004 <*russian – lh>
10005 \ProvidesFile{russian-lh.mld}[2006/03/08]
10006 %% Russian-lh titles for minitoc.sty
10007 %% From russian.sty in the LH package
10008 %% LH fonts in special encoding
10009 %% Sergei O. Naumov (serge@astro.unc.edu)
10010 \mtcloadmlo{russian-lh}%
10011 </russian – lh>
```

### 13.146 “Russian-lhcyralt” language: `russian-lhcyralt.mld` and `russian-lhcyralt.mlo`

The russian titles for the LHCYRALT fonts (“russian-lhcyralt” language) are taken from the `lhcyralt.sty` file (by Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV) in the lhcyr package [277].

The titles for the “russian-lhcyralt” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `russian-lhcyralt.mlo`. The input encoding is ALT (code page CP866).

```
10012 <*russian – lhcyralt>
10013 \ProvidesFile{russian-lhcyralt.mld}[2006/03/10]
10014 %% Russian-lhcyralt titles for minitoc.sty
10015 %% From lhcyralt.sty in the LHCYR package
10016 %% LHCYRALT fonts in special encoding ALT (CP866)
10017 %% Vadim V. Zhytnikov (vvzhy@td.lpi.ac.ru)
10018 \mtcloadmlo{russian-lhcyralt}%
10019 </russian – lhcyralt>
```

### 13.147 “Russian-lhcyrkoi” language: russian-lhcyrkoi.mld and russian-lhcyrkoi.mlo

The russian titles for the LHCYRKOI fonts (“russian-lhcyrkoi” language) are taken from the lhcyrkoi.sty file (by Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV) in the lhcyr package [277].

The titles for the “russian-lhcyrkoi” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load russian-lhcyrkoi.mlo. The input encoding is KOI-8.

```
10020 <*russian – lhcyrkoi>
10021 \ProvidesFile{russian-lhcyrkoi.mld}[2006/03/13]
10022 %% Russian-lhcyrkoi titles for minitoc.sty
10023 %% From lhcyrkoi.sty in the LHCYR package
10024 %% LHCYRKOI fonts in special encoding KOI-8
10025 %% Vadim V. Zhytnikov (vvzhy@td.lpi.ac.ru)
10026 \mtcloadmlo{russian-lhcyrkoi}%
10027 </russian – lhcyrkoi>
```

### 13.148 “Russian-lhcyrwin” language: russian-lhcyrwin.mld and russian-lhcyrwin.mlo

The russian titles for the LHCYRWIN fonts (“russian-lhcyrwin” language) are taken from the lhcyrwin.sty file (by Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV) in the lhcyr package [277].

The titles for the “russian-lhcyrwin” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load russian-lhcyrwin.mlo. The input encoding is the code page CP1251.

```
10028 <*russian – lhcyrwin>
10029 \ProvidesFile{russian-lhcyrwin.mld}[2006/03/13]
10030 %% Russian-lhcyrwin titles for minitoc.sty
10031 %% From lhcyrwin.sty in the LHCYR package
10032 %% LHCYRWIN fonts in special encoding CP1251
10033 %% Vadim V. Zhytnikov (vvzhy@td.lpi.ac.ru)
10034 \mtcloadmlo{russian-lhcyrwin}%
10035 </russian – lhcyrwin>
```

### 13.149 “Samin” language: `samin.mld`

The titles for the “samin” language<sup>42</sup> come from the `samin.dtx` file (by Regnor JERNsLETTEN) in the `babel` package [40, 41, 64]. Specific fonts are required.

```

10036 ⟨*samin⟩
10037 \ProvidesFile{samin.mld}[2006/01/13]
10038 %% North Sámi (samin) titles for minitoc.sty
10039 %% from samin.dtx (babel)
10040 %% Jernsletten, Regnor
10041 \def\ptctitle{Sisdoallu}%
10042 \def\plftitle{Govvosat}%
10043 \def\plttitle{Tabeallat}%
10044 %%
10045 \def\mtctitle{Sisdoallu}%
10046 \def\mlftitle{Govvosat}%
10047 \def\mlttitle{Tabeallat}%
10048 %%
10049 \def\stctitle{Sisdoallu}%
10050 \def\slftitle{Govvosat}%
10051 \def\slttitle{Tabeallat}%
10052 ⟨/samin⟩

```

### 13.150 “Scottish” language: `scottish.mld`

The titles for the “scottish” language come from the `scottish.dtx` file (by Fraser GRANT) in the `babel` language [40, 41, 61]:

```

10053 ⟨*scottish⟩
10054 \ProvidesFile{scottish.mld}[2006/01/13]
10055 %% Scottish titles for minitoc.sty
10056 %% from scottish.dtx (babel)
10057 %% Grant, Fraser
10058 \def\ptctitle{Cl\‘ar-obraich}%
10059 \def\plftitle{LiostaDhealbh}%
10060 \def\plttitle{LiostaChl\‘ar}%
10061 %%
10062 \def\mtctitle{Cl\‘ar-obraich}%
10063 \def\mlftitle{LiostaDhealbh}%
10064 \def\mlttitle{LiostaChl\‘ar}%
10065 %%
10066 \def\stctitle{Cl\‘ar-obraich}%
10067 \def\slftitle{LiostaDhealbh}%
10068 \def\slttitle{LiostaChl\‘ar}%

```

---

<sup>42</sup>Several Sámi dialects/languages are spoken in Finland, Norway, Sweden, and on the Kola Peninsula (Russia). The alphabets differ, so there will eventually be a need for more `.dtx` files for, e.g., Lule and South Sámi. Hence the (artificial) name `samin.dtx` (and not `sami.dtx` or the like) in the North Sámi case. This note is copied and adapted from the `samin.dtx` file. These dialects and languages are part of the Finnic group.

```
10069 </scottish>
```

### 13.151 “Serbian” language: `serbian.mld`

The titles for the “serbian” (serbocroatian) language are taken from the `serbian.dtx` file (by Dejan MUHAMEDAGIĆ and Jankovic SLOBODAN) in the `babel` package [40, 41, 73]. Serbocroatian is spoken by Serbs, Croats and Chernogors, but only Serbs and Chernogors use the cyrillic alphabet (a variant). See also section 13.152.

```
10070 <*serbian>
10071 \ProvidesFile{serbian.mld}[2006/01/13]
10072 %% Serbian titles for minitoc.sty
10073 %% from serbian.dtx (babel)
10074 %% Muhamedagi\{'c}, Dejan and Slobodan, Jankovic
10075 \def\ptctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
10076 \def\plftitle{Slike}%
10077 \def\pltttitle{Tabele}%
10078 %%
10079 \def\mtctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
10080 \def\mlftitle{Slike}%
10081 \def\mltttitle{Tabele}%
10082 %%
10083 \def\stctitle{Sadr\v{z}aj}%
10084 \def\slftitle{Slike}%
10085 \def\sltttitle{Tabele}%
10086 </serbian>
```

### 13.152 “Serbianc” language: `serbianc.mld`

The titles for the “serbianc” language<sup>43</sup> have been gently provided by Marko ÈEHAJA and Frank KÜSTER. Cyrillic fonts are required. Serbocroatian is spoken by Serbs, Croats and Chernogors, but only Serbs and Chernogors use the cyrillic alphabet (a variant). See also section 13.151.

```
10087 <*serbianc>
10088 \ProvidesFile{serbianc.mld}[2006/01/13]
10089 %% Provides titles for minitoc.sty in Serbian Cyrillic
10090 %%
10091 %% Marko Èehaja Internut@Thetaworld.Org
10092 %% Frank Küster, Biozentrum der Univ. Basel, frank@kuesterei.ch
10093 %% Abt. Biophysikalische Chemie
10094 \def\ptctitle{%
10095   {\cyr\CYRS\cyra\cyrd\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrje}}%
```

---

<sup>43</sup>The “serbianc” language is written with cyrillic characters.

```

10096 \def\plftitle{%
10097   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrl\cyri\cyrk\cyre}}%
10098 \def\plttitle{\CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyre}%
10099 %%
10100 \def\mtctitle{%
10101   {\cyr\CYRS\cyra\cyrd\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrje}}%
10102 \def\mlftitle{%
10103   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrl\cyri\cyrk\cyre}}%
10104 \def\mlttitle{\cyr\CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyre}%
10105 %%
10106 \def\stctitle{%
10107   {\cyr\CYRS\cyra\cyrd\cyrr\cyrzh\cyra\cyrje}}%
10108 \def\slftitle{%
10109   {\cyr\CYRS\cyrl\cyri\cyrk\cyre}}%
10110 \def\slttitle{\CYRT\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyre}%
10111 </serbianc>

```

### 13.153 “Slovak” language: slovak.mld

The titles for the “slovak” language are taken from the `slovak.dtx` file (by Jana CHLEBÍKOVÁ and Tobias SCHLEMMER) in the `babel` package [40, 41, 57]. Using the T1 font encoding is recommended.

```

10112 <*slovak>
10113 \ProvidesFile{slovak.mld}[2006/01/13]
10114 %% Slovak titles for minitoc.sty
10115 %% from slovak.dtx (babel)
10116 %% Chlebíková, Jana and Schlemmer, Tobias
10117 \def\ptctitle{Obsah}%
10118 \def\plftitle{Zoznam obr\'azkov}%
10119 \def\plttitle{Zoznam tabuliek}%
10120 %%
10121 \def\mtctitle{Obsah}%
10122 \def\mlftitle{Zoznam obr\'azkov}%
10123 \def\mlttitle{Zoznam tabuliek}%
10124 %%
10125 \def\stctitle{Obsah}%
10126 \def\slftitle{Zoznam obr\'azkov}%
10127 \def\slttitle{Zoznam tabuliek}%
10128 </slovak>

```

### 13.154 “Slovene” language: slovene.mld

The titles for the “slovene” language come from the `slovene.dtx` file (by Danilo ZAVRTANIK and Leon ŽLAJPAH) in the `babel` package [40, 41, 87]:

```

10129 <*slovene>
10130 \ProvidesFile{slovene.mld}[2006/01/13]
10131 %% Slovene titles for minitoc.sty
10132 %% from slovene.dtx (babel)
10133 %% Zavrtanik, Danilo and \v{Z}lajpah, Leon
10134 \def\ptctitle{Kazalo}%
10135 \def\plftitle{Slike}%
10136 \def\plttitle{Tabele}%
10137 %%
10138 \def\mtctitle{Kazalo}%
10139 \def\mlftitle{Slike}%
10140 \def\mlttitle{Tabele}%
10141 %%
10142 \def\stctitle{Kazalo}%
10143 \def\slftitle{Slike}%
10144 \def\slttitle{Tabele}%
10145 </slovene>

```

### 13.155 “Spanish” language: spanish.mld

The titles for the “spanish” language are taken from the `spanish.dtx` file (by Javier BEZOS, initially by Julio SÁNCHEZ) in the `babel` package [40, 41, 33]. Note that the “spanish” language is in fact “castillan” (see section 13.33 on page 456). Other languages are spoken in Spain: “basque” (section 13.18 on page 448), “catalan” (section 13.35 on page 456), and “galician” (section 13.64 on page 471). Note that “spanish2” is a version of “spanish” with shorter titles (see section 13.156 on the next page). And “spanish3” (see section 13.157 on the following page) is a version for the Antomega [160] project; some titles are different. And “spanish4” is a variant of “spanish” where `\ptctitle` is shorter for articles (section 13.158 on page 522).

```

10146 <*spanish>
10147 \ProvidesFile{spanish.mld}[2006/02/15]
10148 %% Spanish titles for minitoc.sty
10149 %% from spanish.dtx (babel)
10150 %% Bezos, Javier
10151 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
10152 \def\ptctitle{\'Indice}%
10153 \else
10154 \def\ptctitle{\'Indice General}%
10155 \fi
10156 \def\plftitle{\'Indice de Figuras}%
10157 \def\plttitle{\'Indice de Tablas}%
10158 %%
10159 \def\mtctitle{\'Indice}%
10160 \def\mlftitle{\'Indice de Figuras}%
10161 \def\mlttitle{\'Indice de Tablas}%
10162 %%
10163 \def\stctitle{\'Indice}%
10164 \def\slftitle{\'Indice de Figuras}%

```



```
10165 \def\sltttitle{\`Indice de Tablas}%
10166 </spanish>
```

### 13.156 “Spanish2” language: spanish2.mld

The titles for the “spanish2” language are taken from the `spanish.dtx` file in the `babel` package [40, 41, 33], but made shorter for chapter and section levels. See section 13.155 on the preceding page.

```
10167 < *spanish2>
10168 \ProvidesFile{spanish2.mld}[2005/03/31]
10169 %% Spanish titles for minitoc.sty
10170 \def\ptcttitle{\`Indice General}%
10171 \def\plfttitle{\`Indice de Figuras}%
10172 \def\pltttitle{\`Indice de Tablas}%
10173 %%
10174 \def\mtcttitle{Contenido}%
10175 \def\mlfttitle{Figuras}%
10176 \def\mltttitle{Tablas}%
10177 %%
10178 \def\stcttitle{Contenido}%
10179 \def\slfttitle{Figuras}%
10180 \def\sltttitle{Tablas}%
10181 </spanish2>
```

### 13.157 “Spanish3” language: spanish3.mld

The titles for the “spanish3” language are taken from the `omega-spanish.ldf` file (by Alexej M. KRYUKOV) of the Antomega project [160]. See section 13.155 on the page before.

```
10182 < *spanish3>
10183 \ProvidesFile{spanish3.mld}[2005/09/06]
10184 %% Spanish titles for minitoc.sty
10185 %% from omega-spanish.ldf of the \pack{Antomega} project.
10186 \def\ptcttitle{\localspanish{^^^^00cdndice general}}%
10187 \def\plfttitle{\localspanish{^^^^00cdndice de figuras}}%
10188 \def\pltttitle{\localspanish{^^^^00cdndice de cuadros}}%
10189 %%
10190 \def\mtcttitle{\localspanish{^^^^00cdndice general}}%
10191 \def\mlfttitle{\localspanish{^^^^00cdndice de figuras}}%
10192 \def\mltttitle{\localspanish{^^^^00cdndice de cuadros}}%
10193 %%
10194 \def\stcttitle{\localspanish{^^^^00cdndice general}}%
10195 \def\slfttitle{\localspanish{^^^^00cdndice de figuras}}%
10196 \def\sltttitle{\localspanish{^^^^00cdndice de cuadros}}%
10197 </spanish3>
```

### 13.158 “Spanish4” language: `spanish4.mld`

The titles for the “spanish4” language are taken from the `spanish.dtx` file (by Javier Bezos) from the `CervanTEX` package [32]. The title of the parttocs is shorter for articles. See also section 13.155 on page 520.

```

10198 <*spanish4>
10199 \ProvidesFile{spanish4.mld}[2006/01/19]
10200 %% Spanish titles for minitoc.sty
10201 %% from spanish.dtx (CervanTeX)
10202 %% Bezos, Javier
10203 \expandafter\ifx\csname chapter\endcsname\relax
10204 \def\ptctitle{\'Indice}%
10205 \else
10206 \def\ptctitle{\'Indice general}%
10207 \fi
10208 \def\plftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
10209 \def\pltttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%
10210 %%
10211 \def\mtctitle{\'Indice}%
10212 \def\mlftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
10213 \def\mltttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%
10214 %%
10215 \def\stctitle{\'Indice}%
10216 \def\slftitle{\'Indice de figuras}%
10217 \def\sltttitle{\'Indice de cuadros}%
10218 </spanish4>

```

### 13.159 “Swedish” language: `swedish.mld`

The titles for the “swedish” language are taken from the `swedish.dtx` file (by Sten HELLMAN and Erik ÖSTHOLS, with a correction by Jan Michael RYNNING) in the `babel` package [40, 41, 62]. See also section 13.160 on the next page.

```

10219 <*swedish>
10220 \ProvidesFile{swedish.mld}[2006/01/13]
10221 %% Swedish titles for minitoc.sty
10222 %% from swedish.dtx (babel)
10223 %% Hellman, Sten and Östhols, Erik
10224 \def\ptctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
10225 \def\plftitle{Figurer}%
10226 \def\pltttitle{Tabeller}%
10227 %%
10228 \def\mtctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
10229 \def\mlftitle{Figurer}%
10230 \def\mltttitle{Tabeller}%
10231 %%
10232 \def\stctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%

```

```

10233 \def\slftitle{Figurer}%
10234 \def\sltttitle{Tabeller}%
10235 </swedish>

```

### 13.160 “Swedish2” language: `swedish2.mld`

The titles for the “swedish2” language (variant for `swedish`) are taken from the `rapport.doc` file (by Sven MATTISSON) in the `SLATEX` package [193]. See also section 13.159 on the preceding page.

```

10236 <*swedish2>
10237 \ProvidesFile{swedish2.mld}[2006/04/04]
10238 %% Swedish2 titles for minitoc.sty
10239 %% from rapport.doc (slatex)
10240 %% Mattisson, Sven (sven@tde.lu.se)
10241 \def\ptctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
10242 \def\plftitle{Figurf\ "orteckning}%
10243 \def\plttitle{Tabellf\ "orteckning}%
10244 %%
10245 \def\mtctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
10246 \def\mlftitle{Figurf\ "orteckning}%
10247 \def\mlttitle{Tabellf\ "orteckning}%
10248 %%
10249 \def\stctitle{Inneh\csname aa\endcsname ll}%
10250 \def\slftitle{Figurf\ "orteckning}%
10251 \def\sltttitle{Tabellf\ "orteckning}%
10252 </swedish2>

```

### 13.161 “Thai” language: `thai.mld` and `thai.mlo`

The titles for the “thai” language come from the `thaicjk.ldf` file (by Werner LEMBERG) and use fonts of the CJK system [179, 180]. The `thailatex` package [195] (by Surapant MEKNAVIN, Theppitak KAROONBOONYANAN, Chanop SILPA-ANAN and Veerathanabutr POONLAP) provides the same titles in its `thai.ldf` file.

The titles for the “thai” language contain characters that cannot be easily generated, hence we load `thai.mlo`.

```

10253 <*thai>
10254 \ProvidesFile{thai.mld}[2005/01/28]
10255 %% from thaicjk.ldf CJK 4.5.2 Thai support for the babel system
10256 %% by Werner Lemberg <wl@gnu.org>
10257 %%
10258 \mtcloadmlo{thai}%
10259 </thai>

```

### 13.162 “Turkish” language: `turkish.mld`

The titles for the “turkish” language are taken from the `turkish.dtx` file (by Mustafa BURC, Pierre A. MACKEY and Turgut UYAR) in the `babel` package [40, 41, 53]:

```

10260 ⟨*turkish⟩
10261 \ProvidesFile{turkish.mld}[2006/01/13]
10262 %% Turkish titles for minitoc.sty
10263 %% from turkish.dtx (babel)
10264 %% Burc, Mustafa
10265 \def\ptctitle{\.I\c cindekiler}%
10266 \def\plftitle{\c Sekiller Listesi}%
10267 \def\pltttitle{Tablolar\in Listesi}%
10268 %%
10269 \def\mtctitle{\.I\c cindekiler}%
10270 \def\mlftitle{\c Sekiller Listesi}%
10271 \def\mltttitle{Tablolar\in Listesi}%
10272 %%
10273 \def\stctitle{\.I\c cindekiler}%
10274 \def\slftitle{\c Sekiller Listesi}%
10275 \def\slttitle{Tablolar\in Listesi}%
10276 ⟨/turkish⟩

```

### 13.163 “Uighur” language: `uighur.mld`

The “uighur” and “bicig” languages are synonyms, so we just load the `bicig.mld` file (see section 13.19 on page 449):

```

10277 ⟨*uighur⟩
10278 \ProvidesFile{uighur.mld}[2006/05/31]
10279 \mtcselectlanguage{bicig}%
10280 ⟨/uighur⟩

```

### 13.164 “Uighur2” language: `uighur2.mld`

The “uighur2” and “bicig2” languages are synonyms, so we just load the `bicig2.mld` file (see section 13.20 on page 450):

```

10281 ⟨*uighur2⟩
10282 \ProvidesFile{uighur2.mld}[2006/05/31]
10283 \mtcselectlanguage{bicig2}%
10284 ⟨/uighur2⟩

```

**13.165 “Uighur3” language: uighur3.mld**

The “uighur3” and “bicig3” languages are synonyms, so we just load the bicig3.mld file (see section 13.19 on page 449):

```
10285 <*uighur3>
10286 \ProvidesFile{uighur3.mld}[2006/05/31]
10287 \mtcselectlanguage{bicig3}%
10288 </uighur3>
```

**13.166 “UKenglish” language: UKenglish.mld**

The “UKenglish” language is just like “english” (“UK” is for “United Kingdom”), so we just load english.mld (see section 13.43 on page 461):

```
10289 <*UKenglish>
10290 \ProvidesFile{UKenglish.mld}[2005/07/11]
10291 \mtcselectlanguage{english}%
10292 </UKenglish>
```

**13.167 “Ukraineb” language: ukraineb.mld**

The “ukraineb” language is a synonym for “ukrainian”, so we just load ukrainian.mld. See section 13.168.

```
10293 <*ukraineb>
10294 \ProvidesFile{ukraineb.mld}[2006/12/19]
10295 %% Ukranian titles for minitoc.sty
10296 %% from ukraineb.dtx (babel)
10297 %% Andrij Shvaika, Olga Lapko
10298 \selectlanguage{ukrainian}%
10299 </ukraineb>
```

**13.168 “Ukrainian” language: ukrainian.mld**

The titles for the “ukrainian” language come from the ukraineb.dtx file (by Olga G. LAPKO and Andrij M. SHVAIKA) in the babel package [40, 41, 82]. Cyrillic fonts are required. Another language name is ukraineb (see section 13.167).

```

10300 <*ukrainian>
10301 \ProvidesFile{ukrainian.mld}[2006/01/33]
10302 %% Ukraine titles for minitoc.sty
10303 %% from ukraineb.dtx (babel)
10304 %% Shvaika, Andriy and Lapko, Olga
10305 %% Needs cyrillic fonts
10306 \def\mtctitle{{\cyr\CYZ\cyrm\cyrii\cyrs\cyrt}}%
10307 \def\mlftitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
10308             \ \cyrii\cyrl\cyryu\cyrs\cyrt\cyrr\cyra\cyrc\cyrii\cyrishrt}}%
10309 \def\mltttitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
10310             \ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyrsftsn}}%
10311 %%
10312 \def\ptctitle{{\cyr\CYZ\cyrm\cyrii\cyrs\cyrt}}%
10313 \def\plftitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
10314             \ \cyrii\cyrl\cyryu\cyrs\cyrt\cyrr\cyra\cyrc\cyrii\cyrishrt}}%
10315 \def\pltttitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
10316             \ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyrsftsn}}%
10317 %%
10318 \def\stctitle{{\cyr\CYZ\cyrm\cyrii\cyrs\cyrt}}%
10319 \def\slftitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
10320             \ \cyrii\cyrl\cyryu\cyrs\cyrt\cyrr\cyra\cyrc\cyrii\cyrishrt}}%
10321 \def\sltttitle{{\cyr\CYRP\cyre\cyrr\cyre\cyrl\cyrii\cyrk
10322             \ \cyrt\cyra\cyrb\cyrl\cyri\cyrc\cyrsftsn}}%
10323 </ukrainian>

```

### 13.169 “Uppersorbian” language: `uppersorbian.mld`

The titles for the “uppersorbian” language<sup>44</sup> are taken from the `usorbian.dtx` file (by Eduard WERNER) in the `babel` package [40, 41, 85]. See also section 13.106 on page 494. A shorter language name is `usorbian` (see section 13.171 on the following page).

```

10324 <*uppersorbian>
10325 \ProvidesFile{uppersorbian.mld}[2006/02/38]
10326 %% Upper sorbian titles for minitoc.sty
10327 %% from usorbian.dtx (babel)
10328 %% Werner, Eduard
10329 %% Needs cyrillic fonts
10330 \def\ptctitle{Wobsah}%
10331 \def\plftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
10332 \def\pltttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
10333 %%
10334 \def\mtctitle{Wobsah}%
10335 \def\mlftitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
10336 \def\mltttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
10337 %%
10338 \def\stctitle{Wobsah}%

```

<sup>44</sup>Upper sorbian. Sorbian, or *wendisch*, is a member of the west slavic subgroup of indo-european languages spoken in Upper Lusatia in the german *länder* of Saxony and Brandenburg. The Sorbs are descendents of the Wends, the german name for the slavic tribes who occupied the area between the Elbe and Saale rivers in the west and the Odra (Oder) river in the east during the medieval period (vi-th century).

```

10339 \def\slfttitle{Zapis wobrazow}%
10340 \def\sltttitle{Zapis tabulkow}%
10341 </uppersorbian>

```

### 13.170 “USenglish” language: USenglish.mld

The “USenglish” language (“US” is for “United States (of America)”) is just like “english”<sup>45</sup>, so we just load `english.mld` (see section 13.43 on page 461):

```

10342 <*USenglish>
10343 \ProvidesFile{USenglish.mld}[2005/07/11]
10344 \mtcselectlanguage{english}%
10345 </USenglish>

```

### 13.171 “Usorbian” language: usorbian.mld

The “usorbian” language is a synonym for “uppersorbian”, so we just load `uppersorbian.mld`. See section 13.169 on the preceding page.

```

10346 <*usorbian>
10347 \ProvidesFile{usorbian.mld}[2006/01/23]
10348 %% Upper sorbian titles for minitoc.sty
10349 %% from usorbian.dtx (babel)
10350 %% Werner, Eduard
10351 \selectlanguage{uppersorbian}%
10352 </usorbian>

```

### 13.172 “Vietnam” language: vietnam.mld

The titles for the “vietnam” language are taken from the `vietnam` package (by Werner LEMBERG and Thế Thành HÀN). Vietnamese fonts are required. See also section 13.173 on the next page.

```

10353 <*vietnam>
10354 \ProvidesFile{vietnam.mld}[1999/03/16]
10355 %% vietnamese titles for minitoc.sty
10356 %%
10357 \def\ptcttitle{M\du{c} l\du{c}}%
10358 \def\plfttitle{Danh s\ 'ach h\ 'inh v\ ~e}%
10359 \def\pltttitle{Danh s\ 'ach b\ h\ a\ ng}%

```

<sup>45</sup>It should be true for the mini-table titles; the languages themselves have some differences, like the hyphenation rules.

```

10360 %%
10361 \def\mtctitle{M\d{u}c l\d{u}c}%
10362 \def\mlftitle{Danh s\'ach h\'inh v\~e}%
10363 \def\mltttitle{Danh s\'ach b\h{a}ng}%
10364 %%
10365 \def\stctitle{M\d{u}c l\d{u}c}%
10366 \def\slftitle{Danh s\'ach h\'inh v\~e}%
10367 \def\slttitle{Danh s\'ach b\h{a}ng}%
10368 </vietnam>

```

### 13.173 “Vietnamese” language: vietnamese.mld

The “vietnamese” language is just a synonym for the “vietnam” language. So we just load vietnam.mld. Vietnamese fonts are required. See also section 13.172 on the preceding page.

```

10369 < *vietnamese >
10370 \ProvidesFile{vietnamese.mld}[2004/12/14]
10371 \mtcselectlanguage{vietnam}%
10372 </vietnamese>

```

### 13.174 “Welsh” language: welsh.mld

The titles for the “welsh” language come from the welsh.dtx file (by Johannes L. BRAAMS) in the babel package [40, 41, 46]:

```

10373 < *welsh >
10374 \ProvidesFile{welsh.mld}[1999/12/06]
10375 %% Welsh titles for minitoc.sty
10376 %% from welsh.dtx (babel)
10377 %% Braams, Johannes~L.
10378 \def\ptctitle{Cynnwys}%
10379 \def\plftitle{Rhestr Ddarluniau}%
10380 \def\pltttitle{Rhestr Dablau}%
10381 %%
10382 \def\mtctitle{Cynnwys}%
10383 \def\mlftitle{Rhestr Ddarluniau}%
10384 \def\mltttitle{Rhestr Dablau}%
10385 %%
10386 \def\stctitle{Cynnwys}%
10387 \def\slftitle{Rhestr Ddarluniau}%
10388 \def\slttitle{Rhestr Dablau}%
10389 </welsh>

```



### 13.175 “Xalx” language: xalx.mld

The titles for the “xalx” language are taken from the  $\text{MonTeX}$  package [103, 106] (by Oliver CORFF and Dorjpalam DORJ). Xalx or Khalkha is the name of the Mongolian nationality residing in Mongolia proper. Their dialect forms the basis of Mongolian written with Cyrillic letters. See also sections 13.100 on page 491, 13.176, and 13.177 on the next page.

```

10390 <*xalx>
10391 \ProvidesFile{xalx.mld}[2005/11/16]
10392 %% Mongol (xalx) titles for minitoc.sty
10393 \def\ptctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
10394 \def\plftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
10395 \def\plttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
10396 %%
10397 \def\mtctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
10398 \def\mlftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
10399 \def\mlttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
10400 %%
10401 \def\stctitle{{\mnr Garqig}}%
10402 \def\slftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
10403 \def\slttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
10404 </xalx>

```

### 13.176 “Xalx2” language: xalx2.mld

The titles for the “xalx2” language are taken from the  $\text{MonTeX}$  package [103, 106] (by Oliver CORFF and Dorjpalam DORJ). This is a variant for the “xalx” language (see section 13.175).

```

10405 <*xalx2>
10406 \ProvidesFile{xalx2.mld}[2006/03/31]
10407 %% Mongol (xalx2) titles for minitoc.sty
10408 \def\ptctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
10409 \def\plftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
10410 \def\plttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
10411 %%
10412 \def\mtctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
10413 \def\mlftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
10414 \def\mlttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
10415 %%
10416 \def\stctitle{{\mnr Aguulga}}%
10417 \def\slftitle{{\mnr Zurgi"in jagsaalt}}%
10418 \def\slttitle{{\mnr X"usn"agti"in jagsaalt}}%
10419 </xalx2>

```

### 13.177 “Xalx3” language: xalx3.mld

The titles for the “xalx3” language are taken from the  $\text{MonT}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$  package [103, 106] (by Oliver CORFF and Dorjpalam DORJ). This is an other variant for the “xalx” language (see section 13.175 on the page before).

```

10420 <*xalx3>
10421 \ProvidesFile{xalx3.mld}[2006/03/31]
10422 %% Mongol (xalx3) titles for minitoc.sty
10423 \def\ptctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%
10424 \def\plftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
10425 \def\plttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
10426 %%
10427 \def\mtctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%
10428 \def\mlftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
10429 \def\mlttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
10430 %%
10431 \def\stctitle{\xalx{Soderjanie}}%
10432 \def\slftitle{\xalx{Spisok risunkow}}%
10433 \def\slttitle{\xalx{Spisok tablic}}%
10434 </xalx3>

```

## **Part III**

# **Complements**

**Contents of the Third Part**

<b>Bibliography</b>	<b>533</b>
<b>Changes History</b>	<b>558</b>
<b>Index</b>	<b>589</b>

# Bibliography

- [1] Paul W. ABRAHAMS, Karl BERRY, and Kathryn A. HARGREAVES. *T<sub>E</sub>X for the Impatient*, September 2003. <mailto:impatient@tug.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/impatient/book.pdf>. 533, 593, 595, 615, 637, 638
- [2] Paul W. ABRAHAMS, Karl BERRY, and Kathryn A. HARGREAVES. *T<sub>E</sub>X pour l'Impatient*, September 2004. French translation of [1] by Marc CHAUEMANCHE, <mailto:marc.chaudemanche@groupe-mma.fr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/impatient/fr/fbook.pdf>. 593, 595, 615, 637, 638
- [3] A. J. ALEX. *Typesetting Malayalam Using L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>*, April 2003. <mailto:alexaj@myrealbox.com>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/malayalam/doc/mm-usr.pdf>. 41, 195, 441, 497, 498, 594, 637
- [4] A. J. ALEX. *Typesetting Malayalam Using Ω*, January 2006. <mailto:indictex@gmail.com>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/omega/latex/contrib/malayalam-omega/doc/manual-malayalam.pdf>. 41, 195, 441, 497, 594, 637
- [5] Mark ALFORD. *How to create Japanese language documents under GNU/Linux using L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X* [online], March 2006. Available from: [http://www.physics.wustl.edu/~alford/tex/japanese\\_latex.html](http://www.physics.wustl.edu/~alford/tex/japanese_latex.html). <mailto:alford@wuphys.wustl.edu>. 594, 637
- [6] AMERICAN MATHEMATICAL SOCIETY. *Instructions for Preparation of Papers and Monographs: A<sub>M</sub>S-L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X*. Providence, Rhode Island, 1999. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/amslatex/classes/instr-l.pdf>. 85
- [7] Walter APPEL, Céline CHEVALIER, Emmanuel CORNET, Sébastien DESREUX, Jean-Julien FLECK, and Paul PICHAREAU. *L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X pour l'impatient*. In Céline CHEVALIER, editor, *Technique & Pratique*. H & K, 68, boulevard de Port-Royal, 75005 Paris, July 2005. <mailto:contact@H-K.fr>, see [http://www.h-k.fr/liens/tp/latex\\_pour\\_l\\_impatient.html](http://www.h-k.fr/liens/tp/latex_pour_l_impatient.html). 594, 597, 604, 606, 614, 637, 638, 640, 641
- [8] Donald ARSENEAU. *The notoccite package*, July 2000. <mailto:asnd@triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/misc/notoccite.sty>. 49, 85, 218, 234, 255, 280, 283, 286, 381, 414, 594, 637

- [9] Donald ARSENEAU. *The placeins package*, June 2002. <mailto:asnd@triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/placeins/>. 29, 85, 206, 208, 220, 234, 391, 397, 413, 594, 637
- [10] Donald ARSENEAU. *The cite package*, November 2003. <mailto:asnd@triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/cite/cite.sty>. 588, 594, 637
- [11] Donald ARSENEAU. *The wrapfig package*, January 2003. <mailto:asnd@triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/contrib/macros/latex/contrib/wrapfig/>. 133, 215, 225, 594, 637
- [12] Donald ARSENEAU. *The chapterbib package*, February 2004. <mailto:asnd@reg.triumf.ca>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/cite/chapterbib.sty>. 57, 200, 215, 594, 637
- [13] Helmer ASLAKSEN. *Chinese T<sub>E</sub>X Using the CJK B<sub>E</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X Package, Unicode TrueType Fonts and pdfT<sub>E</sub>X under Windows* [online], February 2006. Available from: <http://www.math.nus.edu.sg/aslaksen/cs/cjk.html>. <mailto:aslaksen@math.nus.edu.sg>. 595, 637
- [14] Helmer ASLAKSEN. *Reading and Writing Chinese Characters and Pinyin on the Web Using Unicode* [online], January 2006. Available from: <http://www.math.nus.edu.sg/aslaksen/read.html>. <mailto:aslaksen@math.nus.edu.sg>. 595, 637
- [15] Iain Menzies BANKS. *Against a Dark Background*. Bantam Books, 1993. 96
- [16] Pierre BASSO and Stephan ULRICH. *The bibtopic package*, August 2002. <mailto:Pierre.Basso@lim.univ-mrs.fr>, <mailto:stefanulrich@users.sourceforge.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/bibtopic/bibtopic.pdf>. 57, 199, 595, 637, 641, 651
- [17] Dorjgotov BATMUNKH. *Mongolian support from the babel system*, January 2007. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/mongolian/babel/mongolian.pdf>. 500, 595, 637
- [18] David BAUSUM. *T<sub>E</sub>X: Reference and Examples*. Kluwer Academic Publishers, <mailto:davidb@jvlnet.com>, April 2002. See [19]. 534, 595, 637
- [19] David BAUSUM. *T<sub>E</sub>X: Reference and Examples* [online], January 2006. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/utilities/plain/trm.html>. <mailto:davidb@jvlnet.com>, see [18]. 534, 595, 637
- [20] Benjamin BAYART. *Joli manuel pour B<sub>E</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>*. Guide local pour l'ESIEE, December 1995. <mailto:bayartb@edgard.fdn.fr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/JMPL.ps.gz>. 46, 595, 637

- [21] Benjamin BAYART, Thierry BAYET, Prakash COUNTCHAM, Éric DEPARDIEU, Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT, Mathieu GOUTELLE, Yvon HENEL, Florence HENRY, Loïc JOLY, Christophe JORSSSEN, Erwan LE PENNEC, Nicolas MARKEY, Françoise MARRE-FOURNIER, Sébastien MENGIN, Josselin NOIREL, Bruno PIGUET, Éric STREIT, Thomas VAN OUDENHOVE DE SAINT GÉRY, and Damien WYART. *Foire aux questions du groupe fr.comp.text.tex (version 3.0α)* [online], November 2004. Available from: <http://faqfctt.fr.eu.org/mailto:bayartb@edgard.fdn.fr>. 595, 604, 606, 607, 615, 616, 619, 622, 624, 633, 637, 638, 639, 640, 641, 648, 651, 652
- [22] Claudio BECCARI and Apostolos SYROPOULOS. *New Greek Fonts and the greek option of the babel package*. *TUGboat*, 19(4):419–425, December 1998. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb19-4/tb61becc.pdf>. 595, 637, 641, 649
- [23] Emmanuel BEFFARA. *Rubber Manual 1.0* [online], July 2005. Available from: <http://www.pps.jussieu.fr/~beffara/soft/rubber/doc.html>. <mailto:emmanuel.beffara@pps.jussieu.fr>. 58, 221, 595, 637
- [24] Rachid BELMOUHOU. *Lire et écrire l'arabe*. In Cécile DESPRAIRIES, editor, *Langues orientales*. Larousse, Paris, March 2006. 595, 606, 637, 638
- [25] Alexander BERDNIKOV and Olga A. GRINEVA. *Some Problems with Accents in T<sub>E</sub>X: Letters with Multiple Accents and Accents Varying for Uppercase/Lowercase Letters*. In *Congrès EuroT<sub>E</sub>X'98*, volume 28-29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, pages 44–55, St. Malo, March 1998. Available from: <http://www.gutenberg.eu.org/pub/GUTenberg/publicationsPDF/28-29-berdnikovc.pdf>. 595, 615, 637, 638
- [26] Alexander BERDNIKOV, Olga G. LAPKO, Mikhail KOLODIN, Andrew JANISHEVSKY, and Alexey BURYKIN. *Alphabets Necessary for Various Cyrillic Writing Systems (Towards X2 and T2 Encodings)*. In *Congrès EuroT<sub>E</sub>X'98*, volume 28-29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, pages 33–43, St. Malo, March 1998. Available from: <http://www.gutenberg.eu.org/pub/GUTenberg/publicationsPDF/28-29-berdnikovb.pdf>. 595, 596, 622, 637, 638, 639
- [27] Alexander BERDNIKOV, Olga G. LAPKO, Mikhail KOLODIN, Andrew JANISHEVSKY, and Alexey BURYKIN. *Cyrillic encoding for L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> multi-language documents*. *TUGboat*, 19(4):403–416, 1998. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb19-4/tb61berd.pdf>. 595, 596, 622, 637, 638, 639
- [28] Alexander BERDNIKOV, Olga G. LAPKO, Mikhail KOLODIN, Andrew JANISHEVSKY, and Alexey BURYKIN. *The Encoding Paradigm in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> and the Projected X2 Encoding for Cyrillic Texts*. In *Congrès EuroT<sub>E</sub>X*, volume 28-29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, pages 17–31, March 1998. Available from: <http://www.gutenberg.eu.org/pub/GUTenberg/publicationsPDF/28-29-berdnikova.pdf>. 595, 596, 622, 637, 638, 639
- [29] Karl BERRY. *Filenames for fonts*. *TUGboat*, 11(4):517–520, November 1990. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-4/tb30berry.pdf>. 551, 595, 637
- [30] Karl BERRY. *Fontname*, September 2005. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/fontname/fontname.pdf>. 595, 637

- [31] Berhanu BEYENE, Manfred KUDLEK, Olaf KUMMER, and Jochen METZINGER. *Ethiopian Language Support for the Babel Package*. Universität Aamburg, December 1998. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/ethiopia/ethiop/doc/ethiodoc.ps>. 41, 204, 441, 464, 465, 595, 619, 620, 625, 637, 639, 640
- [32] Javier BEZOS. *Estilo spanish para el sistema babel*, September 2003. <mailto:jbezos@wanadoo.es>. Available from: <http://filemon.mecanica.upm.es/CervanTeX/spanish.dtx>. 41, 522, 595, 637
- [33] Javier BEZOS. *Spanish support from the babel system*, February 2004. <mailto:jbezos@wanadoo.es> or <mailto:babel@braams.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/spanish.dtx>. 520, 521, 595, 637
- [34] Javier BEZOS. *Typesetting Guaraní with T<sub>E</sub>X*, July 2004. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/guarani/guarani.pdf>. 41, 207, 441, 477, 595, 637
- [35] Javier BEZOS. *The titlesec and titletoc packages*, January 2005. <http://www.texytipografia.com/contact.php>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/titlesec/titlesec.pdf>. 85, 223, 390, 595, 637
- [36] Giuseppe BILOTTA. *The  $\aleph$  (Aleph) Project*. TUGboat, 25(1):105–107, July 2004. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb25-1/bilotta.pdf>. 219, 596, 637
- [37] Denis BITOUZÉ and Jean-Côme CHARPENTIER. *L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X*. In *Collection Synthex*. Pearson Education France, September 2006. 596, 597, 637, 638
- [38] Victor BOYKO. *The russian.sty file*, January 1995. Available from: <ftp://ftp.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/cmcyralt/russian.sty>. 514, 596, 637
- [39] Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Babel, a multilingual style-option system for use with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X's standard document styles*. TUGboat, 12(2):291–301, June 1991. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb12-2/tb32braa.pdf>. 441, 596, 637
- [40] Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Babel, a multilingual package for use with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X's standard document classes*, June 2004. <mailto:babel@braams.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/babel.pdf>. 36, 41, 72, 198, 199, 204, 232, 441, 442, 443, 447, 448, 451, 452, 453, 454, 456, 458, 459, 460, 461, 462, 463, 467, 468, 469, 470, 471, 472, 473, 474, 483, 485, 486, 487, 492, 493, 494, 495, 496, 500, 501, 502, 503, 504, 505, 507, 508, 509, 510, 512, 517, 518, 519, 520, 521, 522, 524, 525, 526, 528, 596, 637
- [41] Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Babel, a multilingual package for use with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X's standard document classes (user)*, June 2004. <mailto:babel@braams.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/user.pdf>. 36, 41, 72, 198, 199, 204, 232, 441, 442, 443, 447, 448, 451, 452, 453, 454, 456, 458, 459, 460, 461, 462, 463, 467, 468, 469, 470, 471, 472, 473, 474, 483, 485, 486, 487, 492, 493, 494, 495, 496, 500, 501, 502, 503, 504, 505, 507, 508, 509, 510, 512, 517, 518, 519, 520, 521, 522, 524, 525, 526, 528, 596, 637



- [42] Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Dutch language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/dutch.dtx>. 442, 460, 596, 637
- [43] Johannes L. BRAAMS. *English support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/english.dtx>. 461, 462, 596, 637
- [44] Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Irish support from the babel system*, March 2005. With help from Marion GUNN and Fraser GRANT, <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:fraser@cernvm>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/irish.dtx>. 486, 596, 615, 637, 638
- [45] Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Norsk support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, Håvard HELSTRUP (<mailto:haavard@cernvm>) and Alv Kjetil HOLME (<mailto:holmea@cernvm>); the “nynorsk” variant has been supplied by Per Steinar IVERSEN (<mailto:iversen@vxcern.cern.ch>) and Terje Engeset PETTERST (<mailto:terjeep@vsfys1.fi.uib.no>); Rune KLEVELAND (<mailto:runekl@math.uio.no>) added the shorthand definitions. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/norsk.dtx>. 503, 504, 596, 616, 618, 619, 637, 639, 640, 641
- [46] Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Welsh support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/welsh.dtx>. 528, 596, 637
- [47] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Juan M. AGUIRREGABIRIA, Julio SANCHEZ, and Zunbeltz IZAOLA. *Basque support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:lg.ehu.es>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/basque.dtx>. 448, 594, 596, 618, 637, 639, 640, 645
- [48] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Einar ÁRNASON. *Icelandic support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:einar@lif.hi.is>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/icelandic.dtx>. 485, 594, 596, 637
- [49] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Gonçal BADENES. *Catalan language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:badenes@imec.be>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/catalan.dtx>. 456, 595, 596, 637
- [50] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Claudio BECCARI. *Latin support from the babel system*, November 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:claudio.beccari@polito.it>, with help from Krzysztof Konrad ŻELECHOWSKI, (<mailto:kkz@alfa.mimuw.edu.pl>). Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/latin.dtx>. 492, 595, 596, 637, 641, 652

- [51] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Árpád BÍRÓ, and József BÉRCES. *Magyar support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, with help from Attila KOPPANYI (<mailto:attila@cernvm.cern.ch>). Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/magyar.dtx>. 495, 496, 595, 596, 619, 637, 639
- [52] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Georgi BOSHNAKOV. *Bulgarian language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:georgi.boshnakov@umist.ac.uk>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/bulgarian.dtx>. 453, 596, 637
- [53] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Mustafa BURC. *Turkish support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:rz6001@rziris01.rrz.uni-hamburg.de>, with help from Pierre A. MacKAY and Turgut UYAR (<mailto:uyar@cs.itu.edu.tr>). Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/turkish.dtx>. 524, 596, 623, 637, 638, 640, 641, 651
- [54] Johannes L. BRAAMS, David CARLISLE, Alan JEFFREY, Leslie LAMPORT, Frank MITTELBACH, Chris A. ROWLEY, and Rainer SCHÖPF. *The L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> Sources*, 2003. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/base>. 596, 597, 619, 620, 625, 637, 638, 639, 640, 645
- [55] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Manuel CARRIBA. *Galician support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:mcarriba@eunetcom.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/galician.dtx>. 471, 596, 597, 637, 638
- [56] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Manuel CARRIBA, and Javier A. MÚGICA DE RIVERA. *Estilo galician para o sistema babel*, January 2007. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:mcarriba@eunetcom.net>, <mailto:jmugica@dig21.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/dalician/galician.pdf>. 471, 596, 597, 632, 637, 638, 640
- [57] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Jana CHLEBÍKOVÁ, and Tobias SCHLEMMER. *Slovak support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:chlebikj@mff.uniba.cs>, <mailto:Tobias.Schlemmer@web.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/slovak.dtx>. 519, 596, 597, 637, 638, 640, 645
- [58] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Maurizio CODOGNO, and Claudio BECCARI. *Italian support from the babel system*, November 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:mau@beatles.cselt.stet.it>, <mailto:beccari@polito.it>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/italian.dtx>. 487, 595, 596, 598, 637, 638
- [59] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Victor EIJKHOUT, and Nico POPPELIER. *The development of national L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X styles*. *TUGboat*, 10(3):401–406, November 1989. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb10-3/tb25braams.pdf>. 441, 596, 607, 637, 638, 640, 642

- [60] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Daniel FLIPO. *French support from the babel system*, February 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:Daniel.Flipo@univ-lille1.fr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/frenchb.dtx>. 468, 469, 470, 596, 614, 637, 638
- [61] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Fraser GRANT. *Scottish support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:fraser@cernvm>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/scottish.dtx>. 517, 596, 615, 637, 638
- [62] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Sten HELLMAN. *Swedish support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:hellman@cernvm.cern.ch>; enhancements for version 2.0 by Erik ÖSTHOLS ([erik\\_osthols@yahoo.com](mailto:erik_osthols@yahoo.com)). Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/swedish.dtx>. 522, 596, 616, 635, 637, 638, 640
- [63] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Umstatter HORST, and Robert JUHASZ. *Romanian support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:hhu@cernvm.cern.ch>, <mailto:robertj@uni-paderborn.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/romanian.dtx>. 508, 596, 616, 619, 637, 639
- [64] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Regnor JERNSLETTEN. *North Sami support from the babel system*, February 2004. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:Regnor.Jernsletten@sami.uit.no> or <mailto:Regnor.Jernsletten@eunet.no>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/samin.dtx>. 517, 596, 619, 637, 639
- [65] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Mikko KANERVA, and Keranen REINO. *Finnish support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:kanerva@cernvm>, <mailto:keranen@cernvm>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/finnish.dtx>. 467, 468, 596, 619, 637, 639, 640, 644
- [66] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Peter KLEIWEG. *Interlingua support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:kleiweg@let.rug.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/interlingua.dtx>. 486, 596, 619, 637, 639
- [67] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Jörg KNAPPEN, and Terry MART. *Bahasa Indonesia support from the babel system*, November 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:joerg.knappen@alpha.ntp.springer.de>, <mailto:mart@vkpmzd.kph.uni-mainz.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/bahasa.dtx>. 447, 596, 619, 624, 637, 639, 640
- [68] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Jörg KNAPPEN, Terry MART, and Bob MARGOLIS. *Bahasa Malaysia support from the babel system*, November 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:joerg.knappen@alpha.ntp.springer.de>, <mailto:mart@vkpmzd.kph.uni-mainz.de>, <mailto:bob.margolis@ntlworld.com>. Available from:

- <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/bahasam.dtx>. 447, 596, 619, 624, 637, 639, 640
- [69] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Olga G. LAPKO, Vladimir VOLOVICH, and Werner LEMBERG. *Russian support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:cyrtug@mir.msk.su>, <mailto:TeX@vvv.vsu.ru> et <mailto:wl@gnu.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/russianb.dtx>. 454, 512, 596, 622, 637, 639, 641, 652
- [70] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Henning LARSEN. *Danish language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:larsen@cernvm.cern.ch>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/danish.dtx>. 459, 596, 622, 637, 639
- [71] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Boris LAVVA. *Hebrew language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/hebrew.dtx>. 483, 596, 622, 637, 639
- [72] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Milos LOKAJICEK. *Czech language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:lokajick@cernvm>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/czech.dtx>. 458, 596, 623, 637, 639
- [73] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Dejan MUHAMEDAGIĆ, and Jankovic SLOBODAN. *Serbocroatian support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:dejan@yunix.com>, <mailto:slobodan@archimed.filfak.ac.ni.yu>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/serbian.dtx>. 518, 596, 632, 637, 640, 647
- [74] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Alan PAIĆ. *Croatian language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:paica@cernvm.cern.ch>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/croatian.dtx>. 458, 596, 636, 637, 640
- [75] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Bernd RAICHLE. *German support from the babel system*, February 2004. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, [azu.Informatik.Uni-Stuttgart.de](mailto:azu.Informatik.Uni-Stuttgart.de). Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/germanb.dtx>. 473, 596, 637, 640, 644
- [76] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Bernd RAICHLE, and Walter SCHMIDT. *New German support from the babel system*, February 2004. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:raichle@azu.Informatik.Uni-Stuttgart.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/ngermanb.dtx>. 502, 503, 596, 637, 640, 644, 645
- [77] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Jose Pedro RAMALHETE. *Portuguese support from the babel system*, March 2005. Arnaldo Viegas DE LIMA contributed brasilian translations and

- suggestions for enhancements. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:jramalhe@cernvm>, [mailto:Jose-Pedro\\_Ramalhete@macmail, arnaldo@vnet.ibm.com](mailto:Jose-Pedro_Ramalhete@macmail.arnaldo@vnet.ibm.com). Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/portuges.dtx>. 451, 507, 596, 606, 637, 638, 640, 644
- [78] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Christian ROLLAND. *Breton language support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:Christian.Rolland@univ-brest.fr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/breton.dtx>. 452, 596, 637, 640, 644
- [79] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Marti RUIZ-ALTABA, and Jörg KNAPPEN. *Esperanto support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:ruizaltb@cernvm.cern.ch>, <mailto:knappen@vkpmzd.kph.uni-mainz.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/esperanto.dtx>. 462, 596, 619, 637, 639, 640, 645
- [80] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Enn SAAR. *Estonian support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:saar@aai.ee>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/estonian.dtx>. 463, 596, 637, 640, 645
- [81] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Elmar SCHALÜCK, and Michael JANICH. *Polish support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:elmar@uni-paderborn.de>, <mailto:massa@uni-paderborn.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/polish.dtx>. 505, 596, 619, 637, 639, 640, 645
- [82] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Andriy SHVAIKA. *Ukrainian support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:ashv@icmp.lviv.ua>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/ukraineb.dtx>. 525, 596, 637, 640, 646
- [83] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Apostolos SYROPOULOS. *Greek support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:apostolo@platon.ee.duth.gr> or <mailto:apostolo@obelix.ee.duth.gr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/greek.dtx>. 474, 596, 637, 641, 649
- [84] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Eduard WERNER. *Lower Sorbian support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:edi@kaihh.hanse.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/lsorbian.dtx>. 494, 596, 637, 641, 652
- [85] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Eduard WERNER. *Upper Sorbian support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:edi@kaihh.hanse.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/usorbian.dtx>. 526, 596, 637, 641, 652

- [86] Johannes L. BRAAMS and Adi ZAIMI. *Albanian support from the babel system*, November 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:zami1st@yahoo.com>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/albaban.dtx>. 443, 596, 637, 641, 652
- [87] Johannes L. BRAAMS, Danilo ZAVRTANIK, and Leon ŽLAJPAH. *Slovene support from the babel system*, March 2005. <mailto:babel@bramms.cistron.nl>, <mailto:leon.zlajpah@ijs.si>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/required/babel/slovene.dtx>. 519, 596, 637, 641, 652
- [88] Felix BRAUN. *Die Documentklasse jura*, July 1998. <mailto:fbraun@atdot.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/jura/>. 85, 197, 208, 389, 596, 638
- [89] Jim BREEN. *Jim BREEN's Japanese Page* [online], September 2006. Available from: <http://www.csse.monash.edu.au/~jwb/japanese.html>. <mailto:jwb@csse.monash.edu.au>. 596, 638
- [90] Peter BREITENLOHNER. *The  $\varepsilon$ -T<sub>E</sub>X manual (version 2)*. The  $\mathcal{N}$ -S Team, Max-Planck-Institut für Physik, München, February 1998. Available from: [http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/systems/e-tex/v2/doc/etex\\_man.pdf](http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/systems/e-tex/v2/doc/etex_man.pdf). 203, 596, 638
- [91] David CARELLA. *Règles typographiques et normes: Mise en pratique avec L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X*. Vuibert, Paris, January 2006. 597, 638
- [92] David CARLISLE. *The xr package*, May 1994. <mailto:carlisle@cs.man.ac.uk>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/required/tools/xr.dtx>. 26, 225, 293, 597, 638
- [93] David CARLISLE. *The afterpage package*, October 1995. <mailto:carlisle@cs.man.ac.uk>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/required/tools/afterpage.pdf>. 575, 597, 638
- [94] David CARLISLE. *The xr-hyper package*, March 2000. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/xr-hyper.sty>. 225, 597, 638
- [95] David CARLISLE. *The color package*, November 2005. <mailto:carlisle@cs.man.ac.uk>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/required/graphics/color.dtx>. 115, 597, 638
- [96] Jean-Pascal CHAUVET. *About Kanji* [online], June 1999. Available from: <http://www2.gol.com/users/jpc/Japan/Kanji/>. <mailto:jpc@gol.com>. 597, 638
- [97] Pehong CHEN and Michael A. HARRISON. *Index preparation and processing. Software – Practice and Experience*, 19(9):897–915, 1988. 597, 615, 638
- [98] Otfried CHEONG. *Using TrueType Fonts in PdfL<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X* [online], September 2005. Available from: <http://ipe.comp.geom.org/pdfetex.html>. <mailto:otfried@tclab.kaist.ac.kr>. 597, 638



- [99] Pai H. CHOU. *How to make  $\text{\LaTeX}$  (te $\text{\LaTeX}$ ) handle unicode and CJK in MacOSX* [online], December 2004. Available from: <http://www.ece.uci.edu/~chou/unicode-tex.html>. <mailto:chou@ece.uci.edu>. 204, 597, 638
- [100] Steven Douglas COCHRAN. *The subfigure package*, March 1995. <mailto:sds@cs.cmu.edu>, <mailto:cochran@ieee.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/obsolete/macros/latex/contrib/subfigure/subfigure.pdf>. 31, 85, 135, 215, 223, 598, 638
- [101] Steven Douglas COCHRAN. *The captcont package*, February 2002. <mailto:sds@cs.cmu.edu>, <mailto:cochran@ieee.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/captcont/>. 50, 73, 85, 199, 237, 258, 598, 638
- [102] Steven Douglas COCHRAN. *The subfig Package*, January 2004. <mailto:sds@cs.cmu.edu>, <mailto:cochran@ieee.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/subfig/subfig.pdf>. 31, 85, 141, 199, 215, 222, 223, 372, 598, 638
- [103] Oliver CORFF. *Mon $\text{\TeX}$  – A Quick Guide* (draft), July 2002. <mailto:corff@zedat.fu-berlin.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/mongolian/montex/doc/mlsquick.pdf>. 41, 195, 212, 441, 449, 450, 451, 454, 455, 499, 513, 529, 530, 604, 638
- [104] Oliver CORFF. *Some Notes on the Pentaglot Dictionary* [online], April 2002. Available from: <http://userpage.fu-berlin.de/~corff/im/Buch.Pentaglot.html>. <mailto:corff@zedat.fu-berlin.de>. 213, 604, 638
- [105] Oliver CORFF. *Infosystem Mongolei* [online], July 2004. Available from: <http://userpage.fu-berlin.de/~corff/infomong.html>. An Internet-based Journal on Mongolian Affairs. 212, 604, 638
- [106] Oliver CORFF and Dorjpalam DORJ. *Mon $\text{\TeX}$  – Mongolian for  $\text{\LaTeX}$  2 $\epsilon$ , Implementation Level System Documentation*, July 2002. <mailto:corff@zedat.fu-berlin.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/mongolian/montex/doc/montex.pdf>. 41, 195, 212, 441, 449, 450, 451, 454, 455, 499, 513, 529, 530, 604, 607, 638
- [107] Serguei D'ACHIAN, Arnak DALALYAN, and Vartan AKOPIAN. *Arm $\text{\TeX}$ : a System for Writing in Armenian with  $\text{\TeX}$  and  $\text{\LaTeX}$  (written in armenian)*, June 1999. <mailto:Serguei.Dachian@univ-lemans.fr>, <http://www-scf.usc.edu/~vakopian/programs/progs.html>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/armtex/v2.0/manual.ps>. 41, 198, 441, 445, 594, 606, 637, 638
- [108] Bernard DESGRAUPES. *METAFONT, Guide pratique*. Vuibert, Paris, March 1999. 202, 606, 638
- [109] Bernard DESGRAUPES.  *$\text{\LaTeX}$ , Apprentissage, guide et référence*. Vuibert, Paris, second edition, March 2003. 606, 638
- [110] Bernard DESGRAUPES. *Passeport pour Unicode*. Vuibert, Paris, April 2005. 204, 606, 638

- [111] Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT. *The shorttoc package*, August 2002.  
<mailto:jean-pierre.drucbert@onera.fr>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/shorttoc/shorttoc.dtx>. 19, 96,  
 222, 559, 607, 638
- [112] Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT. *Le paquetage minitoc*, February 2007.  
<mailto:jean-pierre.drucbert@onera.fr>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/minitoc/fminitoc.pdf>. 96, 420,  
 607, 638
- [113] Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT. *The minitoc package*, February 2007.  
<mailto:jean-pierre.drucbert@onera.fr>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/minitoc/minitoc.pdf>. 96, 420,  
 607, 638
- [114] Victor EIJKHOUT. *The comment package*, October 1999. <mailto:victor@eijkhout.net>.  
 Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/comment/>.  
 607, 638
- [115] Behdad ESFAHBOD and Roozbeh POURNADER. *FarsiT<sub>E</sub>X and the Iranian T<sub>E</sub>X Community*.  
*TUGboat*, 22(3):41–44, 2003. Available from:  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb23-1/farsitex.pdf>. 41, 205, 441, 466, 608,  
 638, 640, 643
- [116] Mike FABIAN. *CJK Support in SuSe Linux*, March 2005. Available from:  
<http://www.suse.de/~mfabian/suse-cjk.pdf>. 610, 638
- [117] Robin FAIRBAIRNS. *The UK T<sub>E</sub>X FAQ. Your 396 Questions Answered*, November 2005.  
 Version 3.15a. Available from:  
<ftp://cam.ctan.org/tex-archive/help/uk-tex-faq/newfaq.pdf>. 610, 638
- [118] Michael J. FERGUSON. *Report on multilingual activities*. *TUGboat*, 11(4):514–516,  
 November 1990. Available from:  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-4/tb30ferguson.pdf>. 610, 638
- [119] Peter FLYNN. *Formatting information. A beginner's introduction to typesetting with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X*, March 2005. <mailto:peter.silmaril.ie>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/tex/info/beginlatex/beginlatex-3.6.pdf>. 614, 638
- [120] Maarten GELDERMAN. *A short introduction to font characteristics*. *TUGboat*,  
 20(2):96–104, June 1999. Available from:  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb20-2/tb63geld.pdf>. 614, 638
- [121] Chuck GENSCHTE and John WARNOCK. *PDF Reference*, November 2004. Available  
 from: <http://partners.adobe.com/public/developer/en/pdf/PDFReference16.pdf>.  
 220, 614, 638, 641, 652
- [122] Helen GILHOLLY and Rozenn ETIENNE. *Lire et écrire le japonais*. In Cécile DESPRAIRIES,  
 editor, *Langues orientales*. Larousse, Paris, March 2006. 606, 608, 615, 638
- [123] Michel GOOSSENS, Sebastian RAHTZ, Eitan M. GURARI, ROSS MOORE, and Robert S.  
 SUTOR. *The L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X Web Companion: Integrating T<sub>E</sub>X, HTML, and XML*. Tools and  
 Techniques for Computer Typesetting. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, June  
 1999. 615, 626, 638, 640, 641, 644, 649



- [124] Norman GRAY. *The urlbst package*, June 2005.  
<http://www.astro.gla.ac.uk/users/norman/>. Available from:  
<http://www.tug.org/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/urlbst/urlbst.pdf>. 204, 207, 224,  
 237, 579, 615, 638
- [125] Hans HAGEN. *Aleph 8*, July 2004. Available from:  
<http://www.pragma-ade.com/general/manuals/aleph.pdf>. 219, 615, 638
- [126] Hans HAGEN. *Typographic Programming*, 2004. Version préliminaire. Available from:  
<http://www.pragma-ade.com/general/manuals/style.pdf>. 615, 638
- [127] Thế Thành HÀN. *The pdfTeX Program*. In *EuroTeX'98 Proceedings*, volume 28-29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, pages 197–219, March 1998. Available from:  
<http://www.gutenberg.eu.org/pub/GUTenberg/publicationsPDF/28-29-han.pdf>. 615,  
 638
- [128] Thế Thành HÀN. *Micro-typographic extensions to the TeX typesetting system*. *TUGboat*, 21(4):317–434, October 2000. Doctoral dissertation (Faculty of Informatics, Masarik University, Brno, Czech Republic). Available from:  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb21-4/tb69thanh.pdf>. 615, 638
- [129] Thế Thành HÀN, Sebastian RAHTZ, Hans HAGEN, Hartmut HENKEL, and Paweł JACKOWSKI. *The pdfTeX user manual*, February 2006. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/systems/pdftex/manual/pdftex-a.pdf>. 615, 638,  
 640, 644
- [130] Thorsten HANSEN. *The bibunits package*, May 2004.  
<mailto:thorsten.hansen@psychol.uni-giessen.de>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/bibunits/bibunits.pdf>. 57, 199,  
 215, 615, 638
- [131] Thorsten HANSEN. *The multibib package*, January 2004.  
<mailto:thorsten.hansen@psychol.uni-giessen.de>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/multibib/multibib.pdf>. 57, 215,  
 615, 638
- [132] Patrick HAPPEL. *The lipsum package*, January 2005. <mailto:patrick.happel@rub.de>.  
 Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/lipsum/lipsum.pdf>. 90, 209,  
 582, 615, 638
- [133] Yannis HARALAMBOUS. *Arabic, Persian and Ottoman TeX for Mac and PC*. *TUGboat*, 11(4):520–524, November 1990. Available from:  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-4/tb30hara.pdf>. 615, 638
- [134] Yannis HARALAMBOUS. *Fontes et codages*. O'Reilly France, April 2004.  
<mailto:xavier@editions-oreilly.fr>. Available from:  
<http://www.oreilly.fr/catalogue/284177273X.desc.html>. 478, 480, 482, 615, 638
- [135] Yannis HARALAMBOUS and John PLAICE. *First applications of Ω: Greek, Arabic, Khmer, Poetica, ISO 10646/Unicode, etc*. *TUGboat*, 15(3):344–352, 1994. 218, 615, 638, 640,  
 641

- [136] Yannis HARALAMBOUS and John PLAICE. *Ω, a T<sub>E</sub>X extension including Unicode and featuring lex-like filtering processes*. In Wlodek BZYL and Tomasz PLATA-PRZECHELEWSKI, editors, *Proceedings of the European T<sub>E</sub>X Conference*, pages 153–166, Gdańsk, Poland, 1994. GUST. 218, 546, 615, 638, 640, 641
- [137] Yannis HARALAMBOUS and John PLAICE. *The Design and Use of a Multiple-Alphabet Font with Omega*. *MAPS*, 27:27–37, 2000. Available from: [http://www.ntg.nl/maps/pdf/24\\_7.pdf](http://www.ntg.nl/maps/pdf/24_7.pdf). 615, 638, 640, 641
- [138] Yannis HARALAMBOUS and John PLAICE. *Traitement automatique des langues et compositions sous Omega*. *Cahiers GUTenberg*, 39-40:139–166, May 2001. Available from: <http://www.gutenberg.eu.org/publications/cahiers/r25-cahiers39-40/131-yannis.html>. 615, 638, 640, 641
- [139] Yannis HARALAMBOUS, John PLAICE, and Éric PICHERAL. *Ω, une extension de T<sub>E</sub>X incluant UNICODE et des filtres de type lex*. *Cahiers GUTenberg*, 20:55–80, June 1995. French translation of [136]. Available from: <http://www.gutenberg.eu.org/pub/GUTenberg/publicationsPS/20-yannis.ps.gz>. 218, 615, 638, 640, 641
- [140] Alexander HARIN and Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV. *The cmcyralt.sty file*, December 1994. Available from: <ftp://ftp.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/cmcyralt/cmcyralt.sty>. 514, 615, 638, 641, 652
- [141] Stephan HENNIG. *The mcaption package*, September 2005. <mailto:stephanhennig@arcor.de>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/mcaption/mcaption.pdf>. 51, 69, 85, 210, 259, 616, 639
- [142] Alan HOENIG. *T<sub>E</sub>X Unbound*. Oxford University Press, Oxford New York, 1998. L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X & T<sub>E</sub>X Strategies for Fonts, Graphics , & More. 616, 639
- [143] Hiroya IKEDA. *pB<sub>E</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>*, September 2001. In japanese, <mailto:ike@kobitosan.net>. Available from: <http://www.kobitosan.net/ike/latex/handhtml/index.html>. 220, 618, 639
- [144] Tetsuo IWAKUMA and Tetsuo FURUKAWA. *A Guide to use Macros and Style Files in B<sub>E</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X*<sup>46</sup>, August 1994. <mailto:bear@hashi1.civil.tohoku.ac.jp> and [furakawa@hagi.ces.kyutech.ac.jp](mailto:furakawa@hagi.ces.kyutech.ac.jp). Available from: [http://www.moiivre.usherbrooke.ca/Intranet/Doc/LATEX\\_HOWTO/styleuse.pdf](http://www.moiivre.usherbrooke.ca/Intranet/Doc/LATEX_HOWTO/styleuse.pdf). 614, 618, 638, 639
- [145] Youssef JABRI. *Typesetting Arabic and Farsi with the Arabi package. The Users Guide*, February 2006. <mailto:yjabri@ensa.univ-oujda.ac.ma>, École des sciences appliquées, Boîte 696, Oujda, Maroc. Available from: [http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/arabic/arabi/doc/latex/arabi/user\\_guide.pdf](http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/arabic/arabi/doc/latex/arabi/user_guide.pdf). 36, 41, 198, 445, 467, 583, 619, 639
- [146] Alan JEFFREY. *PostScript font support in B<sub>E</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>*. *TUGboat*, 15(3):263–268, September 1994. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb15-3/tb44jeff.pdf>. 619, 639, 640, 645

---

<sup>46</sup>This document is somewhat obsolete.

- [147] Zhuhan JIANG. *The vruler package*, October 1996.  
<mailto:zhuhan@neumann.une.edu.au>, and look at  
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/help/Catalogue/entries/vruler.html>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/misc/vruler.sty>. 619, 639
- [148] David M. JONES. *The hangcaption package*, August 1992.  
<mailto:dmjones@theory.lcs.mit.edu>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex209/contrib/misc/hangcaption.sty>. 50,  
76, 85, 207, 238, 257, 619, 639
- [149] Ki-Joo KIM. *A BibT<sub>E</sub>X Guide via Examples*, April 2004.  
<mailto:kijoo2000@yahoo.com>. Available from:  
[http://www.geocities.com/bibtex\\_guide.pdf](http://www.geocities.com/bibtex_guide.pdf). 619, 639
- [150] Ki-Joo KIM. *How to Create PDF from L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X*, April 2004.  
<mailto:kijoo2000@yahoo.com>. Available from:  
<http://www.geocities.com/latex2pdf.pdf>. 619, 639
- [151] Ki-Joo KIM. *L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X Fonts*, November 2005. <mailto:kijoo2000@yahoo.com>. Available  
from: [http://www.geocities.com/latex\\_fonts.pdf](http://www.geocities.com/latex_fonts.pdf). 619, 639
- [152] Donald E. KNUTH. *Computer Modern Typefaces*, volume E of *Computers and  
Typesetting*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, 1986. 34, 202, 619, 639
- [153] Donald E. KNUTH. *The T<sub>E</sub>Xbook*, volume A of *Computers and Typesetting*.  
Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, 16th edition, 1989. Revised to cover T<sub>E</sub>X3,  
1991. 200, 209, 223, 224, 547, 619, 639
- [154] Donald E. KNUTH. *The METAFONTbook*, volume C of *Computers and Typesetting*.  
Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, 1993. With the final corrections of 1993.  
202, 619, 639
- [155] Donald E. KNUTH. *Le T<sub>E</sub>Xbook, Composition informatique*. Vuibert, Paris, 2003.  
French translation of [153], by Jean-Côme CHARPENTIER. 209, 597, 619, 638, 639
- [156] Un KOAUNGI. *H<sub>E</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X: a L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X package for the Korean language support*, April 2005.  
In korean. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/korean/HLaTeX/hlguide.pdf>. 195, 207,  
441, 480, 481, 619, 639
- [157] Markus KOHM and Jens-Uwe MORAWSKI. *KOMA-Script, ein wandelbares  
L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>-Paket*, July 2006. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/koma-script/scrguide.pdf>. 39,  
47, 59, 71, 85, 137, 155, 195, 199, 208, 215, 222, 236, 237, 390, 577, 619, 626, 639,  
640
- [158] Helmut KOPKA and Patrick W. DALY. *Guide to L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X*. Tools and Techniques for  
Computer Typesetting. Addison Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, fourth edition,  
February 2004. 219, 606, 619, 638, 639
- [159] Siep KROONENBERG. *NFSS: using font families in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>*. MAPS, 11:52–54, 1999.  
<mailto:siepo@cybercomm.nl>. Available from:  
[http://www.ntg.nl/maps/pdf/22\\_13.pdf](http://www.ntg.nl/maps/pdf/22_13.pdf). 619, 639

- [160] Alexej M. KRYUKOV. *Typesetting multilingual documents with ANTOMEGA*, September 2003. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/systems/omega/contrib/antomega/doc/omega/antomega/antomega.pdf>. 41, 198, 441, 474, 475, 476, 493, 506, 510, 511, 520, 521, 619, 639
- [161] Markus G. KUHN. *Effective scientific electronic publishing* [online], June 2006. Available from: <http://www.cl.cam.ac.uk/~mgk25/publ-tips.html>. <mailto:mgk25@cl.cam.ac.uk>. 619, 639
- [162] Frank KÜSTER. *alnumsec.sty: Using alphanumeric section numbering with standard sectioning commands*, February 2005. <mailto:frank@kuesterei.ch>, Biozentrum der Univ. Basel, Abt. Biophysikalische Chemie. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/alnumsec/>. 50, 73, 85, 197, 237, 258, 620, 639
- [163] Thomas LACHAND-ROBERT. *La maîtrise de T<sub>E</sub>X et L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X*. Masson, Paris, December 1997. 620, 639
- [164] Klaus LAGALLY. *ArabT<sub>E</sub>X—Typesetting Arabic with vowels and ligatures*. In *Proceedings of the 7th European T<sub>E</sub>X Conference*, pages 153–172, Prague, 1992. C<sub>S</sub>TUG. <mailto:lagallyk@acm.org>. Available from: [http://www.ntg.nl/maps/pdf/20\\_22.pdf](http://www.ntg.nl/maps/pdf/20_22.pdf). 36, 41, 198, 441, 444, 482, 620, 639
- [165] Klaus LAGALLY. *ArabT<sub>E</sub>X Version 3*, October 2003. <mailto:lagallyk@acm.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/arabtex/doc/html/arabtex.htm>. 36, 41, 198, 441, 444, 482, 620, 639
- [166] Leslie LAMPORT. *MakeIndex, An Index Processor For L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X*, 1987. Technical report, Electronic document in *MakeIndex* distribution. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/indexing/makeindex/doc/makeindex.pdf>. 620, 639
- [167] Leslie LAMPORT. *L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X: A Document Preparation System — User’s Guide and Reference Manual*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, Massachusetts, second edition, June 1994. 54, 209, 620, 639
- [168] Leslie LAMPORT, Frank MITTELBACH, and Johannes L. BRAAMS. *Standard Document Classes for L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X version 2<sub>ε</sub>*, September 1999. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/base/classes.dtx>. 195, 596, 620, 625, 637, 639, 640
- [169] Olga G. LAPKO. *Full Cyrillic: How Many Languages?* In Mimi BURBANK and Christina THIELE, editors, *Proceedings of TUG’96*, pages 164–170, Dubna, 1996. JINR. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb17-2/tb51olga.pdf>. 622, 639
- [170] Olga G. LAPKO. *The floatrow package*, July 2005. <mailto:Lapko.O@g23.relcom.ru>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/floatrow/floatrow.pdf>. 29, 622, 639
- [171] Olga G. LAPKO and Irina A. MAKHOVAYA. *The Style russianb for Babel: Problems and solutions*. *TUGboat*, 16(4):364–372, 1995. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb16-4/tb49olga.pdf>. 36, 454, 512, 622, 624, 639, 640

- [172] L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 PROJECT TEAM. *Default docstrip headers*. *TUGboat*, 19(2):137–138, June 1998. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb19-2/tb59ltdocstrip.pdf>. 622, 639
- [173] L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 PROJECT TEAM. *L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> Kernel (Output Routine)*, July 2000. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/base/ltoutput.dtx>. 29, 220, 413, 622, 639
- [174] L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 PROJECT TEAM. *L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> for authors*, July 2001. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/doc/usrguide.pdf>. 195, 622, 639
- [175] L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 PROJECT TEAM. *L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> for Class and Package writers*, December 2003. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/doc/clsguide.pdf>. 195, 622, 639
- [176] L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 PROJECT TEAM. *L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> font selection*, February 2004. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/doc/fntguide.pdf>. 195, 215, 276, 354, 358, 622, 639
- [177] L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 PROJECT TEAM. *L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X font encodings*, January 2006. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/doc/encguide.pdf>. 204, 216, 622, 639
- [178] Philipp LEHMAN. *The Font Installation Guide*, December 2004. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/Type1fonts/fontinstallationguide/fontinstallationguide.pdf>. 622, 639
- [179] Werner LEMBERG. *The CJK package for L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> — Multilingual support beyond babel*. *TUGboat*, 18(3):214–224, 1997. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb18-3/cjkintr600.pdf>. 36, 41, 201, 222, 223, 441, 457, 478, 479, 480, 481, 488, 489, 490, 523, 622, 639
- [180] Werner LEMBERG. *The CJK package* [online], August 2005. Available from: <http://cjk.ffii.org/>. 36, 41, 201, 222, 223, 441, 457, 478, 479, 480, 481, 488, 489, 490, 523, 622, 639
- [181] Knut LICKERT. *L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> for people in associations: minutes.sty*, January 2001. <mailto:knut@lickert.net>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/minutes/>. 212, 276, 379, 622, 639
- [182] Ulf A. LINDGREN. *FncyChap VI.33*, August 2005. <mailto:ulf.a.lindgren@ericsson.com>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/fncychap/fncychap.pdf>. 50, 72, 85, 206, 237, 256, 622, 639
- [183] Anselm LINGNAU. *An Improved Environment for Floats*, November 2001. <mailto:anselm@strathspey.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/float/float.dtx>. 29, 622, 639
- [184] Maurizio LORETI. *The sfheaders package*, September 1997. <mailto:loreti@padova.infn.it> and <http://wwwcdf.pd.infn.it/~loreti/mlo.html>, University of Padova – Department of Physics, Via F. Marzolo, 8 – 35131 PADOVA – Italy. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/sfheaders/>. 50, 72, 85, 222, 237, 257, 623, 639

- [185] Tim P. LOVE. *Advanced L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X*, September 1994. <mailto:tpl@eng.cam.ac.uk>. Available from: [http://www.moiivre.usherbrooke.ca/Intranet/Doc/LATEX\\_HOWTO/latex-advanced.pdf](http://www.moiivre.usherbrooke.ca/Intranet/Doc/LATEX_HOWTO/latex-advanced.pdf). 623, 639
- [186] Tim P. LOVE. *Producing HTML and PDF files with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X* [online], March 2006. Available from: <http://www-h.eng.cam.ac.uk/help/tpl/textprocessing/makingWWWdocs.html>. <mailto:tpl@eng.cam.ac.uk>. 623, 639
- [187] Vincent LOZANO. *Tout ce que vous avez toujours voulu savoir sur L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X sans jamais oser le demander*, September 2006. <mailto:lozano@enise.fr>. Available from: <http://cours.enise.fr/info/latex/guide-local.pdf>. 623, 639
- [188] Ken LUNDE. *Understanding Japanese Information Processing*. O'Reilly & Associates, Inc, September 1993. 195, 202, 550, 623, 639
- [189] Ken LUNDE. *Online companion of "Understanding Japanese Information Processing"*, 1996. See [188]. Available from: <ftp://ftp.ora.com/pub/examples/nutshell/ujip/doc/cjk.inf>. 195, 202, 623, 639
- [190] Ken LUNDE. *CJKV Information Processing*. O'Reilly & Associates, Inc, January 1999. 623, 639
- [191] Nicolas MARKEY. *Split your bibliography into categories*, December 2005. <mailto:markey@lsv.ens-cachan.fr>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/splitbib/splitbib.pdf>. 57, 222, 624, 640
- [192] Nicolas MARKEY. *Tame the BeaST (The B to X of BibT<sub>E</sub>X)*, June 2005. <mailto:markey@lsv.ens-cachan.fr>. Available from: [http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/bibtex/tamethebeast/ttb\\_en.pdf](http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/bibtex/tamethebeast/ttb_en.pdf). 195, 199, 624, 640
- [193] Sven MATTISSON. *S<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X: Swedish speaking version of L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X* [online], November 1989. Available from: <http://ftp.dante.de/tex-archive/language/swedish/slatex/slatex.1>. <mailto:sven@tde.lu.se>. 41, 222, 523, 624, 640
- [194] Rowland McDONNELL. *The sectsty package v2.0.2*, April 2002. <mailto:rowland.mcdonnell@physics.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/sectsty/>. 50, 67, 85, 128, 222, 236, 256, 624, 640
- [195] Surapant MEKNAVIN, Theppitak KAROONBOONYANAN, Chanop SILPA-ANAN, and Veerathanabutr POONLAP. *The thailatex package*, March 2006. <mailto:surapan@nectec.or.th>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/thailatex/>. 223, 523, 619, 624, 639, 640, 642, 646
- [196] Frank MITTELBACH. *ε-T<sub>E</sub>X: Guidelines for future T<sub>E</sub>X*. *TUGboat*, 11(3):337–345, September 1990. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-3/tb29mitt.pdf>. 625, 640



- [197] Frank MITTELBACH. *Comments on “Filenames for Fonts”* [29]. *TUGboat*, 13(1):51–53, April 1992. Available from:  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb13-1/tb34mittfont.pdf>. 625, 640
- [198] Frank MITTELBACH. *An environment for multicolumn output*, July 2000.  
<mailto:Frank.Mittelbach@latex-project.org>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/required/tools/multicol.pdf>. 87, 115, 625, 640
- [199] Frank MITTELBACH. *The doc and shortverb packages*, January 2004. Available from:  
<http://www.tug.org/tex-archive/macros/latex/base/doc.dtx>. 625, 640
- [200] Frank MITTELBACH, Denys DUCHIER, Johannes L. BRAAMS, Marcin WOLIŃSKI, and Mark WOODING. *The docstrip program*, January 2004. Available from:  
<http://www.tug.org/tex-archive/macros/latex/base/docstrip.dtx>. 596, 607, 625, 637, 638, 640, 641, 652
- [201] Frank MITTELBACH, Michel GOOSSENS, Johannes L. BRAAMS, David CARLISLE, and Chris A. ROWLEY. *The L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X Companion 2*. Tools and Techniques for Computer Typesetting. Addison-Wesley Professional, Reading, Massachusetts, second edition, April 2004. 29, 141, 195, 210, 215, 220, 413, 596, 597, 615, 625, 637, 638, 640, 645
- [202] Frank MITTELBACH, Michel GOOSSENS, Johannes L. BRAAMS, David CARLISLE, and Chris A. ROWLEY. *Der L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X-Begleiter*. Pearson Studium, second edition, October 2005. German version. 596, 597, 615, 625, 637, 638, 640, 645
- [203] Frank MITTELBACH, Michel GOOSSENS, Johannes L. BRAAMS, David CARLISLE, and Chris A. ROWLEY. *L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X Companion*. Pearson Education France, Paris, second edition, 2005. French translation by Jacques ANDRÉ, Benoît BELET, Jean-Côme CHARPENTIER, Jean-Michel HUFFLEN, and Yves SOULET. 573, 594, 595, 596, 597, 615, 616, 625, 637, 638, 639, 640, 641, 645, 648
- [204] Frank MITTELBACH and Chris A. ROWLEY. *Language Information in Structured Documents: A Model for Mark-up and Rendering*. *TUGboat*, 18(3):199–205, September 1997. Available from:  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb18-3/tb56lang.pdf>. 625, 640, 645
- [205] Young Joon MOON. *How to make and view a Japanese PDF file*, June 2002.  
<mailto:director@research-j.org>. Available from: <http://e-japanese-online.com/english/japanese-computing/platex/Free-Japanese-PDF-authoring-EV003.pdf>. 626, 640
- [206] Sergei O. NAUMOV. *LaTeX2e support for LH family of fonts*, April 1995. Available from: <http://web.mit.edu/texsrc/source/latex/LH/russian.sty>. 515, 633, 640
- [207] Frank NEUKAM, Markus KOHM, Axel KIELHORN, and Jens-Uwe MORAWSKI. *The KOMA-Script Bundle*, March 2005. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/koma-script/scrguien.pdf>. 39, 47, 59, 71, 85, 137, 155, 195, 199, 208, 215, 222, 236, 237, 390, 577, 619, 626, 633, 639, 640
- [208] Heiko OBERDIEK. *PDF information and navigation elements with hyperref, pdfT<sub>E</sub>X, and thumbpdf*. In *EuroT<sub>E</sub>X'99 Proceedings*. TUG, 1999. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/doc/paper.pdf>. 85, 634, 640

- [209] Tobias OETIKER, Hubert PARTL, Helene HYNÄ, and Elisabeth SCHLEGL. *Une courte (?) introduction à L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>*. *Cahiers GUTenberg*, special issue number 2, February 2003. French translation of [210] by Matthieu HERRB, adaptation and complements by Daniel FLIPO. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/lshort/french/flshort-3.20.pdf>. 195, 614, 616, 634, 637, 638, 639, 640, 645
- [210] Tobias OETIKER, Hubert PARTL, Helene HYNÄ, and Elisabeth SCHLEGL. *The Not So Short Introduction to L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub>*, May 2006. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/lshort/english/lshort.pdf>. 195, 202, 209, 552, 616, 634, 637, 639, 640, 645
- [211] Mariuz OLKO and Marcin WOLIŃSKI. *L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> po polsku czyli P<sup>A</sup>L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X (wersja 1.3.1)*, May 2003. In polish. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/platex/polski.dtx>. 41, 220, 507, 634, 640, 641, 652
- [212] Tanguy ORTOLO and Jeanne LEGRAND. *L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X à 200%*. O'Reilly France, November 2006. Unavailable. 622, 635, 639, 640
- [213] Scott PAKIN. *How to Package Your L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X Package*, November 2004. <mailto:scott+dtx@pakin.org>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/dtxut/dtxtut.pdf>. 636, 640
- [214] Palash Baran PAL. *Bangtex: a package for typesetting documents in Bangla using the T<sub>E</sub>X/L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X systems* [online], January 2001. Available from: <http://www.saha.ac.in/theory/palashbaran.pal/bangtex/bangtex.html>. 41, 199, 441, 448, 636, 640
- [215] Anshuman PANDEY. *Typesetting Bengali in T<sub>E</sub>X*. *TUGboat*, 20(2):119–126, 1999. <mailto:apandey@u.washington.edu>. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb20-2/tb63pand.pdf>. 636, 640
- [216] Anshuman PANDEY. *Devanāgarī for T<sub>E</sub>X*, May 2006. <mailto:apandey@u.washington.edu>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/devanagari/velthuis/doc/deneric/velthuis/manual.pdf>. 41, 204, 207, 441, 459, 484, 636, 640
- [217] Minje Byeng-sen PARK. *Histoire de l'imprimerie coréenne des origines à 1910*. Maison-Neuve & Larose, Paris, September 2003. 478, 480, 482, 636, 640
- [218] Oren PATASHNIK. *BibT<sub>E</sub>Xing*, February 1988. Documentation for general BibT<sub>E</sub>X users. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/biblio/bibtex/contrib/doc/btxdoc.pdf>. 199, 637, 640
- [219] Oren PATASHNIK. *Designing BibT<sub>E</sub>X Styles*, February 1988. The part of BibT<sub>E</sub>X's documentation that's not meant for general users. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/biblio/bibtex/contrib/doc/btxhak.pdf>. 199, 637, 640
- [220] Jonathan PECHTA, Federico ZENITH, Holger DANIELSSON, and Jeroen WIJNHOUT. *CJK Support* [online], March 2006. Available from: <http://sourceforge.net/Documentation/html/cjk.html>. Part of [222]. 606, 637, 638, 640, 641, 652



- [221] Jonathan PECHTA, Federico ZENITH, Holger DANIELSSON, and Jeroen WIJNHOUT. *Document Encoding* [online], March 2006. Available from: <http://sourceforge.net/Documentation/html/lang.html>. Part of [222]. 606, 637, 638, 640, 641, 652
- [222] Jonathan PECHTA, Federico ZENITH, Holger DANIELSSON, and Jeroen WIJNHOUT. *The Kile Handbook* [online], March 2006. Available from: <http://sourceforge.net/Documentation/html/>. 552, 553, 606, 637, 638, 640, 641, 652
- [223] Kasper PEETERS. *HyperTeX FAQ* [online], March 2004. Available from: <http://arxiv.org/hypertext/>. 207, 224, 637, 640
- [224] Karel PÍŠKA. *Cyrillic Alphabets*. In Mimi BURBANK and Christina THIELE, editors, *Proceedings of TUG'96*, pages 1–7, Dubna, 1996. JINR. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb17-2/tb51pisk.pdf>. 596, 638, 640, 641, 650
- [225] John PLAICE and Yannis HARALAMBOUS. *The latest developments in  $\Omega$* . *TUGboat*, 17(2):181–183, June 1996. Available from: <http://omega.enstb.org/papers/latest-omega9papers/latest-omega96.pdf>. 218, 615, 638, 640, 641
- [226] John PLAICE and Yannis HARALAMBOUS. *Typesetting French, German and English in  $\Omega$* . In *Congrès EuroTeX'98*, volume 28-29 of *Cahiers GUTenberg*, St. Malo, March 1998. 218, 615, 638, 640, 641
- [227] Sebastian RAHTZ and Heiko OBERDIEK. *The hyperref package* [online], August 2003. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/applications/hyperref>. This page points to the package documentation and its distribution. 59, 69, 85, 207, 211, 224, 225, 234, 255, 394, 634, 640, 644
- [228] Sebastian RAHTZ and Heiko OBERDIEK. *Hypertext marks in  $\LaTeX$ : a manual for hyperref*, February 2004. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/doc/manual.pdf>. 85, 116, 634, 640, 644
- [229] Bernd RAICHLE, Rolf NIEPRASCHK, and Thomas HAFNER. *Fragen und Antworten (FAQ) über das Textsatzsystem  $\TeX$  und DANTE, Deutschsprachige Anwendervereinigung  $\TeX$  e.V.*, September 2003. Version 72. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/faq/de-tex-faq/de-tex-faq.pdf>. 615, 633, 638, 640, 644
- [230] Adrian REZUȘ and Bernd RAICHLE. *Romanian  $\TeX$* , October 1996. <mailto:adriaan@cs.kun.nl>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/language/romanian/RomanianTeX/romanian.dtx>. 509, 640, 644
- [231] Christian ROLLAND.  *$\LaTeX$  par la pratique*. O'Reilly France, October 1999. <mailto:Rolland.Christian@wanafoo.fr>. 640, 644
- [232] Chris A. ROWLEY. *Models and languages for formatted documents*. *TUGboat*, 20(3):189–195, September 1999. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb29-3/tb64rowl.pdf>. 640, 645
- [233] Young RYU. *The TX Fonts*, December 2000. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/fonts/txfonts/doc/txfontsdockA4.pdf>. 34, 640, 645

- [234] Eddie SAUDRAIS. *Et les fontes, man ? Gestion des fontes avec  $\text{\LaTeX}$  2 $\epsilon$* , June 2001.  
<mailto:eddie.saudrais@wanadoo.fr>. Available from:  
<http://perso.orange.fr/eddie.saudrais/latex/fontedoc.zip>. 640, 645
- [235] Eddie SAUDRAIS. *Le petit typographe rationnel*, 2005.  
<mailto:eddie.saudrais@wanadoo.fr>. Available from:  
<http://perso.orange.fr/eddie.saudrais/prepa/typo.pdf>. 640, 645
- [236] Martin SCHRÖDER. *The multitoc package*, June 1999.  
<mailto:martin.schroeder@acm.org>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/ms/multitoc.dtx>. 89, 640, 645
- [237] Elizabeth SCURFIELD, Lianyi SONG, and Charles GREThER. *Lire et écrire le chinois*. In Cécile DESPRAIRIES, editor, *Langues orientales*. Larousse, Paris, March 2006. 606, 615, 638, 640, 641, 646, 647
- [238] Michael SHELL and David HOADLEY. *Bib $\text{\TeX}$ ing Tips and FAQ*, January 2007. Available from: <http://www.ctan.org/tex-archive/biblio/bibtex/contrib/doc/btxFAQ.pdf>. 199, 616, 639, 640, 646
- [239] Axel SOMMERFELDT. *The caption2 package*, November 2005.  
<mailto:caption@sommerfee.de>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/caption/caption2.pdf>. 51, 69, 85, 200, 258, 641, 647
- [240] Axel SOMMERFELDT. *The caption package*, January 2006.  
<mailto:caption@sommerfee.de>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/caption/caption.pdf>. 51, 69, 85, 200, 258, 641, 647
- [241] Axel SOMMERFELDT. *Setzen von Abbildungs- und Tabellenbeschriftungen mit dem caption-Paket*, January 2006. <mailto:caption@sommerfee.de>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/caption/anleitung.pdf>. 85, 641, 647
- [242] D. P. STORY. *Using  $\text{\LaTeX}$  to Create Quality PDF Documents for the World Wide Web* [online], November 1999. Available from:  
<http://www.math.uakron/~dpstory/latx2pdf.html>. <mailto:dpstory@uakron.edu>. 641, 648
- [243] Apostolos SYROPOULOS, Antonis TSOLOMITIS, and Nick SOFRONIOU. *Digital Typography Using  $\text{\LaTeX}$* . Springer, October 2002. Available from:  
<http://ocean1.ee.duth.gr/LaTeXBook/>. 641, 647, 649, 651
- [244] Daniel TAUPIN<sup>†</sup>. *The varsects package*, November 1998. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/taupin/varsects.sty>. 50, 69, 85, 224, 236, 256, 641, 649
- [245] Karsten TINNEFELD. *The quotchap document style*, February 1998.  
<mailto:tinnefeld@irb.cs.uni-dortmund.de>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/quotchap/>. 50, 72, 85, 221, 237, 257, 641, 650

- [246] Mark TRETTIN. *Une liste des péchés des utilisateurs de  $\text{\LaTeX}$  2 $\epsilon$  (ou Commandes et extensions obsolètes, et quelques autres erreurs)*. <mailto:Mark@Trettin@gmx.de>, <mailto:juergen.fen@gmx.de> and <mailto:Yvon.Henel@wanadoo.fr>, June 2004. English translation by Jürgen FENN, french translation by Yvon HENEL. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/l2tabu/french/l2tabufr-heavy.pdf>. 610, 616, 638, 639, 641, 651
- [247] Mark TRETTIN. *An essential guide to  $\text{\LaTeX}$  2 $\epsilon$  usage (Obsolete commands and packages)*. <mailto:Mark@Trettin@gmx.de> and <mailto:juergen.fen@gmx.de>, June 2006. English translation by Jürgen FENN. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/info/l2tabu/english/l2tabuen.pdf>. 610, 638, 641, 651
- [248] GROUPE DE TRAVAIL TWS-TDS<sup>47</sup>. *TDS: une structure de répertoires pour les fichiers  $\text{\TeX}$* , June 2004. French translation of [249] by Jean-Côme CHARPENTIER, with a postface by Fabrice POPINEAU. Available from: <http://www.gutenberg.eu.org/publications/publicationsPDF/44-twg-tds.pdf>. 223, 229, 597, 638, 640, 641, 642, 651
- [249] TUG WORKING GROUP ON A  $\text{\TeX}$  DIRECTORY STRUCTURE (TWG-TDS). *A Directory Structure for  $\text{\TeX}$  Files*, June 2004. <mailto:tds@tug.org>. Available from: <http://www.tug.org/tds/tds.pdf>. 223, 229, 555, 641, 651
- [250] Hideo UMEKI. *The geometry package*, July 2002. <mailto:hideo.umeeki@toshiba.co.jp>. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/contrib/macros/latex/contrib/geometry/manual.pdf>. 115, 641, 651
- [251] *The Unicode Standard* [online], February 2006. Available from: <http://unicode.org>. 204
- [252] Piet VAN OOSTRUM.  *$\text{\TeX}$  Implementations*, November 2002. <mailto:piet@cs.uu.nl>, Department of Computer Science, Padualaan 14, De Uithof, PO Box 80.089, 3508 TB, Utrecht, The Netherlands. Available from: <http://www.cs.uu.nl/~piet/teximpl.pdf>. 641, 651
- [253] Thomas VAN OUDENHOVE DE SAINT GÉRY. *Bibliographie avec Bib $\text{\TeX}$* , 2003. Available from: [http://www.enstimac.fr/~vanouden/LaTeX/contrib/Pres\\_Bibtex.tar.gz](http://www.enstimac.fr/~vanouden/LaTeX/contrib/Pres_Bibtex.tar.gz). 641, 651
- [254] Suki K. VENKATESAN. *Moving from bytes to words to semantics*. *TUGboat*, 26(2):165–169, August 2005. Proceedings of the 2005 Annual Meeting. 478, 641, 651
- [255] André VIOLANTE.  *$\text{\LaTeX}$ : Notions de base*. Dunod, January 2007. Unavailable. 641, 652
- [256] Carl F. VOEGELIN and Florence M. VOEGELIN. *Classification and Index of the World Languages*. Elsevier, Amsterdam, December 1977. 641, 652
- [257] Vladimir VOLOVICH, Werner LEMBERG, and  $\text{\LaTeX}$ 3 PROJECT TEAM. *Cyrillic language support in  $\text{\LaTeX}$* , March 1999. Available from: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/doc/cyrguide.pdf>. 195, 622, 639, 641, 652

---

<sup>47</sup>TWS-TDS = TUG Working Group on a  $\text{\TeX}$  Directory Structure (TWG-TDS).

- [258] Stephan P. VON BECHTOLSHEIM. *T<sub>E</sub>X in practice: Comments on a 4-volumes, 1400-pages series on T<sub>E</sub>X*. *TUGboat*, 11(3):409–412, September 1990.  
<http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb11-3/tb29bechtolsheim.pdf>. 641, 652
- [259] Stephan P. VON BECHTOLSHEIM. *T<sub>E</sub>X in Practice*. Springer Verlag, Berlin, Germany / Heidelberg, Germany / London, UK / etc., 1992.
1. Basics.
  2. Paragraphs, Maths and Fonts.
  3. Tokens, Macros.
  4. Output Routines.
- (Une approche progressive des secrets de T<sub>E</sub>X). 260, 641, 652
- [260] Staszek WAWRYKIEWICZ. *P<sub>E</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X i pdfP<sub>E</sub>T<sub>E</sub>X*, May 2005. In polish,  
<mailto:staw@gust.org.pl>. Available from:  
<http://www.gust.org.pl/doc/poczatki/platex.html>. 41, 220, 507, 641, 652
- [261] Daphne WEST and Anna SITNIKOVA-RIOLAND. *Lire et écrire le russe*. In Cécile DESPRAIRIES, editor, *Langues orientales*. Larousse, Paris, January 2006. 606, 638, 640, 641, 646, 652
- [262] Graham WILLIAMS. *Graham Williams' T<sub>E</sub>X Catalogue*. *TUGboat*, 21(1):17–90, 2000.  
 Last version at: <http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/help/Catalogue/catalogue.html>.  
 Available from: <http://www.tug.org/TUGboat/Articles/tb21-1/tb66catal.pdf>. 641, 652
- [263] Peter R. WILSON. *The stdclsdv package*, July 2000.  
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/stdclsdv/stdclsdv.pdf>. 221, 222, 641, 652
- [264] Peter R. WILSON. *The needspace package*, January 2003.  
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/misc/needspace.sty>. 54, 215, 641, 652
- [265] Peter R. WILSON. *The tocloft package*, September 2003.  
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/tocloft/tocloft.pdf>. 42, 61, 68, 75, 85, 115, 128, 214, 215, 224, 390, 641, 652
- [266] Peter R. WILSON. *The abstract package*, April 2004.  
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/abstract/abstract.pdf>. 50, 67, 85, 197, 235, 393, 641, 652
- [267] Peter R. WILSON. *The appendix package*, April 2004.  
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/appendix/appendix.pdf>. 60, 85, 198, 235, 389, 641, 652
- [268] Peter R. WILSON. *The tocbibind package*, May 2004.  
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/tocbibind/tocbibind.pdf>. 47, 85, 92, 97, 101, 140, 213, 215, 223, 234, 389, 641, 652

- [269] Peter R. WILSON. *The tocvsec2 package*, May 2004.  
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/tocvsec2/tocvsec2.pdf>. 641, 652
- [270] Peter R. WILSON. *The ccaption package*, March 2005.  
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/ccaption/ccaption.pdf>. 51, 69, 85, 200, 259, 641, 652
- [271] Peter R. WILSON. *The docmfp package*, March 2005.  
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/docmfp/docmfp.pdf>. 641, 652
- [272] Peter R. WILSON. *The Memoir Class*, September 2005.  
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/memoir/memman.pdf>. 62, 69, 85, 210, 234, 236, 259, 268, 392, 641, 652
- [273] Peter R. WILSON. *The Memoir Class (Addendum)*, December 2005.  
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/memoir/memmanadd.pdf>. 62, 69, 85, 210, 234, 236, 259, 268, 392, 641, 652
- [274] Peter R. WILSON. *The romannum package*, May 2005.  
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/romannum/romannum.pdf>. 50, 72, 85, 221, 237, 257, 641, 652
- [275] Peter R. WILSON and Donald ARSENEAU. *The ifmtarg package*, March 2000.  
<mailto:herries.press@earthlink.net>, <mailto:asnd@triumf.ca>. Available from:  
<http://www.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/misc/ifmtarg.sty>. 208, 260, 594, 637, 641, 652
- [276] Charlie S. ZENDER. *L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X Cheat Sheet*, August 2006. <mailto:zender@uci.edu>,  
Department of Earth Science, University of California, Irvine, CA 92697-3100.  
Available from: <http://www.dust.ess.uci.edu/doc/ltx/ltx.pdf>. 641, 652
- [277] Vadim V. ZHYTNIKOV. *The LHCYR collection* [online], December 1998. Available  
from: <http://ftp.dante.de/tex-archive/macros/latex/contrib/supported/lhcyrl/>.  
<mailto:vvzhy@td.lpi.ac.ru>. 515, 516, 641, 652

# Changes History

## ★ version 00

- 1990/10/01
  - Original version, by Nigel WARD.
- 1991/11/01
  - Revised to reuse `\chapter`, `\section`, `\subsection` commands transparently, generate toc-file-name automatically, assorted other cleanup (by Dan JURAFSKY).

## ★ version 01

- 1993/06/01
  - New design, to avoid allocating a newwrite, or file descriptor, for each chapter (a deadly sin!) (Jean-Pierre F. DRUCBERT).
  - Added `\chapterend` to terminate the scope of a minitoc. (*If you forgot putting `\chapterend` at the end of each chapter, an entry for the next chapter will appear in each minitoc.*) (Thanks to Yufan Hu).
  - Replaced the `minipage` environment by a `verse` environment, to allow a minitoc being split across pages.
  - All the layout of the minitoc is in the command, so if somebody wants to redefine that layout, he has just to rewrite it (and only it).
  - You can inhibit the minitoc for the next chapter by preceding it with `\minitocno`. (`\minitocyces` is useless for the user, because it is implicit *after* the `\chapter*` pseudo-chapters).
  - Problems: you *must* have `\chapterend` to terminate each chapter with a minitoc. How about avoiding this constraint?
  - The depth of the minitoc is user-adjustable with the counter `minitocdepth` (similar to `tocdepth` for the table of contents).
  - At least three passes (3) of  $\LaTeX$  are necessary to get correct minitocs (the first pass creates the `.mtc(X)` files, the second uses them (but they may contain wrong page numbers) and recreates them, the third should be ok).
  - Works with `\chapter[xxx]{yyy}` and floating bodies. Works with two columns (but the minitoc is composed in one column; how to make it to spread over the two columns?).

- Some mods added to work with xr (external references). xr version 5 is much more tolerant.

★ **version 02**

- 1993/07/05
  - Added compatibility with hangcaption (the package hangcaption (if present) must be loaded *before* the minitoc package). *Beware* to options modifying \@caption.

※ **version 03**

- 1993/07/09
  - Version 3 not released (buggy).

★ **version 04**

- 1993/07/09
  - Added \if@realch to avoid contents lines from pseudo-chapters to go into the toc.
  - The package mtcoff allows you to use a L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X document with minitoc commands and to make them transparent: just replace the minitoc package by mtcoff.

★ **version 05**

- 1993/07/13
  - Added a selection mechanism to not write spurious things in the minitocs.

★ **version 06**

- 1993/07/15
  - Fixed problems about chapters in the toc, removed obsolete \caption stuff (filters are much better) added compatibility with toch (toch makes a table of chapters; if used, must be loaded *before* minitoc; in fact, it is the ancestor of the shorttoc [11] package).

★ **version 07**

- 1993/07/22
  - (*major differences*) Completely rewritten, using tricks from xr (the version 5, by David CARLISLE). The info for minitocs is directly stolen from the .toc file. \chapterend and \minitocno are suppressed, \minitoc, \dominitoc and \faketableofcontents added.

★ **version 08**

- 1993/07/29
  - Spacing adjustments.

★ **version 09**

- 1993/08/04

- Added mods for MS-DOS (search for MS-DOS, uncomment; search for UNIX, comment out). MS-DOS allows only 3 characters for extensions in file names (what a pity!).

★ **version 10**

- 1993/08/05
  - Works now with appendices. Detects now the obsolete versions of `latex.tex` (`\@inputcheck` or `\reset@font` not defined).

★ **version 11**

- 1993/08/18
  - Added `\mtcSfont`, font for section entries, `\mtcSSfont` for subsection entries, `\mtcSSSfont` for subsubsection entries, `\mtcPfont` for paragraph entries, `\mtcSPfont` for subparagraph entries.

★ **version 12**

- 1993/12/16
  - Use `\kern` in place of `\vspace*`, and added penalties (`\nopagebreak`) to avoid a page break just before last `\mtc@rule`.
  - Also added a `samepage` environnement.
  - Removed old commented out lines from previous versions.

★ **version 13**

- 1993/12/17
  - Added `\minilof` and `\minilot` stuff. For MS-DOS, uncomment the definition of `\SHORTEXT`.

★ **version 14**

- 1994/01/03
  - Corrected space under `minitoc/lof/lot` and added a `\raggedright` setting to avoid “underfull” warnings.
  - Corrected some spacing problems (avoiding ~’s). `\mtifont` is changed from `\normalsize\bf` to `\large\bf`.
  - Some modifications suggested by Donald ARSENEAU (thanks): `\@newread` becomes `\newread`, not outer version of `\newread`; `\empty` replaced by `\relax` in the spare definition of `\reset@font`.
  - Removed the setting of `\clubpenalty` and `\widowpenalty` to 10 000 (done by `\samepage`), and `\noindent`.
  - Simplified processing of optional argument in `\minitoc`, `\minilof` and `\minilot`.

★ **version 15**

- 1994/01/27
  - Added `\parttoc`, `\partlof` and `\partlot` for books, `\secttoc`, `\sectlof` and `\sectlot` for articles, with some commands and parameters parallel to those for mini-tables.



- 1994/01/27
  - Added `\parttoc`, `\partlof` and `\partlot` for books, `\secttoc`, `\sectlof` and `\sectlot` for articles, with some commands and parameters parallel to those for mini-tables.
- ★ **version 16**
  - 1994/02/02
    - Bug fixes (typos).
- ★ **version 17**
  - 1994/06/23
    - ‘n’ (null) synonym of ‘e’ (empty) in the optional argument of `\minitoc`, `\dominitoc`, and siblings.
    - Compatibility with “ $\text{\LaTeX 2}_{\epsilon}$ ”. Thanks to Denis B. ROEGEL (who found the problem) and Frank MITTELBACH (who gave the hints to solve).
- ★ **version 18**
  - 1994/06/26
    - Make minitoc really compatible with  $\text{\LaTeX 2}_{\epsilon}$ .
    - Introduce the language files as options. Many thanks to Michel GOOSSENS (via Frank MITTELBACH) who was inspired by the code of the babel package (by Johannes L. BRAAMS).
- ★ **version 19**
  - 1994/08/16
    - Added stuff for numbering of chapters (parts, sections) not starting at 1. `\firstchapteris` etc. commands added.
    - `\mtcrule`, `\nomtcrule` etc. commands added.
    - Corrected a bug in `\c@mti`.
    - Corrected `mtcswedish.sty` (Jan Michael RYNNING).
    - Corrected appendix in articles.
- ★ **version 20**
  - 1994/08/25
    - Corrected spacing before and after minitocs and siblings.
    - Added the `\mtcpagenumbers` and `\nomtcpagenumbers` commands (and siblings) to make minitocs with/without page numbers. Default: with page numbers.
    - Corrected (difficult bug) appendix in articles.
    - Corrected vertical spacing.
    - Corrected a problem with chapters numbered with uppercase roman numbers.
- ★ **version 21**
  - 1994/09/07

- Corrected typos in `minitoc` and `minitoc.tex`.

**★ version 22**

- 1994/10/10
  - Corrected typos in `minitoc`.

**★ version 23**

- 1994/11/08
  - Added a missing line in `\sectlof`.
  - Works with document classes resetting chapter (or section) number at each part (thanks to Denis B. ROEGEL).
  - Added the notion of “absolute numbering” for the mini-tables.
  - Removed stuff for `\firstchapteris` and co. These commands are obsolete.
  - Removed appendix stuff.

**★ version 24**

- 1994/12/21
  - The `\protect` commands have been removed from the `.toc`, `.lot` and `.lot` files, so some internal macros have been corrected to be compatible with the  $\text{\LaTeX}$  2 $\epsilon$  release of December 1994. Thanks to Denis B. ROEGEL who did the work.

**★ version 25**

- 1996/09/13
  - Updated `mtcnorsk.sty` and added `mtcnynorsk.sty` on a suggestion from Dag LANGMYHR.

**★ version 26**

- 1996/11/14
  - Language specific files are now named `language.mld` (replacing `mtclanguage.sty`) because they are not packages and it makes shorter names.
  - Added `breton`, `estonian`, `germanb`, `greek`, `irish`, `russianb`, `scottish`, `lower` and `upper sorbian`; renamed “esperanto” by “esperant” like in the `babel` package.

**★ version 27**

- 1996/12/20
  - Corrections for starred sectionning commands.
  - `english.mld` loaded as default language.
  - Added `vietnam.mld` and `arab.mld`.
  - Renamed `minitocoff` into `mtcoff` to keep the name short.

**★ version 28**

- 1997/10/29

- Added the afrikaan(s), brazil, and ethiopia(n) languages.
  - Added autoconfiguration of extensions.
  - Added the `shorttext` package option.
  - Added *coffee* stuff.
  - Added `\addstarred` stuff (for starred chapter stuff).
  - Fixed bug in `parttocs`.
- 1998/06/15
  - A typo corrected by Donald ARSENEAU: `{\let@dottedtocline@undottedtocline}{}` should probably be `{\let\@dottedtocline\@undottedtocline}{}` (a backslash was missing after `\let`). Thanks to him.
  - Added the bahasa language.
- 1998/12/03
  - Added the `tight` and `loose` package options.
- ★ version 29
  - 1999/03/16
    - Added the bicig, buryat, mongol and russianc languages.
  - 1999/06/28
    - Added the armenian language (from `ArmTeX`).
  - 1999/07/23
    - Added the `dotted/undotted` package options (default: `dotted`).
  - 1999/07/29
    - Added the lithuanian language.
- ★ version 30
  - 1999/12/06
    - Added the basque, ngermanb, serbian, ukraineb, and welsh languages.
    - Corrected a bug in `\sltname` definition (`mlt` should be `slt`).
- ★ version 31
  - 2000/04/04
    - Added compatibility with the `hyperref` package, thanks to Heiko OBERDIEK, who has also simplified some code and fixed the infamous `\chapter*` bug.
- ★ version 32
  - 2000/08/08
    - Added very (too) numerous new commands for the mini-table features: `\beforeparttoc`, `\beforepartlof`, `\beforepartlot`, `\afterparttoc`, `\afterpartlof`, `\afterpartlot`, `\thispageparttocstyle`, `\thispagepartlofstyle`, and `\thispagepartlotstyle`.
    - Documentation improved by Stefan ULRICH.
    - `\nomtcrule` corrected.

**★ version 33**

- 2000/12/07
  - Added new adjustment commands: `\mtcaddchapter`, `\mtcaddsection`, and `\mtcaddpart`. These commands add stuff in the `.toc`, `.lof` and `.lot` files for the `\chapter*` (`\section*` and `\part*`) problem. From a suggestion by Karl F. EVERITT.
- 2000/12/08
  - Corrected a feature in `\mtcaddchapter` and co. with a blank optional argument.

**★ version 34**

- 2000/12/13
  - Added in the documentation a section for use with the `tocbibind` package.
  - Added `.mld` files for alternate names of languages: so, `american.mld` just loads `english.mld`, which contains the real definitions.

**★ version 35**

- 2001/01/09
  - Added macros to test if a file is “empty” (i.e., empty, blank or inexistent) or “non empty” (i.e., useful). I used some code from Stephan P. VON BECHTOLSHEIM.
  - Added the `checkfiles/nocheckfiles` package options.
  - Replaced `\The@chapter` by `\The@mtc`.
- 2001/02/26
  - Added `bulgarian.mld`, `hebrew.mld`, `icelandic.mld`, `latin.mld`, and `samin.mld`.
- 2001/03/09
  - Added `\mtcselectlanguage`.
- 2001/06/01
  - Fixed the `estonian` package option (missing).
- 2001/07/04
  - Added the `interlingua` language.

**★ version 36**

- 2002/02/11
  - Corrected an interaction with `\tableofcontents` which creates a `\chapter*` or a `\section*`, perturbing `mtc/stc` counters (problem signalled by Frank MITTELBACH).
- 2002/02/18
  - Corrected a spacing problem with empty titles (problem signalled by Frank MITTELBACH).
  - Workaround for the `\parttoc-\chapter*` problem.
- 2002/02/19

- Added `\mtcskip` and `\mtcskipamount`.
- 2002/02/27
  - Fixed test for empty files.
- 2002/03/13
  - Added the `bangla` language.
- 2002/03/15
  - Reduced depth of `\mtc@strutbox`.
- ※ **version 37**
- 2003/01/24
  - Version #37 dropped.
- ★ **version 38**
- 2003/01/24
  - `pt` becomes `\@pt` and `0pt` becomes `\z@`.
  - `\hrule` and `\vrule` replaced by `\rule` (L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X).
  - Added `\mtc@zrule` for zero-dims rules.
  - Added the `frenchb` language (synonym of `french`).
- 2003/01/30
  - Changed the test for empty titles.
  - Added the `flsection` and `flsectionb` package options.
- 2003/01/31
  - The `tight` and `loose` package options are applied to `\parttoc` (Thomas LEONHARDT).
- 2003/02/07
  - Package options `flsection` and `flsectionb` removed and replaced by the `insection` package option (like `flsectionb`).
- 2003/02/11
  - Corrected numbering of SLF, SLT.
- 2003/02/20
  - Added `frenchle` and `frenchpro` language options (synonyms of `french`).
  - Corrected `secttocs`, at least.
- 2003/03/18
  - Corrected some vertical spacings and struts (I added some mods by Frank MITTELBACH, many thanks to him.). A lot of cleaning remains to do, but the release seems to be needed now.
- ★ **version 39**
- 2003/04/09
  - Modern font commands for compatibility with the `memoir` class.
  - `\nomtcpagenumbers` and `memoir` class.
- 2003/06/08

- Added `\@filesfalse` and `\mtc@hook@beforeinputfile` for the `notocite` package (requested by Donald ARSENEAU); added the `notocite` package option (loads the `notocite` package).
- 2004/09/08
  - Added language options and `.mld` files for dialects: `canadian (english)`, `acadian`, `acadien`, `canadien (french)`, `naustrian`, `ngerman (ngermanb)`.
  - Added comments in `.mld` files using special fonts.
  - Documentation: added a paragraph about making a TOC for appendices, eventually not listed in the main TOC.
- 2004/09/17
  - Corrections in the documentation; corrections about rules.

## ★ version 40

- 2004/12/09
  - Added the japanese and castillan languages.
  - Removed the test on the presence of the `multicol` package in `minitoc.tex`, because `multicol` is a required package.
  - Added a figure in `minitoc.tex` about the need of three compilations.
  - Added some infos in `minitoc.bug`.
  - Added a paragraph about a problem with the `appendix` package.
- 2004/12/13
  - Updated `fminitoc.bib` and `minitoc.bib`.
- 2004/12/14
  - Added the `hints` package option. This option is still experimental; your advice is welcome.
- 2004/12/20
  - Added `fminitoc.pdf` (french documentation in PDF format).

## ★ version 41

- 2005/01/05
  - Corrections in documentation.
  - Message added if some sectionning commands are not available.
  - Replaced `\typeout` commands in `minitoc` by the `\PackageInfo` or `\PackageWarning` commands; with the line number when useful (`\@gobble` if no line number). Hence, the package is less verbose (`\PackageInfo` writes only in the `document.log` file, not on the terminal).
- 2005/01/06
  - Added the `\mtcsetfont` (Benjamin BAYART) and `\mtcsetttitlefont` commands, with a much simpler syntax.
- 2005/01/10
  - Added bibliography.
- 2005/01/11

- $\mathcal{AMS}$  classes: `amsart` and `amsproc` are incompatible with `minitoc`, `amsbook` needs precautions.
- 2005/01/12
  - Added `\mtcsetformat`.
- 2005/01/18
  - Added `\mtcsettitle`.
  - Added a hint for recommending the `insection` package option.
- 2005/01/19
  - Added a hint about the presence of `\dominitoc` and `co`.
  - Added a hint about consistency of `\dominitoc`/`\minitoc` and `co`.
  - Improved documentation about hints.
- 2005/01/20
  - Added a hint about using short extensions with more than 99 parts or 99 chapters or 99 sections.
- 2005/01/25
  - `\ptifont: \Huge\bfseries` becomes `\LARGE\bfseries`.
- 2005/01/26
  - Added `\mtcsetpagenumbers`.
- 2005/01/28
  - Added many new language files: `serbianc.mld`, `chinese1.mld`, `chinese2.mld`, `hangul1.mld`, `hangul2.mld`, `hangul3.mld`, `hangul4.mld`, `hanja1.mld`, `hanja2.mld`, `japanese2.mld`, `japanese3.mld`, `japanese4.mld`, `japanese5.mld`, `thai.mld`.
- 2005/02/02
  - Added `\mtcsetrules`.
- 2005/02/03
  - Added `\plfrule`, `\noplfrule`, `\mlfrule`, `\nomlfrule`, `\slfrule`, `\noslfrule`, `\pltrule`, `\nopltrule`, `\mltrule`, `\nomltrule`, `\sltrule`, `\nosltrule`.
- 2005/02/04
  - Added the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment.
- 2005/02/08
  - Added `latvian.mld`, `letton.mld`, `greek-mono.mld`, `greek-polydemo.mld`, `greek-polykatha.mld`, `polish2.mld`, `russian2m.mld`, and `russian2o.mld` as new language files.
- 2005/02/09
  - Added the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.
- 2005/02/10
  - Added tests on the `mtchideinmain*` environments.
- 2005/02/14
  - Added `\mtcfixindex`.

※ **version 42**

- 2005/02/14
  - Version 42 not released.
  - Replaced “language” by “langue” in the french documentation.
- 2005/02/15
  - Fixed a minor typo.
- 2005/02/16
  - Upgraded `\mtcfixindex`.
- 2005/02/21
  - Added `\mtcsettitle`, forgotten to be inserted in v41.

★ **version 43**

- 2005/02/21
  - Version 43: consolidation of v40, v41 and v42.
- 2005/02/24
  - Fixed a big bug in `\mtcsetformat`.
  - Fixed a bug in `mtcoeff.sty` about `\mtcfixindex`.
- 2005/03/02
  - Fixed the `\mtcset...` macros.
  - Moved history to the end of package code.
  - Added the `INSTALL` file and a chapter about installation.
- 2005/03/07
  - Fixed a typo (Benjamin BAYART).
  - Completed the hint about consistency of `\dominitoc`/`\minitoc` and `co`.
- 2005/03/08
  - Added a hint about consistency of `\minitoc` and `\tableofcontents`.
- 2005/03/09
  - Added comments about fonts.
- 2005/03/10
  - Corrections in documentation.
- 2005/03/11
  - Added `\mtcsetfeature`.
- 2005/03/14
  - Added `bulgarianb.mld` (upper bulgarian).
- 2005/03/15
  - Added `*[-\baselineskip]` after the `\\` after the top rule of each part level mini-table.
- 2005/03/16
  - Corrections in the arguments of `\mtcsetfeature`.



- 2005/03/18
  - Removed `\markboth` for `minitocs (...)` and `secttocs (...)`.
- 2005/03/21
  - Added `spanish2.mld`.
- 2005/03/22
  - Added a hint for the `abstract` package.
- 2005/04/07
  - Corrected the `stc@verse` environment.
  - Added `finnish2.mld`, `latin2.mld`, and `magyar2.mld`.
- 2005/04/08
  - Renamed `portuges.mld` as `portugues.mld`.
- 2005/04/12
  - Correction in `\mtcskip`.
  - First version in `.dtx` format.
- 2005/04/14
  - Removed `\ypart`, `\ychapter`, `\ysection`, and stuff; unused.
- 2005/05/11
  - Corrected a typo in `\@dosectlot`.
  - Added `\mtcfixglossary`.
  - Print the documentation with “oneside” to have all marginal notes on left. Added the (extended to 54 floats) code of `morefloats` (Don HOSEK) to allow more `marginpars` and floats.
  - Added `minitoc.ist` to format the index correctly.
- 2005/05/26
  - Fixed rules in `parttocs`, `partlofs` and `partlots`.
- 2005/05/30
  - Fixed chapter-level entries in `parttocs`, when page numbers must be removed.
  - Added a hint about the `sectsty` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
- 2005/06/01
  - Added a hint about attempts to insert empty mini-tables.
  - Added a hint about the use of obsolete commands.
  - The mini-lists of figures or tables should not be printed empty even if `tocdepth < 1`.
- 2005/06/02
  - Added the notion of depth for mini-tables of figures/tables.
  - Added `\mtcsetdepth`.
  - The `hints` option is the default and no more considered as experimental.
- 2005/06/03
  - Added an error message in `\mtcsetdepth` if the counter is not available.
- 2005/06/06

- Added `portuges.mld`, which loads `portugues.mld`.
- 2005/06/07
  - Added three variants for the malayalam language: `malayalam-keli.mld`, `malayalam-rachana.mld`, and `malayalam-rachana2.mld`.
- 2005/06/14
  - Added method for bilingual documentation.
- 2005/06/15
  - Added `fminitoc.ist` to format correctly the index in french.
- 2005/06/16
  - Changed “Liste des Tables” by “Liste des Tableaux” in `french.mld`, and in the french documentation, to stick to the choices of the `babel` package.
- 2005/06/17
  - The file `fminitoc.dtx` is now generated by `minitoc.ins`.
- 2005/06/21
  - Added “OUI”, “NON”, “oui”, “non”, “O”, and “o” as true/false keywords.
  - Compacted the code about detection of short/long extensions.
- 2005/06/22
  - Added “VRAI”, “FAUX”, “vrai”, “faux”, “V”, and “v” as true/false keywords.
- 2005/06/23
  - Correctly set the `\ifFTR` flag to have the names of months in the right language in the bibliography.
- 2005/06/29
  - Set the flag `\mtcoffwarn@true` in `mtcoff` if a command `\mtcadd...` is found.
- 2005/07/01
  - Added `castillian.mld`.
  - Renamed `portugues.mld` as `portuguese.mld`.
- 2005/07/11
  - Added `brazilian.mld`, `british.mld`, `UKenglish.mld`, and `USenglish.mld`.
- 2005/07/12
  - Suppressed “General:” in the changes history.
- 2005/07/13
  - Replaced some `\PackageWarning` commands by `\PackageInfo`.
- 2005/07/18
  - Restoring the correspondence of each language option with a `.mld` file.
- 2005/07/20
  - Improving the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.
- 2005/07/21

- Removing unused some flags `\if@mtc@setpagenumbers@act@` and `\if@mtc@setrules@act@`.
  - Added the `\decrementptc`, `\decrementmtc`, and `\decrementstc` commands.
- 2005/07/22
  - Corrected a bug in `mtcoff`.
  - Improved some messages in `mtcoff`.
  - Added a test on the version of the `placeins` package.
- 2005/08/23
  - Added a note about `\FloatBarrier`.
- 2005/08/24
  - Added a note about an alignment problem in the `minitoc`. Updated `minitoc.bug`.
  - Made two versions of the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments, depending of the presence of the corresponding depth counter.
  - The `memoir` class is incompatible if too recent.
- 2005/08/25
  - Added a comment about the position of the `\do...` preparation commands.
  - Corrections in the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.
- 2005/08/26
  - Added `guarani.mld`.
- 2005/08/29
  - Added `\incrementptc`, `\incrementmtc`, and `\incrementstc`.
  - Added an optional argument to `\adjustptc`, `\adjustmtc`, and `\adjuststc`.
  - Added the `k-tight` and `k-loose` package options.
- 2005/09/02
  - Added a patch for the recent version of the `memoir` class.
- 2005/09/06
  - Added `spanish3.mld`.
- 2005/09/08
  - Use `\mtcselectlanguage` in language options and in “secondary” `.mld` files.
- 2005/09/09
  - Added `\mtcloadmlo` to be used in some `.mld` files to load a `.mlo` file.
- 2005/09/12
  - Added a test to forbid direct calls of `\mtcloadmlo` by the user.
- 2005/09/13
  - Added `farsi1.mld`, `farsi1.mlo`, `farsi2.mld`, and `farsi2.mlo`.
  - Added a note about the `rubber` tool.
- 2005/09/15

- Added `mtcglo.ist` to format the glossary.

- 2005/09/16
  - Removed the page numbers in the glossary. Done in the `*mk` scripts.

★ version 44

- 2005/09/26
  - Changes history (glossary) typeset in `RaggedRight`.
- 2005/09/27
  - Added `germanb2.mld`, `ngermanb2.mld`, `norsk2.mld`, and `nynorsk2.mld`.
- 2005/09/28
  - New method for history: embedded lists on 3 levels.
  - Removed `mtcglo.ist`.
- 2005/09/29
  - Cleaned the `*mk` scripts.
  - Added the `listfiles` package option.
- 2005/09/30
  - Corrected typos.
  - Added the name of the `.maf` file in the message of the `listfiles` package option.
  - Improved the cleaning in the `*mk` scripts, using a `.maf` file.
- 2005/10/03
  - Load the patch for the `memoir` class only if necessary; do not load it if `memoir` is dated after 2005/09/25.
  - Added a remark in the FAQ chapter (and `minitoc.bug`) about precautions to take with the starred sectionning commands.
- 2005/10/04
  - Added the `nolistfiles` package option.
  - Added a hint about the `caption`, `caption2`, `ccaption`, and `mcaption` packages (they must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
- 2005/10/05
  - Fixed typos in the documentation.
  - Fixed some marginal notes in the commented code.
- 2005/10/06
  - Minor corrections in the documentation.
  - Use the `xargs` Unix command in the `*mk` scripts to remove the auxiliary files.
- 2005/10/07
  - Minor corrections in the documentation.
  - Added a short intro to the “Frequently Asked Questions” chapter and to `minitoc.bug`.
- 2005/11/02

- Minor corrections in the documentation.
- 2005/11/04
  - Minor corrections in the documentation.
- 2005/11/07
  - Begin adding the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/11/08
  - Added the french L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X Companion [203].
- 2005/11/09
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Adding `minitoc.pre` in `minitoc.l`.
  - Adding a note about the need of running `imk` before `emk` or `fmk`.
- 2005/11/10
  - Fixed typos in the documentation.
  - Added a note about a problem with `minitoc`, `hyperref` and `memoir`.
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/11/14
  - Fixed typos in the documentation.
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Improve the notes about the `memoir` class.
- 2005/11/15
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Improve the notes about the `memoir` class.
  - Added `\plfSfont`, `\pltSfont`, `\mlfSfont`, `\mltSfont`, `\slfSfont`, and `\sltSfont` for subfigures and subtables entries in the mini-tables.
- 2005/11/16
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Fixed a bug about fonts for subfigures and subtables entries in the mini-tables.
  - Added `bicig2.mld`, `bi the.mld`, `manju.mld`, `xalx.mld`, and `khalkha.mld`.
- 2005/11/17
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Added testing via internal *quarks* commands in `\mtcsetfont`.
- 2005/11/18
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Fixed typos in the documentation.
- 2005/11/21
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/11/22
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/11/23

- Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Updating the bibliography.
- 2005/11/24
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/11/25
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Changed “table” into “tableau” in the french doc, where necessary.
  - Updating the bibliography.
- 2005/11/28
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Fixed typos in the documentation.
- 2005/11/29
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Fixed typos in the documentation.
  - Fixed typos in the bibliography.
  - Updating the bibliography.
- 2005/11/30
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Avoid some warnings “Token not allowed” from `pdftex`.
- 2005/12/01
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2005/12/02
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Reordering a long sequence of citations.
  - Added `mailto:` in the mailing URLs.
- 2005/12/05
  - Fixed typos in the documentation.
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Added a hint about the `varsects` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
- 2005/12/06
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Correcting an hyperlink in the bibliography (for the `xr` package).
  - Attempting to avoid broken URLs, using `quote`, footnotes and `\par`.
- 2005/12/07
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Updating the bibliography.
  - Corrections of layout (some headers, a table).
  - In the warning message of the hint about a number of mini-tables greater than 99 (if short extensions), give the effective number.
  - Reduce the width of some info, warning or error messages.

- 2005/12/08
  - Corrections of layout (some headers).
- 2005/12/09
  - Corrections of french quotes.
  - Added some PDF options.
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Corrected an URL to the  $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$  in the bibliography.
- 2005/12/19
  - Made some messages shorter (mainly by removing stars).
- 2005/12/21
  - Correction of typos.
  - Added some labels.
  - Added a chapter with the (explained) messages. Not yet sorted.
  - The documentation needs 4  $\text{\LaTeX}$  runs.
- 2005/12/22
  - Made some messages shorter.
  - Corrections in the list of messages.
  - Updating the bibliography.
- 2005/12/23
  - Improving the placement of floats on pages of floats: to the top.
- 2006/01/03
  - Corrections in the documentation (thanks to Markus GLEISZNER).
  - Added `addsec.tex`
- 2006/01/04
  - Corrected the flag `\ifundottedmtc`.
  - Correction to make `addsec.tex` work.
- 2006/01/05
  - Added “\*” as keyword for the first argument of `\mtcsetpagenumbers` and `\mtcsetrules` (asked by Markus GLEISZNER).
  - Removed “`\MessageBreak`” from the index.
- 2006/01/06
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Corrected the bibliography entry about `BangTeX`.
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Used the `afterpage` package [93] in the documentation to fix a float positioning problem.
- 2006/01/09
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Fixing a float positioning problem.
- 2006/01/10

- Corrections in the documentation.
  - Continuing the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Added the bahasam language.
  - Added the albanian language.
  - Added the hebrew2 language.
- 2006/01/11
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Updated the documentation for the albanian, bahasa, bahasam, and hebrew2 languages.
  - Updated `french.mld` (removing abusive uppercase letters).
  - Corrected the `italian.mld` file. Added the `italian2` language.
  - Added the australian and newzealand languages (english).
  - Renamed the bahasa language as bahasai; bahasa is synonym of bahasai.
  - Added the malay and meyalu languages, synonyms of bahasam.
  - Added the indon and indonesian languages, synonyms of bahasai.
- 2006/01/12
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Updated the acknowledgements.
  - Added references to the new bibliographic entries.
- 2006/01/13
  - Fixed an instability in page breaks in the documentation of `japanese3.mld`.
  - Added comments in some `.mld` files.
  - Added `magyar3.mld`.
  - Updated `lithuanian.mld`.
- 2006/01/16
  - Correction in `\mtcaddsection`.
- 2006/01/17
  - Correction in `\mtcfixindex` and `\mtcfixglossary`.
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Limitation of the initial depth of displayed bookmarks.
- 2006/01/18
  - Added some comments in point 34 of the FAQ (and in `minitoc.bug`) about the initialization of fonts.
  - Added `romanian2.mld` and `romanian3.mld`.
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/01/19
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Load some packages before `hyperref`.
  - Added `spanish4.mld`.
- 2006/01/23



- Corrected the table about default titles.
- Corrected the keywords for `\mtcsetfont`.
- Added `lowersorbian.mld`, `uppersorbian.mld`, and `ukrainian.mld`.
- 2006/01/24
  - Updated documentation for `lowersorbian.mld`, `uppersorbian.mld`, and `ukrainian.mld`.
- 2006/01/25
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/01/26
  - Added a hint about the KOMA-Script classes [157, 207], and an entry in the FAQ chapter (and in `minitoc.bug`).
- 2006/01/27
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Added a note in documentation of `serbian.mld` and `serbianc.mld`.
- 2006/01/30
  - Added `ethiopian2.mld` (for Omega).
- 2006/01/31
  - Simplifications in the “Messages” chapter.
  - Corrections in the “Jargon” chapter.
- 2006/02/01
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Added the “Postface” chapter.
- 2006/02/02
  - Corrections in the “Postface” chapter.
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/06
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Added package `dblacnt` for the “The pdfTeX Program” entry in the bibliography. Its author’s first name needs a double accent (Thế Thành HÀN).
- 2006/02/07
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/09
  - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/02/10
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/13

- Added `malayalam-omega.mld` and `malayalam-omega.mlo`.
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/14
  - Added `kannada.mld`.
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/15
  - Corrections in `russianb.mld` and `spanish.mld`.
  - Corrections in the documentation and the bibliography.
  - Place `\mtcfixglossary` before `\mtcfixindex`.
- 2006/02/16
  - Added a citation from Donald ARSENEAU.
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Updated the acknowlegments.
- 2006/02/17
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Updated the jargon.
- 2006/02/20
  - Added `u8hangul.mld`, `u8hangul.mlo`, `u8hanja.mld`, and `u8hanja.mlo`.
- 2006/02/21
  - Renamed languages `u8hangul` and `u8hanja` into `hangul-u8` and `hanja-u8`.
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/22
  - Added a hint about repeated preparation commands.
  - Moved up the declaration of some flags relative to the `hints` option.
  - Added `\mtcprepare`.
- 2006/02/23
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/24
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/02/27
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Added `minitoc.pre` to class 6.
- 2006/02/28
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Corrected the position of tables in the “Jargon” chapter.
  - Corrected `irish.mld`, `lsorbian.mld` and `usorbian.mld`.
  - Added `polски.mld`.
- 2006/03/01
  - Hints about the `jura` class and the `alphanum` package, incompatible with `minitoc`.

- 2006/03/02
  - Use bibliographic styles with an URL field, built with the help of `urlbst` [124].
- 2006/03/06
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/03/08
  - Corrections in `magyar.mld`, `magyar2.mld`, and `magyar3.mld`.
  - Added `russian-cca.mld`, `russian-cca1.mld`, and `russian-lh.mld`, with their `.mlo` files.
- 2006/03/09
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/03/10
  - Update the bibliography.
  - Added `russian-lhcyralt.mld`, `russian-lhcyrkoi.mld`, and `russian-lhcyrwin.mld`, with their `.mlo` files.
- 2006/03/13
  - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/03/14
  - Added the `mtcmess` package.
- 2006/03/16
  - The messages are now numbered.
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/03/20
  - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/03/21
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/03/22
  - Update the jargon.
- 2006/03/28
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Update the jargon.
- 2006/03/29
  - Added FAQ 37 about `.mld` files and `babel`.
  - Added `french1.mld` and `french2.mld`.
  - Update the jargon.
- 2006/03/30
  - Added `english1.mld` and `english2.mld`.

**★ version 45**

- 2006/03/31
  - Suppression of the PostScript versions of the documentation.

- Added `arab2.mld`, `bicig3.mld`, `buryat2.mld`, `xalx2.mld`, and `xalx3.mld`.
- 2006/04/03
  - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/04/04
  - Added `swedish2.mld`.
  - The `insection` package option loads also the `flafter` package.
- 2006/04/05
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Added `lamed.eps` and `lamed.pdf` as images for the *Lamed* logo (built from `lamed.tex`).
  - Reordering of the chapters in the user's manual (part I).
- 2006/04/06
  - Use `sectsty` to better format section titles.
- 2006/04/07
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Added `\ifmtcsecondpart` to check if the document has exactly 2 parts.
- 2006/04/10
  - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/04/11
  - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/04/12
  - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/04/13
  - In the `insection` package option, load the `flafter` package *before* the `placeins` package.
  - Added a figure about the float barriers.
- 2006/04/27
  - Added notes in FAQ 20, about the use with the `appendix` package.
  - Added comments about the `insection` option.
  - Update the bibliography.
  - Begin correction of the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment.
- 2006/05/02
  - Added notes in `minitoc.bug`, point 20, about the use with the `appendix` package.
  - End correction of the `mtchideinmaintoc` environment.
  - Analogous corrections in the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/05/03

- Added notes about the `mtchideinmainlof` and `mtchideinmainlot` environments.
  - Added `hide1.tex` and `hide2.tex`.
  - Added a hint about the `fncychap` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
  - Added a hint about the `quotchap` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/05/04
  - Update the bibliography.
  - Added a hint about the `romannum` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
  - Added a hint about the `sfheaders` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
  - Added a hint about the `alnumsec` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
  - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/05/05
  - Corrections in the documentation.
- 2006/05/24
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Renamed `hide.tex` to `hide1.tex`.
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/05/30
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Use `\MakeUpperCase` in `\markboth` for page styles.
- 2006/05/31
  - Update the bibliography.
  - Added a hint about the `captcont` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Added `uighur.mld`, `uighur2.mld`, and `uighur3.mld` (as synonyms for the `bicig` variants).
- 2006/06/01
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Added description of `MonTeX` in the jargon.
  - Added a comment about the `imk` script in `INSTALL` and the “Installation” chapter.
  - Added an entry about “package” in the jargon.
  - Added the `mtc-apx.tex` example file.
  - Added FAQ 44 and the `\mtcgapbeforeheads` and `\mtcgapafterheads` commands.
- 2006/06/02
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - Update the bibliography.
  - Added the `gaps.tex` example file.
- 2006/06/05

- Corrections in the documentation.
    - Update the bibliography.
  - 2006/06/06
    - Corrections in the documentation.
    - Update the bibliography.
  - 2006/06/08
    - Corrections in the documentation.
    - Spacing correction in `french2.mld`.
- ★ **version 46**
- 2006/06/09
    - Corrections in the documentation and the bibliography.
  - 2006/06/21
    - Update the bibliography.
    - Comment about the `thailatex` package.
  - 2006/06/22
    - Generate some example files with `minitoc.dtx/minitoc.ins`.
    - Added chapter “Example files”.
  - 2006/06/23
    - Renamed chapter “Example files” as “Examples of documents”.
    - Use the `lipsum` package [132] in some of the examples of documents.
    - Update the bibliography.
  - 2006/06/27
    - Update the examples of documents.
    - Added the `second.tex` example file.
  - 2006/06/29
    - Added the `amem.tex`, `mem.tex` and `mem1.tex` example files.
  - 2006/06/30
    - Added the `fo1.tex`, `fo2.tex` and `scr.tex` example files.
  - 2006/07/03
    - Added the `subf.tex` example file.
    - Corrections about the depth of `minilofs`, `minilots` and `siblings`.
  - 2006/07/04
    - Added the `tsfc.tex` and `tbi.tex` example files.
    - Corrections in the bibliography.
  - 2006/07/07
    - Corrections of typos.
    - Corrections in the bibliography.
    - Added the `2c.tex` and `mtc-bo.tex` example files.
    - Correction in `french2.mld`.

- 2006/07/10
  - Correction in minilots and minilofs (and siblings) about depth.
  - Added the `hop.tex` and `cri.tex` example files.
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/07/11
  - Added the `livre.tex`, `ch0.tex`, `tlc.tex` and `mu.tex` example files.
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/07/12
  - Update the jargon.
- 2006/07/13
  - Corrections in the documentation.
  - The not released versions are flagged by `✱` in place of `★`.
- 2006/07/17
  - The “About this document” section becomes a starred first chapter.
- 2006/07/18
  - Added the `hir.tex` and `hia.tex` example files.
- 2006/07/19
  - Update the bibliography.
  - Corrections in `add.tex` and `addsec.tex` for the index.
  - Added the `xmk` script to typeset the examples into PDF documents.
  - Updated the scripts to treat the examples.
- 2006/07/20
  - Do not forget `\jobname.mtc1` in the list of files.
  - In the scripts, the backup directory (OLD) is now `/tmp/‘whoami’/OLD`.
  - In the scripts, the repartition directories (`CL[0-9]`) are now `/tmp/‘whoami’/CL[0-9]`.

**★ version 47**

- 2006/07/26
  - Corrections in the documentation and the bibliography.
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/07/27
  - Added `arabi.mld` and `farsi3.mld` (from the `Ayabi` system [145]).
  - Update the bibliography.
- 2006/07/28
  - Update the jargon.
- 2006/07/31
  - Fixed `\l@xsection`.
  - Fixed some spacings in mini-tables.
- 2006/08/01
  - Added a `\kernafter...` vertical kern between each minitable and its bottom rule.

- Added point 45 of the FAQ.
- 2006/08/03
  - Minor correction in warning message F0008.
  - Update the bibliography.
  - Fixed a bug in `romanian2.mld` and `romanian3.mld`.
  - Shortened the result of some example documents by using the `report` class in place of the `book` class (hence using one side printing).
- ★ **version 48**
- 2006/08/04
  - Fixed typos.
- 2006/08/22
  - Update the bibliography.
  - No preamble in `add.bib`.
- 2006/08/23
  - Corrections in the TOC formatting.
  - Increasing `\textwidth`.
  - Correction of the preamble problem in `add.bib` and all generated files.
- 2006/08/24
  - Remove comments about spurious lines in preamble of generated files.
  - Added `devanagari.mld` and `hindi.mld`.
- 2006/08/25
  - Update the bibliography.
  - Added `hindi-modern.mld`.
  - Corrected the `\name` macro (for the documentation).
- 2006/08/28
  - Corrections in the bibliography.
  - Correction (conversion) in `hindi-modern.mld`.
- 2006/08/29
  - Added error E0036 if `english.mld` is not found to set the default titles.
- 2006/08/31
  - Update the bibliography.
  - Modified the `plainurl.bst` to have family names of authors and editors in small caps and years in old style digits. Titles are in emphasis. The `frplain1.bst` style is also updated.
- 2006/09/01
  - Update the bibliography.
  - The bibliographic styles `plainurl.bst` and `frplain1.bst` are renamed `en-mtc.bst` and `fr-mtc.bst`.
- 2006/09/05
  - Update the bibliography.



- Renamed `add.bib` to `mtc-add.bib`.
  - Renamed `add.tex` to `mtc-add.tex`.
  - Renamed `addsec.tex` to `mtc-ads.tex`.
  - Renamed `2c.tex` to `mtc-2c.tex`.
  - The `listfiles` package option is now active by default.
- 2006/09/07
  - Renamed `app-mem.tex` to `mtc-amm.tex`.
  - Renamed `apx.tex` to `mtc-apx.tex`.
  - Renamed `bo.tex` to `mtc-bo.tex`.
  - Renamed `ch0.tex` to `mtc-ch0.tex`.
  - Renamed `cri.tex` to `mtc-cri.tex`.
  - Renamed `fo1.tex` to `mtc-fo1.tex`.
  - Renamed `fo2.tex` to `mtc-fo2.tex`.
  - Renamed `gaps.tex` to `mtc-gap.tex`.
  - Renamed `hia.tex` to `mtc-hia.tex`.
  - Renamed `hir.tex` to `mtc-hir.tex`.
  - Renamed `hide1.tex` to `mtc-hi1.tex`.
  - Renamed `hide2.tex` to `mtc-hi2.tex`.
  - Renamed `hop.tex` to `mtc-hop.tex`.
  - Renamed `livre.tex` to `mtc-liv.tex`.
  - Renamed `mem.tex` to `mtc-mem.tex`.
  - Renamed `mem1.tex` to `mtc-mm1.tex`.
  - Renamed `mini-art.tex` to `mtc-art.tex`.
  - Renamed `minitoc-ex.tex` to `mtc-bk.tex`.
  - Renamed `mu.tex` to `mtc-mu.tex`.
  - Renamed `scr.tex` to `mtc-scr.tex`.
  - Renamed `second.tex` to `mtc-2nd.tex`.
  - Renamed `subf.tex` to `mtc-sbf.tex`.
  - Renamed `tbi.tex` to `mtc-tbi.tex`.
  - Renamed `tlc.tex` to `mtc-tlc.tex`.
  - Renamed `tsfc.tex` to `mtc-tsfc.tex`.
- 2006/09/08
  - Updated the bibliography (added the Pentaglot).
  - Corrected the format of two tables about NFSS.
  - Example documents in alphabetical order in their chapter.
- 2006/09/11
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/09/12
  - Added a figure about systems derived from  $\text{\TeX}$  and  $\text{\LaTeX}$ .
- 2006/09/13
  - Added the `mtc-syn.tex` example document file.

## ★ version 49

- 2006/09/14
  - Slightly modified the layout of the list of files (“Installation” chapter).
  - Simplifications in the scripts.
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/09/18
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Added point 46 in the FAQ and example file `mtc-tlo.tex`.
- 2006/09/26
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Corrections in the bibliography and the bibliographic styles.
- 2006/09/29
  - Better error messages about undefined preparation and insertion commands.
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Added “+” and “-” as synonyms for “on” and “off”, respectively.
- 2006/10/20
  - Corrections in the bibliography.
  - Fixed typos.
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Added a table of some encodings.
- 2006/10/31
  - Suppressed the “Summary” entry in the summary, but added it in the Table of Contents.
  - Improving some tables.
  - Added the `japanese6.mld` and `japanese6.mlo` files.
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2006/11/03
  - Corrections in the bibliography.
  - Corrections in formatting a citation from Donald ARSENEAU.
  - Combine four figures in one (with sub-figures).
  - Added (in the memento) a table of the classes and packages which are incompatible or need precautions with `minitoc`.
  - Added a hint about the `hangcaption` package (must be loaded *before* `minitoc`).
- 2006/11/06
  - Completed the list of the standard classes.
- 2006/11/09
  - Added a validation of the language options with the presence of the `.mld` and `.mlo` files.
  - Added notes about the mandatory presence of the `english.mld` file.
- 2006/11/13

- The validation of the language options writes only informative messages in the *document.log* file and, if necessary, gives only one warning message.

★ **version 50**

- 2006/11/17
  - Removed old examples of documents: *mtc-adds.tex*, *mtc-amem.tex*, *mtc-book.tex*, *mtc-gaps.tex*, *mtc-mem1.tex*, *mtc-subf.tex*, and *mtc-tsfc.tex*.
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Added the *tmk* script and a table describing a TDS structure for *minitoc*.
  - Added an item about the TDS in the jargon.
  - Updated the *INSTALL* file and the “Installation” chapter.
- 2006/11/29
  - Added the warning message **W0094** with the list of the missing *minitoc* languages files (*.mld* and *.mlo*).
  - Corrections in the bibliography.
  - Updated the *INSTALL* file and the “Installation” chapter.
  - Changed the names of the scratch directories in some scripts.
  - Updated the bibliography.
  - Added the file *minitoc-texmf.zip* (a ZIP archive of a TDS-compliant hierarchy of all files of the package) to the distribution.

★ **version 51**

- 2006/12/18
  - Improving the index: packages and classes, scripts, tools, names, examples, extensions, options, language options.
- 2006/12/20
  - Improving the index: names.
  - Updated some *.mld* files with names of the authors of titles.
- 2007/01/09
  - Miscellaneous corrections.
  - The names of some internal macros are shortened to fit into the margin.
  - Added a `\ProvidesFile` command to the example files.
  - Indexing the environments (not perfect).
  - Indexing the files.
  - Renamed the file “*catalog*” into “*CATALOG*”.
  - Indexing the counters and depth counters.
  - The example files are in their own directory in the (proposed) TDS hierarchy.

★ **version 52**

- 2007/01/11
  - Correction of index ordering.
  - Default option in boldface in the index.

- Adding some informations about authors for language specific titles.
- Updated the bibliography.
- 2007/01/12
  - Added fake sections in the “Examples of documents” chapter.
  - Removed the preparation of the documentation in PostScript format.
- 2007/01/15
  - Added the `cmk` script to convert the documentation from PDF format into PostScript format.
  - Removed `duplex2v.pro`.
- 2007/01/17
  - Indexing the referenced commands.
- 2007/01/18
  - Corrected the name `Thế Thành HÀN` (first name before last name, the english way).
  - Corrected some other names.
- 2007/01/19
  - Added `mongolb.mld` and `mongolb.mlo`.
  - Removed `mongolb.mlo` (new cyrillic encodings T2 and X2 in `mongolb.mld`).
  - Added the example file `mtc-3co.tex`.
  - Trying to use a recent version of the `cite [10]` package (2003/11/04, 4.01) to allow sorting, but still clashes with `hyperref`.
- 2007/01/26
  - Balancing the columns in the index.
- 2007/01/29
  - Correction of the indexing of the environments.
- 2007/01/31
  - Improving the index layout.
  - Updated `galician.mld`.
- 2007/02/05
  - Added `mongolian.mld` which loads `mongolb.mld`.
- 2007/02/09
  - Indexing the names of authors.
  - Updated the bibliography.
- 2007/02/12
  - Updated the acknowledgements.

# Index

## Symbols

ANDRÉ, Jacques	240	.mlo (extension)	19, 36, 41, 67, 149, 158, 163, 181, 196, 201, 202, 206, 226, 230, 236, 238, 248, 378, 382, 384, 437, 441, 497, 571, 579, 586, 587
.F (extension)	51, 195, 281	.mlt (extension)	26, 51, 196, 285, 290
.G (extension)	51, 195, 317	.mtc (extension)	26, 48, 51, 55, 56, 58, 196, 261, 267, 278, 290, 414, 558
.H (extension)	51, 196, 340	.mtc1 (extension)	267, 414, 583
.M (extension)	51, 196, 278	.pdf (extension)	228
.P (extension)	51, 196, 317	.plf (extension)	29, 51, 196, 317
.S (extension)	51, 196, 340	.plt (extension)	29, 51, 196, 317
.T (extension)	51, 197, 285	.pre (extension)	212, 227, 228, 230, 573, 578
.U (extension)	51, 197, 317	.ptc (extension)	29, 51, 196, 317
.V (extension)	51, 197, 340	.slf (extension)	28, 51, 196, 340
.aux (extension)	52, 55, 57, 60, 195, 199, 254	.slt (extension)	28, 51, 196, 340
.bst (extension)	204, 207, 224, 227, 228, 230, 238, 584	.stc (extension)	28, 51, 196, 340
.cls (extension)	195	.sty (extension)	197, 219, 226, 228, 229, 232, 562
.dtx (extension)	41, 195, 196, 229, 236, 441, 517, 569	.tar (extension)	229
.ins (extension)	195, 196, 229, 236	.tex (extension)	146, 197
.ist (extension)	206, 211, 227, 228, 230, 569, 570, 572	.tgz (extension)	229
.lan (extension)	206, 211, 227, 228, 230, 418	.toc (extension)	26, 47, 52, 55, 58, 60, 65, 146, 173, 174, 196, 199, 262, 264–266, 290, 291, 298, 317, 324, 340, 347, 431, 564
.lof (extension)	26, 52, 55, 58, 60, 65, 146, 173, 174, 196, 199, 262, 264–266, 290, 291, 300, 301, 317, 327, 340, 349, 431, 562, 564	.zip (extension)	229
.log (extension)	29, 31, 48, 49, 52, 54, 77, 139, 145, 146, 157, 163, 194, 196, 207, 249, 251, 266, 388, 411, 412, 441, 566, 587	/tmp/‘whoami’.imk (file)	228, 229
.lot (extension)	26, 52, 55, 58, 60, 65, 146, 173, 174, 196, 199, 262, 264–266, 290, 291, 300, 301, 317, 327, 340, 349, 431, 562, 564	/tmp/‘whoami’.rmk (file)	229, 230
.maf (extension)	49, 77, 148, 196, 209, 236, 382, 414, 572	/tmp/‘whoami’.tmk (file)	228, 230
.mld (extension)	19, 35, 36, 41, 67, 72, 78, 149, 157, 163, 180, 189, 191, 196, 198, 201, 226, 230, 232, 233, 235, 236, 238, 248, 378, 382–384, 437, 440, 441, 470, 562, 564, 566, 570, 571, 576, 579, 586, 587	/tmp/‘whoami’/OLD (file)	583
.mlf (extension)	26, 51, 196, 281, 290	\@@dominilof	3564, 3602
		\@@dominilot	3583, 3602
		\@@dominitoc (command)	290
		\@@dominitoc	3530, 3545, 3602
		\@@dopartlof	4286, 4306
		\@@dopartlot	4305, 4306
		\@@doparttoc	4267, 4306
		\@@dosectlof	4913, 4933
		\@@dosectlot	4932, 4933
		\@@dosecttoc	4894, 4933

- \@M . 1468, 1478, 3021, 3453, 3476, 3489, 4216, 4801, 4802, 4834
- \@Undottedtocline (command) . . . . . **288**
- \@Undottedtocline . . . . . 3471, 6138, 7728
- \@Undottedtoclinep (command) . . **288, 289**
- \@Undottedtoclinep 3484, 3499, 3511, 3514, 3517, 3522, 3525, 3528, 7728
- \@addtoreset . . . . . 936, 1192
- \@afterheading 3934, 3948, 3962, 7816, 7824
- \@afterindenttrue . . . . . 3020, 3475, 3488
- \@caption (command) . . . . . **559**
- \@centercr . . . . . 3236, 3983, 4589
- \@chapter (command) . . . . . **49, 265, 287, 395**
- \@chapter . 1, 2952, 3455, 6667, 7362, 7790, 7792
- \@dominilof . . . . . 3535, 3603
- \@dominilof@used@false . . . . . 2734
- \@dominilof@used@true . . . . . 3575
- \@dominilot . . . . . 3540, 3604
- \@dominilot@used@false . . . . . 2735
- \@dominilot@used@true . . . . . 3594
- \@dominitoc (command) . . . . . **290**
- \@dominitoc . . . . . 3530, 3602
- \@dominitoc@used@false . . . . . 2733
- \@dominitoc@used@true (command) . . . **290**
- \@dominitoc@used@true . . . . . 3556
- \@dopartlof . . . . . 4238, 4307
- \@dopartlof@used@false . . . . . 2728
- \@dopartlof@used@true . . . . . 4279
- \@dopartlot . . . . . 4242, 4308
- \@dopartlot@used@false . . . . . 2729
- \@dopartlot@used@true . . . . . 4298
- \@doparttoc . . . . . 4234, 4306
- \@doparttoc@used@false . . . . . 2727
- \@doparttoc@used@true . . . . . 4260
- \@dosectlof . . . . . 4865, 4934
- \@dosectlof@used@false . . . . . 2740
- \@dosectlof@used@true . . . . . 4906
- \@dosectlot (command) . . . . . **569**
- \@dosectlot . . . . . 4869, 4935
- \@dosectlot@used@false . . . . . 2741
- \@dosectlot@used@true . . . . . 4925
- \@dosecttoc . . . . . 4861, 4933
- \@dosecttoc@used@false . . . . . 2739
- \@dosecttoc@used@true . . . . . 4887
- \@dotsep (command) . . . . . **42, 43, 361**
- \@dotsep . 5537, 5550, 5555, 5560, 5565, 5570, 5575, 5580, 5585, 5590
- \@dottedtocline (command) **67, 68, 268, 289, 310, 312, 315, 332, 335, 337**
- \@dottedtocline . . . . . 3297, 3370, 3438, 3453, 3499, 3511, 3514, 3517, 3522, 3525, 3528, 4048, 4125, 4200, 4216, 4650, 4720, 4787, 4801
- \@dottedxxxline . . . . . 2304
- \@ensure@R 9066, 9069, 9072, 9076, 9079, 9082, 9086, 9089, 9092
- \@fileswf@false (command) . . . . . **566**
- \@fileswf@false . 3301, 3374, 3442, 4055, 4129, 4204, 4655, 4724, 4792
- \@firstchapteris@used@false . . . . . 2743
- \@firstchapteris@used@true . . . . . 3196
- \@firstoftwo . . . . . 2848
- \@firstpartis@used@false . . . . . 2742
- \@firstpartis@used@true . . . . . 3883
- \@firstsectionis@used@false . . . . . 2744
- \@firstsectionis@used@true . . . . . 4560
- \@gobble (command) . . . . . **566**
- \@gobble . . . . . 7604, 7607, 7608, 7728
- \@gobblethree (command) . . . . . **382**
- \@gobblethree . . . . . 6179, 6260
- \@gobbletwo (command) . . . . . **424**
- \@gobbletwo . . . . . 7544, 7589
- \@hangfrom . . . . . 4824
- \@ifclasslater . . . . . 2840
- \@ifclassloaded . . 2815, 6494, 6594, 6603, 6618, 6641
- \@ifnextchar (command) . **278, 281, 284, 423**
- \@ifnextchar . . . . . 3247, 3317, 3385, 3534, 3539, 3544, 3994, 4067, 4141, 4246–4248, 4600, 4666, 4733, 4873–4875, 5157, 7525, 7531, 7537, 7543, 7790
- \@ifpackagelater . . . . . 6584
- \@ifpackageloaded 2772, 2789, 2791, 2793, 2795, 2797, 2799, 2801, 2803, 2805, 2807, 2809, 2811, 2813, 6470, 6478, 6486, 6518, 6526, 6534, 6627, 7299
- \@ifpackagewith . . . . . 6534, 6627
- \@ifundefined (command) **264, 265, 275, 301, 349**
- \@ifundefined 2652, 5157, 5650, 5726, 6004, 6047, 6142, 6158, 6648, 6667, 6686, 7359, 7362, 7365, 7424
- \@input (command) **296, 299, 301, 322, 325, 327**
- \@input . . . . . 3694, 3762, 3823, 6090, 6110
- \@inputcheck (command) . . . . . **57, 268, 560**
- \@inputcheck . 2870, 3004, 3678, 3690, 3710, 3747, 3758, 3775, 3808, 3819, 3836, 4389, 4390, 4401, 4420, 4452, 4453, 4464, 4482, 4514, 4515, 4526, 4544, 5003, 5004, 5015, 5031, 5064, 5065, 5076, 5092, 5125, 5126, 5137, 5153
- \@longextensions@false (command) . . . **267**
- \@longextensions@false . . 2977, 2982, 6155
- \@longextensions@true (command) . . . . **267**
- \@longextensions@true . . . . . 2979, 7672

\@m@chapter	7788	\@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@true	2811
\@mainaux	2752	\@mtc@chapter@def@false	2714, 2715
\@makechapterhead	1465, 7815, 7820, 7822	\@mtc@chapter@def@true	2715
\@makephead@c	3962	\@mtc@chapter@undef@false	2721
\@makephead@l	3934	\@mtc@chapter@undef@true	2720, 2721
\@makephead@r	3948	\@mtc@checkfilesfalse	6151
\@makeschapterhead	1475	\@mtc@checkfilestrue	2872, 6150
\@minilof@used@false	2731	\@mtc@empty@minilof@false	2707
\@minilof@used@true (command)	281	\@mtc@empty@minilof@true	3329
\@minilof@used@true	3319	\@mtc@empty@minilot@false	2708
\@minilot@used@false	2732	\@mtc@empty@minilot@true	3397
\@minilot@used@true (command)	284	\@mtc@empty@minitoc@false	2706
\@minilot@used@true	3387	\@mtc@empty@minitoc@true	3259
\@minitoc@used@false	2730	\@mtc@empty@partlof@false	2704
\@minitoc@used@true (command)	278	\@mtc@empty@partlof@true	4079, 4154
\@minitoc@used@true	3249	\@mtc@empty@partlot@false	2705
\@mkboth	3165, 4009, 4082, 4157	\@mtc@empty@parttoc@false	2703
\@mtc@FEfalse (command)	261	\@mtc@empty@parttoc@true	4006
\@mtc@FEfalse	2881, 2894	\@mtc@empty@sectlof@false	2710
\@mtc@FEtrue (command)	261	\@mtc@empty@sectlof@true	4678
\@mtc@FEtrue	2871, 2885, 2892	\@mtc@empty@sectlot@false	2711
\@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@false	2692	\@mtc@empty@sectlot@true	4745
\@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@true	2796	\@mtc@empty@secttoc@false	2709
\@mtc@HgcLoaded@false	2691	\@mtc@empty@secttoc@true	4612
\@mtc@HgcLoaded@true	2795	\@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@false	2690
\@mtc@Himlof@false	5938, 5969	\@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@true	2794
\@mtc@Himlof@true	5945, 5963	\@mtc@fncychapLoaded@false	2689
\@mtc@Himlot@false	5971, 5986, 6002	\@mtc@fncychapLoaded@true	2793
\@mtc@Himlot@true	5978, 5996	\@mtc@hints@false	6460
\@mtc@Himtoc@false	5923, 5936, 5953	\@mtc@hints@given@false	2672
\@mtc@Himtoc@true	5930	\@mtc@hints@given@true	3545, 3564, 3583, 4249, 4268, 4287, 4876, 4895, 4914, 5177, 6471, 6479, 6487, 6495, 6503, 6511, 6519, 6527, 6537, 6554, 6569, 6585, 6595, 6604, 6612, 6619, 6630, 6642, 6655, 6674, 6694, 6746, 6756, 6765, 6774, 6785, 6794, 6803, 6814, 6823, 6842, 6851, 6860, 6871, 6880, 6889, 6900, 6909, 6931, 6942, 6953, 6966, 6977, 6988, 7001, 7012, 7023, 7032, 7041, 7050, 7066, 7075, 7084, 7093, 7102, 7111, 7120, 7129, 7138, 7147, 7156, 7165, 7174, 7182, 7189, 7196, 7203, 7210, 7217, 7224, 7231, 7238, 7245, 7252, 7259
\@mtc@LIfalse	2875, 2879, 2881	\@mtc@hints@true	2670, 6459
\@mtc@LItrue	2870, 2885	\@mtc@hints@w@false	2671, 6648, 6667, 6686
\@mtc@abstract@loaded@false	6461	\@mtc@hints@w@true	6650, 6652, 6654, 6669, 6671, 6673, 6689, 6691, 6693, 6746
\@mtc@abstract@loaded@true	6628	\@mtc@hyper@used@false	2773
\@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@false	2700	\@mtc@hyper@used@true	2776
\@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@true	2804	\@mtc@insellang@false	6090, 6108, 6135
\@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@false	2699	\@mtc@insellang@true	6092
\@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@true	2803		
\@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@false	2702		
\@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@true	2806		
\@mtc@captcontLoaded@false	2701		
\@mtc@captcontLoaded@true	2805		
\@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@false	2682		
\@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@true	2810		
\@mtc@captionIILoaded@false	2681		
\@mtc@captionIILoaded@true	2809		
\@mtc@captionLoaded@a@false	2680		
\@mtc@captionLoaded@a@true	2808		
\@mtc@captionLoaded@false	2679		
\@mtc@captionLoaded@true	2807		
\@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@false	2684		
\@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@true	2812		
\@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@false	2683		

- \@mtc@listfiles@false ..... 6178
- \@mtc@listfiles@true ..... 6176, 6177
- \@mtc@lof@used@false ..... 6463, 6708
- \@mtc@lof@used@true ..... 6715, 6724
- \@mtc@lot@used@false ..... 6464, 6709
- \@mtc@lot@used@true ..... 6718, 6727
- \@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@false ..... 2686
- \@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@true ..... 2814
- \@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@false ..... 2685
- \@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@true ..... 2813
- \@mtc@memoirLoaded@false .... 2675, 2821
- \@mtc@memoirLoaded@true ..... 2816
- \@mtc@memoirnew@false ..... 2676, 2824
- \@mtc@memoirnew@true ..... 2826
- \@mtc@misslangfalse ..... 6184
- \@mtc@misslangtrue 6188, 6204, 6217, 6233
- \@mtc@notoccite@false ..... 2767
- \@mtc@notoccite@true ..... 6154
- \@mtc@part@def@false ..... 2712, 2713
- \@mtc@part@def@true ..... 2713
- \@mtc@part@undef@false ..... 2719
- \@mtc@part@undef@true ..... 2718, 2719
- \@mtc@placeinsLoaded@false .. 2674, 7303
- \@mtc@placeinsLoaded@true ..... 7303
- \@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@false ..... 2694
- \@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@true ..... 2798
- \@mtc@quotchapLoaded@false ..... 2693
- \@mtc@quotchapLoaded@true ..... 2797
- \@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@false ..... 2696
- \@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@true ..... 2800
- \@mtc@romannumLoaded@false ..... 2695
- \@mtc@romannumLoaded@true ..... 2799
- \@mtc@sect@floats@false ..... 2673
- \@mtc@sect@floats@true ..... 6731–6734
- \@mtc@section@def@false ..... 2716, 2717
- \@mtc@section@def@true ..... 2717
- \@mtc@section@undef@false ..... 2723
- \@mtc@section@undef@true .... 2722, 2723
- \@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@false ..... 2678
- \@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@true ..... 2790
- \@mtc@sectstyLoaded@false ..... 2677
- \@mtc@sectstyLoaded@true ..... 2789
- \@mtc@setdepth@false ..... 5884
- \@mtc@setdepth@true ..... 5879, 5882
- \@mtc@setfeature@false ..... 5825, 5842
- \@mtc@setfeature@true ..... 5819, 5823
- \@mtc@setfont@false 5297, 5315, 5354–5357,  
5360, 5361, 5364, 5365, 5368–5373,  
5376–5379, 5382–5385, 5388–5394,  
5397–5401, 5404–5408
- \@mtc@setfont@true ..... 5292, 5295, 5352
- \@mtc@setformat@false ..... 5598, 5615
- \@mtc@setformat@true ..... 5592, 5596
- \@mtc@setpagenumbers@false . 5648, 5673,  
5695
- \@mtc@setpagenumbers@true ..... 5670
- \@mtc@setrules@false .... 5724, 5749, 5771
- \@mtc@setrules@true ..... 5746
- \@mtc@settitle@false ..... 5474
- \@mtc@settitle@true ..... 5469, 5472
- \@mtc@settitlefont@false ..... 5433
- \@mtc@settitlefont@true .... 5428, 5431
- \@mtc@sheadersLoaded@a@false .... 2698
- \@mtc@sheadersLoaded@a@true .... 2802
- \@mtc@sheadersLoaded@false ..... 2697
- \@mtc@sheadersLoaded@true ..... 2801
- \@mtc@spn@ok@false ..... 5692
- \@mtc@spn@ok@true ..... 5690
- \@mtc@sru@ok@false ..... 5768
- \@mtc@sru@ok@true ..... 5766
- \@mtc@ss@insection@false ..... 6158
- \@mtc@ss@insection@true ..... 6173
- \@mtc@toc@used@false ..... 6462, 6707
- \@mtc@toc@used@true ..... 6712, 6721
- \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@false ..... 2688
- \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@true ..... 2792
- \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@false ..... 2687
- \@mtc@varsectsLoaded@true ..... 2791
- \@mtcfixglossary@false ..... 6026, 6028
- \@mtcfixglossary@true ... 6030, 6032, 6034
- \@mtcfixindex@false ..... 6069, 6071
- \@mtcfixindex@true .... 6073, 6075, 6077
- \@mtcpatchmemoir@false ..... 2815
- \@mtcpatchmemoir@true ..... 2836
- \@namedef (command) ..... **352**
- \@namedef ... 5226, 5235, 5244, 5281, 5510
- \@nameuse (command) ..... **352**
- \@nameuse ..... 5226, 5294,  
5313, 5430, 5471, 5612, 5614, 5688,  
5707, 5745, 5782, 5839, 5841, 5881
- \@newread (command) ..... **560**
- \@nobreakfalse 3158, 3306, 3379, 3447, 4060,  
4134, 4209, 4660, 4727, 4795
- \@part (command) ..... **49, 262, 316, 394**
- \@part ..... 1, 2907, 4221, 6648, 7359
- \@partlof@used@false ..... 2725
- \@partlof@used@true ..... 4069
- \@partlot@used@false ..... 2726
- \@partlot@used@true ..... 4144
- \@parttoc@used@false ..... 2724
- \@parttoc@used@true ..... 3996
- \@plus ..... 3473, 3486
- \@pnumwidth (command) ..... **42, 43**
- \@pnumwidth .. 3496, 5519, 5548, 5553, 5558,  
5563, 5568, 5573, 5578, 5583, 5588
- \@pnumwith (command) ..... **361**
- \@pt (command) ..... **565**



`\@resetfont` ..... 3839, 3859  
`\@schapter` (command) .... **49, 265, 287, 395**  
`\@schapter` ..... 1, 3460, 6667, 7362  
`\@secondoftwo` ..... 2848  
`\@sect` (command) .... **49, 263, 338, 340, 395**  
`\@sect` 1, 2940, 4807, 4814, 4853, 6686, 7365  
`\@sectlof@used@false` ..... 2737  
`\@sectlof@used@true` ..... 4668  
`\@sectlot@used@false` ..... 2738  
`\@sectlot@used@true` ..... 4735  
`\@secttoc@used@false` ..... 2736  
`\@secttoc@used@true` ..... 4602  
`\@spart` (command) ..... **49, 262, 316, 394**  
`\@spart` ..... 1, 2907, 4221, 6648, 7359  
`\@ssect` (command) ..... **49, 264, 338, 395**  
`\@ssect` ..... 1, 2940, 6686, 7365  
`\@starttoc` (command) ..... **266, 273**  
`\@svsec` ..... 4824  
`\@svsechd` ..... 4824  
`\@tempdima` ... 3023, 3478, 3479, 3491, 3492  
`\@tempskipa` ..... 4824  
`\@tocfile` (command) ..... **278, 281, 285**  
`\@tocfile` ..... 3250, 3255, 3258, 3303,  
3320, 3325, 3328, 3376, 3388, 3393,  
3396, 3444, 3995, 4002, 4048, 4068,  
4075, 4125, 4142, 4150, 4200, 4601,  
4608, 4650, 4667, 4674, 4720, 4734,  
4741, 4787  
`\@tocrmarg` (command) ..... **42, 43, 361**  
`\@tocrmarg` ..... 3019, 3474, 3487,  
5528, 5549, 5554, 5559, 5564, 5569,  
5574, 5579, 5584, 5589  
`\@topnewpage` ..... 3934, 3948, 3962, 7820  
`\@undottedtocline` (command) ..... **268**  
`\@undottedtocline` 3015, 3297, 3370, 3438,  
4048, 4125, 4200, 4650, 4720, 4787  
`\@width` ..... 3205  
`\@xsect` ..... 4824  
`\` 3236, 3295, 3307, 3365, 3380, 3433, 3448,  
3983  
`\jobname.lan` (file) ..... **418**  
`\jobname.mtc` (file) ..... **266**  
`\jobname.mtc1` (file) ..... **266**  
`\~` ..... 10358, 10362, 10366  
`2c.tex` (old example document) .... **582, 585**  
  
`\_` ... 8165, 8166, 8168, 8169, 8174, 8175, 8177,  
8178, 8183, 8184, 8186, 8187, 8578,  
8579, 8582, 8583, 8586, 8587, 9040,  
9042, 9044, 9047, 9049, 9051, 9054,  
9056, 9058, 9067, 9070, 9073, 9077,

9080, 9083, 9087, 9090, 9093, 9560,  
9562, 9570, 9572, 9580, 9582, 10308,  
10310, 10314, 10316, 10320, 10322

## A

`\a@tok` ..... 7916  
ABOLHASSANI, Hassan ..... **240, 466**  
above (option of `placeins`) ..... **29, 30, 177**  
ABRAHAMS, Paul W. .... **240**, ↪ **[1, 2]**  
abstract (package) **50, 67, 85, 155, 197, 235, 393,**  
**569**  
abstract (environment) ..... **50, 67**  
ABU EL-ATA, Nabil ..... **240**  
acadian (language option) ..... **441, 566**  
`acadian.mld` (file) ..... **227, 230, 441**  
acadien (language option) ..... **36, 442, 566**  
`acadien.mld` (file) ..... **227, 230, 442**  
`\accent` ..... 8326  
`add.bib` (old example document) ... **584, 585**  
`add.tex` (old example document) ... **583, 585**  
ADDABBO, Tommaso ..... **240**  
`\addappheadtotoc` (command) ..... **61, 102**  
`\addappheadtotoc` ..... 899  
`\addcoffeeline` (command) ..... **212, 379**  
`\addcoffeeline` ..... 6138, 7728  
`\addcontentsline` (command) **32, 48, 60, 192,**  
**193**  
`\addcontentsline` ..... 1,  
30, 483, 538, 539, 832, 833, 965, 1227,  
1326, 1329, 1332, 1335, 1338, 2031,  
2485, 2488, 2917, 2944–2947, 2955–  
2958, 3167, 3455, 4223–4225, 4807,  
4814, 4824, 6026, 6069, 7695, 7747,  
7829, 7832, 7836, 7839  
`addsec.tex` (old example document) . **575, 583,**  
**585**  
`\addst@rred` (command) ..... **288**  
`\addst@rred` ..... 3167, 3186, 3465  
`\addstarred` (command) ..... **563**  
`\addstarredchapter` (command) **32, 192, 233,**  
**288**  
`\addstarredchapter` ... 1, 1323, 3465, 7747  
`\addstarredpart` (command) ... **32, 192, 288**  
`\addstarredpart` ..... 1, 3465, 7747  
`\addstarredsection` (command) **32, 192, 275,**  
**288**  
`\addstarredsection` .. 1, 1050, 3186, 3465,  
7747  
`\addto` (command) ..... **72**  
`\addtocontents` (command) ..... **60, 61**  
`\addtocontents` .. 1, 1423, 3460, 4221, 4853,  
5924, 5938, 5971, 6138

- `\addtocounter` (command) . . . . . **32, 47**
- `\addtocounter` . 1211, 2904, 3199–3201, 3694, 3762, 3823, 3886–3888, 4418, 4480, 4542, 4562–4564, 5029, 5090, 5151
- `\addtolength` . . . . . 1446, 1449, 2002
- `addtotoc` (option of abstract) **50, 67, 155, 197**
- `\addvspace` . . . . . 2648, 2649
- `\adjustmtc` (command) . **32, 33, 48, 60, 61, 84, 94, 138, 197, 265, 275, 571**
- `\adjustmtc 1`, 535, 892, 2497, 2954, 3190, 7505
- `\adjustptc` (command) . **32, 84, 89, 197, 236, 262, 303, 571**
- `\adjustptc` . . . 1, 31, 1700, 2917, 3874, 7505
- `\adjuststc` (command) . **32, 60, 84, 101, 197, 264, 328, 571**
- `\adjuststc` . . . . . 1, 829, 2943, 4555, 7505
- afrikaan (language option) . . . . . **36, 442, 443**
- afrikaan.mld (file) . . . . . **227, 230, 442, 443**
- afrikaans (language option) . . . . . **36, 443**
- afrikaans.mld (file) . . . . . **227, 230, 443**
- `\afterminilof` (command) . . . . . **83, 284**
- `\afterminilof` . . . . . 3126, 3380, 7654
- `\afterminilot` (command) . . . . . **83, 287**
- `\afterminilot` . . . . . 3126, 3448, 7654
- `\afterminitoc` (command) . . . . . **83, 280**
- `\afterminitoc` . . . . . 3126, 3307, 7654
- afterpage (package) . . . . . **575**
- `\afterpartlof` (command) . . **45, 83, 313, 563**
- `\afterpartlof` . . . . . 3119, 4136, 7645
- `\afterpartlot` (command) . . **45, 83, 316, 563**
- `\afterpartlot` . . . . . 3119, 4211, 7645
- `\afterparttoc` (command) . . **45, 83, 310, 563**
- `\afterparttoc` . . . . . 3119, 4062, 7645
- `\aftersectlof` (command) . . . . . **83, 335**
- `\aftersectlof` . . . . . 3129, 4729, 7663
- `\aftersectlot` (command) . . . . . **83, 338**
- `\aftersectlot` . . . . . 3129, 4797, 7663
- `\aftersecttoc` (command) . . . . . **83, 333**
- `\aftersecttoc` . . . . . 3129, 4662, 7663
- AGUIRREGABIRIA, Juan M. . . . . **240, 448**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [47]
- AKOPIAN, Vartan . . . . . **198, 240, 445**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [107]
- albanian (language option) . . . . . **36, 443**
- albanian.dtx (file) . . . . . **443**
- albanian.mld (file) . . . . . **227, 230, 443**
- `\alef` . . . . . 7935–7937, 7939–7941, 7943–7945, 8577–8579, 8581–8583, 8585–8587, 9043, 9045, 9050, 9052, 9057, 9059
- `\alefhamza` . . . . . 7936, 7940, 7944
- ALEX, A. J. . . . . **240, 497, 498**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [3, 4]
- ALFORD, Mark . . . . . **240**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [5]
- `\alloc@` . . . . . 2961
- alnumsec (package) . **50, 73, 85, 178, 197, 237, 258, 407, 581**
- `\Alph` . . . . . 1550, 1551
- alphanum (package) . **50, 71, 85, 164, 197, 389, 578**
- amem.tex (old example document) . . . . . **582**
- american (language option) . . . . . **36, 443**
- american.mld (file) . . **227, 230, 384, 443, 564**
- amsart (class) **50, 63, 85, 164, 197, 198, 392, 567**
- amsart.cls (file) . . . . . **198**
- amsbook (class) . **49, 63, 85, 155, 197, 198, 393, 567**
- amsbook.cls (file) . . . . . **198**
- amsproc (class) . **50, 63, 85, 164, 197, 198, 392, 567**
- amsproc.cls (file) . . . . . **198**
- ANDRÉ, Jacques . . . . .  $\hookrightarrow$ [203]
- ANDRIEUX, Jérôme . . . . . **240**
- ANGELI, Ralf . . . . . **240**
- Antomega (package) . . **198, 441, 474–476, 493, 506, 510, 511, 520, 521**
- app-mem.tex (old example document) . . . . **585**
- APPEL, Walter . . . . . **240**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [7]
- appendices (environment) . . **60, 102, 198, 214**
- appendix (package) **49, 60–62, 85, 155, 198, 235, 389, 566, 580**
- `\appendix` (command) . . . . . **60**
- `\appendix` . . 1, 29, 543, 836, 1128, 1392, 2397
- `\appendixmtc` . . . . . 7544
- apx.tex (old example document) . . . . . **585**
- arab (language option) . . . . . **36, 444, 445**
- arab.mld (file) . . **198, 227, 230, 444, 445, 562**
- arab2 (language option) . . . . . **36, 444**
- arab2.mld (file) . . . . . **198, 227, 230, 444, 580**
- Arabi (package) . . . . . **36, 41, 198, 445, 467, 583**
- arabi (language option) . . . . . **36, 445**
- arabi.mld (file) . . . . . **198, 227, 230, 445, 583**
- arabic (language option) . . . . . **36, 198, 445**
- `\arabic` . 3612, 3721, 3782, 4974, 5924, 5938, 5971
- arabic.ldf (file) . . . . . **198**
- arabic.mld (file) . . . . . **198, 227, 230, 445**
- ArabTeX (package) . . **36, 41, 198, 441, 444, 482**
- ARADIAN, Achod André . . . . . **240**
- armenian (language option) . . . . . **36, 198, 445**
- armenian.mld (file) . . . . . **198, 227, 230, 445**
- ArmTeX (package) . . . . . **41, 198, 441, 445, 563**
- ÁRNASON, Einar . . . . . **240, 485**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [48]
- ARNOLD, Tim . . . . . **240**
- ARSENEAU, Donald **29, 49, 85, 218, 234, 240, 255, 260, 265, 280, 283, 286, 560, 563, 566, 578, 586**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 275]
- article (class) **24, 34, 35, 56, 58, 68, 97, 103, 125, 141, 190, 191, 198, 202, 204, 209, 210,**

214, 215, 220–222, 225, 263, 271, 304, 416  
 ASLASKEN, Helmer . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [13, 14]  
 ASPINALL, David . . . . . 240  
 ÅSSEN, Ivar . . . . . 240, 504  
 $\backslash$ AtBeginDocument (command) . . 72, 164, 165, 167, 198, 255–259, 274, 303, 328, 362, 388, 394, 415, 416  
 $\backslash$ AtBeginDocument . . 2746, 2772, 2789, 2791, 2793, 2795, 2797, 2799, 2801, 2803, 2805, 2807, 2809, 2811, 2813, 3159, 3868, 4547, 5518, 5938, 5971, 6142, 6461, 6648, 7355, 7377, 7678  
 $\backslash$ AtEndDocument (command) 199, 388, 397, 415, 430  
 $\backslash$ AtEndDocument . . . 2752, 6260, 6461, 6730, 7354, 7355, 7679  
 australian (language option) . . . . . 36, 446  
 australian.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 446  
 austrian (language option) . . . . . 36, 446  
 austrian.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 446  
 $\backslash$ author . . . . . 2011  
 $\backslash$ ayin . . . . . 9041, 9048, 9055

## B

babel (package) . . . . . 36, 41, 72, 198, 199, 204, 232, 441–443, 447, 448, 451–454, 456, 458–463, 467–474, 483, 485–487, 492–496, 500–505, 507–510, 512, 517–522, 524–526, 528, 561, 562, 570, 579  
 BACHMANN, Philipp . . . . . 240  
 BADENES, Gonal . . . . . 240, 456,  $\hookrightarrow$ [49]  
 bahasa (language option) . . . . . 36, 446  
 bahasa.dtx (file) . . . . . 447  
 bahasa.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 446  
 bahasai (language option) . . . 36, 446, 447, 485  
 bahasai.mld (file) . . . 227, 230, 446, 447, 485  
 bahasam (language option) . . . 36, 447, 496, 499  
 bahasam.dtx (file) . . . . . 447  
 bahasam.mld (file) . . . 227, 230, 447, 496, 499  
 BALGARENSKY, Marin . . . . . 240  
 bangla (language option) . . . . 36, 199, 448, 565  
 bangla.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 448  
 BangTeX (package) . . . . . 41, 199, 441, 448, 575  
 $\backslash$ baselinestretch . . . . . 1541  
 basque (language option) . . . . . 36, 448  
 basque.dtx (file) . . . . . 448  
 basque.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 448  
 BASSO, Pierre . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [16]  
 BATMUNKH, Dorjgotov . . . . . 240, 500,  $\hookrightarrow$ [17]  
 BAUDAIS, Jean-Yves . . . . . 240

BAUSUM, David . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [18, 19]  
 BAYART, Benjamin . . . 46, 235, 240, 352, 566, 568,  $\hookrightarrow$ [20, 21]  
 BAYET, Thierry . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [21]  
 $\backslash$ bcg . . . . . 8054–8056, 8058–8060, 8062–8064  
 BECCARI, Claudio . . 240, 487, 492,  $\hookrightarrow$ [22, 50, 58]  
 BEFFARA, Emmanuel . . . . . 58, 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [23]  
 $\backslash$ beforeminilof (command) . . . . . 83, 282  
 $\backslash$ beforeminilof . . . . . 3113, 3333, 7654  
 $\backslash$ beforeminilot (command) . . . . . 83, 285  
 $\backslash$ beforeminilot . . . . . 3113, 3401, 7654  
 $\backslash$ beforeminitoc (command) . . . . . 45, 83, 279  
 $\backslash$ beforeminitoc . . . . . 3113, 3263, 7654  
 $\backslash$ beforepartlof (command) . . . . . 45, 83, 311, 563  
 $\backslash$ beforepartlof . . . . . 3106, 4081, 7645  
 $\backslash$ beforepartlot (command) . . . . . 45, 83, 314, 563  
 $\backslash$ beforepartlot . . . . . 3106, 4156, 7645  
 $\backslash$ beforeparttoc (command) . . . . . 45, 83, 234, 271, 308, 428, 563  
 $\backslash$ beforeparttoc . . . . . 3106, 4008, 7645  
 $\backslash$ beforesectlof (command) . . . . . 83, 333  
 $\backslash$ beforesectlof . . . . . 3116, 4680, 7663  
 $\backslash$ beforesectlot (command) . . . . . 83, 336  
 $\backslash$ beforesectlot . . . . . 3116, 4747, 7663  
 $\backslash$ beforesecttoc (command) . . . . . 83, 331  
 $\backslash$ beforesecttoc . . . . . 3116, 4614, 7663  
 BELET, Benoît . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [203]  
 BELMOUHOUB, Rachid . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [24]  
 below (option of placeins) . . . . . 29, 30, 177  
 BÉRCES, József . . . . . 240, 495, 496,  $\hookrightarrow$ [51]  
 BERDNIKOV, Alexander . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [25, 26, 27, 28]  
 BERRY, Karl . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [1, 2, 29, 30]  
 $\backslash$ bet . . . . . 9045, 9052, 9059  
 BEYENE, Berhanu . . . . . 240, 464, 465,  $\hookrightarrow$ [31]  
 BEZOS, Javier . . . . . 85, 240, 471, 477, 520, 522,  $\hookrightarrow$ [32, 33, 34, 35]  
 $\backslash$ bfseries (command) . . . . . 218  
 $\backslash$ bfseries . . . . . 1470, 1472, 1496, 1499, 1521, 1526, 1530, 1533, 1754, 1757, 1802, 1805, 2007, 2314–2318, 2320–2323, 3214, 3223, 3899, 3908, 3912, 3922, 4569, 4577  
 Bg5.cap (file) . . . . . 457  
 Bg5.cpx (file) . . . . . 457  
 $\backslash$ bibitem . . . . . 2279, 2287, 2494  
 $\backslash$ bibliography (command) . . . . . 48, 138  
 $\backslash$ bibliography . . . . . 1, 534, 828  
 $\backslash$ bibliographystyle . . . . . 533, 827  
 bibtopic (package) . . . . . 57, 199  
 bibtotoc (option of KOMA-Script) . . . 47, 138  
 bibtotocnumbered (option of KOMA-Script) 47  
 bibunit (environment) . . . . . 199  
 bibunits (package) . . . . . 57, 199, 215  
 bicig (language option) . . 36, 213, 449, 450, 524

bicig.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 449, 524  
 bicig2 (language option) . . . . . 36, 450, 524  
 bicig2.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 450, 524, 573  
 bicig3 (language option) . . . . . 36, 450, 525  
 bicig3.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 450, 525, 580  
 \bigskipamount (command) . . . 28, 78, 249, 421  
 \bigskipamount . . . . . 1, 2646, 7412  
 BiLotta, Giuseppe . . . . . 219, 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [36]  
 Bíró, Árpád . . . . . 240, 495, 496,  $\hookrightarrow$ [51]  
 bithe (language option) . . . . 36, 213, 451, 499  
 bithe.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 451, 499, 573  
 BITOUZÉ, Denis . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [37]  
 Bloch, Laurent . . . . . 240  
 bo.tex (old example document) . . . . . 585  
 book (class) 24, 34, 35, 44, 45, 56, 58, 67, 68, 73,  
     108, 127, 190, 191, 199, 202, 204, 206,  
     209, 214, 221, 222, 225, 263, 264, 271,  
     304, 584  
 book.cls (file) . . . . . 67  
 BOSHNAKOV, Georgi . . . . . 240, 453,  $\hookrightarrow$ [52]  
 BOUGETTE, Patrice . . . . . 240  
 BOURBONNAIS, Daniel . . . . . 240  
 BOYKO, Victor . . . . . 240, 514,  $\hookrightarrow$ [38]  
 BRAAMS, Johannes L. . . . . 41, 199, 232,  
     240, 442, 460–462, 473, 486, 503, 504,  
     528, 561,  $\hookrightarrow$ [39, 40, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45,  
     46, 47, 48, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56,  
     57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 62, 63, 64, 65, 66, 67,  
     68, 69, 70, 71, 72, 73, 74, 75, 76, 77, 78,  
     79, 80, 81, 82, 83, 84, 85, 86, 87, 168,  
     200, 201, 202, 203]  
 BRAUN, Felix . . . . . 85, 197, 208, 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [88]  
 brazil (language option) . . . . . 36, 451, 452  
 brazil.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 451, 452  
 brazilian (language option) . . . . . 36, 452  
 brazilian.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 452, 570  
 BREEN, Jim . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [89]  
 BREITENLOHNER, Peter . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [90]  
 breton (language option) . . . . . 36, 452  
 breton.dtx (file) . . . . . 452  
 breton.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 452  
 british (language option) . . . . . 36, 453  
 british.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 453, 570  
 bulgarian (language option) . . . . . 36, 453  
 bulgarian.dtx (file) . . . . . 453  
 bulgarian.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 453, 564  
 bulgarianb (language option) . . . . . 36, 454  
 bulgarianb.mld (file) . . . . . 41, 227, 230, 454, 568  
 BURBANK, Mimi . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [224]  
 BURC, Mustafa . . . . . 240, 524,  $\hookrightarrow$ [53]  
 buryat (language option) . . . . . 36, 454, 455  
 buryat.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 454  
 buryat2 (language option) . . . . . 36, 455  
 buryat2.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 455, 580

BURYKIN, Alexey . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [26, 27, 28]

## C

\c@lofdepth . . . 3159, 3365, 3868, 4122, 4123,  
     4547, 4717, 4718  
 \c@lotdepth (command) . . . . . 286  
 \c@lotdepth . . . 3159, 3433, 3868, 4197, 4198,  
     4547, 4784, 4785  
 \c@minilofdepth (command) . . . . . 283  
 \c@minilofdepth . . . . . 3365  
 \c@minilotdepth (command) . . . . . 286  
 \c@minilotdepth . . . . . 3433  
 \c@minitocdepth (command) . . . . . 280  
 \c@minitocdepth . . . . . 3295, 7412  
 \c@mtc . . . 3167, 7327, 7331, 7344, 7348, 7419  
 \c@mti (command) . . . . . 561  
 \c@mti . . . 3225, 3263, 3333, 3401, 3545, 3564,  
     3583  
 \c@page . . . . . 1985  
 \c@partlofdepth . . . . . 4122  
 \c@partlotdepth . . . . . 4197  
 \c@parttocdepth . . . . . 4046, 7412  
 \c@ptc . . . 3167, 7321, 7325, 7339, 7343, 7419  
 \c@pti . . . 3924, 3962, 4015, 4088, 4163, 4249,  
     4268, 4287  
 \c@secnumdepth 1469, 4824, 4837, 4846, 7808,  
     7826  
 \c@sectlofdepth . . . . . 4714  
 \c@sectlotdepth . . . . . 4781  
 \c@secttocdepth . . . . . 4648, 7412  
 \c@stc . . . 3167, 7332, 7336, 7349, 7353, 7419  
 \c@sti . . . 4578, 4616, 4683, 4750, 4876, 4895,  
     4914  
 \c@tocdepth (command) . . . . . 280, 283  
 \c@tocdepth . . . 3017, 3295, 3472, 3485, 4046,  
     4648, 4714, 4781  
 canadian (language option) . . . . . 36, 455, 566  
 canadian.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 455  
 canadien (language option) . . . . . 36, 456, 566  
 canadien.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 456  
 captcont (package) 50, 73, 85, 178, 199, 237, 258,  
     407, 581  
 caption (package) 51, 69, 85, 165, 166, 200, 236,  
     258, 408, 572  
 \caption (command) . . . . . 27, 207, 559  
 \caption . . . . . 69, 72, 75,  
     78, 87, 90, 93, 96, 105, 108, 111, 114,  
     133, 136, 139, 142, 149, 152, 157, 160,  
     167, 170, 173, 176, 452, 455, 473, 476,  
     517, 520, 526, 529, 554, 557, 563, 566,  
     578, 581, 587, 590, 663, 666, 683, 686,  
     722, 725, 731, 734, 749, 752, 771, 774,

- 811, 814, 820, 823, 843, 846, 852, 855,  
865, 868, 874, 877, 1031, 1044, 1086,  
1112, 1143, 1299, 1305, 1318, 1359,  
1383, 1408, 1843, 1847, 1852, 1856,  
1863, 1868, 1872, 1891, 1895, 1900,  
1904, 1911, 1916, 1920, 1946, 1954,  
1965, 1973, 2345, 2392, 2618
- caption2 (package) **51, 69, 85, 166, 200, 236, 258, 408, 572**
- \captions (command) ..... **72**
- captions.dn (file) ..... **484**
- CARDI, Olivier ..... **240**
- CARELLA, David ..... **240**, ↪[91]
- CARLISLE, David ..... **26, 225, 240, 293, 559**,  
↪[54, 92, 93, 94, 95, 201, 202, 203]
- CARMODY, Kevin ..... **240, 459, 484**
- CARRIBA, Manuel ..... **240, 471**, ↪[55, 56]
- CASPAR, Régis ..... **240**
- castillan (language option) .... **36, 456, 520**
- castillan.mld (file) ..... **227, 230, 456**
- castillian (language option) ..... **36, 456**
- castillian.mld (file) .... **227, 230, 456, 570**
- catalan (language option) ..... **36, 456, 520**
- catalan.dtx (file) ..... **456**
- catalan.mld (file) ..... **227, 230, 456**
- CATALOG (file) ..... **200, 227, 228, 230, 587**
- ccaption (package) **51, 69, 85, 166, 200, 236, 259, 408, 572**
- \centering 1944, 1952, 1963, 1971, 2333, 2385,  
2561, 2582, 3970
- CervanT<sub>E</sub>X (package) ..... **41, 522**
- \cftpagenumbersoff ..... 218, 1450,  
1451, 3036–3040, 3047–3050, 3059–  
3064, 3066, 3068, 3070, 3072, 3074,  
3076
- \cftpagenumberon . 3030–3034, 3042–3045,  
3052–3057, 3065, 3067, 3069, 3071,  
3073, 3075
- \cftsecfont ..... 219, 2193, 2202
- \cftsecindent ..... 1443, 1445
- \cftsecnumwidth ..... 1444, 1446
- \cftsetrmarg ..... 2003
- \cftsubsecfont .... 2194–2196, 2203–2205
- \cftsubsecindent .. 1445, 1446, 1448, 2002
- \cftsubsecnumwidth ..... 1447, 1449
- \cftsubsubsecindent ..... 1448, 1449
- ch0.tex (old example document) ... **583, 585**
- \ch@pt@c ..... 7789, 7793, 7795, 7801, 7803
- \chapbegin (command) ..... **290**
- \chapbegin ..... 3530
- \chapter (command) ... **24–27, 34, 35, 44, 46, 48–50, 56, 60, 62, 63, 65, 67, 75, 80, 132, 147, 152, 153, 158, 159, 161, 164, 198, 199, 204, 221, 263–266, 271–276, 278, 281, 284, 287–289, 293–295, 304, 305, 307, 308, 310, 311, 313, 314, 316, 328, 381, 394, 395, 416, 558**
- chapter (counter) ..... **252, 253**
- \chapter ... 1, 15, 22, 37, 44, 65, 80, 98, 129,  
144, 163, 180, 194, 199, 204, 221, 224,  
244, 251, 261, 270, 306, 307, 310, 311,  
316, 317, 346, 443, 478, 493, 507, 544,  
568, 893, 900, 907, 1120, 1169, 1217,  
1286, 1322, 1344, 1364, 1396, 1411,  
1559, 1636, 1664, 1706, 1710, 1716,  
1718, 1722, 1729, 1733, 1762, 1810,  
1887, 1907, 1938, 1957, 2019, 2096,  
2167, 2177, 2213, 2234, 2327, 2378,  
2398, 2413, 2418, 2423, 2429, 2438,  
2461, 2463, 2467, 2471, 2475, 2479,  
2481, 2575, 2831, 2924, 2951, 2952,  
3106, 3119, 3175, 3186, 3247, 3317,  
3385, 3465, 3612, 4344, 6007, 6032,  
6050, 6075, 6648, 6667, 7362, 7672
- \chapter\* (command) .. **32, 33, 68, 84, 89, 93, 220, 234, 265, 274, 558, 563, 564**
- \chapter@mtcck 5342, 5369, 5377, 5383, 5389,  
5398, 5405
- \chapterbegin 3460, 3694, 3762, 3823, 7518
- chapterbib (package) ..... **57, 200, 201, 215**
- \chapterend (command) ..... **61, 558, 559**
- \chapterend . 3460, 3694, 3762, 3823, 7518
- \chapterfont ..... 2007
- \chaptermark ..... 7813
- \chapternumberline ..... 7830, 7833
- \chardef ..... 2961
- CHARPENTIER, Jean-Côme ..... **240**,  
↪[37, 155, 203, 248]
- CHAUVET, Jean-Pascal ..... **240**, ↪[96]
- checkfiles** (default option) ... **28, 31, 57, 148, 167–169, 201, 218, 234, 380, 564**
- CHEN, Pehong ..... **240**, ↪[97]
- CHEONG, Otfried ..... **240**, ↪[98]
- CHEVALIER, Céline ..... **240**, ↪[7]
- chinese1 (language option) ..... **36, 457**
- chinese1.mld (file) ..... **227, 230, 457, 567**
- chinese1.mlo (file) ..... **227, 230, 457**
- chinese2 (language option) ..... **36, 457, 458**
- chinese2.mld (file) ..... **227, 230, 457, 567**
- chinese2.mlo (file) ..... **227, 230, 457, 458**
- CHLEBÍKOVÁ, Jana ..... **240, 519**, ↪[57]
- CHOU, Pai H. .... **240**, ↪[99]
- cite (package) ..... **588**
- \cite (command) ..... **49, 77, 200, 218**
- \cite ..... 1, 459, 670, 756, 2268, 2269
- CJK (package) . **36, 41, 201, 202, 223, 224, 441, 457, 478–481, 488–490, 523**

## Classes

amsart 50, 63, 85, 164, 197, 198, 392, 567  
 amsbook 49, 63, 85, 155, 197, 198, 393, 567  
 amsproc 50, 63, 85, 164, 197, 198, 392, 567  
 article 24, 34, 35, 56, 58, 68, 97, 103, 125,  
 141, 190, 191, 198, 202, 204, 209, 210,  
 214, 215, 220–222, 225, 263, 271, 304,  
 416  
 book 24, 34, 35, 44, 45, 56, 58, 67, 68, 73,  
 108, 127, 190, 191, 199, 202, 204, 206,  
 209, 214, 221, 222, 225, 263, 264, 271,  
 304, 584  
 jura 50, 71, 85, 164, 197, 208, 389, 394, 578  
 letter 24, 56, 191, 202, 209, 221  
 ltxdoc 24, 202, 210  
 ltxnews 24, 202, 210  
 memoir 49, 62, 69, 85, 102, 131–133,  
 151–153, 156, 188, 194, 210, 214, 215,  
 226, 234, 236, 251, 259, 268, 392, 435,  
 565, 571–573  
 proc 24, 202, 220, 221  
 report 24, 34, 35, 44, 45, 56, 58,  
 67, 68, 71, 73, 108, 125, 190, 191, 202,  
 204, 206, 209, 214, 221, 222, 225, 263,  
 264, 271, 304, 584  
 scrartcl 39, 47, 49, 71, 85, 155, 208, 221,  
 222  
 scrbook 39, 47, 49, 71, 85, 126, 155, 208,  
 214, 221, 222  
 scrlettr 208  
 scrlettr2 208  
 screprt 39, 47, 49, 71, 85, 137, 155, 208,  
 215, 221, 222  
 slides 202  
 \cleardoublepage (command) 45, 46, 68, 69,  
 83, 128, 271, 272, 307  
 \cleardoublepage 1967, 1983, 3110, 3123  
 \clearpage (command) 45, 46, 68, 271, 307  
 CLEGG, Marian 240  
 \closeout 2900, 2903, 2975, 3602–  
 3604, 3616, 3647, 3694, 3725, 3762,  
 3786, 3823, 4306–4308, 4326, 4340,  
 4415, 4439, 4477, 4501, 4539, 4933–  
 4935, 4955, 4974, 5026, 5052, 5087,  
 5113, 5148, 7313, 7316  
 \clubpenalty (command) 560  
 cmcyralt (package) 514  
 cmcyralt.sty (file) 514  
 cmk (script) 202, 206, 212, 227–230, 588  
 COCHRAN, Steven Douglas 31, 50, 73, 85, 240,  
 ↪[100, 101, 102]  
 CODOGNO, Maurizio 240, 487, ↪[58]  
 \coffee (command) 294  
 \coffee 3644, 4344, 4958

\coffee (command) 276  
 \coffee (command) 3224, 3471, 3484, 3859, 7588  
 \coffeeline (command) 212, 379  
 \coffeeline 6138, 7728  
 color (package) 115  
 \colorbox 1510  
 \columnbreak 1498, 1515  
 \columnrule 4764  
 \columnsep 1506  
 \columnseprule 1505  
 \columnwidth 3190, 3263, 3313, 3333, 3401,  
 3892, 4032, 4100, 4179, 4555, 4631,  
 4697, 4767, 4771, 5199

## Commands

\@dominitoc 290  
 \@Undottedtocline 288  
 \@Undottedtoclinep 288, 289  
 \@caption 559  
 \@chapter 49, 265, 287, 395  
 \@dominitoc 290  
 \@dominitoc@used@true 290  
 \@dosectlot 569  
 \@dotsep 42, 43, 361  
 \@dottedtocline 67, 68, 268, 289, 310,  
 312, 315, 332, 335, 337  
 \@fileswfalse 566  
 \@gobble 566  
 \@gobblethree 382  
 \@gobbletwo 424  
 \@ifnextchar 278, 281, 284, 423  
 \@ifundefined 264, 265, 275, 301, 349  
 \@input 296, 299, 301, 322, 325, 327  
 \@inputcheck 57, 268, 560  
 \@longextensions@false 267  
 \@longextensions@true 267  
 \@minilof@used@true 281  
 \@minilot@used@true 284  
 \@minitoc@used@true 278  
 \@mtc@FEfalse 261  
 \@mtc@FEtrue 261  
 \@namedef 352  
 \@nameuse 352  
 \@newread 560  
 \@part 49, 262, 316, 394  
 \@pnumwidth 42, 43  
 \@pnumwith 361  
 \@pt 565  
 \@schapter 49, 265, 287, 395  
 \@sect 49, 263, 338, 340, 395  
 \@spart 49, 262, 316, 394  
 \@sssect 49, 264, 338, 395  
 \@starttoc 266, 273  
 \@tocfile 278, 281, 285



- \@tocrmarg ..... 42, 43, 361
- \@undottedtocline ..... 268
- \addappheadtotoc ..... 61, 102
- \addcoffeeline ..... 212, 379
- \addcontentsline . 32, 48, 60, 192, 193
- \addst@rred ..... 288
- \addstarred ..... 563
- \addstarredchapter . 32, 192, 233, 288
- \addstarredpart ..... 32, 192, 288
- \addstarredsection . 32, 192, 275, 288
- \addto ..... 72
- \addtocontents ..... 60, 61
- \addtocounter ..... 32, 47
- \adjustmtc 32, 33, 48, 60, 61, 84, 94, 138, 197, 265, 275, 571
- \adjustptc 32, 84, 89, 197, 236, 262, 303, 571
- \adjuststc 32, 60, 84, 101, 197, 264, 328, 571
- \afterminilof ..... 83, 284
- \afterminilot ..... 83, 287
- \afterminitoc ..... 83, 280
- \afterpartlof ..... 45, 83, 313, 563
- \afterpartlot ..... 45, 83, 316, 563
- \afterparttoc ..... 45, 83, 310, 563
- \aftersectlof ..... 83, 335
- \aftersectlot ..... 83, 338
- \aftersecttoc ..... 83, 333
- \appendix ..... 60
- \AtBeginDocument 72, 164, 165, 167, 198, 255–259, 274, 303, 328, 362, 388, 394, 415, 416
- \AtEndDocument 199, 388, 397, 415, 430
- \beforeminilof ..... 83, 282
- \beforeminilot ..... 83, 285
- \beforeminitoc ..... 45, 83, 279
- \beforepartlof ..... 45, 83, 311, 563
- \beforepartlot ..... 45, 83, 314, 563
- \beforeparttoc . 45, 83, 234, 271, 308, 428, 563
- \beforesectlof ..... 83, 333
- \beforesectlot ..... 83, 336
- \beforesecttoc ..... 83, 331
- \bfseries ..... 218
- \bibliography ..... 48, 138
- \bigskipamount ..... 28, 78, 249, 421
- \c@lotdepth ..... 286
- \c@minilofdepth ..... 283
- \c@minilotdepth ..... 286
- \c@minitocdepth ..... 280
- \c@mti ..... 561
- \c@tocdepth ..... 280, 283
- \caption ..... 27, 207, 559
- \captions ..... 72
- \chapbegin ..... 290
- \chapter . . 24–27, 34, 35, 44, 46, 48–50, 56, 60, 62, 63, 65, 67, 75, 80, 132, 147, 152, 153, 158, 159, 161, 164, 198, 199, 204, 221, 263–266, 271–276, 278, 281, 284, 287–289, 293–295, 304, 305, 307, 308, 310, 311, 313, 314, 316, 328, 381, 394, 395, 416, 558
- \chapter\* 32, 33, 68, 84, 89, 93, 220, 234, 265, 274, 558, 563, 564
- \chapterend ..... 61, 558, 559
- \cite ..... 49, 77, 200, 218
- \cleardoublepage 45, 46, 68, 69, 83, 128, 271, 272, 307
- \clearpage ..... 45, 46, 68, 271, 307
- \clubpenalty ..... 560
- \coffee ..... 294
- \coffee font ..... 276
- \coffeeline ..... 212, 379
- \contentsline . . 58, 262, 264, 265, 290
- \count@ ..... 421
- \csname ..... 302, 353, 355
- \decrementmtc . . 33, 84, 197, 275, 571
- \decrementptc 33, 84, 197, 236, 303, 571
- \decrementstc . . 33, 84, 197, 328, 571
- \def ..... 71
- \df@mtilf ..... 276
- \df@mtilt ..... 276
- \df@mtitc ..... 276
- \dimen@ ..... 421
- \do@mtilf ..... 276
- \do@mtilt ..... 276
- \do@mtitc ..... 276
- \documentclass 27, 28, 31, 75, 195, 202, 206, 220
- \dominilof . . 26, 27, 38, 39, 80, 83, 153, 159, 171, 176, 220, 281, 290, 291, 317
- \dominilot . . 26, 27, 38, 39, 80, 83, 154, 159, 171, 176, 220, 284, 290, 291, 317
- \dominitoc ..... 26, 27, 38, 39, 47, 52, 57, 75, 80, 83, 138, 152, 153, 160, 171, 175, 220, 225, 232, 235, 278, 290, 317, 340, 416, 559, 561, 567, 568
- \dominitoc@ ..... 290
- \dopartlof . . 27, 31, 38, 39, 79, 83, 154, 160, 171, 175, 220, 317, 318
- \dopartlot . . 27, 31, 38, 39, 79, 83, 154, 160, 172, 175, 220, 317, 319
- \doparttoc . 27, 31, 38, 39, 50, 60, 79, 83, 152, 160, 172, 175, 220, 266, 317, 318, 396, 397, 399
- \dosectlof . . 27, 28, 38, 39, 81, 83, 154, 160, 172, 176, 220, 251, 340, 341

- \dosectlot 27, 28, 38, 39, 50, 81, 83, 154, 161, 172, 176, 220, 251, 266, 340, 342
- \dosecttoc . . 27, 28, 38, 39, 81, 83, 152, 161, 172, 176, 220, 329, 340, 341
- \edef . . . . . 302
- \else . . . . . 250
- \empty . . . 45, 46, 83, 271, 425, 428, 560
- \endcsname . . . . . 302, 353, 355
- \endmtc@verse . . . . . 277
- \endmtchideinmainlof . . . 66, 84, 214
- \endmtchideinmainlot 66, 84, 125, 126, 214
- \endptc@verse . . . . . 307
- \enlargethispage . . . . . 54
- \expandafter . . . . . 353
- \fake@starttoc . . . . . 273
- \fakelistoffigures . 27, 28, 31, 78–81, 173, 174, 273
- \fakelistoftables 27, 28, 31, 50, 78–81, 173, 174, 273
- \faketableofcontents . . 27, 28, 31, 50, 52, 78–81, 89, 173–175, 273, 396, 401, 559
- \fi . . . . . 226, 250, 418
- \figure . . . . . 297
- \firstchapteris 26, 47, 51, 84, 158, 169, 197, 200, 206, 275, 411, 561, 562
- \firstpartis . . 26, 47, 51, 84, 158, 169, 197, 206, 303, 411
- \firstsectionis 26, 47, 51, 84, 159, 170, 197, 206, 328, 412
- \FloatBarrier . . . . . 29, 206, 220, 571
- \footnotesize . . . . . 218
- \frontmatter . . . . . 75
- \gdef . . . . . 260
- \gobbleopt@ . . . . . 423
- \hline . . . . 309, 312, 315, 331, 334, 337
- \hrule . . . . . 275, 565
- \Huge . . . . . 218
- \huge . . . . . 218
- \if@mtc@Himtoc@ . . . . . 373
- \if@mtc@hints@ . . . . . 250
- \if@mtc@hints@given@ . . . . . 251
- \if@mtc@hints@w@ . . . . . 251
- \if@mtc@insellang@ . . . . . 378, 379
- \if@mtc@memoirLoaded@ . . . . . 268
- \if@mtc@misslang . . . . . 382
- \if@mtc@setpagenumbers@act@ . . . 571
- \if@mtc@setrules@act@ . . . . . 571
- \if@mtcfixglossary@ . . . . . 376
- \if@partlof@used@ . . . . . 310
- \if@partlot@used@ . . . . . 313
- \if@parttoc@used@ . . . . . 308
- \if@realch . . . . . 559
- \if@sectlof@used@ . . . . . 333
- \if@sectlot@used@ . . . . . 336
- \if@secttoc@used@ . . . . . 330
- \ifcase . . . . . 206, 226, 418
- \ifFTR . . . . . 570
- \ifmtcsecondpart . . . . . 580
- \ifnum . . . . . 338
- \ifundottedmtc . . . . . 289, 575
- \incrementmtc . . . 33, 84, 197, 275, 571
- \incrementptc 33, 84, 197, 236, 303, 571
- \incrementstc . . . 33, 84, 197, 328, 571
- \itemindent . . . . . 277, 307
- \itemsep . . . . . 277, 307
- \itshape . . . . . 218
- \jobname . . 206, 208, 261, 267, 278, 281, 285, 290, 297, 300, 404, 414, 418, 583
- \kern . . . . . 275, 560
- \kernafterminilof . . . . . 74, 82
- \kernafterminilot . . . . . 74, 82
- \kernafterminitoc . . . . . 74, 82
- \kernafterpartlof . . . . . 74, 82
- \kernafterpartlot . . . . . 74, 82
- \kernafterparttoc . . . . . 74, 82, 237
- \kernaftersectlof . . . . . 74, 82
- \kernaftersectlot . . . . . 74, 82
- \kernaftersecttoc . . . . . 74, 82
- \ktightmtcfalse . . . . . 39, 78
- \ktightmtctrue . . . . . 39, 78
- \l@chapter . . . . . 67, 265, 287, 310
- \l@coffee . . . . . 379
- \l@paragraph . . . . . 68, 350
- \l@part . . . . . 67, 262
- \l@section . . . . . 67, 68, 264, 350
- \l@subparagraph . . . . . 68
- \l@subsection . . . . . 67, 316
- \l@subsubsection . . . . . 67
- \l@xchapter . . . . . 265, 287
- \l@xpart . . . . . 262, 316
- \l@xsect . . . . . 264
- \l@xsection . . . . . 583
- \LANG . . . . . 206, 418
- \LARGE . . . . . 218
- \Large . . . . . 218
- \large . . . . . 218
- \let . . . . . 70, 563
- \linebreak . . . . . 55
- \linewidth . . . . . 42
- \list . . . . . 277
- \list{} . . . . . 307
- \listoffigures . . 20, 27, 28, 31, 47, 63, 78–81, 173, 174, 266
- \listoftables 20, 27, 28, 31, 47, 50, 63, 78–81, 137, 173, 174, 266



- \listparindent . . . . . 277, 307
- \mainmatter . . . . . 75
- \makeatletter . . . . . 68, 210
- \makeatother . . . . . 68, 210
- \MakeUpperCase . . . . . 581
- \markboth . . . . . 68, 307, 569, 581
- \markright . . . . . 68
- \mdseries . . . . . 218
- \MessageBreak . . . . . 575
- \minilof . . 20, 27, 31, 34, 38, 39, 80, 83,  
171, 173, 208, 277, 281, 284, 333, 560
- \minilof@ . . . . . 281, 289
- \minilot . . 20, 27, 31, 34, 38, 39, 80, 83,  
171, 173, 208, 277, 284, 335, 560
- \minilot@ . . . . . 284
- \minitoc . . . 20, 26, 27, 29, 32, 34, 35,  
38, 39, 52, 55, 63, 75, 80, 83, 113, 171,  
173, 208, 232, 235, 277, 278, 281, 290,  
307, 330, 559–561, 567, 568
- \minitoc@ . . . . . 276, 278, 289
- \minitocno . . . . . 558, 559
- \minitocyes . . . . . 558
- \MLF@contentsline . . . . . 297
- \MLF@next . . . . . 298
- \mlf@setform . . . . . 283, 363
- \MLF@test . . . . . 298
- \mlffont . . . . . 33, 34, 80, 282
- \mlfpagenumbers . . . . . 43, 82
- \mlfrule . . . . . 43, 82, 567
- \mlfSfont . . . . . 33, 34, 40, 80, 573
- \mlftitle . . . . . 34, 35, 80, 441
- \MLT@contentsline . . . . . 300
- \MLT@next . . . . . 300
- \mlt@setform . . . . . 286, 363
- \MLT@test . . . . . 301
- \mltfont . . . . . 33, 34, 80, 285
- \mltpagenumbers . . . . . 43, 82
- \mltrule . . . . . 43, 82, 567
- \mltSfont . . . . . 33, 34, 80, 573
- \mlttitle . . . . . 34, 35, 80, 441
- \mtc@addmisslanguage . . . . . 382
- \mtc@BBR . . . . . 265
- \mtc@CkFile . . . . . 261, 278, 282, 285
- \MTC@contentsline . . . . . 293, 302
- \mtc@featparam@ . . . . . 371
- \mtc@featparam@abbrev . . . . . 371
- \mtc@featparam@third . . . . . 371
- \mtc@fparam@abbrev . . . . . 364
- \mtc@glofix@level . . . . . 376
- \mtc@hints@begindoc . . . . . 388, 396
- \mtc@hints@chapter . . . . . 394
- \mtc@hints@enddoc . . . . . 388, 397, 412
- \mtc@hints@part . . . . . 394
- \mtc@hints@section . . . . . 394
- \mtc@hook@beforeinputfile . 255, 280,  
283, 286, 566
- \mtc@ifmtarg . . . . . 260, 262, 264, 265
- \mtc@ixfix@level . . . . . 377
- \mtc@level@abbrev . . . . . 355
- \mtc@listmisslanguages . . . . . 382
- \mtc@maf . . . . . 414, 415
- \mtc@maf@long . . . . . 414
- \mtc@maf@short . . . . . 414
- \mtc@mta@abbrev . . . . . 354
- \mtc@mtade@abbrev . . . . . 372
- \mtc@mtatf@abbrev . . . . . 358
- \mtc@mtati@abbrev . . . . . 359
- \mtc@mtf@abbrev . . . . . 364
- \mtc@mtfeat@abbrev . . . . . 370, 371
- \mtc@mttpn@abbrev . . . . . 366
- \mtc@mttru@abbrev . . . . . 368
- \MTC@next . . . . . 295
- \mtc@onebacksect . . . . . 263
- \mtc@pns@abbrev . . . . . 366
- \mtc@rule . . . . . 275, 560
- \mtc@rusw@abbrev . . . . . 369
- \mtc@savetocdepth . . . . . 373
- \mtc@setform . . . . . 280, 362
- \mtc@setlangopt . . . . . 384
- \mtc@setlangoptm . . . . . 384
- \mtc@setlangopto . . . . . 384
- \mtc@string . . . . . 265
- \mtc@strutbox . . . . . 565
- \MTC@test . . . . . 296
- \mtc@toks . . . . . 265, 294, 320, 324, 326
- \mtc@verse . . . . . 277
- \mtc@While . . . . . 261
- \MTC@WriteCoffeeline . . . . . 302
- \MTC@WriteContentsline 302, 320, 324,  
326
- \mtc@zrule . . . . . 265, 565
- \mtcaddchapter . . 33, 47, 48, 50, 63, 67,  
68, 84, 89, 93, 137, 139, 193, 197, 213,  
234, 265, 564
- \mtcaddpart 33, 69, 84, 89, 193, 197, 262,  
564
- \mtcaddsection . . 33, 50, 67, 68, 84, 97,  
193, 197, 213, 237, 264, 564, 576
- \mtcfixglossary 84, 158, 159, 179, 187,  
197, 236, 237, 376, 432, 569, 576, 578
- \mtcfixindex . 48, 84, 95, 101, 158, 159,  
179, 188, 197, 235–237, 377, 432, 567,  
568, 576, 578
- \mtcfont . . . . . 27, 33–35, 80, 279
- \mtcgapafterheads 73, 79, 214, 237, 581
- \mtcgapbeforeheads . 73, 79, 214, 237,  
581

- \mtchideinmainlof . . . . . 65, 84, 214
- \mtchideinmainlot 65, 84, 125, 126, 214
- \mtcindent . 27, 42, 80, 87, 249, 275, 277
- \mtcloadmlo . . . 189, 236, 378, 427, 571
- \mtcwarn@true . . . . . 570
- \mtcpagenumbers . . . . . 43, 82, 561
- \mtcPfont . . . . . 33, 35, 68, 80, 560
- \mtcprepare . . 27, 39, 83, 157, 208, 220, 237, 350, 424, 578
- \mtcrule . . . . . 43, 82, 561
- \mtcselectlanguage . . . . . 35, 37, 38, 67, 72, 78, 146, 149, 180, 181, 189, 234, 236, 378, 384, 427, 441, 564, 571
- \mtcsetdepth . 27, 28, 31, 41, 63, 78–81, 149, 182, 236, 372, 569
- \mtcsetfeature 45, 46, 78, 83, 150, 182, 186, 197, 199, 205, 223, 235, 273, 369, 370, 568
- \mtcsetfont . . 27, 28, 31, 40, 61–63, 68, 70, 71, 75, 78, 146, 150, 183, 187, 235, 276, 353, 354, 357, 358, 566, 573, 577
- \mtcsetformat . 42, 43, 78, 90, 150, 183, 184, 187, 235, 280, 283, 286, 310, 312, 315, 332, 335, 337, 360–363, 567, 568
- \mtcsetpagenumbers 44, 75, 78, 82, 184, 185, 235, 237, 365, 367, 567, 575
- \mtcsetpagenumbers@ . . . . . 365, 366
- \mtcsetrules . 44, 78, 82, 185, 235, 237, 367, 567, 575
- \mtcsetrules@ . . . . . 368
- \mtcsettitle . 35, 37, 38, 40, 63, 67, 78, 146, 150, 186, 235, 359, 372, 567, 568
- \mtcsettitlefont . 40, 62, 63, 78, 150, 186, 235, 276, 358, 359, 566
- \mtcSfont . . . . 27, 33, 35, 61, 68, 80, 560
- \mtcskip . 27, 28, 78, 234, 249, 565, 569
- \mtcskipamount 27, 28, 78, 234, 249, 421, 565
- \mtcSPfont . . . . . 33, 35, 68, 80, 81, 560
- \mtcSSfont . . 33, 35, 40, 68, 80, 425, 560
- \mtcSSSfont . . . 33, 35, 63, 68, 80, 560
- \mtctitle . . . . . 34, 35, 40, 63, 80, 441
- \mtifont . 34, 35, 80, 279, 282, 285, 560
- \name . . . . . 584
- \newcommand . . . . . 42
- \newcommand\* . . . . . 67
- \newif . . . . . 250
- \newread . . . . . 265, 560
- \newwrite . . . . . 232, 266
- \noindent . . . . . 560
- \nomlfpagenumbers . . . . . 43, 82
- \nomlfrule . . . . . 43, 82, 567
- \nomltpagenumbers . . . . . 43, 82
- \nomltrule . . . . . 43, 82, 567
- \nomtcpagenumbers . . . 43, 82, 561, 565
- \nomtcrule . . . . . 43, 82, 561, 563
- \nopagebreak . . . . . 560
- \noplfpagenumbers . . . . . 43, 82
- \noplfrule . . . . . 43, 82, 567
- \nopltpagenumbers . . . . . 43, 82
- \nopltrule . . . . . 43, 82, 567
- \noptcpagenumbers . . . . . 43, 82
- \noptcrule . . . . . 43, 82
- \normalsize . . . . . 34, 218
- \noslfpagenumbers . . . . . 43, 82
- \noslfrule . . . . . 43, 82, 567
- \nosltpagenumbers . . . . . 43, 82
- \nosltrule . . . . . 43, 82, 567
- \nostcpagenumbers . . . . . 43, 82
- \nostcrule . . . . . 43, 82
- \numwidth . . . . . 42
- \or . . . . . 226, 418
- \outer . . . . . 265
- \PackageError . . . . . 215, 235
- \PackageInfo . . . . . 215, 235, 566, 570
- \PackageWarning . . . 215, 235, 566, 570
- \PackageWarningNoLine . . . . . 215
- \pagestyle . . . . . 46
- \par . . . . . 574
- \paragraph . . . . . 204, 221
- \parsep . . . . . 39, 277, 307
- \parskip . . . . . 39, 249, 277, 307
- \part . 25, 31, 48, 49, 56, 60, 79, 151, 158, 161, 165, 179, 198, 199, 204, 221, 262, 266, 288, 289, 303, 307, 310, 313, 316, 320, 323, 325, 394, 415
- \part\* . 68, 69, 84, 89, 262, 274, 316, 564
- \partbegin . . . . . 60, 316
- \partlof 31, 34, 38, 39, 79, 83, 171, 173, 208, 305, 307, 310, 560, 561
- \partlof@ . . . . . 310
- \partlot 31, 34, 38, 39, 79, 83, 172, 174, 208, 305, 307, 313, 560, 561
- \partlot@ . . . . . 313
- \partoc . . . . . 307
- \partopsep . . . . . 307
- \parttoc . . . . 20, 31, 34, 35, 38, 39, 50, 60, 79, 83, 89, 172, 174, 208, 305, 307, 396, 397, 399, 401, 560, 561, 564, 565
- \parttoc@ . . . . . 307, 308
- \PLF@contentsline . . . . . 323
- \PLF@next . . . . . 324
- \plf@setform . . . . . 312, 362
- \PLF@test . . . . . 324, 325
- \plffont . . . . . 34, 37, 70, 79
- \plfpagenumbers . . . . . 43, 82
- \plfrule . . . . . 43, 82, 567

- \plfSfont . . . . . 34, 37, 70, 79, 573
- \plftitle . . . . . 34, 37, 79, 441
- \PLT@contentsline . . . . . 325
- \PLT@next . . . . . 326
- \plt@setform . . . . . 315, 363
- \PLT@test . . . . . 327
- \pltfont . . . . . 34, 37, 70, 79
- \pltpagenumbers . . . . . 43, 82
- \plrulerule . . . . . 43, 82, 567
- \pltSfont . . . . . 34, 37, 70, 79, 573
- \plttitle . . . . . 34, 37, 79, 441
- \printglossary . . . . . 48
- \printindex . . . . . 48
- \protect . . . . . 55, 58, 562
- \ProvidesFile . . . . . 587
- \ProvidesPackage . . . . . 147
- \PTC@contentsline . . . . . 320
- \PTC@next . . . . . 321
- \ptc@rule . . . . . 304
- \ptc@setform . . . . . 310, 362
- \PTC@test . . . . . 322
- \ptc@verse . . . . . 307
- \ptcCfont . . . . . 31, 35, 37, 70, 71, 79, 304
- \ptcfont . . . . . 31, 34, 35, 37, 40, 69–71, 79
- \ptcindent . . . . . 31, 79, 307
- \ptcpagenumbers . . . . . 43, 82
- \ptcPfont . . . . . 35, 37, 70, 71, 79
- \ptcrule . . . . . 43, 82
- \ptcSfont . . . . . 31, 35, 37, 70, 71, 79
- \ptcSPfont . . . . . 35, 37, 69–71, 79
- \ptcSSfont . . . . . 35, 37, 70, 71, 79
- \ptcSSSfont . . . . . 35, 37, 70, 71, 79
- \ptctitle . . . . . 34, 37, 79, 441, 520
- \ptifont . . . . . 34, 37, 40, 63, 79, 567
- \quad . . . . . 33
- \raggedright . . . . . 560
- \relax . . . . . 287, 316, 418, 424, 425, 428, 560
- \renewcommand . . . . . 27, 28, 31, 34, 35, 37, 38,  
42, 61, 62, 67, 70, 71, 73, 74, 250, 425,  
428
- \renewcommand\* . . . . . 68
- \reset@font . . . . . 57, 268, 560
- \rmfamily . . . . . 218
- \rule . . . . . 565
- \samepage . . . . . 560
- \scriptsize . . . . . 218
- \scshape . . . . . 218
- \sectbegin . . . . . 340
- \sectend . . . . . 61, 340
- \section . . . . . 24, 25, 28, 30, 48, 49, 63, 81,  
147, 152, 158, 159, 161, 167, 198, 199,  
204, 220, 221, 263, 266, 288, 289, 328,  
330, 333, 335, 338, 343, 345, 348, 381,  
394, 395, 416, 558
- \section\* . . . . . 32, 68, 84, 234, 264, 274, 564
- \sectlof . . . . . 28, 34, 38, 39, 50, 81, 83, 172,  
174, 208, 330, 333, 397, 560–562
- \sectlof@ . . . . . 333
- \sectlot . . . . . 28, 34, 38, 39, 50, 81, 83, 172,  
174, 208, 330, 335, 397, 560, 561
- \sectlot@ . . . . . 335, 336
- \secttoc . . . . . 28, 34, 35, 38, 39, 81, 83, 172,  
175, 208, 329, 330, 560, 561
- \secttoc@ . . . . . 330
- \setcounter . . . . . 28, 31, 56, 60, 79–81, 373
- \setlength . . . . . 28, 31, 73
- \sffamily . . . . . 218
- \SHORTEXT . . . . . 560
- \shorttoc . . . . . 19
- \SLF@contentsline . . . . . 345
- \SLF@next . . . . . 346
- \slf@setform . . . . . 335, 363
- \SLF@test . . . . . 347
- \slffont . . . . . 34, 37, 81
- \slfpagenumbers . . . . . 43, 82
- \slfrule . . . . . 43, 82, 567
- \slfSfont . . . . . 34, 37, 81, 573
- \slftitle . . . . . 34, 37, 81, 441
- \slshape . . . . . 218
- \SLT@contentsline . . . . . 348
- \SLT@next . . . . . 348
- \slt@setform . . . . . 337, 363
- \SLT@test . . . . . 349
- \sltfont . . . . . 34, 37, 81
- \sltname . . . . . 563
- \sltpagenumbers . . . . . 43, 82
- \sltrule . . . . . 43, 82, 567
- \sltSfont . . . . . 34, 37, 81, 573
- \slttitle . . . . . 34, 37, 63, 81, 441
- \small . . . . . 218
- \space . . . . . 33
- \special . . . . . 207
- \starchapter . . . . . 294
- \starsection . . . . . 339
- \STC@contentsline . . . . . 343
- \STC@next . . . . . 344
- \stc@rule . . . . . 328
- \stc@setform . . . . . 332, 362
- \STC@test . . . . . 345
- \stcfont . . . . . 28, 34, 35, 37, 81
- \stcindent . . . . . 28, 81, 328
- \stcpagenumbers . . . . . 43, 82
- \stcPfont . . . . . 35, 37, 81
- \stcrule . . . . . 43, 82
- \stcSPfont . . . . . 35, 37
- \stcSSfont . . . . . 28, 35, 37, 81
- \stcSSSfont . . . . . 35, 37, 81

- `\stcitle` . . . . . 34, 37, 81, 441
- `\stepcounter` . . . . . 32, 262, 264, 265
- `\stifont` . . . . . 34, 37, 81
- `\subparagraph` . . . . . 204, 221
- `\subsection` . . . . . 204, 221, 338, 558
- `\subsubsection` . . . . . 204, 221
- `\table` . . . . . 300
- `\tableofcontents` . . . . . 20, 27, 28, 31, 47, 50, 55, 60, 62, 75, 78–81, 173–175, 234, 266, 273, 396, 401, 564, 568
- `\tableofcontents*` . . . . . 132
- `\textbf` . . . . . 218
- `\textit` . . . . . 218
- `\textmd` . . . . . 218
- `\textrm` . . . . . 218
- `\textsc` . . . . . 218
- `\textsf` . . . . . 218
- `\textsl` . . . . . 218
- `\texttt` . . . . . 218
- `\textup` . . . . . 218
- `\textwidth` . . . . . 584
- `\tf@mtc` . . . . . 249, 266, 414
- `\The@chapter` . . . . . 564
- `\The@mtc` . . . . . 275, 564
- `\themtc` . . . . . 275
- `\Thepart` . . . . . 303
- `\theptc` . . . . . 303
- `\thispageminilofstyle` . . . . . 83, 282
- `\thispageminilotstyle` . . . . . 83, 285
- `\thispageminilocstyle` . . . . . 83, 279
- `\thispagepartlofsty` . . . . . 45, 83, 563
- `\thispagepartlotstyle` . . . . . 45, 83, 563
- `\thispageparttocstyle` . . . . . 45, 83, 271, 563
- `\thispagesectlofsty` . . . . . 83
- `\thispagesectlotstyle` . . . . . 83
- `\thispagesecttocstyle` . . . . . 83
- `\thispagestyle` . . . . . 45, 46, 83, 271
- `\tightmtcfalse` . . . . . 39, 78
- `\tightmtctrue` . . . . . 39, 78
- `\tiny` . . . . . 218
- `\topsep` . . . . . 277, 307
- `\ttfamily` . . . . . 218
- `\typeout` . . . . . 566
- `\undottedmtcfalse` . . . . . 78
- `\undottedmtctrue` . . . . . 78
- `\upshape` . . . . . 218
- `\usepackage` 26–29, 31, 75, 194, 197, 219, 220, 420, 440
- `\vrule` . . . . . 565
- `\vspace*` . . . . . 560
- `\widowpenalty` . . . . . 560
- `\xchapter` . . . . . 297, 300
- `\xdef` . . . . . 373
- `\ychapter` . . . . . 569
- `\ypart` . . . . . 569
- `\ysection` . . . . . 569
- `\z@` . . . . . 565
- `\contentsline (command)` . . . . . 58, 262, 264, 265, 290
- `\contentsline` . . . . . 1, 2917, 2943, 2954, 3530, 3694, 3762, 3823, 3839, 4407, 4470, 4532, 5019, 5080, 5141
- COOK, David B. . . . . 240
- `\copy` . . . . . 2966, 2970
- CORFF, Oliver . . . . . 240, 499, 529, 530,  $\hookrightarrow$ [103, 104, 105, 106]
- CORNET, Emmanuel . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [7]
- `\count@ (command)` . . . . . 421
- `\count@` . . . . . 7412
- COUNTCHAM, Prakash . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [21]
- Counters
  - chapter . . . . . 252, 253
  - mtc . 84, 261, 265, 273, 275, 293, 294, 297, 300, 354, 564
  - part . . . . . 252, 253
  - ptc . 84, 261, 262, 273, 303, 316, 320, 323, 325
  - section . . . . . 252, 253
  - stc . 84, 261, 263, 264, 273, 328, 343, 345, 348, 564
- cri.tex (old example document) . . . . . 583, 585
- croatian (language option) . . . . . 36, 458
- croatian.dtx (file) . . . . . 458
- croatian.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 458
- `\csname (command)` . . . . . 302, 353, 355
- `\cyr` . . . . . 8163, 8165, 8168, 8172, 8174, 8177, 8181, 8183, 8186, 8195, 8197, 8199, 8202, 8204, 8206, 8209, 8211, 8213, 9555, 9557, 9559, 9561, 9565, 9567, 9569, 9571, 9575, 9577, 9579, 9581, 9939, 9942, 9945, 9948, 9952, 9954, 9957, 9961, 9963, 9966, 10095, 10097, 10101, 10103, 10104, 10107, 10109, 10306, 10307, 10309, 10312, 10313, 10315, 10318, 10319, 10321
- `\CYRA` . . . . . 9555, 9565, 9575
- `\CYRa` 9942, 9946, 9949, 9952, 9955, 9958, 9961, 9964, 9967
- `\cyr` . . . . . 8163, 8166, 8169, 8172, 8175, 8178, 8181, 8184, 8187, 8195, 8199, 8202, 8206, 8209, 8213, 9555, 9557, 9560, 9562, 9565, 9567, 9570, 9572, 9575, 9577, 9580, 9582, 9939, 10095, 10098, 10101, 10104, 10107, 10110, 10308, 10310, 10314, 10316, 10320, 10322
- `\CYRb` . . . . . 9949, 9958, 9967

- \cyrb ..... 8169, 8178, 8187, 8199, 8206, 8213, 10098, 10104, 10110, 10310, 10316, 10322  
 \CYRc .... 9946, 9949, 9955, 9958, 9964, 9967  
 \cyrC ..... 8169, 8178, 8187, 8199, 8206, 8213, 10098, 10104, 10110, 10308, 10310, 10314, 10316, 10320, 10322  
 \cyrch ..... 9557, 9567, 9577  
 \cyrD 8163, 8172, 8181, 8195, 8202, 8209, 9939, 10095, 10101, 10107  
 \CYRe ..... 9942, 9952, 9961  
 \cyrE ..... 8163, 8166, 8169, 8172, 8175, 8178, 8181, 8184, 8187, 8195, 8202, 8209, 9939, 10097, 10098, 10103, 10104, 10109, 10110, 10307, 10309, 10313, 10315, 10319, 10321  
 \cyrerev ..... 9561, 9571, 9581  
 \CYRF ..... 8197, 8204, 8211  
 \cyrF ..... 8166, 8175, 8184  
 \CYRG ..... 9557, 9567, 9577  
 \CYRg ..... 9942, 9952, 9961  
 \cyrG ..... 8166, 8175, 8184, 8197, 8204, 8211, 9555, 9557, 9559–9562, 9565, 9567, 9569–9572, 9575, 9577, 9579–9582  
 \CYRH ..... 9561, 9571, 9581  
 \cyrhrdsn 8163, 8165, 8168, 8172, 8174, 8177, 8181, 8183, 8186, 8195, 8202, 8209  
 \CYRi 9942, 9945, 9946, 9948, 9949, 9952, 9954, 9955, 9957, 9958, 9961, 9963, 9964, 9966, 9967  
 \cyrI ..... 8163, 8165, 8166, 8168, 8169, 8172, 8174, 8175, 8177, 8178, 8181, 8183, 8184, 8186, 8187, 8195, 8197, 8199, 8202, 8204, 8206, 8209, 8211, 8213, 9557, 9559, 9561, 9567, 9569, 9571, 9577, 9579, 9581, 9939, 10097, 10098, 10103, 10104, 10109, 10110, 10310, 10316, 10322  
 \cyrII ..... 10306–10309, 10312–10315, 10318–10321  
 \CYRishrt ..... 9946, 9955, 9964  
 \cyrishrt 9559, 9561, 9569, 9571, 9579, 9581, 10308, 10314, 10320  
 \cyrje ..... 10095, 10101, 10107  
 \CYRk .... 9945, 9948, 9954, 9957, 9963, 9966  
 \cyrK ..... 8165, 8168, 8174, 8177, 8183, 8186, 10097, 10103, 10109, 10307, 10309, 10313, 10315, 10319, 10321  
 \CYRl 9942, 9946, 9949, 9952, 9955, 9958, 9961, 9964, 9967  
 \cyrL 8169, 8178, 8187, 8199, 8206, 8213, 9555, 9560, 9562, 9565, 9570, 9572, 9575, 9580, 9582, 10097, 10098, 10103, 10104, 10109, 10110, 10307–10310, 10313–10316, 10319–10322  
 \cyrM ..... 10306, 10312, 10318  
 \CYRn ..... 9942, 9952, 9961  
 \cyrN 8163, 8166, 8169, 8172, 8175, 8178, 8181, 8184, 8187, 8195, 8202, 8209, 9559, 9561, 9569, 9571, 9579, 9581, 9939  
 \CYRO ..... 9942, 9952, 9961  
 \CYRo .... 9945, 9948, 9954, 9957, 9963, 9966  
 \cyrO ..... 9939  
 \CYRP 10307, 10309, 10313, 10315, 10319, 10321  
 \CYRp .... 9945, 9948, 9954, 9957, 9963, 9966  
 \cyrP ..... 8165, 8168, 8174, 8177, 8183, 8186  
 \CYRr ..... 9946, 9955, 9964  
 \cyrR 8163, 8166, 8172, 8175, 8181, 8184, 8195, 8197, 8202, 8204, 8209, 8211, 9557, 9559, 9567, 9569, 9577, 9579, 9939, 10095, 10101, 10107, 10307–10309, 10313–10315, 10319–10321  
 \CYRS ..... 8163, 8165, 8168, 8172, 8174, 8177, 8181, 8183, 8186, 8195, 8202, 8209, 9939, 9945, 9948, 9954, 9957, 9963, 9966, 10095, 10097, 10101, 10103, 10107, 10109  
 \CYRs 9945, 9946, 9948, 9954, 9955, 9957, 9963, 9964, 9966  
 \cyrS ..... 8165, 8168, 8174, 8177, 8183, 8186, 9560–9562, 9570–9572, 9580–9582, 10306, 10308, 10312, 10314, 10318, 10320  
 \cyrSftsn ..... 10310, 10316, 10322  
 \CYRT .. 8199, 8206, 8213, 10098, 10104, 10110  
 \CYRt .... 9946, 9949, 9955, 9958, 9964, 9967  
 \cyrT ..... 8166, 8169, 8175, 8178, 8184, 8187, 9560–9562, 9570–9572, 9580–9582, 10306, 10308, 10310, 10312, 10314, 10316, 10318, 10320, 10322  
 \cyrU 8166, 8175, 8184, 8197, 8204, 8211, 9555, 9559, 9565, 9569, 9575, 9579  
 \CYRv ..... 9942, 9952, 9961  
 \cyrY ..... 9561, 9571, 9581  
 \CYRyu ..... 9946, 9955, 9964  
 \cyrYU ..... 10308, 10314, 10320  
 \CYRZ .. 9559, 9569, 9579, 10306, 10312, 10318  
 \cyrzh ..... 8163, 8172, 8181, 8195, 8202, 8209, 9560, 9562, 9570, 9572, 9580, 9582, 9939, 10095, 10101, 10107  
 \cz ..... 9841, 9842, 9845, 9846, 9849, 9850  
 czech (language option) ..... **36, 458**

czech.dtx (file) . . . . . **458**  
 czech.mld (file) . . . . . **227, 230, 458**

## D

D'ACHIAN, Serguei . . . . . **198, 240, 445**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [107]  
 DAERR, Adrian . . . . . **240**  
 \dal . 7937, 7941, 7945, 8577, 8579, 8581, 8583,  
     8585, 8587  
 DALALYAN, Arnak . . . . . **198, 240, 445**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [107]  
 DALY, Patrick W. . . . . **240**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [158]  
 DANIELSSON, Holger . . . . . **240**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [222, 220, 221]  
 danish (language option) . . . . . **36, 459**  
 danish.dtx (file) . . . . . **459**  
 danish.mld (file) . . . . . **227, 230, 459**  
 dblacnt (package) . . . . . **577**  
 \DeclareOption . . . . . 6146, 6150, 6152,  
     6154, 6155, 6158, 6176, 6184, 6230,  
     6282, 6459  
 \decrementmtc (command) . . **33, 84, 197, 275,**  
     **571**  
 \decrementmtc . . . . . 1, 2428, 3190, 7505  
 \decrementptc (command) . . **33, 84, 197, 236,**  
     **303, 571**  
 \decrementptc . . . . . 1, 3874, 7505  
 \decrementstc (command) . . **33, 84, 197, 328,**  
     **571**  
 \decrementstc . . . . . 1, 4555, 7505  
 \def (command) . . . . . **71**  
 DE LIMA, Arnaldo Viegas . . . . . **240, 451**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [77]  
 DEMOUSTIER, Sébastien . . . . . **240**  
 DEPARDIEU, Éric . . . . . **240**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [21]  
 Depth counters  
     lofdepth . . . . . **31, 210, 274, 303, 328**  
     lotdepth . . . . . **31, 210, 274, 286, 303, 328**  
     minilofdepth . . . . . **31, 203, 211, 274, 283**  
     minilotdepth . . . . . **31, 203, 211, 286**  
     minitocdepth . . . . . **20, 26, 27, 31, 41, 63, 68,**  
         **80, 203, 211, 275, 280, 558**  
     partlofdepth . . . . . **31, 203, 219, 303, 312**  
     partlotdepth . . . . . **31, 203, 220, 303, 315**  
     parttocdepth . . . . . **20, 31, 79, 203, 220, 303,**  
         **309**  
     secnumdepth . . . . . **203, 204**  
     sectlofdepth . . . . . **31, 203, 221, 328, 335**  
     sectlotdepth . . . . . **31, 63, 203, 222, 328, 337**  
     secttocdepth . . . . . **28, 31, 81, 203, 222, 328,**  
         **332**  
     tocdepth . . . . . **31, 60, 68, 79–81, 203, 224, 275,**  
         **280, 283, 373, 558, 569**  
 DE RYDT, Ben . . . . . **240**  
 DESGRAUPES, Bernard . . . . . **240**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [108, 109, 110]  
 DESPRAIRIES, Cécile . . . . . **240**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [24, 122, 237, 261]

DESREUX, Sébastien . . . . . **240**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [7]  
 Devanāgarī (package) **41, 204, 207, 441, 459, 484**  
 devanagari (language option) **36, 207, 459, 483**  
 devanagari.mld (file) **227, 230, 238, 459, 483,**  
     **584**  
 devanagari.sty (file) . . . . . **204, 459**  
 \df@mtic . . . . . 3263, 3333, 3401  
 \df@mtilf (command) . . . . . **276**  
 \df@mtilf . . . . . 3225, 3230, 3340, 3564  
 \df@mtilt (command) . . . . . **276**  
 \df@mtilt . . . . . 3225, 3230, 3408, 3583  
 \df@mtitc (command) . . . . . **276**  
 \df@mtitc . . . . . 3225, 3230, 3270, 3545  
 \df@pti . . . . . 4015, 4088, 4163  
 \df@ptilf . . . . . 3977, 4094, 4268  
 \df@ptilt . . . . . 3977, 4169, 4287  
 \df@ptitc . . . . . 3977, 4021, 4249  
 \df@sti . . . . . 4616, 4683, 4750  
 \df@stilf . . . . . 4583, 4689, 4895  
 \df@stilt . . . . . 4583, 4756, 4914  
 \df@stitc . . . . . 4583, 4623, 4876  
 \dimen@ (command) . . . . . **421**  
 \dimen@ . . . . . 7412  
 \divide . . . . . 2547  
 \dn . . . . . 8367–8369, 8371–8373, 8375–8377,  
     9111–9113, 9115–9117, 9119–9121  
 \do@mtilf (command) . . . . . **276**  
 \do@mtilf . 3225, 3230, 3335–3340, 3342, 3352,  
     3356  
 \do@mtilt (command) . . . . . **276**  
 \do@mtilt . 3225, 3230, 3403–3408, 3410, 3420,  
     3424  
 \do@mtitc (command) . . . . . **276**  
 \do@mtitc . . . 3225, 3230, 3263, 3333, 3401  
 \do@ptilf . . . . . 3977, 4088, 4100  
 \do@ptilt . . . . . 3977, 4163, 4179  
 \do@ptitc . . . . . 3977, 4015, 4032  
 \do@stilf . . . . . 4583, 4683, 4697  
 \do@stilt . . . . . 4583, 4750, 4764  
 \do@stitc . . . . . 4583, 4616, 4631  
 document (environment) . . . . . **49, 75, 220**  
 \documentclass (command) **27, 28, 31, 75, 195,**  
     **202, 206, 220**  
 \documentclass . . . . . 2,  
     55, 119, 181, 208, 231, 286, 321, 416,  
     417, 628, 883, 918, 1172, 1173, 1430,  
     1629, 1681, 1740, 1780, 1828, 1878,  
     1926, 1978, 2153, 2189, 2224, 2298,  
     2358, 2407, 2450, 2501, 2537  
 \dominilof (command) . . . . . **26, 27, 38, 39, 80, 83,**  
     **153, 159, 171, 176, 220, 281, 290, 291,**  
     **317**

- `\dominilof` 1, 61, 125, 435, 1203, 1933, 2324, 2572, 3317, 3530, 3535, 3568, 5157, 6793, 6877, 7381, 7531
- `\dominilof@` ..... 3539, 3564
- `\dominilot` (command) . **26, 27, 38, 39, 80, 83, 154, 159, 171, 176, 220, 284, 290, 291, 317**
- `\dominilot` .... 1, 62, 126, 436, 1204, 1884, 3385, 3530, 3540, 3587, 5157, 6802, 6886, 7381, 7531
- `\dominilot@` ..... 3544, 3583
- `\dominitoc` (command) . **26, 27, 38, 39, 47, 52, 57, 75, 80, 83, 138, 152, 153, 160, 171, 175, 220, 225, 232, 235, 278, 290, 317, 340, 416, 559, 561, 567, 568**
- `\dominitoc` ..... 1, 12, 216, 242, 344, 434, 890, 1202, 1557, 1634, 1696, 1748, 1796, 1932, 2016, 2164, 2210, 2232, 2370, 2412, 2456, 3247, 3530, 3549, 5157, 6784, 6868, 7381, 7531
- `\dominitoc@` (command) ..... **290**
- `\dominitoc@` ..... 3530, 3534, 3545
- `\dopartlof` (command) . **27, 31, 38, 39, 79, 83, 154, 160, 171, 175, 220, 317, 318**
- `\dopartlof` .. 1, 643, 943, 1206, 4234, 4246, 4272, 5157, 6764, 6848, 7378, 7525
- `\dopartlof@` ..... 4247, 4268
- `\dopartlot` (command) . **27, 31, 38, 39, 79, 83, 154, 160, 172, 175, 220, 317, 319**
- `\dopartlot` .. 1, 643, 944, 1207, 4234, 4246, 4291, 5157, 6773, 6857, 7378, 7525
- `\dopartlot@` ..... 4248, 4287
- `\doparttoc` (command) ..... **27, 31, 38, 39, 50, 60, 79, 83, 152, 160, 172, 175, 220, 266, 317, 318, 396, 397, 399**
- `\doparttoc` ..... 1, 11, 190, 302, 643, 942, 1205, 1695, 1747, 1795, 4234, 4246, 4253, 5157, 6755, 6839, 7378, 7525
- `\doparttoc@` ..... 4246, 4249
- DORJ, Dorjpalam .. **240, 499, 529, 530**, ↪[106]
- `\dosectlof` (command) . **27, 28, 38, 39, 81, 83, 154, 160, 172, 176, 220, 251, 340, 341**
- `\dosectlof` ..... 1, 644, 940, 2673, 4865, 4873, 4899, 5157, 6739, 6822, 6906, 7384, 7537
- `\dosectlof@` ..... 4874, 4895
- `\dosectlot` (command) ..... **27, 28, 38, 39, 50, 81, 83, 154, 161, 172, 176, 220, 251, 266, 340, 342**
- `\dosectlot` ..... 1, 644, 941, 1836, 2673, 4869, 4873, 4918, 5157, 6741, 6831, 6915, 7384, 7537
- `\dosectlot@` ..... 4875, 4914
- `\dosecttoc` (command) . **27, 28, 38, 39, 81, 83, 152, 161, 172, 176, 220, 329, 340, 341**
- `\dosecttoc` .. 1, 644, 939, 2514, 4861, 4873, 4880, 5157, 6813, 6897, 7384, 7537
- `\dosecttoc@` ..... 4873, 4876
- `\dotfil` ..... 427, 429, 636, 638
- `\dotfill` ..... 428, 637
- dotted** (default option) .. **44, 77, 233, 380, 563**
- DRUCBERT, Jean-Pierre F. .. ↪[21, 111, 112, 113]
- DUCHIER, Denys ..... **240**, ↪[200]
- DUDDING, Lyndon ..... **61, 240**
- DUNG, Ta Quang ..... **240**
- `duplex2v.pro` (file) ..... **588**
- `dutch` (language option) ..... **36, 460**
- `dutch.dtx` (file) ..... **442, 460**
- `dutch.mld` (file) ..... **227, 230, 460**

## E

- `\e@mti` .. 3225, 3263, 3333, 3401, 3545, 3564, 3583
- `\e@pti` .. 3924, 3931, 4015, 4088, 4163, 4249, 4268, 4287
- `\e@sti` .. 4578, 4616, 4683, 4750, 4876, 4895, 4914
- `\edef` (command) ..... **302**
- ËEHAJA, Marko ..... **240, 518**
- EIJKHOUT, Victor ..... **240**, ↪[59, 114]
- ELS, Danie ..... **240**
- `\else` (command) ..... **250**
- `\em` ..... 2283, 2290
- `emk` (script) ..... **204, 208, 221, 227–230, 573**
- `\emph` ..... 2058, 2060, 2128, 2139
- `\empty` (command) **45, 46, 83, 271, 425, 428, 560**
- `\empty` ..... 2193, 2194, 2202, 2203, 3107–3109, 3113–3118, 3120–3122, 3126–3131, 3133–3135, 3139–3144, 6179, 7555, 7590, 7593, 7594, 7645–7671, 7702, 7713, 7724, 7734, 7736, 7738–7744
- `en-mtc.bst` (file) . **204, 227, 228, 230, 238, 584**
- `\endcsname` (command) ..... **302, 353, 355**
- `\endlist` ..... 3246, 3993, 4599
- `\endmtc@verse` (command) ..... **277**
- `\endmtc@verse` ..... 336, 340, 3246
- `\endmtchideinmainlof` (command) **66, 84, 214**
- `\endmtchideinmainlof` ..... 153
- `\endmtchideinmainlot` (command) .. **66, 84, 125, 126, 214**
- `\endmtchideinmainlot` .... 161, 1864, 1912
- `\endptc@verse` (command) ..... **307**
- `\endptc@verse` ..... 3983
- `\endstc@verse` ..... 4599

- english** (default language option) . 36, 77, 412, 443, 446, 453, 455, 461, 502, 525, 527, 566
- english.dtx (file) . . . . . 461, 462
- english.mld (file) . 35–38, 149, 190, 226, 227, 230, 383, 384, 441, 443, 446, 453, 455, 461, 502, 525, 527, 562, 564, 584, 586
- english1 (language option) . . . . . 36, 461
- english1.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 461, 579
- english2 (language option) . . . . . 36, 462
- english2.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 462, 579
- \enlargethispage (command) . . . . . 54
- \enlargethispage . . . . . 1
- Environments
- abstract . . . . . 50, 67
  - appendices . . . . . 60, 102, 198, 214
  - bibunit . . . . . 199
  - document . . . . . 49, 75, 220
  - figure . . . . . 200, 222
  - filecontents . . . . . 41, 206, 378, 441
  - margincap . . . . . 210
  - minipage . . . . . 134, 558
  - mtc@verse 89, 90, 277, 280, 283, 284, 286, 287, 362, 363
  - mtchideinmainlof . 63, 65, 84, 179, 188, 197, 214, 235, 374, 431, 567, 570, 571, 580, 581
  - mtchideinmainlot . 63, 65, 84, 180, 189, 197, 214, 235, 374, 375, 431, 567, 570, 571, 580, 581
  - mtchideinmaintoc 63, 84, 114, 180, 189, 197, 214, 235, 373, 431, 567, 580
  - multicols . . . . . 87, 90, 116
  - pageUn . . . . . 116
  - ptc@verse . 307, 309, 310, 312, 315, 362, 363
  - quote . . . . . 574
  - samepage . . . . . 279, 280, 282, 284, 285, 287, 308, 310, 311, 313, 314, 316, 331, 333–336, 338, 560
  - stc@verse . 330, 332, 335, 337, 362, 363, 569
  - subappendices . . . . . 198
  - table . . . . . 200, 222
  - tabular 279, 282, 285, 309, 312, 315, 331, 334, 337
  - verse . . . . . 33, 277, 307, 330, 558
  - wrapfigure . . . . . 134, 215, 225
  - wratable . . . . . 225
- ESFAHBOD, Behdad . . . . . 240, 466, ↪[115]
- esperant (language option) . . . . . 36, 462, 463
- esperant.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 462, 463
- esperanto (language option) . . . . . 36, 463
- esperanto.dtx (file) . . . . . 462
- esperanto.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 463
- ESSER, Thomas . . . . . 240
- estonian (language option) . . . . . 36, 463, 564
- estonian.dtx (file) . . . . . 463
- estonian.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 463
- \eth@doaltchar 8506, 8507, 8509, 8510, 8514, 8515, 8517, 8518, 8522, 8523, 8525, 8526
- ethiop (package) . . . . . 41, 441, 464, 465
- ethiopia (language option) . . . . . 36, 464, 465
- ethiopia.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 464, 465
- ethiopian (language option) . . . . . 36, 204, 465
- ethiopian.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230
- ethiopian2 (language option) . . . . . 36, 465
- ethiopian2.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 465, 577
- ethopian.mld (file) . . . . . 465
- ETIENNE, Gilhooly . . . . . 240, ↪[122]
- EVERITT, Karl F. . . . . 240, 564
- Examples
- mtc-2c.pdf . . . . . 230
  - mtc-2c.tex . 87, 213, 227, 228, 230, 585
  - mtc-2nd.pdf . . . . . 230
  - mtc-2nd.tex . 88, 213, 227, 228, 230, 255, 470, 585
  - mtc-3co.pdf . . . . . 230
  - mtc-3co.tex . 89, 213, 227, 228, 230, 239, 588
  - mtc-add.bib . . . . . 213, 227, 585
  - mtc-add.pdf . . . . . 230
  - mtc-add.tex . 48, 92, 93, 213, 227, 228, 230, 585
  - mtc-ads.pdf . . . . . 230
  - mtc-ads.tex . 48, 97, 213, 227, 228, 230, 585
  - mtc-amm.pdf . . . . . 230
  - mtc-amm.tex 102, 214, 227, 228, 230, 585
  - mtc-apx.pdf . . . . . 230
  - mtc-apx.tex . 64, 87, 103, 214, 227, 228, 230, 581, 585
  - mtc-art.pdf . . . . . 230
  - mtc-art.tex 103, 214, 227, 228, 230, 585
  - mtc-bk.pdf . . . . . 230
  - mtc-bk.tex . 108, 214, 227, 228, 230, 585
  - mtc-bo.pdf . . . . . 230
  - mtc-bo.tex . 115, 214, 227, 228, 230, 582, 585
  - mtc-ch0.pdf . . . . . 230
  - mtc-ch0.tex 119, 214, 227, 228, 230, 585
  - mtc-cri.pdf . . . . . 230
  - mtc-cri.tex 121, 214, 227, 228, 230, 585
  - mtc-fol.pdf . . . . . 230
  - mtc-fol.tex 121, 123, 214, 227, 228, 230, 585



- mtc-fo2.pdf . . . . . 230
- mtc-fo2.tex 123, 214, 227, 228, 230, 585
- mtc-gap.pdf . . . . . 230
- mtc-gap.tex . 73, 87, 124, 214, 227, 228, 230, 585
- mtc-hi1.pdf . . . . . 230
- mtc-hi1.tex . 65, 87, 124, 214, 227, 228, 230, 585
- mtc-hi2.pdf . . . . . 230
- mtc-hi2.tex . 66, 87, 124, 214, 227, 228, 230, 585
- mtc-hia.pdf . . . . . 230
- mtc-hia.tex 125, 214, 227, 228, 230, 585
- mtc-hir.pdf . . . . . 230
- mtc-hir.tex 125, 214, 227, 228, 230, 585
- mtc-hop.pdf . . . . . 230
- mtc-hop.tex 126, 214, 227, 228, 230, 585
- mtc-liv.pdf . . . . . 230
- mtc-liv.tex 127, 214, 227, 228, 230, 585
- mtc-mem.pdf . . . . . 230
- mtc-mem.tex 131, 214, 227, 228, 230, 585
- mtc-mm1.pdf . . . . . 230
- mtc-mm1.tex 132, 214, 227, 228, 230, 585
- mtc-mu.pdf . . . . . 230
- mtc-mu.tex . 133, 215, 227, 228, 230, 585
- mtc-sbf.pdf . . . . . 230
- mtc-sbf.tex 135, 215, 227, 228, 230, 585
- mtc-scr.pdf . . . . . 230
- mtc-scr.tex 137, 215, 227, 228, 230, 585
- mtc-syn.pdf . . . . . 230
- mtc-syn.tex 138, 215, 227, 228, 230, 585
- mtc-tbi.pdf . . . . . 230
- mtc-tbi.tex 140, 215, 227, 228, 230, 585
- mtc-tlc.pdf . . . . . 230
- mtc-tlc.tex 141, 215, 227, 228, 230, 585
- mtc-tlo.pdf . . . . . 230
- mtc-tlo.tex . 75, 87, 141, 215, 227, 228, 230, 586
- mtc-tsf.pdf . . . . . 230
- mtc-tsf.tex 141, 215, 227, 228, 230, 585
- \ExecuteOptions . . . . . 7273
- \expandafter (command) . . . . . 353
- \ext@subfigure . . . . . 2304
- Extensions
  - .F . . . . . 51, 195, 281
  - .G . . . . . 51, 195, 317
  - .H . . . . . 51, 196, 340
  - .M . . . . . 51, 196, 278
  - .P . . . . . 51, 196, 317
  - .S . . . . . 51, 196, 340
  - .T . . . . . 51, 197, 285
  - .U . . . . . 51, 197, 317
  - .V . . . . . 51, 197, 340
  - .aux . . . . . 52, 55, 57, 60, 195, 199, 254
  - .bst 204, 207, 224, 227, 228, 230, 238, 584
  - .cls . . . . . 195
  - .dtx 41, 195, 196, 229, 236, 441, 517, 569
  - .ins . . . . . 195, 196, 229, 236
  - .ist 206, 211, 227, 228, 230, 569, 570, 572
  - .lan . . . . . 206, 211, 227, 228, 230, 418
  - .lof . 26, 52, 55, 58, 60, 65, 146, 173, 174, 196, 199, 262, 264–266, 290, 291, 298, 317, 324, 340, 347, 431, 564
  - .log . 29, 31, 48, 49, 52, 54, 77, 139, 145, 146, 157, 163, 194, 196, 207, 249, 251, 266, 388, 411, 412, 441, 566, 587
  - .lot . 26, 52, 55, 58, 60, 65, 146, 173, 174, 196, 199, 262, 264–266, 290, 291, 300, 301, 317, 327, 340, 349, 431, 562, 564
  - .maf . 49, 77, 148, 196, 209, 236, 382, 414, 572
  - .mld . 19, 35, 36, 41, 67, 72, 78, 149, 157, 163, 180, 189, 191, 196, 198, 201, 226, 230, 232, 233, 235, 236, 238, 248, 378, 382–384, 437, 440, 441, 470, 562, 564, 566, 570, 571, 576, 579, 586, 587
  - .mlf . . . . . 26, 51, 196, 281, 290
  - .mlo 19, 36, 41, 67, 149, 158, 163, 181, 196, 201, 202, 206, 226, 230, 236, 238, 248, 378, 382, 384, 437, 441, 497, 571, 579, 586, 587
  - .mlt . . . . . 26, 51, 196, 285, 290
  - .mtc . 26, 48, 51, 55, 56, 58, 196, 261, 267, 278, 290, 414, 558
  - .mtc1 . . . . . 267, 414, 583
  - .pdf . . . . . 228
  - .plf . . . . . 29, 51, 196, 317
  - .plt . . . . . 29, 51, 196, 317
  - .pre . . . . . 212, 227, 228, 230, 573, 578
  - .ptc . . . . . 29, 51, 196, 317
  - .slf . . . . . 28, 51, 196, 340
  - .slt . . . . . 28, 51, 196, 340
  - .stc . . . . . 28, 51, 196, 340
  - .sty . . 197, 219, 226, 228, 229, 232, 562
  - .tar . . . . . 229
  - .tex . . . . . 146, 197
  - .tgz . . . . . 229
  - .toc . . . . 26, 47, 52, 55, 58, 60, 65, 146, 173–175, 197, 199, 232, 262, 264–266, 273, 274, 290, 295, 317, 322, 340, 345, 431, 559, 562, 564
  - .zip . . . . . 229

**F**

- \f@rhdr . . . . . 7797, 7803, 7805, 7813, 7841
- \f@rtoc . . 7796, 7801, 7830, 7833, 7836, 7839, 7841
- \fa . . . . . 7935, 7939, 7943, 8577, 8581, 8585
- FABIAN, Mike . . . . . 240, ↪[116]
- FAIRBAIRNS, Robin . . . . . 240, ↪[117]
- \fake@starttoc (command) . . . . . 273
- \fake@starttoc . . . . . 3145
- \fakelistoffigures (command) . 27, 28, 31, 78–81, 173, 174, 273
- \fakelistoffigures . 946, 1209, 1935, 3145, 6719, 6941, 6976, 7011, 7505
- \fakelistoftables (command) 27, 28, 31, 50, 78–81, 173, 174, 273
- \fakelistoftables . 947, 1210, 3145, 6719, 6952, 6987, 7022, 7505
- \faketableofcontents (command) 27, 28, 31, 50, 52, 78–81, 89, 173–175, 273, 396, 401, 559
- \faketableofcontents . 191, 303, 945, 1208, 1558, 2515, 3145, 6719, 6930, 6965, 7000, 7505
- farsi (language option) . . . . . 198, 205
- farsi.ldf (file) . . . . . 198, 467
- farsi.sty (file) . . . . . 205, 466
- farsi1 (language option) . . . . . 36, 466
- farsi1.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 466, 571
- farsi1.mlo (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 466, 571
- farsi2 (language option) . . . . . 36, 466
- farsi2.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 466, 571
- farsi2.mlo (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 466, 571
- farsi3 (language option) . . . . . 36, 467
- farsi3.mld (file) . . . . . 198, 227, 230, 467, 583
- FarsiT<sub>E</sub>X (package) . . . . . 41, 205, 441, 466
- \fbox . . . . . 2334, 2339, 2342, 2344, 2556
- \fboxrule . . . . . 2554
- \fboxsep . . . . . 2554
- FEAR, Simon . . . . . 240
- FENN, Jürgen . . . . . 240, ↪[246, 247]
- FERGUSON, Michael J. . . . . 240, ↪[118]
- FESSLER, Jeff . . . . . 240
- \fi (command) . . . . . 226, 250, 418
- \figbox . . 2555, 2585, 2590, 2595, 2600, 2605, 2610, 2615
- \figure (command) . . . . . 297
- figure (environment) . . . . . 200, 222
- \figure . . . . . 3737, 4442, 5055
- \figure@mtcck . 5348, 5354, 5364, 5370, 5384, 5391, 5407
- filecontents (environment) . 41, 206, 378, 441
- Files
  - /tmp/‘whoami’.imk . . . . . 228, 229
  - /tmp/‘whoami’.rmk . . . . . 229, 230
  - /tmp/‘whoami’.tmk . . . . . 228, 230
  - /tmp/‘whoami’/OLD . . . . . 583
  - \jobname.lan . . . . . 418
  - \jobname.mtc . . . . . 266
  - \jobname.mtc1 . . . . . 266
  - acadian.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 441
  - acadien.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 442
  - afrikaan.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 442, 443
  - afrikaans.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 443
  - albanian.dtx . . . . . 443
  - albanian.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 443
  - american.mld . . 227, 230, 384, 443, 564
  - amsart.cls . . . . . 198
  - amsbook.cls . . . . . 198
  - amsproc.cls . . . . . 198
  - arab.mld . . 198, 227, 230, 444, 445, 562
  - arab2.mld . . . . . 198, 227, 230, 444, 580
  - arabi.mld . . . . . 198, 227, 230, 445, 583
  - arabic.ldf . . . . . 198
  - arabic.mld . . . . . 198, 227, 230, 445
  - armenian.mld . . . . . 198, 227, 230, 445
  - australian.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 446
  - austrian.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 446
  - bahasa.dtx . . . . . 447
  - bahasa.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 446
  - bahasai.mld . . . 227, 230, 446, 447, 485
  - bahasam.dtx . . . . . 447
  - bahasam.mld . . . 227, 230, 447, 496, 499
  - bangla.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 448
  - basque.dtx . . . . . 448
  - basque.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 448
  - Bg5.cap . . . . . 457
  - Bg5.cpx . . . . . 457
  - bicig.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 449, 524
  - bicig2.mld . . . . 227, 230, 450, 524, 573
  - bicig3.mld . . . . 227, 230, 450, 525, 580
  - bithe.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 451, 499, 573
  - book.cls . . . . . 67
  - brazil.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 451, 452
  - brazilian.mld . . . . 227, 230, 452, 570
  - breton.dtx . . . . . 452
  - breton.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 452
  - british.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 453, 570
  - bulgarian.dtx . . . . . 453
  - bulgarian.mld . . . . 227, 230, 453, 564
  - bulgarianb.mld . 41, 227, 230, 454, 568
  - buryat.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 454
  - buryat2.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 455, 580
  - canadian.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 455
  - canadien.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 456
  - captions.dn . . . . . 484
  - castillan.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 456

- castillian.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 456, 570  
 catalan.dtx . . . . . 456  
 catalan.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 456  
 CATALOG . . . . . 200, 227, 228, 230, 587  
 chinese1.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 457, 567  
 chinese1.mlo . . . . . 227, 230, 457  
 chinese2.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 457, 567  
 chinese2.mlo . . . . . 227, 230, 457, 458  
 cmcyralt.sty . . . . . 514  
 croatian.dtx . . . . . 458  
 croatian.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 458  
 czech.dtx . . . . . 458  
 czech.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 458  
 danish.dtx . . . . . 459  
 danish.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 459  
 devanagari.mld 227, 230, 238, 459, 483, 584  
 devanagari.sty . . . . . 204, 459  
 duplex2v.pro . . . . . 588  
 dutch.dtx . . . . . 442, 460  
 dutch.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 460  
 en-mtc.bst . 204, 227, 228, 230, 238, 584  
 english.dtx . . . . . 461, 462  
 english.mld . 35–38, 149, 190, 226, 227, 230, 383, 384, 441, 443, 446, 453, 455, 461, 502, 525, 527, 562, 564, 584, 586  
 english1.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 461, 579  
 english2.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 462, 579  
 esperant.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 462, 463  
 esperanto.dtx . . . . . 462  
 esperanto.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 463  
 estonian.dtx . . . . . 463  
 estonian.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 463  
 ethiopia.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 464, 465  
 ethiopian.mld . . . . . 227, 230  
 ethiopian2.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 465, 577  
 ethopian.mld . . . . . 465  
 farsi.ldf . . . . . 198, 467  
 farsi.sty . . . . . 205, 466  
 farsil.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 466, 571  
 farsil.mlo . . . . . 227, 230, 466, 571  
 farsi2.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 466, 571  
 farsi2.mlo . . . . . 227, 230, 466, 571  
 farsi3.mld . . . . . 198, 227, 230, 467, 583  
 finnish.dtx . . . . . 467, 468  
 finnish.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 467  
 finnish2.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 468, 569  
 fminitoc.bib . . 206, 227, 228, 230, 566  
 fminitoc.dtx 59, 206, 226–230, 418, 570  
 fminitoc.ins . . . . . 228  
 fminitoc.ist . . 206, 227, 228, 230, 570  
 fminitoc.lan . . 206, 227, 228, 230, 418  
 fminitoc.pdf . . 206, 227, 228, 230, 566  
 fminitoc.ps . . . . . 206  
 fr-mtc.bst . 207, 227, 228, 230, 238, 584  
 franc.sty . . . . . 227  
 francais.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 468  
 frbib.sty . . . . . 227  
 french.mld 35, 37, 38, 227, 230, 441, 442, 456, 468, 470, 471, 570, 576  
 french1.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 469, 579  
 french2.mld .88, 227, 230, 255, 470, 579, 582  
 frenchb.dtx . . . . . 468–470  
 frenchb.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 470  
 frenchle.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 471  
 frenchpro.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 471  
 frnew.sty . . . . . 227  
 frplain1.bst . . . . . 238, 584  
 galician.dtx . . . . . 471  
 galician.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 471, 588  
 german.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 446, 472  
 germanb.dtx . . . . . 473  
 germanb.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 473  
 germanb2.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 473, 572  
 greek-mono.mld 198, 227, 230, 474, 567  
 greek-polydemo.mld 198, 227, 230, 475, 567  
 greek-polykatha.mld 198, 227, 230, 476, 567  
 greek.dtx . . . . . 474  
 greek.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 474  
 guarani.ldf . . . . . 207, 477  
 guarani.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 477, 571  
 hangul-u8.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 480  
 hangul-u8.mlo . . . . . 227, 230, 480  
 hangul.cap . . . . . 478  
 hangul.cpx . . . . . 478  
 hangul1.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 478, 567  
 hangul1.mlo . . . . . 227, 230, 478  
 hangul2.cap . . . . . 479  
 hangul2.cpx . . . . . 479  
 hangul2.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 478, 567  
 hangul2.mlo . . . . . 227, 230, 478  
 hangul3.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 479, 567  
 hangul3.mlo . . . . . 227, 230, 479  
 hangul4.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 479, 567  
 hangul4.mlo . . . . . 227, 230, 479  
 hanja-u8.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 481  
 hanja-u8.mlo . . . . . 227, 230, 481, 482  
 hanja.cap . . . . . 481  
 hanja.cpx . . . . . 480  
 hanja1.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 480, 567  
 hanja1.mlo . . . . . 227, 230, 480, 481  
 hanja2.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 481, 567  
 hanja2.mlo . . . . . 227, 230, 481  
 hebrew.dtx . . . . . 483

- hebrew.mld . . . . . 198, 227, 230, 482, 564
- hebrew2.mld . . . . . 198, 227, 230, 483
- hindi-modern.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 238, 484, 584
- hindi.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 238, 483, 584
- hungarian.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 484
- icelandic.dtx . . . . . 485
- icelandic.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 485, 564
- indon.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 485
- indonesian.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 485
- INSTALL 208, 227, 228, 230, 235, 238, 568, 581, 587
- interlingua.dtx . . . . . 486
- interlingua.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 486
- irish.dtx . . . . . 486
- irish.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 486, 578
- italian.dtx . . . . . 487
- italian.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 487, 576
- italian2.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 487
- japanese.mld . . . . . 41, 227, 230, 488
- japanese.mlo . . . . . 227, 230, 488
- japanese2.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 488, 567
- japanese2.mlo . . . . . 227, 230, 488
- japanese3.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 489, 567, 576
- japanese3.mlo . . . . . 227, 230, 489
- japanese4.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 489, 567
- japanese4.mlo . . . . . 227, 230, 489
- japanese5.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 490, 567
- japanese5.mlo . . . . . 227, 230, 490
- japanese6.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 238, 490, 586
- japanese6.mlo . . . . . 227, 230, 238, 490, 586
- JIS.cap . . . . . 488
- JIS.cpx . . . . . 489
- kanlel.sty . . . . . 491
- kannada.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 491, 578
- khalkha.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 491, 573
- lamed.eps . . . . . 227, 228, 230, 580
- lamed.pdf . . . . . 227, 228, 230, 580
- lamed.tex . . . . . 227, 228, 230, 580
- latex.fmt . . . . . 57
- latex.tex . . . . . 57, 560
- latin.dtx . . . . . 492
- latin.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 492, 564
- latin2.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 492, 569
- latvian.ldf . . . . . 493
- latvian.mld . . . . . 198, 227, 230, 493, 567
- letton.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 493, 567
- lhcyrralt.sty . . . . . 515
- lhcyrkoi.sty . . . . . 516
- lhcyrrwin.sty . . . . . 516
- lithuanian.ldf . . . . . 493
- lithuanian.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 493, 576
- lowersorbian.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 494, 495, 577
- lsorbian.dtx . . . . . 494
- lsorbian.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 495, 578
- magyar.dtx . . . . . 495, 496
- magyar.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 484, 495, 579
- magyar2.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 495, 569, 579
- magyar3.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 496, 576, 579
- malay.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 496
- malayalam-keli.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 497, 570
- malayalam-omega.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 497, 578
- malayalam-omega.mlo . . . . . 227, 230, 497, 578
- malayalam-rachana.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 498, 570
- malayalam-rachana2.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 498, 570
- manju.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 499, 573
- memoir.cls . . . . . 210, 259
- meyalu.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 499
- minitoc-hyper.sty . . . . . 211
- minitoc-texmf.zip . . . . . 212, 227, 229, 230, 238, 587
- minitoc.bib . . . . . 211, 227, 228, 230, 566
- minitoc.bug . . . . . 49, 54, 211, 227, 228, 230, 236, 237, 566, 571, 572, 576, 577, 580
- minitoc.dtx . . . . . 59, 206, 208, 211, 226–230, 236, 378, 418, 582
- minitoc.ins . . . . . 41, 206–208, 211, 212, 215, 226–230, 378, 418, 441, 570, 582
- minitoc.ist . . . . . 211, 227, 228, 230, 569
- minitoc.l . . . . . 211, 226–228, 230, 573
- minitoc.lan . . . . . 206, 211, 227, 228, 230, 418
- minitoc.pdf . . . . . 212, 227, 228, 230
- minitoc.pre . . . . . 212, 227, 228, 230, 573, 578
- minitoc.ps . . . . . 212
- minitoc.sty . . . . . 212, 226, 227, 230, 249
- minitoc.sum . . . . . 212, 227, 228, 230
- minitoc.tex . . . . . 562, 566
- mongol.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 499
- mongolb.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 238, 239, 500, 501, 588
- mongolb.mlo . . . . . 238, 239, 588
- mongolian.dtx . . . . . 500
- mongolian.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 239, 501, 588
- mtc-cri.log . . . . . 121
- mtcglo.ist . . . . . 572
- mtcmess.sty . . . . . 226, 227, 230
- mtcnorsk.sty . . . . . 562
- mtcnynorsk.sty . . . . . 562
- mtcoeff.sty . . . . . 226, 227, 230, 568
- mtcpatchmem.sty . . . . . 226, 227, 230
- mtcswedish.sty . . . . . 561
- naustrian.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 501
- newzealand.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 502
- ngerman.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 502

- ngermanb.dtx ..... 502, 503
- ngermanb.mld ..... 227, 230, 501, 502
- ngermanb2.mld ..... 227, 230, 503, 572
- norsk.dtx ..... 503, 504
- norsk.mld ..... 227, 230, 503
- norsk2.mld ..... 227, 230, 504, 572
- nynorsk.mld ..... 227, 230, 504
- nynorsk2.mld ..... 227, 230, 505, 572
- OLD ..... 583
- omega-greek.ldf ..... 474–476
- omega-polish.ldf ..... 506
- omega-russian.ldf ..... 511
- omega-spanish.ldf ..... 521
- omega.sty ..... 198
- placeins.sty ..... 29
- placeins.txt ..... 29, 220
- plain.bst ..... 204, 207
- plainurl.bst ..... 238, 584
- polish.dtx ..... 505
- polish.mld ..... 227, 230, 505
- polish2.mld ... 198, 227, 230, 506, 567
- polski.dtx ..... 507
- polski.mld ..... 227, 230, 507, 578
- portuges.dtx ..... 451, 507
- portuges.mld .. 227, 230, 507, 569, 570
- portugues.mld ..... 569, 570
- portuguese.mld .... 227, 230, 507, 570
- rapport.doc ..... 523
- README ..... 227, 228, 230
- romanian.dtx ..... 508, 509
- romanian.mld ..... 227, 230, 508
- romanian2.mld . 227, 230, 509, 576, 584
- romanian3.mld . 227, 230, 509, 576, 584
- russian-cca.mld ... 227, 230, 514, 579
- russian-cca.mlo ..... 227, 230, 514
- russian-cca1.mld .. 227, 230, 514, 579
- russian-cca1.mlo ..... 227, 230, 514
- russian-lh.mld .... 227, 230, 515, 579
- russian-lh.mlo ..... 227, 230, 515
- russian-lhcyralt.mld .. 227, 230, 515,  
579
- russian-lhcyralt.mlo .. 227, 230, 515
- russian-lhcyrkoi.mld .. 227, 230, 516,  
579
- russian-lhcyrkoi.mlo .. 227, 230, 516
- russian-lhcyrwin.mld .. 227, 230, 516,  
579
- russian-lhcyrwin.mlo .. 227, 230, 516
- russian.def ..... 513
- russian.mld ..... 227, 230, 510
- russian.sty ..... 514, 515
- russian2m.ldf ..... 510
- russian2m.mld . 198, 227, 230, 510, 567
- russian2o.mld . 198, 227, 230, 511, 567
- russianb.dtx ..... 454, 500, 512
- russianb.mld ..... 227, 230, 512, 578
- russianc.mld ..... 227, 230, 513
- samin.dtx ..... 517
- samin.mld ..... 227, 230, 517, 564
- scottish.dtx ..... 517
- scottish.mld ..... 227, 230, 517
- serbian.dtx ..... 518
- serbian.mld ..... 227, 230, 518, 577
- serbianc.mld 41, 227, 230, 518, 567, 577
- SJIS.cap ..... 489
- SJIS.cpx ..... 490
- slovak.dtx ..... 519
- slovak.mld ..... 227, 230, 519
- slovene.dtx ..... 519
- slovene.mld ..... 227, 230, 519
- spanish.dtx ..... 471, 520–522
- spanish.mld ... 227, 230, 456, 520, 578
- spanish2.mld ..... 227, 230, 521, 569
- spanish3.mld .. 198, 227, 230, 521, 571
- spanish4.mld ..... 227, 230, 522, 576
- swedish.dtx ..... 522
- swedish.mld ..... 227, 230, 522
- swedish2.mld ..... 227, 230, 523, 580
- thai.ldf ..... 523
- thai.mld ..... 227, 230, 523, 567
- thai.mlo ..... 227, 230, 523
- thaicjk.ldf ..... 523
- titletoc.sty ..... 223
- tocloft.pdf ..... 75
- TODO ..... 224, 227, 228, 230
- turkish.dtx ..... 524
- turkish.mld ..... 227, 230, 524
- u8hangul.mld ..... 578
- u8hangul.mlo ..... 578
- u8hangul.tex ..... 480
- u8hanja.mld ..... 578
- u8hanja.mlo ..... 578
- u8hanja.tex ..... 481
- uighur.mld ..... 227, 230, 524, 581
- uighur2.mld ..... 227, 230, 524, 581
- uighur3.mld ..... 227, 230, 525, 581
- UKenglish.mld .... 227, 230, 525, 570
- ukraineb.dtx ..... 525
- ukraineb.mld ..... 227, 230, 525
- ukrainian.mld .... 227, 230, 525, 577
- uppersorbian.mld . 227, 230, 526, 527,  
577
- USenglish.mld ..... 227, 230, 527, 570
- usorbian.dtx ..... 526
- usorbian.mld ..... 227, 230, 527, 578
- vietnam.mld ... 227, 230, 527, 528, 562
- vietnamese.mld ..... 227, 230, 528

- welsh.dtx . . . . . 528
  - welsh.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 528
  - while.tip . . . . . 260
  - win-gn.def . . . . . 477
  - xalx.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 491, 529, 573
  - xalx2.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 529, 580
  - xalx3.mld . . . . . 227, 230, 530, 580
  - \finalmem 9041, 9043, 9048, 9050, 9055, 9057
  - \finalnun . . . . . 9040, 9047, 9054
  - finnish (language option) . . . . . 36, 467
  - finnish.dtx (file) . . . . . 467, 468
  - finnish.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 467
  - finnish2 (language option) . . . . . 36, 468
  - finnish2.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 468, 569
  - \firstchapteris (command) . . 26, 47, 51, 84, 158, 169, 197, 200, 206, 275, 411, 561, 562
  - \firstchapteris . . . . . 1, 3190, 7251, 7604
  - \firstpartis (command) 26, 47, 51, 84, 158, 169, 197, 206, 303, 411
  - \firstpartis . . . . . 1, 3874, 7244, 7604
  - \firstsectionis (command) . . 26, 47, 51, 84, 159, 170, 197, 206, 328, 412
  - \firstsectionis . . . . . 1, 4555, 7258, 7604
  - FISCHER, Ulrike . . . . . 240
  - flafter (package) . . . . . 29, 220, 413, 580
  - FLECK, Jean-Julien . . . . . 240, ↪[7]
  - FLIPO, Daniel . . . . . 240, 468–470, ↪[60, 209]
  - float (package) . . . . . 29
  - \FloatBarrier (command) . . 29, 206, 220, 571
  - \FloatBarrier . . . 1, 1033, 1046, 1088, 1114, 1127, 1145, 1148
  - floatrow (package) . . . . . 29
  - flsection (option) . . . . . 234, 565
  - flsectionb (option) . . . . . 234, 565
  - \flushbottom . . . . . 933, 1188
  - FLYNN, Peter . . . . . 240, ↪[119]
  - fminitoc.bib (file) . . 206, 227, 228, 230, 566
  - fminitoc.dtx (file) 59, 206, 226–230, 418, 570
  - fminitoc.ins (file) . . . . . 228
  - fminitoc.ist (file) . . 206, 227, 228, 230, 570
  - fminitoc.lan (file) . . 206, 227, 228, 230, 418
  - fminitoc.pdf (file) . . 206, 227, 228, 230, 566
  - fminitoc.ps (file) . . . . . 206
  - fmk (script) . . . . . 206, 208, 221, 227–230, 573
  - fncychap (package) . . 50, 72, 85, 177, 206, 237, 256, 405, 581
  - fo1.tex (old example document) . . 582, 585
  - fo2.tex (old example document) . . 582, 585
  - \footnotesize (command) . . . . . 218
  - \footnotesize . . . . . 2511
  - Fox, Jim . . . . . 240
  - \FR . . . . . 8577–8579, 8581–8583, 8585–8587
  - fr-mtc.bst (file) . 207, 227, 228, 230, 238, 584
  - franc (package) . . . . . 88, 206, 228, 230
  - franc.sty (file) . . . . . 227
  - francais (language option) . . . . . 36, 468
  - francais.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 468
  - frbib (package) . . . . . 207, 228, 230
  - frbib.sty (file) . . . . . 227
  - french (language option) 36, 456, 468, 470, 471, 565, 566
  - french.mld (file) 35, 37, 38, 227, 230, 441, 442, 456, 468, 470, 471, 570, 576
  - french1 (language option) . . . . . 36, 469
  - french1.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 469, 579
  - french2 (language option) . . 36, 88, 213, 470
  - french2.mld (file) . 88, 227, 230, 255, 470, 579, 582
  - frenchb (language option) . . . . . 36, 470
  - frenchb.dtx (file) . . . . . 468–470
  - frenchb.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 470
  - frenchle (language option) . . . . 36, 471, 565
  - frenchle.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 471
  - frenchpro (language option) . . . 36, 471, 565
  - frenchpro.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 471
  - frnew (package) . . . . . 88, 207, 228, 230
  - frnew.sty (file) . . . . . 227
  - \frontmatter (command) . . . . . 75
  - \frontmatter . . . . . 215
  - frplain1.bst (file) . . . . . 238, 584
  - \fup . . . . . 2001, 2025, 2027, 2094
  - FÜRNIS, Danny M. . . . . 240
  - FURUKAWA, Tetsuo . . . . . 240, ↪[144]
  - \fussy . . . . . 1019, 1285
- ## G
- galician (language option) . . . . 36, 471, 520
  - galician.dtx (file) . . . . . 471
  - galician.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 471, 588
  - gaps . . . . . 73
  - gaps.tex (old example document) . . 581, 585
  - GARCÍA MORATE, Diego . . . . . 240
  - GÄSSLEIN, Hubert . . . . . 240
  - \gdef (command) . . . . . 260
  - GELDERMAN, Maarten . . . . . 240, ↪[120]
  - GENSCHTE, Chuck . . . . . 240, ↪[121]
  - geometry (package) . . . . . 115
  - german (language option) . . . 36, 446, 472, 473
  - german.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 446, 472
  - germanb (language option) . . . . 36, 473, 502
  - germanb.dtx (file) . . . . . 473
  - germanb.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 473
  - germanb2 (language option) . . . . . 36, 473
  - germanb2.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 473, 572
  - GHODSI, Mohammad . . . . . 240, 441, 466

- GILHOOLY, Helen . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [122]  
GLEISZNER, Markus . . . . . 240, 575  
\gobbleopt@ (command) . . . . . 423  
\gobbleopt@ . . . . . 7524, 7525–7543  
GONTSHARUK, Vitali . . . . . 240  
\goodap . . . . . 2308  
GOOSSENS, Michel . . . . . 240, 561,  
 $\hookrightarrow$ [123, 201, 202, 203]  
GOUTELLE, Mathieu . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [21]  
GRANT, Fraser . . . . . 240, 486, 517,  $\hookrightarrow$ [44, 61]  
GRAY, Norman . . . . . 224, 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [124]  
greek (language option) . . . . . 36, 474  
greek-mono (language option) . . . . 36, 41, 474  
greek-mono.mld (file) . . . . . 198, 227, 230, 474, 567  
greek-polydemo (language option) . 36, 41, 475  
greek-polydemo.mld (file) . . . . . 198, 227, 230, 475,  
567  
greek-polykatha (language option) 36, 41, 476  
greek-polykatha.mld (file) . . . . . 198, 227, 230, 476,  
567  
greek.dtx (file) . . . . . 474  
greek.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 474  
GRENON, Loïc . . . . . 240  
GREYER, Charles . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [237]  
GRINEVA, Olga A. . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [25]  
GROT, Sébastien . . . . . 240  
guarani (package) . . . . . 41, 207, 441, 477  
guarani (language option) . . . . . 36, 207, 477  
guarani.ldf (file) . . . . . 207, 477  
guarani.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 477, 571  
GUIGNARD, Micael . . . . . 240  
GUNN, Marion . . . . . 240, 486,  $\hookrightarrow$ [44]  
GURARI, Eitan M. . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [123]
- ## H
- \ha . . . . . 7935, 7939, 7943, 8577, 8581, 8585  
HAFNER, Thomas . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [229]  
HAGEN, Hans . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [125, 126, 129]  
HAMZI, Boumediene . . . . . 240  
HÀN, Thế Thành . . . . . 240, 527, 577, 588,  
 $\hookrightarrow$ [127, 128, 129]  
hangcaption (package) . . . . . 50, 76, 85, 178, 207, 238,  
257, 406, 559, 586  
hangul-u8 (language option) . . . . . 36, 480  
hangul-u8.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 480  
hangul-u8.mlo (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 480  
hangul.cap (file) . . . . . 478  
hangul.cpx (file) . . . . . 478  
hangul1 (language option) . . . . . 36, 478  
hangul1.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 478, 567  
hangul1.mlo (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 478  
hangul2 (language option) . . . . . 36, 478  
hangul2.cap (file) . . . . . 479  
hangul2.cpx (file) . . . . . 479  
hangul2.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 478, 567  
hangul2.mlo (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 478  
hangul3 (language option) . . . . . 36, 479  
hangul3.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 479, 567  
hangul3.mlo (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 479  
hangul4 (language option) . . . . . 36, 479  
hangul4.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 479, 567  
hangul4.mlo (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 479  
hanja-u8 (language option) . . . . . 36, 481, 482  
hanja-u8.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 481  
hanja-u8.mlo (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 481, 482  
hanja.cap (file) . . . . . 481  
hanja.cpx (file) . . . . . 480  
hanja1 (language option) . . . . . 36, 480, 481  
hanja1.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 480, 567  
hanja1.mlo (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 480, 481  
hanja2 (language option) . . . . . 36, 481  
hanja2.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 481, 567  
hanja2.mlo (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 481  
HANSEN, Thorsten . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [131, 130]  
HAPPEL, Patrick . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [132]  
HARALAMBOUS, Yannis . . . . . 218, 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [133, 134, 135,  
136, 137, 138, 139, 225, 226]  
HARGREAVES, Kathryn A. . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [1, 2]  
HARIN, Alexander . . . . . 240, 514,  $\hookrightarrow$ [140]  
HARRIS, Russel L. . . . . 240  
HARRISON, Michael A. . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [97]  
\hb@xt@ . . . . . 3496  
HEAP, Danny . . . . . 240  
\hebalef . . . . . 9071, 9074, 9081, 9084, 9091, 9094  
\hebayin . . . . . 9068, 9078, 9088  
\hebbet . . . . . 9074, 9084, 9094  
\hebfinalmem . . . . . 9068, 9071, 9078, 9081, 9088,  
9091  
\hebfinalnun . . . . . 9067, 9077, 9087  
\hebkaf . . . . . 9067, 9077, 9087  
\heblamed . . . . . 9074, 9084, 9094  
\hebmeme . . . . . 9070, 9073, 9080, 9083, 9090, 9093  
\hebnun . . . . . 9068, 9078, 9088  
\hebresh . . . . . 9070, 9071, 9073, 9080, 9081, 9083,  
9090, 9091, 9093  
hebrew (language option) . . . . . 36, 198, 482  
hebrew.dtx (file) . . . . . 483  
hebrew.mld (file) . . . . . 198, 227, 230, 482, 564  
hebrew2 (language option) . . . . . 36, 483  
hebrew2.mld (file) . . . . . 198, 227, 230, 483  
\hebshin . . . . . 9070, 9073, 9080, 9083, 9090, 9093  
\hebtav . . . . . 9067, 9070, 9073, 9074, 9077, 9080,  
9083, 9084, 9087, 9090, 9093, 9094  
\hebtet . . . . . 9074, 9084, 9094  
\hebvav . . . . . 9067, 9071, 9074, 9077, 9081, 9084,  
9087, 9091, 9094

`\hebyod` . . . 9068, 9070, 9071, 9073, 9078, 9080,  
 9081, 9083, 9088, 9090, 9091, 9093  
 HEIDER, André . . . . . 240  
 HEIN, Thorsten . . . . . 240  
 HELLMAN, Sten . . . . . 240, 522,  $\hookrightarrow$ [62]  
 HELSTRUP, Håvard . . . . . 240, 503, 504,  $\hookrightarrow$ [45]  
 HENEL, Yvon . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [21, 246]  
 HENNIG, Stephan . . . . . 51, 69, 85, 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [141]  
 HENRY, Florence . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [21]  
 HERBORN, Stephen . . . . . 240  
`hia.tex` (old example document) . . . 583, 585  
`hide.tex` (old example document) . . . . . 581  
`hide1.tex` (old example document) . . . 581, 585  
`hide2.tex` (old example document) . . . 581, 585  
 hindi (language option) . . . . . 36, 207, 483  
 hindi-modern (language option) . . 36, 207, 484  
 hindi-modern.mld (file) 227, 230, 238, 484, 584  
 hindi.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 238, 483, 584  
**hints** (default option) . . . . . 49–51, 54, 67, 69,  
 71–73, 76, 77, 151, 157, 163, 207, 218,  
 235, 236, 250, 251, 253, 388, 397, 412,  
 415, 566, 569, 578  
`hir.tex` (old example document) . . . 583, 585  
 L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X (package) . . . . . 207, 441, 480, 481  
`\hline` (command) . . . . . 309, 312, 315, 331, 334, 337  
`\hline` . . . 3286, 3356, 3424, 4032, 4100, 4179,  
 4631, 4697, 4764  
 HOADLEY, David . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [238]  
 HOENIG, Alan . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [142]  
 HØGHOLM, Morten . . . . . 241  
 HOLME, Alv Kjetil . . . . . 241, 503, 504,  $\hookrightarrow$ [45]  
`hop.tex` (old example document) . . . 583, 585  
 HORST, Umstatter . . . . . 241, 508,  $\hookrightarrow$ [63]  
 HOSEK, Don . . . . . 241, 569  
`\hrule` (command) . . . . . 275, 565  
`\hrule` . . . 1539, 3205, 5202–5204, 5211–5213,  
 5220–5222  
 Hu, Yufan . . . . . 241, 558  
 HUFFLEN, Jean-Michel . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [203]  
`\Huge` (command) . . . . . 218  
`\Huge` . . . . . 1470, 1472, 1479  
`\huge` (command) . . . . . 218  
`\huge` . . . . . 2007  
 hungarian (language option) . . . . 36, 484, 495  
 hungarian.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 484  
 HUSEBY, Dave W. . . . . 241  
 HYNA, Helene . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [209, 210]  
 hyperref (package) . . . . . 49, 59, 69, 85, 116, 137, 148,  
 163–165, 167, 207, 211, 224, 225, 230,  
 234, 236, 255, 293, 394, 563, 573, 576,  
 588  
 HyperT<sub>E</sub>X (package) . . . . . 207, 224

## I

icelandic (language option) . . . . . 36, 485  
 icelandic.dtx (file) . . . . . 485  
 icelandic.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 485, 564  
 idxtotoc (option of KOMA-Script) . . . . . 47  
`\if@dominilof@used@` 2730, 3564, 6778, 6864  
`\if@dominilot@used@` 2730, 3583, 6778, 6864  
`\if@dominitoc@used@` . . . 2730, 3530, 3545,  
 6778, 6864  
`\if@dopartlof@used@` 2724, 4268, 6749, 6835  
`\if@dopartlot@used@` 2724, 4287, 6749, 6835  
`\if@doparttoc@used@` 2724, 4249, 6749, 6835  
`\if@dosectlof@used@` . . . 2736, 4895, 6731,  
 6807, 6893  
`\if@dosectlot@used@` . . . 2736, 4914, 6731,  
 6807, 6893  
`\if@dosecttoc@used@` 2736, 4876, 6807, 6893  
`\if@filesw` . . . . . 2758, 3154  
`\if@firstchapteris@used@` 2742, 3190, 7247  
`\if@firstpartis@used@` . . . 2742, 3874, 7240  
`\if@firstsectionis@used@` . . . 2742, 7254  
`\if@longextensions` . . . . . 3250  
`\if@longextensions@` . . . 2975, 3250, 3320,  
 3388, 3616, 3647, 3725, 3786, 3995,  
 4068, 4142, 4317, 4331, 4430, 4492,  
 4601, 4667, 4734, 4946, 4974, 5043,  
 5104, 6155, 7027, 7308, 7672  
`\if@mainmatter` . . . . . 7809, 7827  
`\if@minilof@used@` . . . 2730, 3318, 6778, 6864,  
 6957  
`\if@minilot@used@` . . . 2730, 3386, 6778, 6864,  
 6957  
`\if@minitoc@used@` . . . 2730, 3248, 6778, 6864,  
 6957  
`\if@mtc@abstract@loaded@` . . . . . 6461  
`\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@` 2674, 2803, 7123  
`\if@mtc@alnumsecLoaded@a@` . . 2674, 2803,  
 7123  
`\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@` 2674, 2805, 7132  
`\if@mtc@captcontLoaded@a@` . . 2674, 2805,  
 7132  
`\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@` 2674, 2809, 7150  
`\if@mtc@captionIILoaded@a@` . 2674, 2809,  
 7150  
`\if@mtc@captionLoaded@` . . 2674, 2807, 7141  
`\if@mtc@captionLoaded@a@` 2674, 2807, 7141  
`\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@` 2674, 2811, 7159  
`\if@mtc@ccaptionLoaded@a@` . . 2674, 2811,  
 7159  
`\if@mtc@chapter@def@` . . . 2714, 6778, 6864,  
 6957, 7027  
`\if@mtc@chapter@undef@` . . 2720, 4553, 5156  
`\if@mtc@checkfiles` . . . . . 2870, 6150



- \if@mtc@empty@minilof@ . 2703, 3325, 7205
- \if@mtc@empty@minilot@ . 2708, 3393, 7212
- \if@mtc@empty@minitoc@ . 2703, 3255, 7198
- \if@mtc@empty@partlof@ . . . . . 2703, 7184
- \if@mtc@empty@partlot@ . . . . . 2703, 7191
- \if@mtc@empty@parttoc@ . . . . . 2703, 7177
- \if@mtc@empty@sectlof@ . . . . . 2703, 7226
- \if@mtc@empty@sectlot@ . . . . . 2703, 7233
- \if@mtc@empty@secttoc@ . . . . . 2709, 7219
- \if@mtc@FE . . 2870, 3255, 3263, 3325, 3333, 3393, 3401, 4002, 4015, 4075, 4088, 4150, 4163, 4608, 4616, 4674, 4683, 4741, 4750
- \if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@ 2674, 2793, 7078
- \if@mtc@fncychapLoaded@a@ . . 2674, 2793, 7078
- \if@mtc@HgcLoaded@ . . . . 2674, 2795, 7087
- \if@mtc@HgcLoaded@a@ . . . 2674, 2795, 7087
- \if@mtc@Himlof@ . . . . . 5938
- \if@mtc@Himlot@ . . . . . 5971
- \if@mtc@Himtoc@ (command) . . . . . **373**
- \if@mtc@Himtoc@ . . . . . 5923, 5924
- \if@mtc@hints@ (command) . . . . . **250**
- \if@mtc@hints@ . . . 2670, 3545, 3564, 3583, 4249, 4268, 4287, 4876, 4895, 4914, 5176, 6459, 6706, 7355
- \if@mtc@hints@giben@ . . . . . 2670
- \if@mtc@hints@given@ (command) . . . . **251**
- \if@mtc@hints@given@ . . . 2672, 6470, 6478, 6486, 6494, 6518, 6526, 6534, 6594, 6603, 6618, 6627, 6641, 6648, 6667, 6686, 6736, 6749, 6778, 6807, 6835, 6864, 6893, 6922, 6957, 6992, 7060, 7069, 7078, 7087, 7096, 7105, 7114, 7123, 7132, 7141, 7150, 7159, 7168, 7261
- \if@mtc@hints@given@true . . . . . 7027
- \if@mtc@hints@w@ (command) . . . . . **251**
- \if@mtc@hints@w@ . . 2670, 6648, 6667, 6686, 6736
- \if@mtc@hyper@used@ 2772, 6648, 6667, 6686
- \if@mtc@insellang@ (command) . . **378, 379**
- \if@mtc@insellang@ . . . . . 6090, 6110
- \if@mtc@LI . . . . . 2870
- \if@mtc@listfiles@ . . . . . 6176, 7354
- \if@mtc@lof@used@ 6461, 6706, 6710, 6719, 6935, 6970, 7005
- \if@mtc@lot@used@ 6461, 6706, 6710, 6719, 6946, 6981, 7016
- \if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@ 2674, 2813, 7168
- \if@mtc@mcaptionLoaded@a@ . . 2674, 2813, 7168
- \if@mtc@memoirLoaded@ (command) . . . **268**
- \if@mtc@memoirLoaded@ . . 2674, 2815, 3028
- \if@mtc@memoirnew@ . . . . . 2674, 2815
- \if@mtc@misslang (command) . . . . . **382**
- \if@mtc@misslang . . . . . 6184, 6230, 6260
- \if@mtc@notoccite@ . . . . 2767, 6154, 7305
- \if@mtc@part@def@ 2712, 6749, 6835, 6922, 7027
- \if@mtc@part@undef@ . . . . . 2718
- \if@mtc@placeinsLoaded@ 2674, 6736, 7299
- \if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@ 2674, 2797, 7096
- \if@mtc@quotchapLoaded@a@ . . 2674, 2797, 7096
- \if@mtc@romannumLoaded@ 2674, 2799, 7105
- \if@mtc@romannumLoaded@a@ . . 2674, 2799, 7105
- \if@mtc@sect@floats@ . . . 2673, 6731, 6736
- \if@mtc@section@def@ . . . 2716, 4553, 5155, 6731, 6807, 6893, 6992, 7027
- \if@mtc@section@undef@ . . . . . 2722
- \if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@ . 2674, 2789, 7060
- \if@mtc@sectstyLoaded@a@ 2674, 2789, 7060
- \if@mtc@setdepth@ . . . . 5879, 5881, 5900
- \if@mtc@setfeature@ . . . 5819, 5841, 5860
- \if@mtc@setfont@ . 5292, 5294, 5313, 5332, 5410
- \if@mtc@setformat@ . . . . . 5592, 5631
- \if@mtc@setpagenumbers@ . . . 5648, 5690
- \if@mtc@setpagenumbers@act@ (command) **571**
- \if@mtc@setrules@ . . . . . 5724, 5745
- \if@mtc@setrules@act@ (command) . . . **571**
- \if@mtc@setttitle@ . . . . 5469, 5471, 5490
- \if@mtc@setttitlefont@ . . 5428, 5430, 5449
- \if@mtc@sheadersLoaded@ 2674, 2801, 7114
- \if@mtc@sheadersLoaded@a@ . 2674, 2801, 7114
- \if@mtc@spn@ok@ . . . . . 5648, 5690
- \if@mtc@sru@ok@ . . . . . 5724, 5766
- \if@mtc@ss@insection@ . . 6158, 6534, 7299
- \if@mtc@toc@used@ 6461, 6706, 6710, 6719, 6924, 6959, 6994
- \if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@ 2674, 2791, 7069
- \if@mtc@varsectsLoaded@a@ . . 2674, 2791, 7069
- \if@mtc@fixglossary@ (command) . . . . **376**
- \if@mtc@fixglossary@ . . . . . 6026
- \if@mtc@fixindex@ . . . . . 6069
- \if@mtcpatchmemoir@ . . . . . 2815, 2838
- \if@partlof@used@ (command) . . . . . **310**
- \if@partlof@used@ 2724, 4068, 6749, 6835, 6922
- \if@partlot@used@ (command) . . . . . **313**
- \if@partlot@used@ 2724, 4142, 6749, 6835, 6922

- `\if@parttoc@used@` (command) . . . . . **308**
- `\if@parttoc@used@` 2724, 3995, 6749, 6835, 6922
- `\if@realch` (command) . . . . . **559**
- `\if@sectlof@used@` (command) . . . . . **333**
- `\if@sectlof@used@` 2736, 4667, 6731, 6807, 6893, 6992
- `\if@sectlot@used@` (command) . . . . . **336**
- `\if@sectlot@used@` 2736, 4734, 6731, 6807, 6893, 6992
- `\if@secttoc@used@` (command) . . . . . **330**
- `\if@secttoc@used@` 2736, 4601, 6807, 6893, 6992
- `\if@setrules@false` . . . . . 5766
- `\if@twocolumn` . . . . . 3934, 3948, 3962
- `\if@twoside` . . . . . 1984
- `\ifanappendix` . . . . . 7828
- `\ifartopt` . . . . . 7814
- `\ifcase` (command) . . . . . **206, 226, 418**
- `\ifdim` . . . . . 4831
- `\IfFileExists` 2839, 2887, 5157, 6090, 6110, 6184, 6230, 7308
- `\ifFTR` (command) . . . . . **570**
- `\ifheadnameref` . . . . . 7841
- `\ifkhtightmtc` . . . . 1, 2770, 3236, 3983, 4589, 6146, 7672
- `ifmtarg` (package) . . . . . **208, 260**
- `\ifmtc@lof@used@` . . . . . 6922, 6957, 6992
- `\ifmtc@lot@used@` . . . . . 6922, 6957, 6992
- `\ifmtc@toc@used@` . . . . . 6922, 6957, 6992
- `\ifmtcoffwarn@` . . . . . 7678, 7695, 7747
- `\ifmtcsecondpart` (command) . . . . . **580**
- `\ifmtcsecondpart` . . 296, 2745, 2746, 2752, 7672, 8674
- `\ifnum` (command) . . . . . **338**
- `\ifodd` . . . . . 1985
- `\ifscan@allowed` . . . . . 424, 633
- `\iftightmtc` 1, 2770, 3236, 3983, 4589, 6146, 7672
- `\ifundottedmtc` (command) . . . . . **289, 575**
- `\ifundottedmtc` 3015, 3501, 3504, 3507, 3509, 3519, 6152, 7672
- `\ignorespaces` . . . . . 3455
- IkEDA, Hiroya . . . . . **241**, ↪[143]
- `imk` (script) . . **204, 206, 208, 221, 227–230, 573, 581**
- `\immediate` . . . . . 2760, 2763, 2873, 2888, 2898–2900, 2902, 2903, 2978–2983, 3000–3003, 3155, 3602–3604, 3625, 3626, 3658, 3659, 3705, 3706, 3734, 3735, 3770, 3771, 3795, 3796, 3831, 3832, 3842, 3860, 4306–4308, 4326, 4327, 4340, 4341, 4415, 4416, 4439, 4440, 4477, 4478, 4501, 4502, 4539, 4540, 4933–4935, 4955, 4956, 4986, 4987, 5026, 5027, 5052, 5053, 5087, 5088, 5113, 5114, 5148, 5149, 7313, 7314, 7316, 7318
- `\in` . . . . . 10267, 10271, 10275
- `\incrementmtc` (command) . . **33, 84, 197, 275, 571**
- `\incrementmtc` . . . . . 1, 3190, 7505
- `\incrementptc` (command) . . **33, 84, 197, 236, 303, 571**
- `\incrementptc` . . . . . 1, 3874, 7505
- `\incrementstc` (command) . . **33, 84, 197, 328, 571**
- `\incrementstc` . . . . . 1, 4555, 7505
- `indon` (language option) . . . . . **36, 485**
- `indon.mld` (file) . . . . . **227, 230, 485**
- `indonesian` (language option) . . . . . **36, 485**
- `indonesian.mld` (file) . . . . . **227, 230, 485**
- `\input` . . . . . 2975, 7403
- `\InputIfFileExists` . . . 6093, 6112, 7273
- `insection` (option) **29, 50, 77, 97, 105, 165, 171, 177, 190, 208, 220, 234, 235, 237, 381, 397, 413, 565, 567, 580**
- `\insertchapterspace` . . . . . 7818
- `INSTALL` (file) **208, 227, 228, 230, 235, 238, 568, 581, 587**
- `\interlinepenalty` . 1468, 1478, 3021, 3476, 3489, 4834
- `interlingua` (language option) . . . . . **36, 486**
- `interlingua.dtx` (file) . . . . . **486**
- `interlingua.mld` (file) . . . . . **227, 230, 486**
- `irish` (language option) . . . . . **36, 486**
- `irish.dtx` (file) . . . . . **486**
- `irish.mld` (file) . . . . . **227, 230, 486, 578**
- `italian` (language option) . . . . . **36, 487**
- `italian.dtx` (file) . . . . . **487**
- `italian.mld` (file) . . . . . **227, 230, 487, 576**
- `italian2` (language option) . . . . . **36, 487**
- `italian2.mld` (file) . . . . . **227, 230, 487**
- `\itemindent` (command) . . . . . **277, 307**
- `\itemindent` . . . . . 3236, 3292, 3362, 3430, 3983, 4044, 4117, 4192, 4591, 4592, 4646, 4712, 4779
- `\itemsep` (command) . . . . . **277, 307**
- `\itemsep` . . . . . 3236, 3983, 4590
- `\itshape` (command) . . . . . **218**
- IVANOV, Dmitry **198, 241, 474–476, 493, 506, 510, 511**
- IVERSEN, Per Steinar . . . . . **241, 503, 504**, ↪[45]
- IWAKUMA, Tetsuo . . . . . **241**, ↪[144]
- IZAOLA, Zunbeltz . . . . . **241, 448**, ↪[47]

## J

JABRI, Youssef . . . . . 198, 241, 445, 467,  $\hookrightarrow$ [145]  
 JAEHNE, Bernd . . . . . 59, 211, 234, 241, 293  
 JALAM, Radwan . . . . . 241  
 JANICH, Michael . . . . . 241, 505,  $\hookrightarrow$ [81]  
 japanese (language option) . . . . . 36, 488  
 japanese.mld (file) . . . . . 41, 227, 230, 488  
 japanese.mlo (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 488  
 japanese2 (language option) . . . . . 36, 488  
 japanese2.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 488, 567  
 japanese2.mlo (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 488  
 japanese3 (language option) . . . . . 36, 489  
 japanese3.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 489, 567, 576  
 japanese3.mlo (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 489  
 japanese4 (language option) . . . . . 36, 489  
 japanese4.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 489, 567  
 japanese4.mlo (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 489  
 japanese5 (language option) . . . . . 36, 490  
 japanese5.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 490, 567  
 japanese5.mlo (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 490  
 japanese6 (language option) . . . . . 36, 490  
 japanese6.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 238, 490, 586  
 japanese6.mlo (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 238, 490, 586  
 \jeem 7937, 7941, 7945, 8577, 8579, 8581, 8583,  
     8585, 8587  
 JEFFREY, Alan . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [54, 146]  
 JERNSLETEN, Regnor . . . . . 241, 517,  $\hookrightarrow$ [64]  
 JIANG, Zhuhan . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [147]  
 JIS.cap (file) . . . . . 488  
 JIS.cpx (file) . . . . . 489  
 \jobname (command) . . . . . 206, 208, 261, 267, 278,  
     281, 285, 290, 297, 300, 404, 414, 418,  
     583  
 \jobname . . . . . 2975, 5157, 7308, 7403  
 JOLY, Loïc . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [21]  
 JONES, David M. . . . . 50, 76, 85, 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [148]  
 JORSSSEN, Christophe . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [21]  
 JUHASZ, Robert . . . . . 241, 508,  $\hookrightarrow$ [63]  
 JUNGE, Stefan . . . . . 241  
 jura (class) . . . . . 50, 71, 85, 164, 197, 208, 389, 394,  
     578  
 JURAFSKY, Dan . . . . . 24, 232, 241, 558

## K

**k-loose** (default option) . . . . . 39, 77, 208, 236, 255,  
     330, 380, 571  
**k-tight** (option) . . . . . 39, 59, 77, 137, 208, 236, 255,  
     277, 307, 330, 380, 571  
 \kaf . . . . . 7936, 7940, 7944, 8578, 8582, 8586, 9040,  
     9047, 9054  
 KANERVA, Mikko . . . . . 241, 467, 468,  $\hookrightarrow$ [65]

kanlel (package) . . . . . 491  
 kanlel.sty (file) . . . . . 491  
 kannada (language option) . . . . . 36, 491  
 kannada.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 491, 578  
 KannadaT<sub>E</sub>X (package) . . . . . 491  
 KAROONBOONYANAN, Theppitak . . . . . 241, 523,  $\hookrightarrow$ [195]  
 KASTRUP, David . . . . . 241  
 \kern (command) . . . . . 275, 560  
 \kernafterminilof (command) . . . . . 74, 82  
 \kernafterminilof . . . . . 2652, 3381, 7424  
 \kernafterminilot (command) . . . . . 74, 82  
 \kernafterminilot . . . . . 2652, 3449, 7424  
 \kernafterminitoc (command) . . . . . 74, 82  
 \kernafterminitoc . . . . . 2652, 3308, 7424  
 \kernafterpartlof (command) . . . . . 74, 82  
 \kernafterpartlof . . . . . 2652, 4136, 7424  
 \kernafterpartlot (command) . . . . . 74, 82  
 \kernafterpartlot . . . . . 2652, 4211, 7424  
 \kernafterparttoc (command) . . . . . 74, 82, 237  
 \kernafterparttoc . . . . . 2652, 4062, 7424  
 \kernaftersectlof (command) . . . . . 74, 82  
 \kernaftersectlof . . . . . 2652, 4729, 4797, 7424  
 \kernaftersectlot (command) . . . . . 74, 82  
 \kernaftersectlot . . . . . 2652, 7424  
 \kernaftersecttoc (command) . . . . . 74, 82  
 \kernaftersecttoc . . . . . 2652, 4662, 7424  
 KERYELL, Ronan . . . . . 207, 241  
 khalkha (language option) . . . . . 36, 491  
 khalkha.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 491, 573  
 KIELHORN, Axel . . . . . 85, 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [207]  
 KIM, Ki-Joo . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [149, 150, 151]  
 KLEB, Bil . . . . . 50, 241  
 KLEIWEG, Peter . . . . . 241, 486,  $\hookrightarrow$ [66]  
 KLEVELAND, Rune . . . . . 241, 503, 504,  $\hookrightarrow$ [45]  
 KNAPPEN, Jörg . . . . . 241, 447, 456, 462,  $\hookrightarrow$ [67, 68, 79]  
 KNUTH, Donald E. . . . . 202, 216, 218, 223, 241,  
      $\hookrightarrow$ [152, 153, 154, 155]  
 KOAUNGHI, Un . . . . .  $\hookrightarrow$ [156]  
 KOHM, Markus . . . . . 85, 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [157, 207]  
 KOPKA, Helmut . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [158]  
 KOPPANYI, Attila . . . . . 241, 495, 496,  $\hookrightarrow$ [51]  
 KORAI, Adamantios . . . . . 241, 476  
 KRAKOVIACK, Vincent . . . . . 241  
 KRONZUCKER, Thankmar . . . . . 241  
 KROONENBERG, Siep . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [159]  
 KRYUKOV, Alexej M. . . . . 198, 241, 474–476, 493, 506,  
     510, 511, 521,  $\hookrightarrow$ [160]  
 \ktightmtcfalse (command) . . . . . 39, 78  
 \ktightmtcfalse . . . . . 1, 2771, 6149, 7674  
 \ktightmtctrue (command) . . . . . 39, 78  
 \ktightmtctrue . . . . . 1, 6148  
 KUDLEK, Manfred . . . . . 241, 464, 465,  $\hookrightarrow$ [31]  
 KUHN, Markus G. . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [161]  
 KULZER, Florian . . . . . 241

KUMAZAWA, Toshiki . . . . . **241, 488, 490**  
 KUMMER, Olaf . . . . . **241, 464, 465**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [[31](#)]  
 KÜSTER, Frank . . . . . **50, 73, 85, 241, 518**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [[162](#)]

## L

$\backslash$ l@chapter (command) . . . . . **67, 265, 287, 310**  
 $\backslash$ l@chapter . . . 2954, 3453, 4053, 4054, 5191,  
 5193, 7598  
 $\backslash$ l@chapter@SVPN . . . . . 4053, 4054  
 $\backslash$ l@coffee (command) . . . . . **379**  
 $\backslash$ l@coffee . . . . . 6138, 7730  
 $\backslash$ l@listof . . . . . 5190, 7672  
 $\backslash$ l@mti . . 3225, 3230, 3263, 3333, 3401, 3545,  
 3564, 3583  
 $\backslash$ l@paragraph (command) . . . . . **68, 350**  
 $\backslash$ l@paragraph . . . . . 5197, 7602  
 $\backslash$ l@part (command) . . . . . **67, 262**  
 $\backslash$ l@part . . . . . 2917, 5192, 7597  
 $\backslash$ l@pchapter . . . . . 4216  
 $\backslash$ l@psect . . . . . 4216  
 $\backslash$ l@pti . . 3924, 3934, 3977, 4015, 4088, 4163,  
 4249, 4268, 4287  
 $\backslash$ l@schapter . . . . . 4801  
 $\backslash$ l@section (command) . . . . . **67, 68, 264, 350**  
 $\backslash$ l@section . . . . . 2943, 5190, 5194, 7599  
 $\backslash$ l@starchapter . . . . . 5190, 7597  
 $\backslash$ l@starparagraph . . . . . 5190, 7597  
 $\backslash$ l@starpart . . . . . 5190, 7597  
 $\backslash$ l@starsection . . . . . 5190, 7597  
 $\backslash$ l@starsubparagraph . . . . . 5190, 7597  
 $\backslash$ l@starsubsection . . . . . 5190, 7597  
 $\backslash$ l@starsubsubsection . . . . . 5190, 7597  
 $\backslash$ l@sti . . 4578, 4583, 4616, 4683, 4750, 4876,  
 4895, 4914  
 $\backslash$ l@subfigure . . . . . 2303  
 $\backslash$ l@subparagraph (command) . . . . . **68**  
 $\backslash$ l@subparagraph . . . . . 5198, 7603  
 $\backslash$ l@subsection (command) . . . . . **67, 316**  
 $\backslash$ l@subsection . . . . . 5195, 7600  
 $\backslash$ l@subsubsection (command) . . . . . **67**  
 $\backslash$ l@subsubsection . . . . . 5196, 7601  
 $\backslash$ l@xchapter (command) . . . . . **265, 287**  
 $\backslash$ l@xchapter . . . . . 2954, 3453, 7544  
 $\backslash$ l@xpart (command) . . . . . **262, 316**  
 $\backslash$ l@xpart . . . . . 2917, 4216, 7544  
 $\backslash$ l@xsect (command) . . . . . **264**  
 $\backslash$ l@xsect . . . . . 2943, 4801, 7544  
 $\backslash$ l@xsection (command) . . . . . **583**  
 $\backslash$ l@xsection . . . . . 2943, 4801  
 $\backslash$ label . . . 2020, 2101, 2234, 2343, 2346, 2378,  
 2382, 2401, 2584, 2589, 2594, 2599,  
 2604, 2609, 2614, 2619

$\backslash$ labelitemi . . . . . 1522, 1527  
 $\backslash$ labelsep . . 3293, 3363, 3431, 4045, 4118, 4193,  
 4647, 4713, 4780  
 $\backslash$ labelwidth . . 3292, 3362, 3430, 4044, 4117,  
 4192, 4646, 4712, 4779  
 LABORDE, Stéphane . . . . . **241**  
 LACHAND-ROBERT, Thomas . . . . . **241**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [[163](#)]  
 LAGALLY, Klaus . . . . . **36, 198, 241, 444, 482**,  
 $\hookrightarrow$ [[164, 165](#)]  
 $\backslash$ lam . 7935–7937, 7939–7941, 7943–7945, 8578,  
 8579, 8582, 8583, 8586, 8587  
 $\backslash$ lamed . . . . . 9045, 9052, 9059  
 lamed.eps (file) . . . . . **227, 228, 230, 580**  
 lamed.pdf (file) . . . . . **227, 228, 230, 580**  
 lamed.tex (file) . . . . . **227, 228, 230, 580**  
 LAMPORT, Leslie **209, 241**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [[54, 166, 167, 168](#)]  
 LANARI, Fabio . . . . . **241**  
 $\backslash$ LANG (command) . . . . . **206, 418**  
 $\backslash$ LANG . . . . . 7387  
 LANGE, Robert . . . . . **241**  
 LANGMYHR, Dag . . . . . **241, 503, 504, 562**  
 $\backslash$ LangSig . . . . . 2230, 2266  
 Language options  
   acadian . . . . . **441, 566**  
   acadien . . . . . **36, 442, 566**  
   afrikaan . . . . . **36, 442, 443**  
   afrikaans . . . . . **36, 443**  
   albanian . . . . . **36, 443**  
   american . . . . . **36, 443**  
   arab . . . . . **36, 444, 445**  
   arab2 . . . . . **36, 444**  
   arabi . . . . . **36, 445**  
   arabic . . . . . **36, 198, 445**  
   armenian . . . . . **36, 198, 445**  
   australian . . . . . **36, 446**  
   austrian . . . . . **36, 446**  
   bahasa . . . . . **36, 446**  
   bahasai . . . . . **36, 446, 447, 485**  
   bahasam . . . . . **36, 447, 496, 499**  
   bangla . . . . . **36, 199, 448, 565**  
   basque . . . . . **36, 448**  
   bicig . . . . . **36, 213, 449, 450, 524**  
   bicig2 . . . . . **36, 450, 524**  
   bicig3 . . . . . **36, 450, 525**  
   bithe . . . . . **36, 213, 451, 499**  
   brazil . . . . . **36, 451, 452**  
   brazilian . . . . . **36, 452**  
   breton . . . . . **36, 452**  
   british . . . . . **36, 453**  
   bulgarian . . . . . **36, 453**  
   bulgarianb . . . . . **36, 454**  
   buryat . . . . . **36, 454, 455**  
   buryat2 . . . . . **36, 455**  
   canadian . . . . . **36, 455, 566**

- canadien ..... 36, 456, 566
- castillan ..... 36, 456, 520
- castillian ..... 36, 456
- catalan ..... 36, 456, 520
- chinese1 ..... 36, 457
- chinese2 ..... 36, 457, 458
- croatian ..... 36, 458
- czech ..... 36, 458
- danish ..... 36, 459
- devanagari ..... 36, 207, 459, 483
- dutch ..... 36, 460
- english** (default) .. 36, 77, 412, 443, 446,  
453, 455, 461, 502, 525, 527, 566
- english1 ..... 36, 461
- english2 ..... 36, 462
- esperant ..... 36, 462, 463
- esperanto ..... 36, 463
- estonian ..... 36, 463, 564
- ethiopia ..... 36, 464, 465
- ethiopian ..... 36, 204, 465
- ethiopian2 ..... 36, 465
- farsi ..... 198, 205
- farsi1 ..... 36, 466
- farsi2 ..... 36, 466
- farsi3 ..... 36, 467
- finnish ..... 36, 467
- finnish2 ..... 36, 468
- francais ..... 36, 468
- french .. 36, 456, 468, 470, 471, 565, 566
- french1 ..... 36, 469
- french2 ..... 36, 88, 213, 470
- frenchb ..... 36, 470
- frenchle ..... 36, 471, 565
- frenchpro ..... 36, 471, 565
- galician ..... 36, 471, 520
- german ..... 36, 446, 472, 473
- germanb ..... 36, 473, 502
- germanb2 ..... 36, 473
- greek ..... 36, 474
- greek-mono ..... 36, 41, 474
- greek-polydemo ..... 36, 41, 475
- greek-polykatha ..... 36, 41, 476
- guarani ..... 36, 207, 477
- hangul-u8 ..... 36, 480
- hangul1 ..... 36, 478
- hangul2 ..... 36, 478
- hangul3 ..... 36, 479
- hangul4 ..... 36, 479
- hanja-u8 ..... 36, 481, 482
- hanja1 ..... 36, 480, 481
- hanja2 ..... 36, 481
- hebrew ..... 36, 198, 482
- hebrew2 ..... 36, 483
- hindi ..... 36, 207, 483
- hindi-modern ..... 36, 207, 484
- hungarian ..... 36, 484, 495
- icelandic ..... 36, 485
- indon ..... 36, 485
- indonesian ..... 36, 485
- interlingua ..... 36, 486
- irish ..... 36, 486
- italian ..... 36, 487
- italian2 ..... 36, 487
- japanese ..... 36, 488
- japanese2 ..... 36, 488
- japanese3 ..... 36, 489
- japanese4 ..... 36, 489
- japanese5 ..... 36, 490
- japanese6 ..... 36, 490
- kannada ..... 36, 491
- khalkha ..... 36, 491
- latin ..... 36, 492
- latin2 ..... 36, 492
- latvian ..... 36, 493
- letton ..... 36, 493
- lithuanian ..... 36, 493
- lowersorbian ..... 36, 494, 495
- lsorbian ..... 36, 494, 495
- magyar ..... 36, 484, 495
- magyar2 ..... 36, 495
- magyar3 ..... 36, 496
- malay ..... 36, 496
- malayalam-keli ..... 36, 497
- malayalam-omega .... 36, 41, 441, 497
- malayalam-rachana ..... 36, 498
- malayalam-rachana2 ..... 36, 498
- manju ..... 36, 451, 499
- meyalu ..... 36, 499
- mongol ..... 36, 499
- mongolb ..... 36, 500
- mongolian ..... 36, 501
- naustrian ..... 36, 501, 566
- newzealand ..... 36, 502
- ngerman ..... 36, 502, 566
- ngermanb ..... 36, 501, 502, 566
- ngermanb2 ..... 36, 503
- norsk ..... 36, 503
- norsk2 ..... 36, 504
- nynorsk ..... 36, 504, 505
- nynorsk2 ..... 36, 505
- polish ..... 36, 505, 506
- polish2 ..... 36, 41, 506
- polski ..... 36, 220, 507
- portuges ..... 36, 507
- portuguese ..... 36, 507
- romanian ..... 36, 508
- romanian2 ..... 36, 509

- romanian3 . . . . . 36, 509
- russian . . . . . 36, 510–513
- russian-cca . . . . . 36, 514
- russian-cca1 . . . . . 36, 514
- russian-lh . . . . . 36, 515
- russian-lhcyralt . . . . . 36, 515
- russian-lhcyrkoi . . . . . 36, 516
- russian-lhcyrwin . . . . . 36, 516
- russian2m . . . . . 36, 41, 510
- russian2o . . . . . 36, 41, 511
- russianb . . . . . 36, 512
- russianc . . . . . 36, 513
- samin . . . . . 36, 517
- scottish . . . . . 36, 517
- serbian . . . . . 36, 518
- serbianc . . . . . 36, 518
- slovak . . . . . 36, 519
- slovene . . . . . 36, 519
- spanish . . . . . 36, 456, 520
- spanish2 . . . . . 36, 520, 521
- spanish3 . . . . . 36, 41, 520, 521
- spanish4 . . . . . 36, 520, 522
- swedish . . . . . 36, 522
- swedish2 . . . . . 36, 523
- thai . . . . . 36, 523
- turkish . . . . . 36, 524
- uighur . . . . . 36, 524
- uighur2 . . . . . 36, 524
- uighur3 . . . . . 36, 525
- UKenglish . . . . . 36, 525
- ukraineb . . . . . 36, 525
- ukrainian . . . . . 36, 525
- uppersorbian . . . . . 36, 526, 527
- USenglish . . . . . 36, 527
- usorbian . . . . . 36, 526, 527
- vietnam . . . . . 36, 527, 528
- vietnamese . . . . . 36, 528
- welsh . . . . . 36, 528
- xalx . . . . . 36, 491, 529, 530
- xalx2 . . . . . 36, 529
- xalx3 . . . . . 36, 530
- LAPKO, Olga G. . . . . 241, 454, 500, 512, 525,  
     ↔[26, 27, 28, 69, 169, 170, 171]
- \LARGE (command) . . . . . 218
- \LARGE . . . . . 3922
- \Large (command) . . . . . 218
- \Large . . . . . 2009, 2206, 3908
- \large (command) . . . . . 218
- \large 1496, 1521, 1526, 1530, 1533, 3223, 4577
- LARSEN, Henning . . . . . 241, 459, ↔[70]
- LASGOUTTES, Jean-Marc . . . . . 241
- latex.fmt (file) . . . . . 57
- latex.tex (file) . . . . . 57, 560
- L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 PROJECT TEAM,  
     ↔[172, 173, 174, 175, 176, 177, 257]
- latin (language option) . . . . . 36, 492
- latin.dtx (file) . . . . . 492
- latin.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 492, 564
- latin2 (language option) . . . . . 36, 492
- latin2.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 492, 569
- latvian (language option) . . . . . 36, 493
- latvian.ldf (file) . . . . . 493
- latvian.mld (file) . . . . . 198, 227, 230, 493, 567
- LAUFFENBURGER, Jean-Philippe . . . . . 241
- LAUNAY, Arnaud . . . . . 241
- LAUVERNET, Claire . . . . . 241
- LAVVA, Boris . . . . . 241, 483, ↔[71]
- \ldots . . . . . 1704, 1708, 1712, 2524, 2533
- LEBACQ, André . . . . . 241
- \leftmargin . . . . . 3244, 3245, 3290, 3360, 3428,  
     3991, 3992, 4042, 4115, 4190, 4597,  
     4598, 4644, 4710, 4777
- LEGRAND, Jeanne . . . . . 241, ↔[212]
- LEHMAN, Philipp . . . . . 241, ↔[178]
- LEMBERG, Werner . . . . . 201, 241, 454, 457,  
     478–481, 488–490, 500, 512, 523, 527,  
     ↔[69, 179, 180, 257]
- LEONHARDT, Thomas . . . . . 241, 565
- LE PENNEC, Erwan . . . . . 241, ↔[21]
- LEPOLOZEC, Stéphane . . . . . 241
- \let (command) . . . . . 70, 563
- LE THUAUT, Julien . . . . . 241
- letter (class) . . . . . 24, 56, 191, 202, 209, 221
- letton (language option) . . . . . 36, 493
- letton.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 493, 567
- LEWENBERG, Adam . . . . . 241
- LH (package) . . . . . 515
- lhcyr (package) . . . . . 515, 516
- lhcyralt.sty (file) . . . . . 515
- lhcyrkoi.sty (file) . . . . . 516
- lhcyrwin.sty (file) . . . . . 516
- LICKERT, Knut . . . . . 212, 241, 379, ↔[181]
- LINDGREN, Ulf A. . . . . 50, 72, 85, 241, ↔[182]
- \linebreak (command) . . . . . 55
- \linewidth (command) . . . . . 42
- \linewidth . . . . . 1494, 1503, 1511, 2235, 2236
- LINGNAU, Anselm . . . . . 241, ↔[183]
- lipsum (package) . . . . . 90, 209, 582
- \lipsum . . . . . 19, 21, 26, 28,  
     41, 43, 48, 50, 247, 249, 254, 256, 258,  
     264, 266, 268, 274, 276, 278, 349–372,  
     375–410, 895, 897, 902, 905, 910, 957,  
     959, 961, 963, 966, 968, 970, 972, 974,  
     976, 978, 980, 982, 984, 986, 988, 990,  
     992, 994, 996, 998, 1000, 1002, 1004,  
     1006, 1008, 1010, 1012, 1014, 1016,  
     1018, 1024, 1026, 1035, 1037, 1039,

- 1048, 1053, 1055, 1057, 1059, 1061,  
1063, 1073, 1075, 1077, 1079, 1081,  
1089, 1091, 1101, 1103, 1105, 1107,  
1117, 1119, 1130, 1134, 1136, 1138,  
1147, 1153, 1155, 1157, 1159, 1161,  
1219, 1221, 1223, 1225, 1228, 1230,  
1232, 1234, 1236, 1238, 1240, 1242,  
1244, 1246, 1248, 1250, 1252, 1254,  
1256, 1258, 1260, 1262, 1264, 1266,  
1268, 1270, 1272, 1274, 1276, 1278,  
1280, 1282, 1284, 1292, 1294, 1309,  
1311, 1313, 1321, 1324, 1327, 1330,  
1333, 1336, 1339, 1346, 1348, 1350,  
1352, 1354, 1361, 1363, 1372, 1374,  
1376, 1378, 1385, 1387, 1389, 1391,  
1399, 1401, 1403, 1416, 1418, 1420,  
1426, 1764, 1766, 1768, 1770, 1772,  
1774, 1776, 1812, 1814, 1816, 1818,  
1820, 1822, 1824, 1841, 1845, 1849,  
1854, 1858, 1861, 1866, 1870, 1874,  
1889, 1893, 1897, 1902, 1906, 1909,  
1914, 1918, 1922, 1942, 1950, 1961,  
1969, 2169, 2171, 2173, 2175, 2179,  
2181, 2183, 2185, 2216, 2218, 2220
- `\list` (command) . . . . . **277**  
`\list` . . . . . 3236, 3983, 4590  
`\list{}` (command) . . . . . **307**  
**listfiles** (default option) **49, 57, 77, 148, 196,**  
**209, 218, 236, 238, 382, 414, 572, 585**  
`\listoffigures` (command) **20, 27, 28, 31, 47,**  
**63, 78–81, 173, 174, 266**  
`\listoffigures` . . . . . 1, 63,  
127, 439, 650, 1209, 2326, 2490, 2573,  
2934, 6710, 6939, 6974, 7009  
`\listoftables` (command) . **20, 27, 28, 31, 47,**  
**50, 63, 78–81, 137, 173, 174, 266**  
`\listoftables` . . . . . 1, 64,  
128, 441, 652, 1210, 1838, 1886, 2372,  
2934, 6710, 6950, 6985, 7020  
`\listparindent` (command) . . . . . **277, 307**  
`\listparindent` . . . . 3236, 3293, 3363, 3431,  
3983, 4045, 4118, 4193, 4592, 4647,  
4713, 4780  
**liststotoc** (option of KOMA-Script) . **47, 137**  
**liststotocnumbered** (option of KOMA-Script)  
**47**  
**lithuanian** (language option) . . . . . **36, 493**  
**lithuanian.ldf** (file) . . . . . **493**  
**lithuanian.mld** (file) . . . . **227, 230, 493, 576**  
**livre.tex** (old example document) . . **583, 585**  
**LOBEL, Pierre** . . . . . **241**  
`\localgreek` . . 8814, 8817, 8821, 8825, 8828,  
8832, 8836, 8839, 8843, 8854, 8857,  
8861, 8865, 8868, 8872, 8876, 8879,  
8883, 8894, 8897, 8901, 8905, 8908,  
8912, 8916, 8919, 8923  
`\locallatvian` . . . . . 9351–9353, 9355–9357,  
9359–9361  
`\localpolish` . . . . . 9733–9735, 9737–9739,  
9741–9743  
`\localrussian` . 9859, 9862, 9866, 9870, 9873,  
9877, 9881, 9884, 9888, 9899, 9902,  
9906, 9910, 9913, 9917, 9921, 9924,  
9928  
`\localspanish` . . 10186–10188, 10190–10192,  
10194–10196  
**lofdepth** (depth counter) **31, 210, 274, 303, 328**  
**LOKAJICEK, Milos** . . . . . **241, 458, ⇨[72]**  
**LOMBARD, Stoffel** . . . . . **241, 442**  
**loose** (default option) **39, 77, 208, 210, 223, 233,**  
**255, 330, 380, 563, 565**  
**LORETI, Maurizio** . . . . . **50, 72, 85, 241, ⇨[184]**  
**LORINO, Tristan** . . . . . **241**  
**lotdepth** (depth counter) **31, 210, 274, 286, 303,**  
**328**  
**LOVE, Tim** . . . . . **241, ⇨[185, 186]**  
**lowersorbian** (language option) . **36, 494, 495**  
**lowersorbian.mld** (file) **227, 230, 494, 495, 577**  
**LOZANO, Vincent** . . . . . **241, ⇨[187]**  
**lsorbian** (language option) . . . . . **36, 494, 495**  
**lsorbian.dtx** (file) . . . . . **494**  
**lsorbian.mld** (file) . . . . . **227, 230, 495, 578**  
**ltxdoc** (class) . . . . . **24, 202, 210**  
**ltxnews** (class) . . . . . **24, 202, 210**  
**LUECKING, Daniel H.** . . . . . **241**  
**LUNDE, Ken** . . . . . **202, 241, ⇨[188, 189, 190]**  
**LYHNE, Anders** . . . . . **241**
- ## M
- `\M@getttitle` . . . . . 7841  
**MACKAY, Pierre A.** . . . . . **241, 524, ⇨[53]**  
**MADSEN, Lars** . . . . . **241**  
**magyar** (language option) . . . . . **36, 484, 495**  
**magyar.dtx** (file) . . . . . **495, 496**  
**magyar.mld** (file) . . . . **227, 230, 484, 495, 579**  
**magyar2** (language option) . . . . . **36, 495**  
**magyar2.mld** (file) . . . **227, 230, 495, 569, 579**  
**magyar3** (language option) . . . . . **36, 496**  
**magyar3.mld** (file) . . . **227, 230, 496, 576, 579**  
**MAHONEY, Richard** . . . . . **241, 459, 484**  
`\mainmatter` (command) . . . . . **75**  
`\mainmatter` . . . . . 220  
`\makeatletter` (command) . . . . . **68, 210**  
`\makeatother` (command) . . . . . **68, 210**  
`\maketitle` . . . . . 2014  
`\MakeUpperCase` (command) . . . . . **581**



- `\MakeUppercase` 3262, 3332, 3400, 4009, 4082, 4157, 4616, 4681, 4748
- MAKHOVAYA, Irina A. . . . . **241, 454, 512**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [171]
- malay (language option) . . . . . **36, 496**
- malay.mld (file) . . . . . **227, 230, 496**
- malayalam (package) . . . . . **41, 441, 497, 498**
- malayalam-keli (language option) . . . **36, 497**
- malayalam-keli.mld (file) . **227, 230, 497, 570**
- malayalam-omega (language option) **36, 41, 441, 497**
- malayalam-omega.mld (file) **227, 230, 497, 578**
- malayalam-omega.mlo (file) **227, 230, 497, 578**
- malayalam-rachana (language option) **36, 498**
- malayalam-rachana.mld (file) . **227, 230, 498, 570**
- malayalam-rachana2 (language option) **36, 498**
- malayalam-rachana2.mld (file) **227, 230, 498, 570**
- manju (language option) . . . . . **36, 451, 499**
- manju.mld (file) . . . . . **227, 230, 499, 573**
- margincap (environment) . . . . . **210**
- MARGOLIS, Bob . . . . . **241, 447**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [68]
- `\markboth` (command) . . . . . **68, 307, 569, 581**
- MARKEY, Nicolas . . . . . **241**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [21, 191, 192]
- `\markright` (command) . . . . . **68**
- MARR, Marcus . . . . . **241**
- MARRE-FOURNIER, Françoise . . . . . **241**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [21]
- MART, Terry . . . . . **241, 447**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [67, 68]
- MASLOV, Vadim . . . . . **241, 514**
- MASSIAS, Henri . . . . . **63, 241**
- MATTHIAS, Andreas . . . . . **241**
- MATTISSON, Sven . . . . . **241, 523**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [193]
- mcaption (package) . . **51, 69, 85, 166, 210, 236, 259, 409, 572**
- McDONNELL, Rowland . **50, 67, 85, 241**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [194]
- McKAY, Ben . . . . . **241**
- `\mdseries` (command) . . . . . **218**
- `\mdseries` .928, 1760, 1808, 3213, 3224, 3898, 3911, 3913, 4568
- `\meem` 7936, 7937, 7940, 7941, 7944, 7945, 8577, 8581, 8585
- MEKNAVIN, Surapant . . . . . **241, 523**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [195]
- `\mem` . . . . . 9042, 9044, 9049, 9051, 9056, 9058
- mem.tex (old example document) . . . **582, 585**
- mem1.tex (old example document) . . . **582, 585**
- memoir (class) . . . **49, 62, 69, 85, 102, 131–133, 151–153, 156, 188, 194, 210, 214, 215, 226, 234, 236, 251, 259, 268, 392, 435, 565, 571–573**
- memoir.cls (file) . . . . . **210, 259**
- MENGIN, Sébastien . . . . . **241**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [21]
- `\MessageBreak` (command) . . . . . **575**
- `\MessageBreak` . 2819, 2830, 2832, 2834, 2930, 2990, 2995, 2997, 3007, 3012, 3194, 3550, 3552, 3569, 3571, 3588, 3590, 3682, 3751, 3812, 3881, 4254, 4256, 4273, 4275, 4292, 4294, 4393, 4456, 4518, 4558, 4881, 4883, 4900, 4902, 4919, 4921, 5007, 5068, 5129, 5180, 5182, 5184, 5186, 5301, 5303, 5305, 5308, 5319, 5321, 5323, 5326, 5415, 5421, 5424, 5437, 5439, 5441, 5444, 5454, 5456, 5462, 5465, 5478, 5480, 5482, 5485, 5495, 5497, 5503, 5506, 5602, 5604, 5606, 5609, 5619, 5621, 5623, 5626, 5635, 5641, 5644, 5678, 5681, 5683, 5685, 5699, 5702, 5704, 5714, 5719, 5754, 5757, 5759, 5761, 5774, 5777, 5779, 5789, 5794, 5829, 5831, 5833, 5836, 5847, 5849, 5851, 5854, 5865, 5867, 5873, 5876, 5888, 5890, 5892, 5895, 5905, 5908, 5913, 5920, 6008, 6010, 6018, 6020, 6042, 6051, 6053, 6061, 6063, 6085, 6095, 6099, 6101, 6104, 6106, 6115, 6118, 6120, 6122, 6125, 6127, 6132, 6163, 6165, 6168, 6179, 6192, 6194, 6196, 6198, 6208, 6210, 6212, 6214, 6221, 6223, 6225, 6237, 6239, 6241, 6243, 6246, 6248, 6260, 6468, 6474, 6476, 6482, 6484, 6490, 6492, 6498, 6500, 6506, 6508, 6514, 6516, 6522, 6524, 6530, 6532, 6540, 6542, 6544, 6546, 6548, 6550, 6557, 6559, 6561, 6563, 6565, 6572, 6574, 6576, 6578, 6580, 6588, 6590, 6598, 6600, 6607, 6609, 6615, 6617, 6622, 6624, 6633, 6635, 6637, 6639, 6645, 6647, 6658, 6663, 6677, 6682, 6697, 6702, 6740, 6742, 6744, 6754, 6763, 6772, 6783, 6792, 6801, 6812, 6821, 6830, 6840, 6849, 6858, 6869, 6878, 6887, 6898, 6907, 6916, 6927, 6929, 6938, 6940, 6949, 6951, 6962, 6964, 6973, 6975, 6984, 6986, 6997, 6999, 7008, 7010, 7019, 7021, 7035, 7044, 7053, 7064, 7073, 7082, 7091, 7100, 7109, 7118, 7127, 7136, 7145, 7154, 7163, 7172, 7180, 7187, 7194, 7201, 7208, 7215, 7222, 7229, 7236, 7243, 7250, 7257, 7264, 7269, 7277, 7279, 7281, 7284, 7286, 7311, 7371, 7374, 7429, 7431, 7437, 7439, 7445, 7447, 7457, 7459, 7465, 7467, 7473, 7475, 7484, 7486, 7492, 7494, 7500, 7502, 7682, 7684, 7686, 7688, 7690, 7692, 7698, 7700, 7709,



- 7711, 7720, 7722, 7750, 7752, 7757,  
7759, 7764, 7766, 7769
- METZINGER, Jochen . . . . . **241, 464, 465**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [31]
- meyalu (language option) . . . . . **36, 499**
- meyalu.mld (file) . . . . . **227, 230, 499**
- MICHOUE, Yanick . . . . . **241**
- mini-art.tex (old example document) . . . **585**
- \minilof (command) . . . . . **20, 27, 31, 34,**  
**38, 39, 80, 83, 171, 173, 208, 277, 281,**  
**284, 333, 560**
- \minilof . . . . . 1, 66, 81, 102, 130, 145, 164,  
446, 511, 548, 573, 1289, 1413, 1940,  
1958, 2328, 2331, 2576, 2579, 3317,  
6791, 6879, 6972, 7395, 7531
- \minilof@ (command) . . . . . **281, 289**
- \minilof@ . . . . . 3317, 3318, 3499
- \minilof@mtcck . . . . . 5336, 5375
- minilofdepth (depth counter) **31, 203, 211, 274,**  
**283**
- \minilot (command) **20, 27, 31, 34, 38, 39, 80,**  
**83, 171, 173, 208, 277, 284, 335, 560**
- \minilot . . . . . 1, 67, 82, 103, 131, 146, 165, 448,  
513, 550, 575, 1291, 1414, 1888, 1908,  
3385, 6800, 6888, 6983, 7395, 7531
- \minilot@ (command) . . . . . **284**
- \minilot@ . . . . . 3385, 3386, 3499
- \minilot@mtcck . . . . . 5339, 5381
- minilotdepth (depth counter) **31, 203, 211, 286**
- minipage (environment) . . . . . **134, 558**
- minitoc (package) . . . . . **23, 245**
- \minitoc (command) **20, 26, 27, 29, 32, 34, 35,**  
**38, 39, 52, 55, 63, 75, 80, 83, 113, 171,**  
**173, 208, 232, 235, 277, 278, 281, 290,**  
**307, 330, 559–561, 567, 568**
- \minitoc . . . . . 1, 16, 23, 38, 45, 225, 245,  
252, 262, 272, 347, 444, 509, 546, 571,  
894, 901, 908, 1218, 1287, 1344, 1345,  
1368, 1397, 1412, 1513, 1560, 1638,  
1665, 1719, 1723, 1730, 1734, 1763,  
1811, 1939, 1958, 2021, 2097, 2168,  
2178, 2214, 2238, 2399, 2430, 2439,  
2464, 2468, 2472, 2476, 2483, 3247,  
6782, 6870, 6961, 7395, 7531
- minitoc-ex.tex (old example document) . **585**
- minitoc-hyper (package) . . . . . **59, 211**
- minitoc-hyper.sty (file) . . . . . **211**
- minitoc-texmf.zip (file) . **212, 227, 229, 230,**  
**238, 587**
- minitoc.bib (file) . . . **211, 227, 228, 230, 566**
- minitoc.bug (file) . **49, 54, 211, 227, 228, 230,**  
**236, 237, 566, 571, 572, 576, 577, 580**
- minitoc.dtx (file) . **59, 206, 208, 211, 226–230,**  
**236, 378, 418, 582**
- minitoc.ins (file) . **41, 206–208, 211, 212, 215,**  
**226–230, 378, 418, 441, 570, 582**
- minitoc.ist (file) . . . **211, 227, 228, 230, 569**
- minitoc.l (file) . . . . . **211, 226–228, 230, 573**
- minitoc.lan (file) **206, 211, 227, 228, 230, 418**
- minitoc.pdf (file) . . . . . **212, 227, 228, 230**
- minitoc.pre (file) **212, 227, 228, 230, 573, 578**
- minitoc.ps (file) . . . . . **212**
- minitoc.sty (file) . . . **212, 226, 227, 230, 249**
- minitoc.sum (file) . . . . . **212, 227, 228, 230**
- minitoc.tex (file) . . . . . **562, 566**
- \minitoc@ (command) . . . . . **276, 278, 289**
- \minitoc@ . . . . . 3247, 3248, 3499
- \minitoc@mtcck . . . . . 5333, 5367
- minitocdepth (depth counter) **20, 26, 27, 31, 41,**  
**63, 68, 80, 203, 211, 275, 280, 558**
- \minitocno (command) . . . . . **558, 559**
- minitocoff (package) . . . . . **232, 233, 562**
- \minitocyes (command) . . . . . **558**
- minutes (package) . . . . . **212, 276, 379**
- MITTELBACH, Frank . . . . . **209, 232, 241, 276, 305,**  
**329, 561, 564, 565**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [54, 168, 196,  
197, 198, 199, 200, 201, 202, 203, 204]
- \MLF@ . . . . . 3760, 3762
- \MLF@contentsline (command) . . . . . **297**
- \MLF@contentsline . . . . . 3721, 3762
- \MLF@explist . . . . . 3719, 3746
- \MLF@line . . . . . 3759, 3760
- \MLF@list . . . . . 3716, 3719, 3746, 3762
- \MLF@lof . . . . . 3719, 3747, 3762
- \MLF@loop . . . . . 3716, 3747
- \MLF@next (command) . . . . . **298**
- \MLF@next . . . . . 3535, 3716, 3746
- \mlf@pgno . . . . . 3084, 3085
- \MLF@read . . . . . 3747, 3758, 3762
- \mlf@rule 3190, 3333, 3382, 5209, 5212, 5215
- \mlf@setform (command) . . . . . **283, 363**
- \mlf@setform . . . . . 3370, 5567
- \MLF@test (command) . . . . . **298**
- \MLF@test . . . . . 3760, 3762
- \mlf@dotsep . . . . . 5537, 5570
- \mlffont (command) . . . . . **33, 34, 80, 282**
- \mlffont . . . . . 1, 3213, 3333, 7567
- \mlflofrmargin . . . . . 5528
- \mlfname . . . . . 3725
- \mlfpagenumbers (command) . . . . . **43, 82**
- \mlfpagenumbers . . . . . 3065, 3078, 3084, 3097,  
7627
- \mlfpnumwidth . . . . . 5519, 5568
- \mlfrule (command) . . . . . **43, 82, 567**
- \mlfrule . . . . . 5199, 7609
- \mlfSfont (command) . . . . . **33, 34, 40, 80, 573**
- \mlfSfont . . . . . 1, 3213, 7567
- \mlftitle (command) . . . . . **34, 35, 80, 441**

- \mlftitle ..... 1, 3332, 3342, 3352, 3356, 6250, 7275, 7844, 7862, 7883, 7904, 7922, 7940, 7962, 7991, 8008, 8025, 8043, 8059, 8075, 8091, 8107, 8124, 8145, 8173, 8203, 8224, 8240, 8275, 8313, 8332, 8349, 8372, 8389, 8406, 8429, 8455, 8472, 8493, 8513, 8544, 8582, 8599, 8616, 8637, 8660, 8693, 8731, 8750, 8767, 8782, 8800, 8828, 8832, 8868, 8908, 8938, 9049, 9079, 9116, 9138, 9163, 9180, 9198, 9216, 9299, 9300, 9320, 9337, 9356, 9378, 9395, 9419, 9436, 9453, 9474, 9497, 9514, 9538, 9569, 9617, 9632, 9651, 9667, 9682, 9698, 9719, 9738, 9756, 9777, 9794, 9812, 9845, 9873, 9913, 9953, 9978, 10046, 10063, 10080, 10102, 10122, 10139, 10160, 10175, 10191, 10212, 10229, 10246, 10270, 10307, 10335, 10362, 10383, 10398, 10413, 10428
- \mlftocrmarg ..... 5532, 5569
- \MLT@ ..... 3821, 3823
- \MLT@contentsline (command) ..... **300**
- \MLT@contentsline ..... 3782, 3823
- \MLT@explist ..... 3780, 3807
- \MLT@line ..... 3820, 3821
- \MLT@list ..... 3777, 3780, 3807, 3823
- \MLT@loop ..... 3777, 3808
- \MLT@lot ..... 3780, 3808, 3823
- \MLT@next (command) ..... **300**
- \MLT@next ..... 3540, 3777, 3807
- \mlt@pgno ..... 3090, 3091
- \MLT@read ..... 3808, 3819, 3823
- \mlt@rule 3190, 3401, 3450, 5218, 5221, 5224
- \mlt@setform (command) ..... **286, 363**
- \mlt@setform ..... 3438, 5582
- \MLT@test (command) ..... **301**
- \MLT@test ..... 3821, 3823
- \mltdotsep ..... 5537
- \mltfont (command) ..... **33, 34, 80, 285**
- \mltfont ..... 1, 3213, 3401, 7567
- \mlttitle ..... 7884
- \mltlofrmarg ..... 5528
- \mltname ..... 3786
- \mltpagenumbers (command) ..... **43, 82**
- \mltpagenumbers .. 3071, 3078, 3084, 3090, 3097, 7627
- \mltpnumwidth ..... 5519
- \mltrule (command) ..... **43, 82, 567**
- \mltrule ..... 5199, 7609
- \mltSfont (command) ..... **33, 34, 80, 573**
- \mltSfont ..... 1, 3213, 7567
- \mltttitle (command) ..... **34, 35, 80, 441**
- \mltttitle ..... 1, 3400, 3410, 3420, 3424, 6250, 7275, 7844, 7863, 7905, 7923, 7941, 7963, 7992, 8009, 8026, 8044, 8060, 8076, 8092, 8108, 8125, 8146, 8176, 8205, 8225, 8241, 8276, 8314, 8333, 8350, 8373, 8390, 8407, 8430, 8456, 8473, 8494, 8516, 8546, 8583, 8600, 8617, 8638, 8661, 8694, 8732, 8751, 8768, 8783, 8801, 8872, 8912, 8939, 9051, 9082, 9117, 9139, 9164, 9181, 9199, 9217, 9321, 9338, 9357, 9379, 9396, 9420, 9437, 9454, 9475, 9498, 9515, 9539, 9571, 9618, 9633, 9652, 9668, 9683, 9699, 9720, 9739, 9757, 9778, 9795, 9813, 9830, 9831, 9846, 9877, 9917, 9956, 9979, 10047, 10064, 10081, 10104, 10123, 10140, 10161, 10176, 10192, 10213, 10230, 10247, 10271, 10309, 10336, 10363, 10384, 10399, 10414, 10429
- \mlttocrmarg ..... 5535
- \mmm ..... 9469–9471, 9473–9475, 9477–9479, 9492–9494, 9496–9498, 9500–9502, 9509–9511, 9513–9515, 9517–9519
- \mnr ..... 8219–8221, 8223–8225, 8227–8229, 8235–8237, 8239–8241, 8243–8245, 9533–9535, 9537–9539, 9541–9543, 10393–10395, 10397–10399, 10401–10403, 10408–10410, 10412–10414, 10416–10418
- mongol (language option) ..... **36, 499**
- mongol.mld (file) ..... **227, 230, 499**
- mongolb (language option) ..... **36, 500**
- mongolb.mld (file) **227, 230, 238, 239, 500, 501, 588**
- mongolb.mlo (file) ..... **238, 239, 588**
- mongolian (language option) ..... **36, 501**
- mongolian.dtx (file) ..... **500**
- mongolian.mld (file) . **227, 230, 239, 501, 588**
- MonTeX (package) . **41, 212, 441, 449–451, 454, 455, 499, 513, 529, 530, 581**
- MOON, Young Joon ..... **241, ⇨[205]**
- MOORE, ROSS ..... **241, ⇨[123]**
- MORAWSKI, Jens-Uwe .... **85, 241, ⇨[157, 207]**
- morefloats (package) ..... **569**
- MORI, Lapo Filippo ..... **241**
- MORRISON, Michael A. .... **241**
- mtc (counter) . **84, 261, 265, 273, 275, 293, 294, 297, 300, 354, 564**
- mtc-2c.pdf (example document) ..... **230**
- mtc-2c.tex (example document) . **87, 213, 227, 228, 230, 585**
- mtc-2nd.pdf (example document) ..... **230**

- mtc-2nd.tex (example document) 88, 213, 227, 228, 230, 255, 470, 585  
 mtc-3co.pdf (example document) . . . . . 230  
 mtc-3co.tex (example document) 89, 213, 227, 228, 230, 239, 588  
 mtc-add.bib (example document) 213, 227, 585  
 mtc-add.pdf (example document) . . . . . 230  
 mtc-add.tex (example document) . 48, 92, 93, 213, 227, 228, 230, 585  
 mtc-adds.tex (old example document) . . . 587  
 mtc-ads.pdf (example document) . . . . . 230  
 mtc-ads.tex (example document) 48, 97, 213, 227, 228, 230, 585  
 mtc-amem.tex (old example document) . . . 587  
 mtc-amm.pdf (example document) . . . . . 230  
 mtc-amm.tex (example document) 102, 214, 227, 228, 230, 585  
 mtc-apx.pdf (example document) . . . . . 230  
 mtc-apx.tex (example document) 64, 87, 103, 214, 227, 228, 230, 581, 585  
 mtc-art.pdf (example document) . . . . . 230  
 mtc-art.tex (example document) 103, 214, 227, 228, 230, 585  
 mtc-bk.pdf (example document) . . . . . 230  
 mtc-bk.tex (example document) 108, 214, 227, 228, 230, 585  
 mtc-bo.pdf (example document) . . . . . 230  
 mtc-bo.tex (example document) 115, 214, 227, 228, 230, 582, 585  
 mtc-book.tex (old example document) . . . 587  
 mtc-ch0.pdf (example document) . . . . . 230  
 mtc-ch0.tex (example document) 119, 214, 227, 228, 230, 585  
 mtc-cri.log (file) . . . . . 121  
 mtc-cri.pdf (example document) . . . . . 230  
 mtc-cri.tex (example document) 121, 214, 227, 228, 230, 585  
 mtc-fo1.pdf (example document) . . . . . 230  
 mtc-fo1.tex (example document) 121, 123, 214, 227, 228, 230, 585  
 mtc-fo2.pdf (example document) . . . . . 230  
 mtc-fo2.tex (example document) 123, 214, 227, 228, 230, 585  
 mtc-gap.pdf (example document) . . . . . 230  
 mtc-gap.tex (example document) 73, 87, 124, 214, 227, 228, 230, 585  
 mtc-gaps.tex (old example document) . . . 587  
 mtc-hi1.pdf (example document) . . . . . 230  
 mtc-hi1.tex (example document) 65, 87, 124, 214, 227, 228, 230, 585  
 mtc-hi2.pdf (example document) . . . . . 230  
 mtc-hi2.tex (example document) 66, 87, 124, 214, 227, 228, 230, 585  
 mtc-hia.pdf (example document) . . . . . 230  
 mtc-hia.tex (example document) 125, 214, 227, 228, 230, 585  
 mtc-hir.pdf (example document) . . . . . 230  
 mtc-hir.tex (example document) 125, 214, 227, 228, 230, 585  
 mtc-hop.pdf (example document) . . . . . 230  
 mtc-hop.tex (example document) 126, 214, 227, 228, 230, 585  
 mtc-liv.pdf (example document) . . . . . 230  
 mtc-liv.tex (example document) 127, 214, 227, 228, 230, 585  
 mtc-mem.pdf (example document) . . . . . 230  
 mtc-mem.tex (example document) 131, 214, 227, 228, 230, 585  
 mtc-mem1.tex (old example document) . . . 587  
 mtc-mm1.pdf (example document) . . . . . 230  
 mtc-mm1.tex (example document) 132, 214, 227, 228, 230, 585  
 mtc-mu.pdf (example document) . . . . . 230  
 mtc-mu.tex (example document) 133, 215, 227, 228, 230, 585  
 mtc-sbf.pdf (example document) . . . . . 230  
 mtc-sbf.tex (example document) 135, 215, 227, 228, 230, 585  
 mtc-scr.pdf (example document) . . . . . 230  
 mtc-scr.tex (example document) 137, 215, 227, 228, 230, 585  
 mtc-subf.tex (old example document) . . . 587  
 mtc-syn.pdf (example document) . . . . . 230  
 mtc-syn.tex (example document) 138, 215, 227, 228, 230, 585  
 mtc-tbi.pdf (example document) . . . . . 230  
 mtc-tbi.tex (example document) 140, 215, 227, 228, 230, 585  
 mtc-tlc.pdf (example document) . . . . . 230  
 mtc-tlc.tex (example document) 141, 215, 227, 228, 230, 585  
 mtc-tlo.pdf (example document) . . . . . 230  
 mtc-tlo.tex (example document) 75, 87, 141, 215, 227, 228, 230, 586  
 mtc-tsf.pdf (example document) . . . . . 230  
 mtc-tsf.tex (example document) 141, 215, 227, 228, 230, 585  
 mtc-tsfc.tex (old example document) . . . 587  
 \MTC@ . . . . . 3692, 3696  
 \mtc@While . . . . . 2856, 2858, 2863  
 \mtc@addmislanguage (command) . . . . . 382  
 \mtc@addmislanguage . . . 6179, 6184, 6230  
 \mtc@addtomaf . . . . . 7308  
 \mtc@arg@dotinterval . . . . . 5511  
 \mtc@arg@numwidth . . . . . 5517  
 \mtc@arg@pagenumwidth . . . . . 5515  
 \mtc@arg@tocrightmargin . . . . . 5513

- \mtc@BBR (command) . . . . . **265**
- \mtc@BBR 2961, 3289, 3295, 3359, 3365, 3427,  
3433, 4041, 4046, 4114, 4119, 4189,  
4194, 4643, 4648, 4709, 4714, 4776,  
4781
- \mtc@Body . . . . . 2870
- \mtc@bottom@rule . . 3307, 3313, 3380, 3448
- \mtc@ck . . . . . 7695
- \mtc@CkFile (command) . . **261, 278, 282, 285**
- \mtc@CkFile . 2870, 3255, 3325, 3393, 4002,  
4075, 4150, 4608, 4674, 4741
- \mtc@CkStr . . 2870, 3263, 3333, 3401, 4015,  
4088, 4163, 4616, 4683, 4750
- \mtc@classck . . . . . 7368
- \MTC@contentsline (command) . . **293, 302**
- \MTC@contentsline . . . . . 3612, 3694
- \mtc@dot . . . . . 3839
- \mtc@EndWhile . . . . . 2845, 2870
- \MTC@explist . . . . . 3609, 3677
- \mtc@featparam@ (command) . . . . . **371**
- \mtc@featparam@abbrev (command) . . . **371**
- \mtc@featparam@abbrev . . 5821, 5841, 5860
- \mtc@featparam@third (command) . . . **371**
- \mtc@featparam@third . . . . . 5841, 5860
- \mtc@featureparam@after . . . . . 5812
- \mtc@featureparam@before . . . . . 5810
- \mtc@featureparam@pagestyle . . . . . 5814
- \mtc@fparam@abbrev (command) . . . . . **364**
- \mtc@fparam@abbrev . . . . 5594, 5614, 5631
- \mtc@glofix@level (command) . . . . . **376**
- \mtc@glofix@level . 6004, 6027, 6036–6038,  
6044
- \mtc@hints@@chapter . . . . . 6667, 7362
- \mtc@hints@@part . . . . . 6648, 7359
- \mtc@hints@@schapter . . . . . 6667, 7362
- \mtc@hints@@sect . . . . . 6686, 7365
- \mtc@hints@@spart . . . . . 6648, 7359
- \mtc@hints@@ssect . . . . . 6686, 7365
- \mtc@hints@begindoc (command) . . **388, 396**
- \mtc@hints@begindoc . . 6461, 6729, 7355
- \mtc@hints@chapter (command) . . . . . **394**
- \mtc@hints@chapter . . . 6648, 6667, 7362
- \mtc@hints@checklongext . . . . . 7027
- \mtc@hints@enddoc (command) **388, 397, 412**
- \mtc@hints@enddoc . 6461, 6730, 7261, 7355
- \mtc@hints@part (command) . . . . . **394**
- \mtc@hints@part . . . . . 6648, 7359
- \mtc@hints@section (command) . . . . . **394**
- \mtc@hints@section . . . 6648, 6686, 7365
- \mtc@hook@beforeinputfile (command) **255,**  
**280, 283, 286, 566**
- \mtc@hook@beforeinputfile . . 2767, 3297,  
3370, 3438, 4048, 4125, 4200, 4650,  
4720, 4787
- \mtc@hstrut . . 2961, 4111, 4186, 4705, 4772
- \mtc@hstrutbox . . . . . 2961
- \mtc@ifmtarg (command) . . **260, 262, 264, 265**
- \mtc@ifmtarg . . 2845, 2880, 2917, 2943, 2954
- \mtc@ixfix@level (command) . . . . . **377**
- \mtc@ixfix@level . . 6047, 6070, 6079–6081,  
6087
- \mtc@level@abbrev (command) . . . . . **355**
- \mtc@level@abbrev . . . . 5313, 5331, 5410
- \MTC@line . . . . . 3690, 3692
- \MTC@list . . . . . 3605, 3609, 3677, 3694
- \mtc@listmisslanguages (command) . . . **382**
- \mtc@listmisslanguages . . . . 6179, 6260
- \mtc@LML . . . . . 6179
- \MTC@loop . . . . . 3605, 3678
- \mtc@ltypetable@minilof . . . . . 5804
- \mtc@ltypetable@minilot . . . . . 5805
- \mtc@ltypetable@minitoc . . . . . 5803
- \mtc@ltypetable@partlof . . . . . 5801
- \mtc@ltypetable@partlot . . . . . 5802
- \mtc@ltypetable@parttoc . . . . . 5800
- \mtc@ltypetable@sectlof . . . . . 5807
- \mtc@ltypetable@sectlot . . . . . 5808
- \mtc@ltypetable@secttoc . . . . . 5806
- \mtc@maf (command) . . . . . **414, 415**
- \mtc@maf . . . . . 7308, 7354
- \mtc@maf@long (command) . . . . . **414**
- \mtc@maf@long . . . . . 7308
- \mtc@maf@short (command) . . . . . **414**
- \mtc@maf@short . . . . . 7308
- \mtc@markboth . 3165, 3262, 3332, 3400, 4009,  
4082, 4157, 4616, 4681, 4748
- \mtc@mta@abbrev (command) . . . . . **354**
- \mtc@mta@abbrev . . . . . 5294, 5331, 5410
- \mtc@mtade@abbrev (command) . . . . . **372**
- \mtc@mtade@abbrev . . . . . 5881, 5900
- \mtc@mtatf@abbrev (command) . . . . . **358**
- \mtc@mtatf@abbrev . . . . . 5430, 5449
- \mtc@mtati@abbrev (command) . . . . . **359**
- \mtc@mtati@abbrev . . . . . 5471, 5490
- \mtc@mtf@abbrev (command) . . . . . **364**
- \mtc@mtf@abbrev . . . . . 5594, 5631
- \mtc@mtfeat@abbrev (command) . . **370, 371**
- \mtc@mtfeat@abbrev . . . . . 5821, 5860
- \mtc@mttpn@abbrev (command) . . . . . **366**
- \mtc@mttpn@abbrev . . . . . 5669, 5690
- \mtc@mttru@abbrev (command) . . . . . **368**
- \mtc@mttru@abbrev . . . . . 5745, 5766
- \MTC@next (command) . . . . . **295**
- \MTC@next . . . . . 3530, 3605, 3677
- \mtc@noX . . . . . 5709, 5711, 5766
- \mtc@onebackchap . . . . . 2905
- \mtc@onebackchapter . . . . . 2904

- \mtc@onebackpart ..... 2904
- \mtc@onebacksect (command) ..... **263**
- \mtc@onebacksect ..... 2906, 2934
- \mtc@onebacksection ..... 2904
- \mtc@param ..... 3839
- \mtc@pgno .... 3078, 3079, 3297, 3370, 3438
- \mtc@pns@abbrev (command) ..... **366**
- \mtc@pns@abbrev ..... 5669, 5690
- \mtc@pns@abbrevX ..... 5708
- \MTC@read ..... 3678, 3690, 3694
- \mtc@restorelofdepth ..... 5958, 7739
- \mtc@restorelotdepth ... 5991, 6003, 7739
- \mtc@restoretocdepth ... 5924, 5954, 5970, 5987, 7739
- \mtc@Rline ..... 2870
- \mtc@rule (command) ..... **275, 560**
- \mtc@rule 3190, 3263, 3313, 5200, 5203, 5206
- \mtc@rusw@abbrev (command) ..... **369**
- \mtc@rusw@abbrev ..... 5745, 5766
- \mtc@rusw@abbrevX ..... 5783
- \mtc@savelofdepth ..... 5957, 5964, 7739
- \mtc@savelotdepth ..... 5990, 5997, 7739
- \mtc@savetocdepth (command) ..... **373**
- \mtc@savetocdepth . 5924, 5948, 5981, 7739
- \mtc@schapter ..... 3460
- \mtc@sectlevel@chapter ..... 5281
- \mtc@sectlevel@figure ..... 5288
- \mtc@sectlevel@paragraph ..... 5285
- \mtc@sectlevel@section ..... 5282
- \mtc@sectlevel@subfigure ..... 5290
- \mtc@sectlevel@subparagraph ..... 5286
- \mtc@sectlevel@subsection ..... 5283
- \mtc@sectlevel@subsubsection ..... 5284
- \mtc@sectlevel@subtable ..... 5291
- \mtc@sectlevel@table ..... 5289
- \mtc@setform ..... 3297, 5552
- \mtc@setlangopt (command) ..... **384**
- \mtc@setlangopt ..... 6184, 6282
- \mtc@setlangoptm (command) ..... **384**
- \mtc@setlangoptm ..... 6230, 6282
- \mtc@setlangopto (command) ..... **384**
- \mtc@setlangopto ..... 6184, 6282
- \mtc@string (command) ..... **265**
- \mtc@string . 2961, 3694, 3762, 3823, 3839, 3859, 4406, 4469, 4531, 5018, 5079, 5140, 7544
- \mtc@strut . . 2961, 3297, 3370, 3438, 4048, 4125, 4200, 4650, 4720, 4787
- \mtc@strutbox (command) ..... **565**
- \mtc@strutbox ..... 2961
- \mtc@sv@fklistoffigures ..... 6719
- \mtc@sv@fklistoftables ..... 6719
- \mtc@sv@fktableofcontents ..... 6719
- \mtc@sv@listoffigures ..... 6710
- \mtc@sv@listoftables ..... 6710
- \mtc@sv@lofdepth ..... 5938
- \mtc@sv@lotdepth ..... 5971
- \mtc@sv@tableofcontents ..... 6710
- \mtc@sv@tocdepth ..... 5924, 5938, 5971
- \mtc@svchapter ..... 2952
- \mtc@svf@tocdepth ..... 5938
- \mtc@svpart ..... 2907, 4221
- \mtc@svsection ..... 2940
- \mtc@svspart ..... 2907
- \mtc@svss ..... 2940
- \mtc@svt@tocdepth ..... 5971
- \MTC@test (command) ..... **296**
- \MTC@test ..... 3692, 3694
- \mtc@tmp@name ..... 5331, 5410
- \mtc@tmpde@name ..... 5900
- \mtc@tmpfeat@name ..... 5860
- \mtc@tmpfm@name ..... 5631
- \mtc@tmppn@name ..... 5690, 5766
- \mtc@tmptf@name ..... 5449
- \mtc@tmpti@name ..... 5490
- \MTC@toc ..... 3609, 3678, 3694
- \mtc@toks (command) **265, 294, 320, 324, 326**
- \mtc@toks ... 2961, 3628, 3737, 3798, 3839, 3859, 4343, 4442, 4504, 4958, 5055, 5116, 5410, 5449, 5490, 5900
- \mtc@typetable@minilof ..... 5230
- \mtc@typetable@minilot ..... 5231
- \mtc@typetable@minitoc ..... 5229
- \mtc@typetable@partlof ..... 5227
- \mtc@typetable@partlot ..... 5228
- \mtc@typetable@parttoc ..... 5226
- \mtc@typetable@sectlof ..... 5233
- \mtc@typetable@sectlot ..... 5234
- \mtc@typetable@secttoc ..... 5232
- \mtc@typetitle@minilof ..... 5239
- \mtc@typetitle@minilot ..... 5240
- \mtc@typetitle@minitoc ..... 5238
- \mtc@typetitle@partlof ..... 5236
- \mtc@typetitle@partlot ..... 5237
- \mtc@typetitle@parttoc ..... 5235
- \mtc@typetitle@sectlof ..... 5242
- \mtc@typetitle@sectlot ..... 5243
- \mtc@typetitle@secttoc ..... 5241
- \mtc@v ... 2961, 3282, 3286, 3352, 3356, 3420, 3424, 4032, 4100, 4179, 4631, 4697, 4764
- \mtc@verse (command) ..... **277**
- mtc@verse (environment) **89, 90, 277, 280, 283, 284, 286, 287, 362, 363**
- \mtc@verse ..... 335, 337, 3236
- \mtc@While (command) ..... **261**

- \mtc@While ..... 2845, 2870
- \mtc@WhileBody ..... 2845
- \mtc@WhileCondition ..... 2845
- \mtc@WhileNext ..... 2845
- \mtc@WhilePreCondition ..... 2845
- \MTC@WriteCoffeeline (command) .... **302**
- \MTC@WriteCoffeeline ... 3644, 3859, 4354, 4958
- \MTC@WriteContentsLine . 4314, 4941, 5038, 5099
- \MTC@WriteContentsline (command) .. **302, 320, 324, 326**
- \MTC@WriteContentsline . 3629, 3661, 3737, 3798, 3839, 4344, 4368, 4442, 4504, 4958, 4989, 5055, 5116
- \mtc@xifmtarg ..... 2845
- \mtc@YN@F ..... 5255
- \mtc@YN@f ..... 5254
- \mtc@YN@FALSE ..... 5251
- \mtc@YN@false ..... 5250
- \mtc@YN@FAUX ..... 5253
- \mtc@YN@faux ..... 5252
- \mtc@YN@N ..... 5249
- \mtc@YN@n ..... 5248
- \mtc@YN@NO ..... 5247
- \mtc@YN@no ..... 5246
- \mtc@YN@NON ..... 5256
- \mtc@YN@non ..... 5257
- \mtc@YN@O ..... 5277
- \mtc@YN@o ..... 5278
- \mtc@YN@OFF ..... 5245
- \mtc@YN@off ..... 5244
- \mtc@YN@ON ..... 5262
- \mtc@YN@on ..... 5261
- \mtc@YN@OUI ..... 5275
- \mtc@YN@oui ..... 5276
- \mtc@YN@T ..... 5270
- \mtc@YN@t ..... 5269
- \mtc@YN@TRUE ..... 5268
- \mtc@YN@true ..... 5267
- \mtc@YN@V ..... 5274
- \mtc@YN@v ..... 5273
- \mtc@YN@VRAI ..... 5272
- \mtc@YN@vrai ..... 5271
- \mtc@YN@Y ..... 5266
- \mtc@YN@y ..... 5265
- \mtc@YN@YES ..... 5264
- \mtc@YN@yes ..... 5263
- \mtc@zrule (command) ..... **265, 565**
- \mtc@zrule .. 2961, 3289, 3310, 3359, 3383, 3427, 3451, 4041, 4062, 4114, 4136, 4189, 4211, 4643, 4662, 4709, 4729, 4776, 4797
- \mtcaddchapter (command) ..... **33, 47, 48, 50, 63, 67, 68, 84, 89, 93, 137, 139, 193, 197, 213, 234, 265, 564**
- \mtcaddchapter ..... 1, 14, 180, 438, 440, 442, 481, 482, 485, 486, 491, 492, 540, 1637, 1707, 1711, 1717, 2373, 2414, 2419, 2424, 2460, 2462, 2480, 2482, 2492, 2954, 7695
- \mtcaddpart (command) . **33, 69, 84, 89, 193, 197, 262, 564**
- \mtcaddpart .... 1, 1699, 1937, 2917, 7695
- \mtcaddsection (command) **33, 50, 67, 68, 84, 97, 193, 197, 213, 237, 264, 564, 576**
- \mtcaddsection ..... 1, 180, 649, 651, 653, 691–694, 699, 700, 780–783, 788, 789, 834, 1051, 2943, 7695
- \mtcArabTok ..... 7916–7919, 7921–7923, 7925–7927
- \mtcdotsep ..... 5537, 5555
- \mtcEnglishIIpart ..... 8441, 8450–8452
- \mtcfixglossary (command) **84, 158, 159, 179, 187, 197, 236, 237, 376, 432, 569, 576, 578**
- \mtcfixglossary . 1, 6009, 6015, 6017, 6026, 7745
- \mtcfixindex (command) **48, 84, 95, 101, 158, 159, 179, 188, 197, 235–237, 377, 432, 567, 568, 576, 578**
- \mtcfixindex .. 1, 537, 831, 6052, 6058, 6060, 6069, 7746
- \mtcfont (command) ..... **27, 33–35, 80, 279**
- \mtcfont ..... 1, 1183, 3213, 3263, 7567
- \mtcFrenchIIpart .. 8672, 8684, 8687, 8690
- \mtcgapafterheads (command) . **73, 79, 214, 237, 581**
- \mtcgapafterheads .. 197, 202, 2650, 3934, 3948, 3962, 7422
- \mtcgapbeforeheads (command) **73, 79, 214, 237, 581**
- \mtcgapbeforeheads . 196, 201, 2650, 3934, 3948, 3962, 7422
- mtcglo.ist (file) ..... **572**
- \mtchideinmainlof (command) .. **65, 84, 214**
- mtchideinmainlof (environment) . **63, 65, 84, 179, 188, 197, 214, 235, 374, 431, 567, 570, 571, 580, 581**
- \mtchideinmainlof ..... 148
- \mtchideinmainlot (command) . **65, 84, 125, 126, 214**
- mtchideinmainlot (environment) . **63, 65, 84, 180, 189, 197, 214, 235, 374, 375, 431, 567, 570, 571, 580, 581**
- \mtchideinmainlot ..... 156, 1851, 1899

- mtchideinmaintoc (environment) **63, 84, 114, 180, 189, 197, 214, 235, 373, 431, 567, 580**
- \mtcindent (command) **27, 42, 80, 87, 249, 275, 277**
- \mtcindent 240, 331, 1182, 1454, 2228, 2644, 3190, 3236, 3289, 3359, 3427, 7412
- \mtcloadmlo (command) **189, 236, 378, 427, 571**
- \mtcloadmlo . . 6110, 7608, 8290, 8301, 8562, 8571, 8955, 8968, 8980, 8992, 9001, 9013, 9025, 9034, 9230, 9242, 9254, 9266, 9279, 9288, 9484, 9992, 10002, 10010, 10018, 10026, 10034, 10258
- \mtclofrmarg . . . . . 5528
- mtcmess (package) **146, 215, 237, 420, 434, 579**
- mtcmess.sty (file) . . . . . **226, 227, 230**
- \mtcname . . . . . 3616, 3647
- mtcnorsk.sty (file) . . . . . **562**
- mtcnynorsk.sty (file) . . . . . **562**
- mtcoff (package) . . **32, 52, 55, 92, 145, 192–194, 215, 232, 233, 419, 420, 431–434, 559, 562, 570, 571**
- mtcoff.sty (file) . . . . . **226, 227, 230, 568**
- \mtcoffwarn@false . . . . . 7678
- \mtcoffwarn@true (command) . . . . . **570**
- \mtcoffwarn@true . . 7426, 7434, 7442, 7454, 7462, 7470, 7481, 7489, 7497, 7695, 7706, 7717, 7747, 7754, 7761
- \mtcPackageError . . 2841, 5299, 5317, 5419, 5435, 5460, 5476, 5501, 5600, 5617, 5639, 5676, 5697, 5752, 5772, 5827, 5845, 5871, 5886, 5903, 5917, 5927, 5933, 5942, 5950, 5960, 5966, 5975, 5983, 5993, 5999, 6013, 6040, 6056, 6083, 6097, 6116, 6130, 6161, 6230, 7275, 7368, 7769
- \mtcPackageInfo 2637, 2772, 2817, 2824, 2826, 2828, 2911, 2924, 2926, 2932, 2951, 2975, 2986, 2988, 3257, 3327, 3395, 3548, 3567, 3586, 3617, 3621, 3650, 3654, 3686, 3726, 3730, 3755, 3787, 3791, 3816, 4004, 4077, 4152, 4252, 4271, 4290, 4318, 4322, 4332, 4336, 4397, 4431, 4435, 4460, 4493, 4497, 4522, 4610, 4676, 4743, 4879, 4898, 4917, 4947, 4951, 4978, 4982, 5011, 5044, 5048, 5072, 5105, 5109, 5133, 5157, 5413, 5452, 5493, 5633, 5712, 5717, 5787, 5792, 5863, 5911, 6094, 6113, 6190, 6206, 6219, 6466, 6480, 6488, 6496, 6504, 6512, 6520, 6596, 6620, 6631, 7267, 7309, 7769, 7786
- \mtcPackageWarning 3192, 3680, 3749, 3810, 3879, 4391, 4454, 4516, 4556, 5005, 5066, 5127, 7427, 7435, 7443, 7455, 7463, 7471, 7482, 7490, 7498, 7696, 7707, 7718, 7748, 7755, 7762, 7769
- \mtcPackageWarningNoLine 2908, 2928, 2993, 3005, 3010, 6006, 6016, 6049, 6059, 6156, **6184, 6260, 6472, 6528, 6538, 6555, 6570, 6586, 6605, 6613, 6643, 6656, 6661, 6675, 6680, 6695, 6700, 6738, 6752, 6761, 6770, 6781, 6790, 6799, 6810, 6819, 6828, 6838, 6847, 6856, 6867, 6876, 6885, 6896, 6905, 6914, 6925, 6936, 6947, 6960, 6971, 6982, 6995, 7006, 7017, 7033, 7042, 7051, 7062, 7071, 7080, 7089, 7098, 7107, 7116, 7125, 7134, 7143, 7152, 7161, 7170, 7178, 7185, 7192, 7199, 7206, 7213, 7220, 7227, 7234, 7241, 7248, 7255, 7262, 7680, 7769**
- \mtcpagenumbers (command) . . . **43, 82, 561**
- \mtcpagenumbers . . 1196, 3029, 3078, 3097, 7627
- mtcpatchmem (package) **145, 194, 215, 226, 435**
- mtcpatchmem.sty (file) . . . . . **226, 227, 230**
- \mtcPfont (command) . . . . **33, 35, 68, 80, 560**
- \mtcPfont . . . . . 1, 1186, 3213, 7567
- \mtcpnumwidth . . . . . 5519, 5553
- \mtcprepare (command) . **27, 39, 83, 157, 208, 220, 237, 350, 424, 578**
- \mtcprepare . . . . . 1, 5157, 7543
- \mtcprepare@ . . . . . 5157
- \mtcrule (command) . . . . . **43, 82, 561**
- \mtcrule . . . . . 5199, 7609
- \mtcsecondpartfalse 2745, 2750, 2756, 2764, 7676
- \mtcsecondparttrue . . . . 2748, 2754, 2761
- \mtcselectlanguage (command) . . . **35, 37, 38, 67, 72, 78, 146, 149, 180, 181, 189, 234, 236, 378, 384, 427, 441, 564, 571**
- \mtcselectlanguage . . . . . 1, 180, 6090, 6187, 6232, 7607, 7844, 7846, 7850, 7871, 7892, 7950, 7971, 7975, 7979, 8133, 8154, 8249, 8253, 8258, 8263, 8481, 8531, 8625, 8702, 8706, 8710, 9098, 9125, 9147, 9151, 9308, 9365, 9462, 9523, 9527, 9593, 9597, 9601, 9605, 9765, 10279, 10283, 10287, 10291, 10344, 10371
- \mtcsetdepth (command) . . **27, 28, 31, 41, 63, 78–81, 149, 182, 236, 372, 569**
- \mtcsetdepth 1, 1692, 2313, 2330, 2512, 2578, 5880, 5887, 5904, 5912, 5918, 5922, 7589

- `\mtcsetfeature` (command) **45, 46, 78, 83, 150, 182, 186, 197, 199, 205, 223, 235, 273, 369, 370, 568**
- `\mtcsetfeature` . . . 1, 3145, 5819, 5828, 5846, 5864, 5872, 7589
- `\mtcsetfont` (command) . . . . . **27, 28, 31, 40, 61–63, 68, 70, 71, 75, 78, 146, 150, 183, 187, 235, 276, 353, 354, 357, 358, 566, 573, 577**
- `\mtcsetfont` . . . . . 1, 214, 1754, 1757, 1760, 1802, 1805, 1808, 2200, 2201, 2314–2318, 2320–2323, 2510, 5292, 5293, 5300, 5318, 5414, 5420, 7589
- `\mtcsetformat` (command) **42, 43, 78, 90, 150, 183, 184, 187, 235, 280, 283, 286, 310, 312, 315, 332, 335, 337, 360–363, 567, 568**
- `\mtcsetformat` 1, 332, 3297, 3370, 3438, 5547, 5592, 5601, 5618, 5634, 5640, 7589
- `\mtcsetpagenumber@` . . . . . 5668
- `\mtcsetpagenumbers` (command) **44, 75, 78, 82, 184, 185, 235, 237, 365, 367, 567, 575**
- `\mtcsetpagenumbers` . . . 1, 5650, 5677, 5698, 7589
- `\mtcsetpagenumbers@` (command) . **365, 366**
- `\mtcsetpagenumbers@` . . . . . 5650, 5668
- `\mtcsetrules` (command) **44, 78, 82, 185, 235, 237, 367, 567, 575**
- `\mtcsetrules` . . . . . 1, 5726, 5753, 5773, 7589
- `\mtcsetrules@` (command) . . . . . **368**
- `\mtcsetrules@` . . . . . 5726, 5744
- `\mtcsettitle` (command) . . . . . **35, 37, 38, 40, 63, 67, 78, 146, 150, 186, 235, 359, 372, 567, 568**
- `\mtcsettitle` 1, 180, 2208, 5469, 5470, 5477, 5494, 5502, 7589
- `\mtcsettitlefont` (command) . **40, 62, 63, 78, 150, 186, 235, 276, 358, 359, 566**
- `\mtcsettitlefont` 1, 2206, 5428, 5429, 5436, 5453, 7589
- `\mtcSfont` (command) **27, 33, 35, 61, 68, 80, 560**
- `\mtcSfont` . . . . . 1, 1184, 3213, 7567
- `\mtcskip` (command) **27, 28, 78, 234, 249, 565, 569**
- `\mtcskip` . . . . . 1, 445, 447, 510, 512, 547, 549, 572, 574, 655, 659, 718, 741, 745, 807, 839, 861, 956, 1022, 1052, 1071, 1097, 1123, 1125, 1132, 1288, 1290, 1517, 2329, 2577, 2644, 7505
- `\mtcskipamount` (command) . . **27, 28, 78, 234, 249, 421, 565**
- `\mtcskipamount` . . . . . 1, 2644, 7412
- `\mtcSPfont` (command) **33, 35, 68, 80, 81, 560**
- `\mtcSPfont` . . . . . 1, 1186, 3213, 7567
- `\mtcSSfont` (command) **33, 35, 40, 68, 80, 425, 560**
- `\mtcSSfont` . . . . . 1, 1185, 3213, 7567
- `\mtcSSSfont` (command) **33, 35, 63, 68, 80, 560**
- `\mtcSSSfont` . . . . . 1, 1186, 3213, 7567
- `\mtcsv@listoffigures` . . . . . 2934
- `\mtcsv@listoftables` . . . . . 2934
- `\mtcsv@tableofcontents` . . . . . 2934
- `mtcswedish.sty` (file) . . . . . **561**
- `\mtctitle` (command) . **34, 35, 40, 63, 80, 441**
- `\mtctitle` . . . . . 1, 1458, 3262, 3263, 3333, 3401, 6250, 7275, 7844, 7861, 7882, 7903, 7921, 7939, 7961, 7990, 8007, 8024, 8042, 8058, 8074, 8090, 8106, 8123, 8144, 8171, 8201, 8223, 8239, 8274, 8312, 8331, 8348, 8371, 8388, 8405, 8428, 8454, 8471, 8492, 8512, 8543, 8581, 8598, 8615, 8636, 8659, 8692, 8727, 8729, 8749, 8766, 8781, 8799, 8825, 8865, 8905, 8937, 9047, 9076, 9115, 9137, 9162, 9179, 9197, 9215, 9298, 9319, 9336, 9355, 9377, 9394, 9418, 9435, 9452, 9473, 9496, 9513, 9537, 9565, 9567, 9616, 9631, 9650, 9666, 9681, 9697, 9718, 9737, 9755, 9776, 9793, 9811, 9829, 9844, 9870, 9910, 9951, 9977, 10045, 10062, 10079, 10100, 10121, 10138, 10159, 10174, 10190, 10211, 10228, 10245, 10269, 10306, 10334, 10361, 10382, 10397, 10412, 10427
- `\mtctocrmarg` . . . . . 5529, 5554
- `\mtifont` (command) **34, 35, 80, 279, 282, 285, 560**
- `\mtifont` . . . 1, 3213, 3263, 3333, 3401, 7567
- `mu.tex` (old example document) . . . . **583, 585**
- MÚGICA DE RIVERA, Javier A. . . **241, 471**, ⇨[56]
- MUHAMEDAGIĆ, Dejan . . . . . **241, 518**, ⇨[73]
- `multibib` (package) . . . . . **57, 215**
- `multicol` (package) . . . . . **87, 115, 566**
- `multicols` (environment) . . . . . **87, 90, 116**
- `\multicolumnmtc` . . . . . 333, 338
- `\multicolumnmtoc` . . . . . 328
- `multitoc` (package) . . . . . **89**
- `mypatches` (package) . . . . . **88**
- `\mz` . . . . . 9841, 9842, 9845, 9846, 9849, 9850



## N

- `\n@mti` . . 3225, 3263, 3333, 3401, 3545, 3564, 3583
- `\n@pti` . . 3924, 3931, 4015, 4088, 4163, 4249, 4268, 4287
- `\n@sti` . . 4578, 4616, 4683, 4750, 4876, 4895, 4914
- `\name` (command) . . . . . **584**
- `natbib` (package) . . . . . **199**
- NAUMOV, Sergei O. . . . . **241, 515**, [↔](#)[206]
- `naustrian` (language option) . . . . **36, 501, 566**
- `naustrian.mld` (file) . . . . . **227, 230, 501**
- `needspace` (package) . . . . . **54, 215**
- `\NeedsTeXFormat` . . . 2637, 7408, 7771, 7782
- NEUKAM, Frank . . . . . **85, 241**, [↔](#)[207]
- `\newblock` . . . . . 2281, 2283, 2289, 2290
- `\newbox` . . . . . 2964, 2968
- `\newcommand` (command) . . . . . **42**
- `\newcommand` . . . . . 333, 2230, 2308, 2544, 2555, 2917, 2943, 2954, 3199, 3886, 4562, 5293, 5429, 5470, 5593, 5650, 5668, 5726, 5744, 5820, 5880, 5924, 5925, 5957, 5958, 5990, 5991, 6027, 6070, 6141, 6185, 6201, 6230, 7509–7511, 7695, 7706, 7717, 7745, 7746, 7772, 7774, 7776, 7778
- `\newcommand*` (command) . . . . . **67**
- `\newcounter` . . 3161, 3163, 3197, 3203, 3868, 3874, 4547, 4561, 4565
- `\newenvironment` . . . 1492, 5926, 5941, 5959, 5974, 5992, 7733, 7735, 7737
- `\newif` (command) . . . . . **250**
- `\newif` . . . . . 424, 633, 2670–2712, 2714, 2716, 2718, 2720, 2722, 2724–2745, 2767, 2770, 2771, 2773, 2815, 2870–2872, 2977, 3015, 5292, 5428, 5469, 5592, 5648, 5649, 5724, 5725, 5819, 5879, 5923, 5938, 5971, 6026, 6069, 6090, 6158, 6176, 6184, 6461–6464, 7672–7676, 7678
- `\newlength` . . . . . 2644, 3895, 4567
- `\newread` (command) . . . . . **265, 560**
- `\newread` . . . . . 2961, 3008
- `\newtoks` . . . . . 2961
- `\newwrite` (command) . . . . . **232, 266**
- `\newwrite` . . . . . 2643, 3154
- `newzealand` (language option) . . . . **36, 502**
- `newzealand.mld` (file) . . . . . **227, 230, 502**
- `ngerman` (language option) . . . . . **36, 502, 566**
- `ngerman.mld` (file) . . . . . **227, 230, 502**
- `ngermanb` (language option) . . **36, 501, 502, 566**
- `ngermanb.dtx` (file) . . . . . **502, 503**
- `ngermanb.mld` (file) . . . . . **227, 230, 501, 502**
- `ngermanb2` (language option) . . . . . **36, 503**
- `ngermanb2.mld` (file) . . . . . **227, 230, 503, 572**
- NGUYEN, Cuong . . . . . **241**
- NICOLAS, Julien . . . . . **241**
- NIEPRASCHK, Rolf . . . . . **241**, [↔](#)[229]
- `nocheckfiles` (option) . . **31, 51, 167–169, 201, 218, 234, 380, 564**
- `\nocite` . . . . . 531, 825
- `nohints` (option) . . . . . **49, 77, 207, 218, 388**
- `\noindent` (command) . . . . . **560**
- `\noindent` 3279, 3349, 3417, 4030, 4103, 4178, 4632, 4698, 4765
- NOIREL, Josselin . . . . . **241**, [↔](#)[21]
- `nolistfiles` (option) . . . **49, 77, 218, 382, 572**
- `\nomlfpagenumbers` (command) . . . . **43, 82**
- `\nomlfpagenumbers` 1200, 3065, 3078, 3084, 7627
- `\nomlfrule` (command) . . . . . **43, 82, 567**
- `\nomlfrule` . . . . . 5199, 7609
- `\nomltpagenumbers` (command) . . . . **43, 82**
- `\nomltpagenumbers` 1201, 3071, 3078, 3084, 3090, 7627
- `\nomltrule` (command) . . . . . **43, 82, 567**
- `\nomltrule` . . . . . 5199, 7609
- `\nomtcpagenumbers` (command) . . **43, 82, 561, 565**
- `\nomtcpagenumbers` . 1199, 1456, 3029, 3078, 7627
- `\nomtcrule` (command) . . . . **43, 82, 561, 563**
- `\nomtcrule` . . . . . 1198, 1455, 5199, 7609
- `\noopsort` . . . . . 532, 826
- `\nopagebreak` (command) . . . . . **560**
- `\noplfpagenumbers` (command) . . . . **43, 82**
- `\noplfpagenumbers` . . . . 3065, 3089, 7627
- `\noplfrule` (command) . . . . . **43, 82, 567**
- `\noplfrule` . . . . . 5199, 7609
- `\nopltpagenumbers` (command) . . . . **43, 82**
- `\nopltpagenumbers` . . . . 3071, 3095, 7627
- `\nopltrule` (command) . . . . . **43, 82, 567**
- `\nopltrule` . . . . . 5199, 7609
- `\noptcpagenumbers` (command) . . . . **43, 82**
- `\noptcpagenumbers` . . . . 3051, 3083, 7627
- `\noptcrule` (command) . . . . . **43, 82**
- `\noptcrule` . . . . . 1197, 5199, 7609
- `\normalcolor` . . . . . 3496
- `\normalfont` . . . . 214, 219, 1467, 1477, 3496
- `\normalsize` (command) . . . . . **34, 218**
- `\normalsize` . . 1754, 1757, 1760, 1802, 1805, 1808, 2195, 2196, 2200, 2201, 2204, 2205, 3911–3913
- `norsk` (language option) . . . . . **36, 503**
- `norsk.dtx` (file) . . . . . **503, 504**
- `norsk.mld` (file) . . . . . **227, 230, 503**

norsk2 (language option) . . . . . 36, 504  
 norsk2.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 504, 572  
 \noslfpagenumbers (command) . . . . . 43, 82  
 \noslfpagenumbers . . . . . 3065, 3087, 7627  
 \noslfrule (command) . . . . . 43, 82, 567  
 \noslfrule . . . . . 5199, 7609  
 \nosltpagenumbers (command) . . . . . 43, 82  
 \nosltpagenumbers . . . . . 3071, 3093, 7627  
 \nosltrule (command) . . . . . 43, 82, 567  
 \nosltrule . . . . . 5199, 7609  
 \nostcpagenumbers (command) . . . . . 43, 82  
 \nostcpagenumbers . . . . . 3041, 3081, 7627  
 \nostcrule (command) . . . . . 43, 82  
 \nostcrule . . . . . 5199, 7609  
 notoccite (package) . . . . . 49, 85, 218, 234, 255, 280,  
     283, 286, 381, 414, 566  
 notoccite (option) . . . . . 49, 77, 218, 255, 381, 414,  
     566  
 nottoc (option of tocbibind) . . . . . 140  
 \numberline . . . . . 1227, 4824  
 \numwidth (command) . . . . . 42  
 \nun . . . . . 8577, 8581, 8585, 9041, 9048, 9055  
 nynorsk (language option) . . . . . 36, 504, 505  
 nynorsk.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 504  
 nynorsk2 (language option) . . . . . 36, 505  
 nynorsk2.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 505, 572

## O

OBERDIEK, Heiko . . . . . 59, 85, 211, 234, 241, 293, 302,  
     563, ↪[208, 227, 228]  
 \oe . . . . . 2092, 2122  
 OETIKER, Tobias . . . . . 241, ↪[209, 210]  
 OLD (file) . . . . . 583  
 Old Examples  
     2c.tex . . . . . 582, 585  
     add.bib . . . . . 584, 585  
     add.tex . . . . . 583, 585  
     addsec.tex . . . . . 575, 583, 585  
     amem.tex . . . . . 582  
     app-mem.tex . . . . . 585  
     apx.tex . . . . . 585  
     bo.tex . . . . . 585  
     ch0.tex . . . . . 583, 585  
     cri.tex . . . . . 583, 585  
     fo1.tex . . . . . 582, 585  
     fo2.tex . . . . . 582, 585  
     gaps.tex . . . . . 581, 585  
     hia.tex . . . . . 583, 585  
     hide.tex . . . . . 581  
     hide1.tex . . . . . 581, 585  
     hide2.tex . . . . . 581, 585  
     hir.tex . . . . . 583, 585

hop.tex . . . . . 583, 585  
 livre.tex . . . . . 583, 585  
 mem.tex . . . . . 582, 585  
 mem1.tex . . . . . 582, 585  
 mini-art.tex . . . . . 585  
 minitoc-ex.tex . . . . . 585  
 mtc-adds.tex . . . . . 587  
 mtc-amem.tex . . . . . 587  
 mtc-book.tex . . . . . 587  
 mtc-gaps.tex . . . . . 587  
 mtc-mem1.tex . . . . . 587  
 mtc-subf.tex . . . . . 587  
 mtc-tsfc.tex . . . . . 587  
 mu.tex . . . . . 583, 585  
 scr.tex . . . . . 582, 585  
 second.tex . . . . . 582, 585  
 subf.tex . . . . . 582, 585  
 tbi.tex . . . . . 582, 585  
 tlc.tex . . . . . 583, 585  
 tsfc.tex . . . . . 582, 585  
 OLKO, Mariusz . . . . . 241, 507, ↪[211]  
 omal (package) . . . . . 41, 441, 497  
 omega-greek.ldf (file) . . . . . 474–476  
 omega-polish.ldf (file) . . . . . 506  
 omega-russian.ldf (file) . . . . . 511  
 omega-spanish.ldf (file) . . . . . 521  
 omega.sty (file) . . . . . 198  
 oneside (option of *many classes*) . . . . . 569  
 \openin . . . . . 3678, 3747, 3808  
 \openout . . . . . 2898, 2902,  
     2975, 3155, 3616, 3647, 3694, 3725,  
     3762, 3786, 3823, 4327, 4341, 4416,  
     4440, 4478, 4502, 4540, 4956, 4974,  
     5027, 5053, 5088, 5114, 5149, 7314

## Options

above (placeins) . . . . . 29, 30, 177  
 addtotoc (abstract) . . . . . 50, 67, 155, 197  
 below (placeins) . . . . . 29, 30, 177  
 bibtotoc (KOMA-Script) . . . . . 47, 138  
 bibtotocnumbered (KOMA-Script) . . . . . 47  
**checkfiles** (default) . . . . . 28, 31, 57, 148,  
     167–169, 201, 218, 234, 380, 564  
**dotted** (default) . . . . . 44, 77, 233, 380, 563  
 flsection . . . . . 234, 565  
 flsectionb . . . . . 234, 565  
**hints** (default) . . . . . 49–51, 54, 67, 69,  
     71–73, 76, 77, 151, 157, 163, 207, 218,  
     235, 236, 250, 251, 253, 388, 397, 412,  
     415, 566, 569, 578  
 idxtotoc (KOMA-Script) . . . . . 47  
 insection . . . . . 29, 50, 77, 97, 105, 165, 171,  
     177, 190, 208, 220, 234, 235, 237, 381,  
     397, 413, 565, 567, 580

**k-loose** (default) . . 39, 77, 208, 236, 255, 330, 380, 571  
**k-tight** . . 39, 59, 77, 137, 208, 236, 255, 277, 307, 330, 380, 571  
**listfiles** (default) . 49, 57, 77, 148, 196, 209, 218, 236, 238, 382, 414, 572, 585  
**liststotoc** (KOMA-Script) . . . . 47, 137  
**liststotocnumbered** (KOMA-Script) . 47  
**loose** (default) . 39, 77, 208, 210, 223, 233, 255, 330, 380, 563, 565  
**nocheckfiles** . 31, 51, 167–169, 201, 218, 234, 380, 564  
**nohints** . . . . . 49, 77, 207, 218, 388  
**nolistfiles** . . . . . 49, 77, 218, 382, 572  
**notoccite** . 49, 77, 218, 255, 381, 414, 566  
**nottoc** (tocbibind) . . . . . 140  
**oneside** (*many classes*) . . . . . 569  
**parindent** (KOMA-Script) . . . . . 39  
**parskip** (KOMA-Script) . . . . . 39  
**section** (placeins) . . 29, 30, 50, 165, 413  
**shorttext** . 50, 56, 77, 162, 199, 222, 233, 381, 563  
**tight** . 39, 59, 77, 137, 208, 210, 223, 233, 255, 277, 307, 330, 380, 563, 565  
**undotted** . . . . . 44, 59, 77, 233, 380, 563  
**verbose** (placeins) . . . . . 29, 413  
**\or** (command) . . . . . 226, 418  
**ORTOLO**, Tanguy . . . . . 241, [↔](#)[212]  
**ÖSTHOLS**, Erik . . . . . 241, 522, [↔](#)[62]  
**OTT**, Jörg . . . . . 241  
**\outer** (command) . . . . . 265  
**overcite** (package) . . . . . 199

## P

**\pack** . . . . . 10185  
**\PackageError** (command) . . . . . 215, 235  
**\PackageError** . . . . . 7769  
**\PackageInfo** (command) . . 215, 235, 566, 570  
**\PackageInfo** . . . . . 7769  
**Packages**  
   **abstract** . 50, 67, 85, 155, 197, 235, 393, 569  
   **afterpage** . . . . . 575  
   **alnumsec** . . 50, 73, 85, 178, 197, 237, 258, 407, 581  
   **alphanum** . . 50, 71, 85, 164, 197, 389, 578  
   **Antomega** . . 198, 441, 474–476, 493, 506, 510, 511, 520, 521  
   **appendix** . 49, 60–62, 85, 155, 198, 235, 389, 566, 580  
   **Aṛabi** . . . . . 36, 41, 198, 445, 467, 583  
   **ArabTeX** . . . . . 36, 41, 198, 441, 444, 482  
   **ArmTeX** . . . . . 41, 198, 441, 445, 563

**babel** . . . . . 36, 41, 72, 198, 199, 204, 232, 441–443, 447, 448, 451–454, 456, 458–463, 467–474, 483, 485–487, 492–496, 500–505, 507–510, 512, 517–522, 524–526, 528, 561, 562, 570, 579  
**BangTeX** . . . . . 41, 199, 441, 448, 575  
**bibtopic** . . . . . 57, 199  
**bibunits** . . . . . 57, 199, 215  
**captcont** . 50, 73, 85, 178, 199, 237, 258, 407, 581  
**caption** . 51, 69, 85, 165, 166, 200, 236, 258, 408, 572  
**caption2** . 51, 69, 85, 166, 200, 236, 258, 408, 572  
**ccaption** . 51, 69, 85, 166, 200, 236, 259, 408, 572  
**CervanTeX** . . . . . 41, 522  
**chapterbib** . . . . . 57, 200, 201, 215  
**cite** . . . . . 588  
**CJK** . . 36, 41, 201, 202, 223, 224, 441, 457, 478–481, 488–490, 523  
**cmcyralt** . . . . . 514  
**color** . . . . . 115  
**dblacnt** . . . . . 577  
**Devanāgarī** . . 41, 204, 207, 441, 459, 484  
**ethiop** . . . . . 41, 441, 464, 465  
**FarsiTeX** . . . . . 41, 205, 441, 466  
**flafter** . . . . . 29, 220, 413, 580  
**float** . . . . . 29  
**floatrow** . . . . . 29  
**fncychap** . . 50, 72, 85, 177, 206, 237, 256, 405, 581  
**franc** . . . . . 88, 206, 228, 230  
**frbib** . . . . . 207, 228, 230  
**frnew** . . . . . 88, 207, 228, 230  
**geometry** . . . . . 115  
**guarani** . . . . . 41, 207, 441, 477  
**hangcaption** . 50, 76, 85, 178, 207, 238, 257, 406, 559, 586  
**HLAT<sub>E</sub>X** . . . . . 207, 441, 480, 481  
**hyperref** . . . 49, 59, 69, 85, 116, 137, 148, 163–165, 167, 207, 211, 224, 225, 230, 234, 236, 255, 293, 394, 563, 573, 576, 588  
**HyperTeX** . . . . . 207, 224  
**ifmtarg** . . . . . 208, 260  
**kanlel** . . . . . 491  
**KannadaTeX** . . . . . 491  
**LH** . . . . . 515  
**lhcyr** . . . . . 515, 516  
**lipsum** . . . . . 90, 209, 582  
**malayalam** . . . . . 41, 441, 497, 498

- mcaption . . . 51, 69, 85, 166, 210, 236, 259, 409, 572
- minitoc . . . . . 23, 245
- minitoc-hyper . . . . . 59, 211
- minitocoff . . . . . 232, 233, 562
- minutes . . . . . 212, 276, 379
- MonTeX . 41, 212, 441, 449–451, 454, 455, 499, 513, 529, 530, 581
- morefloats . . . . . 569
- mtcmess . . . 146, 215, 237, 420, 434, 579
- mtcoff . 32, 52, 55, 92, 145, 192–194, 215, 232, 233, 419, 420, 431–434, 559, 562, 570, 571
- mtcpatchmem . . 145, 194, 215, 226, 435
- multibib . . . . . 57, 215
- multicol . . . . . 87, 115, 566
- multitoc . . . . . 89
- mypatches . . . . . 88
- natbib . . . . . 199
- needspace . . . . . 54, 215
- notoccite . 49, 85, 218, 234, 255, 280, 283, 286, 381, 414, 566
- omal . . . . . 41, 441, 497
- overcite . . . . . 199
- placeins 29, 49, 50, 85, 165, 177, 206, 208, 220, 234, 251, 391, 397, 413, 571, 580
- L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X . . . . . 41, 220, 507
- L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> . . . . . 220
- quotchap . . 50, 72, 85, 177, 221, 237, 257, 406, 581
- RomanianTeX . . . . . 509
- romannum . 50, 72, 85, 178, 221, 237, 257, 406, 581
- sectsty 50, 67, 85, 128, 166, 222, 236, 251, 256, 405, 569, 580
- sfheaders . 50, 72, 85, 178, 222, 237, 257, 407, 581
- shorttoc . . . . . 19, 222, 559
- S<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X . . . . . 41, 222, 523
- splitbib . . . . . 57, 222
- stdclsdv . . . . . 221, 222
- subfig 31, 85, 141, 199, 215, 222, 223, 372
- subfigure . . . . . 31, 85, 135, 215, 223
- thailatex . . . . . 223, 523, 582
- titlesec . . . . . 50, 85, 223
- titletoc . . . . . 50, 85, 167, 223, 390
- tocbibind 47, 49, 62, 85, 92, 94, 95, 97, 101, 138, 140, 156, 213, 215, 223, 234, 389, 564
- toch . . . . . 559
- tocloft 49, 61, 62, 68, 75, 76, 85, 115, 128, 156, 214, 215, 224, 390
- txfonts . . . . . 34
- varioref . . . . . 135
- varsects 50, 69, 85, 166, 224, 236, 251, 256, 405, 574
- vietnam . . . . . 41, 527
- wrapfig . . . . . 133, 215, 225
- xr . . . . . 26, 225, 293, 559, 574
- xr-hyper . . . . . 225
- \PackageWarning (command) . . 215, 235, 566, 570
- \PackageWarning . . . . . 7769
- \PackageWarningNoLine (command) . . . 215
- \PackageWarningNoLine . . . . . 7769
- \pagebreak 3312, 3384, 3452, 4065, 4139, 4214, 4665, 4732, 4800
- \pagenumbering . . . . . 2369, 2375
- \pageref . . . . . 2622
- \pagestyle (command) . . . . . 46
- \pagestyle . . . . . 1543
- pageUn (environment) . . . . . 116
- Pać, Alan . . . . . 241, 458, ↪[74]
- PAKIN, Scott . . . . . 241, ↪[213]
- PAL, Palash Baran . . . . . 241, 448, ↪[214]
- PANDEY, Anshuman 241, 459, 484, ↪[215, 216]
- \par (command) . . . . . 574
- \paragraph (command) . . . . . 204, 221
- \paragraph 1036, 1058, 1078, 1106, 1312, 1334, 1353, 1386, 3629, 4344, 4958
- \paragraph@mtcck . . . . . 5346
- \parbox . . . . . 1511, 2560
- parindent (option of KOMA-Script) . . . . 39
- PARK, Minje Byeng-sen . . . . . 241, ↪[217]
- \parsep (command) . . . . . 39, 277, 307
- \parsep . . . . . 3236, 3983, 4594
- \parskip (command) . . . . . 39, 249, 277, 307
- parskip (option of KOMA-Script) . . . . . 39
- \parskip 2644, 3983, 4024, 4097, 4172, 4626, 4692, 4759
- \part (command) 25, 31, 48, 49, 56, 60, 79, 151, 158, 161, 165, 179, 198, 199, 204, 221, 262, 266, 288, 289, 303, 307, 310, 313, 316, 320, 323, 325, 394, 415
- part (counter) . . . . . 252, 253
- \part . . . . . 1, 192, 195, 200, 304, 308, 314, 654, 740, 948, 1064, 1121, 1212, 1340, 1393, 1698, 1714, 1727, 1750, 1798, 1936, 2907, 3170, 3465, 4314, 4427, 4489, 6014, 6030, 6057, 6073, 6648, 7359
- \part\* (command) 68, 69, 84, 89, 262, 274, 316, 564
- \part@mtcck . . 5341, 5368, 5376, 5382, 5388, 5397, 5404
- \partbegin (command) . . . . . 60, 316

- `\partbegin` . 1, 1423, 4221, 4417, 4479, 4541, 7518
- `\partend` . . . . . 4221, 4406, 4469, 4531, 7518
- PARTL, Hubert . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [209, 210]
- `\partlof` (command) 31, 34, 38, 39, 79, 83, 171, 173, 208, 305, 307, 310, 560, 561
- `\partlof` . 1, 655, 741, 950, 1066, 1124, 1214, 1342, 3924, 3994, 4067, 6762, 6850, 6937, 7387, 7525
- `\partlof@` (command) . . . . . 310
- `\partlof@` . . . . . 3509, 4067, 4068
- `\partlof@mtcck` . . . . . 5335, 5359
- `partlofdepth` (depth counter) 31, 203, 219, 303, 312
- `\partlot` (command) 31, 34, 38, 39, 79, 83, 172, 174, 208, 305, 307, 313, 560, 561
- `\partlot` . 1, 655, 741, 951, 1067, 1126, 1215, 3924, 3994, 4141, 6771, 6859, 6948, 7387, 7525
- `\partlot@` (command) . . . . . 313
- `\partlot@` . . . . . 3509, 4141, 4142
- `\partlot@mtcck` . . . . . 5338, 5363
- `partlotdepth` (depth counter) 31, 203, 220, 303, 315
- `\partoc` (command) . . . . . 307
- `\partopsep` (command) . . . . . 307
- `\partopsep` . . . . . 3240, 3983, 4593
- `\parttoc` (command) 20, 31, 34, 35, 38, 39, 50, 60, 79, 83, 89, 172, 174, 208, 305, 307, 396, 397, 399, 401, 560, 561, 564, 565
- `\parttoc` . . . . . 1, 32, 193, 198, 203, 305, 309, 315, 655, 741, 949, 1065, 1122, 1213, 1341, 1394, 1701, 1715, 1728, 1752, 1755, 1758, 1761, 1800, 1803, 1806, 1809, 3924, 3994, 6753, 6841, 6926, 7387, 7525
- `\parttoc@` (command) . . . . . 307, 308
- `\parttoc@` . . . . . 3509, 3994, 3995
- `\parttoc@mtcck` . . . . . 5332, 5353
- `parttocdepth` (depth counter) . 20, 31, 79, 203, 220, 303, 309
- PATASHNIK, Oren . . . . . 199, 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [218, 219]
- `\pchapter` . . . . . 4216, 4344, 7544
- PECHTA, Jonathan . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [222, 220, 221]
- PEETERS, Kasper . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [223]
- PELGER, Matthias . . . . . 241
- People
  - ANDRÉ, Jacques . . . . . 240
  - ABOLHASSANI, Hassan . . . . . 240, 466
  - ABRAHAMS, Paul W. . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [1, 2]
  - ABU EL-ATA, Nabil . . . . . 240
  - ADDABBO, Tommaso . . . . . 240
  - AGUIRREGABIRIA, Juan M. . 240, 448,  $\hookrightarrow$ [47]
  - AKOPIAN, Vartan . . . 198, 240, 445,  $\hookrightarrow$ [107]
  - ALEX, A. J. . . . . 240, 497, 498,  $\hookrightarrow$ [3, 4]
  - ALFORD, Mark . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [5]
  - ANDRÉ, Jacques . . . . .  $\hookrightarrow$ [203]
  - ANDRIEUX, Jérôme . . . . . 240
  - ANGELI, Ralf . . . . . 240
  - APPEL, Walter . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [7]
  - ARADIAN, Achod André . . . . . 240
  - ÁRNASON, Einar . . . . . 240, 485,  $\hookrightarrow$ [48]
  - ARNOLD, Tim . . . . . 240
  - ARSENEAU, Donald 29, 49, 85, 218, 234, 240, 255, 260, 265, 280, 283, 286, 560, 563, 566, 578, 586,  $\hookrightarrow$ [8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 275]
  - ASLASKEN, Helmer . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [13, 14]
  - ASPINALL, David . . . . . 240
  - ÅSSEN, Ivar . . . . . 240, 504
  - BACHMANN, Philipp . . . . . 240
  - BADENES, Gonçal . . . . . 240, 456,  $\hookrightarrow$ [49]
  - BALGARENSKY, Marin . . . . . 240
  - BASSO, Pierre . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [16]
  - BATMUNKH, Dorjgotov . . 240, 500,  $\hookrightarrow$ [17]
  - BAUDAIS, Jean-Yves . . . . . 240
  - BAUSUM, David . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [18, 19]
  - BAYART, Benjamin . 46, 235, 240, 352, 566, 568,  $\hookrightarrow$ [20, 21]
  - BAYET, Thierry . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [21]
  - BECCARI, Claudio . . . . . 240, 487, 492,  $\hookrightarrow$ [22, 50, 58]
  - BEFFARA, Emmanuel . . . . . 58, 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [23]
  - BELET, Benoît . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [203]
  - BELMOUHOU, Rachid . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [24]
  - BÉRCES, József . . . . . 240, 495, 496,  $\hookrightarrow$ [51]
  - BERDNIKOV, Alexander . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [25, 26, 27, 28]
  - BERRY, Karl . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [1, 2, 29, 30]
  - BEYENE, Berhanu . . . 240, 464, 465,  $\hookrightarrow$ [31]
  - BEZOS, Javier . . 85, 240, 471, 477, 520, 522,  $\hookrightarrow$ [32, 33, 34, 35]
  - BILOTTA, Giuseppe . . . . . 219, 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [36]
  - BÍRÓ, Árpád . . . . . 240, 495, 496,  $\hookrightarrow$ [51]
  - BITOUZÉ, Denis . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [37]
  - BLOCH, Laurent . . . . . 240
  - BOSHNakov, Georgi . . . . 240, 453,  $\hookrightarrow$ [52]
  - BOUGETTE, Patrice . . . . . 240
  - BOURBONNAIS, Daniel . . . . . 240
  - BOYKO, Victor . . . . . 240, 514,  $\hookrightarrow$ [38]
  - BRAAMS, Johannes L. . . . . 41, 199, 232, 240, 442, 460–462, 473, 486, 503, 504, 528, 561,  $\hookrightarrow$ [39, 40, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 46, 47, 48, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 62, 63, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 69, 70, 71, 72, 73, 74, 75, 76, 77, 78, 79, 80, 81, 82, 83, 84, 85, 86, 87, 168, 200, 201, 202, 203]

- BRAUN, Felix . . . 85, 197, 208, 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [88]  
 BREEN, Jim . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [89]  
 BREITENLOHNER, Peter . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [90]  
 BURBANK, Mimi . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [224]  
 BURC, Mustafa . . . . . 240, 524,  $\hookrightarrow$ [53]  
 BURYKIN, Alexey . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [26, 27, 28]  
 CARDI, Olivier . . . . . 240  
 CARELLA, David . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [91]  
 CARLISLE, David . . . 26, 225, 240, 293, 559,  
 $\hookrightarrow$ [54, 92, 93, 94, 95, 201, 202, 203]  
 CARMODY, Kevin . . . . . 240, 459, 484  
 CARRIBA, Manuel . . . 240, 471,  $\hookrightarrow$ [55, 56]  
 CASPAR, Régis . . . . . 240  
 CHARPENTIER, Jean-Côme . . . . . 240,  
 $\hookrightarrow$ [37, 155, 203, 248]  
 CHAUVET, Jean-Pascal . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [96]  
 CHEN, Pehong . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [97]  
 CHEONG, Otfried . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [98]  
 CHEVALIER, Céline . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [7]  
 CHLEBÍKOVÁ, Jana . . . . . 240, 519,  $\hookrightarrow$ [57]  
 CHOU, Pai H. . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [99]  
 CLEGG, Marian . . . . . 240  
 COCHRAN, Steven Douglas . . 31, 50, 73, 85,  
 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [100, 101, 102]  
 CODOGNO, Maurizio . . . . . 240, 487,  $\hookrightarrow$ [58]  
 COOK, David B. . . . . 240  
 CORFF, Oliver . . . . . 240, 499, 529, 530,  
 $\hookrightarrow$ [103, 104, 105, 106]  
 CORNET, Emmanuel . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [7]  
 COUNTCHAM, Prakash . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [21]  
 D'ACHIAN, Serguei . 198, 240, 445,  $\hookrightarrow$ [107]  
 DAERR, Adrian . . . . . 240  
 DALALYAN, Arnak . . 198, 240, 445,  $\hookrightarrow$ [107]  
 DALY, Patrick W. . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [158]  
 DANIELSSON, Holger . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [222, 220, 221]  
 DE LIMA, Arnaldo Viegas . 240, 451,  $\hookrightarrow$ [77]  
 DEMOUSTIER, Sébastien . . . . . 240  
 DEPARDIEU, Éric . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [21]  
 DE RYDT, Ben . . . . . 240  
 DESGRAUPES, Bernard . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [108, 109, 110]  
 DESPRAIRIES, Cécile . . . . . 240,  
 $\hookrightarrow$ [24, 122, 237, 261]  
 DESREUX, Sébastien . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [7]  
 DORJ, Dorjpalam . . . . 240, 499, 529, 530,  
 $\hookrightarrow$ [106]  
 DRUCBERT, Jean-Pierre F. .  $\hookrightarrow$ [21, 111, 112,  
 113]  
 DUCHIER, Denys . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [200]  
 DUDDING, Lyndon . . . . . 61, 240  
 DUNG, Ta Quang . . . . . 240  
 ÈEHAJA, Marko . . . . . 240, 518  
 EIJKHOUT, Victor . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [59, 114]  
 ELS, Danie . . . . . 240  
 ESFAHBOD, Behdad . . . . 240, 466,  $\hookrightarrow$ [115]  
 ESSER, Thomas . . . . . 240  
 ETIENNE, Gilhooly . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [122]  
 EVERITT, Karl F. . . . . 240, 564  
 FABIAN, Mike . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [116]  
 FAIRBAIRNS, Robin . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [117]  
 FEAR, Simon . . . . . 240  
 FENN, Jürgen . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [246, 247]  
 FERGUSON, Michael J. . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [118]  
 FESSLER, Jeff . . . . . 240  
 FISCHER, Ulrike . . . . . 240  
 FLECK, Jean-Julien . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [7]  
 FLIPO, Daniel . . . 240, 468–470,  $\hookrightarrow$ [60, 209]  
 FLYNN, Peter . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [119]  
 FOX, Jim . . . . . 240  
 FÜRNISS, Danny M. . . . . 240  
 FURUKAWA, Tetsuo . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [144]  
 GARCÍA MORATE, Diego . . . . . 240  
 GÄSSLEIN, Hubert . . . . . 240  
 GELDERMAN, Maarten . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [120]  
 GENSCHE, Chuck . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [121]  
 GHODSI, Mohammad . . . . . 240, 441, 466  
 GILHOOY, Helen . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [122]  
 GLEISZNER, Markus . . . . . 240, 575  
 GONTSHARUK, Vitali . . . . . 240  
 GOOSSENS, Michel . . . . . 240, 561,  
 $\hookrightarrow$ [123, 201, 202, 203]  
 GOUTELLE, Mathieu . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [21]  
 GRANT, Fraser . . . 240, 486, 517,  $\hookrightarrow$ [44, 61]  
 GRAY, Norman . . . . . 224, 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [124]  
 GRENON, Loïc . . . . . 240  
 GRETHER, Charles . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [237]  
 GRINEVA, Olga A. . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [25]  
 GROT, Sébastien . . . . . 240  
 GUIGNARD, Micael . . . . . 240  
 GUNN, Marion . . . . . 240, 486,  $\hookrightarrow$ [44]  
 GURARI, Eitan M. . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [123]  
 HAFNER, Thomas . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [229]  
 HAGEN, Hans . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [125, 126, 129]  
 HAMZI, Boumediene . . . . . 240  
 HÀN, Thé Thành . . . . 240, 527, 577, 588,  
 $\hookrightarrow$ [127, 128, 129]  
 HANSEN, Thorsten . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [131, 130]  
 HAPPEL, Patrick . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [132]  
 HARALAMBOUS, Yannis . . 218, 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [133,  
 134, 135, 136, 137, 138, 139, 225, 226]  
 HARGREAVES, Kathryn A. . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [1, 2]  
 HARIN, Alexander . . . . . 240, 514,  $\hookrightarrow$ [140]  
 HARRIS, Russel L. . . . . 240  
 HARRISON, Michael A. . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [97]  
 HEAP, Danny . . . . . 240  
 HEIDER, André . . . . . 240  
 HEIN, Thorsten . . . . . 240  
 HELLMAN, Sten . . . . . 240, 522,  $\hookrightarrow$ [62]



- HELSTRUP, Håvard . . . 240, 503, 504,  $\hookrightarrow$ [45]  
 HENEL, Yvon . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [21, 246]  
 HENNIG, Stephan . . . 51, 69, 85, 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [141]  
 HENRY, Florence . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [21]  
 HERBORN, Stephen . . . . . 240  
 HOADLEY, David . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [238]  
 HOENIG, Alan . . . . . 240,  $\hookrightarrow$ [142]  
 HØGHOLM, Morten . . . . . 241  
 HOLME, Alv Kjetil . . . 241, 503, 504,  $\hookrightarrow$ [45]  
 HORST, Umstatter . . . . . 241, 508,  $\hookrightarrow$ [63]  
 HOSEK, Don . . . . . 241, 569  
 HU, Yufan . . . . . 241, 558  
 HUFFLEN, Jean-Michel . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [203]  
 HUSEBY, Dave W. . . . . 241  
 HYNÄ, Helene . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [209, 210]  
 IKEDA, Hiroya . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [143]  
 IVANOV, Dmitry 198, 241, 474–476, 493, 506, 510, 511  
 IVERSEN, Per Steinar . . 241, 503, 504,  $\hookrightarrow$ [45]  
 IWAKUMA, Tetsuo . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [144]  
 IZAOLA, Zunbeltz . . . . . 241, 448,  $\hookrightarrow$ [47]  
 JABRI, Youssef 198, 241, 445, 467,  $\hookrightarrow$ [145]  
 JAEHNE, Bernd . . . . . 59, 211, 234, 241, 293  
 JALAM, Radwan . . . . . 241  
 JANICH, Michael . . . . . 241, 505,  $\hookrightarrow$ [81]  
 JEFFREY, Alan . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [54, 146]  
 JERNSTETTEN, Regnor . . . 241, 517,  $\hookrightarrow$ [64]  
 JIANG, Zhuhan . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [147]  
 JOLY, Loïc . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [21]  
 JONES, David M. . . . . 50, 76, 85, 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [148]  
 JORSSEN, Christophe . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [21]  
 JUHASZ, Robert . . . . . 241, 508,  $\hookrightarrow$ [63]  
 JUNG, Stefan . . . . . 241  
 JURAFSKY, Dan . . . . . 24, 232, 241, 558  
 KANERVA, Mikko . . . . . 241, 467, 468,  $\hookrightarrow$ [65]  
 KAROONBOONYANAN, Theppitak . . . 241, 523,  $\hookrightarrow$ [195]  
 KASTRUP, David . . . . . 241  
 KERYELL, Ronan . . . . . 207, 241  
 KIELHORN, Axel . . . . . 85, 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [207]  
 KIM, Ki-Joo . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [149, 150, 151]  
 KLEB, Bil . . . . . 50, 241  
 KLEIWEG, Peter . . . . . 241, 486,  $\hookrightarrow$ [66]  
 KLEVELAND, Rune . . . . 241, 503, 504,  $\hookrightarrow$ [45]  
 KNAPPEN, Jörg . . . . . 241, 447, 456, 462,  $\hookrightarrow$ [67, 68, 79]  
 KNUTH, Donald E. 202, 216, 218, 223, 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [152, 153, 154, 155]  
 KOAUNGH, Un . . . . .  $\hookrightarrow$ [156]  
 KOHM, Markus . . . . . 85, 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [157, 207]  
 KOPKA, Helmut . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [158]  
 KOPPANYI, Attila . . . . . 241, 495, 496,  $\hookrightarrow$ [51]  
 KORAI, Adamantios . . . . . 241, 476  
 KRAKOVIAK, Vincent . . . . . 241  
 KRONZUCKER, Thankmar . . . . . 241  
 KROONENBERG, Siep . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [159]  
 KRYUKOV, Alexej M. . . . 198, 241, 474–476, 493, 506, 510, 511, 521,  $\hookrightarrow$ [160]  
 KUDLEK, Manfred . . . . . 241, 464, 465,  $\hookrightarrow$ [31]  
 KUHN, Markus G. . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [161]  
 KULZER, Florian . . . . . 241  
 KUMAZAWA, Toshiaki . . . . . 241, 488, 490  
 KUMMER, Olaf . . . . . 241, 464, 465,  $\hookrightarrow$ [31]  
 KÜSTER, Frank 50, 73, 85, 241, 518,  $\hookrightarrow$ [162]  
 LABORDE, Stéphane . . . . . 241  
 LACHAND-ROBERT, Thomas . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [163]  
 LAGALLY, Klaus . . . . . 36, 198, 241, 444, 482,  $\hookrightarrow$ [164, 165]  
 LAMPORT, Leslie . . . . . 209, 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [54, 166, 167, 168]  
 LANARI, Fabio . . . . . 241  
 LANGE, Robert . . . . . 241  
 LANGMYHR, Dag . . . . . 241, 503, 504, 562  
 LAPKO, Olga G. . . . . 241, 454, 500, 512, 525,  $\hookrightarrow$ [26, 27, 28, 69, 169, 170, 171]  
 LARSEN, Henning . . . . . 241, 459,  $\hookrightarrow$ [70]  
 LASGOUTTES, Jean-Marc . . . . . 241  
 L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X3 PROJECT TEAM, . . .  $\hookrightarrow$ [172, 173, 174, 175, 176, 177, 257]  
 LAUFFENBURGER, Jean-Philippe . . . . . 241  
 LAUNAY, Arnaud . . . . . 241  
 LAUVERNET, Claire . . . . . 241  
 LAVVA, Boris . . . . . 241, 483,  $\hookrightarrow$ [71]  
 LEBACQ, André . . . . . 241  
 LEGRAND, Jeanne . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [212]  
 LEHMAN, Philipp . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [178]  
 LEMBERG, Werner . . . . . 201, 241, 454, 457, 478–481, 488–490, 500, 512, 523, 527,  $\hookrightarrow$ [69, 179, 180, 257]  
 LEONHARDT, Thomas . . . . . 241, 565  
 LE PENNEC, Erwan . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [21]  
 LEPOLOZEC, Stéphane . . . . . 241  
 LE THUAUT, Julien . . . . . 241  
 LEWENBERG, Adam . . . . . 241  
 LICKERT, Knut . . . . . 212, 241, 379,  $\hookrightarrow$ [181]  
 LINDGREN, Ulf A. . . . . 50, 72, 85, 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [182]  
 LINGNAU, Anselm . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [183]  
 LOBEL, Pierre . . . . . 241  
 LOKAJICEK, Milos . . . . . 241, 458,  $\hookrightarrow$ [72]  
 LOMBARD, Stoffel . . . . . 241, 442  
 LORETI, Maurizio . . . . . 50, 72, 85, 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [184]  
 LORINO, Tristan . . . . . 241  
 LOVE, Tim . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [185, 186]  
 LOZANO, Vincent . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [187]  
 LUECKING, Daniel H. . . . . 241  
 LUNDE, Ken . . . . . 202, 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [188, 189, 190]  
 LYHNE, Anders . . . . . 241

- MacKAY, Pierre A. . . . . 241, 524,  $\hookrightarrow$ [53]  
 MADSEN, Lars . . . . . 241  
 MAHONEY, Richard . . . . . 241, 459, 484  
 MAKHOVAYA, Irina A. 241, 454, 512,  $\hookrightarrow$ [171]  
 MARGOLIS, Bob . . . . . 241, 447,  $\hookrightarrow$ [68]  
 MARKEY, Nicolas . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [21, 191, 192]  
 MARR, Marcus . . . . . 241  
 MARRE-FOURNIER, Françoise . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [21]  
 MART, Terry . . . . . 241, 447,  $\hookrightarrow$ [67, 68]  
 MASLOV, Vadim . . . . . 241, 514  
 MASSIAS, Henri . . . . . 63, 241  
 MATTHIAS, Andreas . . . . . 241  
 MATTISSON, Sven . . . . . 241, 523,  $\hookrightarrow$ [193]  
 McDONNELL, Rowland . . . . 50, 67, 85, 241,  
 $\hookrightarrow$ [194]  
 McKAY, Ben . . . . . 241  
 MEKNAVIN, Surapant . . . 241, 523,  $\hookrightarrow$ [195]  
 MENGIN, Sébastien . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [21]  
 METZINGER, Jochen . . 241, 464, 465,  $\hookrightarrow$ [31]  
 MICHOU, Yanick . . . . . 241  
 MITTELBACH, Frank 209, 232, 241, 276, 305,  
 329, 561, 564, 565,  $\hookrightarrow$ [54, 168, 196,  
 197, 198, 199, 200, 201, 202, 203, 204]  
 MOON, Young Joon . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [205]  
 MOORE, ROSS . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [123]  
 MORAWSKI, Jens-Uwe 85, 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [157, 207]  
 MORI, Lapo Filippo . . . . . 241  
 MORRISON, Michael A. . . . . 241  
 MÚGICA DE RIVERA, Javier A. . . . 241, 471,  
 $\hookrightarrow$ [56]  
 MUHAMEDAGIĆ, Dejan . . . 241, 518,  $\hookrightarrow$ [73]  
 NAUMOV, Sergei O. . . . . 241, 515,  $\hookrightarrow$ [206]  
 NEUKAM, Frank . . . . . 85, 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [207]  
 NGUYEN, Cuong . . . . . 241  
 NICOLAS, Julien . . . . . 241  
 NIEPRASCHK, Rolf . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [229]  
 NOIREL, Josselin . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [21]  
 OBERDIEK, Heiko 59, 85, 211, 234, 241, 293,  
 302, 563,  $\hookrightarrow$ [208, 227, 228]  
 OETIKER, Tobias . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [209, 210]  
 OLKO, Mariusz . . . . . 241, 507,  $\hookrightarrow$ [211]  
 ORTOLO, Tanguy . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [212]  
 ÖSTHOLS, Erik . . . . . 241, 522,  $\hookrightarrow$ [62]  
 OTT, Jörg . . . . . 241  
 PAIĆ, Alan . . . . . 241, 458,  $\hookrightarrow$ [74]  
 PAKIN, Scott . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [213]  
 PAL, Palash Baran . . . . . 241, 448,  $\hookrightarrow$ [214]  
 PANDEY, Anshuman . . . . . 241, 459, 484,  
 $\hookrightarrow$ [215, 216]  
 PARK, Minje Byeng-sen . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [217]  
 PARTL, Hubert . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [209, 210]  
 PATASHNIK, Oren . . . 199, 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [218, 219]  
 PECHTA, Jonathan . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [222, 220, 221]  
 PEETERS, Kasper . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [223]  
 PELGER, Matthias . . . . . 241  
 PETTERST, Terje Engeset . . . 241, 503, 504,  
 $\hookrightarrow$ [45]  
 PICAUREAU, Paul . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [7]  
 PICAL, Éric . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [139]  
 PIGUET, Bruno . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [21]  
 PÍŠKA, Karel . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [224]  
 PLAICE, John . . . . . 218, 241,  
 $\hookrightarrow$ [135, 136, 137, 138, 139, 225, 226]  
 POONLAP, Veerathanabutr 241, 523,  $\hookrightarrow$ [195]  
 POPINEAU, Fabrice . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [248]  
 POPPELIER, Nico . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [59]  
 PORRAT, Rama . . . . . 241, 483  
 POSSAMAÏ, Camille-Aimé . . . . . 241  
 POURNADER, Roozbeh . . . 241, 466,  $\hookrightarrow$ [115]  
 RADHAKRISHNAN, C. V. . . . . 241, 459, 484  
 RAHTZ, Sebastian . . . . . 85, 241,  
 $\hookrightarrow$ [123, 129, 227, 228]  
 RAICHLÉ, Bernd . . . 241, 473, 502, 503, 509,  
 $\hookrightarrow$ [75, 76, 229, 230]  
 RAMALHETE, Jose Pedro . . . . 241, 451, 507,  
 $\hookrightarrow$ [77]  
 REINO, Keranen . . . . . 241, 467, 468,  $\hookrightarrow$ [65]  
 REZUŞ, Adrian . . . . . 241, 509,  $\hookrightarrow$ [230]  
 ROBERTS, A. J. “Tony” . . . . . 241, 296  
 ROEGEL, Denis B. . . . . 232, 241, 561, 562  
 ROLLAND, Christian . . 241, 452,  $\hookrightarrow$ [78, 231]  
 ROWLEY, Chris A. . . . . 241,  
 $\hookrightarrow$ [54, 146, 201, 202, 203, 204, 232]  
 RUIZ-ALTABA, Marti . . . . . 241, 462,  $\hookrightarrow$ [79]  
 RYNNING, Jan Michael . . . . . 241, 522, 561  
 RYU, Young . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [233]  
 SAAR, Enn . . . . . 241, 463,  $\hookrightarrow$ [80]  
 SAMSOEN, David . . . . . 241  
 SÁNCHEZ, Julio . . . . . 241, 448, 520,  $\hookrightarrow$ [47]  
 SANGEUX, Morgan . . . . . 241  
 SAUDRAIS, Eddie . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [234, 235]  
 SCHALÜCK, Elmar . . . . . 241, 505,  $\hookrightarrow$ [81]  
 SCHLEGL, Elisabeth . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [209, 210]  
 SCHLEMMER, Tobias . . . . . 241, 519,  $\hookrightarrow$ [57]  
 SCHMIDT, Walter . . . . . 241, 502, 503,  $\hookrightarrow$ [76]  
 SCHNEIDER, Uwe . . . . . 241  
 SCHÖPF, Rainer . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [54]  
 SCHRÖDER, Martin . . . . . 89, 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [236]  
 SCURFIELD, Elizabeth . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [237]  
 SHELL, Michael . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [238]  
 SHIN, Jungshik . . . . . 241  
 SHOUKAT, Ali . . . . . 241  
 SHVAIKA, Andrij M. . . . . 241, 525,  $\hookrightarrow$ [82]  
 SILPA-ANAN, Chanop . . . 241, 523,  $\hookrightarrow$ [195]  
 SITNIKOVA-RIOLAND, Anna . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [261]  
 SLOBODAN, Jankovic . . . . 241, 518,  $\hookrightarrow$ [73]  
 SMITH, John . . . . . 241, 459, 484



- SOCHA, Robin S. . . . . 241  
 SOFRONIOU, Nick . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [243]  
 SOMMERFELDT, Axel . . . 51, 69, 85, 200, 241,  
 $\hookrightarrow$ [239, 240, 241]  
 SONG, Lianyi . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [237]  
 SOULET, Yves . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [203]  
 STEINER, Arjen . . . . . 241  
 STORY, D. P. . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [242]  
 STREIT, Éric . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [21]  
 STUBNER, Ralf . . . . . 241  
 SUTOR, Robert S. . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [123]  
 SWOYER, Chris . . . . . 241  
 SYROPOULOS, Apostolos . . . . 241, 474,  
 $\hookrightarrow$ [22, 83, 243]  
 TAUPIN<sup>†</sup>, Daniel . . . 50, 69, 85, 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [244]  
 THIELE, Christina . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [224]  
 THUREAU, Aurélien . . . . . 241  
 TINNEFELD, Karsten . . . 50, 72, 85, 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [245]  
 'T LAM, Ton . . . . . 241  
 TOLUŠIS, Sigitas . . . . . 241, 493  
 TORDELLA, Laurent . . . . . 241  
 TRETIN, Mark . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [246, 247]  
 TRUU, Ahto . . . . . 241  
 TSOLOMITIS, Antonis . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [243]  
 TWS-TDS, . . . . .  $\hookrightarrow$ [249, 248]  
 ULRICH, Stefan . . . . . 33, 241, 563,  $\hookrightarrow$ [16]  
 UMEKI, Hideo . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [250]  
 UN, Koaunghi . . . . . 207, 241, 480, 481  
 UYAR, Turgut . . . . . 241, 524,  $\hookrightarrow$ [53]  
 VAARIO, Jari . . . . . 241  
 VAN OOSTRUM, Piet . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [252]  
 VAN OUDENHOVE DE SAINT GÉRY, Thomas . . . 241,  
 $\hookrightarrow$ [21, 253]  
 VAQUIN, Vincent . . . . . 241  
 VENKATESAN, Suki K. . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [254]  
 VERA, Didier . . . . . 59, 211, 234, 241, 293  
 VESCO, Sylvain . . . . . 241  
 VIAL, Alexandre . . . . . 241  
 VIOLANTE, André . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [255]  
 VOEGELIN, Carl F. . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [256]  
 VOEGELIN, Florence M. . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [256]  
 VOLOVICH, Vladimir . . . 241, 454, 500, 512,  
 $\hookrightarrow$ [69, 257]  
 VON BECHTOLSHEIM, Stephan P. . . . 241, 260, 564,  
 $\hookrightarrow$ [258, 259]  
 VOSS, Herbert . . . . . 241  
 WAGNER, Zdeněk . . . . . 241, 459, 484  
 WARD, Nigel . . . . . 24, 232, 241, 558  
 WARNOCK, John . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [121]  
 WAWRYKIEWICZ, Staszek . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [260]  
 WEBANCK, Stephan B. . . . . 241  
 WERNER, Eduard . . . . . 241, 494, 526,  $\hookrightarrow$ [84, 85]  
 WEST, Daphne . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [261]  
 WIJNHOUT, Jeroen . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [222, 220, 221]  
 WILLIAMS, Graham . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [262]  
 WILSON, Peter R. . . . . 47, 50, 51, 60–62,  
 67, 69, 72, 85, 197, 198, 210, 241, 260,  
 $\hookrightarrow$ [263, 264, 265, 266, 267, 268, 269,  
 270, 271, 272, 273, 274, 275]  
 WOLIŃSKI, Marcin . . . . . 241, 507,  $\hookrightarrow$ [200, 211]  
 WOLKOWSKI, Élisabeth . . . . . 241  
 WOODING, Mark . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [200]  
 WRIGHT, Tim . . . . . 241  
 WUJASTYK, Dominik . . . . . 241, 459, 484  
 WYART, Damien . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [21]  
 YOGANANDA, C. S. . . . . 241, 491  
 ZAIMI, Adi . . . . . 241, 443,  $\hookrightarrow$ [86]  
 ZAMENOF, Lejzer Ludwig . . . . . 241, 463  
 ZAVRTANIK, Danilo . . . . . 241, 519,  $\hookrightarrow$ [87]  
 ŻELECHOWSKI, Krzysztof Konrad . . . 242, 492,  
 $\hookrightarrow$ [50]  
 ZENDER, Charlie S. . . . . 242,  $\hookrightarrow$ [276]  
 ZENITH, Federico . . . . . 242,  $\hookrightarrow$ [222, 220, 221]  
 ZHYTNIKOV, Vadim V. . . . . 242, 514–516,  
 $\hookrightarrow$ [140, 277]  
 ZIEGENHAGEN, Uwe . . . . . 242  
 ŽLAJPAH, Leon . . . . . 242, 519,  $\hookrightarrow$ [87]  
 PETTERST, Terje Engeset . . . 241, 503, 504,  $\hookrightarrow$ [45]  
 \pfill . . . . . 428, 637  
 PICHAUREAU, Paul . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [7]  
 PICHÉRAL, Éric . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [139]  
 PIGUET, Bruno . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [21]  
 PÍŠKA, Karel . . . . . 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [224]  
 placeins (package) . . . . . 29, 49, 50, 85, 165, 177, 206,  
 208, 220, 234, 251, 391, 397, 413, 571,  
 580  
 placeins.sty (file) . . . . . 29  
 placeins.txt (file) . . . . . 29, 220  
 PLAICE, John . . . . . 218, 241,  
 $\hookrightarrow$ [135, 136, 137, 138, 139, 225, 226]  
 plain.bst (file) . . . . . 204, 207  
 plainurl.bst (file) . . . . . 238, 584  
 L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X (package) . . . . . 41, 220, 507  
 L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X 2<sub>ε</sub> (package) . . . . . 220  
 \PLF@ . . . . . 4465, 4469  
 \PLF@contentsline (command) . . . . . 323  
 \PLF@contentsline . . . . . 4427, 4468, 4469  
 \PLF@explist . . . . . 4425, 4451  
 \PLF@line . . . . . 4463, 4465  
 \PLF@list . . . . . 4422, 4425, 4451, 4469  
 \PLF@lof . . . . . 4425, 4452, 4469  
 \PLF@loop . . . . . 4422, 4452  
 \PLF@next (command) . . . . . 324  
 \PLF@next . . . . . 4238, 4422, 4451  
 \plf@pgno . . . . . 3088, 3089, 4125  
 \PLF@read . . . . . 4452, 4463, 4469  
 \plf@rule . . . . . 3190, 4100, 4136, 5208, 5211, 5214

- \plf@setform (command) . . . . . **312, 362**
- \plf@setform . . . . . 4125, 5562
- \PLF@test (command) . . . . . **324, 325**
- \PLF@test . . . . . 4465, 4467, 4469
- \PLF@WriteContentsLine . . . . . 4427
- \plfdotsep . . . . . 5537, 5565, 5585, 5590
- \plffont (command) . . . . . **34, 37, 70, 79**
- \plffont . . . 1, 1790, 3897, 3910, 4097, 7555
- \plfname . . . . . 4427, 4430
- \plfpagenumbers (command) . . . . . **43, 82**
- \plfpagenumbers . . . 3065, 3088, 3097, 7627
- \plfpnumwidth . . . . 5519, 5563, 5583, 5588
- \plfrule (command) . . . . . **43, 82, 567**
- \plfrule . . . . . 5199, 7609
- \plfSfont (command) . . . . **34, 37, 70, 79, 573**
- \plfSfont . . . . . 1, 1791, 3897, 3910, 7555
- \plftitle (command) . . . . . **34, 37, 79, 441**
- \plftitle . . . . . 1, 4082, 4088, 4100, 6250, 7275, 7844, 7858, 7879, 7900, 7918, 7936, 7958, 7987, 8004, 8021, 8039, 8055, 8071, 8087, 8103, 8120, 8141, 8164, 8196, 8220, 8236, 8271, 8309, 8328, 8345, 8368, 8385, 8402, 8421, 8451, 8468, 8489, 8505, 8538, 8578, 8595, 8612, 8633, 8652, 8685, 8723, 8746, 8763, 8778, 8796, 8817, 8821, 8857, 8897, 8934, 9042, 9069, 9112, 9134, 9159, 9176, 9194, 9212, 9295, 9296, 9316, 9333, 9352, 9374, 9391, 9415, 9432, 9449, 9470, 9493, 9510, 9534, 9559, 9613, 9628, 9647, 9663, 9686, 9702, 9715, 9734, 9752, 9773, 9790, 9808, 9841, 9862, 9902, 9944, 9974, 10042, 10059, 10076, 10096, 10118, 10135, 10156, 10171, 10187, 10208, 10225, 10242, 10266, 10313, 10331, 10358, 10379, 10394, 10409, 10424
- \plftocrmarg . . . . . 5528, 5564, 5584, 5589
- \PLT@ . . . . . 4527, 4531
- \PLT@contentsline (command) . . . . . **325**
- \PLT@contentsline . . . . 4489, 4530, 4531
- \PLT@explist . . . . . 4487, 4513
- \PLT@line . . . . . 4525, 4527
- \PLT@list . . . . . 4484, 4487, 4513, 4531
- \PLT@loop . . . . . 4484, 4514
- \PLT@lot . . . . . 4487, 4514, 4531
- \PLT@next (command) . . . . . **326**
- \PLT@next . . . . . 4242, 4484, 4513, 4869
- \plt@pgno . . . . . 3094, 3095, 4200
- \PLT@read . . . . . 4514, 4525, 4531
- \plt@rule 3190, 4179, 4212, 5217, 5220, 5223
- \plt@setform (command) . . . . . **315, 363**
- \plt@setform . . . . . 4200, 5577
- \PLT@test (command) . . . . . **327**
- \PLT@test . . . . . 4527, 4529, 4531
- \PLT@WriteContentsLine . . . . . 4489
- \pltdotsep . . . . . 5537, 5580
- \pltfont (command) . . . . . **34, 37, 70, 79**
- \pltfont . . . 1, 1792, 3897, 3910, 4172, 7555
- \pltname . . . . . 4489, 4492
- \pltpagenumbers (command) . . . . . **43, 82**
- \pltpagenumbers . . . 3071, 3094, 3097, 7627
- \pltptnumwidth . . . . . 5519, 5578
- \pltrule (command) . . . . . **43, 82, 567**
- \pltrule . . . . . 5199, 7609
- \pltSfont (command) . . . . **34, 37, 70, 79, 573**
- \pltSfont . . . . . 1, 1793, 3897, 3910, 7555
- \plttitle (command) . . . . . **34, 37, 79, 441**
- \plttitle . . . . . 1, 4157, 4163, 4179, 6250, 7275, 7844, 7859, 7880, 7901, 7919, 7937, 7959, 7988, 8005, 8022, 8040, 8056, 8072, 8088, 8104, 8121, 8142, 8167, 8198, 8221, 8237, 8272, 8310, 8329, 8346, 8369, 8386, 8403, 8424, 8452, 8469, 8490, 8508, 8540, 8579, 8596, 8613, 8634, 8655, 8688, 8724, 8747, 8764, 8779, 8797, 8861, 8901, 8935, 9044, 9072, 9113, 9135, 9160, 9177, 9195, 9213, 9317, 9334, 9353, 9375, 9392, 9416, 9433, 9450, 9471, 9494, 9511, 9535, 9561, 9614, 9629, 9648, 9664, 9687, 9703, 9716, 9735, 9753, 9774, 9791, 9809, 9826, 9827, 9842, 9866, 9906, 9947, 9975, 10043, 10060, 10077, 10098, 10119, 10136, 10157, 10172, 10188, 10209, 10226, 10243, 10267, 10315, 10332, 10359, 10380, 10395, 10410, 10425
- \plttocrmarg . . . . . 5528, 5579
- pmk (script) . . . . . **220, 227–230**
- polish (language option) . . . . . **36, 505, 506**
- polish.dtx (file) . . . . . **505**
- polish.mld (file) . . . . . **227, 230, 505**
- polish2 (language option) . . . . . **36, 41, 506**
- polish2.mld (file) . . . **198, 227, 230, 506, 567**
- polski (language option) . . . . . **36, 220, 507**
- polski.dtx (file) . . . . . **507**
- polski.mld (file) . . . . . **227, 230, 507, 578**
- POONLAP, Veerathanabutr . . . **241, 523**, ↪[\[195\]](#)
- POPINEAU, Fabrice . . . . . **241**, ↪[\[248\]](#)
- POPPELIER, Nico . . . . . **241**, ↪[\[59\]](#)
- PORRAT, Rama . . . . . **241, 483**
- portuges (language option) . . . . . **36, 507**
- portuges.dtx (file) . . . . . **451, 507**
- portuges.mld (file) . . **227, 230, 507, 569, 570**
- portuges.mld (file) . . . . . **569, 570**

- portuguese (language option) . . . . . **36, 507**
- portuguese.mld (file) . . . . . **227, 230, 507, 570**
- POSSAMAÏ, Camille-Aimé . . . . . **241**
- POURNADER, Roozbeh . . . . . **241, 466, ↪[115]**
- \printglossary (command) . . . . . **48**
- \printindex (command) . . . . . **48**
- \printindex . . . . . 1, 536, 830
- proc (class) . . . . . **24, 202, 220, 221**
- \ProcessOptions . . . . . 7298
- \ProcessOptions\* . . . . . 7298
- \protect (command) . . . . . **55, 58, 562**
- \protect . . . . . 1
- \providecommand . . . 2001, 2193, 2194, 2202,  
2203, 6250, 7275, 7378
- \ProvidesFile (command) . . . . . **587**
- \ProvidesFile . . . . . 3,  
56, 120, 182, 209, 233, 287, 322, 418,  
629, 884, 919, 1174, 1431, 1630, 1683,  
1741, 1781, 1830, 1879, 1927, 1979,  
2155, 2190, 2225, 2299, 2359, 2408,  
2451, 2502, 2538, 7404, 7845, 7849,  
7853, 7870, 7874, 7891, 7895, 7912,  
7930, 7949, 7953, 7970, 7974, 7978,  
7982, 7999, 8016, 8033, 8051, 8067,  
8083, 8099, 8115, 8132, 8136, 8153,  
8157, 8190, 8216, 8232, 8248, 8252,  
8256, 8261, 8266, 8283, 8293, 8304,  
8321, 8340, 8357, 8380, 8397, 8414,  
8437, 8463, 8480, 8484, 8501, 8529,  
8534, 8556, 8565, 8574, 8590, 8607,  
8624, 8628, 8645, 8668, 8701, 8705,  
8709, 8713, 8743, 8758, 8775, 8790,  
8808, 8848, 8888, 8928, 8946, 8958,  
8971, 8983, 8995, 9004, 9016, 9028,  
9037, 9062, 9097, 9101, 9124, 9128,  
9146, 9150, 9154, 9171, 9188, 9206,  
9224, 9233, 9245, 9257, 9269, 9282,  
9291, 9307, 9311, 9328, 9345, 9364,  
9368, 9386, 9403, 9410, 9427, 9444,  
9461, 9465, 9482, 9488, 9505, 9522,  
9526, 9530, 9546, 9585, 9596, 9600,  
9604, 9608, 9625, 9640, 9659, 9675,  
9694, 9710, 9727, 9746, 9764, 9768,  
9785, 9802, 9820, 9838, 9853, 9893,  
9933, 9970, 9986, 9995, 10005, 10013,  
10021, 10029, 10037, 10054, 10071,  
10088, 10113, 10130, 10147, 10168,  
10183, 10199, 10220, 10237, 10254,  
10261, 10278, 10282, 10286, 10290,  
10294, 10301, 10325, 10343, 10347,  
10354, 10370, 10374, 10391, 10406,  
10421
- \ProvidesPackage (command) . . . . . **147**
- \ProvidesPackage . . . 2637, 7408, 7770, 7783
- \ps@chapterverso . . . . . 1982, 1991
- \ps@empty . . . . . 1982, 1991
- \psect . . . . . 4216, 7544
- ptc (counter) . . . **84, 261, 262, 273, 303, 316, 320,**  
**323, 325**
- \PTC@ . . . . . 4402, 4406
- \PTC@contentsline (command) . . . . . **320**
- \PTC@contentsline . . . . . 4314, 4405, 4406
- \PTC@explist . . . . . 4312, 4388
- \PTC@line . . . . . 4400, 4402
- \PTC@list . . . . . 4309, 4312, 4388, 4406
- \PTC@loop . . . . . 4309, 4389
- \PTC@next (command) . . . . . **321**
- \PTC@next . . . . . 4234, 4309, 4388
- \ptc@pgno . . . . . 3082, 3083, 4048
- \PTC@read . . . . . 4389, 4400, 4406
- \ptc@rule (command) . . . . . **304**
- \ptc@rule 3892, 4032, 4062, 4211, 5199, 5202,  
5205
- \ptc@setform (command) . . . . . **310, 362**
- \ptc@setform . . . . . 4048, 5547
- \ptc@spart . . . . . 4221
- \PTC@test (command) . . . . . **322**
- \PTC@test . . . . . 4402, 4404
- \PTC@toc . . . . . 4312, 4389, 4406
- \ptc@verse (command) . . . . . **307**
- ptc@verse (environment) . . . **307, 309, 310, 312,**  
**315, 362, 363**
- \ptc@verse . . . . . 3983
- \ptcCfont (command) **31, 35, 37, 70, 71, 79, 304**
- \ptcCfont . . . . . 1, 3910, 7555
- \ptcdotsep . . . . . 5537, 5550
- \ptcfont (command) **31, 34, 35, 37, 40, 69–71,**  
**79**
- \ptcfont . . . 1, 1786–1793, 3897, 3910, 4024,  
7555
- \ptcindent (command) . . . . . **31, 79, 307**
- \ptcindent . . . 3895, 3983, 4041, 4114, 4189,  
7416
- \ptcname . . . . . 4314, 4331
- \ptcpagenumbers (command) . . . . . **43, 82**
- \ptcpagenumbers . . . 3051, 3082, 3097, 7627
- \ptcPfont (command) . . . . . **35, 37, 70, 71, 79**
- \ptcPfont . . . . . 1, 1788, 3897, 3910, 7555
- \ptcpnumwidth . . . . . 5519, 5548
- \ptcrule (command) . . . . . **43, 82**
- \ptcrule . . . . . 5199, 7609
- \ptcSfont (command) . . . **31, 35, 37, 70, 71, 79**
- \ptcSfont . . . . . 1, 3897, 3910, 7555
- \ptcSPfont (command) . . . . . **35, 37, 69–71, 79**
- \ptcSPfont . . . . . 1, 1789, 3897, 3910, 7555
- \ptcSSfont (command) . . . . . **35, 37, 70, 71, 79**
- \ptcSSfont . . . . . 1, 1786, 3897, 3910, 7555

- `\ptcSSSfont` (command) . . . **35, 37, 70, 71, 79**  
`\ptcSSSfont` . . . . . 1, 1787, 3897, 3910, 7555  
`\ptctitle` (command) . . . **34, 37, 79, 441, 520**  
`\ptctitle` . . . . . 1, 4009, 4015, 4032,  
6250, 7275, 7844, 7857, 7878, 7899,  
7917, 7935, 7957, 7986, 8003, 8020,  
8038, 8054, 8070, 8086, 8102, 8119,  
8140, 8162, 8194, 8219, 8235, 8270,  
8308, 8327, 8344, 8367, 8384, 8401,  
8418, 8450, 8467, 8488, 8504, 8537,  
8577, 8594, 8611, 8632, 8649, 8682,  
8719, 8721, 8745, 8762, 8777, 8795,  
8814, 8854, 8894, 8933, 9040, 9066,  
9111, 9133, 9158, 9175, 9193, 9211,  
9294, 9315, 9332, 9351, 9373, 9390,  
9414, 9431, 9448, 9469, 9492, 9509,  
9533, 9555, 9557, 9612, 9627, 9646,  
9662, 9685, 9701, 9714, 9733, 9751,  
9772, 9789, 9807, 9825, 9840, 9859,  
9899, 9938, 9941, 9973, 10041, 10058,  
10075, 10094, 10117, 10134, 10152,  
10154, 10170, 10186, 10204, 10206,  
10224, 10241, 10265, 10312, 10330,  
10357, 10378, 10393, 10408, 10423  
`\ptctocrmarg` . . . . . 5528, 5549  
`\ptifont` (command) . . **34, 37, 40, 63, 79, 567**  
`\ptifont` . . 1, 3897, 3910, 3934, 3948, 3962,  
4032, 4100, 4179, 7555
- ## Q
- `\qaf` . . . . . 7936, 7937, 7940, 7941, 7944, 7945  
`\quad` (command) . . . . . **33**  
`\quad` . . . . . 1470, 2587, 2597, 2602, 2612  
`quotchap` (package) . . **50, 72, 85, 177, 221, 237,**  
**257, 406, 581**  
`quote` (environment) . . . . . **574**  
`\qva` . . . . . 8368, 8372, 8376, 9112, 9116, 9120
- ## R
- `\r@mti` . . 3225, 3263, 3333, 3401, 3545, 3564,  
3583  
`\r@pti` . . 3924, 3948, 4015, 4088, 4163, 4249,  
4268, 4287  
`\r@sti` . . 4578, 4616, 4683, 4750, 4876, 4895,  
4914  
`\ra` . . . . . 7935, 7939, 7943, 8577, 8581, 8585  
RADHAKRISHNAN, C. V. . . . . **241, 459, 484**  
`\raggedbottom` . . . . . 933, 1188  
`\raggedcolumns` . . . . . 338  
`\raggedright` (command) . . . . . **560**  
`\raggedright` . . 1477, 2009, 2336, 3273, 3343,  
3411, 3942, 4024, 4097, 4172, 4626,  
4692, 4759  
RAHTZ, Sebastian **85, 241**,  $\hookrightarrow$  [\[123, 129, 227, 228\]](#)  
RAICHLE, Bernd . . . . . **241, 473, 502, 503, 509**,  
 $\hookrightarrow$  [\[75, 76, 229, 230\]](#)  
RAMALHETE, Jose Pedro . . . **241, 451, 507**,  $\hookrightarrow$  [\[77\]](#)  
`rapport.doc` (file) . . . . . **523**  
`\re` . . . . . 8367, 8371, 8375, 9111, 9115, 9119  
`\read` . . . 2873, 2961, 3690, 3758, 3819, 4401,  
4464, 4526, 5015, 5076, 5137  
`README` (file) . . . . . **227, 228, 230**  
`\ref` . . . . . 2091, 2350, 2622–2626, 2629, 2632  
`\refstepcounter` . . . . . 4824, 7810  
REINO, Keranen . . . . . **241, 467, 468**,  $\hookrightarrow$  [\[65\]](#)  
`\relax` (command) **287, 316, 418, 424, 425, 428,**  
**560**  
`\removelastskip` . . . . . 337, 2647  
`\renewcommand` (command) . **27, 28, 31, 34, 35,**  
**37, 38, 42, 61, 62, 67, 70, 71, 73, 74,**  
**250, 425, 428**  
`\renewcommand` . . . . . 196, 197, 201, 202,  
219, 328, 928, 930, 1183–1185, 1458,  
1522, 1527, 1541, 1550, 1551, 2008,  
2195, 2196, 2204, 2205, 2303, 7788  
`\renewcommand*` (command) . . . . . **68**  
`report` (class) . . . . . **24, 34, 35, 44, 45, 56, 58,**  
**67, 68, 71, 73, 108, 125, 190, 191, 202,**  
**204, 206, 209, 214, 221, 222, 225, 263,**  
**264, 271, 304, 584**  
`\RequirePackage` . . 2637, 2840, 7299, 7305,  
7411, 7785  
`\reset@font` (command) . . . . . **57, 268, 560**  
`\reset@font` . . 3004, 3275, 3282, 3286, 3345,  
3352, 3356, 3413, 3420, 3424, 3843,  
3848, 3861, 3863, 4026, 4034, 4038,  
4099, 4106, 4110, 4174, 4181, 4185,  
4628, 4636, 4640, 4694, 4701, 4706,  
4761, 4768, 4773  
`\resh` . . . . . 9042–9044, 9049–9051, 9056–9058  
REZUŞ, Adrian . . . . . **241, 509**,  $\hookrightarrow$  [\[230\]](#)  
`\rightmargin` . . 3245, 3291, 3361, 3429, 3992,  
4043, 4116, 4191, 4598, 4645, 4711,  
4778  
`\rmfamily` (command) . . . . . **218**  
`\rmfamily` . . . . . 928, 1754,  
1802, 2204, 2205, 2314–2318, 2320–  
2323, 3213, 3214, 3223, 3224, 3898,  
3899, 3908, 3911–3913, 3922, 4568,  
4569, 4577  
`rmk` (script) . . . . . **221, 227–230**  
ROBERTS, A. J. “Tony” . . . . . **241, 296**  
ROEGEL, Denis B. . . . . **232, 241, 561, 562**  
ROLLAND, Christian . . . . . **241, 452**,  $\hookrightarrow$  [\[78, 231\]](#)

- \Roman . . . 8420, 8423, 8426, 8449, 8651, 8654, 8657, 8681
  - romanian (language option) . . . . . 36, 508
  - romanian.dtx (file) . . . . . 508, 509
  - romanian.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 508
  - romanian2 (language option) . . . . . 36, 509
  - romanian2.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 509, 576, 584
  - romanian3 (language option) . . . . . 36, 509
  - romanian3.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 509, 576, 584
  - RomanianTeX (package) . . . . . 509
  - romannum (package) . . . . . 50, 72, 85, 178, 221, 237, 257, 406, 581
  - Rowley, Chris A. . . . . 241, [↪\[54, 146, 201, 202, 203, 204, 232\]](#)
  - \rs . . . . . 8367, 8371, 8375, 9111, 9115, 9119
  - \ru . . . . . 2544, 2568
  - rubber (tool) . . . . . 58, 221, 571
  - RUIZ-ALTABA, Marti . . . . . 241, 462, [↪\[79\]](#)
  - \rule (command) . . . . . 565
  - \rule . . . . . 1494, 1503, 2965, 2969, 2973, 3316, 3893, 4566, 5205–5207, 5214–5216, 5223–5225
  - russian (language option) . . . . . 36, 510–513
  - russian-cca (language option) . . . . . 36, 514
  - russian-cca.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 514, 579
  - russian-cca.mlo (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 514
  - russian-cca1 (language option) . . . . . 36, 514
  - russian-cca1.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 514, 579
  - russian-cca1.mlo (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 514
  - russian-lh (language option) . . . . . 36, 515
  - russian-lh.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 515, 579
  - russian-lh.mlo (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 515
  - russian-lhcyralt (language option) . . . . . 36, 515
  - russian-lhcyralt.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 515, 579
  - russian-lhcyralt.mlo (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 515
  - russian-lhcyrkoi (language option) . . . . . 36, 516
  - russian-lhcyrkoi.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 516, 579
  - russian-lhcyrkoi.mlo (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 516
  - russian-lhcyrwin (language option) . . . . . 36, 516
  - russian-lhcyrwin.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 516, 579
  - russian-lhcyrwin.mlo (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 516
  - russian.def (file) . . . . . 513
  - russian.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 510
  - russian.sty (file) . . . . . 514, 515
  - russian2m (language option) . . . . . 36, 41, 510
  - russian2m.ldf (file) . . . . . 510
  - russian2m.mld (file) . . . . . 198, 227, 230, 510, 567
  - russian2o (language option) . . . . . 36, 41, 511
  - russian2o.mld (file) . . . . . 198, 227, 230, 511, 567
  - russianb (language option) . . . . . 36, 512
  - russianb.dtx (file) . . . . . 454, 500, 512
  - russianb.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 512, 578
  - russianc (language option) . . . . . 36, 513
  - russianc.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 513
  - RYNNING, Jan Michael . . . . . 241, 522, 561
  - RYU, Young . . . . . 241, [↪\[233\]](#)
- ## S
- SAAR, Enn . . . . . 241, 463, [↪\[80\]](#)
  - \samepage (command) . . . . . 560
  - samepage (environment) 279, 280, 282, 284, 285, 287, 308, 310, 311, 313, 314, 316, 331, 333–336, 338, 560
  - samin (language option) . . . . . 36, 517
  - samin.dtx (file) . . . . . 517
  - samin.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 517, 564
  - SAMSOEN, David . . . . . 241
  - SÁNCHEZ, Julio . . . . . 241, 448, 520, [↪\[47\]](#)
  - SANGEUX, Morgan . . . . . 241
  - SAUDRAIS, Eddie . . . . . 241, [↪\[234, 235\]](#)
  - \scan@allowedtrue . . . . . 425, 634
  - SCHALÜCK, Elmar . . . . . 241, 505, [↪\[81\]](#)
  - \schapter . . . . . 1, 4801
  - SCHLEGL, Elisabeth . . . . . 241, [↪\[209, 210\]](#)
  - SCHLEMMER, Tobias . . . . . 241, 519, [↪\[57\]](#)
  - SCHMIDT, Walter . . . . . 241, 502, 503, [↪\[76\]](#)
  - SCHNEIDER, Uwe . . . . . 241
  - SCHÖFF, Rainer . . . . . 241, [↪\[54\]](#)
  - SCHRÖDER, Martin . . . . . 89, 241, [↪\[236\]](#)
  - scottish (language option) . . . . . 36, 517
  - scottish.dtx (file) . . . . . 517
  - scottish.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 517
  - scr.tex (old example document) . . . . . 582, 585
  - scrartcl (class) 39, 47, 49, 71, 85, 155, 208, 221, 222
  - scrbook (class) 39, 47, 49, 71, 85, 126, 155, 208, 214, 221, 222
  - Scripts
    - cmk . . . . . 202, 206, 212, 227–230, 588
    - emk . . . . . 204, 208, 221, 227–230, 573
    - fmk . . . . . 206, 208, 221, 227–230, 573
    - imk 204, 206, 208, 221, 227–230, 573, 581
    - pmk . . . . . 220, 227–230
    - rmk . . . . . 221, 227–230
    - tmk . . . . . 223, 227–230, 238, 587
    - xmk . . . . . 225, 227–230, 583
  - \scriptsize (command) . . . . . 218
  - scrlettr (class) . . . . . 208
  - scrlettr2 (class) . . . . . 208
  - scrreprt (class) 39, 47, 49, 71, 85, 137, 155, 208, 215, 221, 222
  - \scshape (command) . . . . . 218
  - \scshape . . . . . 2195, 2196, 2200, 2201, 2204–2206

- SCURFIELD, Elizabeth . . . . . 241, [↔](#)[237]  
 secnumdepth (depth counter) . . . . . 203, 204  
 second.tex (old example document) . . . . . 582, 585  
 \sectbegin (command) . . . . . 340  
 \sectbegin . . . . . 4853, 5018, 5079, 5140, 7518  
 \sectend (command) . . . . . 61, 340  
 \sectend . . . . . 4853, 5018, 5079, 5140, 7518  
 \section (command) . . . . . 24, 25, 28, 30,  
     48, 49, 63, 81, 147, 152, 158, 159, 161,  
     167, 198, 199, 204, 220, 221, 263, 266,  
     288, 289, 328, 330, 333, 335, 338, 343,  
     345, 348, 381, 394, 395, 416, 558  
 section (counter) . . . . . 252, 253  
 section (option of placeins) 29, 30, 50, 165, 413  
 \section . . . . . 1, 2924, 2940, 3465, 3629, 4344,  
     4814, 4941, 5038, 5099, 6648, 6686,  
     7365  
 \section\* (command) 32, 68, 84, 234, 264, 274,  
     564  
 \section@mtcck . . . . . 5343, 5390, 5399, 5406  
 \sectionfont . . . . . 2009  
 \sectlof (command) 28, 34, 38, 39, 50, 81, 83,  
     172, 174, 208, 330, 333, 397, 560–562  
 \sectlof . . . . . 1, 659, 718, 745,  
     807, 839, 861, 956, 1023, 1052, 1071,  
     1097, 1132, 1151, 4666, 6741, 6820,  
     6908, 7007, 7398, 7537  
 \sectlof@ (command) . . . . . 333  
 \sectlof@ . . . . . 3519, 4666, 4667  
 \sectlof@mtcck . . . . . 5337, 5396  
 sectlofdepth (depth counter) 31, 203, 221, 328,  
     335  
 \sectlot (command) 28, 34, 38, 39, 50, 81, 83,  
     172, 174, 208, 330, 335, 397, 560, 561  
 \sectlot . . . . . 1, 659, 718, 745,  
     807, 839, 861, 1152, 1840, 1860, 4733,  
     6741, 6829, 6917, 7018, 7398, 7537  
 \sectlot@ (command) . . . . . 335, 336  
 \sectlot@ . . . . . 3519, 4733, 4734  
 \sectlot@mtcck . . . . . 5340, 5403  
 sectlotdepth (depth counter) 31, 63, 203, 222,  
     328, 337  
 sectsty (package) 50, 67, 85, 128, 166, 222, 236,  
     251, 256, 405, 569, 580  
 \secttoc (command) 28, 34, 35, 38, 39, 81, 83,  
     172, 175, 208, 329, 330, 560, 561  
 \secttoc . . . . . 1, 659, 718, 745, 807,  
     839, 861, 955, 1021, 1052, 1069, 1070,  
     1096, 1131, 1150, 2518, 2527, 4600,  
     6811, 6899, 6996, 7398, 7537  
 \secttoc@ (command) . . . . . 330  
 \secttoc@ . . . . . 3519, 4600, 4601  
 \secttoc@mtcck . . . . . 5334, 5387  
 secttocdepth (depth counter) . 28, 31, 81, 203,  
     222, 328, 332  
 \seen 7935, 7939, 7943, 8577–8579, 8581–8583,  
     8585–8587  
 \selectlanguage . . . . . 9407, 10298, 10351  
 serbian (language option) . . . . . 36, 518  
 serbian.dtx (file) . . . . . 518  
 serbian.mld (file) . . . . . 227, 230, 518, 577  
 serbianc (language option) . . . . . 36, 518  
 serbianc.mld (file) 41, 227, 230, 518, 567, 577  
 \setcounter (command) 28, 31, 56, 60, 79–81,  
     373  
 \setcounter 1, 3868, 3874, 4234, 4238, 4242,  
     4547, 5900, 5924, 5938, 5971, 6142  
 \setlength (command) . . . . . 28, 31, 73  
 \setvruler . . . . . 189  
 \sf . . . . . 930, 1185  
 \sffamily (command) . . . . . 218  
 \sffamily . . . . . 1470, 1472, 1479, 2007  
 sfheaders (package) . 50, 72, 85, 178, 222, 237,  
     257, 407, 581  
 \sh . . . . . 8219, 8223, 8227  
 \sheen . . . . . 7936, 7940, 7944, 8578, 8582, 8586  
 SHELL, Michael . . . . . 241, [↔](#)[238]  
 \shin . . . . . 9042, 9044, 9049, 9051, 9056, 9058  
 SHIN, Jungshik . . . . . 241  
 \SHORTEXT (command) . . . . . 560  
 shorttext (option) 50, 56, 77, 162, 199, 222, 233,  
     381, 563  
 shorttoc (package) . . . . . 19, 222, 559  
 \shorttoc (command) . . . . . 19  
 SHOUKAT, Ali . . . . . 241  
 SHVAIKA, Andriy M. . . . . 241, 525, [↔](#)[82]  
 SILPA-ANAN, Chanop . . . . . 241, 523, [↔](#)[195]  
 SITNIKOVA-RIOLAND, Anna . . . . . 241, [↔](#)[261]  
 \sixt@n . . . . . 2961  
 SJIS.cap (file) . . . . . 489  
 SJIS.cpx (file) . . . . . 490  
 $\LaTeX$  (package) . . . . . 41, 222, 523  
 \SLF@ . . . . . 5077, 5079  
 \SLF@contentsline (command) . . . . . 345  
 \SLF@contentsline . . . . . 5038, 5079  
 \SLF@explist . . . . . 5036, 5063  
 \SLF@line . . . . . 5075  
 \SLF@list . . . . . 5033, 5036, 5063, 5079  
 \SLF@lof . . . . . 5036, 5064, 5079  
 \SLF@loop . . . . . 5033, 5064  
 \SLF@next (command) . . . . . 346  
 \SLF@next . . . . . 4865, 5033, 5063  
 \slf@pgno . . . . . 3086, 3087, 4720  
 \SLF@read . . . . . 5064, 5075, 5079  
 \slf@rule 3190, 4697, 4730, 5210, 5213, 5216  
 \slf@setform (command) . . . . . 335, 363  
 \slf@setform . . . . . 4720, 5572



- \SLF@test (command) ..... **347**
- \SLF@test ..... 5075, 5079
- \slfdotsep ..... 5537, 5575
- \slffont (command) ..... **34, 37, 81**
- \slffont ..... 1, 4568, 4692, 7578
- \slflotrmarg ..... 5528
- \slfname ..... 5038, 5043
- \slfpagenumbers (command) ..... **43, 82**
- \slfpagenumbers ... 3065, 3086, 3097, 7627
- \slfpnumwidth ..... 5519, 5573
- \slfrule (command) ..... **43, 82, 567**
- \slfrule ..... 5199, 7609
- \slfSfont (command) ..... **34, 37, 81, 573**
- \slfSfont ..... 1, 4568, 7578
- \slftitle (command) ..... **34, 37, 81, 441**
- \slftitle ..... 1,
  - 4681, 4683, 4697, 6250, 7275, 7844,
  - 7866, 7887, 7908, 7926, 7944, 7966,
  - 7995, 8012, 8029, 8047, 8063, 8079,
  - 8095, 8111, 8128, 8149, 8182, 8210,
  - 8228, 8244, 8279, 8317, 8336, 8353,
  - 8376, 8393, 8410, 8433, 8459, 8476,
  - 8497, 8521, 8550, 8586, 8603, 8620,
  - 8641, 8664, 8697, 8739, 8754, 8771,
  - 8786, 8804, 8839, 8843, 8879, 8919,
  - 8942, 9056, 9089, 9120, 9142, 9167,
  - 9184, 9202, 9220, 9303, 9304, 9324,
  - 9341, 9360, 9382, 9399, 9423, 9440,
  - 9457, 9478, 9501, 9518, 9542, 9579,
  - 9621, 9636, 9655, 9671, 9690, 9706,
  - 9723, 9742, 9760, 9781, 9798, 9816,
  - 9849, 9884, 9924, 9962, 9982, 10050,
  - 10067, 10084, 10108, 10126, 10143,
  - 10164, 10179, 10195, 10216, 10233,
  - 10250, 10274, 10319, 10339, 10366,
  - 10387, 10402, 10417, 10432
- \slftocrmarg ..... 5533, 5574
- slides (class) ..... **202**
- SLOBODAN, Jankovic ..... **241, 518**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [73]
- \sloppy ..... 952, 1216
- slovak (language option) ..... **36, 519**
- slovak.dtx (file) ..... **519**
- slovak.mld (file) ..... **227, 230, 519**
- slovene (language option) ..... **36, 519**
- slovene.dtx (file) ..... **519**
- slovene.mld (file) ..... **227, 230, 519**
- \slshape (command) ..... **218**
- \slshape ..... 2315, 2317, 2320, 2322, 3224
- \SLT@ ..... 5138, 5140
- \SLT@contentsline (command) ..... **348**
- \SLT@contentsline ..... 5099, 5140
- \SLT@explist ..... 5097, 5124
- \SLT@line ..... 5136
- \SLT@list ..... 5094, 5097, 5124, 5140
- \SLT@loop ..... 5094, 5125
- \SLT@lot ..... 5097, 5125, 5140
- \SLT@next (command) ..... **348**
- \SLT@next ..... 4872, 5094, 5124
- \slt@pgno ..... 3092, 3093, 4787
- \SLT@read ..... 5125, 5136, 5140
- \slt@rule 3190, 4766, 4798, 5219, 5222, 5225
- \slt@setform (command) ..... **337, 363**
- \slt@setform ..... 4787, 5587
- \SLT@test (command) ..... **349**
- \SLT@test ..... 5136, 5140
- \sltdotsep ..... 5537
- \sltfont (command) ..... **34, 37, 81**
- \sltfont ..... 1, 4568, 4759, 7578
- \sltlotrmarg ..... 5528
- \sltname (command) ..... **563**
- \sltname ..... 5099, 5104
- \sltpagenumbers (command) ..... **43, 82**
- \sltpagenumbers ... 3071, 3092, 3097, 7627
- \sltpnumwidth ..... 5519
- \sltrule (command) ..... **43, 82, 567**
- \sltrule ..... 5199, 7609
- \sltSfont (command) ..... **34, 37, 81, 573**
- \sltSfont ..... 1, 4568, 7578
- \slttitle (command) ... **34, 37, 63, 81, 441**
- \slttitle ..... 1, 4748, 4750, 4764, 6250,
  - 7275, 7844, 7867, 7888, 7909, 7927,
  - 7945, 7967, 7996, 8013, 8030, 8048,
  - 8064, 8080, 8096, 8112, 8129, 8150,
  - 8185, 8212, 8229, 8245, 8280, 8318,
  - 8337, 8354, 8377, 8394, 8411, 8434,
  - 8460, 8477, 8498, 8524, 8552, 8587,
  - 8604, 8621, 8642, 8665, 8698, 8740,
  - 8755, 8772, 8787, 8805, 8883, 8923,
  - 8943, 9058, 9092, 9121, 9143, 9168,
  - 9185, 9203, 9221, 9325, 9342, 9361,
  - 9383, 9400, 9424, 9441, 9458, 9479,
  - 9502, 9519, 9543, 9581, 9622, 9637,
  - 9656, 9672, 9691, 9707, 9724, 9743,
  - 9761, 9782, 9799, 9817, 9834, 9835,
  - 9850, 9888, 9928, 9965, 9983, 10051,
  - 10068, 10085, 10110, 10127, 10144,
  - 10165, 10180, 10196, 10217, 10234,
  - 10251, 10275, 10321, 10340, 10367,
  - 10388, 10403, 10418, 10433
- \slttocrmarg ..... 5536
- \small (command) ..... **218**
- SMITH, John ..... **241, 459, 484**
- SOCHA, Robin S. .... **241**
- SOFRONIOU, Nick ..... **241**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [243]
- SOMMERFELDT, Axel ..... **51, 69, 85, 200, 241**,
  - $\hookrightarrow$ [239, 240, 241]
- SONG, Lianyi ..... **241**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [237]

- SOULET, Yves ..... 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [203]  
 \space (command) ..... 33  
 spanish (language option) ..... 36, 456, 520  
 spanish.dtx (file) ..... 471, 520–522  
 spanish.mld (file) ... 227, 230, 456, 520, 578  
 spanish2 (language option) ..... 36, 520, 521  
 spanish2.mld (file) ..... 227, 230, 521, 569  
 spanish3 (language option) .. 36, 41, 520, 521  
 spanish3.mld (file) .. 198, 227, 230, 521, 571  
 spanish4 (language option) ..... 36, 520, 522  
 spanish4.mld (file) ..... 227, 230, 522, 576  
 \spart ..... 1  
 \special (command) ..... 207  
 splitbib (package) ..... 57, 222  
 \star ..... 1522, 1527  
 \starchapter (command) ..... 294  
 \starchapter ..... 3530, 3647, 4368  
 \starparagraph ..... 3661, 4368, 4989  
 \starp ..... 4329  
 \starsection (command) ..... 339  
 \starsection ..... 3661, 4368, 4814, 4974  
 \starsubparagraph ..... 3661, 4368, 4989  
 \starsubsection ..... 3661, 4368, 4989  
 \starsubsubsection ..... 3661, 4368, 4989  
 stc (counter) . 84, 261, 263, 264, 273, 328, 343,  
     345, 348, 564  
 \STC@ ..... 5016, 5018  
 \STC@contentsline (command) ..... 343  
 \STC@contentsline ..... 4941, 5018  
 \STC@explist ..... 4939, 5002  
 \STC@line ..... 5014, 5016  
 \STC@list ..... 4936, 4939, 5002, 5018  
 \STC@loop ..... 4936, 5003  
 \STC@next (command) ..... 344  
 \STC@next ..... 4861, 4936, 5002  
 \stc@pgno ..... 3080, 3081, 4650  
 \STC@read ..... 5003, 5014, 5018  
 \stc@rule (command) ..... 328  
 \stc@rule ... 4555, 4631, 4662, 4729, 4764,  
     4797, 5201, 5204, 5207  
 \stc@sect ..... 4853  
 \stc@setform (command) ..... 332, 362  
 \stc@setform ..... 4650, 5557  
 \STC@test (command) ..... 345  
 \STC@test ..... 5016, 5018  
 \STC@toc ..... 4939, 5003, 5018  
 stc@verse (environment) . 330, 332, 335, 337,  
     362, 363, 569  
 \stc@verse ..... 4589  
 \stcdotsep ..... 5537, 5560  
 \stcfont (command) ..... 28, 34, 35, 37, 81  
 \stcfont ..... 1, 928, 4568, 4626, 7578  
 \stcindent (command) ..... 28, 81, 328  
 \stcindent 926, 2509, 4555, 4597, 4643, 4709,  
     4776, 7412  
 \stclotrmarg ..... 5528  
 \stcname ..... 4941, 4946, 4974  
 \stcpagenumbers (command) ..... 43, 82  
 \stcpagenumbers ... 3041, 3080, 3097, 7627  
 \stcPfont (command) ..... 35, 37, 81  
 \stcPfont ..... 1, 931, 4568, 7578  
 \stcpnumwidth ..... 5519, 5558  
 \stcrule (command) ..... 43, 82  
 \stcrule ..... 5199, 7609  
 \stcSPfont (command) ..... 35, 37  
 \stcSPfont ..... 1, 931, 4568, 7578  
 \stcSSfont (command) ..... 28, 35, 37, 81  
 \stcSSfont ..... 1, 930, 4568, 7578  
 \stcSSSfont (command) ..... 35, 37, 81  
 \stcSSSfont ..... 1, 931, 4568, 7578  
 \stctitle (command) ..... 34, 37, 81, 441  
 \stctitle ..... 1,  
     4616, 4631, 6250, 7275, 7844, 7865,  
     7886, 7907, 7925, 7943, 7965, 7994,  
     8011, 8028, 8046, 8062, 8078, 8094,  
     8110, 8127, 8148, 8180, 8208, 8227,  
     8243, 8278, 8316, 8335, 8352, 8375,  
     8392, 8409, 8432, 8458, 8475, 8496,  
     8520, 8549, 8585, 8602, 8619, 8640,  
     8663, 8696, 8735, 8737, 8753, 8770,  
     8785, 8803, 8836, 8876, 8916, 8941,  
     9054, 9086, 9119, 9141, 9166, 9183,  
     9201, 9219, 9302, 9323, 9340, 9359,  
     9381, 9398, 9422, 9439, 9456, 9477,  
     9500, 9517, 9541, 9575, 9577, 9620,  
     9635, 9654, 9670, 9689, 9705, 9722,  
     9741, 9759, 9780, 9797, 9815, 9833,  
     9848, 9881, 9921, 9960, 9981, 10049,  
     10066, 10083, 10106, 10125, 10142,  
     10163, 10178, 10194, 10215, 10232,  
     10249, 10273, 10318, 10338, 10365,  
     10386, 10401, 10416, 10431  
 \stctocrmarg ..... 5530, 5559  
 stdclsdv (package) ..... 221, 222  
 STEINER, Arjen ..... 241  
 \stepcounter (command) .. 32, 262, 264, 265  
 \stepcounter ..... 2907,  
     2940, 2952, 3167, 3615, 3647, 3724,  
     3785, 4221, 4316, 4330, 4369, 4429,  
     4491, 4944, 4974, 5041, 5102  
 \stifont (command) ..... 34, 37, 81  
 \stifont ... 1, 4568, 4631, 4697, 4764, 7578  
 STORY, D. P. .... 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [242]  
 STREIT, Éric ..... 241,  $\hookrightarrow$ [21]  
 STUBNER, Ralf ..... 241  
 subappendices (environment) ..... 198  
 subf.tex (old example document) .. 582, 585



- subfig (package) **31, 85, 141, 199, 215, 222, 223, 372**  
 \subfigbottomskip ..... 2310, 2340  
 \subfigcapskip ..... 2630  
 \subfigtopskip ..... 2309, 2340  
 subfigure (package) ..... **31, 85, 135, 215, 223**  
 \subfigure 2338, 2341, 2343, 2583, 2588, 2593, 2598, 2603, 2608, 2613, 3737, 4442, 5055  
 \subfigure@mtcck .. 5350, 5355, 5365, 5371, 5385, 5392, 5408  
 \subparagraph (command) ..... **204, 221**  
 \subparagraph . 1038, 1060, 1080, 1116, 1388, 3629, 4344, 4958  
 \subparagraph@mtcck ..... 5347  
 \subref ..... 2623–2626  
 \subsection (command) .. **204, 221, 338, 558**  
 \subsection ... 373, 660, 669, 719, 728, 746, 755, 808, 817, 840, 849, 862, 871, 958, 960, 962, 964, 967, 969, 971, 973, 975, 977, 979, 981, 983, 985, 987, 989, 991, 993, 995, 997, 999, 1001, 1003, 1005, 1007, 1009, 1011, 1013, 1015, 1017, 1025, 1047, 1054, 1062, 1074, 1090, 1102, 1118, 1133, 1135, 1137, 1146, 1154, 1156, 1158, 1160, 1281, 1308, 1328, 1349, 1375, 1593, 1598, 1610, 1615, 1652, 1767, 1769, 1773, 1775, 1815, 1817, 1821, 1823, 2030, 2049, 2068, 2075, 2085, 2089, 2101, 2107, 2118, 2125, 2131, 2519, 2524, 2528, 2533, 3629, 4344, 4958  
 \subsection@mtcck ..... 5344  
 \subsubsection (command) ..... **204, 221**  
 \subsubsection .. 737, 738, 1034, 1056, 1076, 1104, 1310, 1331, 1351, 1377, 2053, 2058, 2063, 2112, 2136, 2142, 2147, 2520, 2522, 2529, 2531, 3629, 4344, 4958  
 \subsubsection@mtcck ..... 5345  
 \subtable ..... 3798, 4504, 5116  
 \subtable@mtcck ... 5351, 5357, 5361, 5373, 5379, 5394, 5401  
 Suffixes ..... *see* Extensions  
 SUTOR, Robert S. .... **241**, ↪[123]  
 \sv@chapter ..... 3455  
 \SV@endmtc@verse ..... 336, 340  
 \sv@minilof@ ..... 3499  
 \sv@minilot@ ..... 3499  
 \sv@minitoc@ ..... 3499  
 \SV@mtc@verse ..... 335, 337  
 \sv@part ..... 4221  
 \sv@partlof@ ..... 3509  
 \sv@partlot@ ..... 3509  
 \sv@parttoc@ ..... 3509  
 \sv@sect ..... 4807, 4813  
 \sv@sectlof@ ..... 3519  
 \sv@sectlot@ ..... 3519  
 \sv@secttoc@ ..... 3519  
 \sv@spart ..... 4221  
 swedish (language option) ..... **36, 522**  
 swedish.dtx (file) ..... **522**  
 swedish.mld (file) ..... **227, 230, 522**  
 swedish2 (language option) ..... **36, 523**  
 swedish2.mld (file) ..... **227, 230, 523, 580**  
 SWOYER, Chris ..... **241**  
 SYROPOULOS, Apostolos **241, 474**, ↪[22, 83, 243]
- ## T
- \taa ..... 8577–8579, 8581–8583, 8585–8587  
 \table (command) ..... **300**  
 table (environment) ..... **200, 222**  
 \table ..... 3798, 4504, 5116  
 \table@mtcck .. 5349, 5356, 5360, 5372, 5378, 5393, 5400  
 \tableofcontents (command) . **20, 27, 28, 31, 47, 50, 55, 60, 62, 75, 78–81, 173–175, 234, 266, 273, 396, 401, 564, 568**  
 \tableofcontents . 1, 13, 217, 243, 345, 437, 648, 891, 945, 1208, 1635, 1697, 1749, 1797, 1934, 2017, 2165, 2211, 2233, 2325, 2371, 2427, 2457, 2934, 6710, 6928, 6963, 6998  
 \tableofcontents\* (command) ..... **132**  
 tabular (environment) **279, 282, 285, 309, 312, 315, 331, 334, 337**  
 TAUPIN<sup>†</sup>, Daniel ..... **50, 69, 85, 241**, ↪[244]  
 \tav . 9040, 9042, 9044, 9045, 9047, 9049, 9051, 9052, 9054, 9056, 9058, 9059  
 tbi.tex (old example document) ... **582, 585**  
 TDS ..... **212, 223, 229, 230, 238, 587**  
 \testtemp ..... 2543, 2545–2548, 2551  
 \tet ..... 9045, 9052, 9059  
 \textbf (command) ..... **218**  
 \textheight ..... 2506  
 \textit (command) ..... **218**  
 \textit ..... 1497  
 \textmd (command) ..... **218**  
 \textrm (command) ..... **218**  
 \textsc (command) ..... **218**  
 \textsc ... 469, 2011, 2025, 2027, 2082, 2094, 2230  
 \textsf (command) ..... **218**  
 \textsf ..... 466  
 \textsl (command) ..... **218**  
 \textsl ..... 469, 679, 766

- `\textsuperscript` ..... 2001
- `\texttt` (command) ..... **218**
- `\texttt` 493, 597, 599, 605, 607, 613, 615, 701, 790
- `\textup` (command) ..... **218**
- `\textwidth` (command) ..... **584**
- `\textwidth` ..... 2504
- `\tf@mtc` (command) ..... **249, 266, 414**
- `\tf@mtc` ..... 2643, 2870, 2975, 3602, 3612, 3616, 3647, 3694, 3725, 3762, 3786, 3823, 3839, 3859, 4306, 4314, 4340, 4341, 4415, 4416, 4427, 4439, 4440, 4477, 4478, 4489, 4501, 4502, 4539, 4540, 4933, 4941, 4955, 4956, 4986, 4987, 5026, 5027, 5038, 5052, 5053, 5087, 5088, 5099, 5113, 5114, 5148, 5149, 7308, 7544
- thai (language option) ..... **36, 523**
- thai.ldf (file) ..... **523**
- thai.mld (file) ..... **227, 230, 523, 567**
- thai.mlo (file) ..... **227, 230, 523**
- thaicjk.ldf (file) ..... **523**
- thailatex (package) ..... **223, 523, 582**
- `\The@chapter` (command) ..... **564**
- `\The@mtc` (command) ..... **275, 564**
- `\The@mtc` .3190, 3251, 3253, 3321, 3323, 3389, 3391
- `\thechapter` ..... 1470, 1551, 7830, 7833
- `\themtc` (command) ..... **275**
- `\themtc` .3190, 3612, 3616, 3647, 3722, 3725, 3783, 3786
- `\Thepart` (command) ..... **303**
- `\Thepart` ..... 3874, 3995, 4068, 4142
- `\theptc` (command) ..... **303**
- `\theptc` .3874, 4314, 4333, 4334, 4337, 4338, 4427, 4432, 4433, 4436, 4437, 4489, 4494, 4495, 4498, 4499
- `\thesection` ..... 1550, 1551, 2008
- `\thestc` ..... 4601, 4667, 4734, 4791, 4941, 4948, 4949, 4952, 4953, 4974, 5038, 5045, 5046, 5049, 5050, 5099, 5106, 5107, 5110, 5111
- THIELE, Christina ..... **241**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [224]
- `\thispageminilofstyle` (command) . **83, 282**
- `\thispageminilofstyle` .. 3132, 3331, 7654
- `\thispageminilotstyle` (command) . **83, 285**
- `\thispageminilotstyle` .. 3132, 3399, 7654
- `\thispagemininitocstyle` (command) . **83, 279**
- `\thispagemininitocstyle` .. 3132, 3261, 7654
- `\thispagepartlofsty` (command) .. **45, 83, 563**
- `\thispagepartlofsty` .. 3132, 4082, 7645
- `\thispagepartlotstyle` (command) .. **45, 83, 563**
- `\thispagepartlotstyle` .. 3132, 4157, 7645
- `\thispageparttocstyle` (command) .. **45, 83, 271, 563**
- `\thispageparttocstyle` .. 3132, 4009, 7645
- `\thispagesectlofsty` (command) ..... **83**
- `\thispagesectlofsty` .. 3132, 4680, 7663
- `\thispagesectlotstyle` (command) ..... **83**
- `\thispagesectlotstyle` .. 3132, 4747, 7663
- `\thispagesecttocstyle` (command) ..... **83**
- `\thispagesecttocstyle` .. 3132, 4614, 7663
- `\thispagestyle` (command) .. **45, 46, 83, 271**
- `\thispagestyle` ..... 3132
- THUREAU, Aurélien ..... **241**
- tight (option) .. **39, 59, 77, 137, 208, 210, 223, 233, 255, 277, 307, 330, 380, 563, 565**
- `\tightmtcfalse` (command) ..... **39, 78**
- `\tightmtcfalse` ..... 1, 2770, 6147, 7673
- `\tightmtctrue` (command) ..... **39, 78**
- `\tightmtctrue` ..... 1, 6146
- TINNEFELD, Karsten ... **50, 72, 85, 241**,  $\hookrightarrow$ [245]
- `\tiny` (command) ..... **218**
- `\title` ..... 2010
- titlesec (package) ..... **50, 85, 223**
- titletoc (package) ..... **50, 85, 167, 223, 390**
- titletoc.sty (file) ..... **223**
- T LAM, Ton ..... **241**
- tlc.tex (old example document) ... **583, 585**
- tmk (script) ..... **223, 227–230, 238, 587**
- tocbibind (package) **47, 49, 62, 85, 92, 94, 95, 97, 101, 138, 140, 156, 213, 215, 223, 234, 389, 564**
- tocdepth (depth counter) **31, 60, 68, 79–81, 203, 224, 275, 280, 283, 373, 558, 569**
- toch (package) ..... **559**
- `\toclevel@chapter` ..... 2782
- `\toclevel@paragraph` ..... 2786
- `\toclevel@part` ..... 2781
- `\toclevel@section` ..... 2783
- `\toclevel@starchapter` ..... 2782
- `\toclevel@starpagraph` ..... 2786
- `\toclevel@starp` ..... 2781
- `\toclevel@starsection` ..... 2783
- `\toclevel@starsubparagraph` ..... 2787
- `\toclevel@starsubsubsection` ..... 2784
- `\toclevel@starsubsubsection` ..... 2785
- `\toclevel@subparagraph` ..... 2787
- `\toclevel@subsection` ..... 2784
- `\toclevel@subsubsection` ..... 2785
- `\toclevel@xchapter` ..... 2778
- `\toclevel@xpart` ..... 2777
- `\toclevel@xsect` ..... 2779
- `\toclevel@xsection` ..... 2780

tocloft (package) . **49, 61, 62, 68, 75, 76, 85, 115, 128, 156, 214, 215, 224, 390**  
 tocloft.pdf (file) . . . . . **75**  
 TODO (file) . . . . . **224, 227, 228, 230**  
 TOLUŠIS, Sigitas . . . . . **241, 493**  
 Tools  
     rubber . . . . . **58, 221, 571**  
     urlbst . . . . . **204, 207, 224, 237, 579**  
     xargs . . . . . **572**  
 \topsep (command) . . . . . **277, 307**  
 \topsep . . . . . 3236, 3983  
 TORDELLA, Laurent . . . . . **241**  
 TRETIN, Mark . . . . . **241**, ↪[[246](#), [247](#)]  
 TRUU, Ahto . . . . . **241**  
 tsfc.tex (old example document) . . **582, 585**  
 TSOLOMITIS, Antonis . . . . . **241**, ↪[[243](#)]  
 \ttfamily (command) . . . . . **218**  
 \ttfamily . . . . . 1757, 1760, 1805, 1808  
 turkish (language option) . . . . . **36, 524**  
 turkish.dtx (file) . . . . . **524**  
 turkish.mld (file) . . . . . **227, 230, 524**  
 TWS-TDS, . . . . . ↪[[249](#), [248](#)]  
 txfonts (package) . . . . . **34**  
 \typeout (command) . . . . . **566**

## U

u8hangul.mld (file) . . . . . **578**  
 u8hangul.mlo (file) . . . . . **578**  
 u8hangul.tex (file) . . . . . **480**  
 u8hanja.mld (file) . . . . . **578**  
 u8hanja.mlo (file) . . . . . **578**  
 u8hanja.tex (file) . . . . . **481**  
 uighur (language option) . . . . . **36, 524**  
 uighur.mld (file) . . . . . **227, 230, 524, 581**  
 uighur2 (language option) . . . . . **36, 524**  
 uighur2.mld (file) . . . . . **227, 230, 524, 581**  
 uighur3 (language option) . . . . . **36, 525**  
 uighur3.mld (file) . . . . . **227, 230, 525, 581**  
 UKenglish (language option) . . . . . **36, 525**  
 UKenglish.mld (file) . . . . . **227, 230, 525, 570**  
 ukraineb (language option) . . . . . **36, 525**  
 ukraineb.dtx (file) . . . . . **525**  
 ukraineb.mld (file) . . . . . **227, 230, 525**  
 ukrainian (language option) . . . . . **36, 525**  
 ukrainian.mld (file) . . . . . **227, 230, 525, 577**  
 ULRICH, Stefan . . . . . **33, 241, 563**, ↪[[16](#)]  
 UMEKI, Hideo . . . . . **241**, ↪[[250](#)]  
 UN, Koaunghi . . . . . **207, 241, 480, 481**  
 undotted (option) . . . **44, 59, 77, 233, 380, 563**  
 \undottedmtcfalse (command) . . . . . **78**  
 \undottedmtcfalse . . . . . 3015, 6153, 7675  
 \undottedmtctrue (command) . . . . . **78**

\undottedmtctrue . . . . . 6152  
 \unhcopy . . . . . 2967, 2971  
 \unitlength . . . 1028, 1041, 1083, 1109, 1140, 1296, 1302, 1315, 1356, 1380, 1405  
 \unpenalty . . . . . 2974  
 unsrt . . . . . **49**  
 uppersorbian (language option) . **36, 526, 527**  
 uppersorbian.mld (file) **227, 230, 526, 527, 577**  
 \upshape (command) . . . . . **218**  
 \upshape . . . 928, 1754, 1757, 1760, 1802, 1805, 1808, 2314, 2316, 2318, 2321, 2323, 3213, 3214, 3223, 3898, 3899, 3908, 3911–3913, 3922, 4568, 4569, 4577  
 \url . . . . . 600, 608, 616  
 urlbst (tool) . . . . . **204, 207, 224, 237, 579**  
 USenglish (language option) . . . . . **36, 527**  
 USenglish.mld (file) . . . . . **227, 230, 527, 570**  
 \usepackage (command) . **26–29, 31, 75, 194, 197, 219, 220, 420, 440**  
 \usepackage 1, 5–7, 58, 122, 184, 186, 187, 211, 212, 235–237, 239, 289–294, 324–327, 330, 420–422, 430, 431, 631, 639, 640, 886, 887, 921–923, 1176–1179, 1433, 1435–1442, 1452, 1453, 1632, 1685–1688, 1743–1745, 1783–1785, 1832, 1833, 1881, 1882, 1929, 1930, 1993–2000, 2157–2160, 2162, 2192, 2198, 2199, 2227, 2229, 2301, 2306, 2307, 2363–2367, 2410, 2453, 2454, 2508, 2540–2542, 7691  
 usorbian (language option) . . . . . **36, 526, 527**  
 usorbian.dtx (file) . . . . . **526**  
 usorbian.mld (file) . . . . . **227, 230, 527, 578**  
 UYAR, Turgut . . . . . **241, 524**, ↪[[53](#)]

## V

VAARIO, Jari . . . . . **241**  
 \value . . . . . 2753, 7027, 8418, 8421, 8424, 8441, 8649, 8652, 8655, 8672, 8682, 8685, 8688  
 VAN OOSTRUM, Piet . . . . . **241**, ↪[[252](#)]  
 VAN OUDENHOVE DE SAINT GÉRY, Thomas . . . **241**, ↪[[21](#), [253](#)]  
 VAQUIN, Vincent . . . . . **241**  
 varioref (package) . . . . . **135**  
 varsects (package) **50, 69, 85, 166, 224, 236, 251, 256, 405, 574**  
 \vav . 9040, 9043, 9045, 9047, 9050, 9052, 9054, 9057, 9059  
 \vbox . . . . . 2339, 2342, 2344, 2557, 2564  
 VENKATESAN, Suki K. . . . . **241**, ↪[[254](#)]  
 verbose (option of placeins) . . . . . **29, 413**

VERNA, Didier . . . . . **59, 211, 234, 241, 293**  
 verse (environment) . . . **33, 277, 307, 330, 558**  
 VESCO, Sylvain . . . . . **241**  
`\vfil` . . . . . 2339, 2342, 2344, 2558, 2563  
`\vfill` . . . . . 1498, 1515  
 VIAL, Alexandre . . . . . **241**  
 vietnam (package) . . . . . **41, 527**  
 vietnam (language option) . . . . . **36, 527, 528**  
 vietnam.mld (file) . . . **227, 230, 527, 528, 562**  
 vietnamese (language option) . . . . . **36, 528**  
 vietnamese.mld (file) . . . . . **227, 230, 528**  
 VIOLANTE, André . . . . . **241**, ↪[255]  
 VOEGELIN, Carl F. . . . . **241**, ↪[256]  
 VOEGELIN, Florence M. . . . . **241**, ↪[256]  
 VOLOVICH, Vladimir . . . . . **241, 454, 500, 512**,  
 ↪[69, 257]  
 VON BECHTOLSHEIM, Stephan P. . . . **241, 260, 564**,  
 ↪[258, 259]  
 Voss, Herbert . . . . . **241**  
`\vref` . . . . . 2353, 2354  
`\vrule` (command) . . . . . **565**  
`\vrule` . . . . . 2549, 2550, 2552  
`\vspace*` (command) . . . . . **560**

## W

WAGNER, Zdeněk . . . . . **241, 459, 484**  
 WARD, Nigel . . . . . **24, 232, 241, 558**  
 WARNOCK, John . . . . . **241**, ↪[121]  
`\waw` . . . . . 7937, 7941, 7945, 8579, 8583, 8587  
 WAWRYKIEWICZ, Staszek . . . . . **241**, ↪[260]  
 WEBANCK, Stephan B. . . . . **241**  
 welsh (language option) . . . . . **36, 528**  
 welsh.dtx (file) . . . . . **528**  
 welsh.mld (file) . . . . . **227, 230, 528**  
 WERNER, Eduard . . . . . **241, 494, 526**, ↪[84, 85]  
 WEST, Daphne . . . . . **241**, ↪[261]  
 while.tip (file) . . . . . **260**  
`\widowpenalty` (command) . . . . . **560**  
 WIJNHOUT, Jeroen . . . . . **241**, ↪[222, 220, 221]  
 WILLIAMS, Graham . . . . . **241**, ↪[262]  
 WILSON, Peter R. . . . . **47, 50, 51, 60–62**,  
**67, 69, 72, 85, 197, 198, 210, 241, 260**,  
 ↪[263, 264, 265, 266, 267, 268, 269,  
 270, 271, 272, 273, 274, 275]  
 win-gn.def (file) . . . . . **477**  
 WOLIŃSKI, Marcin . . . . . **241, 507**, ↪[200, 211]  
 WOLKOWSKI, Élisabeth . . . . . **241**  
 WOODING, Mark . . . . . **241**, ↪[200]  
 wrapfig (package) . . . . . **133, 215, 225**  
 wrapfigure (environment) . . . . . **134, 215, 225**  
 wraptable (environment) . . . . . **225**  
 WRIGHT, Tim . . . . . **241**

`\write` . . 2760, 2763, 2899, 2975, 3839, 3859,  
 7318  
 WUJASTYK, Dominik . . . . . **241, 459, 484**  
 WYART, Damien . . . . . **241**, ↪[21]

## X

xalx (language option) . . . . . **36, 491, 529, 530**  
`\xalx` . . . . . 9973–9975,  
 9977–9979, 9981–9983, 10423–10425,  
 10427–10429, 10431–10433  
 xalx.mld (file) . . . . . **227, 230, 491, 529, 573**  
 xalx2 (language option) . . . . . **36, 529**  
 xalx2.mld (file) . . . . . **227, 230, 529, 580**  
 xalx3 (language option) . . . . . **36, 530**  
 xalx3.mld (file) . . . . . **227, 230, 530, 580**  
 xargs (tool) . . . . . **572**  
 xchapter . . . . . **265**  
`\xchapter` (command) . . . . . **297, 300**  
`\xchapter` . . . . . 3453, 3721, 3782, 7544  
`\xdef` (command) . . . . . **373**  
 xmk (script) . . . . . **225, 227–230, 583**  
 xpart . . . . . **262**  
`\xpart` . . . . . 3874, 4428, 4490, 7544  
 xr (package) . . . . . **26, 225, 293, 559, 574**  
 xr-hyper (package) . . . . . **225**  
 xssect . . . . . **264**  
`\xssect` . . . . . 4801, 5040, 5101, 7544  
`\xsection` . . . . . **4801**

## Y

`\ya` . . . . . 8578, 8579, 8582, 8583, 8586, 8587  
`\yahamza` . 7936, 7937, 7940, 7941, 7944, 7945  
`\ychapter` (command) . . . . . **569**  
`\yod` . . . . . 9041–9044, 9048–9051, 9055–9058  
 YOGANANDA, C. S. . . . . **241, 491**  
`\ypart` (command) . . . . . **569**  
`\ysection` (command) . . . . . **569**

## Z

`\z@` (command) . . . . . **565**  
 ZAIMI, Adi . . . . . **241, 443**, ↪[86]  
 ZAMENOF, Lejzer Ludwig . . . . . **241, 463**  
 ZAVRTANIK, Danilo . . . . . **241, 519**, ↪[87]  
 ŻELECHOWSKI, Krzysztof Konrad **242, 492**, ↪[50]  
 ZENDER, Charlie S. . . . . **242**, ↪[276]  
 ZENITH, Federico . . . . . **242**, ↪[222, 220, 221]  
 ZHYTNIKOV, Vadim V. **242, 514–516**, ↪[140, 277]  
 ZIEGENHAGEN, Uwe . . . . . **242**  
 ŽLAJPAH, Leon . . . . . **242, 519**, ↪[87]